2012 Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

as Amended in December 2014 (The 2014 SWMMWW)

DEPARTMENT OF
ECOLOGY
State of Washington

Publication Number 14-10-055
(Replaces Publication 12-10-030)

Printed on recycled paper

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume I - Minimum Technical Requirements and Site Planning
Volume II - Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention
Volume III - Hydrologic Analysis and Flow Control Design/BMPs
Volume IV - Source Control BMPs
Volume V - Runoff Treatment BMPs

Prepared by:

Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

December 2014
Publication Number 14-10-055
(Replaces Publication Number 12-10-030)

Printed on Recycled Paper

[*This page intentionally left blank.*]

Executive Summary of 2012 Revisions

The Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW) provides guidance on the measures necessary to control the quantity and quality of stormwater. Local municipalities use this manual to set stormwater requirements for new development and redevelopment projects. Land developers and development engineers use this manual to design permanent stormwater control plans, create construction stormwater pollution prevention plans, and determine stormwater infrastructure. Businesses use this manual to help design their stormwater pollution prevention plans.

The greatest use of the 2005 SWMMWW has been through National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) stormwater permits. The Municipal Stormwater General Permits for western Washington incorporate and reference the SWMMWW. The Industrial Stormwater General Permit, Construction Stormwater General Permit, Boatyard General Permit, and the Sand and Gravel General Permit reference the SWMMWW. Since 2005, Ecology has reissued or issued for the first time all of these NPDES stormwater permits. The 2012 revisions to the SWMMWW will help permittees comply with these permits.

The method by which this manual controls the adverse impacts from quality and quantity of stormwater is primarily through the application of Best Management Practices. Ecology has revised many of the BMPs from the 2005 SWMMWW to improve their effectiveness for protecting water quality and to meet the intent of the anti-degradation provisions of the water quality standards.

In addition, Ecology revised this manual to include low impact development (LID) related definitions, requirements, and an LID performance standard. Ecology made the LID revisions based on rulings by the Pollution Control Hearings Board, after consulting with LID advisory committees, and after providing opportunities for public input. The manual update also supports the new LID requirements in the Western Washington Municipal Stormwater Permits.

Other major changes include revised guidelines on protecting wetlands and designing infiltration facilities, and numerous minor revisions for clarity.

How to Find the Stormwater Management Manual on the Internet

The 2012 Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington is available on Ecology's website: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/manual.html

How to Find Corrections, Updates, and Additional Information

With a publication of this size and complexity there will inevitably be errors that must be corrected and clarifications that are needed. There will also be new information and technological updates. Ecology intends to publish corrections, updates and new technical information on our Stormwater Management Manual website. Ecology will not use the website to make revisions in key policy areas – such as the thresholds and minimum requirements in Volume I. Please check this site periodically for corrections and updates.

Public involvement leading up to the 2012 SWMMWW

Ecology provided public involvement opportunities and received public comments in preparation of the 2012 SWMMWW through advisory committees, listening sessions, surveys, meetings with experts in selected fields, and a public comment period.

- **Low Impact Development (LID) Advisory Committees** To support the development of LID requirements, Ecology formed two advisory committees comprised of representatives from local government permittees, state government, ports, environmental groups, scientists, consultants, and the development industry. The advisory groups met in 2009 and 2010 and provided input to Ecology on the definition of LID, a performance standard, feasibility criteria, and a number of implementation issues. In August 2010, Ecology presented an outline of the proposed LID requirements and took comments from the committee members and the broader interested public. Meeting materials, summaries, references, and comments on Ecology's proposal are available on Ecology's website. The committees met jointly again in May 2011 to provide input on Ecology's preliminary draft LID proposed language. See LID advisory process materials at: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/municipal/LIDstandards.html.

  The LID requirements are found primarily in Volume I of the manual. Ecology acknowledges the participants of the LID Advisory committees in Volume I.

- **Listening Sessions** In August and September 2010, Ecology hosted listening sessions statewide to announce the reissuance schedule and gather input for preparing to reissue the 2012 permits and update the Manual. More than 200 people attended the listening sessions statewide. Participants largely agreed that the Manual should not be substantively revised, except to include new technical information about LID implementation, add BMPs approved as equivalent, and remove non-working BMPs.

- **Surveys on the Volumes in the Manual** Ecology sent out surveys specific to Volumes II-V to permittees, internal experts, and outside experts asking for comments and advice on revisions for the 2012 draft Manual. Ecology acknowledges those that actively participated in the surveys in the Acknowledgment sections of Volumes II-V.

- **Meetings with experts** In a few cases, Ecology met with internal and external experts to discuss needed changes to the Manual. Ecology acknowledges those that participated in these meetings in the Acknowledgment section of each volume.

- **Public Comment Period** Ecology issued the Draft 2012 SWMWW for a 90 day public comment period (November 4, 2011 – February 3, 2012). During the comment period Ecology held five public workshops throughout Western Washington on the Draft 2012 SWMMWW. At the workshops, Ecology explained the proposed changes to the manual and answered questions. Ecology considered the comments received during the 90-day comment period and made the final changes to the 2012 SWMMWW. Ecology has issued a response to comments with the final version of the 2012 SWMMWW.

Photo Credits

Cover (clockwise from lower left): This photo shows what can happen when it rains and stormwater controls are not used to control sediment runoff at construction sites; above - a construction crew lays permeable pavers that will help infiltrate stormwater and reduce the size of a centralized stormwater facility; a bioretention swale is used to infiltrate and filter stormwater from a city street and sidewalk; high visibility silt fencing prevents sediments for contaminating an existing stormwater pond and provides a barrier to limit construction activity (photo by Sheila Pendleton-Orme); an impervious containment area prevents pollution from coming into contact with stormwater (photo by Robert Wright); a stormwater wetpond has vegetation that filters pollutants, and check dams that create ponding to allow the settlement of sediments, and reduce the velocity of water.

Spine (top): oil from a parking lot drains to a catch basin and could flow into a stream or lake unless a stormwater treatment facility is provided (photo by Robert Wright); permeable pavement and permeable pavers help reduce the amount of stormwater runoff through infiltration and make a beautiful walkway (photo by Anne Dettelbach); a rain garden in a parking lot filters and infiltrates stormwater runoff.

To request ADA accommodation including materials in a format for the visually impaired, call Ecology's Water Quality Program Reception at 360-407-6600. Persons with impaired hearing may call Washington Relay Service at 711. Persons with speech disability may call TTY at 877-833-6341.

Volume I Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Volume II Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Volume III Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Volume IV Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Volume V Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume I
Minimum Technical Requirements
and Site Planning

Prepared by:
Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

December 2014
Publication No. 14-10-055
(A revision of Publication No. 12-10-030)

This page intentionally left blank.

Acknowledgments

The Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) gratefully acknowledges the valuable time, comments, and expertise provided by the people listed below who contributed to the 2012 revision of Vol. I of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW). The Washington State Department of Ecology is solely responsible for any errors, omissions, and final decisions related to the 2012 SWMMWW.

Name	**Affiliation**
Harriet Beale	Ecology, Water Quality
Cathy Beam	City of Redmond
Wayne Carlson	AHBL, Inc.
Art Castle	Kitsap County Homebuilders Association
Wally Costello	Quadrant Homes (retired)
Craig Doberstein	Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc.
Ross Dunning	Kennedy Jenks, Consulting
Jan Hasselman	Earthjustice
Patrick Harbison	Wallis Engineering
Curtis Hinman	Washington State University
Thomas W. Holz	Civil Engineer
Tom Hruby	Dept. of Ecology, SEA
Hans Hunger	Pierce County Public Works and Utilities
Debby Hyde	Pierce County Public Works and Utilities
DeeAnn Kirkpartick	National marine Fisheries Service
Curtis Koger	Associated Earth Sciences, Inc.
Alice Lancaster	Herrera Environmental Consultants
Larry Matel	City of Bremerton Public Works and Utilities
Rachel McCrea	Ecology, Water Quality, NWRO
Vince McGowan	Ecology, Water Quality, SWRO
Robert Nolan	Ecology, Water Quality, NWRO
John Palmer	U.S. EPA, Region 10
Doug Peters	Washington Dept. of Commerce
Harry Reinert	King County
Jodi Slavik	Building Industry Association of Washington
Al Schauer	MacKay & Sposito, Inc.
Tracy Tackett	Seattle Public Utilities
Dave Tucker	Kitsap County Public Works
Bruce Wishart	People for Puget Sound
Bruce Wulkan	Puget Sound Partnership

Department of Ecology Technical Lead

Ed O’Brien, P.E. – 2012 edit

Technical Review and Editing

Carrie A. Graul – 2012 edit
Julie Robertson – 2012 edit
Kelsey Highfill – 2012 edit

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Chapter 1 - Introduction

1.1 Objective

The objective of this manual is to provide guidance on the measures necessary to control the quantity and quality of stormwater produced by new development and redevelopment such that they comply with water quality standards and contribute to the protection of beneficial uses of the receiving waters. Application of appropriate minimum requirements and Best Management Practices (BMPs) identified in this manual are necessary but sometimes insufficient measures to achieve these objectives. (See Section 1.7, Effects of Urbanization).

Water quality standards include:

- Chapter 173-200 of the Washington Administrative Code (WAC), Water Quality Standards for Groundwaters of the State of Washington
- Chapter 173-201A WAC, Water Quality Standards for Surface Waters of the State of Washington
- Chapter 173-204 WAC, Sediment Management Standards

This manual identifies minimum requirements for development and redevelopment projects of all sizes and provides guidance concerning how to prepare and implement stormwater site plans. These requirements are, in turn, satisfied by the application of BMPs from Volumes II through V. Projects that follow this approach will apply reasonable, technology-based BMPs and water quality-based BMPs to reduce the adverse impacts of stormwater. This manual is applicable to all types of land development – including residential, commercial, industrial, and roads. Manuals with a more-specific focus, such as a Highway Runoff Manual, that have been determined to be equivalent to this manual, may provide more appropriate guidance to the intended audience.

Federal, state, and local permitting authorities with jurisdiction can require more stringent measures that are deemed necessary to meet locally established goals, state water quality standards, or other established natural resource or drainage objectives.

This manual can also help to identifying options for retrofitting BMPs in existing developments. Retrofitting stormwater BMPs into existing developed areas will be necessary in many cases to meet federal Clean Water Act and state Water Pollution Control Act (Chapter 90.48 RCW) requirements.

The Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) does not have guidance specifically for retrofit situations (not including redevelopment situations). Application of BMPs from this manual is encouraged.

However, there can be site constraints that make the strict application of these BMPs difficult.

1.2 Applicability to Western Washington

This stormwater manual applies to all of western Washington. This includes the area bounded on the south by the Columbia River, on the west by the Pacific Ocean, on the north by the Canadian border, and on the east by the Cascade Mountains crest. The manual also applies to those areas of Skamania and Cowlitz counties that lie east of the Cascade crest.

The Ecology stormwater manual was originally developed in response to a directive of the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan (PSWQA 1987 et. seq.). The Puget Sound Water Quality Authority (since replaced by the Puget Sound Partnership, PSP) recognized the need for overall guidance for stormwater quality improvement. It incorporated requirements in its plan to implement a cohesive, integrated stormwater management approach through the development and implementation of programs by local jurisdictions, and the development of rules, permits and guidance by Ecology.

The Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan included a stormwater element (SW-2.1) requiring Ecology to develop a stormwater technical manual for use by local jurisdictions. This manual was originally developed to meet this requirement. Ecology has found that the concepts developed for the Puget Sound Basin are applicable throughout western Washington.

Information describing how this manual relates to the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan (now the Puget Sound Action Agenda) is included in Section 1.6.4.

1.3 Organization of this Manual

1.3.1 Overview of Manual Content

To accomplish the objective described in Section 1.1, the manual includes the following:

- *Minimum Requirements* that cover a range of issues, such as preparation of Stormwater Site Plans, pollution prevention during the construction phase of a project, control of potential pollutant sources, treatment of runoff, control of stormwater flow volumes, protection of wetlands, and long-term operation and maintenance. The Minimum Requirements applicable to a project vary depending on the type and size of the proposed project.
- *Best Management Practices (BMPs)* that can be used to meet the minimum requirements. BMPs are schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, managerial practices, or

structural features that prevent or reduce pollutants or other adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. BMPs are divided into those for short-term control of stormwater from construction sites, and those addressing long-term management of stormwater at developed sites. Long-term BMPs are further subdivided into those covering management of the volume and timing of stormwater flows, prevention of pollution from potential sources, and treatment of runoff to remove sediment and other pollutants.

- *Guidance on how to prepare and implement Stormwater Site Plans*. The Stormwater Site Plan is a comprehensive report that describes existing site conditions, explains development plans, examines potential off-site effects, identifies applicable Minimum Requirements, and proposes stormwater controls for both the construction phase and long-term stormwater management. The project proponent submits the Stormwater Site Plan to state and local permitting authorities with jurisdiction, who use the plan to evaluate a proposed project for compliance with stormwater requirements.

1.3.2 Organization of this Manual

Volume I of this manual serves as an introduction and covers several key elements of developing the Stormwater Site Plan. The remaining volumes of this manual cover BMPs for specific aspects of stormwater management. Volumes II through V are organized as follows:

- Volume II covers BMPs for short-term stormwater management at construction sites.
- Volume III covers hydrologic analysis and BMPs to control flow volumes from developed sites.
- Volume IV addresses BMPs to minimize pollution generated by potential pollution sources at developed sites.
- Volume V presents BMPs to treat runoff that contains sediment or other pollutants from developed sites.

1.3.3 Organization of Volume I

Following this introduction, Volume I contains three additional chapters. Chapter 2 identifies the Minimum Requirements for stormwater management at all new development and redevelopment projects. Chapter 3 describes the Stormwater Site Plan, and provides step-by-step guidance on how to develop these plans. Chapter 4 describes the process for selecting BMPs for long-term management of stormwater flows and quality. Appendices are included to support these topics. Volume I also includes the Glossary for all five volumes of the stormwater manual.

1.4 How to Use this Manual

This manual has applications for a variety of users. Project proponents should start by reading Chapter 3 of Volume I. It explains how to complete stormwater site plans. Staff at all local governments and agencies with permitting jurisdiction may use this manual in reviewing Stormwater Site Plans, checking BMP designs, and providing technical advice to project proponents.

Other Federal, State, and local permits may refer to this manual or the BMPs contained in this manual. For example, the Industrial Stormwater General Permit and the Construction Stormwater General Permit refer to this manual. In those cases, affected permit-holders or applicants should use this manual for specific guidance on how to comply with those permit conditions.

1.5 Development of Best Management Practices for Stormwater Management

1.5.1 Best Management Practices (BMPs)

The method by which the manual controls the adverse impacts of development and redevelopment is through the application of Best Management Practices (BMP).

BMPs are defined as schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and structural and/or managerial practices, that when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the release of pollutants and other adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. The types of BMPs are source control, treatment, and flow control. BMPs that involve construction of engineered structures are often referred to as facilities in this manual. For instance, the BMPs referenced in the menus of Chapter 3 in Volume V are called treatment facilities.

The primary purpose of using BMPs is to protect beneficial uses of water resources through the reduction of pollutant loads and concentrations, through reduction of discharges (volumetric flow rates) causing stream channel erosion, and through reductions in deviations from natural hydrology. If it is found that, after the implementation of BMPs advocated in this manual, beneficial uses are still threatened or impaired, then additional controls may be required.

1.5.2 Source Control BMPs

Source control BMPs typically **prevent** pollution, or other adverse effects of stormwater, from occurring. Ecology further classifies source control BMPs as operational or structural. Examples of source control BMPs include methods as various as using mulches and covers on disturbed soil, putting roofs over outside storage areas, and berming areas to prevent stormwater run-on and pollutant runoff.

It is generally more cost-effective to use source controls to **prevent** pollutants from entering runoff, than to treat runoff to remove pollutants. However, since source controls cannot prevent all impacts, some combination of measures will always be needed.

1.5.3 Treatment BMPs

Treatment BMPs include facilities that remove pollutants by simple gravity settling of particulate pollutants, centrifugal separation, filtration, biological uptake, and media or soil adsorption. Treatment BMPs can accomplish significant levels of pollutant load reductions if properly designed and maintained.

1.5.4 Flow Control BMPs

Flow control BMPs typically control the volume rate, frequency, and flow duration of stormwater surface runoff. The need to provide flow control BMPs depends on whether a development site discharges to a stream system or wetland, either directly or indirectly. Stream channel erosion control can be accomplished by BMPs that detain runoff flows and also by those which physically stabilize eroding streambanks. Both types of measures may be necessary in urban watersheds. Only the former is covered in this manual.

Construction of a detention pond is the most common means of meeting flow control requirements. Construction of an infiltration facility is the preferred option but is feasible only where more porous soils are available.

The concept of detention is to collect runoff from a developed area and release it at a slower rate than it enters the collection system. The reduced release rate requires temporary storage of the excess amounts in a pond with release occurring over a few hours or days. The volume of storage needed is dependent on:

1. The size of the drainage area.
2. The extent of disturbance of the natural vegetation, topography, and soils and creation of effective impervious surfaces (surfaces that drain to a stormwater collection system).
3. How rapidly the water is allowed to leave the detention pond; i.e., the target release rates.

The 1992 Ecology manual focused primarily on controlling the peak flow release rates for recurrence intervals of concern – the 2, 10, and 100-year rates. This level of control did not adequately address the increased duration at which those high flows occur because of the increased volume of water from the developed condition as compared to the pre-developed conditions.

To protect stream channels from increased erosion, it is necessary to control the durations over which a stream channel experiences geomorphically significant flows such that the energy imparted to the stream channel does not increase significantly. Geomorphically significant flows are those that are capable of moving sediments. This target will translate into lower release rates and significantly larger detention ponds than the previous Ecology standard. The size of such a facility can be reduced by changing the extent to which a site is disturbed.

In regard to wetlands, the goal is to not alter the natural hydroperiod. This requires the control of input flows such that the wetland is within certain elevations at different times of the year and short-term elevation changes are within the desired limits. If the amount of surface water runoff draining to a wetland is increased because of land conversion from forested to impervious areas, it may be necessary to bypass some water around the wetland in the wet season. (Bypassed stormwater must still meet flow control and treatment requirements applicable to the receiving water.) If however, the wetland was fed by local ground water elevations during the dry season, the impervious surface additions and the bypassing practice may cause variations from the dry season elevations.

Because Ecology found it difficult to model water surface elevation changes, especially for riverine and slope wetlands, the new regulatory strategy is to simply try to match the pre-project surface and ground water inputs that drive the water surface elevations in wetlands. Estimates of what should be done to match inputs requires the use of a continuous runoff model. It remains to be seen whether the available continuous runoff models are sufficiently accurate to determine successful flow management strategies. Even if the modeling approaches are sufficient, it will be a challenge to simulate pre-project hydrology after significant development has occurred.

1.5.5 Construction Stormwater BMPs and On-site Stormwater Management BMPs

Construction stormwater BMPs can be source control, treatment, or flow control BMPs. Examples include stabilized construction entrances, silt fences, check dams, and sediment traps. Volume II contains construction stormwater BMPs.

On-site stormwater management BMPs can be either treatment or flow control BMPs. BMP’s in this category serve to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff on-site. Examples include bioretention, rain gardens, and permeable pavements in Chapter 5, of Volume V. Other examples include downspout infiltration, downspout dispersion, and perforated sub-out connections in Chapter 3, of Volume III.

1.6 Relationship of this Manual to Federal, State, and Local Regulatory Requirements

1.6.1 The Manual's Role as Technical Guidance

The *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* is not a regulation. The Manual does not have any independent regulatory authority and it does not establish new environmental regulatory requirements. Its "Requirements" and BMP's become required through:

- Ordinances and rules established by local governments; and
- Permits and other authorizations issued by local, state, and federal authorities.

Current law and regulations require the design, construction, operation and maintenance of stormwater systems that prevent pollution of State waters. The Manual is a guidance document which provides local governments, State and Federal agencies, developers and project proponents with a stormwater management strategy to apply at the project level. If this strategy is implemented correctly, in most cases it should result in compliance with existing regulatory requirements for stormwater – including compliance with the Federal Clean Water Act, Federal Safe Drinking Water Act and State Water Pollution Control Act.

The Manual provides generic, technical guidance on measures to control the quantity and quality of stormwater runoff from new development and redevelopment projects. These measures are considered to be necessary to achieve compliance with State water quality standards and to contribute to the protection of the beneficial uses of the receiving waters (both surface and ground waters). Stormwater management techniques applied in accordance with this Manual are presumed to meet the technology-based treatment requirement of State law to provide all known available and reasonable methods of treatment, prevention and control (AKART; RCW 90.52.040, and RCW 90.48.010).

This technology-based treatment requirement does not excuse any discharge from the obligation to apply additional stormwater management practices as necessary to comply with State water quality standards. The State water quality standards include: Chapter 173-200 WAC, Water Quality Standards for Ground Waters of the State of Washington; Chapter 173-201A WAC, Water Quality Standards for Surface Waters of the State of Washington; and Chapter 173-204 WAC, Sediment Management Standards.

Following this Manual is not the only way to properly manage stormwater runoff. A municipality may adopt, or a project proponent may choose to implement other methods to protect water quality; but in those cases, they assume the responsibility of providing technical justification that the chosen methods will protect water quality (see Section 1.6.3, Presumptive versus Demonstrative Approaches to Protecting Water Quality below).

1.6.2 More Stringent Measures and Retrofitting

Federal, State, and local government agencies with jurisdiction can require more stringent measures that are deemed necessary to meet locally established goals, State water quality standards, or other established natural resource or drainage objectives. Water cleanup plans or Total Maximum Daily Loads (TMDLs) may identify more stringent measures needed to restore water quality in an impaired water body.

This Manual is not a retrofit manual, but it can be helpful in identifying options for retrofitting BMPs to existing development. Retrofitting stormwater BMPs into existing developed areas may be necessary to meet federal Clean Water Act and state Water Pollution Control Act (Chapter 90.48 RCW) requirements. The Puget Sound Action Agenda, described in Section 1.6.4, also includes prioritizing and implementing stormwater retrofits as one objective. In retrofit situations there frequently are site constraints that make the strict application of these BMPs difficult. In these instances, the BMPs presented here can be modified using best professional judgment to provide reasonable improvements in stormwater management.

1.6.3 Presumptive versus Demonstrative Approaches to Protecting Water Quality

Wherever a discharge permit or other water-quality-based project approval is required, project proponents may be required to document the technical basis for the design criteria used to design their stormwater management BMPs. This includes: how stormwater BMPs were selected; the pollutant removal performance expected from the selected BMPs; the scientific basis, technical studies, and(or) modeling which supports the performance claims for the selected BMPs; and an assessment of how the selected BMP will comply with State water quality standards and satisfy State AKART requirements and Federal technology-based treatment requirements.

The Manual is intended to provide project proponents, regulatory agencies and others with technically sound stormwater management practices which are *presumed* to protect water quality and instream habitat – and meet the stated environmental objectives of the regulations described in this chapter. Project proponents always have the option of not following the stormwater management practices in this Manual. However, if a project proponent chooses not to follow the practices in the Manual then the project proponent may be required to individually *demonstrate* that the project will not adversely impact water quality by collecting and providing appropriate supporting data to show that the alternative approach is protective of water quality and satisfies State and federal water quality laws.

Figure 1.6.1 graphically depicts the relation between the *presumptive approach* (the use of this Manual) and the *demonstrative approach* for achieving the environmental objectives of the standards. Both the presumptive and demonstrative approaches are based on best available science and result from existing Federal and State laws that require stormwater treatment systems to be properly designed, constructed, maintained and operated to:

1. Prevent pollution of state waters and protect water quality, including compliance with state water quality standards.
2. Satisfy state requirements for all known available and reasonable methods of prevention, control and treatment (AKART) of wastes prior to discharge to waters of the State.
3. Satisfy the federal technology based treatment requirements under 40 CFR part 125.3.

Under the demonstration approach, the timeline and expectations for providing technical justification of stormwater management practices will depend on the complexity of the individual project and the nature of the receiving environment. In each case, the project proponent may be asked to document to the satisfaction of the permitting agency or other approval authority that the practices they have selected will result in compliance with the water quality protection requirements of the permit or other local, State, or Federal water-quality-based project approval condition. This approach may be more cost effective for large, complex or unusual types of projects.

Project proponents that choose to follow the stormwater management approaches contained in Ecology approved stormwater technical manuals are presumed to have satisfied this demonstration requirement and do not need to provide technical justification to support the selection of BMPs for the project. Following the stormwater management practices in this Manual means adhering to the guidance provided for proper selection, design, construction, implementation, operation and maintenance of BMPs. Approved stormwater technical manuals include this Manual and other equivalent stormwater management guidance documents approved by Ecology. This approach will generally be more cost effective for typical development and redevelopment projects.

Ecology lists approved equivalent stormwater management manuals this website: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/municipal/Phase1equivalentstormwatermanualsWestern.html.

The following sub-sections will explain the relationship of the manual to various programs, permits, and planning efforts.

Both the presumptive and demonstrative approaches are based on using best available science to protect water quality. See the glossary for definitions.

STANDARDS

Water Pollution Control Act

(Chapter 90.48 RCW)

Discharges to state waters shall not cause pollution, which is defined as an alteration of the physical, chemical or biological properties of State waters which would impair beneficial uses. Requires the use of AKART and BMPs approved by Ecology.

Federal Clean Water Act

Restore and maintain the chemical, physical, and biological integrity of the Nation's waters.

- State water quality standards (water-quality based treatment requirements)
- Federal technology-based treatment requirements
- NPDES permits
- 303(d) impaired water body list and water clean-up plans

Others

Endangered Species Act

- Properly functioning conditions

Hydraulics Code (HPA)

Safe Drinking Water Act (UIC)

Presumptive Approach

The Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington provides a default set of stormwater practices based on current science which satisfy State and Federal stormwater requirements.

Considerations:

- More predictable, practices are approved across jurisdictions
- Costly studies, etc. are not required as they may be under the demonstration approach

Demonstrative Approach

Project sponsor and approval agency individually review and condition proposed projects to meet federal and state stormwater standards based on current science.

Considerations:

- Lacks predictability and can be very time consuming
- For large, complex projects may reduce costs and/or improve environmental protection

Hydrology

- When native vegetation is removed and replaced with impervious surfaces (roads or buildings) there is an increase in stormwater runoff and other drastic alterations to the natural hydrology.
- Increased flows lead to increased flooding and stream bank and stream bed erosion.
- Unless mitigated, adverse high flow impacts occur at even low levels of urban development: 4% to 10% total impervious area.
- Transportation infrastructure (including parking areas) represents between 50% and 75% of the impervious surface area within any single watershed.

Water Quality

- More than a third of the State's urban streams, creeks, and embayments are impaired due to stormwater runoff.
- Stormwater runoff from construction activities can contain large amounts of sediments and suspended solids which are harmful to fish and other aquatic life.
- Untreated stormwater from roads and urban areas can adversely impact water quality due to sediments, toxic metals, pesticides, herbicides, oils and greases, and possible human pathogens including fecal coliform bacteria.
- Untreated stormwater runoff from roads and urban areas can be toxic to aquatic life including fish.

SCIENCE

Figure 1.6.1 - Relation between environmental science and standards in stormwater regulations.

1.6.4 The Puget Sound Action Agenda

The Puget Sound Partnership's 2014/2015 Action Agenda lays out the work needed to protect and restore Puget Sound into the future. It is intended to drive investment and action. The Plan identifies three strategic initiatives to help prioritize near-term actions. "Prevention of pollution from urban stormwater runoff" is one of the strategic initiatives.

The Plan includes 29 strategies to achieve recovery targets, 106 sub-strategies to provide a narrower focus for the strategies and to develop near-term actions. The plan identifies about 150 regional and 150 local near-term actions. The strategy most aligned with this manual is to "Prevent, reduce, and control the sources of contaminants entering Puget Sound." Within that strategy, the sub-strategies and the near-term actions under these sub-strategies in which Ecology is identified as the "owner" of the action follows:

Sub-Strategy: Prevent problems from new development at the site and subdivision scale.

- NPDES Permits: Ecology will issue municipal stormwater permits for western Washington and provide financial assistance to permittees for implementation, particularly for code changes, stormwater system mapping, operations and maintenance, inspections and enforcement. This will require additional resources to Ecology for permit oversight, technical assistance, and enforcement. Ecology will provide incentives to NPDES permittees who, by interlocal agreement, lead or carry out regional or watershed scale NPDES implementation
- Stormwater Treatment Standards**:** Ecology will evaluate under which circumstances (i.e., for which pollutants, from which land uses) discharges to Puget Sound should be required to provide treatment beyond sediment removal (i.e., TSS removal) to help meet 2020 recovery targets.
- Stormwater management outside permitted areas: Ecology, in coordination with DOH, will identify two high priority shellfish growing areas degraded by urban stormwater discharges and work with local governments and other key parties to reduce these impacts to the areas.
- New development under earlier stormwater programs**:** Ecology will initiate a process to assess projected implications and impacts of current state law concerning the level of stormwater control from new development approved under earlier stormwater programs.

Sub-Strategy: Control Sources of Pollutants

- Compliance assurance program: Ecology and local governments will increase inspection, technical assistance, and enforcement programs for high-priority businesses and at construction sites.

Sub-Strategy: Provide focused stormwater-related education, training, and assistance.

- Low Impact Development training and certification: Ecology will provide focused training for local government staff on Low Impact Development project review, and inspections and approvals, as well as to local government staff and private sector on maintenance. Develop new professional certification for stormwater maintenance specialists. Provide business staff and contractors with training on source control, spill recognition, spill response, and erosion control.

The Action Agenda includes many other stormwater-related sub-strategies and near-term actions. The Action Agenda is available at the Puget Sound Partnership website.

1.6.5 Phase I - NPDES and State Waste Discharge Stormwater Permits for Municipalities

Certain municipalities and other entities are subject to permitting under the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Phase I Stormwater Regulations (40 CFR Part 122). In Western Washington, Ecology has issued joint NPDES and State Waste Discharge permits to regulate the discharges of stormwater from the municipal separate storm sewer systems operated by the following cities and counties:

- Clark County
- King County
- Pierce County
- Snohomish County
- City of Seattle
- City of Tacoma

The Washington Department of Transportation is also a Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permittee for its stormwater discharges within the jurisdictions of the above cities and counties.

These Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permittees must refer to Appendix 1 of their permit rather than relying on Chapter 2 of this volume to find the minimum requirements, thresholds, and definitions that their jurisdiction either must implement, or must adopt equivalent measures as determined by Ecology. The permits also direct these permittees to require site planning processes and BMP selection and design criteria from this manual, or an Ecology-approved equivalent manual. Municipal permittees which want to deviate from the site planning process and BMP selection and design criteria in this manual must demonstrate that their alternative will protect water quality, meet the federal statutory requirement to reduce pollutants to the maximum extent practicable (MEP), and satisfy the state requirement to apply all known, available, and reasonable methods of pollution control.

1.6.6 Phase II - NPDES and State Waste Discharge Stormwater Permits for Municipalities

The EPA adopted Phase II stormwater regulations in December 1999. Those rules identify additional municipalities as subject to NPDES municipal stormwater permitting requirements. Over 100 municipalities in Washington are subject to the requirements.

Ecology first issued a Western Washington Phase II Municipal Stormwater Permit in 2007. These Phase II Municipal Stormwater Permittees must refer to Appendix 1 of their permit rather than relying on Chapter 2 of this volume to find the minimum requirements, thresholds, and definitions that their jurisdiction either must implement, or must adopt equivalent measures approved by Ecology for a Phase II permittee. The permits also directs these permittees to require site planning processes and BMP selection and design criteria from this manual, or an Ecology approved equivalent manual. Municipal permittees which want to deviate from the site planning process and BMP selection and design criteria in this manual must demonstrate that their alternative will protect water quality, meet the federal statutory requirement to reduce pollutants to the maximum extent practicable (MEP), and satisfy the state requirement to apply all known, available, and reasonable methods of pollution control.

1.6.7 Municipalities Not Subject to the NPDES Stormwater Municipal Permits

Municipalities not subject to NPDES stormwater permits for municipalities are encouraged to adopt stormwater programs. This would include adoption of ordinances, minimum requirements, and BMPs equivalent to those in this manual. Any municipalities in areas where urban stormwater has been identified as a limiting factor to salmon recovery should have an equivalent stormwater manual. The *Salmon Habitat Limiting Factors Reports* available at the Washington State Conservation Commission's website provide information on these areas: http://www.scc.wa.gov/index.php/174-Salmon-Habitat-Limiting-Factors-Reports/View-category/Page-6.html.

1.6.8 Industrial Stormwater General Permit

Facilities covered under Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit (i.e., NPDES and State Waste Discharge General Permit for Stormwater Discharges Associated With Industrial Activities) must manage stormwater in accordance with specific terms and conditions including: the development and implementation of an Industrial Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (Industrial SWPPP), monitoring, reporting, and ongoing adaptive management based on sampling and inspections.

The Industrial Stormwater General Permit (ISGP) requires Industrial SWPPPs to include certain mandatory Best Management Practices (BMPs), including those BMPs identified as "applicable" to specific industrial activities in Volume IV and V of the this manual. Facilities with new development or redevelopment must evaluate whether flow control BMPs are necessary. BMPs must be consistent with this manual, or other stormwater management guidance documents that are approved by Ecology and incorporated into the ISGP. Facilities may also use alternative BMPs if their Industrial SWPPP includes documentation that the BMPs selected are demonstrably equivalent to practices contained in stormwater technical manuals approved by Ecology, including the proper selection, implementation, and maintenance of all applicable and appropriate best management practices for on-site pollution control.

Ecology's Industrial Stormwater Webpage has a fill-in-the-blank Industrial SWPPP template for use by industrial facilities.

ISGP facilities are required to update their Industrial SWPPPs and perform corrective actions if stormwater monitoring results exceed "benchmark" or indicator values. Facilities that trigger corrective actions under the ISGP, or otherwise need to update their SWPPP, should consider:

1) "Recommended" operational and structural source control BMPs listed in Volume IV.
2) Treatment BMPs listed in Volume V.
3) Erosion and sediment control BMPs listed in Volume II (e.g., if turbidity, sediment, or associated pollutants need to be addressed).
4) Treatment BMPs that have been evaluated through Ecology's TAPE or C-TAPE program.
5) BMPs that are "demonstrably equivalent", as defined by the ISGP.

1.6.9 Construction Stormwater General Permit

Coverage under the CSWGP is generally required for any clearing, grading, or excavating if the project site discharges:

- Stormwater from the site into surface water(s) State, or
- Into storm drainage systems that discharge to a surface water(s) of the State.

And

- Disturbs one or more acres of land area, or
- Disturb less than one acre of land area, if the project or activity is part of a larger common plan of development or sale.

Any construction activity discharging stormwater that Ecology and/or the local permitting authority determines to be a significant contributor of pollutants to waters of the State may also require permit coverage, regardless of project size, at the discretion of the agency.

The permit requires application of stabilization and structural practices to reduce the potential for erosion and the discharge of sediments from the site. The stabilization and structural practices cited in the permit are similar to the minimum requirements for sedimentation and erosion control in Volume I of the SWMM.

The permit also requires construction sites within Western Washington to implement stormwater BMPs contained in stormwater management manuals published or approved by Ecology, or BMPs that are demonstrably equivalent. Volume II of this manual further describes the requirements and BMPs appropriate for managing construction site stormwater.

1.6.10 Endangered Species Act

With the listing of multiple species of salmon as threatened or endangered across much of Washington State, and the probability of more listings in the future, implementation of the requirements of the Endangered Species Act impacts urban stormwater management. Provisions of the Endangered Species Act can apply to stormwater management include the Section 4(d) rules, Section 7 consultations, and Section 10 Habitat Conservation Plans (HCP).

Under Section 4(d) of the statute, the federal government issues regulations to provide for the conservation of the species. A 4(d) rule may require new development and redevelopment to comply with specific requirements.

Under Section 7 of the statute, all federal agencies must insure that any action they authorize, fund, or carry out is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any endangered or threatened species (or a species proposed for listing), nor result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat. The responsibility for initially determining whether jeopardy is likely to occur rests with the "action" agency. If an action "may affect" a listed species, the "action" agency must consult with National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Fisheries Service (NOAA Fisheries), or the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) depending on the species involved, to determine whether jeopardy is likely to occur.

Where NOAA Fisheries or USFWS believes that jeopardy would result, it must specify reasonable and prudent alternatives to the action that would avoid jeopardy if any such alternatives are available. If the "action" agency rejects these, the action cannot proceed.

Under Section 10 of the ESA, through voluntary agreements with the federal government that provide protections to an endangered species, a non-federal applicant may commit an "incidental take" of individuals of that species as long as it is incidental to an otherwise lawful activity (such as developing land or building a road). This provision of the ESA may help resolve conflicts between development pressures and endangered species protection. A "Habitat Conservation Plan" (HCP) is an example of this type of agreement. Under an HCP, the applicant's plan must:

- Outline the impact that will likely result from the taking;
- List steps the applicant will take to minimize and mitigate such impacts, and funding available to implement such steps; and
- Include alternative actions the applicant considered and reasons alternative acts are not being used.

The federal government may grant a permit if it finds that the taking will be incidental; the applicant will minimize and mitigate impacts of taking; and the applicant will ensure that adequate funding for the conservation plan will be provided. The USFWS and NOAA Fisheries may require additional measures as necessary or appropriate for purposes of the plan.

1.6.11 Section 401 Water Quality Certifications

For projects that require a fill or dredge permit under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act, Ecology must certify to the permitting agency, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, that the proposed project will not violate water quality standards. In order to make such a determination, Ecology may do a more specific review of the potential impacts of a stormwater discharge from the construction phase of the project and from the completed project. As a result of that review, Ecology may condition its certification to require:

- Application of the minimum requirements and BMPs in this manual; or
- Application of more stringent requirements.

1.6.12 Hydraulic Project Approvals (HPAs)

Under Chapter 77.55 RCW, the Hydraulics Act, the Washington State Department of Fish and Wildlife has the authority to require actions when stormwater discharges related to a project would change the natural flow or bed of state waters. The implementing mechanism is the issuance of a

Hydraulics Project Approval (HPA) permit. In exercising this authority, Fish and Wildlife may require:

- Compliance with the provisions of this manual; or
- Application of more stringent requirements that they determine are necessary to meet their statutory obligations to protect fish and wildlife.

1.6.13 Aquatic Lands Use Authorizations

The Department of Natural Resources (DNR), as the steward of public aquatic lands, may require a stormwater outfall to have a valid use authorization, and to avoid or mitigate resource impacts. Through its use authorizations, which are issued under authority of Chapter 79.105-79.140 RCW, and in accordance with Chapter 332-30 WAC, DNR may require:

- Compliance with the provisions of this manual; or
- Application of more stringent requirements that they determine are necessary to meet their statutory obligations to protect the quality of the state's aquatic lands.

1.6.14 Requirements Identified through Watershed/Basin Planning or Total Maximum Daily Loads

A number of the requirements of this manual can be superseded by the adoption of ordinances and rules to implement the recommendations of watershed plans or basin plans. Local governments may initiate their own watershed/ basin planning processes to identify more stringent or alternative requirements. They may also choose to develop a watershed plan in accordance with the Watershed Management Act (Chapter 90.82 RCW) that includes the optional elements of water quality and habitat. As long as the actions or requirements identified in those plans and implemented through local or state ordinances or rules comply with applicable state and federal statutes (e.g., the federal Clean Water Act and the Endangered Species Act), they can supersede the requirements in this manual. The decisions concerning whether such locally derived requirements comply with federal and state statutes rest with the regulatory agencies responsible for implementing those statutes.

A requirement of this manual can also be superseded or added to through the adoption of actions and requirements identified in a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) that is approved by the EPA. However, it is likely that at least some TMDLs will require use of the BMPs in this manual.

1.6.15 Underground Injection Control Authorizations

To implement provisions of the federal Safe Drinking Water Act (see Federal UIC regulations, 40 CFR, Part 144), Ecology has adopted rules

(Chapter 173-218 WAC) for an underground injection control (UIC) program. For more information visit Ecology's home page for the UIC program at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/grndwtr/uic/ and "Guidance for UIC Wells that Manage Stormwater" at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/pubs/0510067.pdf.

According to WAC 173-218-030 UIC well is defined as "a well that is used to discharge fluids into the subsurface. A UIC well is one of the following: (1) A bored, drilled or driven shaft, or dug hole whose depth is greater than the largest surface dimension; (2) An improved sinkhole; or (3) A subsurface fluid distribution system (contains perforated pipe or similar structure)."

Depending upon the manner in which it is accomplished, the discharge of stormwater into the ground can be classified as a Class V injection well. For more information and for a listing on potential stormwater facilities that may have Class V classification refer to the memorandum available at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/municipal/resources/EPAmemoinfiltrationclassvwells.pdf.

1.6.16 Other Local Government Requirements

Local governments have the option of applying more stringent requirements than those in this manual. They are not required to base those more stringent requirements on a watershed/basin plan or their obligations under a TMDL. Project proponents should always check with the local governmental agency with jurisdiction to determine the stormwater requirements that apply to their project.

1.7 Effects of Urbanization

1.7.1 Background Conditions

Prior to the Euro-American settlement, western Washington primarily was forested in alder, maple, fir, hemlock and cedar. The area's bountiful rainfall supported the forest and the many creeks, springs, ponds, lakes and wetlands. The forest system provided protection by intercepting rainfall in the canopy, reducing the possibility of erosion and the deposition of sediment in waterways. The trees and other vegetative cover evapotranspirated at least 40% of the rainfall. The forest duff layer absorbed large amounts of runoff releasing it slowly to the streams through shallow ground water flow.

1.7.2 Hydrologic Changes

As settlement occurs and the population grows, trees are logged and land is cleared for the addition of impervious surfaces such as rooftops, roads, parking lots, and sidewalks. Maintained landscapes that have much higher runoff characteristics typically replace the natural vegetation. The natural soil structure is also lost due to grading and compaction during construction. Roads are cut through slopes and low spots are filled. Drainage patterns are irrevocably altered. All of this results in drastic changes in the natural hydrology, including:

- Increased volumetric flow rates of runoff
- Increased volume of runoff
- Decreased time for runoff to reach a natural receiving water
- Reduced ground water recharge
- Increased frequency and duration of high stream flows and wetlands inundation during and after wet weather
- Reduced stream flows and wetlands water levels during the dry season
- Greater stream velocities

Figure 1.7.1 illustrates some of these hydrologic changes. As a consequence of these hydrology changes, stream channels are eroded by high flows and can lose summertime base flows. Increased flooding occurs. Streams lose their hydraulic complexity. Habitat is degraded and receiving water species composition is altered as explained below.

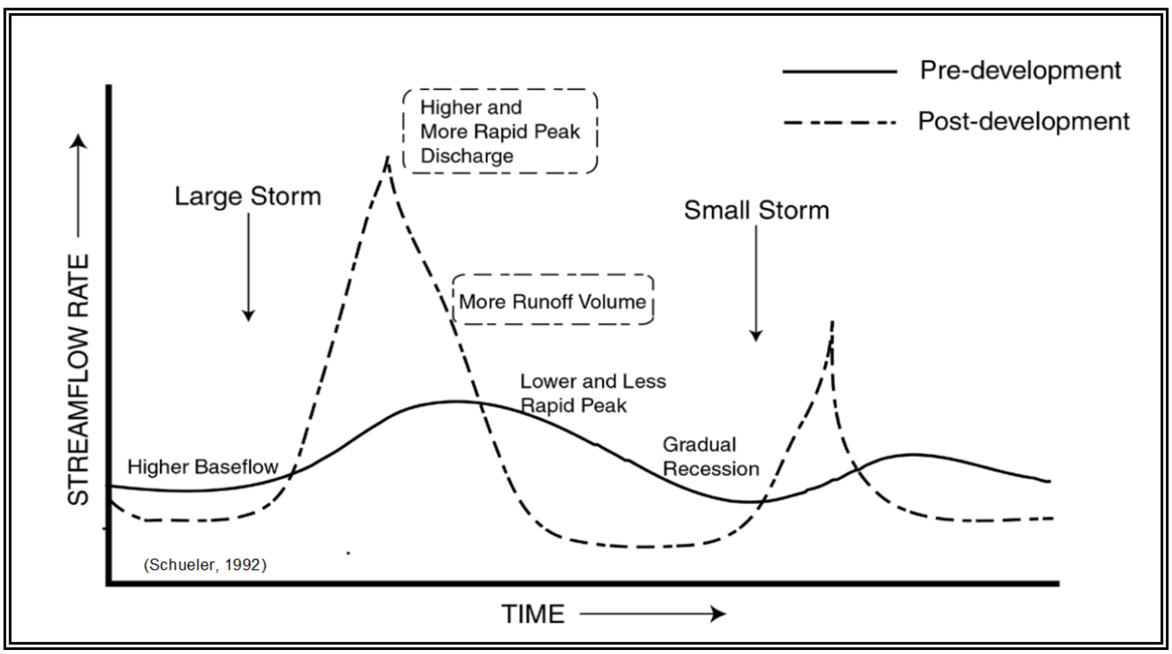


Figure 1.7.1 – Changes in Hydrology after Development

Figure 1.7.2 (Booth and Jackson, 1997) illustrates one observed relationship between the level of development in a basin (as measured by effective, not total, impervious area), the changes in the recurrence of modeled stream flows, and the resultant streambank instability and channel erosion. These data show that even a crude measure of stream degradation, “channel instability,” shows significant changes at relatively low levels of urban development. More sensitive measures, such as biological indicators (see Section 1.7.4), document degradation at even lower levels of human activity.

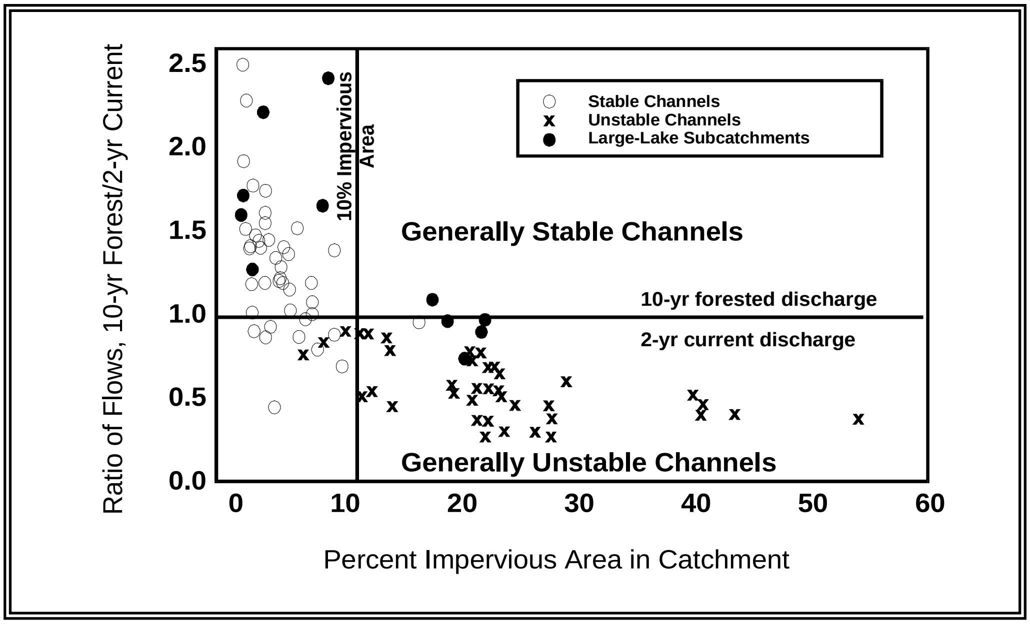


Figure 1.7.2 - Channel Stability and Land Use: Hylebos, East Lake Sammamish, Issaquah Basins

1.7.3 Water Quality Changes

Urbanization also causes an increase in the types and quantities of pollutants in surface and ground waters. Runoff from urban areas has been shown to contain many different types of pollutants, depending on the nature of the activities in those areas. Table 1.7.1, from an analysis of Oregon urban runoff water quality monitoring data collected from 1990 to 1996, shows mean concentrations for a limited number of pollutants from different land uses. (Strecker et al., 1997)

Table 1.7.1 Mean Concentrations of Selected Pollutants in Runoff from Different Land Uses

Land Use	TSS mg/l	Total Cu mg/l	Total Zn mg/l	Dissolved Cu mg/l	Total P mg/l
In-pipe Industry	194	0.053	0.629	0.009	0.633
Instream Industry	102	0.024	0.274	0.007	0.509
Transportation	169	0.035	0.236	0.008	0.376
Commercial	92	0.032	0.168	0.009	0.391
Residential	64	0.014	0.108	0.006	0.365
Open	58	0.004	0.025	0.004	0.166

Note: In-pipe industry means the samples were taken in stormwater pipes. Instream industry means the samples were taken in streams flowing through industrial areas. Samples for all other categories were taken within stormwater pipes.

The runoff from roads and highways is contaminated with pollutants from vehicles. Oil and grease, polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH's), lead, zinc, copper, cadmium, as well as sediments (soil particles) and road salts are typical pollutants in road runoff. Runoff from industrial areas typically contains even more types of heavy metals, sediments, and a broad range of man-made organic pollutants, including phthalates, PAH's, and other petroleum hydrocarbons. Residential areas contribute the same road-based pollutants to runoff, as well as herbicides, pesticides, nutrients (from fertilizers), bacteria and viruses (from animal waste). All of these contaminants can seriously impair beneficial uses of receiving waters.

Regardless of the eventual land use conversion, the sediment load produced by a construction site can turn the receiving waters turbid and be deposited over the natural sediments of the receiving water.

The pollutants added by urbanization can be dissolved in the water column or can be attached to particulates that settle in streambeds, lakes, wetlands, or marine estuaries. A number of urban bays in Puget Sound have contaminated sediments due to pollutants associated with particulates in stormwater runoff.

Urbanization also tends to cause changes in water temperature. Heated stormwater from impervious surfaces and exposed treatment and detention ponds discharges to streams with less riparian vegetation for shade. Urbanization also reduces ground water recharge, which reduces sources of cool ground water inputs to streams. In winter, stream temperatures may lower due to loss of riparian cover. There is also concern that the replacement of warmer ground water inputs with colder surface runoff during colder periods may have biological impacts.

1.7.4 Biological Changes

The hydrologic and water quality changes result in changes to the biological systems that were supported by the natural hydrologic system. In particular, aquatic life is greatly affected by urbanization. Habitats are drastically altered when a stream changes its physical configuration and substrate due to increased flows. Natural riffles, pools, gravel bars and other areas are altered or destroyed. These and other alterations produce a habitat structure that is very different from the one in which the resident aquatic life evolved. For example, spawning areas, particularly those of salmonids, are lost. Fine sediments imbed stream gravels and suffocate salmon redds. The complex food web is destroyed and is replaced by a biological system that can tolerate the changes. However, that biological community is typically not as complex, is less desirable, and is unstable due to the ongoing rapid changes in the new hydrologic regime.

Significant and detectable changes in the biological community of Puget Sound lowland streams begin early in the urbanization process. May *et al.* (1997) reported changes in the 5-10% total impervious area range of a watershed. Figure 1.7.3 from May et al. (1997) shows the relationship observed between the Benthic Index of Biotic Integrity (B-IBI) developed by Kleindl (1995) and Karr (1991), and the extent of watershed urbanization as estimated by the percentage of total impervious area (% TIA). Also shown in the figure is the correlation between the abundance ratio of juvenile coho salmon to cutthroat trout (Lucchetti and Fuerstenberg 1993) and the extent of urbanization.

The biological communities in wetlands are also severely impacted and altered by the hydrological changes. Relatively small changes in the natural water elevation fluctuations can cause dramatic shifts in vegetative and animal species composition.

In addition, the toxic pollutants in the water column such as pesticides, soaps, and metals can have immediate and long-term lethal impacts. Toxic pollutants in sediments can yield similar impacts with the lesions and cancers in bottom fish of urban bays serving as a prime example.

A rise in water temperature can have direct lethal effects. It reduces the maximum available dissolved oxygen and may cause algae blooms that further reduce the amount of dissolved oxygen in the water.

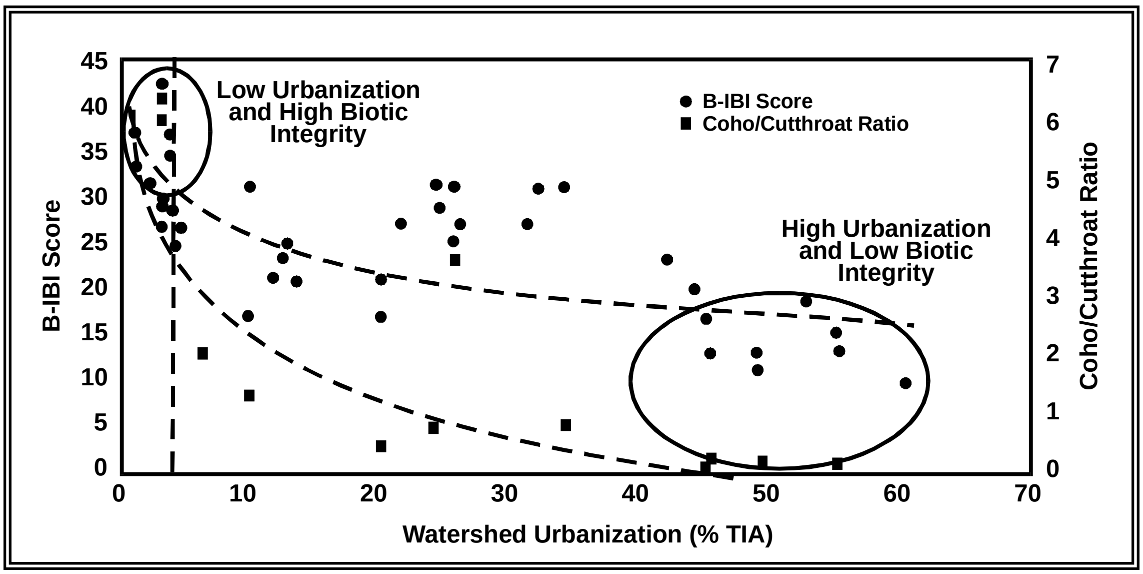


Figure 1.7.3 – Relationship between Basin Development and Biotic Integrity in Puget Sound Lowland Streams

1.7.5 The Role of Land Use and Lifestyles

The manual's scope is limited to managing the surface runoff generated by a new development or redevelopment project. The manual does not intend to delve deeply into site development standards or where development should be allowed. Those are land use decisions that should not be directed by this stormwater manual. The manual applies after the decision to develop a site has been made. The manual can provide site development strategies to reduce the pollutants generated and the hydrologic disruptions caused by development.

The engineered stormwater conveyance, treatment, and detention systems advocated by this and other stormwater manuals can reduce the impacts of development to water quality and hydrology. But they cannot replicate the natural hydrologic functions of the natural watershed that existed before development, nor can they remove sufficient pollutants to replicate the water quality of pre-development conditions. Ecology understands that despite the application of appropriate practices and technologies identified in this manual, some degradation of urban and suburban receiving waters will continue, and some beneficial uses will continue to be impaired or lost due to new development. This is because land development, as practiced today, is incompatible with the achievement of sustainable ecosystems. Unless development methods are adopted that cause significantly less disruption of the hydrologic cycle, the cycle of new development followed by beneficial use impairments will continue.

In recent years, researchers (May et al., 1997) and regulators (e.g., Issaquah Creek Basin and Nonpoint Action Plan, 1996) have speculated on the amount of natural land cover and soils that should be preserved in a watershed to retain sufficient hydrologic conditions to prevent stream channel degradation, maintain base flows, and contribute to achieving properly functioning conditions for salmonids. There is some agreement that preserving a high percentage (possibly 65 to 75%) of the land cover and soils in an undisturbed state is necessary. To achieve these high percentages in urban, urbanizing, and suburban watersheds, a dramatic reduction is necessary in the amount of impervious surfaces and artificially landscaped areas to accommodate our preferred housing, play, and work environments, and most significantly, our transportation choices.

Surfaces created to provide “car habitat” comprise the greatest portion of impervious areas in land development. Therefore, to make appreciable progress in reducing impervious surfaces in a watershed, we must reduce the density of our road systems, alter our road construction standards, reduce surface parking, and rely more on transportation systems that do not require such extensive impervious surfaces (rail, bicycles, walking).

Reducing the extent of impervious surfaces and increasing natural land cover in watersheds are also necessary to solve the water quality problems of sediment, temperature, toxicants, and bacteria. Changing public attitudes toward chemical use and preferred housing are also necessary to achieve healthy water ecosystems.

Until we are successful in applying land development techniques that result in matching the natural hydrologic functions and cycles of watersheds, management of the increased surface runoff is necessary to reduce the impact of the changes. Figure 1.7.3 illustrates that significant biological impacts in streams can occur at even low levels of development associated with rural areas where stormwater runoff has not been properly managed. Improving our stormwater detention, treatment, and source control management practices should help reduce the impacts of land development in urban and rural areas. We must also improve the operation and maintenance of our engineered systems so that they function as well as possible. This manual is Ecology’s latest effort to apply updated knowledge in these areas.

The question yet to be answered is whether better management – including improved treatment and detention techniques – of the increased surface runoff from developed areas can work in combination with preservation of high percentages of natural vegetation and soils on a watershed scale to yield a minimally altered hydrologic and water quality regime that protects the water-related natural resources.

In summary, implementing improved engineering techniques and drastic changes in where and how land is developed and how people live and move across the land are necessary to achieve the goals in the federal Clean Water Act - to preserve, maintain, and restore the beneficial uses of our nation’s waters.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 2 - Minimum Requirements for New Development and Redevelopment

This chapter identifies the nine Minimum Requirements for stormwater management applicable to new development and redevelopment sites. The Minimum Requirements are:

1. Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans
2. Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention
3. Source Control of Pollution
4. Preservation of Natural Drainage Systems and Outfalls
5. On-site Stormwater Management
6. Runoff Treatment
7. Flow Control
8. Wetlands Protection
9. Operation and Maintenance

Depending on the type and size of the proposed project, different combinations of these minimum requirements apply. In general, small sites are required to control erosion and sedimentation from construction activities and to apply simpler approaches to treatment and flow control of stormwater runoff from the developed site. Controlling flows from small sites is important because the cumulative effect of uncontrolled flows from many small sites can be as damaging as those from a single large site.

Large sites must provide erosion and sedimentation control during construction, permanent control of stormwater runoff from the developed site through selection of appropriate BMPs and facilities, and other measures to reduce and control the on-site and off-site impacts of the project. Sites being redeveloped must generally meet the same minimum requirements as new development for the new hard surfaces and pervious surfaces converted to lawn or landscaped areas. Redevelopment sites must also provide erosion control, source control, and on-site stormwater management for the portion of the site being redeveloped. In addition, if the redevelopment meets certain cost or space (as applied to roads) thresholds, updated stormwater management for the redeveloped pervious and hard surfaces must be provided. There may also be situations in which additional controls are required for sites, regardless of type or size, as a result of basin plans or special water quality concerns.

Development sites are to demonstrate compliance with these requirements through the preparation of Stormwater Site Plans (SSP). The plans are described in detail in Chapter 3. Two major components of these plans are a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and a

Permanent Stormwater Control Plan (PSCP). The Construction SWPPP shall identify how the project intends to control pollution generated during the construction phase only, primarily erosion and sediment. The PSCP shall identify how the project intends to provide permanent BMPs for the control of pollution from stormwater runoff after construction has been completed. Sites must submit these plans for review by the local government if they add or replace 2,000 square feet or more of hard surface, or disturb 7,000 square feet or more of land.

Section 2.4 provides additional information on applicability of the Minimum Requirements to different types of sites.

2.1 Relationship to Municipal Stormwater Permits

Municipalities covered under the Phase I or Western Washington Phase II NPDES and State Waste Discharge Municipal Stormwater Permits should use Appendix 1 of those permits rather than the bold font statements of this chapter for determining their compliance requirements.

The State recommends that local governments not covered under the Phase I or Western Washington Phase II Municipal Stormwater Permits should adopt and use the bold font statements of the thresholds, definitions, minimum requirements, adjustment, and variance sections in this chapter. Use of the two optional guidance statements is also advisable. The statements in the supplemental guidance sections are for background, clarification, and implementation guidance.

2.2 Exemptions

Unless otherwise indicated in this Section, the practices described in this section are exempt from the Minimum Requirements, even if such practices meet the definition of new development or redevelopment.

Forest practices:

Forest practices regulated under Title 222 WAC, except for Class IV General forest practices that are conversions from timber land to other uses, are exempt from the provisions of the minimum requirements.

Commercial agriculture:

Commercial agriculture practices involving working the land for production are generally exempt. However, the conversion from timberland to agriculture, and the construction of impervious surfaces are not exempt.

Pavement Maintenance:

The following pavement maintenance practices are exempt: pothole and square cut patching, overlaying existing asphalt or concrete pavement with asphalt or concrete without expanding the area of coverage, shoulder grading, reshaping/regrading drainage systems, crack sealing, resurfacing with in-kind material without expanding the road prism, pavement preservation activities that do not expand the road prism, and vegetation maintenance.

The following pavement maintenance practices are not categorically exempt. The extent to which the manual applies is explained for each circumstance.

- Removing and replacing a paved surface to base course or lower, or repairing the pavement base: If impervious surfaces are not expanded, Minimum Requirements #1 - #5 apply.
- Extending the pavement edge without increasing the size of the road prism, or paving graveled shoulders: These are considered new impervious surfaces and are subject to the minimum requirements that are triggered when the thresholds identified for new or redevelopment projects are met.
- Resurfacing by upgrading from dirt to gravel, asphalt, or concrete; upgrading from gravel to asphalt, or concrete; or upgrading from a bituminous surface treatment ("chip seal") to asphalt or concrete: These are considered new impervious surfaces and are subject to the minimum requirements that are triggered when the thresholds identified for new or redevelopment projects are met.

Underground utility projects:

Underground utility projects that replace the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics are only subject to Minimum Requirement #2, Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention.

2.3 Definitions Related to Minimum Requirements

Terms that Ecology presented in this section of previous versions of the manual have been moved to the glossary. Refer to the Glossary in Appendix G of this volume for definitions of terms used throughout this manual.

2.4 Applicability of the Minimum Requirements

Not all of the Minimum Requirements apply to every development or redevelopment project. The applicability varies depending on the project type and size. This section identifies thresholds that determine the applicability of the Minimum Requirements to different projects. Use the flow charts in Figures 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 to determine which of the Minimum Requirements apply. The Minimum Requirements themselves are presented in Section 2.5.

Use the thresholds in Figures 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 at the time of application for a subdivision, plat, short plat, building permit, or other construction permit. The plat or short plat approval shall identify all stormwater BMPs that are required for each lot. For projects involving only land disturbing activities, (e.g., clearing or grading), the thresholds apply at the time of application for the permit allowing or authorizing that activity. Note the exemption in Section 2.2 for forest practices other than Class IV General.

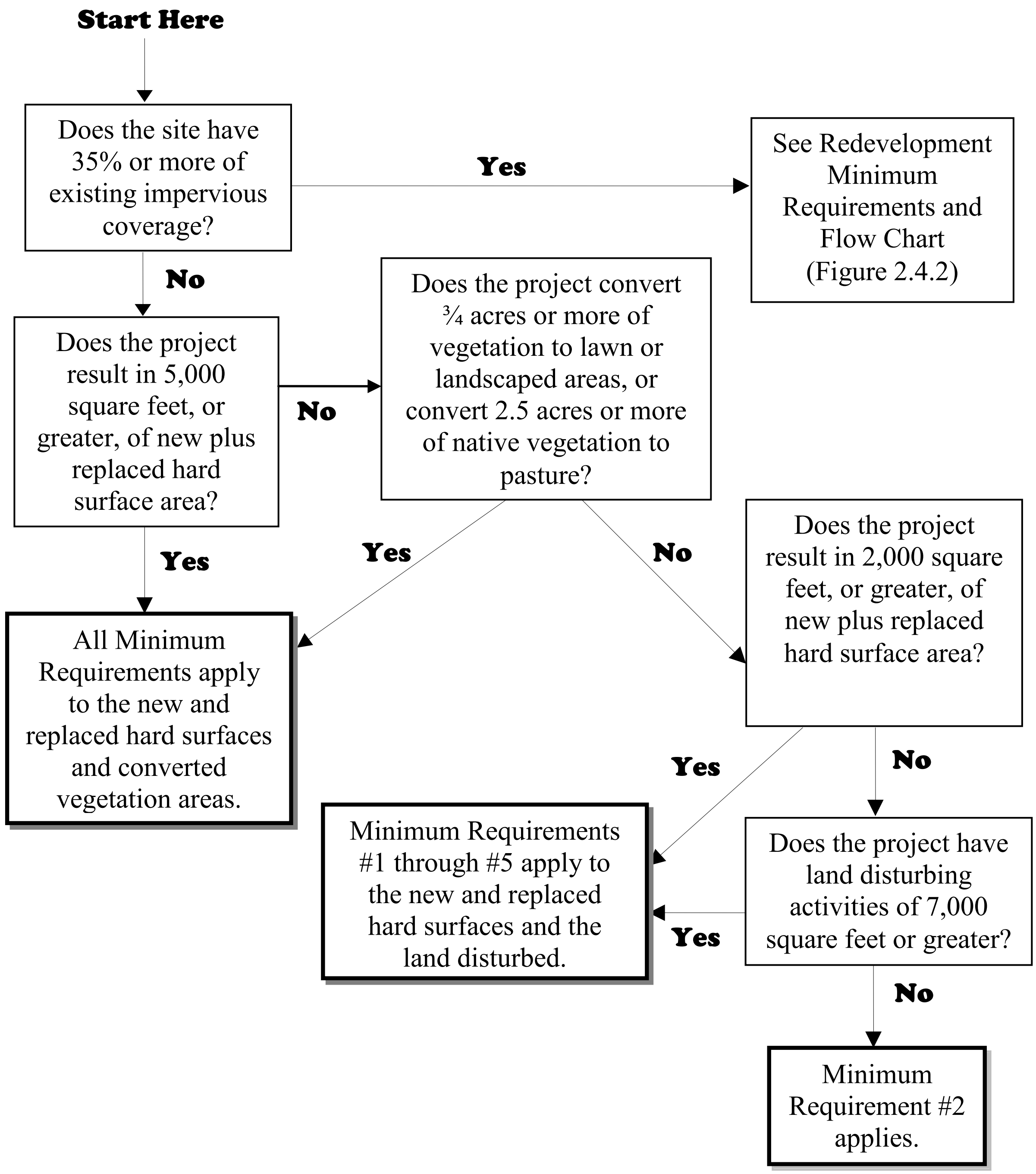


Figure 2.4.1 – Flow Chart for Determining Requirements for New Development

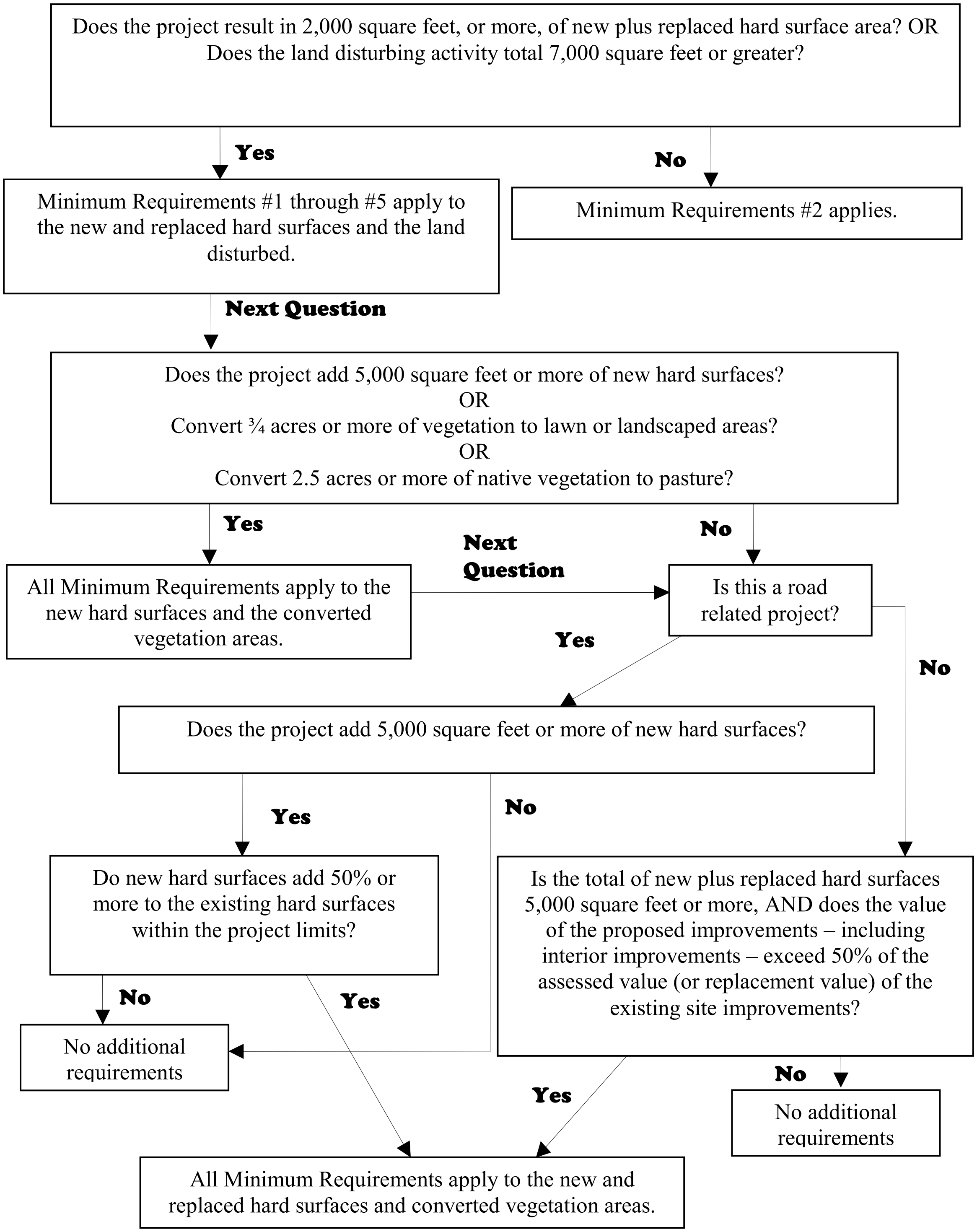


Figure 2.4.2 – Flow Chart for Determining Requirements for Redevelopment

2.4.1 New Development

All new development shall be required to comply with Minimum Requirement #2.

The following new development shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 for the new and replaced hard surfaces and the land disturbed:

- **Results in 2,000 square feet, or greater, of new, replaced, or new plus replaced hard surface area, or**
- **Has land disturbing activity of 7,000 square feet or greater.**

The following new development shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #9 for the new and replaced hard surfaces and the converted vegetation areas:

- **Results in 5,000 square feet, or greater, of new plus replaced hard surface area, or**
- **Converts ¾ acres, or more, of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, or**
- **Converts 2.5 acres, or more, of native vegetation to pasture.**

Supplemental Guidelines

For purposes of applying the above thresholds to a proposed single family residential subdivision (i.e., a plat or short plat project) assume 4,000 sq. ft. of hard surface (8,000 sq. ft. on lots of 5 acres or more) for each newly created lot, unless the project proponent has otherwise formally declared other values for each lot in the corresponding complete land division application. Where local land use regulations restrict maximum hard (or impervious) surfaces to smaller amounts, those maxima may be used.

Regional stormwater facilities may be used as an alternative method of meeting Minimum Requirements 6, 7, and 8, through documented engineering reports detailing how the proposed facilities meet these requirements for the sites that drain to them. Such facilities must be operational prior to and must have capacity for new development.

Basin planning is encouraged and may be used to tailor Minimum Requirements: #5 On-site Stormwater Management, #6 Runoff Treatment, #7 Flow Control, and / or #8 Wetlands Protection. Basin planning may be used to support alternative treatment, flow control, and/or wetland protection through construction of regional stormwater facilities. Such facilities must be operational prior to and must have capacity for new development.

Where new development projects require improvements (e.g., frontage improvements) that are not within the same threshold discharge area, the local government may allow the Minimum Requirements to be met for an equivalent (flow and pollution characteristics) area that drains to the same receiving water.

2.4.2 Redevelopment

All redevelopment shall be required to comply with Minimum Requirement #2.

The following redevelopment shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 for the new and replaced hard surfaces and the land disturbed:

- **Results in 2,000 square feet or more, of new plus replaced hard surface area, or**
- **Has land disturbing activity of 7,000 square feet or greater.**

The following redevelopment shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #9 for the new hard surfaces and converted pervious areas:

- **Adds 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surfaces or,**
- **Converts ¾ acres, or more, of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, or**
- **Converts 2.5 acres, or more, of native vegetation to pasture.**

The local government may allow the Minimum Requirements to be met for an equivalent (flow and pollution characteristics) area within the same site. For public roads projects, the equivalent area does not have to be within the project limits, but must drain to the same receiving water.

<u>Additional Requirements for the Project Site</u>

For road-related projects, runoff from the replaced and new hard surfaces (including pavement, shoulders, curbs, and sidewalks) and the converted vegetated areas shall meet all the Minimum Requirements if the new hard surfaces total 5,000 square feet or more and total 50% or more of the existing hard surfaces within the project limits. The project limits shall be defined by the length of the project and the width of the right–of-way.

Other types of redevelopment projects shall comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #9 for the new and replaced hard surfaces and the converted vegetated areas if the total of new plus replaced hard surfaces is 5,000 square feet or more, and the valuation of proposed improvements – including interior improvements – exceeds 50% of the assessed value of the existing site improvements.

A local government may exempt or institute a stop-loss provision for redevelopment projects from compliance with Minimum Requirements #5 On-site Stormwater Management, Minimum

Requirement #6 Runoff Treatment, Minimum Requirement #7 Flow Control, and/or Minimum Requirement #8 Wetlands Protection as applied to the replaced hard surfaces if the local government has adopted a plan and a schedule that fulfills those requirements in regional facilities.

A local government may grant a variance/exception to the application of the flow control requirements to replaced impervious surfaces if such application imposes a severe economic hardship. See Section 2.8 of this chapter.

Objective

Redevelopment projects have the same requirements as new development projects in order to minimize the impacts from new surfaces. To not discourage redevelopment projects, replaced surfaces aren't required to be brought up to new stormwater standards unless the noted cost or space thresholds are exceeded. As long as the replaced surfaces have similar pollution-generating potential, the amount of pollutants discharged shouldn't be significantly different. However, if the redevelopment project scope is sufficiently large that the cost or space criteria noted above are exceeded, it is reasonable to require the replaced surfaces to be brought up to current stormwater standards. This is consistent with other utility standards. When a structure or a property undergoes significant remodeling, local governments often require the site to be brought up to new building code requirements (e.g., on-site sewage disposal systems, fire systems).

Supplemental Guidelines

If runoff from new hard surfaces, converted vegetation areas, and replaced hard surfaces (if the applicable cost or space threshold has been exceeded) is not separated from runoff from other existing surfaces within the project site or the site, the guidance in Appendix III-B of Volume III for off-site inflow shall be used to size the detention facilities.

Local governments can select from various bases for identifying projects that must retrofit the replaced hard surfaces on the project site. Those can include:

- Exceeding 50% of the assessed value of the existing improvements;
- Exceeding 50% of the replacement value of the existing site improvements as determined by the Marshall Value System, or a similar valuation system; and
- Exceeding a certain dollar value of improvements; and
- Exceeding a certain ratio of the new hard surfaces to the total of replaced plus new hard surfaces.

A local government's thresholds for the application of stormwater controls to replaced hard surfaces must be at least as stringent as Ecology's thresholds. Local governments should be prepared to demonstrate that by comparing the number and types of historical projects that would have been regulated using the Ecology thresholds versus the local government's thresholds.

Local governments are allowed to institute a stop-loss provision on the application of stormwater requirements to replaced hard surfaces. A stop-loss provision is an upper limit on the extent to which a requirement is applied. For instance, there could be a maximum percentage of the estimated total project costs that are dedicated to meeting stormwater requirements. A project would not have to incur additional stormwater costs above that maximum though the standard redevelopment requirements will not be fully achieved. The allowance for a stop-loss provision pertains to the extent that treatment, flow control and wetlands protection requirements are imposed on replaced hard surfaces. It does not apply to meeting stormwater requirements for new hard surfaces.

Local governments can also establish criteria for allowing redevelopment projects to pay a fee in lieu of constructing water quality or flow control facilities on a redeveloped site. At a minimum, the fee should be the equivalent of an engineering estimate of the cost of meeting all applicable stormwater requirements for the project. The local government should use such funds for the implementation of stormwater control projects that would have similar benefits to the same receiving water as if the project had constructed its required improvements. Expenditure of such funds is subject to other state statutory requirements.

Ecology cautions local governments about the potential long-term consequences of allowing a fee-in-lieu of stormwater facilities. Sites that are allowed to pay a fee continue without stormwater controls. If it is determined, through future basin planning for instance, that controls on such sites are necessary to achieve water quality goals or legal requirements, the public may bear the costs for providing those controls.

Underground utility projects that replace the ground surface with in-kind material or materials with similar runoff characteristics should not be subject to redevelopment requirements except construction site erosion control.

Local governments are also encouraged to review all road projects for changes in elevations or drainage flowpath that could cause flooding, upland or stream erosion, or changes to discharges to wetlands. For example, adding curbs will result in redirecting flows and possibly causing new downstream impacts. The local government should set project-specific requirements to avoid or mitigate those impacts.

2.5 Minimum Requirements

This section describes the minimum requirements for stormwater management at development and redevelopment sites. Section 2.4 should be consulted to determine which requirements apply to any given project. Figures 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 should be consulted to determine whether the minimum requirements apply to new surfaces, replaced surfaces, or new and replaced surfaces. Volumes II through V of this manual present Best Management Practices (BMPs) for use in meeting the Minimum Requirements.

Throughout this chapter, requirements are written in bold and supplemental guidelines that serve as advice and other materials are <u>not</u> in bold.

2.5.1 Minimum Requirement #1: Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans

All projects meeting the thresholds in Section 2.4 shall prepare a Stormwater Site Plan for local government review. Stormwater Site Plans shall use site-appropriate development principles, as required and encouraged by local development codes, to retain native vegetation and minimize impervious surfaces to the extent feasible. Stormwater Site Plans shall be prepared in accordance with Chapter 3 of this volume.

Objective

The 2,000 square feet threshold for hard surfaces and 7,000 square foot threshold for land disturbance are chosen to capture most single family home construction and their equivalent. Note that the scope of the stormwater site plan only covers compliance with Minimum Requirements #2 through #5 if the thresholds of 5,000 square feet of hard surface or conversion of ¾ acre of vegetation to lawn or landscape, or conversion of 2.5 acres of vegetation to pasture are not exceeded.

Supplemental guidelines

Projects proposed by departments and agencies within the local government with jurisdiction must comply with this requirement. The local government shall determine the process for ensuring proper project review, inspection, and compliance by its own departments and agencies.

2.5.2 Minimum Requirement #2: Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention (SWPP)

Thresholds

All new development and redevelopment projects are responsible for preventing erosion and discharge of sediment and other pollutants into receiving waters.

Projects which result in 2,000 square feet or more of new plus replaced hard surface area, or which disturb 7,000 square feet or more of land must prepare a Construction SWPP Plan (SWPPP) as part of the Stormwater Site Plan (see Section 2.5.1).

Projects that result in less than 2,000 square feet of new plus replaced hard surface area, or disturb less than 7,000 square feet of land are not required to prepare a Construction SWPPP, but must consider all of the 13 Elements of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention and develop controls for all elements that pertain to the project site.

General Requirements

The SWPPP shall include a narrative and drawings. All BMPs shall be clearly referenced in the narrative and marked on the drawings. The SWPPP narrative shall include documentation to explain and justify the pollution prevention decisions made for the project. Each of the 13 elements must be considered and included in the Construction SWPPP unless site conditions render the element unnecessary and the exemption from that element is clearly justified in the narrative of the SWPPP.

Clearing and grading activities for developments shall be permitted only if conducted pursuant to an approved site development plan (e.g., subdivision approval) that establishes permitted areas of clearing, grading, cutting, and filling. These permitted clearing and grading areas and any other areas required to preserve critical or sensitive areas, buffers, native growth protection easements, or tree retention areas shall be delineated on the site plans and the development site.

The SWPPP shall be implemented beginning with initial land disturbance and until final stabilization. Sediment and Erosion control BMPs shall be consistent with the BMPs contained in chapters 3 and 4 of Volume II.

Seasonal Work Limitations - From October 1 through April 30, clearing, grading, and other soil disturbing activities shall only be permitted if shown to the satisfaction of the local permitting authority that silt-laden runoff will be prevented from leaving the site through a combination of the following:

1. **Site conditions including existing vegetative coverage, slope, soil type and proximity to receiving waters.**

2. **Limitations on activities and the extent of disturbed areas.**
3. **Proposed erosion and sediment control measures.**

The following activities are exempt from the seasonal clearing and grading limitations:

1. **Routine maintenance and necessary repair of erosion and sediment control BMPs.**
2. **Routine maintenance of public facilities or existing utility structures that do not expose the soil or result in the removal of the vegetative cover to soil.**
3. **Activities where there is one hundred percent infiltration of surface water runoff within the site in approved and installed erosion and sediment control facilities.**

Project Requirements - Construction SWPPP Elements

Element 1: Preserve Vegetation/Mark Clearing Limits

- **Before beginning land disturbing activities, including clearing and grading, clearly mark all clearing limits, sensitive areas and their buffers, and trees that are to be preserved within the construction area.**
- **Retain the duff layer, native top soil, and natural vegetation in an undisturbed state to the maximum degree practicable.**

Element 2: Establish Construction Access

- **Limit construction vehicle access and exit to one route, if possible.**
- **Stabilize access points with a pad of quarry spalls, crushed rock, or other equivalent BMPs, to minimize tracking of sediment onto public roads.**
- **Locate wheel wash or tire baths on site, if the stabilized construction entrance is not effective in preventing tracking sediment onto roads.**
- **If sediment is tracked off site, clean the affected roadway thoroughly at the end of each day, or more frequently as necessary (for example, during wet weather). Remove sediment from roads by shoveling, sweeping, or pick up and transport the sediment to a controlled sediment disposal area.**
- **Conduct street washing only after sediment is removed in accordance with the above bullet.**

- **Control street wash wastewater by pumping back on-site, or otherwise prevent it from discharging into systems tributary to waters of the State.**

Element 3: Control Flow Rates

- **Protect properties and waterways downstream of development sites from erosion and the associated discharge of turbid waters due to increases in the velocity and peak volumetric flow rate of stormwater runoff from the project site.**
- **Where necessary to comply with the bullet above, construct stormwater retention or detention facilities as one of the first steps in grading. Assure that detention facilities function properly before constructing site improvements (e.g., impervious surfaces).**
- **If permanent infiltration ponds are used for flow control during construction, protect these facilities from siltation during the construction phase.**

Element 4: Install Sediment Controls

- **Design, install, and maintain effective erosion controls and sediment controls to minimize the discharge of pollutants.**
- **Construct sediment control BMPs (sediment ponds, traps, filters, etc.) as one of the first steps in grading. These BMPs shall be functional before other land disturbing activities take place.**
- **Minimize sediment discharges from the site. The design, installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment controls must address factors such as the amount, frequency, intensity and duration of precipitation, the nature of resulting stormwater runoff, and soil characteristics, including the range of soil particle sizes expected to be present on the site.**
- **Direct stormwater runoff from disturbed areas through a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal BMP, before the runoff leaves a construction site or before discharge to an infiltration facility. Runoff from fully stabilized areas may be discharged without a sediment removal BMP, but must meet the flow control performance standard in Element #3, bullet #1.**
- **Locate BMPs intended to trap sediment on-site in a manner to avoid interference with the movement of juvenile salmonids attempting to enter off-channel areas or drainages.**
- **Where feasible, design outlet structures that withdraw impounded stormwater from the surface to avoid discharging sediment that is still suspended lower in the water column.**

Element 5: Stabilize Soils

- **Stabilize exposed and unworked soils by application of effective BMPs that prevent erosion. Applicable BMPs include, but are not limited to: temporary and permanent seeding, sodding, mulching, plastic covering, erosion control fabrics and matting, soil application of polyacrylamide (PAM), the early application of gravel base early on areas to be paved, and dust control.**
- **Control stormwater volume and velocity within the site to minimize soil erosion.**
- **Control stormwater discharges, including both peak flow rates and total stormwater volume, to minimize erosion at outlets and to minimize downstream channel and stream bank erosion.**
- **Soils must not remain exposed and unworked for more than the time periods set forth below to prevent erosion:**
    - **During the dry season (May 1 - Sept. 30): 7 days**
    - **During the wet season (October 1 - April 30): 2 days**
- **Stabilize soils at the end of the shift before a holiday or weekend if needed based on the weather forecast.**
- **Stabilize soil stockpiles from erosion, protected with sediment trapping measures, and where possible, be located away from storm drain inlets, waterways and drainage channels.**
- **Minimize the amount of soil exposed during construction activity.**
- **Minimize the disturbance of steep slopes.**
- **Minimize soil compaction and, unless infeasible, preserve topsoil.**

Element 6: Protect Slopes

- **Design and construct cut-and-fill slopes in a manner to minimize erosion. Applicable practices include, but are not limited to, reducing continuous length of slope with terracing and diversions, reducing slope steepness, and roughening slope surfaces (for example, track walking).**
- **Divert off-site stormwater (run-on) or ground water away from slopes and disturbed areas with interceptor dikes, pipes and/or swales. Off-site stormwater should be managed separately from stormwater generated on the site.**
- **At the top of slopes, collect drainage in pipe slope drains or protected channels to prevent erosion.**
    - **Temporary pipe slope drains must handle the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a Type**

1A, 10-year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. Alternatively, the 10-year and 1-hour flow rate predicted by an approved continuous runoff model, increased by a factor of 1.6, may be used. The hydrologic analysis must use the existing land cover condition for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits. For tributary areas on the project site, the analysis must use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the highest flow rates. If using the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) to predict flows, bare soil areas should be modeled as "landscaped" area.

- **Place excavated material on the uphill side of trenches, consistent with safety and space considerations.**
- **Place check dams at regular intervals within constructed channels that are cut down a slope.**

Element 7: Protect Drain Inlets

- **Protect all storm drain inlets made operable during construction so that stormwater runoff shall not enter the conveyance system without first being filtered or treated to remove sediment.**
- **Clean or remove and replace inlet protection devices when sediment has filled one-third of the available storage (unless a different standard is specified by the product manufacturer).**

Element 8: Stabilize Channels and Outlets

- **Design, construct, and stabilize all on-site conveyance channels to prevent erosion from the following expected peak flows:**
  - **Channels must handle the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a Type 1A, 10- year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. Alternatively, the 10-year, 1-hour flow rate indicated by an approved continuous runoff model, increased by a factor of 1.6, may be used. The hydrologic analysis must use the existing land cover condition for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits. For tributary areas on the project site, the analysis must use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the highest flow rates. If using the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) to predict flows, bare soil areas should be modeled as "landscaped area.**
- **Provide stabilization, including armoring material, adequate to prevent erosion of outlets, adjacent stream banks, slopes and downstream reaches at the outlets of all conveyance systems.**

Element 9: Control Pollutants

- **Design, install, implement and maintain effective pollution prevention measures to minimize the discharge of pollutants.**
- **Handle and dispose of all pollutants, including waste materials and demolition debris that occur on-site in a manner that does not cause contamination of stormwater.**
- **Provide cover, containment, and protection from vandalism for all chemicals, liquid products, petroleum products, and other materials that have the potential to pose a threat to human health or the environment. On-site fueling tanks must include secondary containment. Secondary containment means placing tanks or containers within an impervious structure capable of containing 110% of the volume contained in the largest take within the containment structure. Double-walled tanks do not require additional secondary containment.**
- **Conduct maintenance, fueling, and repair of heavy equipment and vehicles using spill prevention and control measures. Clean contaminated surfaces immediately following any spill incident.**
- **Discharge wheel wash or tire bath wastewater to a separate on-site treatment system that prevents discharge to surface water, such as closed-loop recirculation or upland application, or to the sanitary sewer, with local sewer district approval.**
- **Apply fertilizers and pesticides in a manner and at application rates that will not result in loss of chemical to stormwater runoff. Follow manufacturers' label requirements for application rates and procedures.**
- **Use BMPs to prevent contamination of stormwater runoff by pH modifying sources. The sources for this contamination include, but are not limited to: bulk cement, cement kiln dust, fly ash, new concrete washing and curing waters, waste streams generated from concrete grinding and sawing, exposed aggregate processes, dewatering concrete vaults, concrete pumping and mixer washout waters.**
- **Adjust the pH of stormwater if necessary to prevent violations of water quality standards.**
- **Assure that washout of concrete trucks is performed off-site or in designated concrete washout areas only. Do not wash out concrete trucks onto the ground, or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams. Do not dump excess concrete on-site, except in designated concrete washout areas. Concrete spillage or concrete discharge to surface waters of the State is prohibited.**

- **Obtain written approval from Ecology before using chemical treatment other than CO2 or dry ice to adjust pH.**

Element 10: Control De-Watering

- **Discharge foundation, vault, and trench de-watering water, which has similar characteristics to stormwater runoff at the site, into a controlled conveyance system before discharge to a sediment trap or sediment pond.**
- **Discharge clean, non-turbid de-watering water, such as well-point ground water, to systems tributary to, or directly into surface waters of the State, as specified in Element #8, provided the de-watering flow does not cause erosion or flooding of receiving waters. Do not route clean dewatering water through stormwater sediment ponds. Note that "surface waters of the State" may exist on a construction site as well as off site; for example, a creek running through a site.**
- **Handle highly turbid or otherwise contaminated dewatering water separately from stormwater.**
- **Other treatment or disposal options may include:**
  1. **Infiltration.**
  2. **Transport off-site in a vehicle, such as a vacuum flush truck, for legal disposal in a manner that does not pollute state waters.**
  3. **Ecology-approved on-site chemical treatment or other suitable treatment technologies.**
  4. **Sanitary or combined sewer discharge with local sewer district approval, if there is no other option.**
  5. **Use of a sedimentation bag that discharges to a ditch or swale for small volumes of localized dewatering.**

Element 11: Maintain BMPs

- **Maintain and repair all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function in accordance with BMP specifications.**
- **Remove all temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs within 30 days after achieving final site stabilization or after the temporary BMPs are no longer needed.**

Element 12: Manage the Project

- **Phase development projects to the maximum degree practicable and take into account seasonal work limitations.**
- **Inspection and monitoring – Inspect, maintain and repair all BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function. Projects regulated under the Construction Stormwater General Permit must conduct site inspections and monitoring in accordance with Special Condition S4 of the Construction Stormwater General Permit.**
- **Maintaining an updated construction SWPPP – Maintain, update, and implement the SWPPP.**
- **Projects that disturb one or more acres must have site inspections conducted by a Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL). Project sites disturbing less than one acre may have a CESCL or a person without CESCL certification conduct inspections. By the initiation of construction, the SWPPP must identify the CESCL or inspector, who must be present on-site or on-call at all times.**
- The CESCL or inspector (project sites less than one acre) must have the skills to assess the:
  - Site conditions and construction activities that could impact the quality of stormwater.
  - Effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures used to control the quality of stormwater discharges.
- The CESCL or inspector must examine stormwater visually for the presence of suspended sediment, turbidity, discoloration, and oil sheen. They must evaluate the effectiveness of BMPs and determine if it is necessary to install, maintain, or repair BMPs to improve the quality of stormwater discharges.

  Based on the results of the inspection, construction site operators must correct the problems identified by:
  - Reviewing the SWPPP for compliance with the 13 construction SWPPP elements and making appropriate revisions within 7 days of the inspection.
  - Immediately beginning the process of fully implementing and maintaining appropriate source control and/or treatment BMPs as soon as possible, addressing the problems not later than within 10 days of the inspection. If installation of necessary treatment BMPs is not feasible within 10 days, the construction site operator may request an extension within the initial 10-day response period.

    - Documenting BMP implementation and maintenance in the site log book (sites larger than 1 acre).

- The CESCL or inspector must inspect all areas disturbed by construction activities, all BMPs, and all stormwater discharge points at least once every calendar week and within 24 hours of any discharge from the site. (For purposes of this condition, individual discharge events that last more than one day do not require daily inspections. For example, if a stormwater pond discharges continuously over the course of a week, only one inspection is required that week.) The CESCL or inspector may reduce the inspection frequency for temporary stabilized, inactive sites to once every calendar month.

Element 13: Protect Low Impact Development BMPs

- **Protect all Bioretention and Rain Garden BMPs from sedimentation through installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment control BMPs on portions of the site that drain into the Bioretention and/or Rain Garden BMPs. Restore the BMPs to their fully functioning condition if they accumulate sediment during construction. Restoring the BMP must include removal of sediment and any sediment-laden Bioretention/rain garden soils, and replacing the removed soils with soils meeting the design specification.**
- **Prevent compacting Bioretention and rain garden BMPs by excluding construction equipment and foot traffic. Protect completed lawn and landscaped areas from compaction due to construction equipment.**
- **Control erosion and avoid introducing sediment from surrounding land uses onto permeable pavements. Do not allow muddy construction equipment on the base material or pavement. Do not allow sediment-laden runoff onto permeable pavements or base materials.**
- **Pavement fouled with sediments or no longer passing an initial infiltration test must be cleaned using procedures in accordance with this manual or the manufacturer's procedures.**
- **Keep all heavy equipment off existing soils under LID facilities that have been excavated to final grade to retain the infiltration rate of the soils.**

Objective

To control erosion and prevent sediment and other pollutants from leaving the site during the construction phase of a project. To have fully functional stormwater facilities and BMP's for the developed site upon completion of construction.

Supplemental Guidelines

If a Construction SWPPP is found to be inadequate (with respect to erosion and sediment control requirements), then the Plan Approval Authority[1] within the Local Government should require that other BMPs be implemented, as appropriate.

The Plan Approval Authority may allow development of generic Construction SWPPP's that apply to commonly conducted public road activities, such as road surface replacement, that trigger this minimum requirement. They may also develop an abbreviated SWPPP format for project sites that will disturb less than 1 acre.

Based on the information provided and/or local weather conditions, the local permitting authority may expand or restrict the seasonal limitation on site disturbance. The local permitting authority shall take enforcement action - such as a notice of violation, administrative order, penalty, or stop-work order under the following circumstances:

- If, during the course of any construction activity or soil disturbance during the seasonal limitation period, sediment leaves the construction site causing a violation of the surface water quality standard; or
- If clearing and grading limits or erosion and sediment control measures shown in the approved plan are not maintained.

Coordination with Utilities and Other Contractors - The primary project proponent shall evaluate, with input from utilities and other contractors, the stormwater management requirements for the entire project, including the utilities, when preparing the Construction SWPPP.

Element #13, Protect Low Impact Development BMPs, is not yet included as a permit condition in the NPDES Construction Stormwater General Permit. That permit is not scheduled for reissuance until December, 2015. Until that permit is reissued with element #13 added as a permit condition, the element may be enforceable only through the requirements of local stormwater codes that may have been updated to include it. Municipal Stormwater Permittees must incorporate this element into local requirements per the timelines in their Municipal Stormwater Permit.

[1] The Plan Approval Authority is defined as that department within a local government that has been delegated authority to approve stormwater site plans.

2.5.3 Minimum Requirement #3: Source Control of Pollution

All known, available and reasonable source control BMPs must be applied to all projects. Source control BMPs must be selected, designed, and maintained according to this manual.

Objective

The intent of source control BMPs is to prevent stormwater from coming in contact with pollutants. They are a cost-effective means of reducing pollutants in stormwater, and, therefore, should be a first consideration in all projects.

Supplemental Guidelines

An adopted and implemented basin plan or a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL, also known as a Water Clean-up Plan) may be used to develop more stringent source control requirements that are tailored to a specific basin.

Source Control BMPs include Operational BMPs and Structural Source Control BMPs. See Volume IV for design details of these BMPs. For construction sites, see Volume II, Chapter 4.

Structural source control BMPs should be identified in the stormwater site plan and should be shown on all applicable plans submitted for local government review and approval.

2.5.4 Minimum Requirement #4: Preservation of Natural Drainage Systems and Outfalls

Natural drainage patterns shall be maintained, and discharges from the project site shall occur at the natural location, to the maximum extent practicable. The manner by which runoff is discharged from the project site must not cause a significant adverse impact to downstream receiving waters and downgradient properties. All outfalls require energy dissipation.

Objective

To preserve and utilize natural drainage systems to the fullest extent because of the multiple stormwater benefits these systems provide; and to prevent erosion at and downstream of the discharge location.

Supplemental Guidelines

Creating new drainage patterns results in more site disturbance and more potential for erosion and sedimentation during and after construction. Creating new discharge points can create significant stream channel erosion problems as the receiving water body typically must adjust to the new flows. Diversions can cause greater impacts than would otherwise occur by discharging runoff at the natural location.

Where no conveyance system exists at the adjacent downgradient property line and the discharge was previously unconcentrated flow or significantly lower concentrated flow, then measures must be taken to prevent downgradient impacts. Drainage easements from downstream property owners may be needed and should be obtained prior to approval of engineering plans.

The following discharge requirement is recommended:

Where no conveyance system exists at the abutting downstream property line and the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated, any runoff concentrated by the proposed project must be discharged as follows:

a) If the 100-year peak discharge is less than or equal to 0.2 cfs (0.3 cfs using 15 minute time steps) under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.2 cfs under developed conditions, then the concentrated runoff may be discharged onto a rock pad or to any other system that serves to disperse flows.

b) If the 100-year peak discharge is less than or equal to 0.5 cfs (0.75 cfs using 15 minute time steps) under existing conditions and will remain less than or equal to 0.5 cfs under developed conditions, then the concentrated runoff may be discharged through a dispersal trench or other dispersal system, provided the applicant can demonstrate that there will be no significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems.

c) If the 100-year peak discharge is greater than 0.5 cfs for either existing or developed conditions, or if a significant adverse impact to downgradient properties or drainage systems is likely, then a conveyance system must be provided to convey the concentrated runoff across the downstream properties to an acceptable discharge point (i.e., an enclosed drainage system or open drainage feature where concentrated runoff can be discharged without significant adverse impact).

Stormwater control or treatment structures should not be located within the expected 25-year water level elevations for salmonid-bearing waters. Such areas may provide off-channel habitat for juvenile salmonids and salmonid fry. Designs for outfall systems to protect against adverse impacts from concentrated runoff are included in Volume V, Chapter 4.

2.5.5 Minimum Requirement #5: On-site Stormwater Management

Projects shall employ On-site Stormwater Management BMPs in accordance with the following projects thresholds, standards, and lists to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff on-site to the extent feasible without causing flooding or erosion impacts.

Projects qualifying as flow control exempt in accordance with Section 2.5.7 of this chapter do not have to achieve the LID performance standard, nor consider bioretention, rain gardens, permeable pavement, and full dispersion if using List #1 or List #2. However, those projects must implement BMP T5.13; BMPs T5.10A, B, or C; and BMP T5.11or T5.12, if feasible.

Project Thresholds

Projects triggering only Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 shall either:

a. Use On-site Stormwater Management BMPs from List #1 for all surfaces within each type of surface in List #1; or

b. Demonstrate compliance with the LID Performance Standard. Projects selecting this option cannot use Rain Gardens. They may choose to use Bioretention BMPs as described in Chapter 7 of Volume V to achieve the LID Performance Standard.

Projects triggering Minimum Requirements #1 through #9, must meet the requirements in Table 2.5.1.

Table 2.5.1 On-site Stormwater Management Requirements for Projects Triggering Minimum Requirements #1 - #9

Project Type and Location	Requirement
New development on any parcel inside the UGA, or new development outside the UGA on a parcel less than 5 acres	Low Impact Development Performance Standard and BMP T5.13; or List #2 (applicant option).
New development outside the UGA on a parcel of 5 acres or larger	Low Impact Development Performance Standard and BMP T5.13.
Redevelopment on any parcel inside the UGA, or redevelopment outside the UGA on a parcel less than 5 acres	Low Impact Development Performance Standard and BMP T5.13; or List #2 (applicant option).
Redevelopment outside the UGA on a parcel of 5 acres or larger	Low Impact Development Performance Standard and BMP T5.13.

NOTE: This table refers to the Urban Growth Area (UGA) as designated under the Growth Management Act (GMA) (Chapter 36.70A RCW) of the State of Washington. If the Permittee is located in a county that is not subject to planning under the GMA, the city limits shall be used instead.

Low Impact Development Performance Standard

Stormwater discharges shall match developed discharge durations to pre-developed durations for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 8% of the 2-year peak flow to 50% of the 2-year peak flow. Refer to the Standard Flow Control Requirement section in Minimum Requirement #7 for information about the assignment of the pre-developed condition. Project sites that must also meet minimum requirement #7 – flow control - must match flow durations between 8% of the 2-year flow through the full 50-year flow.

List #1: On-site Stormwater Management BMPs for Projects Triggering Minimum Requirements #1 through #5

For each surface, consider the BMP's in the order listed for that type of surface. Use the first BMP that is considered feasible. No other On-site Stormwater Management BMP is necessary for that surface. Feasibility shall be determined by evaluation against:

1. **Design criteria, limitations, and infeasibility criteria identified for each BMP in this manual; and**
2. **Competing Needs Criteria listed in Chapter 5 of Volume V of this manual.**

Lawn and landscaped areas:

- **Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth in accordance with BMP T5.13 in Chapter 5 of Volume V**

Roofs:

1. **Full Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.30 in Chapter 5 of Volume V, or Downspout Full Infiltration Systems in accordance with BMP T5.10A in Section 3.1.1 in Chapter 3 of Volume III**
2. **Rain Gardens in accordance with BMP T5.14A in Chapter 5 of Volume V, or Bioretention in accordance with Chapter 7 of Volume V. The rain garden or bioretention facility must have a minimum horizontal projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the area draining to it.**
3. **Downspout Dispersion Systems in accordance with BMP T5.10B in Section 3.1.2 in Chapter 3 of Volume III**
4. **Perforated Stub-out Connections in accordance with BMP T5.10C in Section 3.1.3 in Chapter 3 of Volume III**

Other Hard Surfaces:

1. **Full Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.30 in Chapter 5 of Volume V**

2. **Permeable pavement[1] in accordance with BMP T5.15 in Chapter 5 of Volume V, or Rain Gardens in accordance with BMP T5.14 in Chapter 5 of Volume V, or Bioretention in accordance with Chapter 7 of Volume V. The rain garden or bioretention facility must have a minimum horizontal projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the area draining to it.**
3. **Sheet Flow Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.12, or Concentrated Flow Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.11 in Chapter 5 of Volume V.**

List #2: On-site Stormwater Management BMPs for Projects Triggering Minimum Requirements #1 through #9

For each surface, consider the BMPs in the order listed for that type of surface. Use the first BMP that is considered feasible. No other On-site Stormwater Management BMP is necessary for that surface. Feasibility shall be determined by evaluation against:

1. **Design criteria, limitations, and infeasibility criteria identified for each BMP in this manual; and**
2. **Competing Needs Criteria listed in Chapter 5 of Volume V of this manual.**

Lawn and landscaped areas:

- **Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth in accordance with BMP T5.13 in Chapter 5 of Volume V.**

Roofs:

1. **Full Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.30 in Chapter 5 of Volume V, or Downspout Full Infiltration Systems in accordance with BMP T5.10A in Section 3.1.1 in Chapter 3 of Volume III**
2. **Bioretention (See Chapter 7 of Volume V) facilities that have a minimum horizontally projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the total surface area draining to it.**
3. **Downspout Dispersion Systems in accordance with BMP T5.10B in Section 3.1.2 in Chapter 3 of Volume III**
4. **Perforated Stub-out Connections in accordance with BMP T5.10C in Section 3.1.3 in Chapter 3 of Volume III**

Other Hard Surfaces:

1. **Full Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.30 in Chapter 5 of Volume V**

---

[1] This is not a requirement to pave these surfaces. Where pavement is proposed, it must be permeable to the extent feasible unless full dispersion is employed.

2. **Permeable pavement[1] in accordance with BMP T5.15 in chapter 5 of Volume V**
3. **Bioretention BMP's (See Chapter 7, Volume V of the SMMWW) that have a minimum horizontally projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the total surface area draining to it.**
4. **Sheet Flow Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.12, or Concentrated Flow Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.11 in Chapter 5 of Volume V.**

Objective

To use practices distributed across a development that reduce the amount of disruption of the natural hydrologic characteristics of the site.

Supplemental Guidelines

"Flooding or erosion impacts" include flooding of septic systems, crawl spaces, living areas, outbuildings, etc.; increased ice or algal growth on sidewalks/roadways; earth movement/settlement; erosion and other potential damage.

Recent research indicates that traditional development techniques in residential, commercial, and industrial land development cause gross disruption of the natural hydrologic cycle with severe impacts to water and water-related natural resources. Based upon gross level applications of continuous runoff modeling and assumptions concerning minimum flows needed to maintain beneficial uses, watersheds must retain the majority of their natural vegetation cover and soils, and developments must minimize their disruption of the natural hydrologic cycle in order to avoid significant natural resource degradation in lowland streams.

The BMPs described in Section 3.1 of Volume III, and Section 5.3.1 of Volume V are likely insufficient by themselves to prevent significant hydrologic disruptions and impacts to streams and their natural resources. Therefore, local governments should look for opportunities to change their local development codes to minimize impervious surfaces and retain native vegetation in all development situations. Most importantly, to maintain the beneficial uses of our lowland freshwater systems will require land use planning that targets retention of a majority of a creek's watershed in its natural condition, and retains most of the benefits of headwater areas, connected wetlands, riparian, and floodplain areas.

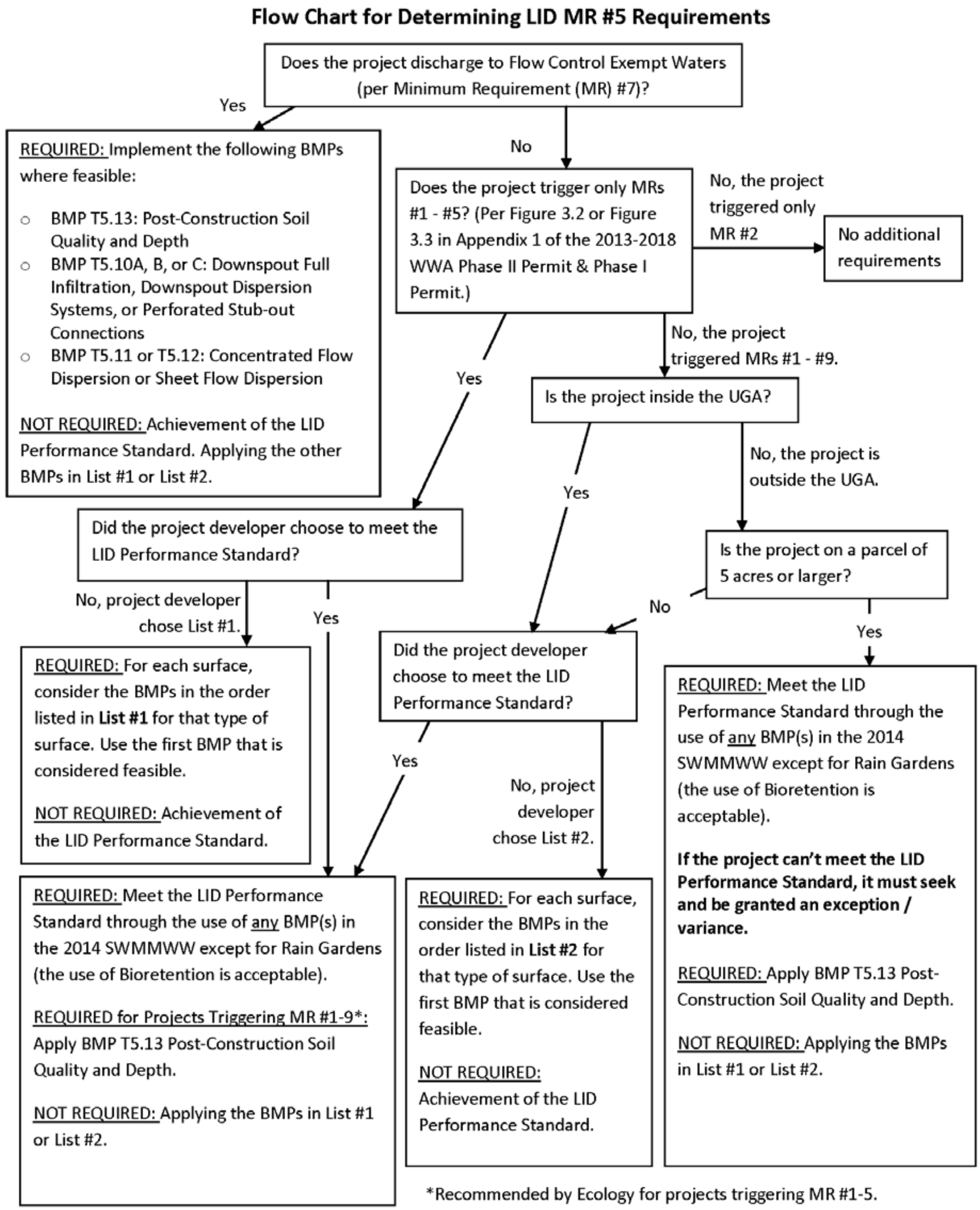


Figure 2.5.1 – Flow Chart for Determining LID MR #5 Requirements

2.5.6 Minimum Requirement #6: Runoff Treatment

Thresholds

When assessing a project against the following thresholds, only consider those hard and pervious surfaces that are subject to this minimum requirement as determined in Section 2.4 of this chapter.

The following require construction of stormwater treatment facilities:

- **Projects in which the total of, pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS) is 5,000 square feet or more in a threshold discharge area of the project, or**
- **Projects in which the total of pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) – not including permeable pavements – is three-quarters (3/4) of an acre or more in a threshold discharge area, and from which there will be a surface discharge in a natural or man-made conveyance system from the site.**

Treatment Facility Sizing

Size stormwater treatment facilities for the entire area that drains to them, even if some of those areas are not pollution-generating, or were not included in the project site threshold decisions (Section 2.4 of this chapter) or the treatment threshold decisions of this minimum requirement.

Water Quality Design Storm Volume:

- **The volume of runoff predicted from a 24-hour storm with a 6-month return frequency (a.k.a., 6-month, 24-hour storm). Wetpool facilities are sized based upon the volume of runoff predicted through use of the Natural Resource Conservation Service curve number equations in Chapter 2 of Volume III, for the 6-month, 24-hour storm. Alternatively, when using an approved continuous runoff model, the water quality design storm volume shall be equal to the simulated daily volume that represents the upper limit of the range of daily volumes that accounts for 91% of the entire runoff volume over a multi-decade period of record.**

Water Quality Design Flow Rate:

- **Preceding Detention Facilities or when Detention Facilities are not required: The flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume, as estimated by an approved continuous runoff model, will be treated. Design criteria for treatment facilities are assigned to achieve the applicable performance goal (e.g., 80% TSS removal) at the water quality design flow rate . At a minimum, 91% of the total runoff volume, as estimated by an approved continuous runoff model, must pass through the treatment**

facility(ies) at or below the approved hydraulic loading rate for the facility(ies).

- **Downstream of Detention Facilities: The water quality design flow rate must be the full 2-year release rate from the detention facility.**

Treatment Facility Selection, Design, and Maintenance

Stormwater treatment facilities shall be:

- Selected in accordance with the process identified in Chapter 4 of Volume I, and Chapter 2 of Volume V,
- Designed in accordance with the design criteria in Volume V, and
- Maintained in accordance with the maintenance schedule in Volume V.

Additional Requirements

Direct discharge of untreated stormwater from pollution-generating hard surfaces to ground water is prohibited, except for the discharge achieved by infiltration or dispersion of runoff through use of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs, in accordance with Chapter 5, Volume V and Chapter 7, Volume V; or by infiltration through soils meeting the soil suitability criteria in Chapter 3 of Volume III.

Objective

The purpose of runoff treatment is to reduce pollutant loads and concentrations in stormwater runoff using physical, biological, and chemical removal mechanisms so that beneficial uses of receiving waters are maintained and, where applicable, restored. When site conditions are appropriate, infiltration can potentially be the most effective BMP for runoff treatment.

Supplemental Guidelines

See Volume V for more detailed guidance on selection, design, and maintenance of treatment facilities. The water quality design storm volume and flow rates are intended to capture and effectively treat about 90-95% of the annual runoff volume in western Washington. See Appendix I-B for background on their derivation.

Volume V includes performance goals for Basic, Enhanced, Phosphorus, and Oil Control treatment, and a menu of facility options for each treatment type. Treatment facilities that are selected from the appropriate menu and designed in accordance with their design criteria are presumed to meet the applicable performance goals.

An adopted and implemented basin plan, or a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL - also known as a Water Clean-up Plan) may be used to develop runoff treatment requirements that are tailored to a specific basin.

However, treatment requirements shall not be less than that achieved by facilities in the Basic Treatment Menu (see Volume V, Chapter 3).

Treatment facilities applied consistent with this manual are presumed to meet the requirement of state law to provide all known available and reasonable methods of treatment (RCW 90.52.040, RCW 90.48.010). This technology-based treatment requirement does not excuse any discharge from the obligation to apply whatever technology is necessary to comply with state water quality standards, Chapter 173-201A WAC; state ground water quality standards, Chapter 173-200 WAC; state sediment management standards, Chapter 173-204 WAC; and the underground injection control program, Chapter 173-218 WAC. Additional treatment to meet those standards may be required by federal, state, or local governments.

Infiltration through use of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs can provide both treatment of stormwater, through the ability of certain soils to remove pollutants, and volume control of stormwater, by decreasing the amount of water that runs off to surface water. Infiltration through engineered treatment facilities that utilize the natural soil profile can also be very effective at treating stormwater runoff, but pretreatment must be applied and soil conditions must be appropriate to achieve effective treatment while not impacting ground water resources. See Chapter 6 of Volume V for pretreatment design details.

Discharge of pollution-generating surfaces into a dry well, after pretreatment for solids reduction, can be acceptable if the soil conditions provide sufficient treatment capacity. Dry wells into gravelly soils are not likely to have sufficient treatment capability. They must be preceded by at least a basic treatment BMP. See Volume V, Chapters 2 and 7 for details.

Impervious surfaces that are "fully dispersed" in accordance with BMP T5.30 in Volume V are not considered effective impervious surfaces. Impervious surfaces that are "dispersed" in accordance with BMPs T5.10B, T5.11, and T5.12 in Section 5.3.1 of Volume V are still considered effective surfaces though they may be modeled as pervious surfaces if flow path lengths meet the specified minima. See Volume III, Appendix III-C for a more complete description of hydrologic representation of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs.

2.5.7 Minimum Requirement #7: Flow Control

Applicability

Projects must provide flow control to reduce the impacts of stormwater runoff from hard surfaces and land cover conversions. The requirement below applies to projects that discharge stormwater directly, or indirectly through a conveyance system, into a fresh waterbody.

Flow Control is not required for projects that discharge directly to, or indirectly to a water listed in Appendix I-E - Flow Control-Exempt Receiving Waters subject to the following restrictions:

- **Direct discharge to the exempt receiving water does not result in the diversion of drainage from any perennial stream classified as Types 1, 2, 3, or 4 in the State of Washington Interim Water Typing System, or Types "S", "F", or "Np" in the Permanent Water Typing System, or from any category I, II, or III wetland; and**
- **Flow splitting devices or drainage BMP's are applied to route natural runoff volumes from the project site to any downstream Type 5 stream or category IV wetland:**
    - **Design of flow splitting devices or drainage BMP's will be based on continuous hydrologic modeling analysis. The design will assure that flows delivered to Type 5 stream reaches will approximate, but in no case exceed, durations ranging from 50% of the 2-year to the 50-year peak flow.**
    - **Flow splitting devices or drainage BMP's that deliver flow to category IV wetlands will also be designed using continuous hydrologic modeling to preserve pre-project wetland hydrologic conditions unless specifically waived or exempted by regulatory agencies with permitting jurisdiction; and**
- **The project site must be drained by a conveyance system that is comprised entirely of manmade conveyance elements (e.g., pipes, ditches, outfall protection) and extends to the ordinary high water line of the exempt receiving water; and**
- **The conveyance system between the project site and the exempt receiving water shall have sufficient hydraulic capacity to convey discharges from future build-out conditions (under current zoning) of the site, and the existing condition from non-project areas from which runoff is or will be collected; and**
- **Any erodible elements of the manmade conveyance system must be adequately stabilized to prevent erosion under the conditions noted above.**

If the discharge is to a stream that leads to a wetland, or to a wetland that has an outflow to a stream, both this requirement and Minimum Requirement #8 apply.

Local governments may petition Ecology to exempt projects in additional areas. A petition must justify the proposed exemption based upon a hydrologic analysis that demonstrates that the potential stormwater runoff from the exempted area will not significantly

increase the erosion forces on the stream channel nor have near field impacts.

Thresholds

When assessing a project against the following thresholds, consider only those impervious, hard, and pervious surfaces that are subject to this minimum requirement as determined in Section 2.4 of this chapter.

The following circumstances require achievement of the standard flow control requirement for western Washington:

- **Projects in which the total of effective impervious surfaces is 10,000 square feet or more in a threshold discharge area, or**
- **Projects that convert ¾ acres or more of vegetation to lawn or landscape, or convert 2.5 acres or more of native vegetation to pasture in a threshold discharge area, and from which there is a surface discharge in a natural or man-made conveyance system from the site, or**
- **Projects that through a combination of effective hard surfaces and converted vegetation areas cause a 0.10 cubic feet per second increase in the 100-year flow frequency from a threshold discharge area as estimated using the Western Washington Hydrology Model or other approved model and one-hour time steps (or a 0.15 cfs increase using 15-minute time steps).** [2]

Standard Flow Control Requirement

The following requirement applies to the following counties:

Clallam	Jefferson	Pacific	Snohomish
Clark	King	Pierce	Thurston
Cowlitz	Kitsap	San Juan	Wahkiakum
Grays Harbor	Lewis	Skagit	Whatcom
Island	Mason	Skamania	

[2] The 0.10 cfs (one-hour time steps) or 0.15 cfs (15-minute time steps) increase should be a comparison of the post-project runoff to the existing condition runoff. For the purpose of applying this threshold, the existing condition is either the pre-project land cover, or the land cover that existed at the site as of a date when the local jurisdiction first adopted flow control requirements into code or rules.

Stormwater discharges shall match developed discharge durations to pre-developed durations for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow. The pre-developed condition to be matched shall be a forested land cover unless:

- **Reasonable, historic information is provided that indicates the site was prairie prior to settlement (modeled as "pasture" in the Western Washington Hydrology Model); or,**
- **The drainage area of the immediate stream and all subsequent downstream basins have had at least 40% total impervious area since 1985. In this case, the pre-developed condition to be matched shall be the existing land cover condition. The map in Appendix I-F depicts those areas which meet this criterion. Where basin-specific studies determine a stream channel to be unstable, even though the above criterion is met, the pre-developed condition assumption shall be the "historic" land cover condition, or a land cover condition commensurate with achieving a target flow regime identified by an approved basin study.**

This standard requirement is waived for sites that will reliably infiltrate all the runoff from hard surfaces and converted vegetation areas.

Western Washington Alternative Requirement

An alternative requirement may be established through application of watershed-scale hydrological modeling and supporting field observations. Possible reasons for an alternative flow control requirement include:

- **Establishment of a stream–specific threshold of significant bedload movement other than the assumed 50% of the 2-year peak flow;**
- **Zoning and Land Clearing Ordinance restrictions that, in combination with an alternative flow control standard, maintain or reduce the naturally occurring erosive forces on the stream channel; or**
- **A duration control standard is not necessary for protection, maintenance, or restoration of designated and existing beneficial uses or Clean Water Act compliance.**

Additional Requirement

Flow Control BMPs shall be selected, designed, and maintained according to Volume III or a local government manual deemed equivalent to this manual.

Objective

To prevent increases in the stream channel erosion rates that are characteristic of natural conditions (i.e., prior to disturbance by European settlement). The standard intends to maintain the total amount of time that a receiving stream exceeds an erosion-causing threshold based upon historic rainfall and natural land cover conditions. That threshold is assumed to be 50% of the 2-year peak flow. Maintaining the naturally occurring erosion rates within streams is vital, though by itself insufficient, to protect fish habitat and production.

Supplemental Guidelines

Reduction of flows through infiltration decreases stream channel erosion and helps to maintain base flow throughout the summer months. However, infiltration should follow the guidance in this manual to reduce the chance that ground water quality is threatened by such discharges.

Volume III includes a description of the Western Washington Hydrology Model. The model provides ways to represent On-site Stormwater Management BMPs described in Volumes III and V. Using those BMPs reduces the predicted runoff rates and volumes and thus also reduces the size of the required flow control facilities.

Application of sufficient types of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs can result in reducing the effective impervious area and the converted vegetation areas such that a flow control facility is not required. Application of "Full Dispersion", BMP T5.30, also results in eliminating the flow control facility requirement for those areas that are "fully dispersed."

See the guidelines in Appendix I-D for Minimum Requirement #8, and directions concerning use of the Western Washington Hydrology Model for information about the approach for protecting wetland hydrologic conditions.

Diversions of flow from perennial streams and from wetlands can be considered if significant existing (i.e., pre-project) flooding, stream stability, water quality, or aquatic habitat problems would be solved or significantly mitigated by bypassing stormwater runoff rather than providing stormwater detention and discharge to natural drainage features. Bypassing should not be considered as an alternative to applicable flow control or treatment if the flooding, stream stability, water quality or habitat problem to be solved would be caused by the project. In addition, the proposal should not exacerbate other water quality/quantity problems such as inadequate low flows or inadequate wetland water elevations. The existing problems and their solution or mitigation as a result of the direct discharge should be documented by a stormwater engineer or scientist after review of any available drainage reports, basin plans, or other relevant literature. The restrictions in this minimum requirement on conveyance systems that transfer water to an exempt receiving water are applicable in these situations. Approvals by all regulatory authorities with relevant permits applicable to the project are necessary.

Ecology hopes to publish guidance concerning basin studies to develop basin-specific flow control strategies intended to stabilize stream channels and provide flows intended to protect and restore beneficial uses such as fish resources. The recommendations made in basin plans should be consistent with the requirements and intent of the federal Clean Water Act, the State Water Pollution Control Act, and any other applicable natural resources statutes, such as the Federal Endangered Species Act.

2.5.8 Minimum Requirement #8: Wetlands Protection

Applicability

The requirements below apply only to projects whose stormwater discharges into a wetland, either directly or indirectly through a conveyance system.

Thresholds

The thresholds identified in Minimum Requirement #6 – Runoff Treatment, and Minimum Requirement #7 – Flow Control shall also be applied to determine the applicability of this requirement to discharges to wetlands.

Standard Requirement

Projects shall comply with Guide Sheets #1 through #3 in Appendix I-D. The hydrologic analysis shall use the existing land cover condition to determine the existing hydrologic conditions unless directed otherwise by a regulatory agency with jurisdiction.

Additional Requirements

Stormwater treatment and flow control facilities shall not be built within a natural vegetated buffer, except for:

- **Necessary conveyance systems as approved by the local government; or**
- **As allowed in wetlands approved for hydrologic modification and/or treatment in accordance with Guide Sheet 2 in Appendix I-D.**

An adopted and implemented basin plan, or a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL, also known as a Water Clean-up Plan) may be used to develop requirements for wetlands that are tailored to a specific basin.

Objective

To ensure that wetlands receive the same level of protection as any other waters of the state. Wetlands are extremely important natural resources which provide multiple stormwater benefits, including ground water recharge, flood control, and stream channel erosion protection. They are easily impacted by development unless careful planning and management are conducted. Wetlands can be severely degraded by stormwater discharges from urban development due to pollutants in the runoff and also due to disruption of natural hydrologic functioning of the wetland system. Changes in water levels and the frequency and duration of inundations are of particular concern.

Supplemental Guidelines

Appendix I-D Guidelines for Wetlands when Managing Stormwater shall be used for discharges to natural wetlands and wetlands constructed as mitigation. While it is always necessary to pre-treat stormwater prior to discharge to a wetland, there are limited circumstances where wetlands may be used for additional treatment and detention of stormwater. These situations are considered in Guide Sheet 2 of Appendix I-D.

Note that if selective runoff bypass is an alternative being considered to maintain the hydroperiod, the hydrologic analysis must consider the impacts of the bypassed flow. For instance, if the bypassed flow is eventually directed to a stream, the flow duration standard, Minimum Requirement #7, applies to the bypass.

2.5.9 Minimum Requirement #9: Operation and Maintenance

An operation and maintenance manual that is consistent with the provisions in Volume V shall be provided for proposed stormwater facilities and BMPs, and the party (or parties) responsible for maintenance and operation shall be identified. At private facilities, a copy of the operation and maintenance manual shall be retained on-site or within reasonable access to the site, and shall be transferred with the property to the new owner. For public facilities, a copy of the operation and maintenance manual shall be retained in the appropriate department. A log of maintenance activity that indicates what actions were taken shall be kept and be available for inspection by the local government.

Objective

To ensure that stormwater control facilities are adequately maintained and operated properly.

Supplemental Guidelines

Inadequate maintenance is a common cause of failure for stormwater control facilities. The description of each BMP in Volumes II, III, and V includes a section on maintenance. Chapter 4 of Volume V includes a schedule of maintenance standards for drainage facilities. Local governments should consider more detailed requirements for maintenance logs, such as a record of where wastes were disposed.

2.6 Optional Guidance

The following guidance is offered as recommendations to local governments. Ecology considers their use to be in the best interest of the general public and the environment but will not make their implementation a requirement for manual equivalency.

2.6.1 Optional Guidance #1: Financial Liability

Performance bonding or other appropriate financial guarantees shall be required for all projects to ensure construction of drainage facilities in compliance with these standards. In addition, a project applicant shall post a two-year financial guarantee of the satisfactory performance and maintenance of any drainage facilities that are scheduled to be assumed by the local government for operation and maintenance.

Objective

To ensure that development projects have adequate financial resources to fully implement stormwater management plan requirements and that liability is not unduly incurred by local governments.

Supplemental Guidelines

The type of financial instrument required is less important than ensuring that there are adequate funds available in the event that non-compliance occurs.

2.6.2 Optional Guidance #2: Off Site Analysis and Mitigation

Development projects that discharge stormwater off-site shall submit an off-site analysis report that assesses the potential off-site water quality, erosion, slope stability, and drainage impacts associated with the project and that proposes appropriate mitigation of those impacts. An initial qualitative analysis shall extend downstream for the entire flow path from the project site to the receiving water or up to one mile, whichever is less. If a receiving water is within one-quarter mile, the analysis shall extend within the receiving water to one-quarter mile from the project site. The analysis shall extend one-quarter mile beyond any improvements proposed as mitigation. The analysis must extend upstream to a point where any backwater effects created by the project cease. Upon review of the qualitative analysis, the local project reviewer may require that a quantitative analysis be performed.

The existing or potential impacts to be evaluated and mitigated shall include:

- Conveyance system capacity problems;
- Localized flooding;
- Upland erosion impacts, including landslide hazards;
- Stream channel erosion at the outfall location;
- Violations of surface water quality standards as identified in a Basin Plan or a TMDL (Water Clean-up Plan); or violations of ground water standards in a wellhead protection area.

Objective

To identify and evaluate off-site water quality, erosion, slope stability, and drainage impacts that may be caused or aggravated by a proposed project, and to determine measures for preventing impacts and for not aggravating existing impacts. Aggravated shall mean increasing the frequency of occurrence and/or severity of a problem.

Supplemental Guidelines

Ecology highly recommends that local governments adopt similar off-site analysis requirements. Some of the most common and potentially destructive impacts of land development are erosion of downgradient properties, localized flooding, and slope failures. These are caused by increased surface water volumes and changed runoff patterns. Because these problems frequently do not have a related water quality impact, Ecology is not listing off-site analysis as a minimum requirement. However, taking the precautions of off-site analysis could prevent substantial property damage and public safety risks.

Projects should be required to initially submit, with the permit application, a qualitative analysis of each downstream system leaving a site. The analysis should accomplish four tasks:

Task 1 – Define and map the study area

Submission of a site map showing property lines; a topographic map (at a minimum a USGS 1:24000 Quadrangle Topographic map) showing site boundaries, study area boundaries, downstream flowpath, and potential/existing problems.

Task 2 – Review all available information on the study area

This should include all available basin plans, ground water management area plans, drainage studies, floodplain/floodway FEMA maps, wetlands inventory maps, Critical Areas maps, stream habitat reports, salmon distribution reports, etc.

Task 3 – Field inspect the study area

The design engineer should physically inspect the existing on- and off-site drainage systems of the study area for each discharge location for existing or potential problems and drainage features. An initial inspection and investigation should include:

- Investigate problems reported or observed during the resource review
- Locate existing/potential constrictions or capacity deficiencies in the drainage system
- Identify existing/potential flooding problems
- Identify existing/potential overtopping, scouring, bank sloughing, or sedimentation
- Identify significant destruction of aquatic habitat (e.g., siltation, stream incision)
- Collect qualitative data on features such as land use, impervious surface, topography, soils, presence of streams, wetlands
- Collect information on pipe sizes, channel characteristics, drainage structures
- Verify tributary drainage areas identified in task 1
- Contact the local government office with drainage review authority, neighboring property owners, and residents about drainage problems
- Note date and weather at time of inspection

Task 4 – Describe the drainage system, and its existing and predicted problems

For each drainage system component (e.g., pipe, culvert, bridges, outfalls, ponds, vaults) the following should be covered in the analysis: location, physical description, problems, and field observations.

All existing or potential problems (e.g., ponding water, erosion) identified in tasks 2 and 3 above should be described. The descriptions should be used to determine whether adequate mitigation can be identified, or whether more detailed quantitative analysis is necessary. The following information should be provided for each existing or potential problem:

- Magnitude of or damage caused by the problem
- General frequency and duration
- Return frequency of storm or flow when the problem occurs (may require quantitative analysis)
- Water elevation when the problem occurs
- Names and concerns of parties involved

- Current mitigation of the problem
- Possible cause of the problem
- Whether the project is likely to aggravate the problem or create a new one.

Upon review of this analysis, the local government may require mitigation measures deemed adequate for the problems, or a quantitative analysis, depending upon the presence of existing or predicted flooding, erosion, or water quality problems, and on the proposed design of the on-site drainage facilities. The analysis should repeat tasks 3 and 4 above, using quantitative field data including profiles and cross-sections.

The quantitative analysis should provide information on the severity and frequency of an existing problem or the likelihood of creating a new problem. It should evaluate proposed mitigation intended to avoid aggravation of the existing problem and to avoid creation of a new problem.

2.7 Adjustments

Adjustments to the Minimum Requirements may be granted prior to permit approval and construction. The drainage manual administrator may grant an adjustment provided that a written finding of fact is prepared, that addresses the following:

- **The adjustment provides substantially equivalent environmental protection.**
- **The objectives of safety, function, environmental protection and facility maintenance, based upon sound engineering, are met.**

2.8 Exceptions/Variances

Exceptions to the Minimum Requirements may be granted prior to permit approval and construction. The drainage manual administrator may grant an exception following legal public notice of an application for an exception, legal public notice of the administrator's decision on the application, and a written finding of fact that documents the administrator's decision to grant an exception.

The administrator may grant an exception to the minimum requirements if such application imposes a severe and unexpected economic hardship. To determine whether the application imposes a severe and unexpected economic hardship on the project applicant, the administrator must consider and document - with written findings of fact – the following:

- **The current (pre-project) use of the site, and**

- **How the application of the minimum requirement(s) restricts the proposed use of the site compared to the restrictions that existed prior to the adoption of the minimum requirements; and**
- **The possible remaining uses of the site if the exception were not granted; and**
- **The uses of the site that would have been allowed prior to the adoption of the minimum requirements; and**
- **A comparison of the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of the minimum requirements versus the estimated amount and percentage of value loss as a result of requirements that existed prior to adoption of the minimum requirements; and**
- **The feasibility for the owner to alter the project to apply the minimum requirements.**

In addition, any exception must meet the following criteria:

  - **The exception will not increase risk to the public health and welfare, nor be injurious to other properties in the vicinity and/or downstream, and to the quality of waters of the state; and**
  - **The exception is the least possible exception that could be granted to comply with the intent of the Minimum Requirements.**

Supplemental Guidelines

The adjustment and exception provisions are an important element of the plan review and enforcement programs. They are intended to maintain a necessary flexible working relationship between local officials and applicants. Plan Approval Authorities should consider these requests judiciously, keeping in mind both the need of the applicant to maximize cost-effectiveness and the need to protect off-site properties and resources from damage.

Chapter 3 - Preparation of Stormwater Site Plans

The Stormwater Site Plan is the comprehensive report containing all of the technical information and analysis necessary for regulatory agencies to evaluate a proposed new development or redevelopment project for compliance with stormwater requirements. Contents of the Stormwater Site Plan will vary with the type and size of the project, and individual site characteristics.

The scope of the Stormwater Site Plan also varies depending on the applicability of Minimum Requirements (see Section 2.4).

This chapter describes the contents of a Stormwater Site Plan and provides a general procedure for how to prepare the plan. The specific BMPs and design methods and standards to be used are contained in Volumes II-V. The content of, and the procedures for preparing a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (Construction SWPPP) are covered in detail in Chapter 3 of Volume II. Guidelines for selecting treatment, flow control, and source control BMPs are given in Chapter 4 of this Volume, and Chapter 2 of Volume V.

The goal of this chapter is to provide a framework for uniformity in plan preparation. Such uniformity will promote predictability throughout the region and help secure prompt governmental review and approval. Properly drafted engineering plans and supporting documents will also facilitate the operation and maintenance of the proposed system long after its review and approval.

State law requires that engineering work be performed by or under the direction of a professional engineer licensed to practice in Washington State. Plans involving construction of treatment facilities or flow control facilities (detention ponds or infiltration basins), structural source control BMPs, or drainage conveyance systems generally involve engineering principles and should be prepared by or under the direction of a licensed engineer. Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs) that involve engineering calculations must also be prepared by or under the direction of a licensed engineer.

3.1 Stormwater Site Plans: Step-By-Step

The steps involved in developing a Stormwater Site Plan are listed below.

1. Site Analysis: Collect and Analyze Information on Existing Conditions
2. Prepare Preliminary Development Layout
3. Perform Off-site Analysis (at local government's option)
4. Determine Applicable Minimum Requirements
5. Prepare a Permanent Stormwater Control Plan

6. Prepare a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan
7. Complete the Stormwater Site Plan
8. Check Compliance with All Applicable Minimum Requirements

The level of detail needed for each step depends upon the project size as explained in the individual steps. A narrative description of each of these steps follows.

3.1.1 Step 1 – Site Analysis: Collect and Analyze Information on Existing Conditions

Site analysis results shall be submitted as part of an Existing Conditions Summary and a site map within the Stormwater Site Plan submittal (see Step 7). Part of the information in this step should be used to help prepare the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan. The authorized project reviewer for the local government with jurisdiction may chose to waive certain components required in this section as appropriate.

Purpose of the Site Analysis: Low impact development site design is intended to complement the predevelopment conditions on the site. However, not all sites are appropriate for a complete LID project, as site conditions determine the feasibility of using LID techniques. The development context shall be established by an initial site analysis consistent with the requirements of this section.

The initial inventory and analysis process will provide baseline information necessary to design strategies that utilize areas most appropriate to evaporate, transpire, and infiltrate stormwater, and achieve the goal of minimizing the pre- development natural hydrologic conditions on the site.

The site analysis shall include, at a minimum, the following information for projects required to meet Minimum Requirements 1 – 5:

1. A survey prepared by a registered land surveyor (or other qualified professional) showing:
    - Existing public and private development, including utility infrastructure on and adjacent to the site if publicly available,
    - Minor hydrologic features, including seeps, springs, closed depression areas, drainage swales.
    - Major hydrologic features with a streams, wetland, and water body survey and classification report showing wetland and buffer boundaries consistent with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

      Note that site visits should be conducted during winter months and after significant precipitation events to identify undocumented surface seeps or other indicators of near surface ground water.
    - Flood hazard areas on or adjacent to the site, if present.

- Geologic Hazard areas and associated buffer requirements as defined by the local jurisdiction
- Aquifer and wellhead protection areas on or adjacent to the site, if present.
- Topographic features that may act as natural stormwater storage, infiltration or conveyance.

  Contours for the survey are as follows:

  - Up to 10 percent slopes, two-foot contours.
  - Over 10 percent to less than 20 percent slopes, five-foot contours.
  - Twenty percent or greater slopes, 10-foot contours.
  - Elevations shall be at 25-foot intervals.

2. A soils report prepared by a professional soil scientist certified by the Soil Science Society of America (or an equivalent national program), a locally licensed on-site sewage designer, or by other suitably trained persons working under the supervision of a professional engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist registered in the State of Washington. The report shall identify:

   a. Underlying soils on the site utilizing soil surveys, soil test pits, soil borings, or soil grain analyses (see http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/app/HomePage.htm for soil survey information).

   b. The results of saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) testing to assess infiltration capability and the feasibility of rain gardens, bioretention, and permeable pavement. Testing should occur between December 1 and April 1. Use small-scale Pilot Infiltration Tests (PIT), or other small-scale test acceptable to the local jurisdiction. Grain size analyses may substitute for infiltration tests on sites with soils unconsolidated by glacial advance.

      Note: The certified soils professional or engineer can exercise discretion concerning K_{sat} testing if in their judgment information exists confirming that the site is unconsolidated outwash material (high infiltration rates) and there is adequate depth to ground water (1 foot minimum from bottom of a rain garden, bioretention, or permeable pavement installation).

   c. The results of testing for an hydraulic restriction layer (ground water, soil layer with less than 0.3 in/hr K_{sat}, bedrock, etc) under possible sites for a rain garden, bioretention facility, or permeable pavement. Testing with a monitoring well or an excavated pit must extend to a depth at least 1 foot below the estimated bottom elevation of a rain garden/bioretention excavation and at least 1 foot below the subgrade surface of a permeable pavement. This analysis should be performed in the winter season (December 21 through March 21). The optimum time to test for depth to ground water is usually late winter and shortly after an extended wet period. Site historic information and evidence of high ground water in the soils can also be used.

3. If there are native soil and vegetation protection areas proposed for the site, provide a survey of existing native vegetation cover by a licensed architect, arborist, qualified biologist or project proponent identifying any forest areas on the site and a plan to protect those areas. The preserved area should be placed in a separate tract or protected through recorded easements for individual lots.

The site analysis shall include, at a minimum, the following information for projects required to meet Minimum Requirements 1 – 9:

1. A survey prepared by a registered land surveyor or civil engineer showing:

    - Existing public and private development, including utility infrastructure on and adjacent to the site if publicly available,
    - Minor hydrologic features, including seeps, springs, closed depression areas, drainage swales.
    - Major hydrologic features with a streams, wetland, and water body survey and classification report showing wetland and buffer boundaries consistent with the requirements of the jurisdiction.

      Note that site visits should be conducted during winter months and after significant precipitation events to identify undocumented surface seeps or other indicators of near surface ground water.
    - Flood hazard areas on or adjacent to the site, if present.
    - Geologic Hazard areas and associated buffer requirements as defined by the local jurisdiction
    - Aquifer and wellhead protection areas on or adjacent to the site, if present.
    - Topographic features that may act as natural stormwater storage, infiltration or conveyance.

      Contours for the survey are as follows:

- Up to 10 percent slopes, two-foot contours.
- Over 10 percent to less than 20 percent slopes, five-foot contours.
- Twenty percent or greater slopes, 10-foot contours.
- Elevations shall be at 25-foot intervals.

2. A soils report prepared by a professional soil scientist certified by the Soil Science Society of America (or an equivalent national program), or by other suitably trained persons working under the supervision of a professional engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist registered in the State of Washington. The report shall identify:

   a. Underlying soils on the site utilizing soil surveys, soil test pits, or soil grain analyses (see http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/app/HomePage.htm for soil survey information).

      Prepare detailed logs for each test pit or soil boring and a map showing the location of the test pits or borings. Logs must include depth of pit or boring, soil descriptions, depth to water (if present), and presence of stratification. Depth should extend to 5 feet below estimated bottom elevation of bioretention facilities and road subgrade. Logs must substantiate whether stratification does or does not exist. The licensed professional may consider additional methods of analysis to substantiate the presence of stratification.

      Soil stratigraphy should be assessed for low permeability layers, highly permeable sand/gravel layers, depth to ground water, and other soil structure variability necessary to assess subsurface flow patterns. Soil characterization for each soil unit (soil strata with the same texture, color, density, compaction, consolidation and permeability) should include:

      - Grain size distribution
      - Textural class
      - Percent clay content
      - Cation exchange capacity
      - Color/mottling
      - Variations and nature of stratification

   b. The results of saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) testing to assess infiltration capability and the feasibility of bioretention, and permeable pavement. Use small-scale Pilot Infiltration Tests (PIT), or other small-scale test acceptable to the local jurisdiction. Grain size analyses may substitute for infiltration tests on sites with soils unconsolidated by glacial advance.

Placement of K_{sat} tests should be carefully considered to reduce cost. A few strategically placed soil test pits and saturated hydraulic conductivity test sites are generally adequate for initial site assessment and for smaller sites (e.g., less than an acre). On larger project sites, a more detailed soil assessment and additional K_{sat} testing may be necessary to direct placement of impervious surfaces such as structures away from soils that can most effectively infiltrate stormwater, and placement of permeable pavement roads, parking lots, driveways, walks, and bioretention/rain gardens over those soils. See Section 3.4 in Volume III of this manual for more details. The K_{sat} tests are also necessary as input to the runoff model to predict the benefits of LID BMPs which infiltrate.

Note: The certified soils professional or engineer can exercise discretion concerning K_{sat} testing if in their judgment information exists confirming that the site is unconsolidated outwash material (high infiltration rates) and there is adequate depth to ground water (1 foot minimum from bottom of a rain garden, bioretention, or permeable pavement installation).

c. The results of testing for an hydraulic restriction layer (ground water, soil layer with less than 0.3 in/hr K_{sat}, bedrock, etc) under possible sites for a bioretention facility, or permeable pavement. If the general site assessment cannot confirm that the seasonal high ground water or hydraulic restricting layer will be greater than 3 feet below the bottom of the bioretention, or greater than 1 foot below the bottom of the lowest gravel base course of permeable pavement, monitoring wells or excavated pits should be placed strategically to assess depth to ground water. This analysis should be performed during the wet season prior to construction. Monitoring with a continuously logging censor between Dec. 21 and Mar. 21 provides the most thorough information. Monitoring for lesser time periods can be accepted but increases risk. Site historical data regarding ground water levels can be used in lieu of field testing if the data are reliable and sufficient. Also, soil evidence of historical ground water elevations may be used.

Special considerations are necessary for highly permeable gravel areas. Signs of high ground water will likely not be present in gravelly soils lacking finer grain material such as sand and silt. Test pit and monitoring wells may not show high ground water levels during low precipitation years. Accordingly, sound professional judgment, considering these factors and water quality treatment needs, is required to design multiple and dispersed infiltration facilities on sites with gravel deposits.

   d. If on-site infiltration may result in shallow lateral flow (interflow), the conveyance and possible locations where that interflow may re-emerge should be assessed by a professional engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist registered in the State of Washington. This will likely require placement of ground water monitoring wells to determine existing ground water gradients and flow. In general, a minimum of three wells associated with three hydraulically connected surface or ground water features, are needed to determine the direction of flow and gradient.

3. If there are native soil and vegetation protection areas proposed for the site, provide a survey of existing native vegetation cover by a licensed architect, arborist, or qualified biologist identifying any forest areas on the site and a plan to protect those areas. The preserved area should be placed in a separate tract or protected through recorded easements for individual lots.

3.1.2 Step 2 – Prepare Preliminary Development Layout

Based upon the analysis of existing site conditions, locate the buildings, roads, parking lots, landscaping features, on-site stormwater management BMPs, and preliminary location of stormwater treatment and retention/detention facilities for the proposed development. Consider the following points when laying out the site:

- Fit development to the terrain to minimize land disturbance; Confine construction activities to the least area necessary, and away from critical areas.
- Preserve areas with natural vegetation (especially forested areas) as much as possible.
- On sites with a mix of soil types, locate impervious areas over less permeable soil (e.g., till), try to restrict development over more porous soils or take advantage of them by locating bioretention/rain gardens and permeable pavement over them. .
- Cluster buildings together.
- Minimize impervious areas.
- Maintain and utilize the natural drainage patterns.

The development layout designed here will be used for determining threshold discharge areas, for calculating whether size and flow rate thresholds under Minimum Requirements #6, #7, and #8 are exceeded (see Chapter 2), and for the drawings and maps required for the Stormwater Site Plan.

See Chapters 2 and 3 in the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) for more detail on Preliminary Development Layout. Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

3.1.3 Step 3 – Perform an Off-site Analysis

Ecology recommends that local governments require an off-site analysis for projects that add 5,000 square feet or more of new hard surface, or that convert ¾ acres of vegetation to lawn or landscaped areas, or convert 2.5 acres of forested area to pasture.

The phased off-site analysis approach outlined in Optional Guidance #2 is recommended. This phased approach relies first on a qualitative analysis. If the qualitative analysis indicates a potential problem, the local government may require mitigation or a quantitative analysis. For more information, see Section 2.6.2.

3.1.4 Step 4 – Determine and Read the Applicable Minimum Requirements

Section 2.4 establishes project size thresholds for the application of Minimum Requirements to new development and redevelopment projects. Figures 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 provide the same thresholds in a flow chart format. Based on the preliminary layout, determine whether Minimum Requirements #1 through #5 apply to the project; or, whether Minimum Requirements #1 through #9 apply.

3.1.5 Step 5 – Prepare a Permanent Stormwater Control Plan

Select on-site stormwater control BMPs (all projects), and treatment and flow control facilities (projects subject to minimum requirements #1 through #9) that will serve the project site in its developed condition. The selection process for treatment and flow control facilities is presented in detail in Chapter 4 of this Volume, and Chapter 2 of Volume V.

A preliminary design of the On-site Stormwater Management BMPs and treatment/flow control facilities is necessary to determine how they will fit within and serve the preliminary development layout. After a preliminary design is developed, the designer may want to reconsider the site layout to reduce the need for construction of facilities, or the size of the facilities by reducing the amount of hard – especially impervious - surfaces created, and increasing the areas to be left undisturbed. After the designer is satisfied with the BMP and facilities selections, the information must be presented within a Permanent Stormwater Control Plan. The Permanent Stormwater Control Plan should contain the following sections:

Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Existing Site Hydrology

If flow control facilities are proposed to comply with Minimum Requirement #7, provide a listing of assumptions and site parameters used in analyzing the pre-developed site hydrology. The acreage, soil types, and land covers used to determine the pre-developed flow characteristics, along with basin maps, graphics, and exhibits for each subbasin affected by the project should be included. The pre-developed condition to be matched shall be a forested land cover unless reasonable, historic information is provided that indicates the site was prairie prior to settlement.

Provide a topographic map, of sufficient scale and contour intervals to determine basin boundaries accurately, and showing:

- Delineation and acreage of areas contributing runoff to the site;
- Flow control facility location;
- Outfall;
- Overflow route; and
- All natural streams and drainage features.

The direction of flow, acreage of areas contributing drainage, and the limits of development should be indicated. Each basin within or flowing through the site should be named and model input parameters referenced.

Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Developed Site Hydrology

All Projects:

Reporting totals of new hard surfaces, replaced hard surfaces, and converted pervious surfaces are necessary to determine which minimum requirements initially apply to the project.

Projects that apply only Minimum Requirements #1through #5:

Provide a scale drawing of the lot or lots, and any public-right-of-way that displays the location of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs and the areas served by them. These documents must be suitable to serve as a recordable document that can be attached to a declaration of covenant and grant of easement associated with each lot that includes On-site Stormwater Management BMPs.

Provide design details, figures, and maintenance instructions for each On-site Stormwater Management BMP. These documents must also be suitable to serve as a recordable document that can be attached to a declaration of covenant and grant of easement associated with each lot.

Provide a written summary of the proposed project and how it complies with the applicable stormwater management requirements. If using List #1 or List #2 (necessary for threshold discharge areas of projects that have triggered Minimum Requirements #1 - #9, but do not exceed the thresholds in Minimum Requirements #6, #7) to comply with Minimum Requirement #5, provide written justification, including citation of site conditions identified in a soils report, for any On-site Stormwater Management BMPs that are determined to be "infeasible" for the project site.

If the applicant elects or must use the LID performance standard option of Minimum Requirement #5, they shall provide design details of all BMP's that are used to help achieve the standard, and a complete computer model report including input files and output files. Projects taking an impervious surface reduction credit for newly planted or retained trees must provide those calculations and documentation on site plans for the locations of the trees. Projects using full dispersion or full downspout infiltration BMPs must provide information to confirm conformance with design requirements that allow removal of the associated drainage areas from computer model input.

Skip down to Section 3.1.6 - Step 6.

Projects that are subject to Minimum Requirements #1 through #9:

a. *Summary Section*

By threshold discharge area, provide totals of new pollution-generating hard surfaces, replaced pollution-generating hard surfaces (where the replaced hard surfaces have been determined to be subject to requirements per Section 2.4.1 or 2.4.2), effective impervious surfaces, and converted vegetated areas to determine whether treatment (Minimum Requirement #6) and/or flow control facilities (Minimum Requirement #7) are necessary for those areas. See Chapter 4 of this Volume for more specific directions concerning treatment and flow control requirements, and selection of treatment and flow control facilities. For those threshold discharge areas that do not trigger Minimum Requirements #6, #7, or #8, follow the directions above for *Projects that apply only Minimum Requirements #1 through #5.* Otherwise, provide narrative, mathematical, and graphic presentations of computer model input parameters selected for each threshold discharge area of the developed site condition, including acreage, soil types, and land covers, road layout, and all drainage facilities.

Developed threshold discharge areas and flow routing should be shown on a map and cross-referenced to computer input screens and printouts or calculation sheets.

Any documents used to determine the developed site hydrology should be included. Whenever possible, maintain the same basin name as used for the pre-developed site hydrology. If the boundaries of a basin have been modified by the project, that should be clearly shown on a map and the name modified to indicate the change.

Final grade topographic maps shall be provided. Ecology recommends local governments also require finished floor elevations.

b. *Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Performance Standards and Goals*

If treatment facilities are proposed, provide a listing of the water quality menus used (Chapter 3, Volume V). If flow control facilities are proposed, provide a confirmation of the flow control standard being achieved (e.g., the Ecology flow duration standard). Indicate whether using the mandatory list or the LID performance standard option for Minimum Requirement #5.

c. *Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Low Impact Development Features.*

A description of the proposed project including:

1. Project narrative showing how the project will fulfill the requirement for on-site management of stormwater to the extent feasible.

2. Total area of Native Vegetation retained.

3. Provide a scale drawing of the lot or lots, and any public-right-of-way that displays the location of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs and the areas served by them. These documents must be suitable to serve as a recordable document that can be attached to a declaration of covenant and grant of easement associated with each lot that includes On-site Stormwater Management BMPs.

4. For projects using the list option for Minimum Requirement #5, an explanation and documentation, including citation of site conditions identified in a soils report, for any determination that an On-site Stormwater Management BMP was considered infeasible for the site.

5. Provide design details, figures, and maintenance instructions for each On-site Stormwater Management BMP. These documents must also be suitable to serve as a recordable document that can be attached to a declaration of covenant and grant of easement associated with each lot.

6. A summary of proposed public or private ownership of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs and areas serving a stormwater function within the project site both during and after construction.

7. Areas of disturbed soils to be amended. (NOTE: All lawn and landscaped areas are to meet BMP T5.13. Use of compost is one way to meet the requirement).

8. Retained trees and newly planted trees for which impervious reduction credits are claimed.

d. Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Flow Control System

Provide a drawing of the flow control facility and its appurtenances. This drawing must be accompanied by basic measurements necessary to calculate the storage volumes available from zero to the maximum head, all orifice/restrictor sizes and head relationships, control structure/restrictor placement, and placement on the site. Provide sufficient details on the drawings to show how the facility conforms with design criteria in Volume III for detention facilities or infiltration facilities. If distributed bioretention facilities and/or storage below permeable pavement are used to help meet the LID performance standard option of minimum requirement #5, and/or minimum requirement #7, drawings are necessary to confirm accurate representation in the runoff model. Identify locations and approximate size of all permeable pavement surfaces and bioretention facilities to be installed as part of this project, including those that will be installed on individual lots by subsequent contractors. Identify locations and species types for newly planted or retained trees for which impervious surface reduction credits are claimed. Supporting areas such as the flow paths for dispersion BMPs should also be shown."

Include computer printouts, calculations, equations, references, storage/volume tables, graphs as necessary to show results and methodology used to determine the storage facility volumes. Where the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM), or other approved runoff model, is used, its documentation input and output files must be included.

e. Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Water Quality System

Provide a drawing of the proposed treatment facilities, and any structural source control BMPs. The drawing must show overall measurements and dimensions, placement on the site, location of inflow, bypass, and discharge systems. If distributed bioretention facilities and/or infiltration below pollution-generating hard surfaces are used to help meet treatment requirements, drawings are necessary to confirm accurate representation in the runoff model. Identify locations and approximate dimensions of those facilities to be installed as part of this project, including those that will be installed on individual lots by subsequent contractors.

Include WWHM or other approved model printouts, calculations, equations, references, and graphs as necessary to show the facilities are designed consistent with the Volume V requirements and design criteria. If bioretention and/or infiltration through adequate soils (see Site Suitability Criteria in Section 3.3, Volume III) below pollution-generating hard surfaces will be used to help meet treatment requirements, the runoff model output files must include the volume of water that has been treated through those BMPs. The summation of those volumes and the volume treated through a centralized, conventional treatment system must meet or exceed 91% of the total stormwater runoff file. The total stormwater runoff file includes:

- Stormwater that has infiltrated through a bioretention facility and stormwater that has infiltrated through adequate soils below pollution-generating hard surfaces.
- Stormwater that passes through a properly sized treatment facility. Note that stormwater that is re-collected below a bioretention facility and routed to a centralized treatment facility should not be counted twice.
- Stormwater that does not receive treatment due to bypass of, or overflow from a treatment facility or a bioretention facility (if the overflow is not subsequently routed to a treatment facility).

f. *Permanent Stormwater Control Plan – Conveyance System Analysis and Design*

Present an analysis of any existing conveyance systems, and the analysis and design of the proposed stormwater conveyance system for the project. At a minimum, present an analysis of on-site hydrologic connectivity of surficial conveyance channels and/or pipes, and points of concentration. If the local government requires an off-site analysis, include the results of that analysis here. This information should be presented in a clear, concise manner that can be easily followed, checked, and verified. All pipes, culverts, catch basins, channels, swales, and other stormwater conveyance appurtenances must be clearly labeled and correspond directly to the engineering plans.

3.1.6 Step 6 – Prepare a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

The Construction SWPPP for projects adding or replacing 2,000 square feet of hard surface or more, or clearing 7,000 square feet or more, must contain sufficient information to satisfy the local government Plan Approval Authority that the potential pollution problems have been adequately addressed for the proposed project. Local governments may adopt a standard SWPPP format for use by projects less than 1 acre. An adequate Construction SWPPP includes a narrative and drawings. The narrative is a written statement to explain and justify the pollution prevention decisions made for a particular project. The narrative contains concise information concerning existing site conditions, construction schedules, and other pertinent items that are not contained on the drawings. The drawings and notes describe where and when the various

BMPs should be installed, the performance the BMPs are expected to achieve, and actions to be taken if the performance goals are not achieved.

The 13 Elements listed in Section 2.5.2 - Minimum Requirement #2 - must be considered in the development of the Construction SWPPP unless site conditions render the element unnecessary and the exemption from that element is clearly justified in the narrative of the Construction SWPPP. These elements are described in detail in Volume II, Chapter 3. They cover the general water quality protection strategies of limiting site impacts, preventing erosion and sedimentation, and managing activities and sources.

On construction sites that discharge to surface water, the primary consideration in the preparation of the Construction SWPPP is compliance with the State Water Quality Standards. The step-by-step procedure outlined in Volume II, Section 3.3 is recommended for the development of these Construction SWPPPs. A checklist is contained in Volume II, Section 3.3 that may be helpful in preparing and reviewing the Construction SWPPP.

On construction sites that infiltrate all stormwater runoff, the primary consideration in the preparation of the Construction SWPPP is the protection of the infiltration facilities from fine sediments during the construction phase and protection of ground water from other pollutants. Several of the other elements are very important at these sites as well, such as marking the clearing limits, establishing the construction access, and managing the project.

3.1.7 Step 7 – Complete the Stormwater Site Plan

The Stormwater Site Plan encompasses the entire submittal to the local government agency with drainage review authority. It includes the following documents

Project Overview

The project overview must provide a general description of the project, predeveloped and developed conditions of the site, site area and size of the improvements, and the pre- and post-developed stormwater runoff conditions. The overview should summarize difficult site parameters, the natural drainage system, and drainage to and from adjacent properties, including bypass flows.

A vicinity map should clearly locate the property, identify all roads bordering the site, show the route of stormwater off-site to the local natural receiving water, and show significant geographic features and sensitive/critical areas (streams, wetlands, lakes, steep slopes, etc.).

A site map, using a minimum USGS 1:2400 topographic map as a base, should display:

- Acreage and outlines of all drainage basins;
- Existing stormwater drainage to and from the site;
- Routes of existing, construction, and future flows at all discharge points; and
- The length of travel from the farthest upstream end of a proposed storm drainage system to any proposed flow control and treatment facility.

A soils map should show the soils within the project site as verified by field testing. It is the designer's responsibility to ensure that the soil types of the site are properly identified and correctly used in the hydrologic analysis.

Existing Conditions Summary

This is the summary described in Section 3.1.1 above. If the local government does not require a detailed off-site analysis, this summary should also describe:

- The natural receiving waters that the stormwater runoff either directly or eventually (after flowing through the downstream conveyance system) discharges to, and
- Any area-specific requirements established in local plans, ordinances, or regulations or in Water Clean-up Plans approved by Ecology.

Off-site Analysis Report

This is the report described under Section 3.1.3 above.

Permanent Stormwater Control Plan

This is the plan described in Section 3.1.5 above.

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

This is the plan described in Section 3.1.6 above.

Special Reports and Studies

Include any special reports and studies conducted to prepare the Stormwater Site Plan (e.g., a soils report that could include the results of soil sampling and testing, infiltration tests and/or soil gradation analyses, depth to ground water; wetlands delineation).

Other Permits

Include a list of other necessary permits and approvals as required by other regulatory agencies, if those permits or approvals include conditions that affect the drainage plan, or contain more restrictive drainage-related requirements.

Operation and Maintenance Manual

Submit an operations and maintenance manual for each flow control and treatment facility, including any distributed bioretention facilities that are used to help meet flow control and/or treatment requirements. . The manual should contain a description of the facility, what it does, and how it works. The manual must identify and describe the maintenance tasks, and the frequency of each task. The maintenance tasks and frequencies must meet the standards established in this manual or an equivalent manual adopted by the local government agency with jurisdiction.

Include a recommended format for a maintenance activity log that will indicate what actions will have been taken.

The manual must prominently indicate where it should be kept, and that it must be made available for inspection by the local government.

Declaration of Covenant for Privately Maintained Flow Control and Treatment Facilities

To ensure future maintenance and allow access for inspection by the local government, any flow control and treatment facilities for which the applicant identifies operation and maintenance to be the responsibility of a private party must have a declaration of covenant and grant of easement. After approval by the local government, the declaration of covenant and grant of easement must be signed and recorded at the appropriate records office of the local government.

Declaration of Covenant for Privately Maintained On-site Stormwater Management BMPs

To ensure future maintenance and allow access for inspection by the local government, any On-site Stormwater Management BMPs for which the applicant identifies operation and maintenance to be the responsibility of a private party must have a declaration of covenant and grant of easement. Design details, figures, and maintenance instructions for each On-site Stormwater Management BMP shall be attached. A map showing the location of newly planted and retained trees claimed as flow reduction credits shall also be attached. This applies to every lot within a subdivision on which an On-site Stormwater Management BMP is proposed. After approval by the local government, the declaration of covenant and grant of easement must be signed and recorded at the appropriate records office of the local government.

Bond Quantities Worksheet

If the local government adopts a requirement for a performance bond (or other financial guarantee) for proper construction and operation of construction site BMPs, and proper construction of permanent drainage facilities, the designer shall provide documentation to establish the appropriate bond amount.

3.1.8 Step 8 – Check Compliance with All Applicable Minimum Requirements

A Stormwater Site Plan as designed and implemented should specifically fulfill all Minimum Requirements applicable to the project. The Stormwater Site Plan should be reviewed to check that these requirements are satisfied.

3.2 Plans Required After Stormwater Site Plan Approval

This section includes the specifications and contents required of those plans submitted after the local government agency with jurisdiction has approved the original Stormwater Site Plan.

3.2.1 Stormwater Site Plan Changes

If the designer wishes to make changes or revisions to the originally approved stormwater site plan, the proposed revisions shall be submitted to the local government agency with review authority prior to construction. The submittals should include the following:

1. Substitute pages of the originally approved Stormwater Site Plan that include the proposed changes.
2. Revised drawings showing any structural changes.
3. Any other supporting information that explains and supports the reason for the change.

3.2.2 Final Corrected Plan Submittal

If the project included construction of conveyance systems, treatment facilities, flow control facilities, structural source control BMPs, bioretention facilities, permeable pavement, vegetated roofs, a rainwater harvest system, and/or newly planted or retained trees for which a flow reduction credit was taken, the applicant shall submit a final corrected plan ("as-builts") to the local government agency with jurisdiction when the project is completed. These should be engineering drawings that accurately represent the stormwater infrastructure of the project as constructed. These corrected drawings must be professionally drafted revisions that are stamped, signed, and dated by a licensed civil engineer registered in the state of Washington.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 4 - BMP and Facility Selection Process for Permanent Stormwater Control Plans

4.1 Purpose

The purpose of this chapter is to provide guidance for selecting permanent BMPs and facilities for new development and redevelopment sites (including retrofitting of redevelopment sites). The task of selecting BMPs and facilities is necessary to complete the Permanent Stormwater Control Plan - one of the major components of a Stormwater Site Plan. The details for how to complete the other major component - a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan - are included in Chapter 3 of Volume II of this manual.

The Department of Ecology's (Ecology) pollution control strategy is to emphasize pollution prevention first, through the application of source control BMPs. Then the application of appropriate on-site, treatment, and flow control facilities fulfills the statutory obligation to provide "all known available and reasonable methods by industries and others to prevent and control the pollution of the waters of the State of Washington." (RCW 90.48.010) This statutory requirement is generally known by an acronym – AKART.

The remainder of this chapter presents seven steps in selecting BMPs, Treatment Facilities, and Flow Control Facilities.

4.2 BMP and Facility Selection Process

Step I: Determine and Read the Applicable Minimum Requirements

Section 2.4 establishes project size thresholds for the application of Minimum Requirements to new development and redevelopment projects. Figures 2.4.1 and 2.4.2 provide the same thresholds in a flow chart format. Total new hard surfaces, replaced hard surfaces, and converted vegetation areas to determine which minimum requirements apply to the project.

Step II: Select Source Control BMPs

Note: If your project is a residential development, you may skip this step.

Refer to Volume IV. If the project involves construction of areas or facilities to conduct any of the activities described in Section 2.2 of Volume IV, the "applicable" structural source control BMPs described in that section must be constructed as part of the project. In addition, if the specific business enterprise that will occupy the site is known, the "applicable" operational source control BMPs must also be described. Structural source control BMPs should be identified in the stormwater site plan and should be shown on all applicable plans submitted for local government review and approval.

The project may have additional source control responsibilities as a result of area-specific pollution control plans (e.g., watershed or basin plans, water clean-up plans, ground water management plans, lakes management plans), ordinances, and regulations.

Step III: Determine Threshold Discharge Areas and Applicable Requirements for Treatment, Flow Control, and Wetlands Protection

Minimum Requirements #6 (Runoff Treatment) and #7 (Flow Control) have size thresholds that determine their applicability (see Sections 2.5.6 and 2.5.7). Minimum Requirement #8 (wetlands protection) uses the same size thresholds as those used in #6 and #7. Those thresholds determine whether certain areas (called "threshold discharge areas") of a project must use treatment and flow control facilities, designed by a professional engineer, or whether just Minimum Requirement #5 (On-Site Stormwater Management BMPs) applies (see Section 2.5.5).

Step 1: Read the definitions in Section 2.3 to become acquainted with the following terms: effective impervious surface, impervious surface, hard surface, pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS), pollution-generating hard surface, pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS), converted vegetation areas, and threshold discharge area.

Step 2: ***Outline the threshold discharge areas*** for your project site.

Step 3: Determine the amount of pollution-generating hard surfaces (including pollution-generating permeable pavements) and pollution-generating pervious surfaces (not including permeable pavements) in each threshold discharge area. Compare those totals to the project thresholds in Section 2.5.6 to determine where treatment facilities are necessary. Note that On-site Stormwater Management BMPs (Minimum Requirement #5) are always applicable.

Step 4: ***Compute the totals for effective impervious surface and converted vegetation areas in each threshold discharge area.*** Compare those totals to the project thresholds in Section 2.5.7 to determine if flow control facilities (Minimum Requirement #7 and #8) are needed. If neither threshold for flow control facilities (Minimum Requirement #7) is exceeded, proceed to Step 5. If one of the thresholds is exceeded, proceed to Step IV below.

Step 5: ***For each threshold discharge area, use an approved continuous runoff model (e.g., WWHM, MGS Flood) to determine whether there is an increase of 0.1 cfs in the 100-year return frequency flow.*** [Note: this is the threshold using 1-hour time steps. If using 15-minute time steps, the threshold is a 0.15 cfs increase.] ***)*** This requires a comparison to the 100-

year return frequency flow predicted for the existing (pre-project; not the historic) land cover condition of the same area. If the above threshold is exceeded, flow control – Minimum Requirements #7 and #8 – is potentially required. See the “Applicability” sections of those minimum requirements. Note that On-site Stormwater Management BMPs (Minimum Requirement #5) are always applicable.

This task requires properly representing the hard surfaces, and the converted vegetation areas in the runoff model. Hard surfaces include impervious surfaces, permeable pavements, and vegetated roofs. Impervious surface area totals are entered directly. Permeable pavements are entered as lawn/landscaping areas over the project soil type if they do not have any capability for storage in the gravel base (more typical of private walks, patios, and private residential driveways). Permeable pavements with storage capability should use the permeable pavement “element” in the model. An “element” is provided for vegetated roofs also. See Appendix III-C in Volume III, and the WWHM user’s manual for guidance concerning proper representation of LID BMPs in approved computer models.

Step IV: Select Flow Control BMPs and Facilities

A determination should have already been made whether Minimum Requirement #7, and/ or Minimum Requirement #8 apply to the project site. On-site Stormwater Management BMPs must be applied in accordance with Minimum Requirement #5. In addition, flow control facilities must be provided for discharges from those threshold discharge areas that exceed the thresholds outlined in Section 2.5.7. Use an approved continuous runoff model (e.g., the Western Washington Hydrology Model) and the details in Chapter 3 of Volume III to size and design the facilities.

The following describes a selection process for those facilities.

Step 1: Determine whether you can infiltrate.

There are two possible options for infiltration.

The first option is to infiltrate through rapidly draining soils that do not meet the site characterization and site suitability criteria for providing adequate treatment. See Chapter 3 of Volume III for design criteria for infiltration facilities intended to provide flow control without treatment. In this case, a treatment facility must be provided prior to discharge to the ground for infiltration. The treatment facility could be located off-line with a capacity to treat the water quality design flow rate or volume (See Volume V, Chapter 4) to the applicable performance goal (See Volume V, Chapter 3). Volumes or flow rates in excess of the design volume or flow rate would bypass untreated into the infiltration basin. (Note that wetpool treatment facilities are always designed to be on-line.) The infiltration facility must provide adequate volume such that the flow duration standard of Minimum Requirement #7, or the water surface elevation requirements of Minimum Requirement #8 will be achieved.

The second option is to infiltrate through soils that meet the site characterization and site suitability criteria in Chapter 3 of Volume III. The facility would be designed to meet the requirements for treatment and flow control. However, since such a facility would have to be located on-line it would be quite large in order to achieve the flow duration standard of Minimum Requirement #7.

If infiltration facilities for flow control are planned, the flow control requirement has been met. Proceed to Step V. If infiltration facilities are not planned, proceed to Step 2.

Step 2: Use the Western Washington Hydrology Model to size a detention facility.

Refer to Chapter 2, of Volume III for an explanation of the use of the Western Washington Hydrology Model. Detailed guidance concerning proper use of the model is provided in a separate document. Ecology recommends attendance at WWHM training classes.

Note that the more the site is left undisturbed, and the less impervious surfaces are created, the smaller the detention facility. Also, the greater the use of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs, the smaller the detention facility.

Step V: Select Treatment Facilities

Please refer to Chapter 2 of Volume V of this manual for step-by-step guidance to selection of treatment facilities.

Step VI: Review Selection of BMPs and Facilities

The list of on-site, treatment and flow control facilities, and the list of source control BMPs should be reviewed. The site designer may want to re-evaluate site layout to reduce the need for construction of facilities, or the size of the facilities by reducing the amount of impervious surfaces created, making more use of On-site Stormwater Management BMPs, and increasing the areas to be left undisturbed.

Step VII: Complete Development of Permanent Stormwater Control Plan

The design and location of the BMPs and facilities on the site must be determined using the detailed guidance in Volumes III, IV, and V. Operation and Maintenance manuals for each treatment and flow control facility are necessary. Please refer to Chapter 3 for guidance on the contents of the Stormwater Site Plan which includes the Permanent Stormwater Control Plan and the Erosion and Sediment Control Plan.

Volume I References

Azous, A.L. and Horner R.R., "Wetlands and Urbanization, Implications for the Future," Final Report of the Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program, 1997.

Booth, Derek B. and Jackson, C. Rhett, "Urbanization of Aquatic Systems: Degradation Thresholds, Stormwater Detection, and the Limits of Mitigation," *Journal of the American Water Resources Association*, October 1997

Herrera, 1993 Cost Analysis – Washington Department of Ecology Minimum Requirements for Stormwater Management, Herrera Environmental Consultants/Ecology, 1993

Hydrosphere Data Products, Inc., CD-ROM Hydrodata, USGS Daily and Peak Values

Issaquah Creek Basin and Nonpoint Action Plan, King County Surface Water Management Division, Dec. 1996.

Karr, J.R., "Biological Integrity: A Long-Neglected Aspect of Water Resources Management," *Ecological Applications* 1(1):66-84, 1991.

Kleindl, W., A Benthic Index of Biotic Integrity for Puget Sound Lowland Streams, Masters Thesis, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington. 68 pp., 1995

Langbein, W.B., "Annual Floods and the Partial-Duration Flood Series," Transactions American Geophysical Union, Vol. 30, pp. 879-881, 1949.

Lucchetti, G. and Fuerstenberg, R., "Relative Fish Use in Urban and Non-Urban Streams," *Proceedings of the Conference on Wild Salmon*, Vancouver, B.C., 1993.

May Christopher, et al., "Effects of Urbanization on Small Streams in the Puget Sound Lowland Ecoregion," *Watershed Protection Techniques*, Vol. 2, No. 4, June 1997.

Miller, J.F., Frederick, R.H. and Tracey, R.S., NOAA ATLAS 2, Precipitation - Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX - Washington, U.S. Dept. of Commerce, NOAA, National Weather Service, Washington, D.C., 1973.

Perrich, Jerry R., The ESE National Precipitation Databook, Cahners Publishing Co., 1992.

Puget Sound Action Agenda, Puget Sound Partnership, 2008

Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan, Puget Sound Water Quality Authority, 1987, 1989, 1991, 1994

Schaefer, M.G., "Regional Analyses of Precipitation Annual Maxima in Washington State," Water Resources Research, Vol. 26, No. 1 pp. 119-132, January 1990.

Schaefer, M.G., Technical Note 3: Design Storm Construction, Dam Safety Guidelines, Washington State Department of Ecology, publication 92-55G, April 1993.

Strecker, Eric W., et al., Analysis of Oregon Urban Runoff Water Quality Monitoring Data Collected From 1990 to 1996, The Oregon Association of Clean Water Agencies, 1997.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix I-A Guidance for Altering the Minimum Requirements through Basin Planning

Basin Planning Applied to Source Control

(Minimum Requirement #3)

Basin plans can identify potential sources of pollution and develop strategies to eliminate or control these sources to protect beneficial uses. A basin plan can include the following source control strategies:

1. Detection and correction of illicit discharges to storm sewer systems, including the use of dry weather sampling and dye-tracing techniques;
2. Identification of existing businesses, industries, utilities, and other activities that may store materials susceptible to spillage or leakage of pollutants into the storm sewer system or to the ground via wells, drains, or sumps;
3. Elimination or control of pollutant sources identified in (2);
4. Identification and control of future businesses, industries, utilities, and other activities which may store materials susceptible to spillage or leakage of pollutants into the storm sewer system; and
5. Training and public education

Basin Planning Applied to Runoff Treatment

(Minimum Requirement #6)

Basin plans can develop different runoff treatment requirements and performance standards to reduce pollutant concentrations or loads based on an evaluation of the beneficial uses to be protected within or downstream of a watershed. Consideration must be given to the antidegradation provisions of the Clean Water Act and implementing state water quality standards. The evaluation should include an analysis of existing and future conditions. Basin specific requirements and performance standards can be developed based on an evaluation of pollutant loads and modeling of receiving water conditions.

The Basic Treatment Level is viewed as a minimum technology-based requirement that must be applied regardless of the quality of the receiving waters. Additional levels of control beyond the Basic Treatment Level of Minimum Requirement #6 may be justified in order to control the impacts of future development.

Runoff treatment requirements and performance standards developed from a basin plan should apply to individual development sites. Regional treatment facilities can be considered an acceptable substitute for on-site treatment facilities if they can meet the identified treatment requirements and performance standards. A limitation to the use of regional treatment systems is that the conveyances used to transport the stormwater to the facility must not include waters of the state that have existing or attainable beneficial uses other than drainage.

The above text describes how Basin Planning can influence requirements for new and redevelopment. Basin Planning can also be used to identify prevention, structural retrofit, and redevelopment strategies for reducing the effects of existing development on the aquatic resources.

Basin Planning Applied to Flow Control

(Minimum Requirement #7)

Basin planning is well-suited to control stream channel erosion for both existing and future conditions. Flow control standards developed from a basin plan may include a combination of on-site, regional, and stream protection and rehabilitation measures. On-site standards are usually the primary mechanism to protect streams from the impacts of increased high flows in future conditions. Regional flow control facilities are used primarily to correct existing stream erosion problems. Basin plans can evaluate retrofitting opportunities, such as modified outlets for, and expansion of existing stormwater detention facilities.

In-stream protection and rehabilitation measures may be applied where stream channel erosion problems exist that will not be corrected by on-site or regional facilities. However, caution is urged in the application of such measures. If the causes of the stream channel erosion problems still exist, repairs to the physical expression of those problems may be short-lived. In some instances, it may be prudent to apply in-stream measures to reduce impacts until the basin hydrology is improved.

Another potential outcome of basin planning is the identification of a different flow control standard. Ecology's flow duration standard is based upon a generalization that the threshold of significant bedload movement in Western Washington streams occurs at 50% of the 2-year return stream flow. Through field observations and measurements, a local government may estimate a more appropriate threshold – higher or lower- for a specific stream. The alternative threshold can become the lower limit for the range of flows over which the duration standard applies. For instance, if the threshold is established at 70% of a 2-year return flow, the alternative standard would be to match the discharge durations of flows from the developed site to the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 70% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow. An alternative flow control standard must be compatible with maintaining and restoring the designated beneficial uses for that stream. If the existing stream condition is not compatible with the beneficial uses, it should not be used to determine an alternative flow control standard.

Basin Planning Applied to Wetlands and other Sensitive Areas

(Minimum Requirement #8)

Basin planning can be used to develop alternative protection standards for wetlands and other sensitive areas, such as landslide hazard areas, wellhead protection areas, and ground water quality management areas. These standards can include source control, runoff treatment, flow control, stage levels, and frequency and duration of inundations.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix I-B Rainfall Amounts and Statistics

Table B.1.24 Hour Rainfall Amounts and Comparisons for Selected USGS Stations

	Station Name	6 Month Storm Inches	6 Month % Rainfall Volume	2 Year Storm Inches	6 Month/ 2 year %	90% Rainfall Inches	95% Rainfall Inches	Mean Annual Precip. Inches
1	Aberdeen	2.47	92.58%	3.43	72.0%	2.25	2.81	83.12
2	Anacortes	0.93	90.45%	1.37	67.9%	0.91	1.22	25.92
3	Appleton	1.39	89.04%	1.96	70.9%	1.45	1.80	32.71
4	Arlington	1.28	93.42%	1.74	73.6%	1.11	1.40	46.46
5	Bellingham	1.27	90.78%	1.79	70.9%	1.23	1.63	35.82
6	Bremerton	1.87	90.75%	2.61	71.6%	1.83	2.22	49.97
7	Cathlamet	2.13	92.52%	3.47	61.4%	1.89	2.59	78.97
8	Centralia	1.49	91.81%	2.09	71.3%	1.40	1.78	45.94
9	Chelan	0.62	84.50%	0.96	64.6%	0.76	1.00	10.44
10	Chimacum	1.20	89.63%	1.73	69.4%	1.22	1.52	29.45
11	Clearwater	3.46	92.88%	4.75	72.8%	3.04	3.94	125.25
12	CleElum	1.06	86.85%	1.66	63.9%	1.20	1.64	22.17
13	Colfax	0.80	90.52%	1.07	74.8%	0.80	0.99	19.78
14	Colville	0.71	90.46%	0.97	73.2%	0.69	0.86	18.31
15	Cushman Dam	3.31	91.26%	5.29	62.6%	3.18	4.25	100.82
16	Cushman PwrH	3.17	90.81%	4.42	71.7%	3.08	4.00	85.71
17	Darrington	2.90	91.19%	4.01	72.3%	2.73	3.42	82.90
18	Ellensburg	0.50	84.63%	0.79	63.3%	0.62	0.81	8.75
19	Elwha RS	2.14	90.49%	2.80	76.4%	2.11	2.53	55.87
20	Everett	1.10	93.14%	1.46	75.3%	1.00	1.22	36.80
21	Forks	3.47	92.50%	5.07	68.4%	3.13	4.00	117.83
22	Goldendale	0.84	86.92%	1.29	65.1%	0.98	1.25	17.57
23	Hartline	0.61	84.85%	0.96	63.5%	0.77	0.97	10.67
24	Kennewick	0.46	84.10%	0.71	64.8%	0.55	0.72	7.57
25	Lk. Wenatchee	2.20	85.87%	3.16	69.6%	2.58	3.16	42.72
26	Long Beach	2.32	93.09%	3.08	75.3%	2.04	2.55	80.89
27	Longview	1.41	92.02%	1.97	71.6%	1.29	1.67	45.62
28	McMillin	1.31	92.24%	1.82	72.0%	1.21	1.49	40.66
29	Monroe	1.38	92.90%	1.86	74.2%	1.26	1.53	48.16
30	Moses Lake	0.47	85.32%	0.70	67.1%	0.54	0.68	7.89
31	Oakville	1.81	92.86%	2.28	79.4%	1.62	1.98	57.35
32	Odessa	0.52	87.23%	0.76	68.4%	0.56	0.72	10.09
33	Olga	1.02	90.82%	1.52	67.1%	0.99	1.30	28.96
34	Olympia	1.74	91.13%	2.51	69.3%	1.65	2.19	50.68

Table B.1.24 Hour Rainfall Amounts and Comparisons for Selected USGS Stations								
	Station Name	**6 Month Storm Inches**	**6 Month % Rainfall Volume**	**2 Year Storm Inches**	**6 Month/ 2 year %**	**90% Rainfall Inches**	**95% Rainfall Inches**	**Mean Annual Precip. Inches**
35	Omak	0.66	85.89%	0.98	67.3%	0.79	0.98	11.97
36	Packwood	2.41	88.70%	3.52	68.5%	2.51	3.20	55.20
37	Pomeroy	0.75	89.29%	1.02	73.5%	0.78	0.98	16.04
38	Port Angeles	1.12	88.39%	1.66	67.5%	1.19	1.56	25.46
39	Port Townsend	0.77	90.56%	1.14	67.5%	0.76	0.95	19.13
40	Prosser	0.48	83.82%	0.74	64.9%	0.61	0.78	7.90
41	Quilcene	2.53	88.81%	3.40	74.4%	2.61	3.15	54.88
42	Quincy	0.53	82.12%	0.81	65.4%	0.68	0.90	8.07
43	Sea-Tac	1.32	91.13%	1.83	72.1%	1.27	1.63	38.10
44	Seattle JP	1.30	92.05%	1.74	74.7%	1.20	1.49	38.60
45	Sedro Woolley	1.50	92.07%	2.01	74.6%	1.41	1.80	46.97
46	Shelton	2.15	91.49%	3.13	68.7%	2.05	2.55	64.63
47	Smyrna	0.52	83.16%	0.76	68.4%	0.63	0.75	7.96
48	Spokane	0.68	89.54%	0.96	70.8%	0.70	0.88	16.04
49	Sunnyside	0.45	82.22%	0.73	61.6%	0.63	0.76	6.80
50	Tacoma	1.21	92.18%	1.61	75.2%	1.12	1.37	36.92
51	Toledo	1.36	92.73%	2.10	64.8%	1.25	1.68	50.18
52	Vancouver	1.35	91.32%	1.93	69.9%	1.28	1.62	38.87
53	Walla Walla	0.90	88.60%	1.23	73.2%	0.94	1.18	19.50
54	Waterville	0.67	84.43%	1.04	64.4%	0.81	1.05	11.47
55	Wauna	1.82	91.37%	2.50	72.8%	1.72	2.18	51.61
56	Wenatchee	0.58	81.97%	0.92	63.0%	0.80	1.04	8.93
57	Winthrop	0.75	85.36%	1.13	66.4%	0.94	1.13	14.28
58	Yakima	0.53	81.44%	0.85	62.4%	0.72	1.03	8.16

Table B.2 24 - Hour Rainfall Amounts and Statistics					
Station Name	**Return 2-yr.**	**Freq 6-month**	**Knee-of-curve 24 hr. (in)**	**Mean Annual Storm (in)**	**Mean Annual Precip (in)**
Aberdeen	3.32	2.53	2.81		83.1
Anacortes	1.33	0.99	1.20		25.9
Appleton	1.97	1.47	1.80		32.7
Arlington	1.79	1.35	1.40		46.5
Auburn	2.00	1.51		0.54	44.9
Battle Ground	2.12	1.60			52.0
Bellingham 3SSW -- F	1.70	1.27			35.0
Bellingham CAA AP	1.56	1.17	1.63		35.8
Benton City 2NW	0.79	0.53			8.0
Blaine 1ENE	1.89	1.42		0.46	39.9
Bremerton	2.31	1.74	2.22		50.0
Buckley 1NE	2.09	1.58			49.0
Burlington	1.75	1.31		0.40	35.0
Carnation 4NW	1.91	1.44		0.49	47.5
Cathlamet 6NE	3.84	2.93	2.59		79.0
Centralia 1W	2.10	1.59	1.78	0.44	47.6
Chelan	0.94	0.65	1.00		10.4
Colfax 1NW	1.18	0.86	0.99		19.8
Colville	1.02	0.74	0.86		18.3
Colville WB AP	1.01	0.73		0.35	17.4
Coupville 1S	1.08	0.79			21.0
Cushman Dam	4.61	3.52	4.25	1.23	99.7
Darrington RS	3.32	2.53	3.42	0.84	79.8
Duvall 3NE	1.99	1.50			50.0
Ellensburg	0.70	0.48	0.80	0.25	9.2
Ellensburg WB AP	0.72	0.51			12.0
Elwha RS	2.74	2.07	2.53		55.9
Everett Jr. Col.	1.48	1.11	1.22	0.41	34.4
Forks 1E	4.90	3.76	3.99		117.8
Goldendale	1.12	0.81	1.25		17.6
Goldendale 2E	1.31	0.95			18.0
Hartline	0.89	0.62	0.98		10.7
Hoquiam AP	2.85	2.17			71.0
Kennewick	0.71	0.48	0.71		7.6
Kent	1.87	1.40			36.0

Table B.2 24 - Hour Rainfall Amounts and Statistics					
Station Name	Return 2-yr.	Freq 6-month	Knee-of-curve 24 hr. (in)	Mean Annual Storm (in)	Mean Annual Precip (in)
Leavenworth	1.64	1.21			26.0
Long Beach Exp	2.99	2.28	2.54		80.0
Longview	2.20	1.66	1.67	0.48	48.1
Mazama 2W	1.59	1.17		0.41	22.7
McMillin Reservoir	1.81	1.36	1.49	0.46	40.0
Mill Creek	2.04	1.53			35.0
Monroe	1.91	1.44	1.52		48.2
Montesano 3NW	3.30	2.52		0.81	81.5
Moses Lake Devil Far	0.74	0.50	0.68		7.9
Mount Vernon 3WNW	1.60	1.20			32.0
Newport	1.41	1.05			29.0
Oakville	2.46	1.86	1.99		57.4
Odessa	0.80	0.55	0.72		10.1
Okanogan	0.90	0.63			12.0
Olga 2se	1.52	1.13	1.29		29.0
Olympia WB AP	2.62	1.98	2.18	0.62	51.1
Omak 2nw	0.99	0.70	0.98		12.0
Othello 5e	0.70	0.47			8.0
Packwood	2.92	2.21	3.16		55.2
Pomeroy	1.10	0.79	0.97		16.0
Port Angeles	1.69	1.26	1.56	0.42	24.2
Port Townsend	1.11	0.81	0.95	0.35	17.6
Prosser	0.74	0.49	0.78		7.9
Prosser 4NE	0.72	0.48			8.0
Pullman 2NW	1.17	0.86		0.41	22.3
Puyallup 2w Exp Stn	1.85	1.40			41.0
Quilcene 2SW	3.42	2.59	3.14		54.9
Quilcene Dam 5SW	3.84	2.92		0.77	69.4
Quincy 1S	0.77	0.52	0.90		8.1
Republic	1.04	0.76			17.0
Seattle Jackson Park	1.49	1.12	1.49		38.6
Seattle Tac WB AP	1.90	1.42	1.62	0.49	37.4
Seattle U. of W.	1.72	1.29			36.0
Sedro Wolley 1E	2.05	1.55	1.80		47.0
Sequim	1.11	0.80			16.0

Table B.2 24 - Hour Rainfall Amounts and Statistics					
Station Name	Return 2-yr.	Freq 6-month	Knee-of-curve 24 hr. (in)	Mean Annual Storm (in)	Mean Annual Precip (in)
Shelton	3.15	2.39	2.54		64.6
Smyrna	0.79	0.53	0.75		8.0
Spokane	1.11	0.80	0.88		16.0
Spokane WB AP	0.97	0.70		0.35	17.0
Sunnyside	0.76	0.50	0.76	0.30	7.4
Tacoma City Hall	1.70	1.28	1.37		36.9
Toledo	1.99	1.51	1.68		50.2
Vancouver 4NNE	2.01	1.51	1.62		38.9
Walla Walla CAA AP	1.19	0.87	1.17		19.5
Waterville	1.00	0.70	1.05		11.5
Wauna	2.15	1.63	2.18		51.6
Wenatchee	0.95	0.65	1.04		8.9
Winthrop 1WSW	1.19	0.85	1.13		14.3
Yakima WB AP	0.81	0.54	1.03	0.33	8.2

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix I-C Basic Treatment Receiving Waters

1. **<u>All Salt Waterbodies</u>**
2. **<u>Rivers</u>**

Rivers	Basic Treatment Applies Below This Location
Baker	Anderson Creek
Bogachiel	Bear Creek
Cascade	Marblemount
Chehalis	Bunker Creek
Clearwater	Town of Clearwater
Columbia	Canadian Border
Cowlitz	Skate Creek
Elwha	Lake Mills
Green	Howard Hanson Dam
Hoh	South Fork Hoh River
Humptulips	West and East Fork Confluence
Kalama	Italian Creek
Lewis	Swift Reservoir
Muddy	Clear Creek
Nisqually	Alder Lake
Nooksack	Glacier Creek
South Fork Nooksack	Hutchinson Creek
North River	Raymond
Puyallup	Carbon River
Queets	Clearwater River
Quillayute	Bogachiel River
Quinault	Lake Quinault
Sauk	Clear Creek
Satsop	Middle and East Fork Confluence
Skagit	Cascade River
Skokomish	Vance Creek
Skykomish	Beckler River
Snohomish	Snoqualmie River
Snoqualmie	Middle and North Fork Confluence
Sol Duc	Beaver Creek
Stillaguamish	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Stillaguamish	Boulder River
South Fork Stillaguamish	Canyon Creek
Suiattle	Darrington
Tilton	Bear Canyon Creek
Toutle	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Toutle	Green River
Washougal	Washougal
White	Greenwater River
Wind	Carson
Wynoochee	Wishkah River Road Bridge

3. **Lakes** / **County**

Lakes	County
Washington	King
Sammamish	King
Union	King
Whatcom	Whatcom
Silver	Cowlitz

Note: Local governments may petition for the addition of more waters to this list. The initial criteria for this list are rivers whose mean annual flow exceeds 1,000 cfs, and lakes whose surface area exceeds 300 acres. Additional waters do not have to meet these criteria, but should have sufficient background dilution capacity to accommodate dissolved metals additions from build-out conditions in the watershed under the latest Comprehensive Land Use Plan and zoning regulations.

Appendix I-D Guidelines for Wetlands when Managing Stormwater

This Appendix provides guidelines on the management of stormwater, from development and redevelopment projects, to avoid or minimize changes to wetland functions and values.

This appendix consists of seven sections:

Information Needed to Apply the Guidelines–This section contains a list of basic data needed for each of the guide sheets to perform basic analyses.

Definitions– Refer to this section for the meaning of terms throughout this appendix.

Scope and Principles

Purpose

Wetlands are important features in the landscape that provide numerous beneficial functions and values for people, fish, and wildlife. Some of these include protecting and improving water quality, providing fish and wildlife habitats, storing floodwaters, and maintaining surface water flow during dry periods.

Development, redevelopment, and stormwater management projects may decrease the functions and values of wetlands by:

- Increasing the amount of water flow discharged to wetlands.
- Decreasing the amount of water flow discharged to wetland.
- Increasing the amount of pollutants discharged to wetland.

This can happen even if the wetland is not formally used for stormwater management purposes.

These guidelines intend to prevent decreasing the functions and values of wetlands by avoiding alterations to the structural, hydrologic, and water quality characteristics of existing wetlands to the extent possible during development, redevelopment and stormwater management projects.

Regulatory Requirements

Following these guidelines does not fulfill requirements for assessment and permitting. Every development and redevelopment project should follow the stipulations of the State Environmental Policy Act and contact the local permitting authority. Other state and federal agencies may also have jurisdiction over projects affecting wetlands such as the Washington State Departments of Ecology, Fisheries, and Wildlife; the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency; and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

These guidelines do not address actions needed to enhance or restore degraded wetlands.

Guideline Basis

These guidelines were principally from the results of the Puget Sound Wetlands and Stormwater Management Research Program, as set forth in Sections 2 and 3 of the program's summary publication, *Wetlands and Urbanization, Implications for the Future* (Horner et al. 1997).

Washington State Wetland Rating System

The wetlands in Washington State differ widely in their functions and values. Washington State's wetland rating systems categorizes wetlands into four categories based on their sensitivity to disturbance, their rarity, our ability to replace them, and the functions they provide.

The rating system, however, does not replace a full assessment of wetland functions that may be necessary to plan and monitor a project of compensatory mitigation.

For more information on the wetlands rating system go to: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/sea/wetlands/ratingsystems/index.html.

Guide Sheet 1: Criteria that excludes wetlands from serving as a treatment or flow control BMP/facility

The following types of wetlands are not suitable as a treatment or flow control BMPs/facilities. Engineering structural or hydrologic changes within the wetland itself to improve stormwater flows and water quality are not allowed. Do not increase or decrease the water regime in these wetlands beyond the limits set in Guide Sheet 3. Provide these wetlands with the maximum protection from urban impacts (see Guide Sheet 3, Wetland Protection Guidelines):

1. The wetland is currently a Category I wetland because of special conditions (forested, bog, estuarine, Natural Heritage, coastal lagoon).

2. The wetland provides a high level of many functions. These are Category I and II wetlands as determined by the Washington State Wetland Rating System of Western Washington.
3. The wetland provides habitat for threatened or endangered species. Determining whether or not the conserved species will be affected by the proposed project requires a careful analysis in relation to the anticipated habitat changes. Consult with the appropriate agencies with jurisdiction over the specific threatened or endangered species on the site.

If a wetland type listed above needs to be included in a stormwater system then this activity is considered an impact. It will be treated as any other impact, and will need to be mitigated according to the rules for wetland mitigation. Project proponents will have to demonstrate that they have done everything to avoid and minimize impacts before proceeding to compensatory mitigation.

The wetlands listed above cannot receive flows from a stormwater system unless the criteria in Guide Sheets 3B and 3C are met.

Guide Sheet 2: Criteria for including wetlands as a treatment or flow control BMP/facility

A wetland can be physically or hydrologically altered to meet the requirements of a treatment or flow control BMP/facility if ALL of the following criteria are met:

Modifications that alter the structure of a wetland or its soils will require permits. Existing functions and values that are lost would have to be compensated/replaced.

1. It is classified in Category IV in the "Washington State Wetland Rating System of Western Washington," or a Category III wetland with a habitat score of 19 points or less.
2. You can demonstrate that there will be "no net loss" of functions and values of the wetland as a result of the structural or hydrologic modifications done to provide control of runoff and water quality. This includes the impacts from the machinery used for the construction. Heavy equipment can often damage the soil structure of a wetland. However, the functions and values of degraded wetlands may sometimes be increased by such alterations and thus would be self-mitigating. Functions and values that are not replaced on site will have to be mitigated elsewhere.
    a. Modifications that alter the structure of a wetland or its soils will require permits. Check with the agency(ies) issuing the permits for the modification(s) to determine which method to use to establish "no net loss."

b. A wetland will usually sustain fewer impacts if the required storage capacity can be met through a modification of the outlet rather than through raising the existing overflow.

3. The wetland does not contain a breeding population of any native amphibian species.
4. The hydrologic functions of the wetland can be improved as outlined in questions 3,4,5 of Chart 4 and questions 2,3,4 of Chart 5 in the "Guide for Selecting Mitigation Sites Using a Watershed Approach," (available here: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/0906032.html); or the wetland is part of a priority restoration plan that achieves restoration goals identified in a Shoreline Master Program or other local or regional watershed plan.
5. The wetland lies in the natural routing of the runoff, and the discharge follows the natural routing.

Guide Sheet 3: Wetland protection guidelines

This guide sheet provides information on ways to protect wetlands from changes to their ecological structure and functions that result from human alterations of the landscape. It also recommends management actions that can avoid or minimize deleterious changes to wetlands.

Although, this guide sheet is intended primarily for the protection of the wetlands listed in Guide Sheet 1; this guidance still should be applied, as practical, for wetlands listed in Guide Sheet 2 when they are modified to meet stormwater requirements.

Guide Sheet 3A: General guidelines for protecting functions and values of wetlands

1. Consult regulations issued under federal and state laws that govern the discharge of pollutants. Wetlands are classified as "Waters of the United States" and "Waters of the State" in Washington.
2. Maintain the wetland buffer required by local regulations.
3. Retain areas of native vegetation connecting the wetland and its buffer with nearby wetlands and other contiguous areas of native vegetation.
4. Avoid compaction of soil and introduction of exotic plant species during any work in a wetland.
5. Take measures to avoid general urban impacts (e.g., littering and vegetation destruction). Examples are protecting existing buffer zones; discouraging access, especially by vehicles, by plantings outside the wetland; and encouragement of stewardship by a homeowners' association.
6. Fences can be useful to restrict dogs and pedestrian access, but they also interfere with wildlife movements. Their use should be very

carefully evaluated on the basis of the relative importance of intrusive impacts versus wildlife presence. Fences should generally not be installed when wildlife would be restricted and intrusion is relatively minor. They generally should be used when wildlife passage is not a major issue and the potential for intrusive impacts is high. When wildlife movements and intrusion are both issues, the circumstances will have to be weighed to make a decision about fencing.

7. If the wetland inlet will be modified for the stormwater management project, use a diffuse flow method, (eg. BMPC206 Level Spreader Swale, Volume II, and BMP T5.10B Downspout Dispersion Systems, Volume III) to discharge water into the wetland in order to prevent flow channelization.

Guide Sheet 3B: Protecting wetlands from impacts of changes in water flows

Protecting wetland plant and animal communities depends on maintaining the existing wetland's hydroperiod. This means maintaining the annual fluctuations in water depth and its timing as closely as possible. The risk of impacts to functions and values increases as the changes in water regime deviate more from the existing conditions. These changes often result from development.

Hydrologic modeling is useful to measure or estimate the aspects of the hydroperiod under existing pre-project and anticipated post-project conditions. Post-project estimates of the water regime in a watershed and wetland hydroperiod must include the cumulative effect of all anticipated watershed and wetland modifications. Perform this assessment with the aid of a qualified hydrologist.

Provisions in these guidelines pertain to the full anticipated build-out of the wetland's watershed as well as changes resulting from an individual development.

Unfortunately, attempts to modify and use the standard hydrologic models for describing the flow and fluctuations of water in a stormwater pond have failed to adequately model the hydrodynamics in wetlands. It is difficult, to estimate if stormwater discharges to a wetland will meet the criteria for protection developed by the Puget Sound Wetland and Stormwater Research Program. The criteria developed by that program apply only to depressional wetlands. They are not applicable to riverine, slope, or lake-fringe wetlands. Ecology does not have any hydrologic models available to characterize the hydrodynamics in these types of wetlands.

As a result, it is difficult to predict the direct impacts of changes in water flows resulting from a development. In the absence of hydrologic models that characterize all types of wetlands, criteria have to be set using information that is readily available. These criteria are based on risk to the resource rather than an actual understanding of impacts.

The following criteria will provide some protection for the valuable wetland types listed in Guide Sheet 1, but we cannot determine if they result in the complete protection of a wetland's functions and values. The risk to wetland functions will increase as the water volumes into the wetland diverge from the pre-project conditions. The risk will be decreased if the divergence is smaller.

Use the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM), or other models approved by Ecology, for estimating the increases or decreases in total flows (volume) into a wetland that can result from the development project. These total flows can be modeled for individual days or on a monthly basis. Compare the results from this modeling to the criterion below. WWHM 2012 will have the capability to compare these results with the criterion.

Criterion 1: total volume of water into a wetland during a single precipitation event should not be more than 20% higher or lower than the pre-project volumes.

Modeling algorithm for Criterion 1

1. Daily Volumes can be calculated for each day over 50 years for Pre- and Post-project scenarios. Volumes are to be calculated at the inflow to the wetland or the upslope edge where surface runoff, interflow, and ground water are assumed to enter.
2. Calculate the average of Daily Volume for each day for Pre- and Post-project scenarios. There will be 365 values for the Pre-project scenario and 365 for the Post-project.

   Example calc for each day in a year (e.g., April 1):

   - If you use 50 years of precipitation data, there will be 50 values for April 1. Calculate the average of the 50, April 1, Daily Volumes for Pre- and Post-project scenarios.
   - Compare the average Daily Volumes for Pre- versus Post-project scenarios for each day. The average Post-project Daily Volume for April 1 must be within +/- 20% of the Pre-project Daily Volume for April 1.
3. Check compliance with the 20% criterion for each day of year. Criterion 1 is met/passed if none of the 365 post-project daily volumes varies by more than 20% from the pre-project daily volume for that day.

Criterion 2: Total volume of water into a wetland on a monthly basis should not be more than 15% higher or lower than the pre-project volumes.

This needs to be calculated based on the average precipitation for each month of the year. This criterion is especially important for the summer months when a development may reduce the monthly flows rather than increase them because of reduced infiltration and recharging of ground water.

Modeling algorithm for Criterion 2

1. Monthly Volumes can be calculated for each calendar month over 50 years for Pre- and Post-project scenarios. Volumes are to be calculated at the inflow to the wetland or the upslope edge where surface runoff, interflow, and ground water are assumed to enter.
2. Calculate the average of Monthly Volume for each calendar month for Pre- and Post-project scenarios.

   Example calc for each calendar month in a year (e.g., April):

   - If you use 50 years of precipitation data, there will be 50 values for the month of April Calculate the average of the 50, April, Monthly Volumes for Pre- and Post-project scenarios.
   - Compare the Monthly Volumes for Pre- versus Post-project scenarios. Post- project Monthly Volume for April must be within +/- 15% of the Pre- project Monthly Volume for April.
3. Check compliance with the 15% criterion for each calendar month of year. Criterion 2 is met/passed if none of the post- project Monthly Volume varies by more than 15% from the pre- project Monthly Volume for every month.

WWHM Modeling Assumption and Approach

Assumption - Flow components feeding the wetland under both Pre- and Post-project scenarios are assumed to be the sum of the surface, interflow, and ground water flows from the project site.

Approach - Assign the wetland a point of compliance #1 (POC) number such as POC1 downstream of the project area**.**

- Pre-project scenario - Connect all flow components to the wetland/POC1
  - ➢ **Pre-project Total Flows to POC1 = Surface + Interflow + Ground water**
- Post-project scenario - Identify flows to the wetland/POC1.
  a) Impervious surfaces send flows to wetland via (1)- surface flow.

- ✓ WWHM sub-flows to POC1 = Surface flow (+ Interflow default set in WWHM)

b) Pervious surfaces send flows to wetland via (1)- surface, (2)- interflow, and (3)- ground.

- ✓ WWHM sub-flows to POC1 = Surface + Interflow + Ground water

c) Infiltrating facilities send flows to wetland via ground water, and surface overflows.

(1) Ground water - Connect infiltrated water (Outlet 2) to ground water component of the area between facility and wetland. Use Lateral Basin downstream of the infiltrating facility and connect Outlet 2 to the ground water component of the Lateral Basin. If this area is the same area modeled in Step (b) above, use the Lateral Basin element in Step (b).

- ✓ WWHM sub-flows to POC1 = infiltrated flows

(2) Surface Overflow – Connect the surface flow (Outlet 1) to wetland/POC1

- ✓ WWHM sub-flows to POC1 = facility surface flows (Outlet 1)
- ➢ **Post-project Total Flows to POC1 = Sum of flows in (a), (b), and (c).**

If it is expected that the limits stated above could be exceeded, consider the following strategies to reduce the volume of surface flows:

- Reducing of the level of development by reducing the amount of impervious surface and/or increasing the retention of natural forest cover.
- Increasing infiltration through the use of LID BMPs and LID principles.
- Increasing storage capacity for surface runoff.
- Using selective runoff bypass around the wetland. Bypassed flow must still comply with other applicable stormwater requirements.

Monitoring – Modifications that alter the structure of a wetland or its soils will require permits. Conduct monitoring as required by local, state, or federal permits.

Guide Sheet 3C: Guidelines for protecting wetlands from pollutants

Protecting a wetland from pollutants generated by a development should include the following measures:

1. Use effective erosion control at construction sites in the wetland's drainage catchment. Refer to Volume II this manual and local jurisdiction requirements.
2. Institute a program of source control BMPs and minimize the pollutants that will enter storm runoff that drains to the wetland.
3. For wetlands the meet the criteria in Guide Sheet 1, provide a water quality control facility consisting of one or more treatment BMPs to treat runoff entering the wetland.

   If the wetland is a Category I wetland because of special conditions (forested, bog, estuarine, Natural Heritage, costal lagoon), the facility should include a BMP with the most advanced ability to control nutrients.

Guide Sheet 4: Jurisdictional planning for wetlands and stormwater management

Local jurisdictions should plan and manage their resources to protect the overall function and values of wetlands, including their role in storm drainage systems.

Advanced planning can help local jurisdictions to take advantage of the most options for managing stormwater in newly developing areas.

The comprehensive planning steps, below, are based on two principles for effective environmental management:

1. The best management policies for the protection of wetlands are those that prevent or minimize impacts at their point of origin.
2. The best management strategies are self-perpetuating, that is they do not require periodic infusions of capital and labor.

The Department of Ecology, the Puget Sound Partnership, and other groups are actively developing new tools for watershed planning that will address many of the steps outlined below. We suggest you review information that has already been developed in the region of your concern. This may significantly reduce your efforts. A good place to start is: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/watershed/index.html

Comprehensive Planning Steps

1. Define the landscape unit you will be using for your planning effort. See the definition of landscape unit in the Definitions section.
2. Begin the plan for the landscape unit with attention to the following general principles:
   a. Formulate the plan based on clearly articulated community goals. Carefully identify conflicts and choices between retaining and protecting desired resources and community growth.

b. Map and assess the suitability of different areas for urban uses.

c. There are several tools available for identifying such areas. For more information visit http://www.ecy.wa.gov/mitigation/landscapeplan.html. When appropriate, the assessment can also highlight outstanding local or regional resources that the community determines should be protected. For example, a fish run, scenic area, recreational area, threatened species habitat, farmland.

3. Maximize natural water storage and infiltration opportunities within the landscape unit and outside of existing wetlands, especially:

   a. Promote the conservation of forest cover. Develop on deforested land. This affects the water flows in a basin less than building on land that requires removing forest cover. Loss of forest cover increases peak runoff requiring expensive structural solutions.

   b. Maintain natural storage reservoirs and drainage corridors, including depressions, areas of permeable soils, swales, and intermittent streams. Implement policies and regulations to discourage the clearing, filling, and channelization of these features. Use existing drainage networks in preference to pipes, culverts, and engineered ditches as long as the flows and volumes of water in them are not increased.

4. Establish and maintain buffers surrounding wetlands and in riparian zones. Also, maintain interconnections among wetlands and other natural habitats to allow for wildlife movements.

5. Implement measures to avoid general impacts on wetlands and other water bodies (e.g., littering, vegetation destruction, human and pet intrusion harmful to wildlife).

   In wetlands that are relatively unaffected by human activities, plan so the quantity or stormwater flows match the pre-project hydroperiod and hydrodynamics. In wetlands whose water flows have been disturbed, consider ways of reducing the existing changes to flows. This involves not only management of high volumes and rates of flow during the wet season, but also preventing water supply depletion during the dry season. The latter may require augmenting flows if urbanization reduces existing surface or ground water inflows. Refer to *Guide Sheet 3: Wetland Protection Guidelines*, for details on implementing these guidelines.

6. Assess alternatives for controlling the quantities of runoff as follows:

   a. Analyze proposed development actions in terms of changes to quantity of runoff.

   b. For existing development or redevelopment, assess possible alternative solutions to adding flow controls by:

(1) Protecting health, safety, and property from flooding by removing buildings from the flood plain.

(2) Preventing stream channel erosion by stabilizing the eroding bed and/or bank area with bioengineering techniques, preferably, by using structural reinforcements that are consistent with the protection of aquatic habitats and beneficial uses of the stream (refer to Chapter 173-201A of the Washington Administrative Code (WAC) for the definition of beneficial uses).

c. For new development or redevelopment, assess different regulatory alternatives or incentives for changing common practices in land use including: density controls, clearing limits, impervious surface limits, transfer of development rights, purchase of conservation areas, etc.

d. If the alternatives considered in Step 6 above cannot solve an existing or potential problem, perform an analysis of the contributing drainage catchment to assess possible alternative solutions that can be applied on-site or on a regional scale. The most appropriate solution or combination of alternatives should be selected with regard to the specific opportunities and constraints existing in the drainage catchment. For new development or redevelopment, on-site facilities that should be assessed include, in approximate order of preference:

(1) LID BMPs and LID principles

(2) Infiltration basins or trenches.

(3) Detention ponds.

(4) Below-ground vault or tank storage.

(5) Parking lot detention.

Regional facilities that should be assessed for solving problems associated with new development, redevelopment, or existing development include:

(1) LID BMPs and LID principles

(2) Infiltration basins or trenches.

(3) Detention ponds.

(4) Constructed wetlands.

(5) Bypassing a portion of the flow to an acceptable receiving water body, with treatment as required to protect water quality and other special precautions as necessary to prevent downstream impacts.

e. Consider physically altering an existing wetland for controlling water quantities only if upland alternatives are inadequate to solve the existing or potential problem. Refer to the criteria in Guide Sheet 1 and 2 to evaluate if wetlands can be altered.

7. Place strong emphasis on water resource protection during construction of new development. Establish effective erosion control programs to reduce the sediment loadings to receiving waters to the maximum extent possible. No preexisting wetland or other water body should ever be used for the sedimentation of solids in construction-phase runoff.

8. Characterize alternatives for the control of runoff water quality as follows:

   a. Analyze the contributing drainage catchment basin to assess possible alternative solutions that can be applied on-site or on a regional scale. The best alternatives are those that minimize changes to water quality resulting from development. Consider both source control BMPs, treatment BMPs, and LID BMPs as alternative solutions before considering use of existing wetlands.

   b. Consider altering an existing wetland for water quality control only if upland alternatives are inadequate to solve the existing or potential problem.

      Using wetlands for polishing is subject to analysis on a case-by-case basis and may be allowed only if the following conditions are met:

      (1) The restoration or enhancement of a previously degraded wetland is required.

      (2) Both improving water quality and the upgrading of other wetland functions need to be accomplished.

      (3) All legally adopted water quality standards for wetlands are observed.

      (4) Appropriate source control and treatment BMPs are applied in the contributing catchment on the basis of the analysis in Step 9a.

      If these circumstances apply, refer to *Guide Sheet 2: Criteria for Including Wetlands as a Treatment or Flow Control BMP/Facility*

9. Stimulate public awareness of and interest in wetlands and other water resources in order to encourage protective attitudes in the community. This program should include:

   a. Education regarding the use of fertilizers and pesticides, automobile maintenance, the care of animals and the importance of retaining buffers to prevent water pollution.

b. Descriptive signboards adjacent to wetlands informing residents of the wetland type, its functions, the protective measures taken, etc.

c. If beavers are present in a wetland, educate residents about their ecological role and value and take steps to avoid human interference with beavers.

Monitoring

Design and carry out a program to monitor water quality if bogs and other Category I wetlands will be subject to pollutant loadings from new developments. Such wetlands are at risk if they have contributing catchments with either of the following characteristics:

1. More than 20 percent of the catchment area is committed to commercial, industrial, and/or multiple family residential land uses.
2. The combination of all urban land uses (including single family residential) exceeds 30 percent of the catchment area.

The monitoring program should include the following tasks:

1. Perform pre-project baseline sampling by collecting water quality grab samples in an open water pool of the wetland for at least one year, allocated through the year as follows:

   - November 1-March 31--4 samples
   - April 1- May 31--1 sample
   - June 1- August 31--2 samples
   - September 1- October 31--1 sample

   If the wetland is dry during any period, reallocate the sample(s) scheduled then to another time when the wetland is no longer dry.

   Analyze samples for pH; dissolved oxygen (DO); conductivity (Cond); total suspended solids (TSS); total phosphorus (TP); nitrate + nitrite-nitrogen (N); fecal coliforms (FC); and total copper (Cu), lead (Pb), and zinc (Zn). Find the median and range of each water quality variable.

2. Considering the baseline results, set water quality goals to be maintained in the post-project period. Example goals are:

   - pH--no more than “x” percent (e.g., 10%) increase (relative to baseline) in annual median and maximum or decrease in annual minimum.;
   - Do--no more than “x” percent decrease in annual median and minimum concentrations.
   - Other variables--no more than “x” percent increase in annual median and maximum concentrations.
   - No increase in violations of the Washington Administrative Code (WAC) water quality criteria.

Repeat the sampling on the same schedule for at least one year after all development is complete. Compare the results to the set goals.

Information Needed to Apply the Guidelines

Each guide sheet requires collecting specific information. The following sections list the basic data needed for applying the Guide Sheets. As a start, obtain the relevant soil survey; the National Wetland Inventory for the watershed, topographic and land use maps, and the results of any local wetland inventory.

Data Needed for Guide Sheet 1: Criteria for Excluding Wetlands as Part of a Stormwater System

1. Wetland category Ecology's "Washington State Wetland Rating System for Western Washington," available on-line at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/sea.html.
2. Rare, threatened, or endangered species inhabiting the wetland.
3. Presence or absence of a breeding population of native amphibians. If amphibians are found in the wetland assume they are native unless you can demonstrate the only species present are non-native.

Data Needed for Guide Sheet 2: Criteria for Including Wetlands as Part of a Stormwater System

1. Hydrologic modeling of the existing flows and predicted flows into the wetland.
2. A characterization of the changes to water quality coming into the wetland from the development.
3. Presence of breeding populations of native amphibian species.
4. Presence of fish species.

Data Needed for Guide Sheet 3B: Protecting wetlands from impacts of changes in water flows

The WWHM user manual will have a modeling procedure for estimating water flows to wetlands. Follow the modeling procedure in WWHM user manual to estimate flows and determine compliance with the wetland Criteria 1 and 2. The information needed to model water flows to a wetland in WWHM includes the following:

1. Location of the development project
2. Land use characteristics before and after development.
   a) Soil Type
   b) Surface Vegetation
   c) Land slope
   d) Land area (acres)
3. Land use characteristics between the development project area and the wetland.

Data Needed for Guide Sheet 4: Jurisdictional Planning for Wetlands and Stormwater Management

1. Wetland boundary delineated using the latest Federal Manuals http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/sea/wetlands/delineation.html
2. A map of the contributing watershed to the wetland or other landscape unit, and an estimate of its area.
3. A definition of environmental and development goals for the landscape unit subject to planning and management.
4. Existing management and monitoring plans.
5. Existing and projected land use in the landscape unit in the categories commercial, industrial, multi-family residential, single-family residential, agricultural, various categories of undeveloped, and areas subject to active logging or construction (expressed as percentages of the total watershed area).
6. Surface drainage network throughout the landscape unit.
7. Soil conditions, including soil types, infiltration rates, and elevation of water table as it changes seasonally, and the presence of any restrictive layers,
8. Ground water recharge and discharge points.

Definitions

The following terms are applicable only to this appendix (Appendix I-D).

Baseline sampling	Sampling performed to define the existing environmental and biological conditions present before any modification occurs.
Bioengineering	Bioengineering for streams and wetlands --The use of living and nonliving plant materials in combination with naturea and synthetic support materials for slope stabilization, erosion reduction, and vegetative establishment.
Buffer	The area (either upland, open water, or another wetland) that surrounds a wetland and that reduces adverse impacts to it from adjacent development.
Constructed wetland	A wetland intentionally created from a non-wetland site.
Degraded wetland	A wetland whose functions and values have been reduced as a result of human activities
Enhancement	The manipulation of the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of a wetland site to heighten, intensify or improve specific function(s) or to change

the growth stage or composition of the vegetation present. Enhancement is undertaken for specified purposes such as water quality improvement, flood water retention or wildlife habitat. Activities typically consist of planting vegetation, controlling non-native or invasive species, modifying site elevations or the proportion of open water to influence hydroperiods, or some combination of these. Enhancement results in a change in some wetland functions and can lead to a decline in other wetland functions, but does not result in a gain in wetland acres.

Estuarine wetland Generally, a vegetated wetland where the salinity of the surface or port waters is greater than 0.5 parts per thousand.

Functions The ecological (physical, chemical, and biological) processes or attributes of a wetland. Functions are often defined in terms of the processes that provide value to society, but they can be defined on processes that are not value based. Wetland functions include food chain support, provision of ecosystem diversity and fish and wildlife habitat, flood flow alteration, ground water recharge and discharge, water quality improvement, and soil stabilization.

Hydrodynamics The science involving the energy and forces acting on water or other liquids and the resulting impact on the motion of the liquid.

Hydroperiod The seasonal occurrence of flooding and/or soil saturation; encompasses the depth, frequency, duration, and seasonal pattern of inundation.

Invasive plant species Opportunistic plant species (either native or non-native) that colonize disturbed ecosystems and come to dominate the plant community in ways that are seen by us as reducing the values provided by the previous plant community. Most often, opportunistic plants are considered invasive if they reduce the value of an area as habitat for valuable species.

Landscape unit An area of land that has a specified boundary used for planning purposes that defines an area of interrelated physical, chemical, and biological processes. A watershed or drainage basin is a common type of landscape unit. A ground water aquifer is another type of landscape unit.

Modification, Modified (wetland)	A wetland whose physical, hydrological, or water quality characteristics have been purposefully altered for a management purpose, such as by dredging, filling, forebay construction, and inlet or outlet control.
On-site	An action (here, for stormwater management purposes) taken within the property boundaries of the site to which the action applies.
Polishing	Additional treatment of a waste stream that has already received one or more stages of treatment by other means. This is also called advance treatment. The conditions present across a landscape after a specific stormwater management project (e.g., raising the outlet, building and outlet control structure) are placed in the wetland or a land use change that occurs in the landscape unit that will potentially affect the wetland.
Post-project	The conditions present across a landscape after a specific stormwater management project (e.g., raising the outlet, building an outlet control structure) are placed in the wetland or a land use change that occurs in the landscape unit that will potentially affect the wetland.
Pre-project	The conditions present across a landscape before a specific stormwater management project (e.g., raising the outlet, building an outlet control structure) are placed in the wetland or a land use change occurs in the landscape unit that will potentially affect the wetland.
Rare, threatened, or endangered species	Plant or animal species that are regional relatively uncommon, are nearing endangered status, or whose existence is in immediate jeopardy and is usually restricted to highly specific habitats. Threatened and endangered species are officially listed by federal and state authorities, whereas rare species are unofficial species of concern that fit the above definitions.
Redevelopment	Conversion of an existing development to another land use, or addition of a material improvement to an existing development.
Regional	An action (here, for stormwater management purposes) that involves more than one discrete property.
Re-establishment	Actions performed to reestablish wetland functional characteristics and processes that have been lost by alterations, activities, or catastrophic events in an area that no longer meets the definition of a wetland.

Structure The physical components of an ecosystem, both the abiotic (physical and chemical) and biotic (living).

Values Wetland processes or attributes that are valuable or beneficial to society (also see Functions). Wetland values include support of commercial and sport fish and wildlife species, protection of life and property from flooding, recreation, education, and aesthetic enhancement of human communities.

Wetlands Those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or ground water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas. Wetlands do not include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland sites, including, but not limited to, irrigation and drainage ditches, grass-lined swales, canals, detention facilities, wastewater treatment facilities, farm ponds, and landscape amenities, or those wetlands created after July 1, 1990, that were unintentionally created as a result of the construction of a road, street, or highway. Wetlands may include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland areas to mitigate the conversion of wetlands. (Waterbodies not included in the definition of wetlands as well as those mentioned in the definition are still waters of the state.)

Appendix I-E Flow Control-Exempt Surface Waters

Stormwater discharges, that are otherwise subject to Minimum Requirement #7 – Flow Control, to waters on this list must meet the following restrictions to be exempt from Minimum Requirement #7.

- Direct discharge to the exempt receiving water does not result in the diversion of drainage from any perennial stream classified as Types 1, 2, 3, or 4 in the State of Washington Interim Water Typing System, or Types "S", "F", or "Np" in the Permanent Water Typing System, or from any category I, II, or III wetland; and
- Flow splitting devices or drainage BMP's are applied to route natural runoff volumes from the project site to any downstream Type 5 stream or category IV wetland:
    - Design of flow splitting devices or drainage BMP's will be based on continuous hydrologic modeling analysis. The design will assure that flows delivered to Type 5 stream reaches will approximate, but in no case exceed, durations ranging from 50% of the 2-year to the 50-year peak flow.
    - Flow splitting devices or drainage BMP's that deliver flow to category IV wetlands will also be designed using continuous hydrologic modeling to preserve pre-project wetland hydrologic conditions unless specifically waived or exempted by regulatory agencies with permitting jurisdiction; and
- The project site must be drained by a conveyance system that is comprised entirely of manmade conveyance elements (e.g., pipes, ditches, outfall protection) and extends to the ordinary high water mark of the exempt receiving water; and
- The conveyance system between the project site and the exempt receiving water shall have a hydraulic capacity sufficient to convey discharges from future build-out conditions (under current zoning) of the site, and the existing condition from non-project areas from which runoff is or will be collected; and
- Any erodible elements of the manmade conveyance system must be adequately stabilized to prevent erosion under the conditions noted above.

Exempt Surface Waters List.

Water Body	**Upstream Point/Reach for Exemption** (if applicable)
Alder Lake	
Baker Lake	
Baker River	Baker River/Baker Lake downstream of the confluence with Noisy Creek
Bogachiel River	0.4 miles downstream of Dowans Creek
Calawah River	Downstream of confluence with South Fork Calawah River
Capital Lake / Deschutes River	Downstream of Tumwater Falls
Carbon River	Downstream of confluence with South Prairie Creek
Cascade River	Downstream of Found Creek
Cedar River	Downstream of confluence with Taylor Creek
Chehalis River	1,500 feet downstream of confluence with Stowe Creek
Chehalis River, South Fork	1,000 feet upstream of confluence with Lake Creek
Cispus River	Downstream of confluence with Cat Creek
Clearwater River	Downstream of confluence with Christmas Creek
Coal Creek Slough	Boundary of Consolidated Diking and Irrigation District #1 to confluence with the Columbia River.
Columbia River	Downstream of Canadian border
Consolidated Diking and Irrigations District #1	Waters that lie within the area bounded by the Columbia River on the south, the Cowlitz River on the east, Ditch No. 10 to the west, and Ditch No. 6 to the north.
Consolidated Diking and Irrigation District #3	Ditches served by these pump stations: Tam O'Shanter #1 and #2, Coweeman, Baker Way, Elk's
Coweman River	Downstream of confluence with Gobble Creek
Cowlitz River	Downstream of confluence of Ohanapecosh River and Clear Fork Cowlitz River
Crescent Lake	
Dickey River	Downstream of confluence with Coal Creek
Dosewallips River	Downstream of confluence with Rocky Brook
Dungeness River	Downstream of confluence with Gray Wolf River
Duwamish / Green River	Downstream River Mile 6 (S. Boeing Access Road)
Elwha River	Downstream of confluence with Goldie River
Erdahl Ditch in Fife	Downstream of pump station
First Creek in Tacoma	
Grays River	Downstream of confluence with Hull Creek
Green River (WRIA 26 – Cowlitz)	3.5 miles upstream of Devils Creek
Hoh River	1.2 miles downstream of Jackson Creek
Humptulips River	Downstream of confluence with West and East Forks
Johns Creek	Downstream of Interstate-405 East Right-of-way
Kalama River	2.0 miles downstream of Jacks Creek
Lacamas Lake	
Lake Cushman	
Lake Quinault	
Lake River (Clark County)	
Lake Shannon	
Lake Sammamish	
Lake Union & Union Bay	King County
Lake Washington, Montlake Cut, Ship Canal, & Salmon Bay	

Water Body	**Upstream Point/Reach for Exemption** (if applicable)
Lake Whatcom	
Lewis River	Downstream of confluence with Quartz Creek
Lewis River, East Fork	Downstream of confluence with Big Tree Creek
Lightning Creek	Downstream of confluence with Three Fools Creek
Little White Salmon River	Downstream of confluence with Lava Creek
Mayfield Lake	
Mercer Slough	
Muddy River	Downstream of confluence with Clear Creek
Naselle River	Downstream of confluence with Johnson Creek
Newaukum River	Downstream of confluence with South Fork Newaukum River
Nisqually River	Downstream of confluence with Big Creek
Nooksack River	Downstream of confluence of North Fork and Middle Forks
Nooksack River, North Fork	Downstream of confluence with Glacier Creek, at USGS gauge 12205000
Nooksack River, South Fork	0.1 miles upstream of confluence with Skookum Creek
North River	Downstream of confluence with Vesta Creek
Ohanapecosh River	Downstream of confluence with Summit Creek
Puyallup River	Half-mile downstream of confluence with Kellog Creek
Queets River	Downstream of confluence with Tshletshy Creek
Quillayute River	Downstream of Bogachiel River
Quinault River	Downstream of confluence with North Fork Quinault River
Riffe Lake	
Round Lake	
Ruby Creek	Ruby Creek at SR-20 crossing downstream of Granite and Canyon Creeks
Sammamish River	Downstream of Lake Sammamish
Satsop River	Downstream of confluence of Middle and East Forks
Satsop River, East Fork	Downstream of confluence with Decker Creek
Sauk River	Downstream of confluence of South Fork and North Fork
Sauk River, North Fork	North Fork Sauk River at Bedal Campground
Silver Lake	Cowlitz County
Skagit River	Downstream of Canadian border
Skokomish River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Fork
Skokomish River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence with Vance Creek
Skokomish River, North Fork	Downstream of confluence with McTaggert Creek
Skookumchuck River	1 mile upstream of Bucoda at SR 507 mile post 11.0
Skykomish River	Downstream of South Fork
Skykomish River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence of Tye and Foss Rivers
Snohomish River	Down stream of confluence of Snoqualmie and Skykomish Rivers
Snohomish River Estuary	
Snoqualmie River	Downstream of confluence of the Middle Fork
Snoqualmie River, Middle Fork	Downstream of confluence with Rainy Creek
Sol Duc River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Fork Soleduck River
Stillaguamish River	Downstream of confluence of North and South Fork
Stillaguamish River, North Fork	7.7 highway miles west of Darrington on SR530, downstream of confluence with French Creek.
Stillaguamish River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence of Cranberry Creek and South Fork
Suiattle River	Downstream of confluence with Milk Creek
Sultan River	0.4 miles upstream of SR2
Swift Creek Reservoir	
Thunder Creek	Downstream of the confluence with Neve Creek

Water Body	**Upstream Point/Reach for Exemption** (if applicable)
Tilton River	Downstream of confluence with North Fork Tilton River
Toutle River	North and South Fork Confluence
Toutle River, North Fork	Downstream of confluence with Hoffstadt Creek
Toutle River, South Fork	Downstream of confluence with Thirteen Creek
Union Bay	
Vancouver Lake	
White River	Downstream of confluence with Huckleberry Creek
Willapa River	Downstream of confluence with Mill Creek
Wind River	Downstream of confluence with Cold Creek
Wynochee Lake	
Wynoochee River	Downstream of confluence with Schafer Creek

Appendix I-F Basins with 40% or more total impervious area as of 1985

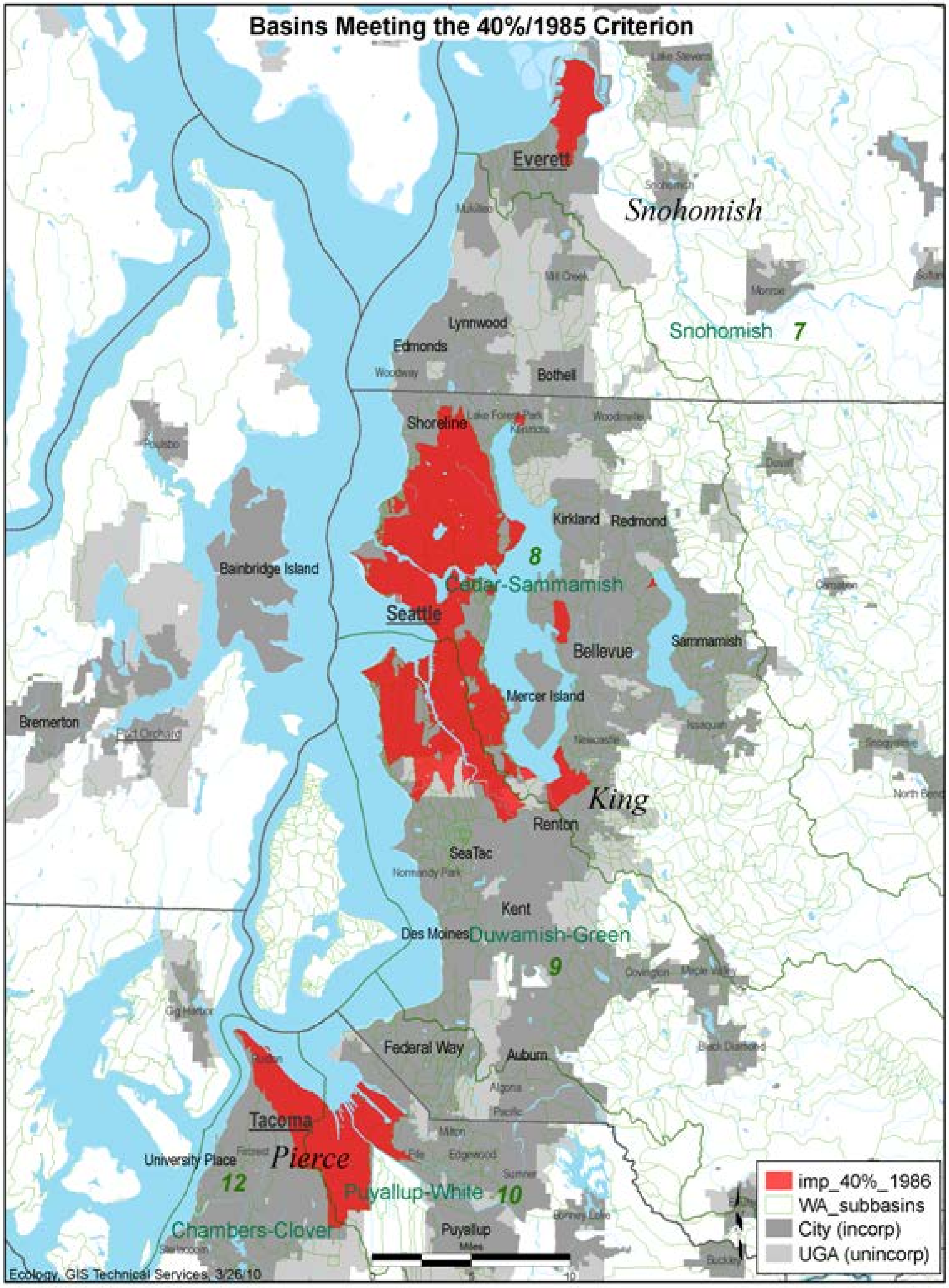


Figure F.1 – Basins with 40% total impervious area as of 1985

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix G Glossary and Notations

The following terms are provided for reference and use with this manual. They shall be superseded by any other definitions for these terms adopted by ordinance, unless they are defined in a Washington State WAC or RCW, or are used and defined as part of the Minimum Requirements for all new development and redevelopment.

AASHTO classification The official classification of soil materials and soil aggregate mixtures for highway construction, used by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials**.**

Absorption The penetration of a substance into or through another, such as the dissolving of a soluble gas in a liquid.

Adjacent steep slope A slope with a gradient of 15 percent or steeper within five hundred feet of the site.

Adjustment A variation in the application of a Minimum Requirement to a particular project. Adjustments provide substantially equivalent environmental protection.

Administrator The local government official(s) authorized to make decisions in regard to Adjustments and Exceptions/Variances.

Adsorption The adhesion of a substance to the surface of a solid or liquid; often used to extract pollutants by causing them to be attached to such adsorbents as activated carbon or silica gel. Hydrophobic, or water-repulsing adsorbents, are used to extract oil from waterways when oil spills occur. Heavy metals such as zinc and lead often adsorb onto sediment particles.

Aeration The process of being supplied or impregnated with air. In waste treatment, the process used to foster biological and chemical purification. In soils, the process by which air in the soil is replenished by air from the atmosphere. In a well aerated soil, the soil air is similar in composition to the atmosphere above the soil. Poorly aerated soils usually contain a much higher percentage of carbon dioxide and a correspondingly lower percentage of oxygen.

Aerobic Living or active only in the presence of free (dissolved or molecular) oxygen.

Aerobic bacteria Bacteria that require the presence of free oxygen for their metabolic processes.

Aggressive plant species	Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant; applied to native species in this manual.
Algae	Primitive plants, many microscopic, containing chlorophyll and forming the base of the food chain in aquatic environments. Some species may create a nuisance when environmental conditions are suitable for prolific growth.
Algal bloom	Proliferation of living algae on the surface of lakes, streams or ponds; often stimulated by phosphate over-enrichment. Algal blooms reduce the oxygen available to other aquatic organisms.
American Public Works Association (APWA)	The Washington State Chapter of the American Public Works Association.
Anadromous	Fish that grow to maturity in the ocean and return to rivers for spawning.
Anaerobic	Living or active in the absence of oxygen.
Anaerobic bacteria	Bacteria that do not require the presence of free or dissolved oxygen for metabolism.
Annual flood	The highest peak discharge on average which can be expected in any given year.
Antecedent moisture conditions	The degree of wetness of a watershed or within the soil at the beginning of a storm.
Anti-seep collar	A device constructed around a pipe or other conduit and placed through a dam, levee, or dike for the purpose of reducing seepage losses and piping failures.
Anti-vortex device	A facility placed at the entrance to a pipe conduit structure such as a drop inlet spillway or hood inlet spillway to prevent air from entering the structure when the pipe is flowing full.
Applicable BMPs	As used in Volume IV, applicable BMPs are those source control BMPs that are expected to be required by local governments at new development and redevelopment sites. Applicable BMPs will also be required if they are incorporated into NPDES permits, or they are included by local governments in a stormwater program for existing facilities.
Applicant	The person who has applied for a development permit or approval.
Appurtenances	Machinery, appliances, or auxiliary structures attached to a main structure, but not considered an integral part thereof, for the purpose of enabling it to function.
Aquifer	A geologic stratum containing ground water that can be withdrawn and used for human purposes.

Arterial A road or street primarily for through traffic. The term generally includes roads or streets considered collectors. It does not include local access roads which are generally limited to providing access to abutting property. See also RCW 35.78.010, RCW 36.86.070, and RCW 47.05.021.

As-built drawings Engineering plans which have been revised to reflect all changes to the plans which occurred during construction.

As-graded The extent of surface conditions on completion of grading.

BSBL See Building set back line.

Background A description of pollutant levels arising from natural sources, and not because of man's immediate activities.

Backwater Water upstream from an obstruction which is deeper than it would normally be without the obstruction.

Baffle A device to check, deflect, or regulate flow.

Bankfull discharge A flow condition where streamflow completely fills the stream channel up to the top of the bank. In undisturbed watersheds, the discharge conditions occur on average every 1.5 to 2 years and controls the shape and form of natural channels.

Base flood A flood having a one percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year. This is also referred to as the 100-year flood.

Base flood elevation The water surface elevation of the base flood. It shall be referenced to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum of 1929 (NGVD).

Baseline sample A sample collected during dry-weather flow (i.e., it does not consist of runoff from a specific precipitation event).

Basin plan A plan that assesses, evaluates, and proposes solutions to existing and potential future impacts to the beneficial uses of, and the physical, chemical, and biological properties of waters of the state within a basin. Basins typically range in size from 1 to 50 square miles. A plan should include but not be limited to recommendations for:

- Stormwater requirements for new development and redevelopment;
- Capital improvement projects;
- Land Use management through identification and protection of critical areas, comprehensive land use and transportation plans, zoning regulations, site development standards, and conservation areas;
- Source control activities including public education and involvement, and business programs;
- Other targeted stormwater programs and activities, such as maintenance, inspections and enforcement;

- Monitoring; and
- An implementation schedule and funding strategy.

A plan that is "adopted and implemented" must have the following characteristics:

- It must be adopted by legislative or regulatory action of jurisdictions with responsibilities under the plan;
- Ordinances, regulations, programs, and procedures recommended by the plan should be in effect or on schedule to be in effect; and,
- An implementation schedule and funding strategy that are in progress.

Bearing capacity The maximum load that a material can support before failing.

Bedrock The more or less solid rock in place either on or beneath the surface of the earth. It may be soft, medium, or hard and have a smooth or irregular surface.

Bench A relatively level step excavated into earth material on which fill is to be placed.

Berm A constructed barrier of compacted earth, rock, or gravel. In a stormwater facility, a berm may serve as a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom.

Best management practice (BMP) The schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and structural and/or managerial practices, that when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the release of pollutants and other adverse impacts to waters of Washington State.

Biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) An indirect measure of the concentration of biologically degradable materials present in organic wastes. The amount of free oxygen utilized by aerobic organisms when allowed to attack the organic material in an aerobically maintained environment at a specified temperature (20°C) for a specific time period (5 days), and thus stated as BOD5. It is expressed in milligrams of oxygen utilized per liter of liquid waste volume (mg/l) or in milligrams of oxygen per kilogram of waste solution (mg/kg = ppm = parts per million parts). Also called biological oxygen demand.

Biodegradable Capable of being readily broken down by biological means, especially by microbial action. Microbial action includes the combined effect of bacteria, fungus, flagellates, amoebae, ciliates, and nematodes. Degradation can be rapid or may take many years depending upon such factors as available oxygen and moisture.

Bioengineering The combination of biological, mechanical, and ecological concepts (and methods) to control erosion and stabilize soil through the use of vegetation or in combination with construction materials.

Biofilter	A designed treatment facility using a combined soil and vegetation system for filtration, infiltration, adsorption, and biological uptake of pollutants in stormwater when runoff flows over and through. Vegetation growing in these facilities acts as both a physical filter which causes gravity settling of particulates by regulating velocity of flow, and also as a biological sink when direct uptake of dissolved pollutants occurs. The former mechanism is probably the most important in western Washington where the period of major runoff coincides with the period of lowest biological activity.
Biofiltration	The process of reducing pollutant concentrations in water by filtering the polluted water through biological materials.
Biological control	A method of controlling pest organisms by means of introduced or naturally occurring predatory organisms, sterilization, the use of inhibiting hormones, or other means, rather than by mechanical or chemical means.
Biological magnification	The increasing concentration of a substance along succeeding steps in a food chain. Also called biomagnification.
Bioretention BMP	Engineered facilities that store and treat stormwater by passing it through a specified soil profile, and either retain or detain the treated stormwater for flow attenuation. Refer to Chapter 7 of Volume V for Bioretention BMP types and design specifications.
Biosolids	Municipal sewage sludge that is a primarily organic, semisolid product resulting from the wastewater treatment process, that can be beneficially recycled and meets all applicable requirements under Chapter 173-308 WAC. Biosolids includes a material derived from biosolids, and septic tank sludge, also known as septage, that can be beneficially recycled and meets all applicable requirements under Chaper 173-308 WAC. For the purposes of Chapter 173-308 WAC, semisolid products include biosolids or products derived from biosolids ranging in character from mostly liquid to fully dried solids.
Bollard	A post (may or may not be removable) used to prevent vehicular access.
Bond	A surety bond, cash deposit or escrow account, assignment of savings, irrevocable letter of credit or other means acceptable to or required by the manager to guarantee that work is completed in compliance with the project's drainage plan and in compliance with all local government requirements.
Borrow area	A source of earth fill material used in the construction of embankments or other earth fill structures.
Buffer	The zone contiguous with a sensitive area that is required for the continued maintenance, function, and structural stability of the sensitive area. The critical functions of a riparian buffer (those

associated with an aquatic system) include shading, input of organic debris and coarse sediments, uptake of nutrients, stabilization of banks, interception of fine sediments, overflow during high water events, protection from disturbance by humans and domestic animals, maintenance of wildlife habitat, and room for variation of aquatic system boundaries over time due to hydrologic or climatic effects. The critical functions of terrestrial buffers include protection of slope stability, attenuation of surface water flows from stormwater runoff and precipitation, and erosion control.

Building setback line (BSBL) A line measured parallel to a property, easement, drainage facility, or buffer boundary, that delineates the area (defined by the distance of separation) where buildings or other obstructions are prohibited (including decks, patios, outbuildings, or overhangs beyond 18 inches). Wooden or chain link fences and landscaping are allowable within a building setback line. In this manual the minimum building setback line shall be 5 feet.

CIP See Capital Improvement Project.

Capital Improvement Project or Program (CIP) A project prioritized and scheduled as a part of an overall construction program or, the actual construction program.

Catch basin A chamber or well, usually built at the curb line of a street, for the admission of surface water to a sewer or subdrain, having at its base a sediment sump designed to retain grit and detritus below the point of overflow.

Catchline The point where a severe slope intercepts a different, more gentle slope.

Catchment Surface drainage area.

Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) The amount of exchangeable cations that a soil can absorb. Units are milli-equivalents per 100 g of soil, typically abbreviated simply as meq. Soil found to have a CEC of 5 meq at pH 7 will have CEC < 5 meq when pH < 7..

CESCL See Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead

Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL) An individual who has current certification through an approved erosion and sediment control training program that meets the minimum training standards established by Ecology (see BMP C160 of Volume II). A CESCL is knowledgeable in the principles and practices of erosion and sediment control. The CESCL must have the skills to assess site conditions and construction activities that could impact the quality of stormwater and, the effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures used to control the quality of stormwater discharges. Certification is obtained through an Ecology approved erosion and sediment control course. Course listings are provided online at Ecology's website.

Channel — A feature that conveys surface water and is open to the air.

Channel, constructed — Channels or ditches constructed (or reconstructed natural channels) to convey surface water.

Channel, natural — Streams, creeks, or swales that convey surface/ground water and have existed long enough to establish a stable route and/or biological community.

Channel stabilization — Erosion prevention and stabilization of velocity distribution in a channel using vegetation, jetties, drops, revetments, and/or other measures.

Channel storage — Water temporarily stored in channels while enroute to an outlet.

Channelization — Alteration of a stream channel by widening, deepening, straightening, cleaning, or paving certain areas to change flow characteristics.

Check dam — Small dam constructed in a gully or other small watercourse to decrease the streamflow velocity, minimize channel scour, and promote deposition of sediment.

Chemical oxygen demand (COD) — A measure of the amount of oxygen required to oxidize organic and oxidizable inorganic compounds in water. The COD test, like the BOD test, is used to determine the degree of pollution in water.

Civil engineer — A professional engineer licensed in the State of Washington in Civil Engineering.

Civil engineering — The application of the knowledge of the forces of nature, principles of mechanics and the properties of materials to the evaluation, design and construction of civil works for the beneficial uses of mankind.

Clay lens — A naturally occurring, localized area of clay which acts as an impermeable layer to runoff infiltration.

Clearing — The destruction and removal of vegetation by manual, mechanical, or chemical methods.

Closed depression — An area which is low-lying and either has no, or such a limited, surface water outlet that during storm events the area acts as a retention basin.

Cohesion — The capacity of a soil to resist shearing stress, exclusive of functional resistance.

Coliform bacteria — Microorganisms common in the intestinal tracts of man and other warm-blooded animals; all the aerobic and facultative anaerobic, gram-negative, nonspore-forming, rod-shaped bacteria which ferment lactose with gas formation within 48 hours at 35°C. Used as an indicator of bacterial pollution.

Commercial agriculture — Those activities conducted on lands defined in RCW 84.34.020(2), and activities involved in the production of crops or livestock for commercial trade. An activity ceases to be considered commercial agriculture when the area on which it is conducted is proposed for conversion to a nonagricultural use or has lain idle for more than five (5) years, unless the idle land is registered in a federal or state soils conservation program, or unless the activity is maintenance of irrigation ditches, laterals, canals, or drainage ditches related to an existing and ongoing agricultural activity.

Common Plan of Development or Sale A site where multiple separate and distinct construction activities may be taking place at different times on different schedules and/or by different contractors, but still under a single plan. Examples include: 1) phase projects and projects with multiple filings or lots, even if the separate phases or filings/lots will be constructed under separate contract or by separate owners (e.g., a development where lots are sold to separate builders); 2) a development plan that may be phased over multiple years, but is still under a consistent plan for long-term development; 3) projects in a contiguous area that may be unrelated but still under the same contract, such as construction of a building extension and a new parking lot at the same facility; and 4) linear projects such as roads, pipelines, or utilities. If the project is part of a common plan of development or sale, the disturbed area of the entire plan must be used in determine permit requirements.

Compaction The densification, settlement, or packing of soil in such a way that permeability of the soil is reduced. Compaction effectively shifts the performance of a hydrologic group to a lower permeability hydrologic group. For example, a group B hydrologic soil can be compacted and be effectively converted to a group C hydrologic soil in the way it performs in regard to runoff.

Compaction may also refer to the densification of a fill by mechanical means.

Compensatory storage New excavated storage volume equivalent to the flood storage capacity eliminated by filling or grading within the flood fringe. Equivalent shall mean that the storage removed shall be replaced by equal volume between corresponding one-foot contour intervals that are hydraulically connected to the floodway through their entire depth.

Compost Organic material that has undergone biological degradation and transformation under controlled conditions designed to promote aerobic decomposition at a solid waste facility in compliance with the requirements of Chapter 173-350 WAC, or biosolids composted in compliance with Chapter 173-308 WAC. Composting is a form of organic material recycling. Natural decay of organic solid waste under uncontrolled conditions does not result in composted material. (Note: Various BMPs have restrictions on the percentage of biosolids in compost, or do not allow biosolids in compost.)

Comprehensive planning Planning that takes into account all aspects of water, air, and land resources and their uses and limits.

Conservation district — A public organization created under state enabling law as a special-purpose district to develop and carry out a program of soil, water, and related resource conservation, use, and development within its boundaries, usually a subdivision of state government with a local governing body and always with limited authority. Often called a soil conservation district or a soil and water conservation district.

Constructed wetland — Those wetlands intentionally createdon sites that are not wetlands for the primary purpose of wastewater or stormwater treatment and managed as such. Constructed wetlands are normally considered as part of the stormwater collection and treatment system.

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan — A document that describes the potential for pollution problems on a construction project and explains and illustrates the measures to be taken on the construction site to control those problems.

Contour — An imaginary line on the surface of the earth connecting points of the same elevation.

Converted Vegetation (Areas) — The surfaces on a project site where native vegetation, pasture, scrub/shrub, or unmaintained non-native vegetation (e.g., Himalayan blackberry, scotch broom) are converted to lawn or landscaped areas, or where native vegetation is converted to pasture.

Conveyance — A mechanism for transporting water from one point to another, including pipes, ditches, and channels.

Conveyance system — The drainage facilities, both natural and man-made, which collect, contain, and provide for the flow of surface and stormwater from the highest points on the land down to a receiving water. The natural elements of the conveyance system include swales and small drainage courses, streams, rivers, lakes, and wetlands. The human-made elements of the conveyance system include gutters, ditches, pipes, channels, and most retention/detention facilities.

Cover crop — A close-growing crop grown primarily for the purpose of protecting and improving soil between periods of permanent vegetation.

Created wetland — Means those wetlands intentionally created from nonwetland sites to produce or replace natural wetland habitat (e.g., compensatory mitigation projects).

Critical Areas — At a minimum, areas which include wetlands, areas with a critical recharging effect on aquifers used for potable water, fish and wildlife habitat conservation areas, frequently flooded areas, geologically hazardous areas, including unstable slopes, and associated areas and ecosystems.

Critical Drainage Area — An area with such severe flooding, drainage and/or erosion/sedimentation conditions that the area has been formally adopted as a Critical Drainage Area by rule under the procedures specified in an ordinance.

Critical reach The point in a receiving stream below a discharge point at which the lowest dissolved oxygen level is reached and stream recovery begins.

Culvert Pipe or concrete box structure that drains open channels, swales or ditches under a roadway or embankment. Typically with no catch-basins or manholes along its length.

Cut Portion of land surface or area from which earth has been removed or will be removed by excavating; the depth below original ground surface to excavated surface.

Cut-and-fill Process of earth moving by excavating part of an area and using the excavated material for adjacent embankments or fill areas.

Cut slope A slope formed by excavating overlying material to connect the original ground surface with a lower ground surface created by the excavation. A cut slope is distinguished from a bermed slope, which is constructed by importing soil to create the slope.

DNS See Determination of Nonsignificance.

Dead storage The volume available in a depression in the ground below any conveyance system, or surface drainage pathway, or outlet invert elevation that could allow the discharge of surface and stormwater runoff.

Dedication of land Refers to setting aside a portion of a property for a specific use or function.

Degradation (Biological or chemical) The breakdown of complex organic or other chemical compounds into simpler substances, usually less harmful than the original compound, as with the degradation of a persistent pesticide. (Geological) Wearing down by erosion. (Water) The lowering of the water quality of a watercourse by an increase in the pollutant loading.

Degraded (disturbed) wetland (community) A wetland (community) in which the vegetation, soils, and/or hydrology have been adversely altered, resulting in lost or reduced functions and values; generally, implies topographic isolation; hydrologic alterations such as hydroperiod alteration (increased or decreased quantity of water), diking, channelization, and/or outlet modification; soils alterations such as presence of fill, soil removal, and/or compaction; accumulation of toxicants in the biotic or abiotic components of the wetland; and/or low plant species richness with dominance by invasive weedy species.

Denitrification The biochemical reduction of nitrates or nitrites in the soil or organic deposits to ammonia or free nitrogen.

Depression storage The amount of precipitation that is trapped in depressions on the surface of the ground.

Design engineer	The professional civil engineer licensed in the State of Washington who prepares the analysis, design, and engineering plans for an applicant's permit or approval submittal.
Design storm	A prescribed hyetograph and total precipitation amount (for a specific duration recurrence frequency) used to estimate runoff for a hypothetical storm of interest or concern for the purposes of analyzing existing drainage, designing new drainage facilities or assessing other impacts of a proposed project on the flow of surface water. (A hyetograph is a graph of percentages of total precipitation for a series of time steps representing the total time during which the precipitation occurs.)
Detention	The release of stormwater runoff from the site at a slower rate than it is collected by the stormwater facility system, the difference being held in temporary storage.
Detention facility	An above or below ground facility, such as a pond or tank, that temporarily stores stormwater runoff and subsequently releases it at a slower rate than it is collected by the drainage facility system. There is little or no infiltration of stored stormwater.
Detention time	The theoretical time required to displace the contents of a stormwater treatment facility at a given rate of discharge (volume divided by rate of discharge).
Determination of Nonsignificance (DNS)	The written decision by the responsible official of the lead agency that a proposal is not likely to have a significant adverse environmental impact, and therefore an EIS is not required.
Development	Means new development, redevelopment, or both. See definitions for each.
Discharge	Runoff leaving a new development or redevelopment via overland flow, built conveyance systems, or infiltration facilities. A hydraulic rate of flow, specifically fluid flow; a volume of fluid passing a point per unit of time, commonly expressed as cubic feet per second, cubic meters per second, gallons per minute, gallons per day, or millions of gallons per day.
Discharge Point	The location where a discharge leaves the Permittee's MS4 through the Permittee's MS4 facilities/BMPs designed to infiltrate.
Dispersion	Release of surface and stormwater runoff such that the flow spreads over a wide area and is located so as not to allow flow to concentrate anywhere upstream of a drainage channel with erodible underlying granular soils.
Ditch	A long narrow excavation dug in the earth for drainage with its top width less than 10 feet at design flow.
Divide, Drainage	The boundary between one drainage basin and another.

Drain A buried pipe or other conduit (closed drain). A ditch (open drain) for carrying off surplus surface water or ground water.

(To) Drain To provide channels, such as open ditches or closed drains, so that excess water can be removed by surface flow or by internal flow. To lose water (from the soil) by percolation.

Drainage Refers to the collection, conveyance, containment, and/or discharge of surface and stormwater runoff.

Drainage basin A geographic and hydrologic subunit of a watershed.

Drainage channel A drainage pathway with a well-defined bed and banks indicating frequent conveyance of surface and stormwater runoff.

Drainage course A pathway for watershed drainage characterized by wet soil vegetation; often intermittent in flow.

Drainage easement A legal encumbrance that is placed against a property's title to reserve specified privileges for the users and beneficiaries of the drainage facilities contained within the boundaries of the easement.

Drainage pathway The route that surface and stormwater runoff follows downslope as it leaves any part of the site.

Drainage review An evaluation by Plan Approving Authority staff of a proposed project's compliance with the drainage requirements in this manual or its technical equivalent.

Drainage, Soil As a natural condition of the soil, soil drainage refers to the frequency and duration of periods when the soil is free of saturation; for example, in well-drained soils the water is removed readily but not rapidly; in poorly drained soils the root zone is waterlogged for long periods unless artificially drained, and the roots of ordinary crop plants cannot get enough oxygen; in excessively drained soils the water is removed so completely that most crop plants suffer from lack of water. Strictly speaking, excessively drained soils are a result of excessive runoff due to steep slopes or low available water-holding capacity due to small amounts of silt and clay in the soil material. The following classes are used to express soil drainage:

Well drained - Excess water drains away rapidly and no mottling occurs within 36 inches of the surface.

- Moderately well drained - Water is removed from the soil somewhat slowly, resulting in small but significant periods of wetness. Mottling occurs between 18 and 36 inches.
- Somewhat poorly drained - Water is removed from the soil slowly enough to keep it wet for significant periods but not all of the time. Mottling occurs between 8 and 18 inches.
- Poorly drained - Water is removed so slowly that the soil is wet for a large part of the time. Mottling occurs between 0 and 8 inches.

- Very poorly drained - Water is removed so slowly that the water table remains at or near the surface for the greater part of the time. There may also be periods of surface ponding. The soil has a black to gray surface layer with mottles up to the surface.

Drawdown Lowering of the water surface (in open channel flow), water table or piezometric surface (in ground water flow) resulting from a withdrawal of water.

Drop-inlet spillway Overall structure in which the water drops through a vertical riser connected to a discharge conduit.

Drop spillway Overall structure in which the water drops over a vertical wall onto an apron at a lower elevation.

Drop structure A structure for dropping water to a lower level and dissipating its surplus energy; a fall. A drop may be vertical or inclined.

Dry weather flow The combination of ground water seepage and allowed non-stormwater flows found in storm sewers during dry weather. Also that flow in streams during the dry season.

EIS See Environmental Impact Statement.

ESC Erosion and Sediment Control (Plan).

Earth material Any rock, natural soil or fill and/or any combination thereof. Earth material shall not be considered topsoil used for landscape purposes. Topsoil used for landscaped purposes shall comply with ASTM D 5268 specifications. Engineered soil/landscape systems are also defined independently.

Easement The legal right to use a parcel of land for a particular purpose. It does not include fee ownership, but may restrict the owners use of the land.

Effective Impervious Surface Those impervious surfaces that are connected via sheet flow or discrete conveyance to a drainage system. Impervious surfaces are considered ineffective if: 1) the runoff is dispersed through at least one hundred feet of native vegetation in accordance with BMP T5.30 – "Full Dispersion" as described in Chapter 5 of Volume V; 2) residential roof runoff is infiltrated in accordance with Downspout Full Infiltration Systems in BMP 5.10A Volume III; or 3) approved continuous runoff modeling methods indicate that the entire runoff file is infiltrated.

Embankment A structure of earth, gravel, or similar material raised to form a pond bank or foundation for a road.

Emergent plants Aquatic plants that are rooted in the sediment but whose leaves are at or above the water surface. These wetland plants often have high habitat value for wildlife and waterfowl, and can aid in pollutant uptake.

Emergency spillway A vegetated earth channel used to safely convey flood discharges in excess of the capacity of the principal spillway.

Emerging technology Treatment technologies that have not been evaluated with approved protocols, but for which preliminary data indicate that they may provide a necessary function(s) in a stormwater treatment system. Emerging technologies need additional evaluation to define design criteria to achieve, or to contribute to achieving, state performance goals, and to define the limits of their use.

Energy dissipater Any means by which the total energy of flowing water is reduced. In stormwater design, they are usually mechanisms that reduce velocity prior to, or at, discharge from an outfall in order to prevent erosion. They include rock splash pads, drop manholes, concrete stilling basins or baffles, and check dams.

Energy gradient The slope of the specific energy line (i.e., the sum of the potential and velocity heads).

Engineered soil/ landscape system This is a self-sustaining soil and plant system that simultaneously supports plant growth, soil microbes, water infiltration, nutrient and pollutant adsorption, sediment and pollutant biofiltration, water interflow, and pollution decomposition. The system shall be protected from compaction and erosion. The system shall be planted and/or mulched as part of the installation.

The engineered soil/plant system shall have the following characteristics:

a. Be protected from compaction and erosion.

b. Have a plant system to support a sustained soil quality.

c. Possess permeability characteristics of not less than 6.0, 2.0, and 0.6 inches/hour for hydrologic soil groups A, B, and C, respectively (per ASTM D 3385). D is less than 0.6 inches/hour.

d. Possess minimum percent organic matter of 12, 14, 16, and 18 percent (dry-weight basis) for hydrologic soil groups A, B, C, and D, respectively (per ASTM D 2974).

Engineering geology The application of geologic knowledge and principles in the investigation and evaluation of naturally occurring rock and soil for use in the design of civil works.

Engineering plan A plan prepared and stamped by a professional civil engineer.

Enhancement To raise value, desirability, or attractiveness of an environment associated with surface water.

Environmental Impact Statement (EIS) A document that discusses the likely significant adverse impacts of a proposal, ways to lessen the impacts, and alternatives to the proposal. They are required by the national and state environmental policy acts when projects are determined to have significant environmental impact.

Erodible granular soils Soil materials that are easily eroded and transported by running water, typically fine or medium grained sand with minor gravel, silt, or clay content. Such soils are commonly described as Everett or Indianola series soil types in the SCS classification. Also included are any soils showing examples of existing severe stream channel incision as indicated by unvegetated streambanks standing over two feet high above the base of the channel.

Erodible or leachable materials Wastes, chemicals, or other substances that measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of runoff when exposed to rainfall. Examples include erodible soils that are stockpiled, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage dumpster leakage.

Erosion The wearing away of the land surface by running water, wind, ice, or other geological agents, including such processes as gravitational creep. Also, detachment and movement of soil or rock fragments by water, wind, ice, or gravity. The following terms are used to describe different types of water erosion:

Accelerated erosion - Erosion much more rapid than normal or geologic erosion, primarily as a result of the influence of the activities of man or, in some cases, of the animals or natural catastrophes that expose bare surfaces (e.g., fires).

- Geological erosion - The normal or natural erosion caused by geological processes acting over long geologic periods and resulting in the wearing-away of mountains, the building up of floodplains, coastal plains, etc. Synonymous with natural erosion.
- Gully erosion - The erosion process whereby water accumulates in narrow channels and, over short periods, removes the soil from this narrow area to considerable depths, ranging from 1 to 2 feet to as much as 75 to 100 feet.
- Natural erosion - Wearing away of the earth's surface by water, ice, or other natural agents under natural environmental conditions of climate, vegetation, etc., undisturbed by man. Synonymous with geological erosion.
- Normal erosion - The gradual erosion of land used by man which does not greatly exceed natural erosion.
- Rill erosion - An erosion process in which numerous small channels only several inches deep are formed; occurs mainly on recently disturbed and exposed soils. See Rill.
- Sheet erosion - The removal of a fairly uniform layer of soil from the land surface by runoff.
- Splash erosion - The spattering of small soil particles caused by the impact of raindrops on wet soils. The loosened and spattered

particles may or may not be subsequently removed by surface runoff.

Erosion classes (soil survey) A grouping of erosion conditions based on the degree of erosion or on characteristic patterns. Applied to accelerated erosion, not to normal, natural, or geological erosion. Four erosion classes are recognized for water erosion and three for wind erosion.

Erosion and sedimentation control Any temporary or permanent measures taken to reduce erosion; control siltation and sedimentation; and ensure that sediment-laden water does not leave the site.

Erosion and sediment control facility A type of drainage facility designed to hold water for a period of time to allow sediment contained in the surface and stormwater runoff directed to the facility to settle out so as to improve the quality of the runoff.

Escarpment A steep face or a ridge of high land.

Estuarine wetland Generally, an eelgrass bed; salt marsh; or rocky, sandflat, or mudflat intertidal area where fresh and salt water mix. (Specifically, a tidal wetland with salinity greater than 0.5 parts per thousand, usually semi-enclosed by land but with partially obstructed or sporadic access to the open ocean).

Estuary An area where fresh water meets salt water, or where the tide meets the river current (e.g., bays, mouths of rivers, salt marshes, and lagoons). Estuaries serve as nurseries and spawning and feeding grounds for large groups of marine life and provide shelter and food for birds and wildlife.

Eutrophication Refers to the process where nutrient over-enrichment of water leads to excessive growth of aquatic plants, especially algae.

Evapotranspiration The collective term for the processes of evaporation and plant transpiration by which water is returned to the atmosphere.

Excavation The mechanical removal of earth material.

Exception Relief from the application of a Minimum Requirement to a project.

Exfiltration The downward movement of runoff through the bottom of an infiltration BMP into the soil layer or the downward movement of water through soil.

FIRM See Flood Insurance Rate Map.

Fertilizer Any material or mixture used to supply one or more of the essential plant nutrient elements.

Fill A deposit of earth material placed by artificial means.

Filter fabric A woven or nonwoven, water-permeable material generally made of synthetic products such as polypropylene and used in stormwater management and erosion and sediment control applications to trap sediment or prevent the clogging of aggregates by fine soil particles.

Filter fabric fence A temporary sediment barrier consisting of a filter fabric stretched across and attached to supporting posts and entrenched. The filter fence is constructed of stakes and synthetic filter fabric with a rigid wire fence backing where necessary for support. Also commonly referred to in the Washington Department of Transportation standard specifications as "construction geotextile for temporary silt fences."

Filter strip A grassy area with gentle slopes that treats stormwater runoff from adjacent paved areas before it concentrates into a discrete channel.

Flocculation The process by which suspended colloidal or very fine particles are assembled into larger masses or floccules which eventually settle out of suspension. This process occurs naturally but can also be caused through the use of such chemicals as alum.

Flood An overflow or inundation that comes from a river or any other source, including (but not limited to) streams, tides, wave action, storm drains, or excess rainfall. Any relatively high stream flow overtopping the natural or artificial banks in any reach of a stream.

Flood control Methods or facilities for reducing flood flows and the extent of flooding.

Flood control project A structural system installed to protect land and improvements from floods by the construction of dikes, river embankments, channels, or dams.

Flood frequency The frequency with which the flood of interest may be expected to occur at a site in any average interval of years. Frequency analysis defines the "n-year flood" as being the flood that will, over a long period of time, be equaled or exceeded on the average once every "n" years.

Flood fringe That portion of the floodplain outside of the floodway which is covered by floodwaters during the base flood; it is generally associated with slower moving or standing water rather than rapidly flowing water.

Flood hazard areas Those areas subject to inundation by the base flood. Includes, but is not limited to streams, lakes, wetlands, and closed depressions.

Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) The official map on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency has delineated many areas of flood hazard, floodway, and the risk premium zones.

Flood Insurance Study The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency that includes flood profiles and the FIRM.

Flood peak The highest value of the stage or discharge attained by a flood; thus, peak stage or peak discharge.

Floodplain	The total area subject to inundation by a flood including the flood fringe and floodway.
Flood-proofing	Adaptations that ensure a structure is substantially impermeable to the passage of water below the flood protection elevation that resists hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and effects of buoyancy.
Flood protection elevation	The base flood elevation or higher as defined by the local government.
Flood protection facility	Any levee, berm, wall, enclosure, raise bank, revetment, constructed bank stabilization, or armoring, that is commonly recognized by the community as providing significant protection to a property from inundation by flood waters.
Flood routing	An analytical technique used to compute the effects of system storage dynamics on the shape and movement of flow represented by a hydrograph.
Flood stage	The stage at which overflow of the natural banks of a stream begins.
Floodway	The channel of the river or stream and those portions of the adjoining floodplains that are reasonably required to carry and discharge the base flood flow. The portions of the adjoining floodplains which are considered to be "reasonably required" is defined by flood hazard regulations.
Flow control BMP (or facility)	A drainage facility designed to mitigate the impacts of increased surface and stormwater runoff flow rates generated by development. Flow control facilities are designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, and/or infiltration into the ground, or to hold runoff for a short period of time, releasing it to the conveyance system at a controlled rate.
Flow duration	The aggregate time that peak flows are at or above a particular flow rate of interest. For example, the amount of time that peak flows are at or above 50% of the 2-year peak flow rate for a period of record.
Flow frequency	The inverse of the probability that the flow will be equaled or exceeded in any given year (the exceedance probability). For example, if the exceedance probability is 0.01 or 1 in 100, that flow is referred to as the 100-year flow.
Flow path	The route that stormwater runoff follows between two points of interest.
Forebay	An easily maintained, extra storage area provided near an inlet of a BMP to trap incoming sediments before they accumulate in a pond or wetland BMP.
Forest practice	Any activity conducted on or directly pertaining to forest land and relating to growing, harvesting, or processing timber, including but not limited to:

a. Road and trail construction.

b. Harvesting, final and intermediate.

c. Precommercial thinning.

d. Reforestation.

e. Fertilization.

f. Prevention and suppression of diseases and insects.

g. Salvage of trees.

h. Brush control.

Forested communities (wetlands) In general terms, communities (wetlands) characterized by woody vegetation that is greater than or equal to 6 meters in height; in this manual the term applies to such communities (wetlands) that represent a significant amount of tree cover consisting of species that offer wildlife habitat and other values and advance the performance of wetland functions overall.

Freeboard The vertical distance between the highest designed water surface elevation and the elevation of the crest of the facility. For example, in pond design, freeboard is the vertical distance between the emergency overflow water surface and the top of the pond embankment.

Frequently flooded areas The 100-year floodplain designations of the Federal Emergency Management Agency and the National Flood Insurance Program or as defined by the local government.

Frost-heave The upward movement of soil surface due to the expansion of water stored between particles in the first few feet of the soil profile as it freezes. May cause surface fracturing of asphalt or concrete.

Frequency of storm (design storm frequency) The anticipated period in years that will elapse, based on average probability of storms in the design region, before a storm of a given intensity and/or total volume will recur; thus a 10-year storm can be expected to occur on the average once every 10 years. Sewers designed to handle flows that occur under such storm conditions would be expected to be surcharged by any storms of greater amount or intensity.

Fully controlled limited access highway A highway where the right of owner or occupants of abutting land or other persons to access, light, air, or view in connection with the highway is controlled to give preference to through traffic by providing access connections with selected public roads only, and by prohibiting crossings or direct private driveway connections at grade. (See WAC 468-58-010)

Function(s) The ecological (physical, chemical, and biological) processes or attributes of a wetland without regard for their importance to society (see also values). Wetland functions include food chain support, provision of ecosystem diversity and fish and wildlife habitat, floodflow alteration, ground water recharge and discharge, water quality improvement, and soil stabilization.

Gabion — A rectangular or cylindrical wire mesh cage (a chicken wire basket) filled with rock and used as a protecting agent, revetment, etc., against erosion. Soft gabions, often used in streambank stabilization, are made of geotextiles filled with dirt, in between which cuttings are placed.

Gage or gauge — Device for registering precipitation, water level, discharge, velocity, pressure, temperature, etc. Also, a measure of the thickness of metal; e.g., diameter of wire, wall thickness of steel pipe.

Gaging station — A selected section of a stream channel equipped with a gage, recorder, or other facilities for determining stream discharge.

Geologist — A person who has earned a degree in geology from an accredited college or university or who has equivalent educational training and has at least five years of experience as a practicing geologist or four years of experience and at least two years post-graduate study, research or teaching. The practical experience shall include at least three years work in applied geology and landslide evaluation, in close association with qualified practicing geologists or geotechnical professional/civil engineers.

Geologically hazardous areas — Areas that because of their susceptibility to erosion, sliding, earthquake, or other geological events, are not suited to the siting of commercial, residential, or industrial development consistent with public health or safety concerns.

Geometrics — The mathematical relationships between points, lines, angles, and surfaces used to measure and identify areas of land.

Geotechnical professional civil engineer — A practicing, geotechnical/civil engineer licensed as a professional Civil Engineer with the State of Washington who has at least four years of professional employment as a geotechnical engineer in responsible charge, including experience with landslide evaluation.

Grade — The slope of a road, channel, or natural ground. The finished surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment, or bottom of excavation; any surface prepared for the support of construction such as paving or the laying of a conduit.

(To) Grade — To finish the surface of a canal bed, roadbed, top of embankment or bottom of excavation.

Gradient terrace — An earth embankment or a ridge-and-channel constructed with suitable spacing and an acceptable grade to reduce erosion damage by intercepting surface runoff and conducting it to a stable outlet at a stable nonerosive velocity.

Grassed waterway — A natural or constructed waterway, usually broad and shallow, covered with erosion-resistant grasses, used to conduct surface water from an area at a reduced flow rate. See also biofilter.

Ground water Water in a saturated zone or stratum beneath the land surface or a surface waterbody.

Ground water recharge Inflow to a ground water reservoir.

Ground water table The free surface of the ground water, that surface subject to atmospheric pressure under the ground, generally rising and falling with the season, the rate of withdrawal, the rate of restoration, and other conditions. It is seldom static.

Gully A channel caused by the concentrated flow of surface and stormwater runoff over unprotected erodible land.

Habitat The specific area or environment in which a particular type of plant or animal lives. An organism's habitat must provide all of the basic requirements for life and should be protected from harmful biological, chemical, and physical alterations.

Hardpan A cemented or compacted and often clay-like layer of soil that is impenetrable by roots. Also known as glacial till.

Hard Surface An impervious surface, a permeable pavement, or a vegetated roof.

Harmful pollutant A substance that has adverse effects to an organism including immediate death, chronic poisoning, impaired reproduction, cancer or other effects.

Head (hydraulics) The height of water above any plane of reference. The energy, either kinetic or potential, possessed by each unit weight of a liquid, expressed as the vertical height through which a unit weight would have to fall to release the average energy possessed. Used in various compound terms such as pressure head, velocity head, and head loss.

Head loss Energy loss due to friction, eddies, changes in velocity, or direction of flow.

Heavy metals Metals of high specific gravity, present in municipal and industrial wastes, that pose long-term environmental hazards. Such metals include cadmium, chromium, cobalt, copper, lead, mercury, nickel, and zinc.

High-use site High-use sites are those that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. High-use sites include:

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area;
- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil;

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.);
- A road intersection with a measured ADT count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.

Highway A main public road connecting towns and cities.

Hog fuel Wood-based mulch.

Horton overland flow A runoff process whereby the rainfall rate exceeds the infiltration rate, so that the precipitation that does not infiltrate flows downhill over the soil surface.

HSPF **Hydrological Simulation Program-Fortran.** A continuous simulation hydrologic model that transforms an uninterrupted rainfall record into a concurrent series of runoff or flow data by means of a set of mathematical algotrithms which represent the rainfall-runoff process at some conceptual level.

Humus Organic matter in or on a soil, composed of partly or fully decomposed bits of plant tissue or from animal manure.

Hydraulic Conductivity The quality of saturated soil that enables water or air to move through it. Also known as permeability coefficient

Hydraulic gradient Slope of the potential head relative to a fixed datum.

Hydrodynamics Means the dynamic energy, force, or motion of fluids as affected by the physical forces acting upon those fluids.

Hydrograph A graph of runoff rate, inflow rate or discharge rate, past a specific point over time.

Hydrologic cycle The circuit of water movement from the atmosphere to the earth and return to the atmosphere through various stages or processes as precipitation, interception, runoff, infiltration, percolation, storage, evaporation, and transpiration.

Hydrologic Soil Groups A soil characteristic classification system defined by the U.S. Soil Conservation Service in which a soil may be categorized into one of four soil groups (A, B, C, or D) based upon infiltration rate and other properties.

Type A: Low runoff potential. Soils having high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of deep, well drained to excessively drained sands or gravels. These soils have a high rate of water transmission.

Type B: Moderately low runoff potential. Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission.

Type C: Moderately high runoff potential. Soils having slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water, or soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a slow rate of water transmission.

Type D: High runoff potential. Soils having very slow infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted, and consisting chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential, soils with a permanent high water table, soils with a hardpan, till, or clay layer at or near the surface, soils with a compacted subgrade at or near the surface, and shallow soils or nearly impervious material. These soils have a very slow rate of water transmission.[1]

[1] Vladimir Novotny and Harvey Olem. *Water Quality Prevention, Identification, and Management of Diffuse Pollution,* Van Nostrand Reinhold: New York, 1994, p. 109.

Hydrology The science of the behavior of water in the atmosphere, on the surface of the earth, and underground.

Hydroperiod A seasonal occurrence of flooding and/or soil saturation; it encompasses depth, frequency, duration, and seasonal pattern of inundation.

Hyetograph A graph of percentages of total precipitation for a series of time steps representing the total time in which precipitation occurs.

Illicit discharge All non-stormwater discharges to stormwater drainage systems that cause or contribute to a violation of state water quality, sediment quality or ground water quality standards, including but not limited to sanitary sewer connections, industrial process water, interior floor drains, car washing, and greywater systems.

Impact basin A device used to dissipate the energy of flowing water. Generally constructed of concrete in the form of a partially depressed or partially submerged vessel, it may utilize baffles to dissipate velocities.

Impervious A surface which cannot be easily penetrated. For instance, rain does not readily penetrate paved surfaces.

Impervious surface A non-vegetated surface area which either prevents or retards the entry of water into the soil mantle as under natural conditions prior to development. A non-vegetated surface area which causes water to run off the surface in greater quantities or at an increased rate of flow from the flow present under natural conditions prior to development. Common impervious surfaces include, but are not limited to, roof tops, walkways, patios, driveways, parking lots or storage areas, concrete or asphalt paving, gravel roads, packed earthen materials, and oiled, macadam or other surfaces which similarly impede the natural infiltration of stormwater. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities shall not be considered as impervious surfaces for the purposes of determining whether the thresholds for application of minimum requirements are exceeded. Open, uncovered retention/detention facilities shall be considered impervious surfaces for purposes of runoff modeling.

Impoundment A natural or man-made containment for surface water.

Improvement Streets (with or without curbs or gutters), sidewalks, crosswalks, parking lots, water mains, sanitary and storm sewers, drainage facilities, street trees and other appropriate items.

Industrial activities Material handling, transportation, or storage; manufacturing; maintenance; treatment; or disposal. Areas with industrial activities include plant yards, access roads and rail lines used by carriers of raw materials, manufactured products, waste material, or by-products; material handling sites; refuse sites; sites used for the application or disposal of process waste waters; sites used for the storage and maintenance of material handling equipment; sites used for residual treatment, storage, or disposal; shipping and receiving areas; manufacturing buildings; storage areas for raw materials, and intermediate and finished products; and areas where industrial activity has taken place in the past and significant materials remain and are exposed to stormwater.

Infiltration Means the downward movement of water from the surface to the subsoil.

Infiltration facility (or system) A drainage facility designed to use the hydrologic process of surface and stormwater runoff soaking into the ground, commonly referred to as a percolation, to dispose of surface and stormwater runoff.

Infiltration rate The rate, usually expressed in inches/hour, at which water moves downward (percolates) through the soil profile. Short-term infiltration rates may be inferred from soil analysis or derived from field measurements. Long-term infiltration rates are affected by variability in soils and subsurface conditions at the site, the effectiveness of pretreatment or influent control, and the degree of long-term maintenance of the infiltration facility.

Ingress/egress The points of access to and from a property.

Inlet A form of connection between surface of the ground and a drain or sewer for the admission of surface and stormwater runoff.

Insecticide A substance, usually chemical, that is used to kill insects.

Interception (Hydraulics) The process by which precipitation is caught and held by foliage, twigs, and branches of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation. Often used for "interception loss" or the amount of water evaporated from the precipitation intercepted.

Interflow That portion of rainfall that infiltrates into the soil and moves laterally through the upper soil horizons until intercepted by a stream channel or until it returns to the surface for example, in a roadside ditch, wetland, spring or seep. Interflow is a function of the soil system depth, permeability, and water-holding capacity.

Intermittent stream A stream or portion of a stream that flows only in direct response to precipitation. It receives little or no water from springs and no long-continued supply from melting snow or other sources. It is dry for a large part of the year, ordinarily more than three months.

Invasive weedy plant species Opportunistic species of inferior biological value that tend to out-compete more desirable forms and become dominant; applied to non-native species in this manual.

Invert The lowest point on the inside of a sewer or other conduit.

Invert elevation The vertical elevation of a pipe or orifice in a pond that defines the water level.

Isopluvial map A map with lines representing constant depth of total precipitation for a given return frequency.

Lag time The interval between the center of mass of the storm precipitation and the peak flow of the resultant runoff.

Lake An area permanently inundated by water in excess of two meters deep and greater than 20 acres in size as measured at the ordinary high water marks.

Land disturbing activity Any activity that results in a change in the existing soil cover (both vegetative and nonvegetative) and/or the existing soil topography. Land disturbing activities include, but are not limited to clearing, grading, filling, and excavation. Compaction that is associated with stabilization of structures and road construction shall also be considered a land disturbing activity. Vegetation maintenance practices, including landscape maintenance and gardening, are not considered land-disturbing activity. Stormwater facility maintenance is not considered land disturbing activity if conducted according to established standards and procedures.

Landslide Episodic downslope movement of a mass of soil or rock that includes but is not limited to rockfalls, slumps, mudflows, and earthflows. For the purpose of these rules, snow avalanches are considered to be a special case of landsliding.

Landslide hazard areas Those areas subject to a severe risk of landslide.

Leachable materials Those substances that, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oil substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage dumpster leakage.

Leachate	Liquid that has percolated through soil and contains substances in solution or suspension.
Leaching	Removal of the more soluble materials from the soil by percolating waters.
Legume	A member of the legume or pulse family, Leguminosae, one of the most important and widely distributed plant families. The fruit is a "legume" or pod. Includes many valuable food and forage species, such as peas, beans, clovers, alfalfas, sweet clovers, and vetches. Practically all legumes are nitrogen-fixing plants.
Level pool routing	The basic technique of storage routing used for sizing and analyzing detention storage and determining water levels for ponding water bodies. The level pool routing technique is based on the continuity equation: Inflow – Outflow = Change in storage.
Level spreader	A temporary ESC device used to spread out stormwater runoff uniformly over the ground surface as sheet flow (i.e., not through channels). The purpose of level spreaders is to prevent concentrated, erosive flows from occurring, and to enhance infiltration.
LID	See Low Impact Development
Local government	Any county, city, town, or special purpose district having its own incorporated government for local affairs.
Low flow channel	An incised or paved channel from inlet to outlet in a dry basin which is designed to carry low runoff flows and/or baseflow, directly to the outlet without detention.
Low Impact Development (LID)	A stormwater and land use management strategy that strives to mimic pre-disturbance hydrologic processes of infiltration, filtration, storage, evaporation and transpiration by emphasizing conservation, use of on-site natural features, site planning, and distributed stormwater management practices that are integrated into a project design.
Low Impact Development (LID) Best Management Practices	Distributed stormwater management practices, integrated into a project design, that emphasize pre-disturbance hydrologic processes of infiltration, filtration, storage, evaporation and transpiration. LID BMPs include, but are not limited to: bioretention, rain gardens, permeable pavements, roof downspout controls, dispersion, soil quality and depth, minimal excavation foundations, vegetated roofs, and water re-use.
Low Impact Development (LID) Principles	Land use management strategies that emphasize conservation, use of on-site natural features, and site planning to minimize impervious surfaces, native vegetation loss, and stormwater runoff.

Low permeability liner A layer of compacted till, compacted clay, concrete, or a geomembrane.

Lowest floor The lowest enclosed area (including basement) of a structure. An area used solely for parking of vehicles, building access, or storage, in an area other than a basement area, is not considered a building's lowest floor, provided that the enclosed area meets all of the structural requirements of the flood hazard standards.

MDNS A Mitigated Determination of Nonsignificance (See DNS and Mitigation).

Maintenance Repair and maintenance includes activities conducted on currently serviceable structures, facilities, and equipment that involves no expansion or use beyond that previously existing and results in no significant adverse hydrologic impact. It includes those usual activities taken to prevent a decline, lapse, or cessation in the use of structures and systems. Those usual activities may include replacement of dysfunctioning facilities, including cases where environmental permits require replacing an existing structure with a different type structure, as long as the functioning characteristics of the original structure are not changed. One example is the replacement of a collapsed, fish blocking, round culvert with a new box culvert under the same span, or width, of roadway. In regard to stormwater facilities, maintenance includes assessment to ensure ongoing proper operation, removal of built-up pollutants (i.e., sediments), replacement of failed or failing treatment media, and other actions taken to correct defects as identified in the maintenance standards of Chapter 4, Volume V. See also Pavement Maintenance exemptions in Section 2.2 of Volume I.

Manning's equation An equation used to predict the velocity of water flow in an open channel or pipelines:

$$V = \frac{1.486R^{2/3}S^{1/2}}{n}$$

where:

V is the mean velocity of flow in feet per second

R is the hydraulic radius in feet

S is the slope of the energy gradient or, for assumed uniform flow, the slope of the channel in feet per foot; and

n is Manning's roughness coefficient or retardance factor of the channel lining.

Mass wasting The movement of large volumes of earth material downslope.

Master drainage plan A comprehensive drainage control plan intended to prevent significant adverse impacts to the natural and manmade drainage system, both on and off-site.

Mean annual water level fluctuation — Derived as follows:

(1) Measure the maximum water level (e.g., with a crest stage gage, Reinelt and Horner 1990) and the existing water level at the time of the site visit (e.g., with a staff gage) on at least eight occasions spread through a year.

(2) Take the difference of the maximum and existing water level on each occasion and divide by the number of occasions.

Mean depth — Average depth; cross-sectional area of a stream or channel divided by its surface or top width.

Mean velocity — The average velocity of a stream flowing in a channel or conduit at a given cross-section or in a given reach. It is equal to the discharge divided by the cross-sectional area of the reach.

Measuring weir — A shaped notch through which water flows are measured. Common shapes are rectangular, trapezoidal, and triangular.

Mechanical analysis — The analytical procedure by which soil particles are separated to determine the particle size distribution.

Mechanical practices — Soil and water conservation practices that primarily change the surface of the land or that store, convey, regulate, or dispose of runoff water without excessive erosion.

Metals — Elements, such as mercury, lead, nickel, zinc and cadmium, which are of environmental concern because they do not degrade over time. Although many are necessary nutrients, they are sometimes magnified in the food chain, and they can be toxic to life in high enough concentrations. They are also referred to as heavy metals.

Microbes — The lower trophic levels of the soil food web. They are normally considered to include bacteria, fungi, flagellates, amoebae, ciliates, and nematodes. These in turn support the higher trophic levels, such as mites and earthworms. Together they are the basic life forms that are necessary for plant growth. Soil microbes also function to bioremediate pollutants such as petroleum, nutrients, and pathogens.

Mitigation — Means, in the following order of preference:

a. Avoiding the impact altogether by not taking a certain action or part of an action;

b. Minimizing impacts by limiting the degree or magnitude of the action and its implementation, by using appropriate technology, or by taking affirmative steps to avoid or reduce impacts;

c. Rectifying the impact by repairing, rehabilitating or restoring the affected environment;

d. Reducing or eliminating the impact over time by preservation and maintenance operations during the life of the action; and

e. Compensating for the impact by replacing, enhancing, or providing substitute resources or environments.

Modification, modified (wetland) A wetland whose physical, hydrological, or water quality characteristics have been purposefully altered for a management purpose, such as by dredging, filling, forebay construction, and inlet or outlet control.

Monitor To systematically and repeatedly measure something in order to track changes.

Monitoring The collection of data by various methods for the purposes of understanding natural systems and features, evaluating the impacts of development proposals on such systems, and assessing the performance of mitigation measures imposed as conditions of development.

Mulch A layer of organic material or aggregate applied to the surface of soil. Its purpose is any or all of the following:

- To conserve soil moisture or temperature
- To improve the fertility and health of the soil
- To reduce weed growth
- To hold fertilizer, seed, and soil in place
- To enhance the visual appeal of the area.

Types of mulches used in this manual include: Chipped site vegetation, compost, hydromulch, wood-based or wood straw, wood strand, straw, and aggregate.

NGPE See Native Growth Protection Easement.

NGVD National Geodetic Vertical Datum.

NPDES The National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System as established by the Federal Clean Water Act.

National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) The part of the federal Clean Water Act, which requires point source dischargers to obtain permits. These permits are referred to as NPDES permits and, in Washington State, are administered by the Washington State Department of Ecology.

Native Growth Protection Easement (NGPE) An easement granted for the protection of native vegetation within a sensitive area or its associated buffer. The NGPE shall be recorded on the appropriate documents of title and filed with the County Records Division.

Native vegetation Vegetation comprised of plant species, other than noxious weeds, that are indigenous to the coastal region of the Pacific Northwest and which reasonably could have been expected to naturally occur on the site. Examples include trees such as Douglas fir, Western Hemlock, Western Red Cedar, Alder, Big-leaf Maple, and Vine Maple; shrubs such as willow, elderberry, salmonberry and salal; and herbaceous plants such as sword fern, foam flower, and fireweed.

Natural location	Means the location of those channels, swales, and other non-manmade conveyance systems as defined by the first documented topographic contours existing for the subject property, either from maps or photographs, or such other means as appropriate. In the case of outwash soils with relatively flat terrain, no natural location of surface discharge may exist.
New development	Land disturbing activities, including Class IV -general forest practices that are conversions from timber land to other uses; structural development, including construction or installation of a building or other structure; creation of hard surfaces; and subdivision, short subdivision and binding site plans, as defined and applied in Chapter 58.17 RCW. Projects meeting the definition of redevelopment shall not be considered new development.
Nitrate (NO_3)	A form of nitrogen which is an essential nutrient to plants. It can cause algal blooms in water if all other nutrients are present in sufficient quantities. It is a product of bacterial oxidation of other forms of nitrogen, from the atmosphere during electrical storms and from fertilizer manufacturing.
Nitrification	The biochemical oxidation process by which ammonia is changed first to nitrites and then to nitrates by bacterial action, consuming oxygen in the water.
Nitrogen, Available	Usually ammonium, nitrite, and nitrate ions, and certain simple amines available for plant growth. A small fraction of organic or total nitrogen in the soil is available at any time.
Nonpoint source pollution	Pollution that enters a waterbody from diffuse origins on the watershed and does not result from discernible, confined, or discrete conveyances.
Normal depth	The depth of uniform flow. This is a unique depth of flow for any combination of channel characteristics and flow conditions. Normal depth is calculated using Manning's Equation.
NRCS Method	A single-event hydrologic analysis technique for estimating runoff based on the Curve Number method. The Curve Numbers are published by NRCS in *Technical Release No. 55: Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, 1986*. With the change in name to the Natural Resource Conservation Service, the method may be referred to as the NRCS Method.
Nutrients	Essential chemicals needed by plants or animals for growth. Excessive amounts of nutrients can lead to degradation of water quality and algal blooms. Some nutrients can be toxic at high concentrations.

Off-line facilities Water quality treatment facilities to which stormwater runoff is restricted to some maximum flow rate or volume by a flow-splitter.

Off-site Any area lying upstream of the site that drains onto the site and any area lying downstream of the site to which the site drains.

Off-system storage Facilities for holding or retaining excess flows over and above the carrying capacity of the stormwater conveyance system, in chambers, tanks, lagoons, ponds, or other basins that are not a part of the subsurface sewer system.

Oil/water separator A vault, usually underground, designed to provide a quiescent environment to separate oil from water.

On-line facilities Water quality treatment facilities which receive all of the stormwater runoff from a drainage area. Flows above the water quality design flow rate or volume are passed through at a lower percent removal efficiency.

On-site The entire property that includes the proposed development.

On-site Stormwater Management BMPs As used in this manual, a synonym for Low Impact Development BMPs.

Operational BMPs Operational BMPs are a type of Source Control BMP. They are schedules of activities, prohibition of practices, and other managerial practices to prevent or reduce pollutants from entering stormwater. Operational BMPs include formation of a pollution prevention team, good housekeeping, preventive maintenance procedures, spill prevention and clean-up, employee training, inspections of pollutant sources and BMPs, and record keeping. They can also include process changes, raw material/product changes, and recycling wastes.

Ordinary high water mark The term ordinary high water mark means the line on the shore established by the fluctuations of water and indicated by physical characteristics such as a clear, natural line impressed on the bank; shelving; changes in the character of soil destruction on terrestrial vegetation, or the presence of litter and debris; or other appropriate means that consider the characteristics of the surrounding area.

The ordinary high water mark will be found by examining the bed and banks of a stream and ascertaining where the presence and action of waters are so common and usual, and so long maintained in all ordinary years, as to mark upon the soil a character distinct from that of the abutting upland, in respect to vegetation. In any area where the ordinary high water mark cannot be found, the line of mean high water shall substitute. In any area where neither can be found, the channel bank shall be substituted. In braided channels and alluvial fans, the ordinary high water mark or substitute shall be measured so as to include the entire stream feature.

Organic matter Organic matter as decomposed animal or vegetable matter. It is measured by ASTM D 2974. Organic matter is an important reservoir of carbon and a dynamic component of soil and the carbon cycle. It improves soil and plant efficiency by improving soil physical properties including drainage, aeration, and other structural characteristics. It contains the nutrients, microbes, and higher-form soil food web organisms necessary for plant growth. The maturity of organic matter is a measure of its beneficial properties. Raw organic matter can release water-soluble nutrients (similar to chemical fertilizer). Beneficial organic matter has undergone a humification process either naturally in the environment or through a composting process.

Orifice An opening with closed perimeter, usually sharp-edged, and of regular form in a plate, wall, or partition through which water may flow, generally used for the purpose of measurement or control of water.

Outfall A point source as defined by 40 CFR 122.2 at the point where a discharge leaves the Permittee's MS4 and enters a surface receiving waterbody or surface receiving waters. Outfall does not include pipes, tunnels, or other conveyances which connect segments of the same stream or other surface waters and are used to convey primarily surface waters (i.e., culverts).

Outlet Point of water disposal from a stream, river, lake, tidewater, or artificial drain.

Outlet channel A waterway constructed or altered primarily to carry water from man-made structures, such as terraces, tile lines, and diversions.

Outwash soils Soils formed from highly permeable sands and gravels.

Overflow A pipeline or conduit device, together with an outlet pipe, that provides for the discharge of portions of combined sewer flows into receiving waters or other points of disposal, after a regular device has allowed the portion of the flow which can be handled by interceptor sewer lines and pumping and treatment facilities to be carried by and to such water pollution control structures.

Overflow rate Detention basin release rate divided by the surface area of the basin. It can be thought of as an average flow rate through the basin.

Overtopping To flow over the limits of a containment or conveyance element.

Partially controlled limited access highway A highway where the right of owner or occupants of abutting land or other persons to access, light, air, or view in connection with the highway is controlled to give preference to through traffic to a degree that, in addition to access connections with selected public roads, there may be some crossings and some private driveway connections at grade. (See WAC 468-58-010)

Particle Size	The effective diameter of a particle as measured by sedimentation, sieving, or micrometric methods.
Peak discharge	The maximum instantaneous rate of flow during a storm, usually in reference to a specific design storm event.
Peak-shaving	Controlling post-development peak discharge rates to pre-development levels by providing temporary detention in a BMP.
Percolation	The movement of water through soil.
Percolation rate	The rate, often expressed in minutes/inch, at which clear water, maintained at a relatively constant depth, will seep out of a standardized test hole that has been previously saturated. The term percolation rate is often used synonymously with infiltration rate (short-term infiltration rate).
Permanent Stormwater Control (PSC) Plan	A plan which includes permanent BMPs for the control of pollution from stormwater runoff after construction and/or land disturbing activity has been completed
Permeable pavement	Pervious concrete, porous asphalt, permeable pavers or other forms of pervious or porous paving material intended to allow passage of water through the pavement section. It often includes an aggregate base that provides structural support and acts as a stormwater reservoir.
Permeable soils	Soil materials with a sufficiently rapid infiltration rate so as to greatly reduce or eliminate surface and stormwater runoff. These soils are generally classified as SCS hydrologic soil types A and B.
Person	Any individual, partnership, corporation, association, organization, cooperative, public or municipal corporation, agency of the state, or local government unit, however designated.
Perviousness	Related to the size and continuity of void spaces in soils; related to a soil's infiltration rate.
Pervious Surface	A surface material that allows stormwater to infiltrate into the ground. Examples include lawn, landscape, pasture, native vegetation areas, and permeable pavements.
Pesticide	A general term used to describe any substance - usually chemical - used to destroy or control organisms; includes herbicides, insecticides, algicides, fungicides, and others. Many of these substances are manufactured and are not naturally found in the environment. Others, such as pyrethrum, are natural toxins that are extracted from plants and animals.
pH	A measure of the alkalinity or acidity of a substance which is conducted by measuring the concentration of hydrogen ions in the substance. A pH of 7.0 indicates neutral water. A 6.5 reading is slightly acid.
Physiographic	Characteristics of the natural physical environment (including hills).

Plan Approval Authority The Plan Approval Authority is defined as that department within a local government that has been delegated authority to approve stormwater site plans.

Planned unit development (PUD) A special classification authorized in some zoning ordinances, where a unit of land under control of a single developer may be used for a variety of uses and densities, subject to review and approval by the local governing body. The locations of the zones are usually decided on a case-by-case basis.

Plat A map or representation of a subdivision showing the division of a tract or parcel of land into lots, blocks, streets, or other divisions and dedications.

Plunge pool A device used to dissipate the energy of flowing water that may be constructed or made by the action of flowing. These facilities may be protected by various lining materials.

Point discharge The release of collected and/or concentrated surface and stormwater runoff from a pipe, culvert, or channel.

Point of compliance The location at which compliance with a discharge performance standard or a receiving water quality standard is measured.

Pollution Contamination or other alteration of the physical, chemical, or biological properties, of waters of the state, including change in temperature, taste, color, turbidity, or odor of the waters, or such discharge of any liquid, gaseous, solid, radioactive or other substance into any waters of the state as will or is likely to create a nuisance or render such waters harmful, detrimental or injurious to the public health, safety or welfare, or to domestic, commercial, industrial, agricultural, recreational, or other legitimate beneficial uses, or to livestock, wild animals, birds, fish or other aquatic life.

Pollution-generating hard surface (PGHS) Those hard surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. See the listing of surfaces under pollution-generating impervious surface.

Pollution-generating impervious surface (PGIS) Those impervious surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. Such surfaces include those which are subject to: vehicular use; industrial activities (as further defined in this glossary); or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and which receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall; metal roofs unless they are coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked-on enamel coating); or roofs that are subject to venting significant amounts of dusts, mists, or fumes from manufacturing, commercial, or other indoor activities.

Pollution-generating pervious surface (PGPS) Any non-impervious surface subject to vehicular use, industrial activities (as further defined in this glossary); or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes or chemicals, and that receive direct rainfall or run-on or blow-in of rainfall, use of pesticides and fertilizers, or loss of soil. Typical PGPS include permeable pavement subject to vehicular use, lawns and landscaped areas including: golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields (natural and artificial turf).

Predeveloped Condition	The native vegetation and soils that existed at a site prior to the influence of Euro-American settlement. The pre-developed condition shall be assumed to be forested land cover unless reasonable, historic information is provided that indicates the site was prairie prior to settlement.
Prediction	For the purposes of this document an expected outcome based on the results of hydrologic modeling and/or the judgment of a trained professional civil engineer or geologist.
Pretreatment	The removal of material such as solids, grit, grease, and scum from flows prior to physical, biological, or physical treatment processes to improve treatability. Pretreatment may include screening, grit removal, settling, oil/water separation, or application of a Basic Treatment BMP prior to infiltration.
Priority peat systems	Unique, irreplaceable fens that can exhibit water pH in a wide range from highly acidic to alkaline, including fens typified by Sphagnum species, Ledum groenlandicum (Labrador tea), Drosera rotundifolia (sundew), and Vaccinium oxycoccos (bog cranberry); marl fens; estuarine peat deposits; and other moss peat systems with relatively diverse, undisturbed flora and fauna. Bog is the common name for peat systems having the Sphagnum association described, but this term applies strictly only to systems that receive water income from precipitation exclusively.
Professional civil engineer	A person registered with the state of Washington as a professional engineer in civil engineering.
Project	Any proposed action to alter or develop a site. The proposed action of a permit application or an approval, which requires drainage review.
Project site	That portion of a property, properties, or right of way subject to land disturbing activities, new hard surfaces, or replaced hard surfaces.
Properly Functioning Soil System (PFSS)	Equivalent to engineered soil/landscape system. This can also be a natural system that has not been disturbed or modified.
Puget Sound basin	Puget Sound south of Admiralty Inlet (including Hood Canal and Saratoga Passage); the waters north to the Canadian border, including portions of the Strait of Georgia; the Strait of Juan de Fuca south of the Canadian border; and all the lands draining into these waters as mapped in Water Resources Inventory Areas numbers 1 through 19, set forth in WAC 173-500-040.
R/D	See Retention/detention facility.
Rain garden	A non-engineered shallow, landscaped depression, with compost-amended native soils and adapted plants. The depression is designed to

pond and temporarily store stormwater runoff from adjacent areas, and to allow stormwater to pass through the amended soil profile.

Rare, threatened, or endangered species Plant or animal species that are regional relatively uncommon, are nearing endangered status, or whose existence is in immediate jeopardy and is usually restricted to highly specific habitats. Threatened and endangered species are officially listed by federal and state authorities, whereas rare species are unofficial species of concern that fit the above definitions.

Rational method A means of computing storm drainage flow rates (Q) by use of the formula Q = CIA, where C is a coefficient describing the physical drainage area, I is the rainfall intensity and A is the area. This method is no longer used in the technical manual.

Reach A length of channel with uniform characteristics.

Receiving Waterbody or Receiving Waters Naturally and/or reconstructed naturally occurring surface water bodies, such as creeks, streams, rivers, lakes, wetlands, estuaries, and marine waters, or groundwater, to which a MS4 discharges.

Recharge The addition of water to the zone of saturation (i.e., an aquifer).

Recommended BMPs As used in Volume IV, recommended BMPs are those BMPs that are not expected to be mandatory by local governments at new development and redevelopment sites. However, they may improve pollutant control efficiency, and may provide a more comprehensive and environmentally effective stormwater management program.

Redevelopment On a site that is already substantially developed (i.e., has 35% or more of existing hard surface coverage), the creation or addition of hard surfaces; the expansion of a building footprint or addition or replacement of a structure; structural development including construction, installation or expansion of a building or other structure; replacement of hard surface that is not part of a routine maintenance activity; and land disturbing activities.

Regional An action (here, for stormwater management purposes) that involves more than one discrete property.

Regional detention facility A stormwater quantity control structure designed to correct existing surface water runoff problems of a basin or subbasin. The area downstream has been previously identified as having existing or predicted significant and regional flooding and/or erosion problems.

This term is also used when a detention facility is sited to detain stormwater runoff from a number of new developments or areas within a catchment.

Release rate The computed peak rate of surface and stormwater runoff from a site.

Replaced hard surface For structures, the removal and replacement of hard surfaces down to the foundation. For other hard surfaces, the removal down to bare soil or base course and replacement.

Replaced impervious surface For structures, the removal and replacement of impervious surfaces down to the foundation. For other impervious surfaces, the removal down to bare soil or base course and replacement.

Residential density The number of dwelling units per unit of surface area. Net density includes only occupied land. Gross density includes unoccupied portions of residential areas, such as roads and open space.

Restoration Actions performed to reestablish wetland functional characteristics and processes that have been lost by alterations, activities, or catastrophic events in an area that no longer meets the definition of a wetland.

Retention The process of collecting and holding surface and stormwater runoff with no surface outflow.

Retention/detention facility (R/D) A type of drainage facility designed either to hold water for a considerable length of time and then release it by evaporation, plant transpiration, and/or infiltration into the ground; or to hold surface and stormwater runoff for a short period of time and then release it to the surface and stormwater management system.

Retrofitting The renovation of an existing structure or facility to meet changed conditions or to improve performance.

Return frequency A statistical term for the average time of expected interval that an event of some kind will equal or exceed given conditions (e.g., a stormwater flow that occurs every 2 years).

Rhizome A modified plant stem that grows horizontally underground.

Riffles Fast sections of a stream where shallow water races over stones and gravel. Riffles usually support a wider variety of bottom organisms than other stream sections.

Rill A small intermittent watercourse with steep sides, usually only a few inches deep. Often rills are caused by an increase in surface water flow when soil is cleared of vegetation.

Riprap A facing layer or protective mound of rocks placed to prevent erosion or sloughing of a structure or embankment due to flow of surface and stormwater runoff.

Riparian Pertaining to the banks of streams, wetlands, lakes, or tidewater.

Riser A vertical pipe extending from the bottom of a pond BMP that is used to control the discharge rate from a BMP for a specified design storm.

Rodenticide A substance used to destroy rodents.

Runoff Water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that is found in drainage facilities, rivers, streams, springs, seeps, ponds, lakes and wetlands as well as shallow ground water. As applied in this manual, it also means the portion of rainfall or other precipitation that becomes surface flow and interflow.

SCS Soil Conservation Service (now the Natural Resources Conservation Service), U.S. Department of Agriculture

SCS Method See NRCS Method.

NRCS Method A single-event hydrologic analysis technique for estimating runoff based on the Curve Number method. The Curve Numbers are published by NRCS in *Technical Release No. 55: Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, 1986*. With the change in name to the Natural Resource Conservation Service, the method may be referred to as the NRCS Method.

SEPA See State Environmental Policy Act.

Salmonid A member of the fish family Salmonidae. Chinook, Coho, chum, sockeye and pink salmon; cutthroat, brook, brown, rainbow, and steelhead trout; Dolly Varden, kokanee, and char are examples of salmonid species.

Sand filter A man-made depression or basin with a layer of sand that treats stormwater as it percolates through the sand and is discharged via a central collector pipe.

Saturation point In soils, the point at which a soil or an aquifer will no longer absorb any amount of water without losing an equal amount.

Scour Erosion of channel banks due to excessive velocity of the flow of surface and stormwater runoff.

Sediment Fragmented material that originates from weathering and erosion of rocks or unconsolidated deposits, and is transported by, suspended in, or deposited by water.

Sedimentation The depositing or formation of sediment.

Sensitive emergent vegetation communities Assemblages of erect, rooted, herbaceous vegetation, excluding mosses and lichens, at least some of whose members have relatively narrow ranges of environmental requirements, such as hydroperiod, nutrition, temperature, and light. Examples include fen species such as sundew and, as well as a number of species of Carex (sedges).

Sensitive life stages Stages during which organisms have limited mobility or alternatives in securing the necessities of life, especially including reproduction, rearing, and migration periods.

Sensitive scrub-shrub vegetation communities Assemblages of woody vegetation less than 6 meters in height, at least some of whose members have relatively narrow ranges of environmental requirements, such as hydroperiod, nutrition, temperature, and light. Examples include fen species such as Labrador tea, bog laurel, and cranberry.

Settleable solids Those suspended solids in stormwater that separate by settling when the stormwater is held in a quiescent condition for a specified time.

Sheet erosion The relatively uniform removal of soil from an area without the development of conspicuous water channels.

Sheet flow Runoff that flows over the ground surface as a thin, even layer, not concentrated in a channel.

Shoreline development The proposed project as regulated by the Shoreline Management Act. Usually the construction over water or within a shoreline zone (generally 200 feet landward of the water) of structures such as buildings, piers, bulkheads, and breakwaters, including environmental alterations such as dredging and filling, or any project which interferes with public navigational rights on the surface waters.

Short circuiting The passage of runoff through a BMP in less than the design treatment time.

Siltation The process by which a river, lake, or other waterbody becomes clogged with sediment. Silt can clog gravel beds and prevent successful salmon spawning.

Site The area defined by the legal boundaries of a parcel or parcels of land that is (are) subject to new development or redevelopment. For road projects, the length of the project site and the right-of-way boundaries define the site.

Slope Degree of deviation of a surface from the horizontal; measured as a numerical ratio, percent, or in degrees. Expressed as a ratio, the first number is the horizontal distance (run) and the second is the vertical distance (rise), as 2:1. A 2:1 slope is a 50 percent slope. Expressed in degrees, the slope is the angle from the horizontal plane, with a 90° slope being vertical (maximum) and 45° being a 1:1 or 100 percent slope.

Sloughing The sliding of overlying material. It is the same effect as caving, but it usually occurs when the bank or an underlying stratum is saturated or scoured.

Soil The unconsolidated mineral and organic material on the immediate surface of the earth that serves as a natural medium for the growth of land plants. See also topsoil, engineered soil/landscape system, and properly functioning soil system.

Soil group, hydrologic A classification of soils by the Soil Conservation Service into four runoff potential groups. The groups range from A soils, which are very permeable and produce little or no runoff, to D soils, which are not very permeable and produce much more runoff.

Soil horizon A layer of soil, approximately parallel to the surface, which has distinct characteristics produced by soil-forming factors.

Soil profile A vertical section of the soil from the surface through all horizons, including C horizons.

Soil structure The relation of particles or groups of particles which impart to the whole soil a characteristic manner of breaking; some types are crumb structure, block structure, platy structure, and columnar structure.

Soil permeability The ease with which gases, liquids, or plant roots penetrate or pass through a layer of soil.

Soil stabilization The use of measures such as rock lining, vegetation or other engineering structures to prevent the movement of soil when loads are applied to the soil.

Soil Texture Class The relative proportion, by weight, of particle sizes, based on the USDA system, of individual soil grains less than 2 mm equivalent diameter in a mass of soil. The basic texture classes in the approximate order of increasing proportions of fine particles include: sand, loamy sand, sandy loam, loam, silt loam, silt, clay loam, sandy clay, silty clay, and clay.

Sorption The physical or chemical binding of pollutants to sediment or organic particles.

Source control BMP A structure or operation that is intended to prevent pollutants from coming into contact with stormwater through physical separation of areas or careful management of activities that are sources of pollutants. This manual separates source control BMPs into two types. *Structural Source Control BMPs* are physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities that are intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. *Operational BMPs* are non-structural practices that prevent or reduce pollutants from entering stormwater. See Volume IV for details.

Spill control device A Tee section or turn down elbow designed to retain a limited volume of pollutant that floats on water, such as oil or antifreeze. Spill control devices are passive and must be cleaned-out for the spilled pollutant to actually be removed.

Spillway A passage such as a paved apron or channel for surplus water over or around a dam or similar obstruction. An open or closed channel, or both, used to convey excess water from a reservoir. It may contain gates, either manually or automatically controlled, to regulate the discharge of excess water.

State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA) [RCW 43.21C] The Washington State law intended to minimize environmental damage. SEPA requires that state agencies and local governments consider environmental factors when making decisions on activities, such as development proposals over a certain size and comprehensive plans. As part of this process, environmental documents are prepared and opportunities for public comment are provided.

Steep slope
Slopes of 40 percent gradient or steeper within a vertical elevation change of at least ten feet. A slope is delineated by establishing its toe and top, and is measured by averaging the inclination over at least ten feet of vertical relief. For the purpose of this definition:

The toe of a slope is a distinct topographic break in slope that separates slopes inclined at less than 40% from slopes 40% or steeper. Where no distinct break exists, the toe of a steep slope is the lower-most limit of the area where the ground surface drops ten feet or more vertically within a horizontal distance of 25 feet; AND

The top of a slope is a distinct topographic break in slope that separates slopes inclined at less than 40% from slopes 40% or steeper. Where no distinct break exists, the top of a steep slope is the upper-most limit of the area where the ground surface drops ten feet or more vertically within a horizontal distance of 25 feet.

Storage routing
A method to account for the attenuation of peak flows passing through a detention facility or other storage feature.

Storm drains
The enclosed conduits that transport surface and stormwater runoff toward points of discharge (sometimes called storm sewers).

Storm frequency
The time interval between major storms of predetermined intensity and volumes of runoff for which storm sewers and other structures are designed and constructed to handle hydraulically without surcharging and backflooding; e.g., a 2-year, 10-year or 100-year storm.

Storm sewer
A sewer that carries stormwater and surface water, street wash and other wash waters or drainage, but excludes sewage and industrial wastes. Also called a storm drain.

Stormwater
That portion of precipitation that does not naturally percolate into the ground or evaporate, but flows via overland flow, interflow, pipes and other features of a stormwater drainage system into a defined surface waterbody, or a constructed infiltration facility.

Stormwater drainage system
Constructed and natural features which function together as a system to collect, convey, channel, hold, inhibit, retain, detain, infiltrate, divert, treat or filter stormwater.

Stormwater facility
A constructed component of a stormwater drainage system, designed or constructed to perform a particular function, or multiple functions. Stormwater facilities include, but are not limited to, pipes, swales, ditches, culverts, street gutters, detention ponds, retention ponds, constructed wetlands, infiltration devices, catch basins, oil/water separators, and biofiltration swales.

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington
This manual, as prepared by Ecology, contains BMPs to prevent, control or treat pollution in stormwater and reduce other stormwater-related impacts to waters of the State. The Stormwater Manual is intended to provide guidance on measures necessary in western

(Stormwater Manual) Washington to control the quantity and quality of stormwater runoff from new development and redevelopment.

Stormwater Program Either the Basic Stormwater Program or the Comprehensive Stormwater Program (as appropriate to the context of the reference) called for under the Puget Sound Water Quality Management Plan.

Stormwater Site Plan The comprehensive report containing all of the technical information and analysis necessary for regulatory agencies to evaluate a proposed new development or redevelopment project for compliance with stormwater requirements. Contents of the Stormwater Site Plan will vary with the type and size of the project, and individual site characteristics. It includes a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (Construction SWPPP) and a Permanent Stormwater Control Plan (PSC Plan). Guidance on preparing a Stormwater Site Plan is contained in Chapter 3 of Volume I.

Stream gaging The quantitative determination of stream flow using gages, current meters, weirs, or other measuring instruments at selected locations. See Gaging station.

Streambanks The usual boundaries, not the flood boundaries, of a stream channel. Right and left banks are named facing downstream.

Streams Those areas where surface waters flow sufficiently to produce a defined channel or bed. A defined channel or bed is an area that demonstrates clear evidence of the passage of water and includes, but is not limited to, indicated by hydraulically sorted sediments or the removal of vegetative litter or loosely rooted vegetation by the action of moving water. The channel or bed need not contain water year-round. This definition is not meant to include irrigation ditches, canals, stormwater runoff devices or other entirely artificial watercourses unless they are used to convey streams naturally occurring prior to construction. Those topographic features that resemble streams but have no defined channels (i.e., swales) shall be considered streams when hydrologic and hydraulic analyses done pursuant to a development proposal predict formation of a defined channel after development.

Structure A catchbasin or manhole in reference to a storm drainage system.

Structural source control BMPs Physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities that are intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. Structural source control BMPs typically include:

- Enclosing and/or covering the pollutant source (building or other enclosure, a roof over storage and working areas, temporary tarp, etc.).
- Segregating the pollutant source to prevent run-on of stormwater, and to direct only contaminated stormwater to appropriate treatment BMPs.

Stub-out	A short length of pipe provided for future connection to a storm drainage system.
Subbasin	A drainage area that drains to a water-course or waterbody named and noted on common maps and which is contained within a basin.
Subcatchment	A subdivision of a drainage basin (generally determined by topography and pipe network configuration).
Subdrain	A pervious backfilled trench containing stone or a pipe for intercepting ground water or seepage.
Subgrade	A layer soil used as the underlying base for a BMP.
Subsoil	The B horizons of soils with distinct profiles. In soils with weak profile development, the subsoil can be defined as the soil below the plowed soil (or its equivalent of surface soil), in which roots normally grow. Although a common term, it cannot be defined accurately. It has been carried over from early days when "soil" was conceived only as the plowed soil and that under it as the "subsoil."
Substrate	The natural soil base underlying a BMP.
Surcharge	The flow condition occurring in closed conduits when the hydraulic grade line is above the crown of the sewer.
Surface and stormwater	Water originating from rainfall and other precipitation that is found in drainage facilities, rivers, streams, springs, seeps, ponds, lakes, and wetlands as well as shallow ground water.
Surface and stormwater management system	Drainage facilities and any other natural features that collect, store, control, treat and/or convey surface and stormwater.
Suspended solids	Organic or inorganic particles that are suspended in and carried by the water. The term includes sand, mud, and clay particles (and associated pollutants) as well as solids in stormwater.
Swale	A shallow drainage conveyance with relatively gentle side slopes, generally with flow depths less than one foot.
Terrace	An embankment or combination of an embankment and channel across a slope to control erosion by diverting or storing surface runoff instead of permitting it to flow uninterrupted down the slope.
Threshold Discharge Area	An on-site area draining to a single natural discharge location or multiple natural discharge locations that combine within one-quarter mile downstream (as determined by the shortest flowpath). The examples in Figure G.1 below illustrate this definition. The purpose of this definition is to clarify how the thresholds of this manual are applied to project sites with multiple discharge points.

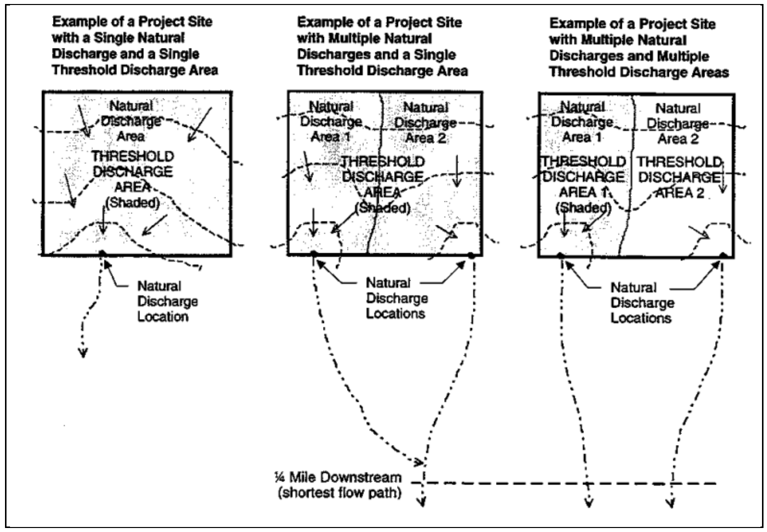


Figure G.1 – Threshold Discharge Areas

Tightline A continuous length of pipe that conveys water from one point to another (typically down a steep slope) with no inlets or collection points in between.

Tile, Drain Pipe made of burned clay, concrete, or similar material, in short lengths, usually laid with open joints to collect and carry excess water from the soil.

Tile drainage Land drainage by means of a series of tile lines laid at a specified depth and grade.

Till A layer of poorly sorted soil deposited by glacial action that generally has very low infiltration rates.

Time of concentration The time period necessary for surface runoff to reach the outlet of a subbasin from the hydraulically most remote point in the tributary drainage area.

Topography General term to include characteristics of the ground surface such as plains, hills, mountains, degree of relief, steepness of slopes, and other physiographic features.

Topsoil The upper portion of a soil, usually dark colored and rich in organic material. It is more or less equivalent to the upper portion of an A horizon in an ABC soil.

Total dissolved solids The dissolved salt loading in surface and subsurface waters.

Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH) TPH-Gx: The qualitative and quantitative method (extended) for volatile (“gasoline”) petroleum products in water; and TPH-Dx: The qualitative and quantitative method (extended) for semi-volatile (“diesel”) petroleum products in water.

Total solids The solids in water, sewage, or other liquids, including the dissolved, filterable, and nonfilterable solids. The residue left when the moisture

	is evaporated and the remainder is dried at a specified temperature, usually 130°C.
Total suspended solids	That portion of the solids carried by stormwater that can be captured on a standard glass filter.
Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) – Water Cleanup Plan	A calculation of the maximum amount of a pollutant that a waterbody can receive and still meet water quality standards, and an allocation of that amount to the pollutant's sources. A TMDL (also known as a Water Cleanup Plan) is the sum of the allowable loads of a single pollutant from all contributing point and nonpoint sources. The calculation must include a margin of safety to ensure that the waterbody can be used for the purposes the State has designated. The calculation must also account for seasonable variation in water quality. Water quality standards are set by states, territories, and tribes. They identify the uses for each waterbody, for example, drinking water supply, contact recreation (swimming), and aquatic like support (fishing), and the scientific criteria to support that use. The Clean Water Act, section 303, establishes the water quality standards and TMDL programs.
Toxic	Poisonous, carcinogenic, or otherwise directly harmful to life.
Tract	A legally created parcel of property designated for special nonresidential and noncommercial uses.
Trash rack	A structural device used to prevent debris from entering a spillway or other hydraulic structure.
Travel time	The estimated time for surface water to flow between two points of interest.
Treatment BMP or Facility	A BMP that is intended to remove pollutants from stormwater. A few examples of treatment BMPs are Wetponds, oil/water separators, biofiltration swales, and constructed wetlands.
Treatment liner	A layer of soil that is designed to slow the rate of infiltration and provide sufficient pollutant removal so as to protect ground water quality.
Treatment train	A combination of two or more treatment facilities connected in series.
Turbidity	Dispersion or scattering of light in a liquid, caused by suspended solids and other factors; commonly used as a measure of suspended solids in a liquid.
Underdrain	Plastic pipes with holes drilled through the top, installed on the bottom of an infiltration BMP, which are used to collect and remove excess runoff.
Undisturbed buffer	A zone where development activity shall not occur, including logging, and/or the construction of utility trenches, roads, and/or surface and stormwater facilities.

Undisturbed low gradient uplands	Forested land, sufficiently large and flat to infiltrate surface and storm runoff without allowing the concentration of water on the surface of the ground.
Unstable slopes	Those sloping areas of land which have in the past exhibited, are currently exhibiting, or will likely in the future exhibit, mass movement of earth.
Unusual biological community types	Assemblages of interacting organisms that are relatively uncommon regionally.
Urbanized area	Areas designated and identified by the U.S. Bureau of Census according to the following criteria: an incorporated place and densely settled surrounding area that together have a maximum population of 50,000.
U.S. EPA	The United States Environmental Protection Agency.
Values	Wetland processes or attributes that are valuable or beneficial to society (also see Functions). Wetland values include support of commercial and sport fish and wildlife species, protection of life and property from flooding, recreation, education, and aesthetic enhancement of human communities.
Variance	See Exception.
Vegetation	All organic plant life growing on the surface of the earth.
Vehicular Use	Regular use of an impervious or pervious surface by motor vehicles. The following are subject to regular vehicular use: roads, un-vegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unrestricted access fire lanes, vehicular equipment storage yards, and airport runways. The following are not considered subject to regular vehicular use: paved bicycle pathways separated from and not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles, restricted access fire lanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.
Waterbody	Surface waters including rivers, streams, lakes, marine waters, estuaries, and wetlands.
Water Cleanup Plan	See Total Maximum Daily Load
Water quality	A term used to describe the chemical, physical, and biological characteristics off water, usually in respect to its suitability for a particular purpose.
Water quality design storm	The 24-hour rainfall amount with a 6-month return frequency. Commonly referred to as the 6-month, 24-hour storm.
Water quality standards	Minimum requirements of purity of water for various uses; for example, water for agricultural use in irrigation systems should not exceed specific levels of sodium bicarbonate, pH, total dissolved

salts, etc. In Washington, the Department of Ecology sets water quality standards.

Watershed A geographic region within which water drains into a particular river, stream, or body of water. Watersheds can be as large as those identified and numbered by the State of Washington Water Resource Inventory Areas (WRIAs) as defined in Chapter 173-500 WAC.

Water table The upper surface or top of the saturated portion of the soil or bedrock layer, indicates the uppermost extent of ground water.

Weir Device for measuring or regulating the flow of water.

Weir notch The opening in a weir for the passage of water.

Wetlands Those areas that are inundated or saturated by surface or ground water at a frequency and duration sufficient to support, and that under normal circumstances do support, a prevalence of vegetation typically adapted for life in saturated soil conditions. Wetlands generally include swamps, marshes, bogs, and similar areas. Wetlands do not include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from non-wetland sites, including, but not limited to, irrigation and drainage ditches, grass-lined swales, canals, detention facilities, wastewater treatment facilities, farm ponds, and landscape amenities, or those wetlands created after July 1, 1990, that were unintentionally created as a result of the construction of a road, street, or highway. Wetlands may include those artificial wetlands intentionally created from non-wetland areas to mitigate the conversion of wetlands.

Wetland edge Delineation of the wetland edge shall be based on the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Wetlands Delineation Manual, Technical Report Y-87-1, U.S. Army Engineers Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Miss. (1987)

Wetponds and wetvaults Drainage facilities for water quality treatment that contain permanent pools of water that are filled during the initial runoff from a storm event. They are designed to optimize water quality by providing retention time in order to settle out particles of fine sediment to which pollutants such as heavy metals absorb, and to allow biologic activity to occur that metabolizes nutrients and organic pollutants.

Wetpool A pond or constructed wetland that stores runoff temporarily and whose normal discharge location is elevated so as to maintain a permanent pool of water between storm events.

Zoning ordinance An ordinance based on the police power of government to protect the public health, safety, and general welfare. It may regulate the type of use and intensity of development of land and structures to the extent necessary for a public purpose. Requirements may vary among various geographically defined areas called zones. Regulations generally cover such items as height and bulk of buildings, density of dwelling units, off-street parking, control of signs, and use of land for residential, commercial, industrial, or agricultural purposes. A zoning ordinance is one of the major methods for implementation of a comprehensive plan.

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume II
Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention

Prepared by:
Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

December 2014
Publication No. 14-10-055
(A revision of Publication No. 12-10-030)

Acknowledgements

The Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) gratefully acknowledges the valuable time, comments, and expertise provided by the people listed below who contributed to the 2012 revision of Vol. II of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW). The Washington State Department of Ecology is solely responsible for any errors, omissions, and final decisions related to the 2012 SWMMWW.

Name	**Affiliation**
John Allowatt	ClimaCover
Kurt Baumgarten	Ecology, Water Quality Program, BFO
Nick Erickson	Kirtley-Cole Associates
Phil Fortunato	ECO-3
Mieke Hoppin	City of Tacoma
Stephanie Jackson	Ecology, Water Quality Program, SWRO
Mak A. Kaufman	Ecology, Water Quality Program, BFO
Greg Lahti	Washington State Dept. of Transportation
Carl Menconi	Citizen
Allan R. Morgan	Reid Middleton, Inc.
Sheila Pendleton-Orme	Ecology, Water Quality Program, VFO
Elsa Piekarski	Washington State Dept. of Transportation
Peter Rinallo	Washington State Dept. of Transportation
Jeff Rudolph	Pierce County Public Works
Jeremy Schmidt	Ecology, Toxics Cleanup Program, ERO

Department of Ecology Technical Leads
Sharleen Bakeman – 2012 edit
Douglas C. Howie, P.E. – 2012 edit
Jeff Killelea – 2012 edit

Technical Review and Editing
Carrie A. Graul – 2012 edit
Julie Robertson – 2012 edit
Kelsey Highfill – 2012 edit

***Dedication**

Volume II is dedicated to the memory of Ron Devitt. Ron was with Ecology from its earliest days. He will always be remembered by the many lives he touched both within the agency and outside of the agency, and for all the good he did for Washington State's environmental health. At Ron's retirement in May 2004, an award for "Excellence in the Field" was established in his name by the Water Quality Program.

Acronyms

AKART	All known, available, and reasonable methods of prevention, control, and treatment.
ATB	Asphalt Treated Base
BFM	Bonded Fiber Matrix
BMPs	Best Management Practices
CESCL	Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead
CESCP	Contractor's Erosion and Sediment Control Plan
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CPESC	Certified Professional in Erosion and Sediment Control
CSWGP	Construction Stormwater General Permit
Ecology	Washington State Department of Ecology
EPA	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
ESA	The Federal Endangered Species Act
ESC	Erosion and Sediment Control
FCWA	Federal Clean Water Act
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
IECA	International Erosion Control Association
MBFM	Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix
Min.	Minimum
NOEC	No observed effects concentration
NOI	Notice of Intent
NPDES	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
PAM	Polyacrylamide
RUSLE	Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation
SWPPP	Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan
TESC	Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
WSDOT	Washington State Department of Transportation

This page intentionally left blank.

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 1 - Introduction to Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention

1.1 Purpose of this Volume

Volume II focuses on managing stormwater impacts associated with construction activities. Best management practices (BMPs) that are properly planned, installed, and maintained can minimize stormwater impacts, such as heavy stormwater flows, soil erosion, water-borne sediment from exposed soils, and degradation of water quality, from on-site pollutant sources. Ecology's Construction Stormwater General Permit, Ecology's Municipals Stormwater Permits, and many local jurisdictions require the implementation of the BMPs listed in this volume (See Chapter 2.)

Volume II addresses the planning, design, and implementation of BMPs before and during construction projects. A collaborative planning process with all project proponents (owners, designers, contractors, engineers), and compliance reviewers is critical. Such a process can result in a high-quality, cost-effective project with excellent environmental protection. It can also minimize unnecessary risk associated with some traditional construction practices. By planning your project phasing, you will better manage your contractor's schedule and materials.

The construction phase of a project is usually a temporary condition, ultimately giving way to permanent improvements and facilities. However, construction work may take place over an extended period of time. Ensure that all of your management practices and control facilities are of sufficient size, strength, and durability to outlast the longest possible construction schedule and the worst anticipated rainfall conditions.

Linear projects, such as roadway construction and utility installations, may present a unique set of stormwater protection challenges. You can adapt or modify many of the BMPs discussed in this volume to provide the controls needed to address these projects. It may be advantageous to phase portions of long, linear projects and apply all necessary controls to individual phases.

The Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) serves as a tool for the site operator to manage the site and to avoid immediate and long-term environmental loss. Implementing a Construction SWPPP, designed in accordance with Chapters 3 and 4 of this volume, can provide a number of benefits. These include limiting adverse effects on the environment, improving the relationship between the contractor and the permitting authority staying on schedule, and saving money otherwise spent on repairing erosion.

Many of the BMPs contained in this volume can be adapted and modified to provide the erosion and sediment controls needed for other activities such as mining.

1.2 Content, Organization, and Use of this Volume

Volume II consists of four chapters that address the key considerations of preparing and implementing the Construction SWPPP. Volume II should be used in developing SWPPPs, which are a required component of a Stormwater Site Plans (see Volume I, Chapter 3).

Chapter 1 highlights the importance of construction stormwater management in preventing pollution of surface waters. The chapter briefly lists the 13 elements (12 elements listed in the Construction General Permit and 1 additional element covering Low Impact Development) of pollution prevention, and discusses erosion and sedimentation processes and impacts. Users should refer to Chapter 1 for an overview of construction stormwater issues.

Chapter 2 contains the regulatory requirements that apply to construction sites and their stormwater discharges. The Department of Ecology's (Ecology) National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) discharge permits are discussed. Chapter 2 lists Washington's Water Quality Standards pertaining to construction stormwater and explains how they apply to field situations. Users should consult Chapter 2 to determine how regulatory requirements apply to a construction sites, including permit requirements. Volume I, Section 1.6 contains more information about the relationships of this manual to the various levels of regulatory requirements.

Chapter 3 presents a step-by-step method for developing a Construction SWPPP and details the 13 elements. It includes lists of suggested BMPs to meet each element. Chapter 3 encourages the examination of all conditions that could affect a project's stormwater control systems during the project construction phase. Users should read Chapter 3 to determine the organization, content, and development of a Construction SWPPP.

Chapter 4 contains BMPs for construction stormwater control and site management. The first section of Chapter 4 contains BMPs for source control. The second section addresses runoff, conveyance, and treatment BMPs. Use various combinations of these BMPs in the Construction SWPPP to satisfy each of the 13 elements applying to the project (WAC 173-201A-510). Users should also refer to Chapter 4 to design and document application of these BMPs to the project construction site.

1.3 Thirteen Elements of Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention

The **13 Elements** listed below must be considered in the development of the Construction SWPPP unless site conditions render the element unnecessary. If an element is considered unnecessary, the Construction SWPPP must provide the justification.

These elements cover the general water quality protection strategies of limiting site impacts, preventing erosion and sedimentation, and managing activities and sources.

The 13* Elements are:

1. Preserve Vegetation/Mark Clearing Limits
2. Establish Construction Access
3. Control Flow Rates
4. Install Sediment Controls
5. Stabilize Soils
6. Protect Slopes
7. Protect Drain Inlets
8. Stabilize Channels and Outlets
9. Control Pollutants
10. Control Dewatering
11. Maintain BMPs
12. Manage the Project
13. Protect Low Impact Development BMPs*

*Element 13 is not listed in the 2010 Construction Stormwater General Permit. Cities and counties covered under the Municipal Stormwater General Permits may require it as part of their Construction SWPPP review.

A complete description of each element and associated BMPs is given in Chapter 3.

1.4 Erosion and Sedimentation Impacts

Soil erosion and the resulting sedimentation produced by land development impacts the environment, damaging aquatic and recreational resources, as well as aesthetic qualities. Erosion and sedimentation ultimately affect everyone.

Common examples of the impacts of erosion and sedimentation are:

- Natural, nutrient-rich topsoils erode. Re-establishing vegetation is difficult without applying soil amendments and fertilizers.
- Silt fills culverts and storm drains, decreasing capacities and increasing flooding and maintenance frequency.
- Detention facilities fill rapidly with sediment, decreasing storage capacity and increasing flooding.
- Sediment clogs infiltration devices, causing failure.
- Sediment causes obstructions in streams and harbors, requiring dredging to restore navigability.
- Shallow areas in lakes form rapidly, resulting in growth of aquatic plants and reduced usability.
- Nutrient loading from phosphorus and nitrogen attached to soil particles and transported to lakes and streams cause a change in the water pH, algal blooms, and oxygen depletion, leading to eutrophication and fish kills.
- Water treatment for domestic uses becomes more difficult and costly.
- Turbid water replaces aesthetically pleasing, clear, clean water in streams and lakes.
- Eroded soil particles decrease the viability of macro-invertebrates and food-chain organisms, impair the feeding ability of aquatic animals, clog gill passages of fish, and reduce photosynthesis.
- Sediment-clogged gravel diminishes fish spawning and can smother eggs or young fry.

Costs associated with these impacts may be obvious or subtle. Some are difficult to quantify, such as the loss of aesthetic values or recreational opportunities. Restoration and management of a single lake can cost millions of dollars. Reductions in spawning habitat, and subsequent reduction in salmon and trout production, cause economic losses to sport fisheries, traditional Native American fisheries, and the fishing industry. The maintenance costs of man-made structures and harbors are readily quantifiable. Citizens pay repeatedly for these avoidable costs in their tax dollars.

Effective erosion and sediment control practices on construction sites can greatly reduce undesirable environmental impacts and costs. Being aware of the erosion and sedimentation process is helpful in understanding the role of BMPs in controlling stormwater runoff.

1.5 Erosion and Sedimentation Processes

1.5.1 Soil Erosion

Soil erosion is defined as the removal of soil from its original location by the action of water, ice, gravity, or wind. In construction activities, soil erosion is largely caused by the force of falling and flowing water. Erosion by water includes the following processes (see Figure 1.5.1):

- Raindrop Erosion: The direct impact of falling drops of rain on soil dislodges soil particles so that they can then be easily transported by runoff.
- Sheet Erosion: The removal of a layer of exposed soil by the action of raindrop splash and runoff, as water moves in broad sheets over the land (not confined in small depressions).
- Rill and Gully Erosion: As runoff concentrates in rivulets, it cuts grooves called rills into the soil surface. If the flow of water is sufficient, rills may develop into larger gullies.
- Stream and Channel Erosion: Increased volume and velocity of runoff in an unprotected, confined channel may cause stream meander instability and scouring of significant portions of the stream or channel banks and bottom.

Soil erosion by wind creates a water quality problem when dust is blown into water. Dust control on paved streets using washdown waters, if not conducted properly, can also create water quality problems.

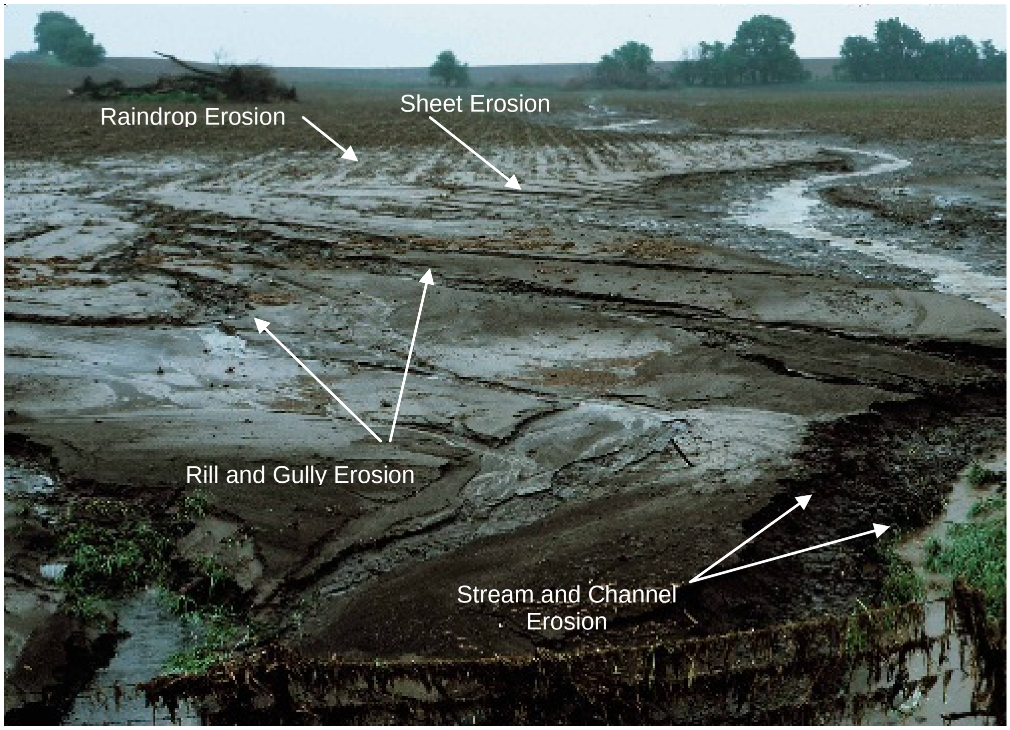


Photo by Lynn Betts, USDA Natural Resources Conservation

Figure 1.5.1 – Types of Erosion

1.5.2 Sedimentation

Sedimentation is defined as the gravity-induced settling of soil particles transported by water. The process is accelerated in slower-moving, quiescent stretches of natural waterbodies or in treatment facilities such as sediment ponds and wetponds.

Sedimentation occurs when the velocity of water in which soil particles are suspended is slowed for a sufficient time to allow particles to settle. The settling rate depends on the soil particle size. Heavier particles, such as sand and gravel, settle more rapidly than fine particles such as clay and silt. Sedimentation of clay soil particles is reduced due to clay's relative low density and electro-charged surfaces, which discourage aggregation. The presence of clay particles in stormwater runoff can result in highly turbid water, which is not amenable to treatment by settling.

Turbidity, an indirect measure of soil particles in water, is one of the primary water quality standards in Washington State law (WAC 173-201A-200). Turbidity is increased when erosion carries soil particles into receiving waters. Treating stormwater to reduce turbidity can be an expensive, difficult process with limited effectiveness. Any actions or prevention measures that reduce the volume of water needing treatment for turbidity are beneficial.

1.6 Factors Influencing Erosion Potential

The erosion potential of soils can be readily determined using various models such as the Flaxman Method or the Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE).

The soil erosion potential of an area, including a construction site, is determined by four interrelated factors (see Figure 1.6.1):

- Soil characteristics
- Vegetative cover
- Topography
- Climate

Collect, analyze, and use detailed information specific to the construction site for each of these four factors to provide the basis for an effective construction stormwater management system.

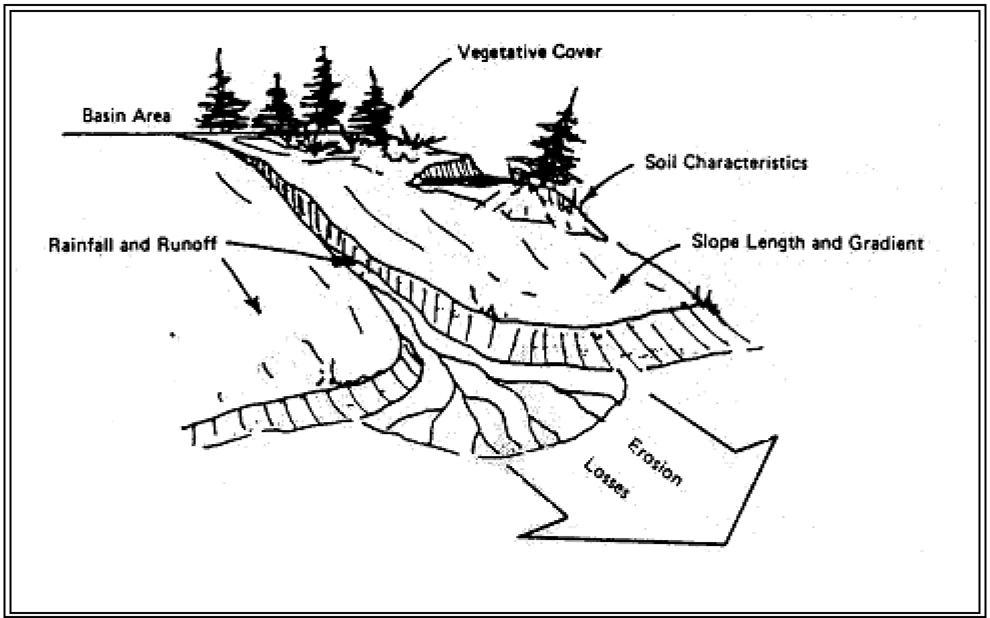


Figure 1.6.1 – Factors Influencing Erosion Potential

The first three factors (soil characteristics, vegetative cover, and topography) are constant with respect to time until altered by construction. The designer, developer, and construction contractor should have a working knowledge of, and control over, these factors to provide high quality stormwater results.

The fourth factor, climate, is predictable by season, historical record, and probability of occurrence. While predicting a specific rainfall event is not possible, plan appropriate seasonal construction activity and use properly designed BMPs to minimize or avoid many of the impacts of construction stormwater runoff.

1.6.1 Soil Characteristics

The vulnerability of soil to erode is determined by soil characteristics:

Particle Size: Soils that contain high proportions of silt and very fine sand are the most erodible and are easily detached and carried away. The erodibility of soil decreases as the percentage of clay or organic matter increases; clay acts as a binder and tends to limit erodibility. Most soils with high clay content are relatively resistant to detachment by rainfall and runoff. Once eroded, however, clays are easily suspended and settle out very slowly.

Organic Content: Organic matter creates a favorable soil structure, improving its stability and permeability. This increases infiltration capacity, delays the start of erosion, and reduces the amount of runoff.

The addition of organic matter increases infiltration rates (and, therefore, reduces surface flows and erodibility), water retention, pollution control, and pore space for oxygen.

Soil Structure: Organic matter, particle size, and gradation affect soil structure, which is the arrangement, orientation, and organization of particles. When the soil system is protected from compaction, the natural decomposition of plant debris on the surface maintains a healthy soil food web. The soil food web in turn maintains the porosity both on and below the surface.

Soil Permeability: Soil permeability refers to the ease with which water passes through a given soil. Well-drained and well-graded gravel and gravel mixtures with little or no silt are the least erodible soils. Their high permeability and infiltration capacity helps prevent or delay runoff.

1.6.2 Vegetative Cover

Vegetative cover plays an extremely important role in controlling erosion by:

- Shielding the soil surface from the impact of falling rain.
- Slowing the velocity of runoff, thereby permitting greater infiltration.
- Maintaining the soil's capacity to absorb water through root zone uptake and evapotranspiration.
- Holding soil particles in place.

Limiting the removal of existing vegetation and decreasing duration of soil exposure to rainfall events can reduce erosion. Give special consideration to preserving existing vegetation on areas with a high potential for erosion such as erodible soils, steep slopes, drainage ways, and the banks of streams. When it is necessary to remove vegetation, such as removing noxious weeds, revegetate these areas immediately.

1.6.3 Topography

The size, shape, and slope of a construction site influence the amount and rate of stormwater runoff. Each site's unique dimensions and characteristics provide both opportunities for and limitations on the use of specific control measures to protect vulnerable areas from high runoff amounts and rates. Slope length, steepness, and surface texture are key elements in determining the volume and velocity of runoff. As slope length and/or steepness increase, the rate of runoff and the potential for erosion increases. Slope orientation is also a factor in determining erosion potential. For example, a slope that faces south and contains dry soils may provide such poor growing conditions that vegetation will be difficult to re-establish.

1.6.4 Climate

Seasonal temperatures and the frequency, intensity, and duration of rainfall are fundamental in determining amounts of runoff. As the volume and the velocity of runoff increase, the likelihood of erosion increases. Where storms are frequent, intense, or long, erosion risks are high. Seasonal changes in temperature, as well as variations in rainfall, help to define the period of the year when there is a high erosion risk. When precipitation falls as snow, erosion may not occur until the spring, when melting snow adds to the runoff, and erosion potential will be higher. Partially frozen ground reduces infiltration capacity. Rain-on-snow events are common in western Washington between 1,500- and 3,000-foot elevations.

Western Washington is characterized in fall, winter, and spring by storms that are mild and long lasting. The fall and early winter events saturate the soil profile and fill stormwater detention ponds, increasing the amount of runoff leaving the construction site. Shorter-term, more intense storms occur in the summer. These storms can cause problems if adequate BMPs have not been installed on site.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 2 - Regulatory Requirements

Construction site stormwater runoff is regulated on the federal, state, and local level.

The Federal Clean Water Act (FCWA, 1972, and later modifications, 1977, 1981, and 1987) establishes water quality goals for the navigable (surface) waters of the United States and achieves them through the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit program, administered by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

The state of Washington has delegated responsibility from EPA to administer the NPDES permit program statewide. Chapter 90.48 RCW defines Ecology's authority and obligations in administering the wastewater discharge permit program.

The state administers the NPDES program by issuing separate individual NPDES permits and multiple statewide general permits. There are three main general stormwater permits:

- **The Phase I and Phase II Municipal Stormwater General Permit**: requires urban cities and counties to adopt ordinances. These ordinances implement stormwater controls for new development and redevelopment, including measures to control erosion, sedimentation, and other pollutants on construction sites. One of these ordinances requires all new development and redevelopment to have a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).
- **The Construction Stormwater General Permit:** requirements are detailed in Section 2.1.
- **The Industrial Stormwater General Permit:** requires designated industries that discharge stormwater to surface waters to apply for coverage. Volumes IV and Volumes V contain more information about this permit.

Many local governments within Washington State have established their own additional permits, such as clearing and grading permits. Local permitting authorities may also review Construction SWPPPs. Permittees should check with their jurisdiction about local requirements related to construction stormwater.

2.1 The Construction Stormwater General Permit

The goal of the Construction Stormwater General Permit (CSWGP) is to minimize harm to surface waters from construction activities.

Coverage under the CSWGP is generally required for any clearing, grading, or excavating if the project site discharges:

- Stormwater from the site into surface water(s) of the State, or
- Into storm drainage systems that discharge to a surface water(s) of the State.

And

- Disturbs one or more acres of land area, or
- Disturb less than one acre of land area, if the project or activity is part of a larger common plan of development or sale.

Any size construction activity discharging stormwater to waters of the State that Ecology determines to be a significant contributor of pollutants to waters of the State or that Ecology reasonably expects to cause a violation of any water quality standard may also require permit coverage.

Construction activities that are generally not required to have coverage include:

- Construction activities that discharge all stormwater and non-stormwater to ground water, sanitary sewer, or combined sewer, and have no point source discharge to either surface water or a storm sewer system that drains to surface waters of the State.
- Construction activities that meet the requirements of an Erosivity Waiver.
- Routine maintenance that is to maintain the original line and grade, hydraulic capacity, or original purpose of a facility.

Stormwater discharges generally excluded from coverage include:

- Post-construction stormwater discharges that originate from the site after completion of construction activities when the site has undergone final stabilization. Final stabilization means the establishment of a permanent vegetative cover, or equivalent permanent stabilization measures (such as riprap, gabions, or geotextiles) which prevents erosion.
- Nonpoint source silvicultural activities.
- Stormwater from any federal project or project on federal land within an Indian Reservation except for the Puyallup Reservation (these projects are required to obtain CSWGP coverage from the US Environmental Protection Agency). Within the Puyallup Reservation, any facility that discharges to surface water on land held in trust by the federal government may be covered by this permit.
- Stormwater from any site covered under an existing NPDES individual permit in which stormwater management and/or treatment requirements are included for all stormwater discharges associated with construction activity.

- Stormwater from a site where an applicable Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) requirement specifically precludes or prohibits discharges from construction activity.

The CSWGP define a "common plan of development or sale" as a site where multiple separate and distinct construction activities may be taking place at different times on different schedules and/or by different contractors, but still under a single plan. If the project is part of a common plan of development or sale, the disturbed area of the entire plan must be used in determining permit requirements.

Examples of a common plan of development or sale include:

1. Phased projects and projects with multiple filings or lots, even if the separate phases or filings/lots will be constructed under separate contract or by separate owners.
2. A development plan that may be phased over multiple years, but is still under a consistent plan for long-term development.
3. Projects in a contiguous area that may be unrelated but still under the same contract.
4. Linear projects, such as roads, pipelines, or utilities.

If the project is part of a common plan of development or sale, the disturbed area of the entire plan must be used in determining permit requirements.

The specific application requirements for obtaining coverage under the CSWGP are set forth in the permit. Copies of the permit, and permit application forms are available at Ecology's stormwater website: www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/construction/

2.2 Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans

A Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) is required if one of the following applies:

- The construction project must have coverage under the CSWGP. See Section 2.1 of this volume.
- The construction project is located in a municipality covered under one of the following Municipal Stormwater Permits and meets the thresholds in the permit:
  - Phase 1
  - Western Washington Phase II
- The local permitting authority requires a Construction SWPPP. Permittees should check with their jurisdiction about local requirements related to construction stormwater.

- Ecology and/or the local permitting authority determined the project, site, or facility to be a significant contributor of pollutants to waters of the state.

The Construction SWPPP must include the permit's 12 elements (13 elements if the local jurisdiction requires it) described in Chapter 3 unless site conditions render any of the elements unnecessary and the exemption from that element is clearly justified in the Construction SWPPP.

The Construction SWPPP must describe best management practices (BMPs) to prevent erosion and sedimentation, and to identify, reduce, eliminate or prevent stormwater contamination and water pollution from construction activity. Chapter 3 and Chapter 4 provide BMP guidance and design criteria.

2.3 Water Quality Standards

2.3.1 Surface Water Quality Standards

"Numerical" water quality criteria are numerical values set forth in the state of Washington's Water Quality Standards for Surface Waters (Chapter 173-201A WAC). They specify the levels of pollutants allowed in receiving waters to protect aquatic life.

EPA has promulgated 91 numeric water quality criteria to protect human health that apply to Washington State (EPA 1992). These criteria are designed to protect humans from cancer and other diseases, and are primarily applicable to fish and shellfish consumption and drinking water obtained from surface waters.

In addition to numerical criteria, "narrative" water quality criteria (e.g., WAC 173-201A-200, -240, and -250) limit concentrations of toxic, radioactive, or otherwise harmful material below concentrations that have the potential to adversely affect characteristic water uses, cause acute or chronic toxicity to biota, impair aesthetic values, or adversely affect human health. Narrative criteria protect the specific beneficial uses of fresh (WAC 173-201A-600 and -602) and marine (WAC 173-201A-610 and -612) waters in the state of Washington.

Pollutants that might be expected in the discharge from construction sites are turbidity, pH, and petroleum products. The surface water quality standards for turbidity and pH for waters designated for the salmon and trout spawning, core rearing, and migration use are:

> Turbidity: shall not exceed 5 nephelometric turbidity units (NTU) over background turbidity when the background turbidity is 50 NTU or less, or have more than a 10 percent increase in turbidity when the background turbidity is more than 50 NTU.

pH: shall be within the range of 6.5 to 8.5 (freshwater) or 7.0 to 8.5 (marine water) with a human-caused variation within a range of less than 0.2 units. For Class A and lower water classifications, the permissible induced increase is 0.5 units.

Although there is no specific surface or ground water quality standard for petroleum products, the narrative surface water quality criteria prohibits any visible sheen in a discharge to surface water.

The ground water quality criteria require protection from contamination in order to support the beneficial uses of the ground water, such as for drinking water. Therefore, the primary water quality consideration for stormwater discharges to ground water from construction sites is the control of contaminants other than sediment. Sediment control is necessary to protect permanent infiltration facilities from clogging during the construction phase.

2.3.2 Compliance with Standards

Stormwater discharges from construction sites must not cause or contribute to violations of Washington State's surface water quality standards (Chapter 173-201A WAC), sediment management standards (Chapter 173-204 WAC), ground water quality standards (Chapter 173-200 WAC), and human health based criteria in the National Toxics Rule (40 CFR Part 131.36).

Before the site can discharge stormwater and non-stormwater to waters of the State, the permittee must apply all known, available, and reasonable methods of prevention, control, and treatment (AKART). This includes preparing and implementing a Construction SWPPP, with all appropriate BMPs installed and maintained in accordance with the SWPPP and the terms and conditions of the Construction Stormwater General Permit.

In accordance with Chapter 90.48 RCW (ESSB 6415), compliance with water quality standards is presumed unless discharge monitoring data or other site specific information demonstrates otherwise, when the permittee fully:

- Complies with permit conditions for planning, sampling, monitoring, reporting, and recordkeeping; and
- Implements the BMPs contained in this manual or BMPs that are demonstrably equivalent to BMPs contained in stormwater technical manuals approved by Ecology, including the proper selection, implementation, and maintenance of all applicable and appropriate BMPs for on-site pollution control. Proper implementation and maintenance of appropriate BMPs is critical to adequately control any adverse water quality impacts from construction activity.

2.4 Endangered Species Act

The Endangered Species Act (ESA) is of concern for construction sites because of potential adverse impacts to receiving waters from discharges of sediment, turbidity, or abnormal pH. Specific adverse impacts include:

- Suffocation of eggs or fry.
- Displacement and elimination of aquatic invertebrates used for food.
- Reduction in the biodiversity of aquatic invertebrates.
- Reduction of foraging abilities in turbid water.
- Irritation of gill tissue that can lead to disease or death.
- Filling of resting or feeding areas, or spawning gravels with sediment.

These impacts could be determined to be a "take" under ESA.

The stranding of listed species behind erosion and sediment control features or the impairment of their access into certain areas due to the presence of erosion and sediment control features could also be determined to be a take under ESA.

For more information on ESA and how it affects your project, please contact the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Fisheries Service at: http://www.nmfs.noaa.gov/pr/laws/esa/ or the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service at: http://www.fws.gov/endangered/.

2.5 Other Applicable Regulations and Permits

Other regulatory or agency conditions and permits may require implementing BMPs to control pollutants in construction site stormwater runoff. They include:

- Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDLs) or Water Clean Up Plans.
- Hydraulic Project Approval Permits.
- General provisions from Washington State Department of Transportation (WSDOT).
- Remediation agreements for contaminated sites (such as Model Toxics Control Act or Voluntary Cleanup Program sites).
- Local permits and approvals, such as clearing and grading permits.

See Volume I, Section 1.6 for further information.

Chapter 3 - Planning

This chapter provides an overview of the important components of, and the process for, developing and implementing a Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

Section 3.1 contains general guidelines with which site planners should become familiar. It describes criteria for plan format and content and ideas for improved plan effectiveness.

Section 3.2 discusses the two main components of a Construction SWPPP, the narrative and the drawings.

Section 3.3 outlines and describes a recommended step-by-step procedure for developing a Construction SWPPP from data collection to finished product. Step 3 in Section 3.3 provides a description of each of the SWPPP elements. This procedure is written in general terms to be applicable to all types of projects. Section 3.3 also includes a checklist for developing a Construction SWPPP.

Design standards and specifications for Best Management Practices (BMPs) referred to in this chapter are found in Chapter 4.

The Construction SWPPP may be a subset of the Stormwater Site Plan or construction plan set. Chapter 3, of Volume I, discusses how to prepare a Stormwater Site Plan.

3.1 General Guidelines

3.1.1 What is a Construction SWPPP?

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) means a written plan to implement measures to identify, prevent, and control the contamination of point source discharge of stormwater. The Construction SWPPP explains and illustrates the measures, usually in the form of best management practices (BMPs), to take on a construction site to control potential pollution problems.

A Construction SWPPP is required for projects meeting the requirements in Section 2.2.

While it is a good idea to include standards and specifications from the Construction SWPPP in the contract documents, the Construction SWPPP should be a separate document that can stand alone.

As site work progresses, the plan must be modified routinely in prescribed time periods to reflect changing site conditions, subject to the rules for plan modification by the CSWGP and/or the local permitting authority.

3.1.2 Who is responsible for the Construction SWPPP?

The owner or lessee of the land being developed has the responsibility for SWPPP preparation and submission to local authorities. The owner or lessee may designate someone (that is, an engineer, architect, contractor, etc.) to prepare the Construction SWPPP, but the owner retains the ultimate responsibility for environmental protection at the site.

The Construction SWPPP must be located on the construction site or within reasonable access to the site for construction and inspection personnel, although a copy of the drawings must be kept on the construction site at all times.

3.1.3 What is an Adequate Plan?

The Construction SWPPP must contain sufficient information to satisfy the permitting authority (state, local, or both) that the problems of construction pollution have been adequately addressed for the proposed project.

An adequate Construction SWPPP includes a narrative and drawings. The narrative is a written statement to explain and justify the pollution prevention decisions made for a particular project. The narrative contains concise, site specific, information about existing conditions, construction schedules, and other pertinent items that are not contained on the drawings. The drawings show, on a site map, the specific BMPs which shall be installed. Provide text notes on the drawings to describe the performance standards the BMPs should achieve, and actions to take if the performance goals are not achieved.

Reports summarizing the scope of inspections, the personnel conducting the inspection, the date(s) of the inspection, major observations relating to implementing the Construction SWPPP, and actions taken as a result of these inspections must be prepared and retained as part of the Construction SWPPP.

On construction sites that discharge to surface water, the primary concern in the preparation of the Construction SWPPP is compliance with Washington State Water Quality Standards.

On construction sites that infiltrate all stormwater runoff, the primary concern in the preparation of the Construction SWPPP is the protection of the infiltration facilities from fine sediments during the construction phase and protection of ground water from other pollutants. Several of the other elements are very important at these sites as well, such as marking the clearing limits, establishing the construction access, and managing the project.

Whether the stormwater discharges to surface water or completely infiltrates, each of the 12 elements (13 elements if required by the local jurisdiction) must be included in the Construction SWPPP, unless an element is determined not to be applicable to the project and the exemption is justified in the narrative.

The step-by-step procedure outlined in Section 3.3 of this volume is recommended for the development of Construction SWPPPs. The checklists in Section 3.3 may be helpful in preparing and reviewing the Construction SWPPP.

3.1.4 BMP Standards and Specifications

BMPs refer to schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and other physical, structural and/or managerial practices to prevent or reduce the pollution of waters of the State. BMPs include treatment systems, operating procedures, and practices to control:

- Stormwater associated with construction activity.
- Ground water associated with construction activity.
- Spillage or leaks.
- Sludge or waste disposal.
- Drainage from raw material storage.

Chapter 4 contains standards and specifications for the BMPs commonly used in Construction SWPPPs to address the 12 elements (13 if required by the local jurisdiction). BMPs can be used singularly or in combination. If a construction SWPPP makes use of a BMP, the narrative and drawings must clearly reference the specific BMP title and number.

The standards and specifications in Chapter 4 are not intended to limit any innovative or creative effort to effectively control erosion and sedimentation. Construction SWPPPs can contain experimental BMPs or make minor modifications to standard BMPs. However, the permitting authority (state, local, or both) must approve such practices before use. All experimental BMPs and modified BMPs must achieve the same or better performance than the BMPs listed in Chapter 4.

Construction SWPPPs can also contain BMPs from other guidance documents or manuals which Ecology has approved as providing an equivalent level of pollution prevention.

If a Construction SWPPP uses an experimental, modified, or approved equivalent BMP, then the SWPPP must contain the following:

1. The technical basis for the selection of the experimental, modified, or approved equivalent BMP (scientific, technical studies, and/or modeling) that support the performance claims for the BMP.
2. An assessment of how the experimental, modified, or approved equivalent BMP will satisfy all known, available, and reasonable

methods of prevention, control and treatment (AKART) requirements and the applicable federal technology-based treatment requirements under 40 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) part 125.3.

3.1.5 General Principles

The CSWGP outlines numerous specific requirements related to elements 1 through 12 that the SWPPP must address. The SWMMWW and the Municipal Stormwater General Permits include element number 13 which applies to new and redevelopment construction projects. The CSWGP does not contain element number 13.All permittees should be familiar with the requirements in their permits.

3.2 Construction SWPPP Requirements

The Construction SWPPP consists of two parts: a narrative and the drawings. Both parts shall contain information specific to the construction site. Not all items listed below are applicable to all construction projects. The author of the Construction SWPPP should ensure that the applicable sections are addressed. The following two sections describe the contents of the narrative and the drawings. A checklist is included in Section 3.3 of this volume as a quick reference to determine if all the major items are included in the Construction SWPPP.

3.2.1 Narrative

The author of the Construction SWPPP should evaluate the following subject areas for inclusion in the Construction SWPPP narrative. The subject areas below are not an outline for the Construction SWPPP narrative.

- General Information on the Existing Site and Project
    - Project description: Describe the nature and purpose of the construction project. Include the total size of the area, any increase in existing impervious area; the total area expected to be disturbed by clearing, grading, excavation or other construction activities, including off-site borrow and fill areas; and the volumes of grading cut and fill that are proposed.
    - Existing site conditions: Describe the existing topography, vegetation, and drainage. Include a description of any structures or development on the parcel including the area of existing impervious surfaces.
    - Adjacent areas: Describe adjacent areas, including streams, lakes, wetlands, residential areas, and roads that might be affected by the construction project. Describe how upstream drainage areas may affect the site. Provide a description of the upstream drainage

leading to the site and the downstream drainage leading from the site to the receiving body of water.

  - Critical areas: Describe areas on or adjacent to the site that are classified as critical areas. Critical areas that receive runoff from the site shall be described up to ¼ mile away. The local permitting authority may increase the distance. Describe special requirements for working near or within these areas.
  - Soil: Describe the soil on the site, giving such information as soil names, mapping unit, erodibility, settleability, permeability, depth, depth to ground water, texture, and soil structure.
  - Potential erosion problem areas: Describe areas on the site that have potential erosion problems.

- Twelve (12) elements (13 elements if required by the local jurisdiction): Describe how the Construction SWPPP addresses each of the 12 (13) required elements. Include the type and location of BMPs used to satisfy the required element. Often using a combination of BMPs is the best way to satisfy required elements. If an element is not applicable to a project, provide a written justification for why it is not necessary.
- Construction Schedule and phasing: Describe the construction schedule. If the schedule extends into the wet season, describe what activities will continue during the wet season and how the transport of sediment from the construction site to receiving waters will be prevented. Describe the intended sequence and timing of construction activities and any proposed construction phasing.
- Financial/ownership responsibilities: Describe ownership and obligations for the project. Include bond forms and other evidence of financial responsibility for environmental liabilities associated with construction.
- Engineering calculations: Attach any calculations made for the design of such items as sediment ponds, diversions, and waterways, as well as calculations for runoff and stormwater detention design (if applicable). Engineering calculations must bear the signature and stamp of an engineer licensed in the state of Washington.
- Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL): Identify along with their contact information and expiration of their CESCL certification.

3.2.2 Drawings

- Vicinity map: Provide a map with enough detail to identify the location of the construction site, adjacent roads, and receiving waters.

- Site map: Provide a site map(s) showing the features numbered below. The site map requirements may be met using multiple plan sheets for ease of legibility.

  1. A legal description of the property boundaries or an illustration of property lines (including distances) in the drawings.
  2. The direction of north in relation to the site.
  3. Existing structures and roads, if present.
  4. The boundaries of and labels indicating different soil types.
  5. Areas of potential erosion problems.
  6. Any on-site and adjacent surface waters, critical areas, their buffers, FEMA base flood boundaries, and Shoreline Management boundaries.
  7. Existing contours and drainage basins and the direction of flow for the different drainage areas.
  8. Final and interim grade contours as appropriate, drainage basins, and the direction of stormwater flow during and upon completion of construction.
  9. Areas of soil disturbance, including all areas affected by clearing, grading and excavation.
  10. Locations where stormwater discharges to surface waters during and upon completion of construction.
  11. Existing unique or valuable vegetation and the vegetation that is to be preserved.
  12. Cut and fill slopes indicating top and bottom of slope catch lines.
  13. Stockpile, waste storage, and vehicle storage/maintenance areas.
  14. Total cut and fill quantities and the method of disposal for excess material.

- Conveyance systems: Show on the site map the following temporary and permanent conveyance features:

  1. Locations for temporary and permanent swales, interceptor trenches, or ditches.
  2. Drainage pipes, ditches, or cut-off trenches associated with erosion and sediment control and stormwater management.
  3. Temporary and permanent pipe inverts and minimum slopes and cover.
  4. Grades, dimensions, and direction of flow in all ditches and swales, culverts, and pipes.
  5. Details for bypassing off-site runoff around disturbed areas.

6. Locations and outlets of any dewatering systems.

- Location of detention BMPs: Show on the site map the locations of stormwater detention BMPs.
- Erosion and Sediment Control (ESC) BMPs: Show on the site map all major structural and nonstructural ESC BMPs including:
  1. The location of sediment pond(s), pipes and structures.
  2. Dimension pond berm widths and inside and outside pond slopes.
  3. The trap/pond storage required and the depth, length, and width dimensions.
  4. Typical section views through pond and outlet structure.
  5. Typical details of gravel cone and standpipe, and/or other filtering devices.
  6. Stabilization technique details for inlets and outlets.
  7. Control/restrictor device location and details.
  8. Stabilization practices for berms, slopes, and disturbed areas.
  9. Rock specifications and detail for rock check dam, if used.
  10. Spacing for rock check dams as required.
  11. Front and side sections of typical rock check dams.
  12. The location, detail, and specification for silt fence.
  13. The construction entrance location and a detail.
- Detailed drawings: Any structural source control practices used that are not referenced in this manual or other local manuals must be explained and illustrated with detailed drawings.
- Other pollutant BMPs: Indicate on the site map the location of BMPs to be used for the control of pollutants other than sediment such as high or low pH and hydrocarbons.
- Monitoring locations: Indicate on the site map the water quality sampling locations, if required by the local permitting authority or the Department of Ecology. Sampling stations must be located in accordance with applicable permit requirements.
- Standard notes are suggested in Appendix II-A. Notes addressing construction phasing and scheduling must be included on the drawings.

3.3 Step-By-Step Procedure

There are three basic steps in producing a Construction SWPPP:

Step 1 – Data Collection

Step 2 – Data Analysis

Step 3 – Construction SWPPP Development and Implementation

A Construction SWPPP is required for projects meeting the requirements in Section 2.2. Local permitting authorities may allow small construction projects to prepare a simpler Construction SWPPP, consisting of a checklist and drawings. Permittees should check with their jurisdiction about local requirements related to construction stormwater.

3.3.1 Step 1 - Data Collection

Evaluate existing site conditions and gather information that will help develop the most effective Construction SWPPP. The Construction SWPPP author may use the information collected during the development of the Stormwater Site Plan to augment the information discussed below.

Topography: Prepare a topographic drawing of the site to show the existing contour elevations at intervals of 1 to 5 feet depending upon the slope of the terrain.

Drainage: Locate and clearly mark existing drainage swales and patterns on the drawing, including existing storm drain pipe systems.

Soils: Identify and label soil type(s) and erodibility (low, medium, high or an index value) on the drawing or in the narrative.

Characterize soils for permeability, percent organic matter, and effective depth. Express these qualities in averaged or nominal terms for the subject site or project. This information is frequently available in published literature by qualified soil professionals or engineers. For example, the 1983 Soil Survey of Snohomish County lists the following information for each soil mapping unit or designation (e.g., a Sultan silt loam):

- A sieve analysis of the soils
- Permeability (in/hr)
- Available water-holding capacity (in/in)
- The percent of organic matter

Soils information can be obtained from a Natural Resource Conservation Service (NRCS) manual (if one has been published for the county where the construction project is located) or the NRCS' Web Soil Survey website at http://websoilsurvey.nrcs.usda.gov/app/HomePage.htm. If a soil survey is not available, make a request to a District NRCS.

Additionally, soil data can be obtained through site soil analysis as a part of preparation of a Stormwater Site Plan (See Volume I, Chapter 3).

Ground Cover: Label existing vegetation on the drawing. Show features such as tree clusters, grassy areas, and unique or sensitive vegetation. Unique vegetation may include existing trees above a given diameter. Investigate local requirements regarding tree preservation. Indicate existing denuded or exposed soil areas.

Critical Areas: Delineate critical areas adjacent to or within the site on the drawing. Show features such as steep slopes, streams, floodplains, lakes, wetlands, sole source aquifers, and geologic hazard areas. Delineate setbacks and buffer limits for these features on the drawings. On the drawings, show other related jurisdictional boundaries such as Shorelines Management and the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) base floodplain.

Adjacent Areas: Identify existing buildings, roads, and facilities adjacent to or within the project site on the drawings. Identify existing and proposed utility locations, construction clearing limits and erosion and sediment control BMPs on the drawings.

Existing Encumbrances: Identify wells, existing and abandoned septic drainfield, utilities, easements, setbacks, and site constraints.

Precipitation Records: Determine the average monthly rainfall and rainfall intensity for the required design storm events. These records may be available from the local permitting agency. Volume III also has resources for determining rainfall values.

3.3.2 Step 2 - Data Analysis

Consider the data collected in Step 1 to visualize potential problems and limitations of the site. Determine those areas that have critical erosion hazards. The following are some important factors to consider in data analysis:

Topography: The primary topographic considerations are slope steepness and length. Steeper and longer slopes have greater erosion potential than do flat and short slopes. A qualified engineer, soil professional, or certified erosion control specialist should determine erosion potential.

Drainage: Convey runoff through the use of natural drainage patterns that consist of overland flow, swales and depressions to avoid constructing an artificial drainage system. Properly stabilize man-made ditches and waterways so they do not create erosion problems. Take care to ensure that increased runoff from the site will not erode or flood the existing natural drainage system. Consider possible sites for temporary stormwater retention and detention.

Direct construction away from areas of saturated soil where ground water may be encountered and away from critical areas where drainage will concentrate. Preserve natural drainage patterns on the site.

Soils: Evaluate soil properties such as surface and subsurface runoff characteristics, depth to impermeable layer, depth to seasonal ground water table, permeability, shrink-swell potential, texture, settleability, and erodibility. Develop the Construction SWPPP based on known soil characteristics. Protect infiltration sites from clay and silt, which will reduce infiltration capacities.

Ground Cover: Ground cover is the most important factor in terms of preventing erosion. Existing vegetation that can be saved will prevent erosion better than constructed BMPs. Trees and other vegetation protect the soil structure. If the existing vegetation cannot be saved, consider such practices as phasing construction, temporary seeding, and mulching. Phasing construction involves stabilizing one part of the site before disturbing another. In this way, the entire site is not disturbed at once.

Critical Areas: Critical areas may include flood hazard areas, mine hazard areas, slide hazard areas, sole source aquifers, wetlands, streambanks, fish-bearing streams, and other water bodies. Any critical areas within or adjacent to the development should exert a strong influence on land development decisions. Delineate critical areas and their buffers on the drawings and clearly flag critical areas in the field. For example, chain link fencing may be more useful than flagging to assure that equipment operators stay out of critical areas. Only unavoidable work should take place within critical areas and their buffers. Such unavoidable work will require special BMPs, permit restrictions, and mitigation plans– documented routinely in the SWPPP.

Adjacent Areas: An analysis of adjacent properties should focus on areas upslope and downslope from the construction project. Water bodies that will receive direct runoff from the site are a major concern. Evaluate the types, values, and sensitivities of and risks to downstream resources, such as private property, stormwater facilities, public infrastructure, or aquatic systems.. Select erosion and sediment controls accordingly.

Precipitation Records: Refer to Volume III to determine the required rainfall records and the method of analysis for design of BMPs.

Timing of the Project: Consider the timing and duration of the project when selecting BMPs. Projects that will proceed during the wet season and projects that will last through several seasons must take all necessary precautions to remain in compliance with the water quality standards.

3.3.3 Step 3 - Construction SWPPP Development and Implementation

After collecting and analyzing the data to determine the site limitations, the planner can then develop a Construction SWPPP. The first 12 elements below must be considered and included in the Construction SWPPP; unless site conditions render the element unnecessary and the exemption from that element is clearly justified in the narrative of the SWPPP. In addition, construction projects in a jurisdiction under the Municipal Stormwater General Permits must include the element 13 in their Construction SWPPP.

Element #1: Preserve Vegetation/Mark Clearing Limits

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Before beginning land disturbing activities, including clearing and grading, clearly mark all clearing limits, sensitive areas and their buffers, and trees that are to be preserved within the construction area.
- Retain the duff layer, native top soil, and natural vegetation in an undisturbed state to the maximum degree practical.

Additional Guidance

- Plastic, metal, or fabric fence may be used to mark the clearing limits. [Note: the difference between the practical use and proper installation of silt fencing and the proper use of clearing boundary fencing.]
- If it is not practical to retain the duff layer in place, then stockpile it on-site, cover it to prevent erosion, and replace it immediately when you finish disturbing the site.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C101: Preserving Natural Vegetation
- BMP C102: Buffer Zones
- BMP C103: High Visibility Plastic or Metal Fence
- BMP C233: Silt Fence

Element #2: Establish Construction Access

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Limit construction vehicle access and exit to one route, if possible.
- Stabilize access points with a pad of quarry spalls, crushed rock, or other equivalent BMPs, to minimize tracking sediment onto roads.

- Locate wheel wash or tire baths on site, if the stabilized construction entrance is not effective in preventing tracking sediment onto roads.
- If sediment is tracked off site, clean the affected roadway thoroughly at the end of each day, or more frequently as necessary (for example, during wet weather). Remove sediment from roads by shoveling, sweeping, or pick up and transport the sediment to a controlled sediment disposal area.
- Conduct street washing only after sediment is removed in accordance with the above bullet.
- Control street wash wastewater by pumping back on site or otherwise preventing it from discharging into systems tributary to waters of the State.

Additional Guidance

- Minimize construction site access points along linear projects, such as roadways. Street washing may require local jurisdiction approval.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C105: Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit
- BMP C106: Wheel Wash
- BMP C107: Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization

Element #3: Control Flow Rates

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Protect properties and waterways downstream of development sites from erosion and the associated discharge of turbid waters due to increases in the velocity and peak volumetric flow rate of stormwater runoff from the project site, as required by local plan approval authority.[1]
- Where necessary to comply with the bullet above, construct stormwater retention or detention facilities as one of the first steps in grading. Assure that detention facilities function properly before constructing site improvements (e.g. impervious surfaces).
- If permanent infiltration ponds are used for flow control during construction, protect these facilities from siltation during the construction phase.

[1] The Municipal Stormwater Permit Requirements do not include the language "as required by local permitting authority."

Additional Guidance

- Conduct downstream analysis if changes in off-site flows could impair or alter conveyance systems, streambanks, bed sediment, or aquatic habitat. See Volume I, Chapter 3 for off-site analysis guidelines.
- Even gently sloped areas need flow controls such as straw wattles or other energy dissipation / filtration structures. Place dissipation facilities closer together on steeper slopes. These methods prevent water from building higher velocities as it flows downstream within the construction site.
- Outlet structures designed for permanent detention ponds are not appropriate for use during construction without modification. If used during construction, install an outlet structure that will allow for long-term storage of runoff and enable sediment to settle. Verify that the pond is sized appropriately for this purpose. Restore ponds to their original design dimensions, remove sediment, and install a final outlet structure at completion of the project.
- Erosion has the potential to occur because of increases in the volume, velocity, and peak flow rate of stormwater runoff from the project site. The local permitting agency may require pond designs that provide additional or different stormwater flow control. These requirements may be necessary to address local conditions or to protect properties and waterways downstream.
- Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site condition must also control stormwater release rates during construction. Construction site stormwater discharges shall not exceed the discharge durations of the pre-developed condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from ½ of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow as predicted by an approved continuous runoff model. The pre-developed condition to be matched shall be the land cover condition immediately prior to the development project. This restriction on release rates can affect the size of the storage pond and treatment cells.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C203: Water Bars
- BMP C207: Check Dams
- BMP C209: Outlet Protection
- BMP C235: Wattles
- BMP C240: Sediment Trap
- BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond
- Refer to Volume 3, Detention Facilities, Infiltration Stormwater Quantity and Flow Control

Element #4: Install Sediment Controls

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

The Permittee must design, install and maintain effective erosion controls and sediment controls to minimize the discharge of pollutants. At a minimum, the Permittee must design, install and maintain such controls to:[2]

- Construct sediment control BMPs (sediment ponds, traps, filters, etc.) as one of the first steps in grading. These BMPs shall be functional before other land disturbing activities take place.
- Minimize sediment discharges from the site. The design, installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment controls must address factors such as the amount, frequency, intensity and duration of precipitation, the nature of resulting stormwater runoff, and soil characteristics, including the range of soil particle sizes expected to be present on the site.
- Direct stormwater runoff from disturbed areas through a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal BMP, before the runoff leaves a construction site or before discharge to an infiltration facility. Runoff from fully stabilized areas may be discharged without a sediment removal BMP, but must meet the flow control performance standard in Element #3, bullet #1.
- Locate BMPs intended to trap sediment on site in a manner to avoid interference with the movement of juvenile salmonids attempting to enter off-channel areas or drainages.
- Provide and maintain natural buffers around surface waters, direct stormwater to vegetated areas to increase sediment removal, and maximize stormwater infiltration, unless infeasible.[3]
- Where feasible, design outlet structures that withdraw impounded stormwater from the surface to avoid discharging sediment that is still suspended lower in the water column.

Additional Guidance

- Outlet structures that withdraw impounded stormwater from the surface to avoid discharging sediment that is still suspended lower in the water column are for the construction period only. If the pond using the construction outlet control is used for permanent stormwater controls, the appropriate outlet structure must be installed after the soil disturbance has ended.

---

[2] The Municipal Stormwater Permit Requirements do not include this paragraph, but do include a similar requirement.
[3] The Municipal Stormwater Permit Requirements do not include this bullet.

- Seed and mulch earthen structures such as dams, dikes, and diversions according to the timing indicated in Element #5.
- Full stabilization includes concrete or asphalt paving; quarry spalls used as ditch lining; or the use of rolled erosion products, a bonded fiber matrix product, or vegetative cover in a manner that will fully prevent soil erosion.
- The Local Permitting Authority may inspect and approve areas fully stabilized by means other than pavement or quarry spalls.
- If installing a floating pump structure, include a stopper to prevent the pump basket from hitting the bottom of the pond.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C231: Brush Barrier
- BMP C232: Gravel Filter Berm
- BMP C233: Silt Fence
- BMP C234: Vegetated Strip
- BMP C235: Wattles
- BMP C240: Sediment Trap
- BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond
- BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment
- BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration

Element #5: Stabilize Soils[4]

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Stabilize exposed and unworked soils by application of effective BMPs that prevent erosion. Applicable BMPs include, but are not limited to: temporary and permanent seeding, sodding, mulching, plastic covering, erosion control fabrics and matting, soil application of polyacrylamide (PAM), the early application of gravel base early on areas to be paved, and dust control.
- Control stormwater volume and velocity within the site to minimize soil erosion.
- Control stormwater discharges, including both peak flow rates and total stormwater volume, to minimize erosion at outlets and to minimize downstream channel and stream bank erosion.

[4] The Construction Stormwater General Permit refers to "the Permittee" throughout this section of permit requirements. This language was removed here to be consistent with the Municipal Stormwater Permits.

- Soils must not remain exposed and unworked for more than the time periods set forth below to prevent erosion.
    - During the dry season (May 1 - Sept. 30): 7 days.
    - During the wet season (October 1 - April 30): 2 days.
- Stabilize soils at the end of the shift before a holiday or weekend if needed based on the weather forecast.
- Stabilize soil stockpiles from erosion, protect with sediment trapping measures, and where possible, be located away from storm drain inlets, waterways, and drainage channels.
- Minimize the amount of soil exposed during construction activity.
- Minimize the disturbance of steep slopes.
- Minimize soil compaction and, unless infeasible, preserve topsoil.

Additional Guidance

- Soils must not remain exposed and unworked for more than the time periods set forth above to prevent erosion for linear projects.
- Soil stabilization measures should be appropriate for the time of year, site conditions, estimated duration of use, and potential water quality impacts that stabilization agents may have on downstream waters or ground water.
- Ensure that gravel base used for stabilization is clean and does not contain fines or sediment.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding
- BMP C121: Mulching
- BMP C122: Nets and Blankets
- BMP C123: Plastic Covering
- BMP C124: Sodding
- BMP C125: Topsoiling/Composting
- BMP C126: Polyacrylamide for Soil Erosion Protection
- BMP C130: Surface Roughening
- BMP C131: Gradient Terraces
- BMP C140: Dust Control

Element #6: Protect Slopes[5]

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Design and construct cut-and-fill slopes in a manner to minimize erosion. Applicable practices include, but are not limited to, reducing continuous length of slope with terracing and diversions, reducing slope steepness, and roughening slope surfaces (for example, track walking).
- Divert off-site stormwater (run-on) or ground water away from slopes and disturbed areas with interceptor dikes, pipes, and/or swales. Off-site stormwater should be managed separately from stormwater generated on the site.
- At the top of slopes, collect drainage in pipe slope drains or protected channels to prevent erosion.
  - Temporary pipe slope drains must handle the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a Type 1A, 10-year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. Alternatively, the 10-year, 1-hour flow rate predicted by an approved continuous runoff model, increased by a factor of 1.6, may be used. The hydrologic analysis must use the existing land cover condition for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits. For tributary areas on the project site, the analysis must use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the highest flow rates. If using the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) to predict flows, bare soil areas should be modeled as "landscaped" area.
- Place excavated material on the uphill side of trenches, consistent with safety and space considerations.
- Place check dams at regular intervals within constructed channels that are cut down a slope.

Additional Guidance

- Where 15-minute time steps are available in an approved continuous runoff model, they may be used directly without a correction factor.
- Consider soil type and its potential for erosion.
- Stabilize soils on slopes, as specified in Element #5.
- BMP combinations are the most effective method of protecting slopes with disturbed soils. For example use both mulching and straw erosion control blankets in combination.

---

[5] The Construction Stormwater General Permit refers to “the Permittee” throughout this section of permit requirements. This language was removed here to be consistent with the Municipal Stormwater Permits.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding
- BMP C121: Mulching
- BMP C122: Nets and Blankets
- BMP C123: Plastic Covering
- BMP C124: Sodding
- BMP C130: Surface Roughening
- BMP C131: Gradient Terraces
- BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale
- BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels
- BMP C203: Water Bars
- BMP C204: Pipe Slope Drains
- BMP C205: Subsurface Drains
- BMP C206: Level Spreader
- BMP C207: Check Dams
- BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam)

Element #7: Protect Drain Inlets

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Protect all storm drain inlets made operable during construction so that stormwater runoff does not enter the conveyance system without first being filtered or treated to remove sediment.
- Clean or remove and replace inlet protection devices when sediment has filled one-third of the available storage (unless a different standard is specified by the product manufacturer).

Additional Guidance

- Where possible, protect all existing storm drain inlets so that stormwater runoff does not enter the conveyance system without first being filtered or treated to remove sediment.
- Keep all approach roads clean. Do not allow sediment and street wash water to enter storm drains without prior and adequate treatment unless treatment is provided before the storm drain discharges to waters of the State.
- Inlets should be inspected weekly at a minimum and daily during storm events.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection

Element #8: Stabilize Channels and Outlets

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Design, construct, and stabilize all on-site conveyance channels to prevent erosion from the following expected peak flows:
  - Channels must handle the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a Type 1A, 10-year, 24-hour frequency storm for the developed condition. Alternatively, the 10-year, 1-hour flow rate indicated by an approved continuous runoff model, increased by a factor of 1.6, may be used. The hydrologic analysis must use the existing land cover condition for predicting flow rates from tributary areas outside the project limits. For tributary areas on the project site, the analysis must use the temporary or permanent project land cover condition, whichever will produce the highest flow rates. If using the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) to predict flows, bare soil areas should be modeled as "landscaped area.
- Provide stabilization, including armoring material, adequate to prevent erosion of outlets, adjacent streambanks, slopes, and downstream reaches at the outlets of all conveyance systems.

Additional Guidance

The best method for stabilizing channels is to completely line the channel with a blanket product first, then add check dams as necessary to function as an anchor and to slow the flow of water.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C202: Channel Lining
- BMP C122: Nets and Blankets
- BMP C207: Check Dams
- BMP C209: Outlet Protection

Element #9: Control Pollutants

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Design, install, implement and maintain effective pollution prevention measures to minimize the discharge of pollutants.[6]
- Handle and dispose of all pollutants, including waste materials and demolition debris that occur on-site in a manner that does not cause contamination of stormwater.

[6] The Construction Stormwater General Permit refers to "the Permittee" throughout this section of permit requirements. This language was removed here to be consistent with the Municipal Stormwater Permits.

- Provide cover, containment, and protection from vandalism for all chemicals, liquid products, petroleum products, and other materials that have the potential to pose a threat to human health or the environment. On-site fueling tanks must include secondary containment. Secondary containment means placing tanks or containers within an impervious structure capable of containing 110% of the volume contained in the largest tank within the containment structure. Double-walled tanks do not require additional secondary containment.
- Conduct maintenance, fueling, and repair of heavy equipment and vehicles using spill prevention and control measures. Clean contaminated surfaces immediately following any spill incident.
- Discharge wheel wash or tire bath wastewater to a separate on-site treatment system that prevents discharge to surface water, such as closed-loop recirculation or upland land application, or to the sanitary sewer, with local sewer district approval.
- Apply fertilizers and pesticides in a manner and at application rates that will not result in loss of chemical to stormwater runoff. Follow manufacturers' label requirements for application rates and procedures.
- Use BMPs to prevent contamination of stormwater runoff by pH-modifying sources. The sources for this contamination include, but are not limited to: bulk cement, cement kiln dust, fly ash, new concrete washing and curing waters, waste streams generated from concrete grinding and sawing, exposed aggregate processes, dewatering concrete vaults, concrete pumping and mixer washout waters.
- Adjust the pH of stormwater if necessary to prevent violations of the water quality standards.
- Assure that washout of concrete trucks is performed off-site or in designated concrete washout areas only. Do not wash out concrete trucks onto the ground, or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams. Do not dump excess concrete on site, except in designated concrete washout areas. Concrete spillage or concrete discharge to surface waters of the State is prohibited.
- Obtain written approval from Ecology before using chemical treatment other than CO_2 or dry ice to adjust pH.

Additional Guidance

- Wheel wash or tire bath wastewater should not include wastewater from concrete washout areas.
- Do not use upland land applications for discharging wastewater from concrete washout areas.
- Woody debris may be chopped and spread on site.

- Conduct oil changes, hydraulic system drain down, solvent and de-greasing cleaning operations, fuel tank drain down and removal, and other activities which may result in discharge or spillage of pollutants to the ground or into stormwater runoff using spill prevention measures, such as drip pans.
- Clean contaminated surfaces immediately following any discharge or spill incident. Emergency repairs may be performed on-site using temporary plastic placed beneath and, if raining, over the vehicle.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C151: Concrete Handling
- BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention
- BMP C153: Material Delivery, Storage and Containment
- BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area
- BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment
- BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration
- BMP C252: High pH Neutralization Using CO_2
- BMP C253: pH Control for High pH Water
- See Volume IV – Source Control BMPs

Element #10: Control De-Watering[7]

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Discharge foundation, vault, and trench dewatering water, which have characteristics similar to stormwater runoff at the site, into a controlled conveyance system before discharge to a sediment trap or sediment pond.
- Discharge clean, non-turbid de-watering water, such as well-point ground water, to systems tributary to, or directly into surface waters of the State, as specified in Element #8, provided the de-watering flow does not cause erosion or flooding of receiving waters or interfere with the operation of the system. Do not route clean dewatering water through stormwater sediment ponds. Note that "surface waters of the State" may exist on a construction site as well as off site; for example, a creek running through a site.
- Handle highly turbid or contaminated dewatering water separately from stormwater.

[7] The Construction Stormwater General Permit refers to "the Permittee" throughout this section of permit requirements. This language was removed here to be consistent with the Municipal Stormwater Permits.

- Other treatment or disposal options may include:
  1. Infiltration.
  2. Transport off-site in a vehicle, such as a vacuum flush truck, for legal disposal in a manner that does not pollute state waters.
  3. Ecology-approved on-site chemical treatment or other suitable treatment technologies.
  4. Sanitary or combined sewer discharge with local sewer district approval, if there is no other option.
  5. Use of a sedimentation bag with outfall to a ditch or swale for small volumes of localized dewatering.

Additional Guidance

- Channels must be stabilized, as specified in Element #8.
- Construction equipment operation, clamshell digging, concrete tremie pour, or work inside a cofferdam can create highly turbid or contaminated dewatering water.
- Discharging sediment-laden (muddy) water into waters of the State likely constitutes violation of water quality standards for turbidity. The easiest way to avoid discharging muddy water is through infiltration and preserving vegetation.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C203: Water Bars
- BMP C236: Vegetative Filtration

Element #11: Maintain BMPs[8]

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Maintain and repair all temporary and permanent erosion and sediment control BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function in accordance with BMP specifications.
- Remove all temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs within 30 days after achieving final site stabilization or after the temporary BMPs are no longer needed.

Additional Guidance

- Note: Some temporary erosion and sediment control BMPs are bio-degradable and designed to remain in place following construction such as compost socks.

[8] The Construction Stormwater General Permit refers to “the Permittee” throughout this section of permit requirements. This language was removed here to be consistent with the Municipal Stormwater Permits.

- Provide protection to all BMPs installed for the permanent control of stormwater from sediment and compaction. All BMPs that are to remain in place following completion of construction shall be examined and placed in full operating conditions. If sediment enters the BMPs during construction, it shall be removed and the facility shall be returned to the conditions specified in the construction documents.
- Remove or stabilize trapped sediment on site. Permanently stabilize disturbed soil resulting from removal of BMPs or vegetation.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C150: Materials On Hand
- BMP C160: Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead

Element #12: Manage the Project

Construction Stormwater General Permit and Municipal Stormwater Permit Requirements

- Phase development projects to the maximum degree practicable and take into account seasonal work limits.
- Inspection and monitoring – Inspect, maintain, and repair all BMPs as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function. Conduct site inspections and monitoring in accordance with the Construction Stormwater General Permit or local plan approval authority.
- Maintaining an updated construction SWPPP – Maintain, update, and implement the SWPPP in accordance with the Construction Stormwater General Permit.

Municipal Stormwater Permit Requirements

- Projects that disturb one or more acres must have, site inspections conducted by a Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL). Project sites less than one acre (not part of a larger common plan of development or sale) may have a person without CESCL certification conduct inspections. By the initiation of construction, the SWPPP must identify the CESCL or inspector, who shall be present on-site or on-call at all times.

Additional Guidance for Site Inspections

- The CESCL or inspector (project sites less than one acre) must have the skills to assess the:
    - Site conditions and construction activities that could impact the quality of stormwater.
    - Effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures used to control the quality of stormwater discharges.

- The CESCL or inspector must examine stormwater visually for the presence of suspended sediment, turbidity, discoloration, and oil sheen. They must evaluate the effectiveness of BMPs and determine if it is necessary to install, maintain, or repair BMPs to improve the quality of stormwater discharges.

  Based on the results of the inspection, construction site operators must correct the problems identified by:

- Reviewing the SWPPP for compliance with the 13 construction SWPPP elements and making appropriate revisions within 7 days of the inspection.
- Immediately beginning the process of fully implementing and maintaining appropriate source control and/or treatment BMPs as soon as possible, addressing the problems no later than within 10 days of the inspection. If installation of necessary treatment BMPs is not feasible within 10 days, the construction site operator may request an extension within the initial 10-day response period.
- Documenting BMP implementation and maintenance in the site log book (applies only to sites that have coverage under the Construction Stormwater General Permit).
- The CESCL or inspector must inspect all areas disturbed by construction activities, all BMPs, and all stormwater discharge points at least once every calendar week and within 24 hours of any discharge from the site. (For purposes of this condition, individual discharge events that last more than one day do not require daily inspections. For example, if a stormwater pond discharges continuously over the course of a week, only one inspection is required that week.) The CESCL or inspector may reduce the inspection frequency for temporary stabilized, inactive sites to once every calendar month

Additional Guidance

- Phasing of Construction.

  Phase development projects where feasible in order to prevent soil erosion and, to the maximum extent practical, and prevent transporting sediment from the site during construction. Revegetate exposed areas and maintain that vegetation as an integral part of the clearing activities for any phase.

  Clearing and grading activities for developments shall be permitted only if conducted using an approved site development plan (e.g., subdivision approval) that establishes permitted areas of clearing, grading, cutting, and filling. Minimize removing trees and disturbing or compacting native soils when establishing permitted clearing and grading areas. Show on the site plans and the development site permitted clearing and grading areas and any other areas required to preserve critical or sensitive areas, buffers, native growth protection easements, or tree retention areas as may be required by local jurisdictions.

- Seasonal Work Limitations

  From October 1 through April 30, clearing, grading, and other soil disturbing activities is permitted only if shown to the satisfaction of the local permitting authority that the site operator will prevent silt-laden runoff from leaving the site through a combination of the following:

  1. Site conditions including existing vegetative coverage, slope, soil type, and proximity to receiving waters.
  2. Limit activities and the extent of disturbed areas.
  3. Proposed erosion and sediment control measures.

  Based on the information provided and/or local weather conditions, the local permitting authority may expand or restrict the seasonal limitation on site disturbance. The local permitting authority has the authority to take enforcement action –such as a notice of violation, administrative order, penalty, or stop-work order under the following circumstances:

- If, during the course of any construction activity or soil disturbance during the seasonal limitation period, sediment leaves the construction site causing a violation of the surface water quality standard; or
- If clearing and grading limits or erosion and sediment control measures shown in the approved plan are not maintained.

  The following activities are exempt from the seasonal clearing and grading limitations:

  1. Routine maintenance and necessary repair of erosion and sediment control BMPs;
  2. Routine maintenance of public facilities or existing utility structures that do not expose the soil or result in the removal of the vegetative cover to soil.
  3. Activities where there is one hundred percent infiltration of surface water runoff within the site in approved and installed erosion and sediment control facilities.

- Coordination with Utilities and Other Contractors

  The primary project proponent shall evaluate, with input from utilities and other contractors, the stormwater management requirements for the entire project, including the utilities, when preparing the Construction SWPPP.

- Inspection and Monitoring

All BMPs must be inspected, maintained, and repaired as needed to assure continued performance of their intended function. Site inspections must be conducted by a person knowledgeable in the principles and practices of erosion and sediment control. The person must have the skills to 1) assess the site conditions and construction activities that could impact the quality of stormwater, and 2) assess the effectiveness of erosion and sediment control measures used to control the quality of stormwater discharges.

For construction sites one acre or larger that discharge stormwater to surface waters of the state, a CESCL must be identified in the construction SWPPP; this person must be on-site or on-call at all times. Certification must be obtained through an approved training program that meets the erosion and sediment control training standards established by Ecology.

Appropriate BMPs or design changes shall be implemented as soon as possible whenever inspection and/or monitoring reveals that the BMPs identified in the Construction SWPPP are inadequate, due to the actual discharge of /or potential to discharge a significant amount of any pollutant.

- Maintaining an Updated Construction SWPPP

  Retain the Construction SWPPP on-site or within reasonable access to the site.

  Modify the SWPPP whenever there is a change in the design, construction, operation, or maintenance at the construction site that has, or could have, a significant effect on the discharge of pollutants to waters of the state.

The SWPPP must be modified if, during inspections or investigations conducted by the owner/operator, or the applicable local or state regulatory authority, it is determined that the SWPPP is ineffective in eliminating or significantly minimizing pollutants in stormwater discharges from the site. Modify the SWPPP as necessary to include additional or modified BMPs designed to correct problems identified. Complete revisions to the SWPPP within seven (7) days following the inspection.

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C150: Materials On Hand
- BMP C160: Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead
- BMP C162: Scheduling

Element #13: Protect Low Impact Development BMPs

Municipal Stormwater Permits Requirements

- Protect all Bioretention and Rain Garden BMPs from sedimentation through installation and maintenance of erosion and sediment control BMPs on portions of the site that drain into the Bioretention and/or Rain Garden BMPs. Restore the BMPs to their fully functioning condition if they accumulate sediment during construction. Restoring the BMP must include removal of sediment and any sediment-laden Bioretention/rain garden soils, and replacing the removed soils with soils meeting the design specification.
- Prevent compacting Bioretention and rain garden BMPs by excluding construction equipment and foot traffic. Protect completed lawn and landscaped areas from compaction due to construction equipment.
- Control erosion and avoid introducing sediment from surrounding land uses onto permeable pavements. Do not allow muddy construction equipment on the base material or pavement. Do not allow sediment-laden runoff onto permeable pavements.
- Pavements fouled with sediments or no longer passing an initial infiltration test must be cleaned using procedures from the local stormwater manual or the manufacturer's procedures.
- Keep all heavy equipment off existing soils under LID facilities that have been excavated to final grade to retain the infiltration rate of the soils.

Additional Guidance

See Chapter 5: Precision Site Preparation, Construction & Inspection of LID Facilities in the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) for more detail on protecting LID integrated management practices.

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Suggested BMPs

- BMP C102: Buffer Zone
- BMP C103: High Visibility Fence
- BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale
- BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels
- BMP C207: Check Dams
- BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (TSD) (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam)
- BMP C231: Brush Barrier
- BMP C233: Silt Fence
- BMP C234: Vegetated Strip

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Name: ______________________________
City Reference No. ______________________________
Construction Permit No. ______________________________
Review Date: ______________________________
On-site Inspection Review Date: ______________________________
Construction SWPPP Reviewer: ______________________________

Section I – Construction SWPPP Narrative

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Elements

1. ___ Describe how each of the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Elements has been addressed though the Construction SWPPP.
2. ___ Identify the type and location of BMPs used to satisfy the required element.
3. ___ Provide written justification identifying the reason an element is not applicable to the proposal.

Thirteen Required Elements - Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan

1. ___ Mark Clearing Limits
2. ___ Establish Construction Access
3. ___ Control Flow Rates
4. ___ Install Sediment Controls
5. ___ Stabilize Soils
6. ___ Protect Slopes
7. ___ Protect Drain Inlets
8. ___ Stabilize Channels and Outlets
9. ___ Control Pollutants
10. ___ Control De-Watering
11. ___ Maintain BMPs
12. ___ Manage the Project
13. ___ Protect Low Impact Development BMPs

Project Description

1. ___ Total project area
2. ___ Total proposed impervious area
3. ___ Total proposed area to be disturbed, including off-site borrow and fill areas
4. ___ Total volumes of proposed cut and fill

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Name: ____
Construction Permit No. ____
City Reference No. ____

Existing Site Conditions

1. ___ Description of the existing topography
2. ___ Description of the existing vegetation
3. ___ Description of the existing drainage

Adjacent Areas

1. Description of adjacent areas which may be affected by site disturbance or drain to project site.

___ a. Streams
___ b. Lakes
___ c. Wetlands
___ d. Residential Areas
___ e. Roads
___ f. Other

2. ___ Description of the downstream drainage path leading from the site to the receiving body of water. (Minimum distance of 400 yards.)

Critical Areas

1. ___ Description of critical areas that are on or adjacent to the site.
2. ___ Description of special requirements for working in or near critical areas.

Soils

1. Description of on-site soils.

___ a. Soil name(s)
___ b. Soil mapping unit
___ c. Erodibility
___ d. Settleability
___ e. Permeability
___ f. Depth
___ g. Texture
___ h. Soil Structure

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Name: ____
Construction Permit No. ____
City Reference No. ____

Erosion Problem Areas

1. ___ Description of potential erosion problems on site.

Construction Phasing

1. ___ Construction sequence
2. ___ Construction phasing (if proposed)

Construction Schedule

1. ___ Provide a proposed construction schedule.
2. ___ Wet Season Construction Activities
   ___ a. Proposed wet season construction activities.
   ___ b. Proposed wet season construction restraints for environmentally sensitive/critical areas.

Financial/Ownership Responsibilities

1. ___ Identify the property owner responsible for the initiation of bonds and/or other financial securities.
2. ___ Describe bonds and/or other evidence of financial responsibility for liability associated with erosion and sedimentation impacts.

Engineering Calculations

1. ___Provide Design Calculations.
   ___ a. Sediment Ponds/Traps
   ___ b. Diversions
   ___ c. Waterways
   ___ d. Runoff/Stormwater Detention Calculations

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Name: ____
Construction Permit No. ____
City Reference No. ____

Section II - Erosion and Sediment Control Plans

General

1. ___ Vicinity Map
2. ___ City/County of _______________ Clearing and Grading Approval Block
3. ___ Erosion and Sediment Control Notes

Site Plan

1. ___ Note legal description of subject property.
2. ___ Show North Arrow.
3. ___ Indicate boundaries of existing vegetation, e.g. tree lines, pasture areas, etc.
4. ___ Identify and label areas of potential erosion problems.
5. ___ Identify on-site or adjacent surface waters, critical areas and associated buffers.
6. ___ Identify FEMA base flood boundaries and Shoreline Management boundaries (if applicable).
7. ___ Show existing and proposed contours.
8. ___ Indicate drainage basins and direction of flow for individual drainage areas.
9. ___ Label final grade contours and identify developed condition drainage basins.
10. ___ Delineate areas that are to be cleared and graded.
11. ___ Show all cut and fill slopes indicating top and bottom of slope catch lines.

Conveyance Systems

1. ___ Designate locations for swales, interceptor trenches, or ditches.
2. ___ Show all temporary and permanent drainage pipes, ditches, or cut-off trenches required for erosion and sediment control.
3. ___ Provide minimum slope and cover for all temporary pipes or call out pipe inverts.
4. ___ Show grades, dimensions, and direction of flow in all ditches, swales, culverts and pipes.
5. ___ Provide details for bypassing off-site runoff around disturbed areas.
6. ___ Indicate locations and outlets of any dewatering systems.

Location of Detention BMPs

1. ___ Identify location of detention BMPs.

Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan Checklist

Project Name: ____
Construction Permit No. ____
City Reference No. ____

Erosion and Sediment Control Facilities

1. ___ Show the locations of sediment trap(s), pond(s), pipes and structures.
2. ___ Dimension pond berm widths and inside and outside pond slopes.
3. ___ Indicate the trap/pond storage required and the depth, length, and width dimensions.
4. ___ Provide typical section views through pond and outlet structure.
5. ___ Provide typical details of gravel cone and standpipe, and/or other filtering devices.
6. ___ Detail stabilization techniques for outlet/inlet.
7. ___ Detail control/restrictor device location and details.
8. ___ Specify mulch and/or recommended cover of berms and slopes.
9. ___ Provide rock specifications and detail for rock check dam(s), if applicable.
10. ___ Specify spacing for rock check dams as required.
11. ___ Provide front and side sections of typical rock check dams.
12. ___ Indicate the locations and provide details and specifications for silt fabric.
13. ___ Locate the construction entrance and provide a detail.

Detailed Drawings

1. ___ Any structural practices used that are not referenced in the Ecology Manual should be explained and illustrated with detailed drawings.

Other Pollutant BMPs

1. ___ Indicate on the site plan the location of BMPs to be used for the control of pollutants other than sediment, e.g., concrete wash water.

Monitoring Locations

1. ___ Indicate on the site plan the water quality sampling locations to be used for monitoring water quality on the construction site, if applicable.

Chapter 4 - Best Management Practices Standards and Specifications

Best Management Practices (BMPs) are defined as schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and structural and/or managerial practices, that when used singly or in combination, prevent or reduce the release of pollutants to waters of Washington State. This chapter contains standards and specifications for temporary BMPs to be used as applicable during the construction phase of a project. Often using BMPs in combination is the best method to meet Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) requirements.

None of the BMPs listed below will work successfully through the construction project without inspection and maintenance. Regular inspections to identify problems with the operation of each BMP, and the timely repair of any problems are essential to the continued operation of the BMPs.

Section 4.1 contains the standards and specifications for Source Control BMPs.

Section 4.2 contains the standards and specifications for Runoff Conveyance and Treatment BMPs.

The standards for each individual BMP are divided into four sections:

1. Purpose
2. Conditions of Use
3. Design and Installation Specifications
4. Maintenance Standards

Note that the "Conditions of Use" refers to site conditions. As site conditions change, BMPs must be changed to remain in compliance.

4.1 Source Control BMPs

This section contains the standards and specifications for Source Control BMPs. Table 4.1.1, below, shows the relationship of the BMPs in Section 4.1 to the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) Elements described in Section 3.3.3. Elements not shown on Table 4.1.1 are not satisfied through installation of Source Controls.

Table 4.1.1 Source Control BMPs by SWPPP Element

BMP or Element Name	**Element #1** Preserve Vegetation/ Mark Clearing Limits	**Element #2** Establish Construction Access	**Element #5** Stabilize Soils	**Element #6** Protect Slopes	**Element #8** Stabilize Channels and Outlets	**Element #9** Control Pollutants	**Element #11** Maintain BMPs	**Element #12** Manage the Project	**Element #13** Protect Low Impact Development
BMP C101: Preserving Natural Vegetation	✓								
BMP C102: Buffer Zones	✓								✓
BMP C103: High Visibility Fence	✓								✓
BMP C105: Stabilized Construction Entrance / Exit		✓							
BMP C106: Wheel Wash		✓							
BMP C107: Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization		✓							
BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding			✓	✓					
BMP C121: Mulching			✓	✓					
BMP C122: Nets and Blankets			✓	✓	✓				
BMP C123: Plastic Covering			✓	✓					
BMP C124: Sodding			✓	✓					
BMP C125: Topsoiling / Composting			✓						
BMP C126: Polyacrylamide (PAM) for Soil Erosion Protection			✓						
BMP C130: Surface Roughening			✓	✓					
BMP C131: Gradient Terraces			✓	✓					
BMP C140: Dust Control			✓						
BMP C150: Materials on Hand							✓	✓	
BMP C151: Concrete Handling						✓			
BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention						✓			
BMP C153: Material Delivery, Storage and Containment						✓			
BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area						✓			
BMP C160: Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead							✓	✓	
BMP C162: Scheduling								✓	

BMP C101: Preserving Natural Vegetation

Purpose

The purpose of preserving natural vegetation is to reduce erosion wherever practicable. Limiting site disturbance is the single most effective method for reducing erosion. For example, conifers can hold up to about 50 percent of all rain that falls during a storm. Up to 20-30 percent of this rain may never reach the ground but is taken up by the tree or evaporates. Another benefit is that the rain held in the tree can be released slowly to the ground after the storm.

Conditions of Use

Natural vegetation should be preserved on steep slopes, near perennial and intermittent watercourses or swales, and on building sites in wooded areas.

- As required by local governments.
- Phase construction to preserve natural vegetation on the project site for as long as possible during the construction period.

Design and Installation Specifications

Natural vegetation can be preserved in natural clumps or as individual trees, shrubs and vines.

The preservation of individual plants is more difficult because heavy equipment is generally used to remove unwanted vegetation. The points to remember when attempting to save individual plants are:

- Is the plant worth saving? Consider the location, species, size, age, vigor, and the work involved. Local governments may also have ordinances to save natural vegetation and trees.
- Fence or clearly mark areas around trees that are to be saved. It is preferable to keep ground disturbance away from the trees at least as far out as the dripline.

  Plants need protection from three kinds of injuries:

- *Construction Equipment* - This injury can be above or below the ground level. Damage results from scarring, cutting of roots, and compaction of the soil. Placing a fenced buffer zone around plants to be saved prior to construction can prevent construction equipment injuries.
- *Grade Changes* - Changing the natural ground level will alter grades, which affects the plant's ability to obtain the necessary air, water, and minerals. Minor fills usually do not cause problems although sensitivity between species does vary and should be checked. Trees can typically tolerate fill of 6 inches or less. For shrubs and other plants, the fill should be less.

  When there are major changes in grade, it may become necessary to supply air to the roots of plants. This can be done by placing a layer of gravel and a tile system over the roots before the fill is made. A tile system protects a tree from a raised grade. The tile system should be laid out on the original grade leading from a dry well around the tree trunk. The system should then be covered with small stones to allow air to circulate over the root area.

Lowering the natural ground level can seriously damage trees and shrubs. The highest percentage of the plant roots are in the upper 12 inches of the soil and cuts of only 2-3 inches can cause serious injury. To protect the roots it may be necessary to terrace the immediate area around the plants to be saved. If roots are exposed, construction of retaining walls may be needed to keep the soil in place. Plants can also be preserved by leaving them on an undisturbed, gently sloping mound. To increase the chances for survival, it is best to limit grade changes and other soil disturbances to areas outside the dripline of the plant.

- *Excavations* - Protect trees and other plants when excavating for drainfields, power, water, and sewer lines. Where possible, the trenches should be routed around trees and large shrubs. When this is not possible, it is best to tunnel under them. This can be done with hand tools or with power augers. If it is not possible to route the trench around plants to be saved, then the following should be observed:

  Cut as few roots as possible. When you have to cut, cut clean. Paint cut root ends with a wood dressing like asphalt base paint if roots will be exposed for more than 24-hours.

  Backfill the trench as soon as possible.

  Tunnel beneath root systems as close to the center of the main trunk to preserve most of the important feeder roots.

Some problems that can be encountered with a few specific trees are:

- Maple, Dogwood, Red alder, Western hemlock, Western red cedar, and Douglas fir do not readily adjust to changes in environment and special care should be taken to protect these trees.
- The windthrow hazard of Pacific silver fir and madrona is high, while that of Western hemlock is moderate. The danger of windthrow increases where dense stands have been thinned. Other species (unless they are on shallow, wet soils less than 20 inches deep) have a low windthrow hazard.
- Cottonwoods, maples, and willows have water-seeking roots. These can cause trouble in sewer lines and infiltration fields. On the other hand, they thrive in high moisture conditions that other trees would not.
- Thinning operations in pure or mixed stands of Grand fir, Pacific silver fir, Noble fir, Sitka spruce, Western red cedar, Western hemlock, Pacific dogwood, and Red alder can cause serious disease problems.

Disease can become established through damaged limbs, trunks, roots, and freshly cut stumps. Diseased and weakened trees are also susceptible to insect attack.

Maintenance Standards

Inspect flagged and/or fenced areas regularly to make sure flagging or fencing has not been removed or damaged. If the flagging or fencing has been damaged or visibility reduced, it shall be repaired or replaced immediately and visibility restored.

- If tree roots have been exposed or injured, “prune” cleanly with an appropriate pruning saw or loppers directly above the damaged roots and recover with native soils. Treatment of sap flowing trees (fir, hemlock, pine, soft maples) is not advised as sap forms a natural healing barrier.

BMP C102: Buffer Zones

Purpose

Creation of an undisturbed area or strip of natural vegetation or an established suitable planting that will provide a living filter to reduce soil erosion and runoff velocities.

Conditions of Use

Natural buffer zones are used along streams, wetlands and other bodies of water that need protection from erosion and sedimentation. Vegetative buffer zones can be used to protect natural swales and can be incorporated into the natural landscaping of an area.

Critical-areas buffer zones should not be used as sediment treatment areas. These areas shall remain completely undisturbed. The local permitting authority may expand the buffer widths temporarily to allow the use of the expanded area for removal of sediment.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Preserving natural vegetation or plantings in clumps, blocks, or strips is generally the easiest and most successful method.
- Leave all unstable steep slopes in natural vegetation.
- Mark clearing limits and keep all equipment and construction debris out of the natural areas and buffer zones. Steel construction fencing is the most effective method in protecting sensitive areas and buffers. Alternatively, wire-backed silt fence on steel posts is marginally effective. Flagging alone is typically not effective.
- Keep all excavations outside the dripline of trees and shrubs.
- Do not push debris or extra soil into the buffer zone area because it will cause damage from burying and smothering.
- Vegetative buffer zones for streams, lakes or other waterways shall be established by the local permitting authority or other state or federal permits or approvals.

Maintenance Standards

Inspect the area frequently to make sure flagging remains in place and the area remains undisturbed. Replace all damaged flagging immediately.

BMP C103: High Visibility Fence

Purpose

Fencing is intended to:

1. Restrict clearing to approved limits.
2. Prevent disturbance of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left undisturbed.
3. Limit construction traffic to designated construction entrances, exits, or internal roads.
4. Protect areas where marking with survey tape may not provide adequate protection.

Conditions of Use

To establish clearing limits plastic, fabric, or metal fence may be used:

- At the boundary of sensitive areas, their buffers, and other areas required to be left uncleared.
- As necessary to control vehicle access to and on the site.

Design and Installation Specifications

High visibility plastic fence shall be composed of a high-density polyethylene material and shall be at least four feet in height. Posts for the fencing shall be steel or wood and placed every 6 feet on center (maximum) or as needed to ensure rigidity. The fencing shall be fastened to the post every six inches with a polyethylene tie. On long continuous lengths of fencing, a tension wire or rope shall be used as a top stringer to prevent sagging between posts. The fence color shall be high visibility orange. The fence tensile strength shall be 360 lbs./ft. using the ASTM D4595 testing method.

If appropriate install fabric silt fence in accordance with BMP C233 to act as high visibility fence. Silt fence shall be at least 3 feet high and must be highly visible to meet the requirements of this BMP.

Metal fences shall be designed and installed according to the manufacturer's specifications.

Metal fences shall be at least 3 feet high and must be highly visible.

Fences shall not be wired or stapled to trees.

Maintenance Standards

If the fence has been damaged or visibility reduced, it shall be repaired or replaced immediately and visibility restored.

BMP C105: Stabilized Construction Entrance / Exit

Purpose

Stabilized Construction entrances are established to reduce the amount of sediment transported onto paved roads by vehicles or equipment. This is done by constructing a stabilized pad of quarry spalls at entrances and exits for construction sites.

Conditions of Use

Construction entrances shall be stabilized wherever traffic will be entering or leaving a construction site if paved roads or other paved areas are within 1,000 feet of the site.

For residential construction provide stabilized construction entrances for each residence, rather than only at the main subdivision entrance. Stabilized surfaces shall be of sufficient length/width to provide vehicle access/parking, based on lot size/configuration.

On large commercial, highway, and road projects, the designer should include enough extra materials in the contract to allow for additional stabilized entrances not shown in the initial Construction SWPPP. It is difficult to determine exactly where access to these projects will take place; additional materials will enable the contractor to install them where needed.

Design and Installation Specifications

See Figure 4.1.1 for details. Note: the 100’ minimum length of the entrance shall be reduced to the maximum practicable size when the size or configuration of the site does not allow the full length (100’).

Construct stabilized construction entrances with a 12-inch thick pad of 4-inch to 8-inch quarry spalls, a 4-inch course of asphalt treated base (ATB), or use existing pavement. Do not use crushed concrete, cement, or calcium chloride for construction entrance stabilization because these products raise pH levels in stormwater and concrete discharge to surface waters of the State is prohibited.

A separation geotextile shall be placed under the spalls to prevent fine sediment from pumping up into the rock pad. The geotextile shall meet the following standards:

Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4751)	200 psi min.
Grab Tensile Elongation (ASTM D4632)	30% max.
Mullen Burst Strength (ASTM D3786-80a)	400 psi min.
AOS (ASTM D4751)	20-45 (U.S. standard sieve size)

- Consider early installation of the first lift of asphalt in areas that will paved; this can be used as a stabilized entrance. Also consider the installation of excess concrete as a stabilized entrance. During large concrete pours, excess concrete is often available for this purpose.

- Fencing (see BMP C103) shall be installed as necessary to restrict traffic to the construction entrance.
- Whenever possible, the entrance shall be constructed on a firm, compacted subgrade. This can substantially increase the effectiveness of the pad and reduce the need for maintenance.
- Construction entrances should avoid crossing existing sidewalks and back of walk drains if at all possible. If a construction entrance must cross a sidewalk or back of walk drain, the full length of the sidewalk and back of walk drain must be covered and protected from sediment leaving the site.

Maintenance Standards

Quarry spalls shall be added if the pad is no longer in accordance with the specifications.

- If the entrance is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement, then alternative measures to keep the streets free of sediment shall be used. This may include replacement/cleaning of the existing quarry spalls, street sweeping, an increase in the dimensions of the entrance, or the installation of a wheel wash.
- Any sediment that is tracked onto pavement shall be removed by shoveling or street sweeping. The sediment collected by sweeping shall be removed or stabilized on site. The pavement shall not be cleaned by washing down the street, except when high efficiency sweeping is ineffective and there is a threat to public safety. If it is necessary to wash the streets, the construction of a small sump to contain the wash water shall be considered. The sediment would then be washed into the sump where it can be controlled.
- Perform street sweeping by hand or with a high efficiency sweeper. Do not use a non-high efficiency mechanical sweeper because this creates dust and throws soils into storm systems or conveyance ditches.
- Any quarry spalls that are loosened from the pad, which end up on the roadway shall be removed immediately.
- If vehicles are entering or exiting the site at points other than the construction entrance(s), fencing (see BMP C103) shall be installed to control traffic.
- Upon project completion and site stabilization, all construction accesses intended as permanent access for maintenance shall be permanently stabilized.

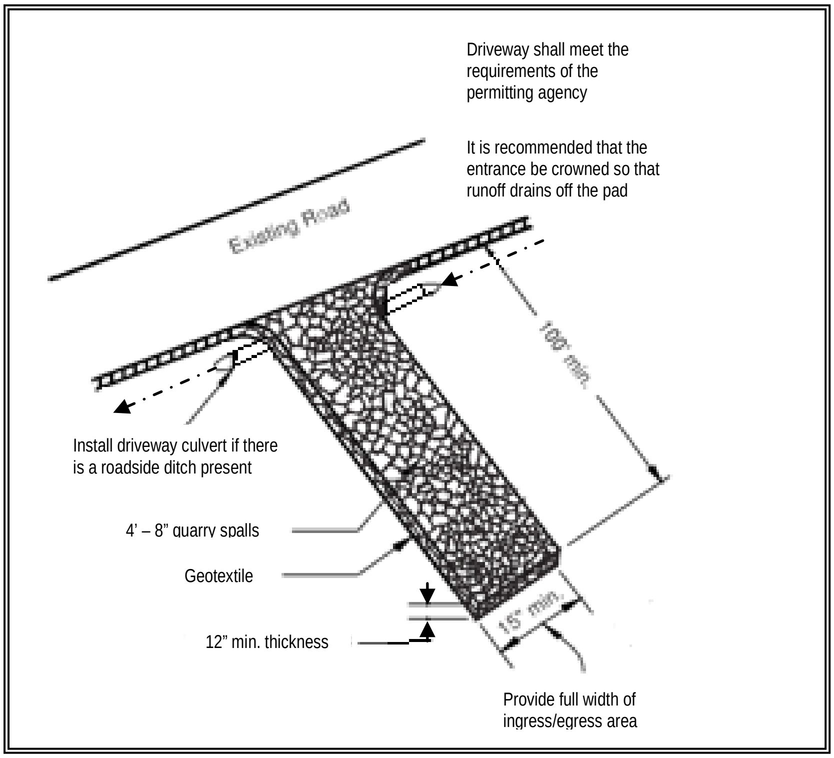


Figure 4.1.1 – Stabilized Construction Entrance

Approved as Equivalent

Ecology has approved products as able to meet the requirements of BMP C105. The products did not pass through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept this product approved as equivalent, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local use. The products are available for review on Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/equivalent.html

BMP C106: Wheel Wash

Purpose

Wheel washes reduce the amount of sediment transported onto paved roads by motor vehicles.

Conditions of Use

When a stabilized construction entrance (see BMP C105) is not preventing sediment from being tracked onto pavement.

- Wheel washing is generally an effective BMP when installed with careful attention to topography. For example, a wheel wash can be detrimental if installed at the top of a slope abutting a right-of-way where the water from the dripping truck can run unimpeded into the street.

- Pressure washing combined with an adequately sized and surfaced pad with direct drainage to a large 10-foot x 10-foot sump can be very effective.
- Discharge wheel wash or tire bath wastewater to a separate on-site treatment system that prevents discharge to surface water, such as closed-loop recirculation or upland land application, or to the sanitary sewer with local sewer district approval.
- Wheel wash or tire bath wastewater should not include wastewater from concrete washout areas.

Design and Installation Specifications

Suggested details are shown in Figure 4.1.2. The Local Permitting Authority may allow other designs. A minimum of 6 inches of asphalt treated base (ATB) over crushed base material or 8 inches over a good subgrade is recommended to pave the wheel wash.

Use a low clearance truck to test the wheel wash before paving. Either a belly dump or lowboy will work well to test clearance.

Keep the water level from 12 to 14 inches deep to avoid damage to truck hubs and filling the truck tongues with water.

Midpoint spray nozzles are only needed in extremely muddy conditions.

Wheel wash systems should be designed with a small grade change, 6- to 12-inches for a 10-foot-wide pond, to allow sediment to flow to the low side of pond to help prevent re-suspension of sediment. A drainpipe with a 2- to 3-foot riser should be installed on the low side of the pond to allow for easy cleaning and refilling. Polymers may be used to promote coagulation and flocculation in a closed-loop system. Polyacrylamide (PAM) added to the wheel wash water at a rate of 0.25 - 0.5 pounds per 1,000 gallons of water increases effectiveness and reduces cleanup time. If PAM is already being used for dust or erosion control and is being applied by a water truck, the same truck can be used to change the wash water.

Maintenance Standards

The wheel wash should start out the day with fresh water.

The wash water should be changed a minimum of once per day. On large earthwork jobs where more than 10-20 trucks per hour are expected, the wash water will need to be changed more often.

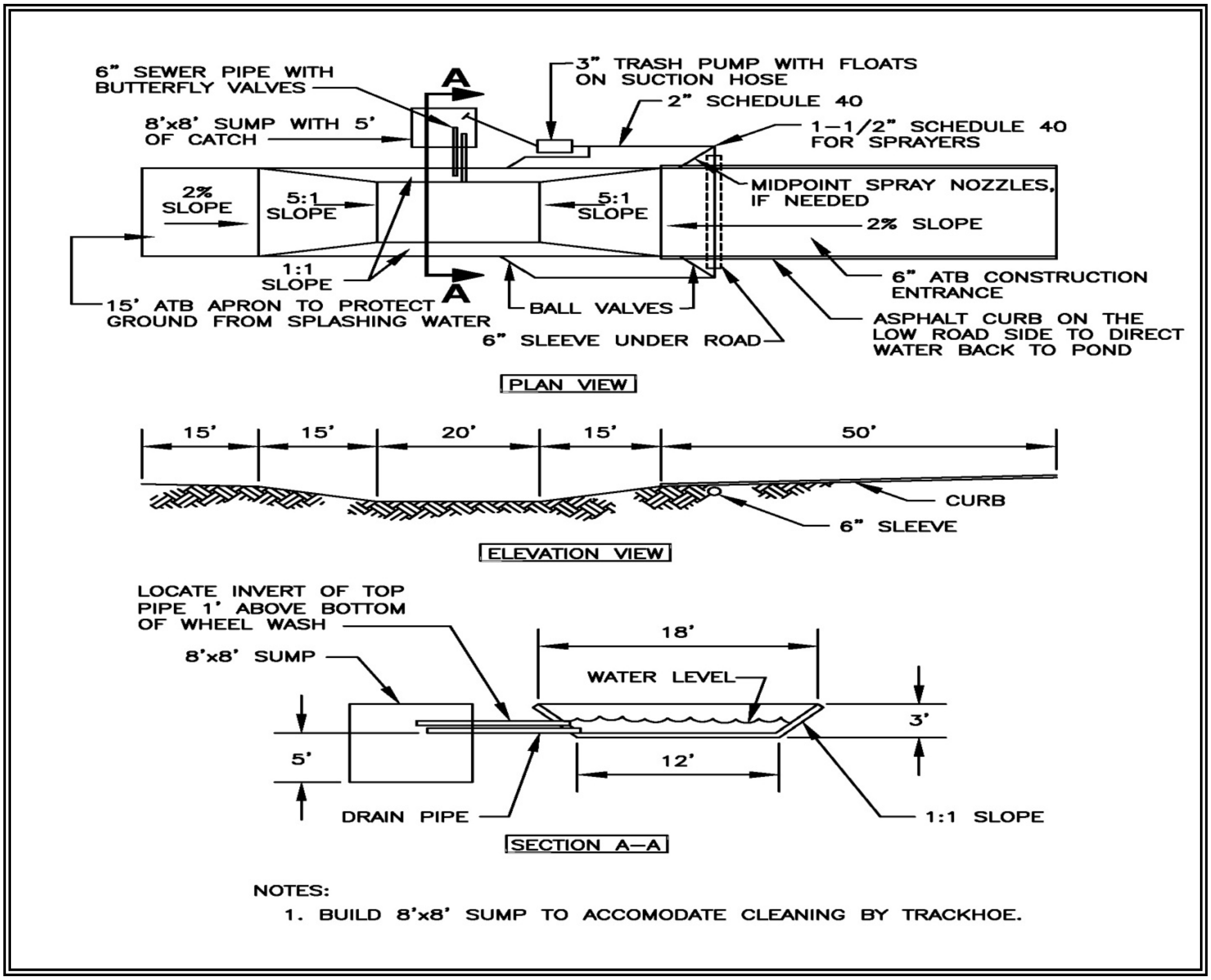


Figure 4.1.2 – Wheel Wash

Notes:

1. Asphalt construction entrance 6 in. asphalt treated base (ATB).
2. 3-inch trash pump with floats on the suction hose.
3. Midpoint spray nozzles, if needed.
4. 6-inch sewer pipe with butterfly valves. Bottom one is a drain. Locate top pipe's invert 1 foot above bottom of wheel wash.
5. 8 foot x 8 foot sump with 5 feet of catch. Build so the sump can be cleaned with a trackhoe.
6. Asphalt curb on the low road side to direct water back to pond.
7. 6-inch sleeve under road.
8. Ball valves.
9. 15 foot. ATB apron to protect ground from splashing water.

BMP C107: Construction Road/Parking Area Stabilization

Purpose

Stabilizing subdivision roads, parking areas, and other on-site vehicle transportation routes immediately after grading reduces erosion caused by construction traffic or runoff.

Conditions of Use

Roads or parking areas shall be stabilized wherever they are constructed, whether permanent or temporary, for use by construction traffic.

- High Visibility Fencing (see BMP C103) shall be installed, if necessary, to limit the access of vehicles to only those roads and parking areas that are stabilized.

Design and Installation Specifications

- On areas that will receive asphalt as part of the project, install the first lift as soon as possible.
- A 6-inch depth of 2- to 4-inch crushed rock, gravel base, or crushed surfacing base course shall be applied immediately after grading or utility installation. A 4-inch course of asphalt treated base (ATB) may also be used, or the road/parking area may be paved. It may also be possible to use cement or calcium chloride for soil stabilization. If cement or cement kiln dust is used for roadbase stabilization, pH monitoring and BMPs (BMPs C252 and C253) are necessary to evaluate and minimize the effects on stormwater. If the area will not be used for permanent roads, parking areas, or structures, a 6-inch depth of hog fuel may also be used, but this is likely to require more maintenance. Whenever possible, construction roads and parking areas shall be placed on a firm, compacted subgrade.
- Temporary road gradients shall not exceed 15 percent. Roadways shall be carefully graded to drain. Drainage ditches shall be provided on each side of the roadway in the case of a crowned section, or on one side in the case of a super-elevated section. Drainage ditches shall be directed to a sediment control BMP.
- Rather than relying on ditches, it may also be possible to grade the road so that runoff sheet-flows into a heavily vegetated area with a well-developed topsoil. Landscaped areas are not adequate. If this area has at least 50 feet of vegetation that water can flow through, then it is generally preferable to use the vegetation to treat runoff, rather than a sediment pond or trap. The 50 feet shall not include wetlands or their buffers. If runoff is allowed to sheetflow through adjacent vegetated areas, it is vital to design the roadways and parking areas so that no concentrated runoff is created.
- Storm drain inlets shall be protected to prevent sediment-laden water entering the storm drain system (see BMP C220).

Maintenance Standards

Inspect stabilized areas regularly, especially after large storm events.

Crushed rock, gravel base, etc., shall be added as required to maintain a stable driving surface and to stabilize any areas that have eroded.

Following construction, these areas shall be restored to pre-construction condition or better to prevent future erosion.

Perform street cleaning at the end of each day or more often if necessary.

BMP C120: Temporary and Permanent Seeding

Purpose

Seeding reduces erosion by stabilizing exposed soils. A well-established vegetative cover is one of the most effective methods of reducing erosion.

Conditions of Use

Use seeding throughout the project on disturbed areas that have reached final grade or that will remain unworked for more than 30 days.

The optimum seeding windows for western Washington are April 1 through June 30 and September 1 through October 1.

Between July 1 and August 30 seeding requires irrigation until 75 percent grass cover is established.

Between October 1 and March 30 seeding requires a cover of mulch with straw or an erosion control blanket until 75 percent grass cover is established.

Review all disturbed areas in late August to early September and complete all seeding by the end of September. Otherwise, vegetation will not establish itself enough to provide more than average protection.

- Mulch is required at all times for seeding because it protects seeds from heat, moisture loss, and transport due to runoff. Mulch can be applied on top of the seed or simultaneously by hydroseeding. See BMP C121: Mulching for specifications.
- Seed and mulch, all disturbed areas not otherwise vegetated at final site stabilization. Final stabilization means the completion of all soil disturbing activities at the site and the establishment of a permanent vegetative cover, or equivalent permanent stabilization measures (such as pavement, riprap, gabions, or geotextiles) which will prevent erosion.

Design and Installation Specifications

Seed retention/detention ponds as required.

Install channels intended for vegetation before starting major earthwork and hydroseed with a Bonded Fiber Matrix. For vegetated channels that will have high flows, install erosion control blankets over hydroseed. Before allowing water to flow in vegetated channels, establish 75 percent vegetation cover. If vegetated channels cannot be established by seed before water flow; install sod in the channel bottom—over hydromulch and erosion control blankets.

- Confirm the installation of all required surface water control measures to prevent seed from washing away.
- Hydroseed applications shall include a minimum of 1,500 pounds per acre of mulch with 3 percent tackifier. See BMP C121: Mulching for specifications.
- Areas that will have seeding only and not landscaping may need compost or meal-based mulch included in the hydroseed in order to establish vegetation. Re-install native topsoil on the disturbed soil surface before application.
- When installing seed via hydroseeding operations, only about 1/3 of the seed actually ends up in contact with the soil surface. This reduces the ability to establish a good stand of grass quickly. To overcome this, consider increasing seed quantities by up to 50 percent.
- Enhance vegetation establishment by dividing the hydromulch operation into two phases:

  1. Phase 1- Install all seed and fertilizer with 25-30 percent mulch and tackifier onto soil in the first lift.
  2. Phase 2- Install the rest of the mulch and tackifier over the first lift.

  Or, enhance vegetation by:

  1. Installing the mulch, seed, fertilizer, and tackifier in one lift.
  2. Spread or blow straw over the top of the hydromulch at a rate of 800-1000 pounds per acre.
  3. Hold straw in place with a standard tackifier.

  Both of these approaches will increase cost moderately but will greatly improve and enhance vegetative establishment. The increased cost may be offset by the reduced need for:

  - Irrigation.
  - Reapplication of mulch.
  - Repair of failed slope surfaces.

  This technique works with standard hydromulch (1,500 pounds per acre minimum) and BFM/MBFMs (3,000 pounds per acre minimum).
- Seed may be installed by hand if:
  - Temporary and covered by straw, mulch, or topsoil.
  - Permanent in small areas (usually less than 1 acre) and covered with mulch, topsoil, or erosion blankets.
  - The seed mixes listed in the tables below include recommended mixes for both temporary and permanent seeding.

- Apply these mixes, with the exception of the wetland mix, at a rate of 120 pounds per acre. This rate can be reduced if soil amendments or slow-release fertilizers are used.
- Consult the local suppliers or the local conservation district for their recommendations because the appropriate mix depends on a variety of factors, including location, exposure, soil type, slope, and expected foot traffic. Alternative seed mixes approved by the local authority may be used.
- Other mixes may be appropriate, depending on the soil type and hydrology of the area.

- Table 4.1.2 lists the standard mix for areas requiring a temporary vegetative cover.

Table 4.1.2
Temporary Erosion Control Seed Mix

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Chewings or annual blue grass *Festuca rubra var. commutata* or *Poa anna*	40	98	90
Perennial rye - *Lolium perenne*	50	98	90
Redtop or colonial bentgrass *Agrostis alba* or *Agrostis tenuis*	5	92	85
White dutch clover *Trifolium repens*	5	98	90

- Table 4.1.3 lists a recommended mix for landscaping seed.

Table 4.1.3
Landscaping Seed Mix

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Perennial rye blend *Lolium perenne*	70	98	90
Chewings and red fescue blend *Festuca rubra var. commutata* or *Festuca rubra*	30	98	90

- Table 4.1.4 lists a turf seed mix for dry situations where there is no need for watering. This mix requires very little maintenance.

Table 4.1.4
Low-Growing Turf Seed Mix

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Dwarf tall fescue (several varieties) *Festuca arundinacea var.*	45	98	90
Dwarf perennial rye (Barclay) *Lolium perenne var. barclay*	30	98	90
Red fescue *Festuca rubra*	20	98	90
Colonial bentgrass *Agrostis tenuis*	5	98	90

- Table 4.1.5 lists a mix for bioswales and other intermittently wet areas.

Table 4.1.5
Bioswale Seed Mix*

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Tall or meadow fescue *Festuca arundinacea* or *Festuca elatior*	75-80	98	90
Seaside/Creeping bentgrass *Agrostis palustris*	10-15	92	85
Redtop bentgrass *Agrostis alba* or *Agrostis gigantea*	5-10	90	80

* *Modified Briargreen, Inc. Hydroseeding Guide Wetlands Seed Mix*

- Table 4.1.6 lists a low-growing, relatively non-invasive seed mix appropriate for very wet areas that are not regulated wetlands. Apply this mixture at a rate of 60 pounds per acre. Consult Hydraulic Permit Authority (HPA) for seed mixes if applicable.

Table 4.1.6
Wet Area Seed Mix*

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Tall or meadow fescue *Festuca arundinacea* or *Festuca elatior*	60-70	98	90
Seaside/Creeping bentgrass *Agrostis palustris*	10-15	98	85
Meadow foxtail *Alepocurus pratensis*	10-15	90	80
Alsike clover *Trifolium hybridum*	1-6	98	90
Redtop bentgrass *Agrostis alba*	1-6	92	85

** Modified Briargreen, Inc. Hydroseeding Guide Wetlands Seed Mix*

- Table 4.1.7 lists a recommended meadow seed mix for infrequently maintained areas or non-maintained areas where colonization by native plants is desirable. Likely applications include rural road and utility right-of-way. Seeding should take place in September or very early October in order to obtain adequate establishment prior to the winter months. Consider the appropriateness of clover, a fairly invasive species, in the mix. Amending the soil can reduce the need for clover.

Table 4.1.7
Meadow Seed Mix

	% Weight	% Purity	% Germination
Redtop or Oregon bentgrass *Agrostis alba* or *Agrostis oregonensis*	20	92	85
Red fescue *Festuca rubra*	70	98	90
White dutch clover *Trifolium repens*	10	98	90

- **Roughening and Rototilling:**
  - The seedbed should be firm and rough. Roughen all soil no matter what the slope. Track walk slopes before seeding if engineering purposes require compaction. Backblading or smoothing of slopes greater than 4H:1V is not allowed if they are to be seeded.
  - Restoration-based landscape practices require deeper incorporation than that provided by a simple single-pass rototilling treatment. Wherever practical, initially rip the subgrade to improve long-term permeability, infiltration, and water inflow qualities. At a minimum, permanent areas shall use soil amendments to achieve organic matter and permeability performance defined in engineered soil/landscape systems. For systems that are deeper than 8 inches complete the rototilling process in multiple lifts, or prepare the engineered soil system per specifications and place to achieve the specified depth.
- **Fertilizers:**
  - Conducting soil tests to determine the exact type and quantity of fertilizer is recommended. This will prevent the over-application of fertilizer.
  - Organic matter is the most appropriate form of fertilizer because it provides nutrients (including nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium) in the least water-soluble form.
  - In general, use 10-4-6 N-P-K (nitrogen-phosphorus-potassium) fertilizer at a rate of 90 pounds per acre. Always use slow-release fertilizers because they are more efficient and have fewer environmental impacts. Do not add fertilizer to the hydromulch machine, or agitate, more than 20 minutes before use. Too much agitation destroys the slow-release coating.
  - There are numerous products available that take the place of chemical fertilizers. These include several with seaweed extracts that are beneficial to soil microbes and organisms. If 100 percent cottonseed meal is used as the mulch in hydroseed, chemical fertilizer may not be necessary. Cottonseed meal provides a good source of long-term, slow-release, available nitrogen.
- **Bonded Fiber Matrix and Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix:**
  - On steep slopes use Bonded Fiber Matrix (BFM) or Mechanically Bonded Fiber Matrix (MBFM) products. Apply BFM/MBFM products at a minimum rate of 3,000 pounds per acre of mulch with approximately 10 percent tackifier. Achieve a minimum of 95 percent soil coverage during application. Numerous products are available commercially. Installed products per manufacturer’s instructions. Most products require 24-36 hours to cure before rainfall and cannot be installed on wet or saturated soils.

Generally, products come in 40-50 pound bags and include all necessary ingredients except for seed and fertilizer.

- BFMs and MBFMs provide good alternatives to blankets in most areas requiring vegetation establishment. Advantages over blankets include:
  - BFM and MBFMs do not require surface preparation.
  - Helicopters can assist in installing BFM and MBFMs in remote areas.
  - On slopes steeper than 2.5H:1V, blanket installers may require ropes and harnesses for safety.
  - Installing BFM and MBFMs can save at least $1,000 per acre compared to blankets.

Maintenance Standards

Reseed any seeded areas that fail to establish at least 80 percent cover (100 percent cover for areas that receive sheet or concentrated flows). If reseeding is ineffective, use an alternate method such as sodding, mulching, or nets/blankets. If winter weather prevents adequate grass growth, this time limit may be relaxed at the discretion of the local authority when sensitive areas would otherwise be protected.

- Reseed and protect by mulch any areas that experience erosion after achieving adequate cover. Reseed and protect by mulch any eroded area.
- Supply seeded areas with adequate moisture, but do not water to the extent that it causes runoff.

Approved as Equivalent

Ecology has approved products as able to meet the requirements of BMP C120. The products did not pass through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept this product approved as equivalent, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local use. The products are available for review on Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/equivalent.html.

BMP C121: Mulching

Purpose

Mulching soils provides immediate temporary protection from erosion. Mulch also enhances plant establishment by conserving moisture, holding fertilizer, seed, and topsoil in place, and moderating soil temperatures. There is an enormous variety of mulches that can be used. This section discusses only the most common types of mulch.

Conditions of Use

As a temporary cover measure, mulch should be used:

- For less than 30 days on disturbed areas that require cover.
- At all times for seeded areas, especially during the wet season and during the hot summer months.

- During the wet season on slopes steeper than 3H:1V with more than 10 feet of vertical relief.

Mulch may be applied at any time of the year and must be refreshed periodically.

- For seeded areas mulch may be made up of 100 percent: cottonseed meal; fibers made of wood, recycled cellulose, hemp, kenaf; compost; or blends of these. Tackifier shall be plant-based, such as guar or alpha plantago, or chemical-based such as polyacrylamide or polymers. Any mulch or tackifier product used shall be installed per manufacturer's instructions. Generally, mulches come in 40-50 pound bags. Seed and fertilizer are added at time of application.

Design and Installation Specifications

For mulch materials, application rates, and specifications, see Table 4.1.8. Always use a 2-inch minimum mulch thickness; increase the thickness until the ground is 95% covered (i.e. not visible under the mulch layer). Note: Thickness may be increased for disturbed areas in or near sensitive areas or other areas highly susceptible to erosion.

Where the option of "Compost" is selected, it should be a coarse compost that meets the following size gradations when tested in accordance with the U.S. Composting Council "Test Methods for the Examination of Compost and Composting" (TMECC) Test Method 02.02-B.

<u>Coarse Compost</u>

Minimum Percent passing 3" sieve openings 100%

Minimum Percent passing 1" sieve openings 90%

Minimum Percent passing ¾" sieve openings 70%

Minimum Percent passing ¼" sieve openings 40%

Mulch used within the ordinary high-water mark of surface waters should be selected to minimize potential flotation of organic matter. Composted organic materials have higher specific gravities (densities) than straw, wood, or chipped material. Consult Hydraulic Permit Authority (HPA) for mulch mixes if applicable.

Maintenance Standards

- The thickness of the cover must be maintained.
- Any areas that experience erosion shall be remulched and/or protected with a net or blanket. If the erosion problem is drainage related, then the problem shall be fixed and the eroded area remulched.

Table 4.1.8 Mulch Standards and Guidelines			
Mulch Material	**Quality Standards**	**Application Rates**	**Remarks**
Straw	Air-dried; free from undesirable seed and coarse material.	2"-3" thick; 5 bales per 1,000 sf or 2-3 tons per acre	Cost-effective protection when applied with adequate thickness. Hand-application generally requires greater thickness than blown straw. The thickness of straw may be reduced by half when used in conjunction with seeding. In windy areas straw must be held in place by crimping, using a tackifier, or covering with netting. Blown straw always has to be held in place with a tackifier as even light winds will blow it away. Straw, however, has several deficiencies that should be considered when selecting mulch materials. It often introduces and/or encourages the propagation of weed species and it has no significant long-term benefits. It should also not be used within the ordinary high-water elevation of surface waters (due to flotation).
Hydromulch	No growth inhibiting factors.	Approx. 25-30 lbs per 1,000 sf or 1,500 - 2,000 lbs per acre	Shall be applied with hydromulcher. Shall not be used without seed and tackifier unless the application rate is at least doubled. Fibers longer than about ¾-1 inch clog hydromulch equipment. Fibers should be kept to less than ¾ inch.
Compost	No visible water or dust during handling. Must be produced per WAC 173-350, Solid Waste Handling Standards, but may have up to 35% biosolids.	2" thick min.; approx. 100 tons per acre (approx. 800 lbs per yard)	More effective control can be obtained by increasing thickness to 3". Excellent mulch for protecting final grades until landscaping because it can be directly seeded or tilled into soil as an amendment. Compost used for mulch has a coarser size gradation than compost used for BMP C125 or BMP T5.13 (see Chapter 5 of Volume V of this manual) It is more stable and practical to use in wet areas and during rainy weather conditions. Do not use near wetlands or near phosphorous impaired water bodies.
Chipped Site Vegetation	Average size shall be several inches. Gradations from fines to 6 inches in length for texture, variation, and interlocking properties.	2" thick min.;	This is a cost-effective way to dispose of debris from clearing and grubbing, and it eliminates the problems associated with burning. Generally, it should not be used on slopes above approx. 10% because of its tendency to be transported by runoff. It is not recommended within 200 feet of surface waters. If seeding is expected shortly after mulch, the decomposition of the chipped vegetation may tie up nutrients important to grass establishment.
Wood-based Mulch or Wood Straw	No visible water or dust during handling. Must be purchased from a supplier with a Solid Waste Handling Permit or one exempt from solid waste regulations.	2" thick min.; approx. 100 tons per acre (approx. 800 lbs. per cubic yard)	This material is often called "hog or hogged fuel." The use of mulch ultimately improves the organic matter in the soil. Special caution is advised regarding the source and composition of wood-based mulches. Its preparation typically does not provide any weed seed control, so evidence of residual vegetation in its composition or known inclusion of weed plants or seeds should be monitored and prevented (or minimized).
Wood Strand Mulch	A blend of loose, long, thin wood pieces derived from native conifer or deciduous trees with high length-to-width ratio.	2" thick min.	Cost-effective protection when applied with adequate thickness. A minimum of 95-percent of the wood strand shall have lengths between 2 and 10-inches, with a width and thickness between 1/16 and ⅜-inches. The mulch shall not contain resin, tannin, or other compounds in quantities that would be detrimental to plant life. Sawdust or wood shavings shall not be used as mulch. (WSDOT specification (9-14.4(4))

BMP C122: Nets and Blankets

Purpose

Erosion control nets and blankets are intended to prevent erosion and hold seed and mulch in place on steep slopes and in channels so that vegetation can become well established. In addition, some nets and blankets can be used to permanently reinforce turf to protect drainage ways during high flows. Nets (commonly called matting) are strands of material woven into an open, but high-tensile strength net (for example, coconut fiber matting). Blankets are strands of material that are not tightly woven, but instead form a layer of interlocking fibers, typically held together by a biodegradable or photodegradable netting (for example, excelsior or straw blankets). They generally have lower tensile strength than nets, but cover the ground more completely. Coir (coconut fiber) fabric comes as both nets and blankets.

Conditions of Use

Erosion control nets and blankets should be used:

- To aid permanent vegetated stabilization of slopes 2H:1V or greater and with more than 10 feet of vertical relief.
- For drainage ditches and swales (highly recommended). The application of appropriate netting or blanket to drainage ditches and swales can protect bare soil from channelized runoff while vegetation is established. Nets and blankets also can capture a great deal of sediment due to their open, porous structure. Nets and blankets can be used to permanently stabilize channels and may provide a cost-effective, environmentally preferable alternative to riprap. 100 percent synthetic blankets manufactured for use in ditches may be easily reused as temporary ditch liners.

Disadvantages of blankets include:

- Surface preparation required.
- On slopes steeper than 2.5H:1V, blanket installers may need to be roped and harnessed for safety.
- They cost at least $4,000-6,000 per acre installed.

Advantages of blankets include:

- Installation without mobilizing special equipment.
- Installation by anyone with minimal training
- Installation in stages or phases as the project progresses.
- Installers can hand place seed and fertilizer as they progress down the slope.
- Installation in any weather.
- There are numerous types of blankets that can be designed with various parameters in mind. Those parameters include: fiber blend, mesh strength, longevity, biodegradability, cost, and availability.

Design and Installation Specifications

- See Figure 4.1.3 and Figure 4.1.4 for typical orientation and installation of blankets used in channels and as slope protection. Note: these are typical only; all blankets must be installed per manufacturer's installation instructions.
- Installation is critical to the effectiveness of these products. If good ground contact is not achieved, runoff can concentrate under the product, resulting in significant erosion.
- Installation of Blankets on Slopes:
  1. Complete final grade and track walk up and down the slope.
  2. Install hydromulch with seed and fertilizer.
  3. Dig a small trench, approximately 12 inches wide by 6 inches deep along the top of the slope.
  4. Install the leading edge of the blanket into the small trench and staple approximately every 18 inches. NOTE: Staples are metal, "U"-shaped, and a minimum of 6 inches long. Longer staples are used in sandy soils. Biodegradable stakes are also available.
  5. Roll the blanket slowly down the slope as installer walks backwards. NOTE: The blanket rests against the installer's legs. Staples are installed as the blanket is unrolled. It is critical that the proper staple pattern is used for the blanket being installed. The blanket is not to be allowed to roll down the slope on its own as this stretches the blanket making it impossible to maintain soil contact. In addition, no one is allowed to walk on the blanket after it is in place.
  6. If the blanket is not long enough to cover the entire slope length, the trailing edge of the upper blanket should overlap the leading edge of the lower blanket and be stapled. On steeper slopes, this overlap should be installed in a small trench, stapled, and covered with soil.
- With the variety of products available, it is impossible to cover all the details of appropriate use and installation. Therefore, it is critical that the design engineer consult the manufacturer's information and that a site visit takes place in order to ensure that the product specified is appropriate. Information is also available at the following web sites:
  1. WSDOT (Section 3.2.4):

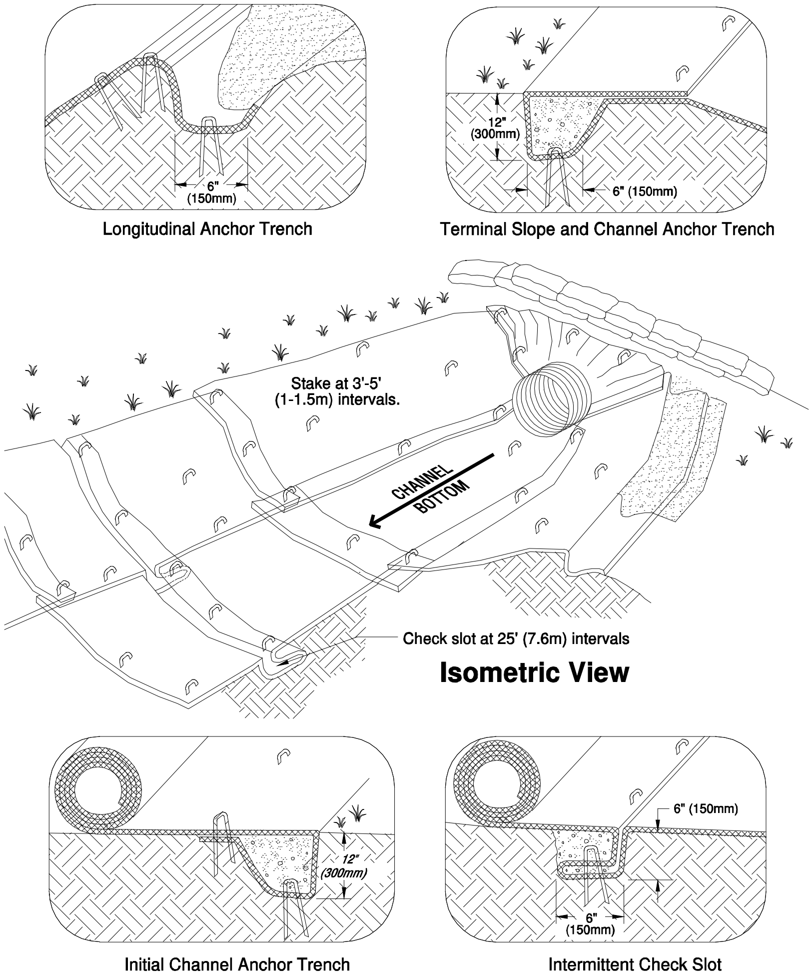
     http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/NR/rdonlyres/3B41E087-FA86-4717-932D-D7A8556CCD57/0/ErosionTrainingManual.pdf
  2. Texas Transportation Institute:

     http://www.txdot.gov/business/doing_business/product_evaluation/erosion_control.htm

- Use jute matting in conjunction with mulch (BMP C121). Excelsior, woven straw blankets and coir (coconut fiber) blankets may be installed without mulch. There are many other types of erosion control nets and blankets on the market that may be appropriate in certain circumstances.
- In general, most nets (e.g., jute matting) require mulch in order to prevent erosion because they have a fairly open structure. Blankets typically do not require mulch because they usually provide complete protection of the surface.
- Extremely steep, unstable, wet, or rocky slopes are often appropriate candidates for use of synthetic blankets, as are riverbanks, beaches and other high-energy environments. If synthetic blankets are used, the soil should be hydromulched first.
- 100-percent biodegradable blankets are available for use in sensitive areas. These organic blankets are usually held together with a paper or fiber mesh and stitching which may last up to a year.
- Most netting used with blankets is photodegradable, meaning they break down under sunlight (not UV stabilized). However, this process can take months or years even under bright sun. Once vegetation is established, sunlight does not reach the mesh. It is not uncommon to find non-degraded netting still in place several years after installation. This can be a problem if maintenance requires the use of mowers or ditch cleaning equipment. In addition, birds and small animals can become trapped in the netting.

Maintenance Standards

- Maintain good contact with the ground. Erosion must not occur beneath the net or blanket.
- Repair and staple any areas of the net or blanket that are damaged or not in close contact with the ground.
- Fix and protect eroded areas if erosion occurs due to poorly controlled drainage.



NOTES:
1. Check slots to be constructed per manufacturers specifications.
2. Staking or stapling layout per manufacturers specifications.

Figure 4.1.3 – Channel Installation

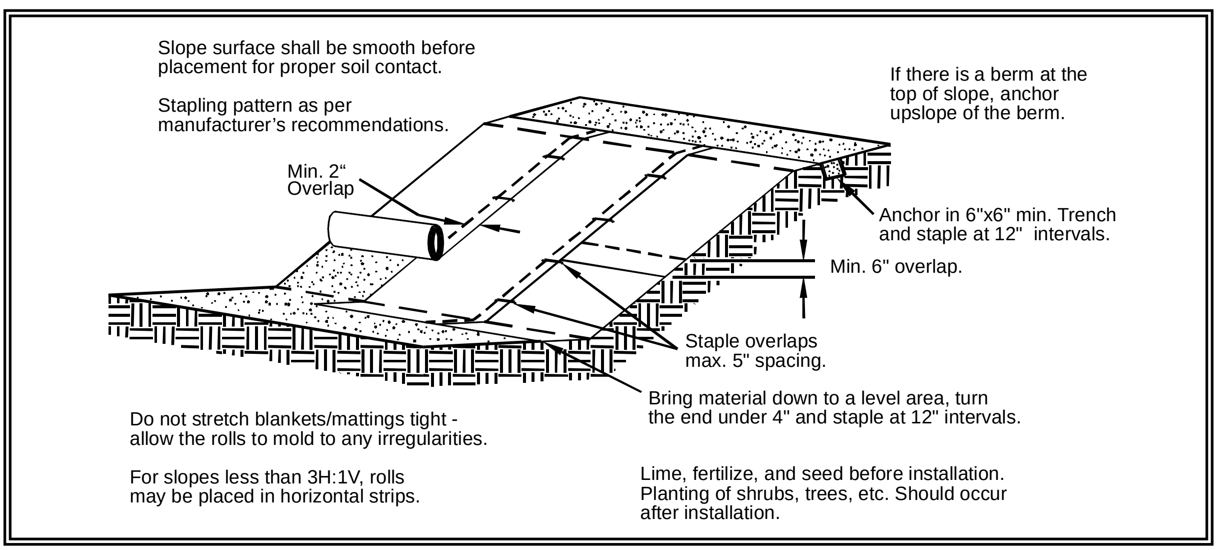


Figure 4.1.4 – Slope Installation

BMP C123: Plastic Covering

Purpose

Plastic covering provides immediate, short-term erosion protection to slopes and disturbed areas.

Conditions of Use

Plastic covering may be used on disturbed areas that require cover measures for less than 30 days, except as stated below.

- Plastic is particularly useful for protecting cut and fill slopes and stockpiles. Note: The relatively rapid breakdown of most polyethylene sheeting makes it unsuitable for long-term (greater than six months) applications.
- Due to rapid runoff caused by plastic covering, do not use this method upslope of areas that might be adversely impacted by concentrated runoff. Such areas include steep and/or unstable slopes.
- Plastic sheeting may result in increased runoff volumes and velocities, requiring additional on-site measures to counteract the increases. Creating a trough with wattles or other material can convey clean water away from these areas.
- To prevent undercutting, trench and backfill rolled plastic covering products.
- While plastic is inexpensive to purchase, the added cost of installation, maintenance, removal, and disposal make this an expensive material, up to $1.50-2.00 per square yard.
- Whenever plastic is used to protect slopes install water collection measures at the base of the slope. These measures include plastic-covered berms, channels, and pipes used to covey clean rainwater away from bare soil and disturbed areas. Do not mix clean runoff from a plastic covered slope with dirty runoff from a project.
- Other uses for plastic include:
  1. Temporary ditch liner.
  2. Pond liner in temporary sediment pond.
  3. Liner for bermed temporary fuel storage area if plastic is not reactive to the type of fuel being stored.
  4. Emergency slope protection during heavy rains.
  5. Temporary drainpipe (“elephant trunk”) used to direct water.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Plastic slope cover must be installed as follows:
  1. Run plastic up and down slope, not across slope.
  2. Plastic may be installed perpendicular to a slope if the slope length is less than 10 feet.
  3. Minimum of 8-inch overlap at seams.

4. On long or wide slopes, or slopes subject to wind, tape all seams.
5. Place plastic into a small (12-inch wide by 6-inch deep) slot trench at the top of the slope and backfill with soil to keep water from flowing underneath.
6. Place sand filled burlap or geotextile bags every 3 to 6 feet along seams and tie them together with twine to hold them in place.
7. Inspect plastic for rips, tears, and open seams regularly and repair immediately. This prevents high velocity runoff from contacting bare soil which causes extreme erosion.
8. Sandbags may be lowered into place tied to ropes. However, all sandbags must be staked in place.

- Plastic sheeting shall have a minimum thickness of 0.06 millimeters.
- If erosion at the toe of a slope is likely, a gravel berm, riprap, or other suitable protection shall be installed at the toe of the slope in order to reduce the velocity of runoff.

Maintenance Standards

- Torn sheets must be replaced and open seams repaired.
- Completely remove and replace the plastic if it begins to deteriorate due to ultraviolet radiation.
- Completely remove plastic when no longer needed.
- Dispose of old tires used to weight down plastic sheeting appropriately.

Approved as Equivalent

Ecology has approved products as able to meet the requirements of BMP C123. The products did not pass through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept this product approved as equivalent, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local use. The products are available for review on Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/equivalent.html

BMP C124: Sodding

Purpose

The purpose of sodding is to establish permanent turf for immediate erosion protection and to stabilize drainage ways where concentrated overland flow will occur.

Conditions of Use

Sodding may be used in the following areas:

- Disturbed areas that require short-term or long-term cover.
- Disturbed areas that require immediate vegetative cover.
- All waterways that require vegetative lining. Waterways may also be seeded rather than sodded, and protected with a net or blanket.

Design and Installation Specifications

Sod shall be free of weeds, of uniform thickness (approximately 1-inch thick), and shall have a dense root mat for mechanical strength.

The following steps are recommended for sod installation:

- Shape and smooth the surface to final grade in accordance with the approved grading plan. The swale needs to be overexcavated 4 to 6 inches below design elevation to allow room for placing soil amendment and sod.
- Amend 4 inches (minimum) of compost into the top 8 inches of the soil if the organic content of the soil is less than ten percent or the permeability is less than 0.6 inches per hour. See http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/organics/soil.html for further information.
- Fertilize according to the supplier's recommendations.
- Work lime and fertilizer 1 to 2 inches into the soil, and smooth the surface.
- Lay strips of sod beginning at the lowest area to be sodded and perpendicular to the direction of water flow. Wedge strips securely into place. Square the ends of each strip to provide for a close, tight fit. Stagger joints at least 12 inches. Staple on slopes steeper than 3H:1V. Staple the upstream edge of each sod strip.
- Roll the sodded area and irrigate.
- When sodding is carried out in alternating strips or other patterns, seed the areas between the sod immediately after sodding.

Maintenance Standards

If the grass is unhealthy, the cause shall be determined and appropriate action taken to reestablish a healthy groundcover. If it is impossible to establish a healthy groundcover due to frequent saturation, instability, or some other cause, the sod shall be removed, the area seeded with an appropriate mix, and protected with a net or blanket.

BMP C125: Topsoiling / Composting

Purpose

Topsoiling and composting provide a suitable growth medium for final site stabilization with vegetation. While not a permanent cover practice in itself, topsoiling and composting are an integral component of providing permanent cover in those areas where there is an unsuitable soil surface for plant growth. Use this BMP in conjunction with other BMPs such as seeding, mulching, or sodding. Note that this BMP is functionally the same as BMP T5.13 (see Chapter 5 of Volume V of this manual) which is required for all disturbed areas that will be developed as lawn or landscaped areas at the completed project site.

Native soils and disturbed soils that have been organically amended not only retain much more stormwater, but they also serve as effective biofilters for urban pollutants and, by supporting more vigorous plant growth, reduce the water, fertilizer and pesticides needed to support installed landscapes. Topsoil does not include any subsoils but only the material from the top several inches including organic debris.

Conditions of Use

- Permanent landscaped areas shall contain healthy topsoil that reduces the need for fertilizers, improves overall topsoil quality, provides for better vegetal health and vitality, improves hydrologic characteristics, and reduces the need for irrigation.
- Leave native soils and the duff layer undisturbed to the maximum extent practicable. Stripping of existing, properly functioning soil system and vegetation for the purpose of topsoiling during construction is not acceptable. Preserve existing soil systems in undisturbed and uncompacted conditions if functioning properly.
- Areas that already have good topsoil, such as undisturbed areas, do not require soil amendments.
- Restore, to the maximum extent practical, native soils disturbed during clearing and grading to a condition equal to or better than the original site condition's moisture-holding capacity. Use on-site native topsoil, incorporate amendments into on-site soil, or import blended topsoil to meet this requirement.
- Topsoiling is a required procedure when establishing vegetation on shallow soils, and soils of critically low pH (high acid) levels.
- Beware of where the topsoil comes from, and what vegetation was on site before disturbance, invasive plant seeds may be included and could cause problems for establishing native plants, landscaped areas, or grasses.
- Topsoil from the site will contain mycorrhizal bacteria that are necessary for healthy root growth and nutrient transfer. These native mycorrhiza are acclimated to the site and will provide optimum conditions for establishing grasses. Use commercially available mycorrhiza products when using off-site topsoil.

Design and Installation Specifications

Meet the following requirements for disturbed areas that will be developed as lawn or landscaped areas at the completed project site:

- Maximize the depth of the topsoil wherever possible to provide the maximum possible infiltration capacity and beneficial growth medium. Topsoil shall have:
  - A minimum depth of 8-inches. Scarify subsoils below the topsoil layer at least 4-inches with some incorporation of the upper material to avoid stratified layers, where feasible. Ripping or re-structuring the subgrade may also provide additional benefits regarding the overall infiltration and interflow dynamics of the soil system.

- A minimum organic content of 10% dry weight in planting beds, and 5% organic matter content in turf areas. Incorporate organic amendments to a minimum 8-inch depth except where tree roots or other natural features limit the depth of incorporation.
    - A pH between 6.0 and 8.0 or matching the pH of the undisturbed soil.
    - If blended topsoil is imported, then fines should be limited to 25 percent passing through a 200 sieve.
    - Mulch planting beds with 2 inches of organic material
- Accomplish the required organic content, depth, and pH by returning native topsoil to the site, importing topsoil of sufficient organic content, and/or incorporating organic amendments.When using the option of incorporating amendments to meet the organic content requirement, use compost that meets the compost specification for Bioretention (See BMP T7.30 in Chapter 7 of Volume V of this manual), with the exception that the compost may have up to 35% biosolids or manure.
- Sections three through seven of the document entitled, *Guidelines and Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington,* provides useful guidance for implementing whichever option is chosen. It includes guidance for pre-approved default strategies and guidance for custom strategies. Check with your local jurisdiction concerning its acceptance of this guidance. It is available through the organization, Soils for Salmon. As of this printing the document may be found at: http://www.soilsforsalmon.org/pdf/Soil_BMP_Manual.pdf.
- The final composition and construction of the soil system will result in a natural selection or favoring of certain plant species over time. For example, incorporation of topsoil may favor grasses, while layering with mildly acidic, high-carbon amendments may favor more woody vegetation.
- Allow sufficient time in scheduling for topsoil spreading prior to seeding, sodding, or planting.
- Take care when applying top soil to subsoils with contrasting textures. Sandy topsoil over clayey subsoil is a particularly poor combination, as water creeps along the junction between the soil layers and causes the topsoil to slough. If topsoil and subsoil are not properly bonded, water will not infiltrate the soil profile evenly and it will be difficult to establish vegetation. The best method to prevent a lack of bonding is to actually work the topsoil into the layer below for a depth of at least 6 inches.

- Field exploration of the site shall be made to determine if there is surface soil of sufficient quantity and quality to justify stripping. Topsoil shall be friable and loamy (loam, sandy loam, silt loam, sandy clay loam, and clay loam). Avoid areas of natural ground water recharge.
- Stripping shall be confined to the immediate construction area. A 4-inch to 6-inch stripping depth is common, but depth may vary depending on the particular soil. All surface runoff control structures shall be in place prior to stripping.
- Do not place topsoil while in a frozen or muddy condition, when the subgrade is excessively wet, or when conditions exist that may otherwise be detrimental to proper grading or proposed sodding or seeding.
- In any areas requiring grading remove and stockpile the duff layer and topsoil on site in a designated, controlled area, not adjacent to public resources and critical areas. Stockpiled topsoil is to be reapplied to other portions of the site where feasible.
- Locate the topsoil stockpile so that it meets specifications and does not interfere with work on the site. It may be possible to locate more than one pile in proximity to areas where topsoil will be used.

Stockpiling of topsoil shall occur in the following manner:

  - Side slopes of the stockpile shall not exceed 2H:1V.
  - Between October 1 and April 30:
    - An interceptor dike with gravel outlet and silt fence shall surround all topsoil.
    - Within 2 days complete erosion control seeding, or covering stockpiles with clear plastic, or other mulching materials.
  - Between May 1 and September 30:
    - An interceptor dike with gravel outlet and silt fence shall surround all topsoil if the stockpile will remain in place for a longer period of time than active construction grading.
    - Within 7 days complete erosion control seeding, or covering stockpiles with clear plastic, or other mulching materials.

- When native topsoil is to be stockpiled and reused the following should apply to ensure that the mycorrhizal bacterial, earthworms, and other beneficial organisms will not be destroyed:
  1. Re-install topsoil within 4 to 6 weeks.
  2. Do not allow the saturation of topsoil with water.
  3. Do not use plastic covering.

Maintenance Standards

- Inspect stockpiles regularly, especially after large storm events. Stabilize any areas that have eroded.
- Establish soil quality and depth toward the end of construction and once established, protect from compaction, such as from large machinery use, and from erosion.
- Plant and mulch soil after installation.
- Leave plant debris or its equivalent on the soil surface to replenish organic matter.
- Reduce and adjust, where possible, the use of irrigation, fertilizers, herbicides and pesticides, rather than continuing to implement formerly established practices.

BMP C126: Polyacrylamide (PAM) for Soil Erosion Protection

Purpose

Polyacrylamide (PAM) is used on construction sites to prevent soil erosion.

Applying PAM to bare soil in advance of a rain event significantly reduces erosion and controls sediment in two ways. First, PAM increases the soil's available pore volume, thus increasing infiltration through flocculation and reducing the quantity of stormwater runoff. Second, it increases flocculation of suspended particles and aids in their deposition, thus reducing stormwater runoff turbidity and improving water quality.

Conditions of Use

PAM shall not be directly applied to water or allowed to enter a water body.

In areas that drain to a sediment pond, PAM can be applied to bare soil under the following conditions:

- During rough grading operations.
- In Staging areas.
- Balanced cut and fill earthwork.
- Haul roads prior to placement of crushed rock surfacing.
- Compacted soil roadbase.
- Stockpiles.
- After final grade and before paving or final seeding and planting.
- Pit sites.
- Sites having a winter shut down. In the case of winter shut down, or where soil will remain unworked for several months, PAM should be used together with mulch.

Design and Installation Specifications

PAM may be applied with water in dissolved form. The preferred application method is the dissolved form.

PAM is to be applied at a maximum rate of 2/3 pound PAM per 1,000 gallons water (80 mg/L) per 1 acre of bare soil. Table 4.1.9 can be used to determine the PAM and water application rate for a disturbed soil area. Higher concentrations of PAM **do not** provide any additional effectiveness.

Table 4.1.9
PAM and Water Application Rates

Disturbed Area (ac)	PAM (lbs)	Water (gal)
0.50	0.33	500
1.00	0.66	1,000
1.50	1.00	1,500
2.00	1.32	2,000
2.50	1.65	2,500
3.00	2.00	3,000
3.50	2.33	3,500
4.00	2.65	4,000
4.50	3.00	4,500
5.00	3.33	5,000

The Preferred Method:

- Pre-measure the area where PAM is to be applied and calculate the amount of product and water necessary to provide coverage at the specified application rate (2/3 pound PAM/1000 gallons/acre).
- PAM has infinite solubility in water, but dissolves very slowly. Dissolve pre-measured dry granular PAM with a known quantity of clean water in a bucket several hours or overnight. Mechanical mixing will help dissolve the PAM. Always add PAM to water - not water to PAM.
- Pre-fill the water truck about 1/8 full with water. The water does not have to be potable, but it must have relatively low turbidity – in the range of 20 NTU or less.
- Add PAM /Water mixture to the truck
- Completely fill the water truck to specified volume.
- Spray PAM/Water mixture onto dry soil until the soil surface is uniformly and completely wetted.

An Alternate Method:

PAM may also be applied as a powder at the rate of 5 lbs. per acre. This must be applied on a day that is dry. For areas less than 5-10 acres, a hand-held “organ grinder” fertilizer spreader set to the smallest setting will work. Tractor-mounted spreaders will work for larger areas.

The following shall be used for application of powdered PAM:

- Powered PAM shall be used in conjunction with other BMPs and not in place of other BMPs.
- Do not use PAM on a slope that flows directly into a stream or wetland. The stormwater runoff shall pass through a sediment control BMP prior to discharging to surface waters.
- Do not add PAM to water discharging from site.
- When the total drainage area is greater than or equal to 5 acres, PAM treated areas shall drain to a sediment pond.
- Areas less than 5 acres shall drain to sediment control BMPs, such as a minimum of 3 check dams per acre. The total number of check dams used shall be maximized to achieve the greatest amount of settlement of sediment prior to discharging from the site. Each check dam shall be spaced evenly in the drainage channel through which stormwater flows are discharged off-site.
- On all sites, the use of silt fence shall be maximized to limit the discharges of sediment from the site.
- All areas not being actively worked shall be covered and protected from rainfall. PAM shall not be the only cover BMP used.
- PAM can be applied to wet soil, but dry soil is preferred due to less sediment loss.
- PAM will work when applied to saturated soil but is not as effective as applications to dry or damp soil.
- Keep the granular PAM supply out of the sun. Granular PAM loses its effectiveness in three months after exposure to sunlight and air.
- Proper application and re-application plans are necessary to ensure total effectiveness of PAM usage.
- PAM, combined with water, is very slippery and can be a safety hazard. Care must be taken to prevent spills of PAM powder onto paved surfaces. During an application of PAM, prevent over-spray from reaching pavement as pavement will become slippery. If PAM powder gets on skin or clothing, wipe it off with a rough towel rather than washing with water-this only makes cleanup messier and take longer.
- Some PAMs are more toxic and carcinogenic than others. Only the most environmentally safe PAM products should be used.

  The specific PAM copolymer formulation must be anionic. **Cationic PAM shall not be used in any application because of known aquatic toxicity problems.** Only the highest drinking water grade PAM, certified for compliance with ANSI/NSF Standard 60 for drinking water treatment, will be used for soil applications. Recent media attention and high interest in PAM has resulted in some entrepreneurial exploitation of the term "polymer." All PAM are polymers, but not all polymers are PAM, and not all PAM products comply with ANSI/NSF Standard 60. PAM use shall be reviewed and approved by the local permitting authority.

- PAM designated for these uses should be "water soluble" or "linear" or "non-crosslinked". Cross-linked or water absorbent PAM, polymerized in highly acidic (pH<2) conditions, are used to maintain soil moisture content.
- The PAM anionic charge density may vary from 2-30 percent; a value of 18 percent is typical. Studies conducted by the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA)/ARS demonstrated that soil stabilization was optimized by using very high molecular weight (12-15 mg/mole), highly anionic (>20% hydrolysis) PAM.

- PAM tackifiers are available and being used in place of guar and alpha plantago. Typically, PAM tackifiers should be used at a rate of no more than 0.5-1 lb. per 1000 gallons of water in a hydromulch machine. Some tackifier product instructions say to use at a rate of 3 –5 lbs. per acre, which can be too much. In addition, pump problems can occur at higher rates due to increased viscosity.

Maintenance Standards

- PAM may be reapplied on actively worked areas after a 48-hour period.
- Reapplication is not required unless PAM treated soil is disturbed or unless turbidity levels show the need for an additional application. If PAM treated soil is left undisturbed a reapplication may be necessary after two months. More PAM applications may be required for steep slopes, silty and clayey soils (USDA Classification Type "C" and "D" soils), long grades, and high precipitation areas. When PAM is applied first to bare soil and then covered with straw, a reapplication may not be necessary for several months.
- Loss of sediment and PAM may be a basis for penalties per RCW 90.48.080.

BMP C130: Surface Roughening

Purpose

Surface roughening aids in the establishment of vegetative cover, reduces runoff velocity, increases infiltration, and provides for sediment trapping through the provision of a rough soil surface. Horizontal depressions are created by operating a tiller or other suitable equipment on the contour or by leaving slopes in a roughened condition by not fine grading them.

Use this BMP in conjunction with other BMPs such as seeding, mulching, or sodding.

Conditions for Use

- All slopes steeper than 3H:1V and greater than 5 vertical feet require surface roughening to a depth of 2 to 4 inches prior to seeding..
- Areas that will not be stabilized immediately may be roughened to reduce runoff velocity until seeding takes place.
- Slopes with a stable rock face do not require roughening.
- Slopes where mowing is planned should not be excessively roughened.

Design and Installation Specifications

There are different methods for achieving a roughened soil surface on a slope, and the selection of an appropriate method depends upon the type of slope. Roughening methods include stair-step grading, grooving, contour furrows, and tracking. See Figure 4.1.5 for tracking and contour furrows. Factors to be considered in choosing a method are slope steepness, mowing requirements, and whether the slope is formed by cutting or filling.

- Disturbed areas that will not require mowing may be stair-step graded, grooved, or left rough after filling.
- Stair-step grading is particularly appropriate in soils containing large amounts of soft rock. Each "step" catches material that sloughs from above, and provides a level site where vegetation can become established. Stairs should be wide enough to work with standard earth moving equipment. Stair steps must be on contour or gullies will form on the slope.
- Areas that will be mowed (these areas should have slopes less steep than 3H:1V) may have small furrows left by disking, harrowing, raking, or seed-planting machinery operated on the contour.
- Graded areas with slopes steeper than 3H:1V but less than 2H:1V should be roughened before seeding. This can be accomplished in a variety of ways, including "track walking," or driving a crawler tractor up and down the slope, leaving a pattern of cleat imprints parallel to slope contours.
- Tracking is done by operating equipment up and down the slope to leave horizontal depressions in the soil.

Maintenance Standards

- Areas that are graded in this manner should be seeded as quickly as possible.
- Regular inspections should be made of the area. If rills appear, they should be re-graded and re-seeded immediately.

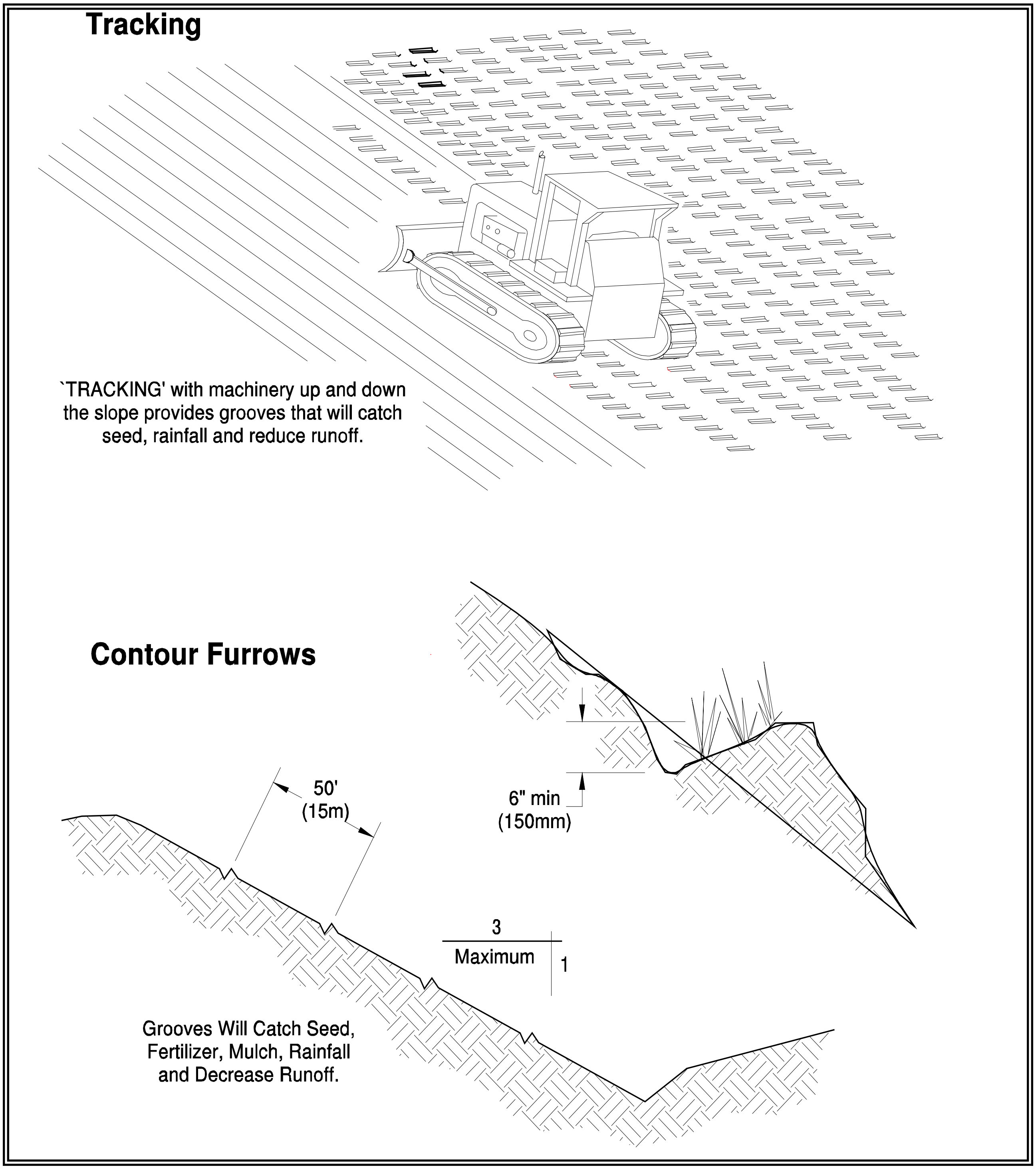


Figure 4.1.5 – Surface Roughening by Tracking and Contour Furrows

BMP C131: Gradient Terraces

Purpose

Gradient terraces reduce erosion damage by intercepting surface runoff and conducting it to a stable outlet at a non-erosive velocity.

Conditions of Use

- Gradient terraces normally are limited to denuded land having a water erosion problem. They should not be constructed on deep sands or on soils that are too stony, steep, or shallow to permit practical and economical installation and maintenance. Gradient terraces may be used only where suitable outlets are or will be made available. See Figure 4.1.6 for gradient terraces.

Design and Installation Specifications

- The maximum vertical spacing of gradient terraces should be determined by the following method:

  VI = (0.8)s + y

  Where: VI = vertical interval in feet

  s = land rise per 100 feet, expressed in feet

  y = a soil and cover variable with values from 1.0 to 4.0

  Values of “y” are influenced by soil erodibility and cover practices. The lower values are applicable to erosive soils where little to no residue is left on the surface. The higher value is applicable only to erosion-resistant soils where a large amount of residue (1½ tons of straw/acre equivalent) is on the surface.

- The minimum constructed cross-section should meet the design dimensions.

- The top of the constructed ridge should not be lower at any point than the design elevation plus the specified overfill for settlement. The opening at the outlet end of the terrace should have a cross section equal to that specified for the terrace channel.

- Channel grades may be either uniform or variable with a maximum grade of 0.6 feet per 100 feet length (0.6%). For short distances, terrace grades may be increased to improve alignment. The channel velocity should not exceed that which is nonerosive for the soil type.

- All gradient terraces should have adequate outlets. Such an outlet may be a grassed waterway, vegetated area, or tile outlet. In all cases the outlet must convey runoff from the terrace or terrace system to a point where the outflow will not cause damage. Vegetative cover should be used in the outlet channel.

- The design elevation of the water surface of the terrace should not be lower than the design elevation of the water surface in the outlet at their junction, when both are operating at design flow.

- Vertical spacing determined by the above methods may be increased as much as 0.5 feet or 10 percent, whichever is greater, to provide better alignment or location, to avoid obstacles, to adjust for equipment size, or to reach a satisfactory outlet. The drainage area above the terrace should not exceed the area that would be drained by a terrace with normal spacing.
- The terrace should have enough capacity to handle the peak runoff expected from a 2-year, 24-hour design storm without overtopping.
- The terrace cross-section should be proportioned to fit the land slope. The ridge height should include a reasonable settlement factor. The ridge should have a minimum top width of 3 feet at the design height. The minimum cross-sectional area of the terrace channel should be 8 square feet for land slopes of 5 percent or less, 7 square feet for slopes from 5 to 8 percent, and 6 square feet for slopes steeper than 8 percent. The terrace can be constructed wide enough to be maintained using a small vehicle.

Maintenance Standards

- Maintenance should be performed as needed. Terraces should be inspected regularly; at least once a year, and after large storm events.

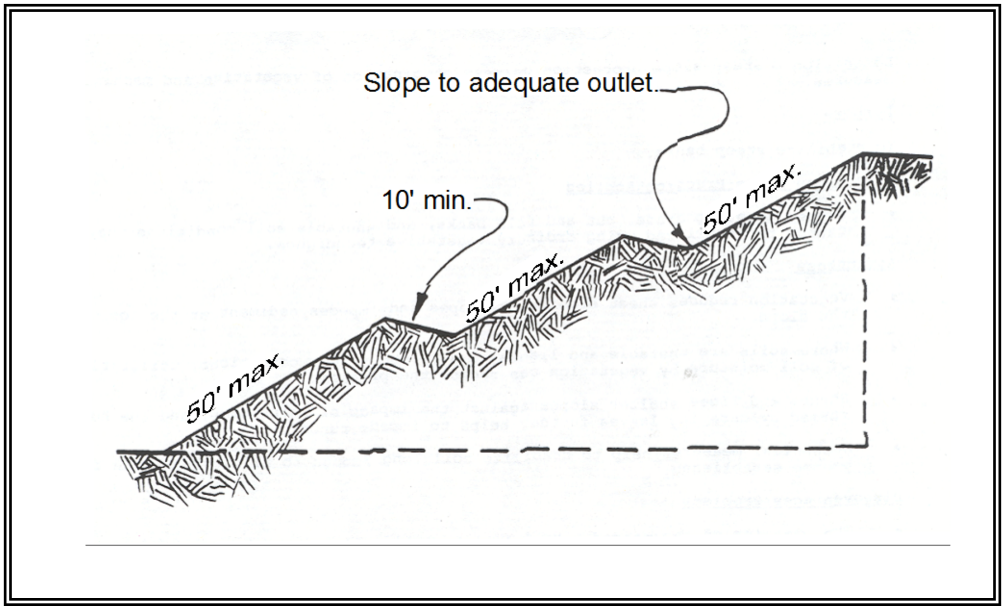


Figure 4.1.6 – Gradient Terraces

BMP C140: Dust Control

Purpose

Dust control prevents wind transport of dust from disturbed soil surfaces onto roadways, drainage ways, and surface waters.

Conditions of Use

- In areas (including roadways) subject to surface and air movement of dust where on-site and off-site impacts to roadways, drainage ways, or surface waters are likely.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Vegetate or mulch areas that will not receive vehicle traffic. In areas where planting, mulching, or paving is impractical, apply gravel or landscaping rock.
- Limit dust generation by clearing only those areas where immediate activity will take place, leaving the remaining area(s) in the original condition. Maintain the original ground cover as long as practical.
- Construct natural or artificial windbreaks or windscreens. These may be designed as enclosures for small dust sources.
- Sprinkle the site with water until surface is wet. Repeat as needed. To prevent carryout of mud onto street, refer to Stabilized Construction Entrance (BMP C105).
- Irrigation water can be used for dust control. Irrigation systems should be installed as a first step on sites where dust control is a concern.
- Spray exposed soil areas with a dust palliative, following the manufacturer's instructions and cautions regarding handling and application. Used oil is prohibited from use as a dust suppressant. Local governments may approve other dust palliatives such as calcium chloride or PAM.
- PAM (BMP C126) added to water at a rate of 0.5 lbs. per 1,000 gallons of water per acre and applied from a water truck is more effective than water alone. This is due to increased infiltration of water into the soil and reduced evaporation. In addition, small soil particles are bonded together and are not as easily transported by wind. Adding PAM may actually reduce the quantity of water needed for dust control. Use of PAM could be a cost-effective dust control method.

Techniques that can be used for unpaved roads and lots include:

- Lower speed limits. High vehicle speed increases the amount of dust stirred up from unpaved roads and lots.
- Upgrade the road surface strength by improving particle size, shape, and mineral types that make up the surface and base materials.
- Add surface gravel to reduce the source of dust emission. Limit the amount of fine particles (those smaller than .075 mm) to 10 to 20 percent.

- Use geotextile fabrics to increase the strength of new roads or roads undergoing reconstruction.
- Encourage the use of alternate, paved routes, if available.
- Restrict use of paved roadways by tracked vehicles and heavy trucks to prevent damage to road surface and base.
- Apply chemical dust suppressants using the admix method, blending the product with the top few inches of surface material. Suppressants may also be applied as surface treatments.
- Pave unpaved permanent roads and other trafficked areas.
- Use vacuum street sweepers.
- Remove mud and other dirt promptly so it does not dry and then turn into dust.
- Limit dust-causing work on windy days.
- Contact your local Air Pollution Control Authority for guidance and training on other dust control measures. Compliance with the local Air Pollution Control Authority constitutes compliance with this BMP.

Maintenance Standards Respray area as necessary to keep dust to a minimum.

BMP C150: Materials on Hand

Purpose Keep quantities of erosion prevention and sediment control materials on the project site at all times to be used for regular maintenance and emergency situations such as unexpected heavy summer rains. Having these materials on-site reduces the time needed to implement BMPs when inspections indicate that existing BMPs are not meeting the Construction SWPPP requirements. In addition, contractors can save money by buying some materials in bulk and storing them at their office or yard.

Conditions of Use

- Construction projects of any size or type can benefit from having materials on hand. A small commercial development project could have a roll of plastic and some gravel available for immediate protection of bare soil and temporary berm construction. A large earthwork project, such as highway construction, might have several tons of straw, several rolls of plastic, flexible pipe, sandbags, geotextile fabric and steel “T” posts.
- Materials are stockpiled and readily available before any site clearing, grubbing, or earthwork begins. A large contractor or developer could keep a stockpile of materials that are available for use on several projects.
- If storage space at the project site is at a premium, the contractor could maintain the materials at their office or yard. The office or yard must be less than an hour from the project site.

Design and Installation Specifications

Depending on project type, size, complexity, and length, materials and quantities will vary. A good minimum list of items that will cover numerous situations includes:

Material
Clear Plastic, 6 mil
Drainpipe, 6 or 8 inch diameter
Sandbags, filled
Straw Bales for mulching,
Quarry Spalls
Washed Gravel
Geotextile Fabric
Catch Basin Inserts
Steel "T" Posts
Silt fence material
Straw Wattles

Maintenance Standards

- All materials with the exception of the quarry spalls, steel "T" posts, and gravel should be kept covered and out of both sun and rain.
- Re-stock materials used as needed.

BMP C151: Concrete Handling

Purpose

Concrete work can generate process water and slurry that contain fine particles and high pH, both of which can violate water quality standards in the receiving water. Concrete spillage or concrete discharge to surface waters of the State is prohibited. Use this BMP to minimize and eliminate concrete, concrete process water, and concrete slurry from entering waters of the state.

Conditions of Use

Any time concrete is used, utilize these management practices. Concrete construction projects include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Curbs
- Sidewalks
- Roads
- Bridges
- Foundations
- Floors
- Runways

Design and Installation

- Assure that washout of concrete trucks, chutes, pumps, and internals is performed at an approved off-site location or in designated concrete

Specifications

washout areas. Do not wash out concrete trucks onto the ground, or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams. Refer to BMP C154 for information on concrete washout areas.

- Return unused concrete remaining in the truck and pump to the originating batch plant for recycling. Do not dump excess concrete on site, except in designated concrete washout areas.
- Wash off hand tools including, but not limited to, screeds, shovels, rakes, floats, and trowels into formed areas only.
- Wash equipment difficult to move, such as concrete pavers in areas that do not directly drain to natural or constructed stormwater conveyances.
- Do not allow washdown from areas, such as concrete aggregate driveways, to drain directly to natural or constructed stormwater conveyances.
- Contain washwater and leftover product in a lined container when no formed areas are available. Dispose of contained concrete in a manner that does not violate ground water or surface water quality standards.
- Always use forms or solid barriers for concrete pours, such as pilings, within 15-feet of surface waters.
- Refer to BMPs C252 and C253 for pH adjustment requirements.
- Refer to the Construction Stormwater General Permit for pH monitoring requirements if the project involves one of the following activities:
  - Significant concrete work (greater than 1,000 cubic yards poured concrete or recycled concrete used over the life of a project).
  - The use of engineered soils amended with (but not limited to) Portland cement-treated base, cement kiln dust or fly ash.
  - Discharging stormwater to segments of water bodies on the 303(d) list (Category 5) for high pH.

Maintenance Standards

Check containers for holes in the liner daily during concrete pours and repair the same day.

BMP C152: Sawcutting and Surfacing Pollution Prevention

Purpose

Sawcutting and surfacing operations generate slurry and process water that contains fine particles and high pH (concrete cutting), both of which can violate the water quality standards in the receiving water. Concrete spillage or concrete discharge to surface waters of the State is prohibited. Use this BMP to minimize and eliminate process water and slurry created through sawcutting or surfacing from entering waters of the State.

Conditions of Use

Utilize these management practices anytime sawcutting or surfacing operations take place. Sawcutting and surfacing operations include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Sawing
- Coring
- Grinding
- Roughening
- Hydro-demolition
- Bridge and road surfacing

Design and Installation Specifications

- Vacuum slurry and cuttings during cutting and surfacing operations.
- Slurry and cuttings shall not remain on permanent concrete or asphalt pavement overnight.
- Slurry and cuttings shall not drain to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance including stormwater systems. This may require temporarily blocking catch basins.
- Dispose of collected slurry and cuttings in a manner that does not violate ground water or surface water quality standards.
- Do not allow process water generated during hydro-demolition, surface roughening or similar operations to drain to any natural or constructed drainage conveyance including stormwater systems. Dispose process water in a manner that does not violate ground water or surface water quality standards.
- Handle and dispose cleaning waste material and demolition debris in a manner that does not cause contamination of water. Dispose of sweeping material from a pick-up sweeper at an appropriate disposal site.

Maintenance Standards

Continually monitor operations to determine whether slurry, cuttings, or process water could enter waters of the state. If inspections show that a violation of water quality standards could occur, stop operations and immediately implement preventive measures such as berms, barriers, secondary containment, and vacuum trucks.

BMP C153: Material Delivery, Storage and Containment

Purpose

Prevent, reduce, or eliminate the discharge of pollutants to the stormwater system or watercourses from material delivery and storage. Minimize the storage of hazardous materials on-site, store materials in a designated area, and install secondary containment.

Conditions of Use

These procedures are suitable for use at all construction sites with delivery and storage of the following materials:

- Petroleum products such as fuel, oil and grease
- Soil stabilizers and binders (e.g., Polyacrylamide)
- Fertilizers, pesticides and herbicides
- Detergents
- Asphalt and concrete compounds
- Hazardous chemicals such as acids, lime, adhesives, paints, solvents, and curing compounds
- Any other material that may be detrimental if released to the environment

Design and Installation Specifications

The following steps should be taken to minimize risk:

- Temporary storage area should be located away from vehicular traffic, near the construction entrance(s), and away from waterways or storm drains.
- Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) should be supplied for all materials stored. Chemicals should be kept in their original labeled containers.
- Hazardous material storage on-site should be minimized.
- Hazardous materials should be handled as infrequently as possible.
- During the wet weather season (Oct 1 – April 30), consider storing materials in a covered area.
- Materials should be stored in secondary containments, such as earthen dike, horse trough, or even a children's wading pool for non-reactive materials such as detergents, oil, grease, and paints. Small amounts of material may be secondarily contained in "bus boy" trays or concrete mixing trays.
- Do not store chemicals, drums, or bagged materials directly on the ground. Place these items on a pallet and, when possible, and within secondary containment.
- If drums must be kept uncovered, store them at a slight angle to reduce ponding of rainwater on the lids to reduce corrosion. Domed plastic covers are inexpensive and snap to the top of drums, preventing water from collecting.

Material Storage Areas and Secondary Containment Practices:

- Liquids, petroleum products, and substances listed in 40 CFR Parts 110, 117, or 302 shall be stored in approved containers and drums and shall not be overfilled. Containers and drums shall be stored in temporary secondary containment facilities.
- Temporary secondary containment facilities shall provide for a spill containment volume able to contain 10% of the total enclosed container volume of all containers, or 110% of the capacity of the largest container within its boundary, whichever is greater.
- Secondary containment facilities shall be impervious to the materials stored therein for a minimum contact time of 72 hours.
- Secondary containment facilities shall be maintained free of accumulated rainwater and spills. In the event of spills or leaks, accumulated rainwater and spills shall be collected and placed into drums. These liquids shall be handled as hazardous waste unless testing determines them to be non-hazardous.
- Sufficient separation should be provided between stored containers to allow for spill cleanup and emergency response access.
- During the wet weather season (Oct 1 – April 30), each secondary containment facility shall be covered during non-working days, prior to and during rain events.
- Keep material storage areas clean, organized and equipped with an ample supply of appropriate spill clean-up material (spill kit).
- The spill kit should include, at a minimum:
  - 1-Water Resistant Nylon Bag
  - 3-Oil Absorbent Socks 3”x 4’
  - 2-Oil Absorbent Socks 3”x 10’
  - 12-Oil Absorbent Pads 17”x19”
  - 1-Pair Splash Resistant Goggles
  - 3-Pair Nitrile Gloves
  - 10-Disposable Bags with Ties
  - Instructions

BMP C154: Concrete Washout Area

Purpose

Prevent or reduce the discharge of pollutants to stormwater from concrete waste by conducting washout off-site, or performing on-site washout in a designated area to prevent pollutants from entering surface waters or ground water.

Conditions of Use

Concrete washout area best management practices are implemented on construction projects where:

- Concrete is used as a construction material
- It is not possible to dispose of all concrete wastewater and washout off-site (ready mix plant, etc.).
- Concrete trucks, pumpers, or other concrete coated equipment are washed on-site.
- Note: If less than 10 concrete trucks or pumpers need to be washed out on-site, the washwater may be disposed of in a formed area awaiting concrete or an upland disposal site where it will not contaminate surface or ground water. The upland disposal site shall be at least 50 feet from sensitive areas such as storm drains, open ditches, or water bodies, including wetlands.

Design and Installation Specifications

Implementation

The following steps will help reduce stormwater pollution from concrete wastes:

- Perform washout of concrete trucks at an approved off-site location or in designated concrete washout areas only.
- Do not wash out concrete trucks onto the ground, or into storm drains, open ditches, streets, or streams.
- Do not allow excess concrete to be dumped on-site, except in designated concrete washout areas.
- Concrete washout areas may be prefabricated concrete washout containers, or self-installed structures (above-grade or below-grade).
- Prefabricated containers are most resistant to damage and protect against spills and leaks. Companies may offer delivery service and provide regular maintenance and disposal of solid and liquid waste.
- If self-installed concrete washout areas are used, below-grade structures are preferred over above-grade structures because they are less prone to spills and leaks.
- Self-installed above-grade structures should only be used if excavation is not practical.

Education

- Discuss the concrete management techniques described in this BMP with the ready-mix concrete supplier before any deliveries are made.
- Educate employees and subcontractors on the concrete waste management techniques described in this BMP.
- Arrange for contractor's superintendent or Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL) to oversee and enforce concrete waste management procedures.
- A sign should be installed adjacent to each temporary concrete washout facility to inform concrete equipment operators to utilize the proper facilities.

Contracts

Incorporate requirements for concrete waste management into concrete supplier and subcontractor agreements.

Location and Placement

- Locate washout area at least 50 feet from sensitive areas such as storm drains, open ditches, or water bodies, including wetlands.
- Allow convenient access for concrete trucks, preferably near the area where the concrete is being poured.
- If trucks need to leave a paved area to access washout, prevent track-out with a pad of rock or quarry spalls (see BMP C105). These areas should be far enough away from other construction traffic to reduce the likelihood of accidental damage and spills.
- The number of facilities you install should depend on the expected demand for storage capacity.
- On large sites with extensive concrete work, washouts should be placed in multiple locations for ease of use by concrete truck drivers.

On-site Temporary Concrete Washout Facility, Transit Truck Washout Procedures:

- Temporary concrete washout facilities shall be located a minimum of 50 ft from sensitive areas including storm drain inlets, open drainage facilities, and watercourses. See Figures 4.1.7 and 4.1.8.
- Concrete washout facilities shall be constructed and maintained in sufficient quantity and size to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
- Washout of concrete trucks shall be performed in designated areas only.

- Concrete washout from concrete pumper bins can be washed into concrete pumper trucks and discharged into designated washout area or properly disposed of off-site.
- Once concrete wastes are washed into the designated area and allowed to harden, the concrete should be broken up, removed, and disposed of per applicable solid waste regulations. Dispose of hardened concrete on a regular basis.
- Temporary Above-Grade Concrete Washout Facility
    - Temporary concrete washout facility (type above grade) should be constructed as shown on the details below, with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 ft, but with sufficient quantity and volume to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
    - Plastic lining material should be a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and should be free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.
- Temporary Below-Grade Concrete Washout Facility
    - Temporary concrete washout facilities (type below grade) should be constructed as shown on the details below, with a recommended minimum length and minimum width of 10 ft. The quantity and volume should be sufficient to contain all liquid and concrete waste generated by washout operations.
    - Lath and flagging should be commercial type.
    - Plastic lining material shall be a minimum of 10 mil polyethylene sheeting and should be free of holes, tears, or other defects that compromise the impermeability of the material.
    - Liner seams shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
    - Soil base shall be prepared free of rocks or other debris that may cause tears or holes in the plastic lining material.

Maintenance Standards

Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that concrete washout BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of concrete work.
- During periods of concrete work, inspect daily to verify continued performance.
    - Check overall condition and performance.
    - Check remaining capacity (% full).
    - If using self-installed washout facilities, verify plastic liners are intact and sidewalls are not damaged.

    - If using prefabricated containers, check for leaks.
- Washout facilities shall be maintained to provide adequate holding capacity with a minimum freeboard of 12 inches.
- Washout facilities must be cleaned, or new facilities must be constructed and ready for use once the washout is 75% full.
- If the washout is nearing capacity, vacuum and dispose of the waste material in an approved manner.
    - Do not discharge liquid or slurry to waterways, storm drains or directly onto ground.
    - Do not use sanitary sewer without local approval.
    - Place a secure, non-collapsing, non-water collecting cover over the concrete washout facility prior to predicted wet weather to prevent accumulation and overflow of precipitation.
    - Remove and dispose of hardened concrete and return the structure to a functional condition. Concrete may be reused on-site or hauled away for disposal or recycling.
- When you remove materials from the self-installed concrete washout, build a new structure; or, if the previous structure is still intact, inspect for signs of weakening or damage, and make any necessary repairs. Re-line the structure with new plastic after each cleaning.

Removal of Temporary Concrete Washout Facilities

- When temporary concrete washout facilities are no longer required for the work, the hardened concrete, slurries and liquids shall be removed and properly disposed of.
- Materials used to construct temporary concrete washout facilities shall be removed from the site of the work and disposed of or recycled.
- Holes, depressions or other ground disturbance caused by the removal of the temporary concrete washout facilities shall be backfilled, repaired, and stabilized to prevent erosion.

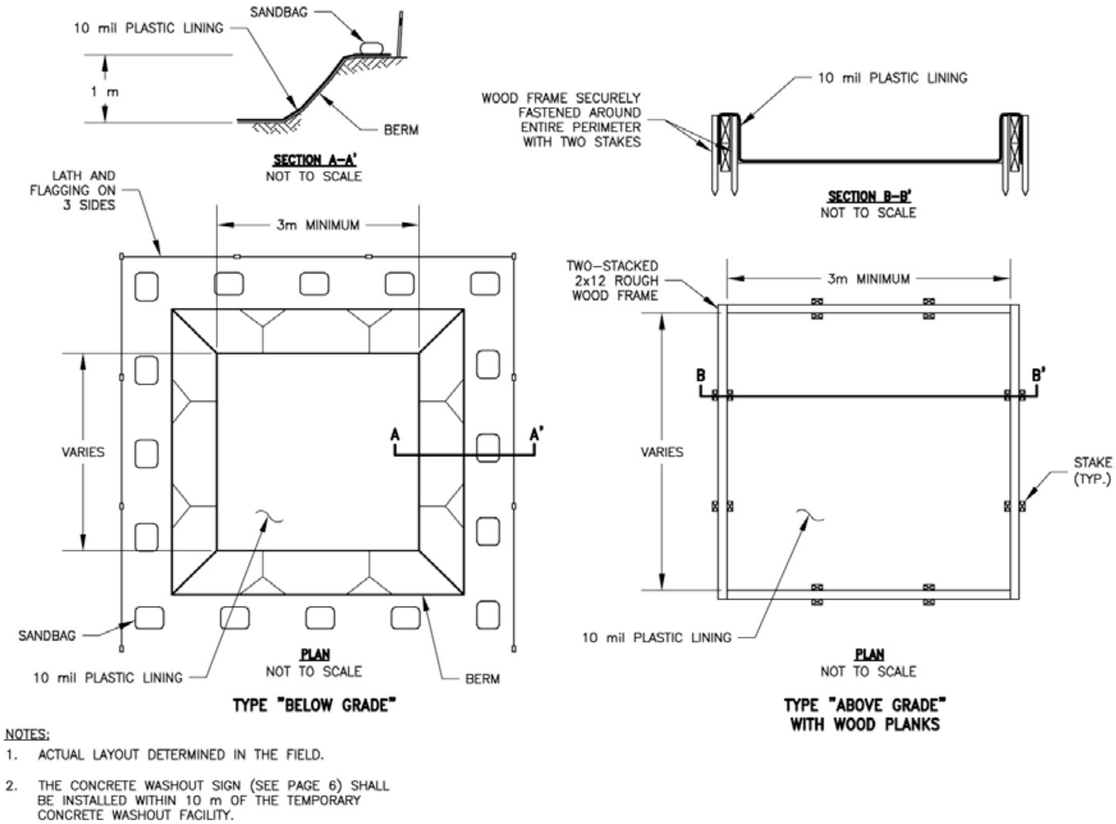


Figure 4.1.7a – Concrete Washout Area

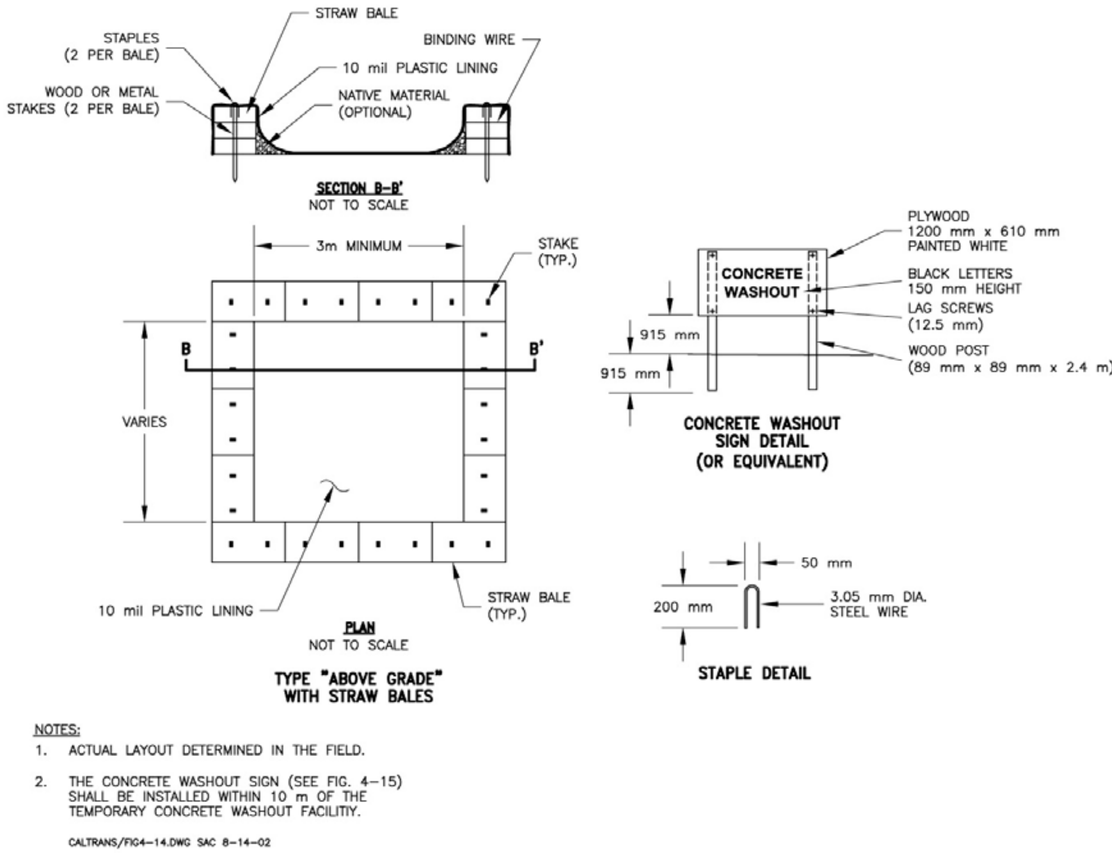


Figure 4.1.7b – Concrete Washout Area

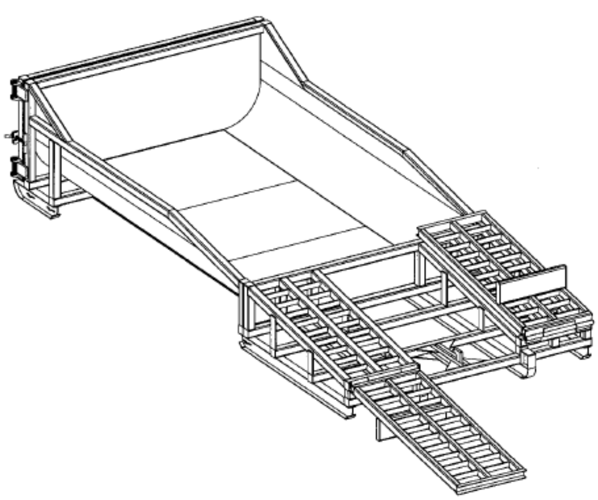


Figure 4.1.8 – Prefabricated Concrete Washout Container w/Ramp

BMP C160: Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead

Purpose

The project proponent designates at least one person as the responsible representative in charge of erosion and sediment control (ESC), and water quality protection. The designated person shall be the Certified Erosion and Sediment Control Lead (CESCL) who is responsible for ensuring compliance with all local, state, and federal erosion and sediment control and water quality requirements.

Conditions of Use

A CESCL shall be made available on projects one acre or larger that discharge stormwater to surface waters of the state. Sites less than one acre may have a person without CESCL certification conduct inspections; sampling is not required on sites that disturb less than an acre.

- The CESCL shall:
  - Have a current certificate proving attendance in an erosion and sediment control training course that meets the minimum ESC training and certification requirements established by Ecology (see details below).

    Ecology will maintain a list of ESC training and certification providers at: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/cescl.html

    OR
  - Be a Certified Professional in Erosion and Sediment Control (CPESC); for additional information go to: www.cpesc.net

Specifications

- Certification shall remain valid for three years.
- The CESCL shall have authority to act on behalf of the contractor or developer and shall be available, or on-call, 24 hours per day throughout the period of construction.
- The Construction SWPPP shall include the name, telephone number, fax number, and address of the designated CESCL.
- A CESCL may provide inspection and compliance services for multiple construction projects in the same geographic region.

Duties and responsibilities of the CESCL shall include, but are not limited to the following:

- Maintaining permit file on site at all times which includes the Construction SWPPP and any associated permits and plans.
- Directing BMP installation, inspection, maintenance, modification, and removal.

- Updating all project drawings and the Construction SWPPP with changes made.
- Completing any sampling requirements including reporting results using WebDMR.
- Keeping daily logs, and inspection reports. Inspection reports should include:
  - Inspection date/time.
  - Weather information; general conditions during inspection and approximate amount of precipitation since the last inspection.
  - A summary or list of all BMPs implemented, including observations of all erosion/sediment control structures or practices. The following shall be noted:
    1. Locations of BMPs inspected.
    2. Locations of BMPs that need maintenance.
    3. Locations of BMPs that failed to operate as designed or intended.
    4. Locations of where additional or different BMPs are required.
    - Visual monitoring results, including a description of discharged stormwater. The presence of suspended sediment, turbid water, discoloration, and oil sheen shall be noted, as applicable.
    - Any water quality monitoring performed during inspection.
    - General comments and notes, including a brief description of any BMP repairs, maintenance or installations made as a result of the inspection.
- Facilitate, participate in, and take corrective actions resulting from inspections performed by outside agencies or the owner.

BMP C162: Scheduling

Purpose Sequencing a construction project reduces the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff, and vehicle tracking.

Conditions of Use The construction sequence schedule is an orderly listing of all major land-disturbing activities together with the necessary erosion and sedimentation control measures planned for the project. This type of schedule guides the contractor on work to be done before other work is started so that serious erosion and sedimentation problems can be avoided.

Following a specified work schedule that coordinates the timing of land-disturbing activities and the installation of control measures is perhaps the most cost-effective way of controlling erosion during construction. The removal of surface ground cover leaves a site vulnerable to accelerated erosion. Construction procedures that limit land clearing provide timely installation of erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore protective cover quickly can significantly reduce the erosion potential of a site.

Design Considerations

- Minimize construction during rainy periods.
- Schedule projects to disturb only small portions of the site at any one time. Complete grading as soon as possible. Immediately stabilize the disturbed portion before grading the next portion. Practice staged seeding in order to revegetate cut and fill slopes as the work progresses.

4.2 Runoff Conveyance and Treatment BMPs

This section contains the standards and specifications for Runoff Conveyance and Treatment BMPs. Table 4.2.1, below, shows the relationship of the BMPs in Section 4.2 to the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) Elements described in Section 3.3.3.

Table 4.2.1 Runoff Conveyance and Treatment BMPs by SWPPP Element

BMP or Element Name	**Element #3** Control Flow Rates	**Element #4** Install Sediment Controls	**Element #6** Protect Slopes	**Element #7** Protect Drain Inlets	**Element #8** Stabilize Channels and Outlets	**Element #9** Control Pollutants	**Element #10** Control De-Watering	**Element #13** Protect Low Impact Development
BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale			✓					✓
BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels			✓					✓
BMP C202: Channel Lining					✓			
BMP C203: Water Bars	✓		✓				✓	
BMP C204: Pipe Slope Drains			✓					
BMP C205: Subsurface Drains			✓					
BMP C206: Level Spreader			✓				✓	
BMP C207: Check Dams	✓		✓		✓			✓
BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (TSD) (Geotextile Encased Check Dam)			✓					✓
BMP C209: Outlet Protection	✓				✓			
BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection				✓				
BMP C231: Brush Barrier		✓						✓
BMP C232: Gravel Filter Berm		✓						
BMP C233: Silt Fence		✓						✓
BMP C234: Vegetated Strip		✓						✓
BMP C235: Wattles	✓	✓						
BMP C236: Vegetated Filtration							✓	
BMP C240: Sediment Trap	✓	✓						
BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond	✓	✓						

BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment		✓				✓		
BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration		✓				✓		
BMP C252: High pH Neutralization Using CO_2						✓		
BMP C253: pH Control for High pH Water						✓		

BMP C200: Interceptor Dike and Swale

Purpose

Provide a ridge of compacted soil, or a ridge with an upslope swale, at the top or base of a disturbed slope or along the perimeter of a disturbed construction area to convey stormwater. Use the dike and/or swale to intercept the runoff from unprotected areas and direct it to areas where erosion can be controlled. This can prevent storm runoff from entering the work area or sediment-laden runoff from leaving the construction site.

Conditions of Use

Where the runoff from an exposed site or disturbed slope must be conveyed to an erosion control facility which can safely convey the stormwater.

- Locate upslope of a construction site to prevent runoff from entering disturbed area.
- When placed horizontally across a disturbed slope, it reduces the amount and velocity of runoff flowing down the slope.
- Locate downslope to collect runoff from a disturbed area and direct water to a sediment basin.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Dike and/or swale and channel must be stabilized with temporary or permanent vegetation or other channel protection during construction.
- Channel requires a positive grade for drainage; steeper grades require channel protection and check dams.
- Review construction for areas where overtopping may occur.
- Can be used at top of new fill before vegetation is established.
- May be used as a permanent diversion channel to carry the runoff.
- Sub-basin tributary area should be one acre or less.
- Design capacity for the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a 10-year, 24-hour storm, assuming a Type 1A rainfall distribution, for temporary facilities. Alternatively, use 1.6 times the 10-year, 1-hour flow indicated by an approved continuous runoff model. For facilities that will also serve on a permanent basis, consult the local government’s drainage requirements.

Interceptor dikes shall meet the following criteria:

Top Width	2 feet minimum.
Height	1.5 feet minimum on berm.
Side Slope	2H:1V or flatter.
Grade	Depends on topography, however, dike system minimum is 0.5%, and maximum is 1%.
Compaction	Minimum of 90 percent ASTM D698 standard proctor.

Horizontal Spacing of Interceptor Dikes:

Average Slope	**Slope Percent**	**Flowpath Length**
20H:1V or less	3-5%	300 feet
(10 to 20)H:1V	5-10%	200 feet
(4 to 10)H:1V	10-25%	100 feet
(2 to 4)H:1V	25-50%	50 feet

Stabilization depends on velocity and reach

Slopes <5%	Seed and mulch applied within 5 days of dike construction (see BMP C121, Mulching).
Slopes 5 - 40%	Dependent on runoff velocities and dike materials. Stabilization should be done immediately using either sod or riprap or other measures to avoid erosion.

- The upslope side of the dike shall provide positive drainage to the dike outlet. No erosion shall occur at the outlet. Provide energy dissipation measures as necessary. Sediment-laden runoff must be released through a sediment trapping facility.
- Minimize construction traffic over temporary dikes. Use temporary cross culverts for channel crossing.

Interceptor swales shall meet the following criteria:

Bottom Width	2 feet minimum; the cross-section bottom shall be level.
Depth	1-foot minimum.
Side Slope	2H:1V or flatter.
Grade	Maximum 5 percent, with positive drainage to a suitable outlet (such as a sediment pond).
Stabilization	Seed as per BMP C120, *Temporary and Permanent Seeding*, or BMP C202, *Channel Lining*, 12 inches thick riprap pressed into the bank and extending at least 8 inches vertical from the bottom.

- Inspect diversion dikes and interceptor swales once a week and after every rainfall. Immediately remove sediment from the flow area.

- Damage caused by construction traffic or other activity must be repaired before the end of each working day.

Check outlets and make timely repairs as needed to avoid gully formation. When the area below the temporary diversion dike is permanently stabilized, remove the dike and fill and stabilize the channel to blend with the natural surface.

BMP C201: Grass-Lined Channels

Purpose

To provide a channel with a vegetative lining for conveyance of runoff. See Figure 4.2.1 for typical grass-lined channels.

Conditions of Use

This practice applies to construction sites where concentrated runoff needs to be contained to prevent erosion or flooding.

- When a vegetative lining can provide sufficient stability for the channel cross section and at lower velocities of water (normally dependent on grade). This means that the channel slopes are generally less than 5 percent and space is available for a relatively large cross section.
- Typical uses include roadside ditches, channels at property boundaries, outlets for diversions, and other channels and drainage ditches in low areas.
- Channels that will be vegetated should be installed before major earthwork and hydroseeded with a bonded fiber matrix (BFM). The vegetation should be well established (i.e., 75 percent cover) before water is allowed to flow in the ditch. With channels that will have high flows, erosion control blankets should be installed over the hydroseed. If vegetation cannot be established from seed before water is allowed in the ditch, sod should be installed in the bottom of the ditch in lieu of hydromulch and blankets.

Design and Installation Specifications

Locate the channel where it can conform to the topography and other features such as roads.

- Locate them to use natural drainage systems to the greatest extent possible.
- Avoid sharp changes in alignment or bends and changes in grade.
- Do not reshape the landscape to fit the drainage channel.
- The maximum design velocity shall be based on soil conditions, type of vegetation, and method of revegetation, but at no times shall velocity exceed 5 feet/second. The channel shall not be overtopped by the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a 10-year, 24-hour storm, assuming a Type 1A rainfall distribution. Alternatively, use 1.6 times the 10-year, 1-hour flow indicated by an approved continuous runoff model to determine a flow rate which the channel must contain.

- Where the grass-lined channel will also function as a permanent stormwater conveyance facility, consult the drainage conveyance requirements of the local government with jurisdiction.
- An established grass or vegetated lining is required before the channel can be used to convey stormwater, unless stabilized with nets or blankets.
- If design velocity of a channel to be vegetated by seeding exceeds 2 ft/sec, a temporary channel liner is required. Geotextile or special mulch protection such as fiberglass roving or straw and netting provides stability until the vegetation is fully established. See Figure 4.2.2.
- Check dams shall be removed when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. The area beneath the check dams shall be seeded and mulched immediately after dam removal.
- If vegetation is established by sodding, the permissible velocity for established vegetation may be used and no temporary liner is needed.
- Do not subject grass-lined channel to sedimentation from disturbed areas. Use sediment-trapping BMPs upstream of the channel.
- V-shaped grass channels generally apply where the quantity of water is small, such as in short reaches along roadsides. The V-shaped cross section is least desirable because it is difficult to stabilize the bottom where velocities may be high.
- Trapezoidal grass channels are used where runoff volumes are large and slope is low so that velocities are nonerosive to vegetated linings. (Note: it is difficult to construct small parabolic shaped channels.)
- Subsurface drainage, or riprap channel bottoms, may be necessary on sites that are subject to prolonged wet conditions due to long duration flows or a high water table.
- Provide outlet protection at culvert ends and at channel intersections.
- Grass channels, at a minimum, should carry peak runoff for temporary construction drainage facilities from the 10-year, 24-hour storm without eroding. Where flood hazard exists, increase the capacity according to the potential damage.
- Grassed channel side slopes generally are constructed 3H:1V or flatter to aid in the establishment of vegetation and for maintenance.
- Construct channels a minimum of 0.2 foot larger around the periphery to allow for soil bulking during seedbed preparations and sod buildup.

Maintenance Standards

During the establishment period, check grass-lined channels after every rainfall.

- After grass is established, periodically check the channel; check it after every heavy rainfall event. Immediately make repairs.
- It is particularly important to check the channel outlet and all road crossings for bank stability and evidence of piping or scour holes.
- Remove all significant sediment accumulations to maintain the designed carrying capacity. Keep the grass in a healthy, vigorous condition at all times, since it is the primary erosion protection for the channel.

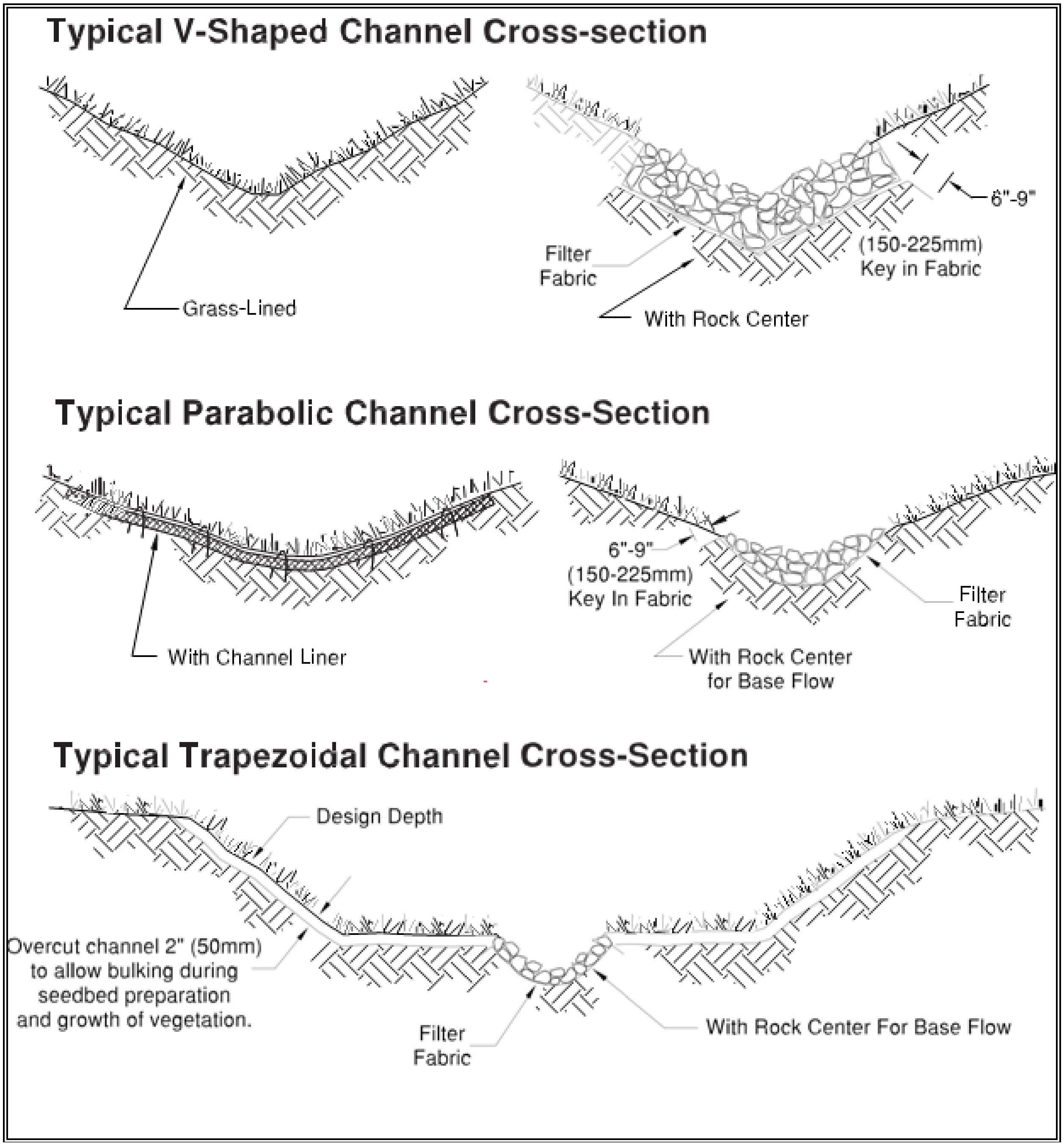
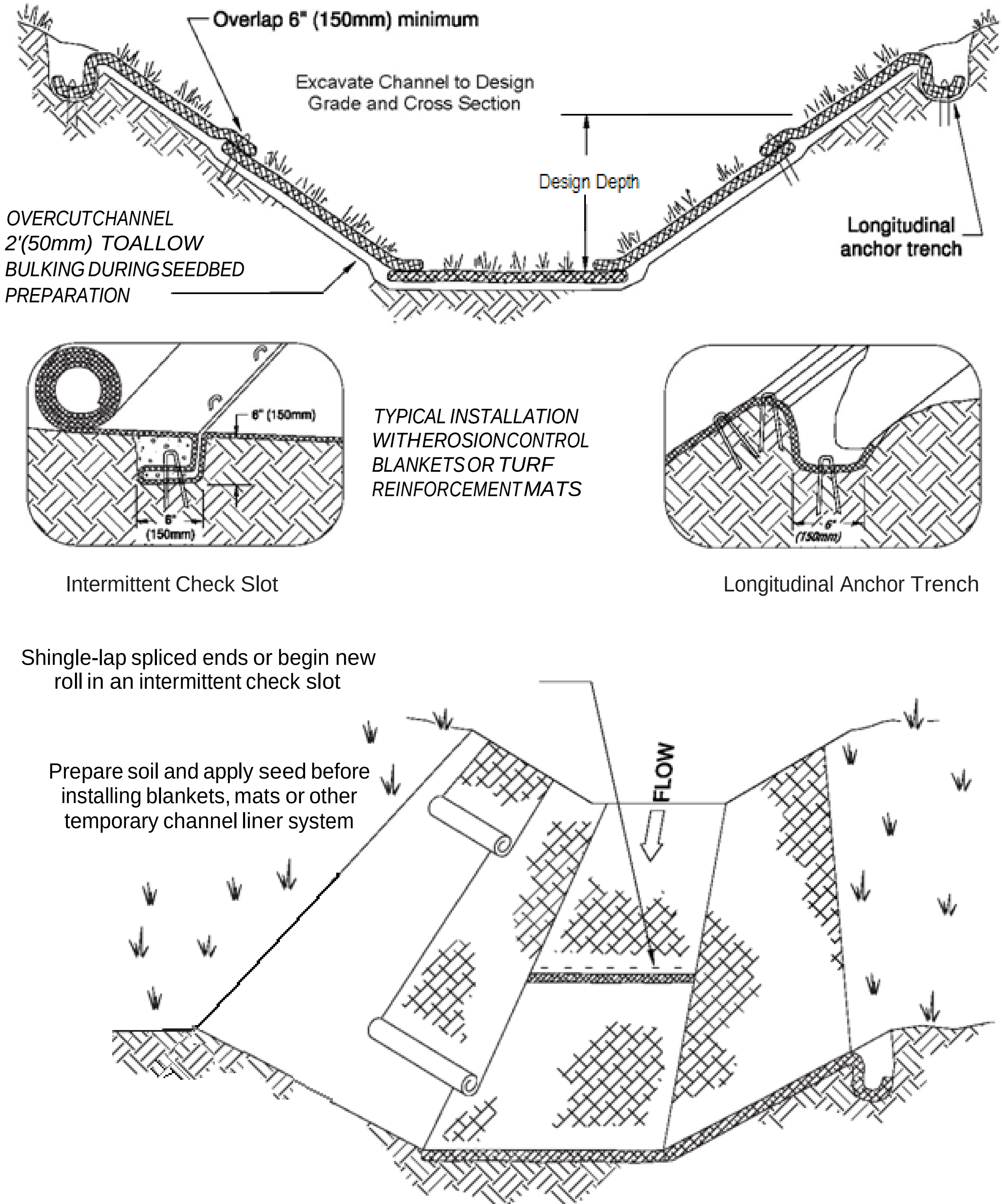


Figure 4.2.1 – Typical Grass-Lined Channels



NOTES:

1 Design velocities exceeding 2 ft/sec (0.5m/sec) require temporary blankets, mats or similar liners to protect seed and soil until vegetation becomes established.

2 Grass-lined channels with design velocities exceeding 6 ft/sec (2m/sec) should include turf reinforcement mats.

Figure 4.2.2 – Temporary Channel Liners

BMP C202: Channel Lining

Purpose

To protect channels by providing a channel liner using either blankets or riprap.

Conditions of Use

When natural soils or vegetated stabilized soils in a channel are not adequate to prevent channel erosion.

- When a permanent ditch or pipe system is to be installed and a temporary measure is needed.
- In almost all cases, synthetic and organic coconut blankets are more effective than riprap for protecting channels from erosion. Blankets can be used with and without vegetation. Blanketed channels can be designed to handle any expected flow and longevity requirement. Some synthetic blankets have a predicted life span of 50 years or more, even in sunlight.
- Other reasons why blankets are better than rock include the availability of blankets over rock. In many areas of the state, rock is not easily obtainable or is very expensive to haul to a site. Blankets can be delivered anywhere. Rock requires the use of dump trucks to haul and heavy equipment to place. Blankets usually only require laborers with hand tools, and sometimes a backhoe.
- The Federal Highway Administration recommends not using flexible liners whenever the slope exceeds 10 percent or the shear stress exceeds 8 lbs/ft^2.

Design and Installation Specifications

See BMP C122 for information on blankets.

Since riprap is used where erosion potential is high, construction must be sequenced so that the riprap is put in place with the minimum possible delay.

- Disturbance of areas where riprap is to be placed should be undertaken only when final preparation and placement of the riprap can follow immediately behind the initial disturbance. Where riprap is used for outlet protection, the riprap should be placed before or in conjunction with the construction of the pipe or channel so that it is in place when the pipe or channel begins to operate.
- The designer, after determining the riprap size that will be stable under the flow conditions, shall consider that size to be a minimum size and then, based on riprap gradations actually available in the area, select the size or sizes that equal or exceed the minimum size. The possibility of drainage structure damage by children shall be considered in selecting a riprap size, especially if there is nearby water or a gully in which to toss the stones.
- Stone for riprap shall consist of field stone or quarry stone of approximately rectangular shape. The stone shall be hard and angular

and of such quality that it will not disintegrate on exposure to water or weathering and it shall be suitable in all respects for the purpose intended.

- A lining of engineering filter fabric (geotextile) shall be placed between the riprap and the underlying soil surface to prevent soil movement into or through the riprap. The geotextile should be keyed in at the top of the bank.
- Filter fabric shall not be used on slopes greater than 1-1/2H:1V as slippage may occur. It should be used in conjunction with a layer of coarse aggregate (granular filter blanket) when the riprap to be placed is 12 inches and larger.

BMP C203: Water Bars

Purpose

A small ditch or ridge of material is constructed diagonally across a road or right-of-way to divert stormwater runoff from the road surface, wheel tracks, or a shallow road ditch. See Figure 4.2.3.

Conditions of use

Clearing right-of-way and construction of access for power lines, pipelines, and other similar installations often require long narrow right-of-ways over sloping terrain. Disturbance and compaction promotes gully formation in these cleared strips by increasing the volume and velocity of runoff. Gully formation may be especially severe in tire tracks and ruts. To prevent gullying, runoff can often be diverted across the width of the right-of-way to undisturbed areas by using small predesigned diversions.

- Give special consideration to each individual outlet area, as well as to the cumulative effect of added diversions. Use gravel to stabilize the diversion where significant vehicular traffic is anticipated.

Design and Installation Specifications

Height: 8-inch minimum measured from the channel bottom to the ridge top.

- Side slope of channel: 2H:1V maximum; 3H:1V or flatter when vehicles will cross.
- Base width of ridge: 6-inch minimum.
- Locate them to use natural drainage systems and to discharge into well vegetated stable areas.
- Guideline for Spacing:

Slope %	Spacing (ft)
< 5	125
5 - 10	100
10 - 20	75
20 - 35	50
> 35	Use rock lined ditch

- Grade of water bar and angle: Select angle that results in ditch slope less than 2 percent.
- Install as soon as the clearing and grading is complete. Reconstruct when construction is complete on a section when utilities are being installed.
- Compact the ridge when installed.
- Stabilize, seed, and mulch the portions that are not subject to traffic. Gravel the areas crossed by vehicles.

Maintenance Standards

Periodically inspect right-of-way diversions for wear and after every heavy rainfall for erosion damage.

- Immediately remove sediment from the flow area and repair the dike.
- Check outlet areas and make timely repairs as needed.
- When permanent road drainage is established and the area above the temporary right-of-way diversion is permanently stabilized, remove the dikes and fill the channel to blend with the natural ground, and appropriately stabilize the disturbed area.

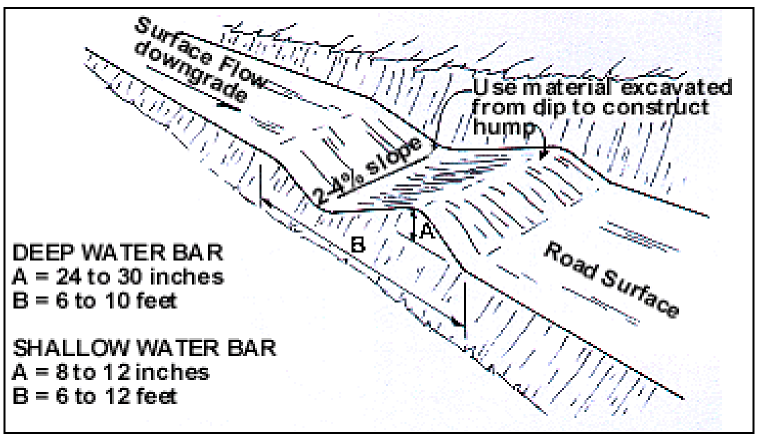


Figure 4.2.3 – Water Bar

BMP C204: Pipe Slope Drains

Purpose To use a pipe to convey stormwater anytime water needs to be diverted away from or over bare soil to prevent gullies, channel erosion, and saturation of slide-prone soils.

Conditions of Use Pipe slope drains should be used when a temporary or permanent stormwater conveyance is needed to move the water down a steep slope to avoid erosion (Figure 4.2.4).

On highway projects, pipe slope drains should be used at bridge ends to collect runoff and pipe it to the base of the fill slopes along bridge approaches. These can be designed into a project and included as bid items. Another use on road projects is to collect runoff from pavement and pipe it away from side slopes. These are useful because there is generally a time lag between having the first lift of asphalt installed and the curbs, gutters, and permanent drainage installed. Used in conjunction with sand bags, or other temporary diversion devices, these will prevent massive amounts of sediment from leaving a project.

Water can be collected, channeled with sand bags, Triangular Silt Dikes, berms, or other material, and piped to temporary sediment ponds.

Pipe slope drains can be:

- Connected to new catch basins and used temporarily until all permanent piping is installed;
- Used to drain water collected from aquifers exposed on cut slopes and take it to the base of the slope;
- Used to collect clean runoff from plastic sheeting and direct it away from exposed soil;
- Installed in conjunction with silt fence to drain collected water to a controlled area;
- Used to divert small seasonal streams away from construction. They have been used successfully on culvert replacement and extension jobs. Large flex pipe can be used on larger streams during culvert removal, repair, or replacement; and,
- Connected to existing down spouts and roof drains and used to divert water away from work areas during building renovation, demolition, and construction projects.

There are now several commercially available collectors that are attached to the pipe inlet and help prevent erosion at the inlet.

Design and Installation Specifications

Size the pipe to convey the flow. The capacity for temporary drains shall be sufficient to handle the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from a 10-year, 24-hour storm event, assuming a Type 1A rainfall distribution. Alternatively, use 1.6 times the 10-year, 1-hour flow indicated by an approved continuous runoff model.

Consult local drainage requirements for sizing permanent pipe slope drains.

- Use care in clearing vegetated slopes for installation.
- Re-establish cover immediately on areas disturbed by installation.
- Use temporary drains on new cut or fill slopes.
- Use diversion dikes or swales to collect water at the top of the slope.
- Ensure that the entrance area is stable and large enough to direct flow into the pipe.
- Piping of water through the berm at the entrance area is a common failure mode.
- The entrance shall consist of a standard flared end section for culverts 12 inches and larger with a minimum 6-inch metal toe plate to prevent runoff from undercutting the pipe inlet. The slope of the entrance shall be at least 3 percent. Sand bags may also be used at pipe entrances as a temporary measure.
- The soil around and under the pipe and entrance section shall be thoroughly compacted to prevent undercutting.
- The flared inlet section shall be securely connected to the slope drain and have watertight connecting bands.
- Slope drain sections shall be securely fastened together, fused or have gasketed watertight fittings, and shall be securely anchored into the soil.
- Thrust blocks should be installed anytime 90 degree bends are utilized. Depending on size of pipe and flow, these can be constructed with sand bags, straw bales staked in place, “t” posts and wire, or ecology blocks.
- Pipe needs to be secured along its full length to prevent movement. This can be done with steel “t” posts and wire. A post is installed on each side of the pipe and the pipe is wired to them. This should be done every 10-20 feet of pipe length or so, depending on the size of the pipe and quantity of water to divert.
- Interceptor dikes shall be used to direct runoff into a slope drain. The height of the dike shall be at least 1 foot higher at all points than the top of the inlet pipe.
- The area below the outlet must be stabilized with a riprap apron (see BMP C209 Outlet Protection, for the appropriate outlet material).

- If the pipe slope drain is conveying sediment-laden water, direct all flows into the sediment trapping facility.
- Materials specifications for any permanent piped system shall be set by the local government.

Maintenance Standards

Check inlet and outlet points regularly, especially after storms.

The inlet should be free of undercutting, and no water should be going around the point of entry. If there are problems, the headwall should be reinforced with compacted earth or sand bags.

- The outlet point should be free of erosion and installed with appropriate outlet protection.
- For permanent installations, inspect pipe periodically for vandalism and physical distress such as slides and wind-throw.
- Normally the pipe slope is so steep that clogging is not a problem with smooth wall pipe, however, debris may become lodged in the pipe.

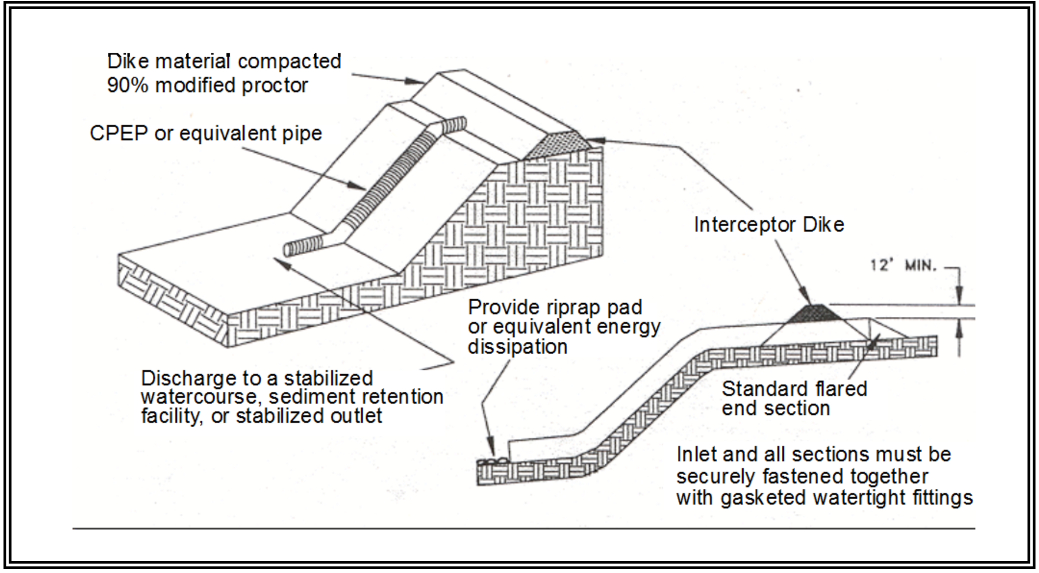


Figure 4.2.4 – Pipe Slope Drain

BMP C205: Subsurface Drains

Purpose

To intercept, collect, and convey ground water to a satisfactory outlet, using a perforated pipe or conduit below the ground surface. Subsurface drains are also known as “french drains.” The perforated pipe provides a dewatering mechanism to drain excessively wet soils, provide a stable base for construction, improve stability of structures with shallow foundations, or to reduce hydrostatic pressure to improve slope stability.

Conditions of Use

Use when excessive water must be removed from the soil. The soil permeability, depth to water table and impervious layers are all factors which may govern the use of subsurface drains.

Design and Installation Specifications

Relief drains are used either to lower the water table in large, relatively flat areas, improve the growth of vegetation, or to remove surface water.

Relief drains are installed along a slope and drain in the direction of the slope.

They can be installed in a grid pattern, a herringbone pattern, or a random pattern.

- **Interceptor drains** are used to remove excess ground water from a slope, stabilize steep slopes, and lower the water table immediately below a slope to prevent the soil from becoming saturated.

Interceptor drains are installed perpendicular to a slope and drain to the side of the slope.

They usually consist of a single pipe or series of single pipes instead of a patterned layout.

- **Depth and spacing of interceptor drains** --The depth of an interceptor drain is determined primarily by the depth to which the water table is to be lowered or the depth to a confining layer. For practical reasons, the maximum depth is usually limited to 6 feet, with a minimum cover of 2 feet to protect the conduit.
- The soil should have depth and sufficient permeability to permit installation of an effective drainage system at a depth of 2 to 6 feet.
- An adequate outlet for the drainage system must be available either by gravity or by pumping.
- The quantity and quality of discharge needs to be accounted for in the receiving stream (additional detention may be required).
- This standard does not apply to subsurface drains for building foundations or deep excavations.
- The capacity of an interceptor drain is determined by calculating the maximum rate of ground water flow to be intercepted. Therefore, it is

good practice to make complete subsurface investigations, including hydraulic conductivity of the soil, before designing a subsurface drainage system.

- **Size of drain**--Size subsurface drains to carry the required capacity without pressure flow. Minimum diameter for a subsurface drain is 4 inches.
- The minimum velocity required to prevent silting is 1.4 ft./sec. The line shall be graded to achieve this velocity at a minimum. The maximum allowable velocity using a sand-gravel filter or envelope is 9 ft/sec.
- Filter material and fabric shall be used around all drains for proper bedding and filtration of fine materials. Envelopes and filters should surround the drain to a minimum of 3-inch thickness.
- The outlet of the subsurface drain shall empty into a sediment pond through a catch basin. If free of sediment, it can then empty into a receiving channel, swale, or stable vegetated area adequately protected from erosion and undermining.
- The trench shall be constructed on a continuous grade with no reverse grades or low spots.
- Soft or yielding soils under the drain shall be stabilized with gravel or other suitable material.
- Backfilling shall be done immediately after placement of the pipe. No sections of pipe shall remain uncovered overnight or during a rainstorm. Backfill material shall be placed in the trench in such a manner that the drain pipe is not displaced or damaged.
- Do not install permanent drains near trees to avoid the tree roots that tend to clog the line. Use solid pipe with watertight connections where it is necessary to pass a subsurface drainage system through a stand of trees.
- **Outlet**--Ensure that the outlet of a drain empties into a channel or other watercourse above the normal water level.
- Secure an animal guard to the outlet end of the pipe to keep out rodents.
- Use outlet pipe of corrugated metal, cast iron, or heavy-duty plastic without perforations and at least 10 feet long. Do not use an envelope or filter material around the outlet pipe, and bury at least two-thirds of the pipe length.
- When outlet velocities exceed those allowable for the receiving stream, outlet protection must be provided.

Maintenance Standards

Subsurface drains shall be checked periodically to ensure that they are free-flowing and not clogged with sediment or roots.

- The outlet shall be kept clean and free of debris.
- Surface inlets shall be kept open and free of sediment and other debris.
- Trees located too close to a subsurface drain often clog the system with their roots. If a drain becomes clogged, relocate the drain or remove the trees as a last resort. Drain placement should be planned to minimize this problem.
- Where drains are crossed by heavy vehicles, the line shall be checked to ensure that it is not crushed.

BMP C206: Level Spreader

Purpose

To provide a temporary outlet for dikes and diversions consisting of an excavated depression constructed at zero grade across a slope. To convert concentrated runoff to sheet flow and release it onto areas stabilized by existing vegetation or an engineered filter strip.

Conditions of Use

Used when a concentrated flow of water needs to be dispersed over a large area with existing stable vegetation.

- Items to consider are:
    1. What is the risk of erosion or damage if the flow may become concentrated?
    2. Is an easement required if discharged to adjoining property?
    3. Most of the flow should be as ground water and not as surface flow.
    4. Is there an unstable area downstream that cannot accept additional ground water?
- Use only where the slopes are gentle, the water volume is relatively low, and the soil will adsorb most of the low flow events.

Design and Installation Specifications

Use above undisturbed areas that are stabilized by existing vegetation.

If the level spreader has any low points, flow will concentrate, create channels and may cause erosion.

- Discharge area below the outlet must be uniform with a slope flatter than 5H:1V.
- Outlet to be constructed level in a stable, undisturbed soil profile (not on fill).
- The runoff shall not re-concentrate after release unless intercepted by another downstream measure.

- The grade of the channel for the last 20 feet of the dike or interceptor entering the level spreader shall be less than or equal to 1 percent. The grade of the level spreader shall be 0 percent to ensure uniform spreading of storm runoff.
- A 6-inch high gravel berm placed across the level lip shall consist of washed crushed rock, 2- to 4-inch or 3/4-inch to 1½-inch size.
- The spreader length shall be determined by estimating the peak flow expected from the 10-year, 24-hour design storm. The length of the spreader shall be a minimum of 15 feet for 0.1 cfs and shall increase by 10 feet for each 0.1 cfs thereafter to a maximum of 0.5 cfs per spreader. Use multiple spreaders for higher flows.
- The width of the spreader should be at least 6 feet.
- The depth of the spreader as measured from the lip should be at least 6 inches and it should be uniform across the entire length.
- Level spreaders shall be setback from the property line unless there is an easement for flow.
- Level spreaders, when installed every so often in grassy swales, keep the flows from concentrating. Materials that can be used include sand bags, lumber, logs, concrete, and pipe. To function properly, the material needs to be installed level and on contour. Figures 4.2.5Figure425 and 4.2.6 provide a cross-section and a detail of a level spreader. A capped perforated pipe could also be used as a spreader.

Maintenance Standards

The spreader should be inspected after every runoff event to ensure that it is functioning correctly.

- The contractor should avoid the placement of any material on the structure and should prevent construction traffic from crossing over the structure.
- If the spreader is damaged by construction traffic, it shall be immediately repaired.

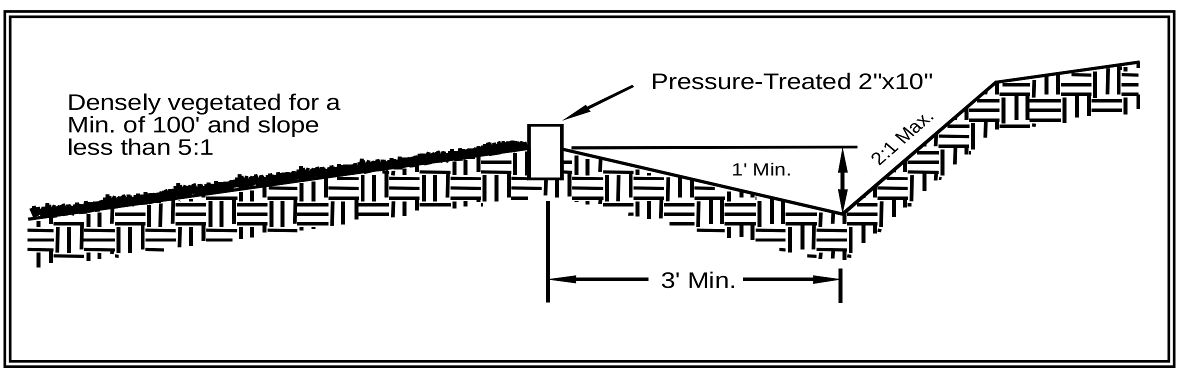


Figure 4.2.5 – Cross Section of Level Spreader

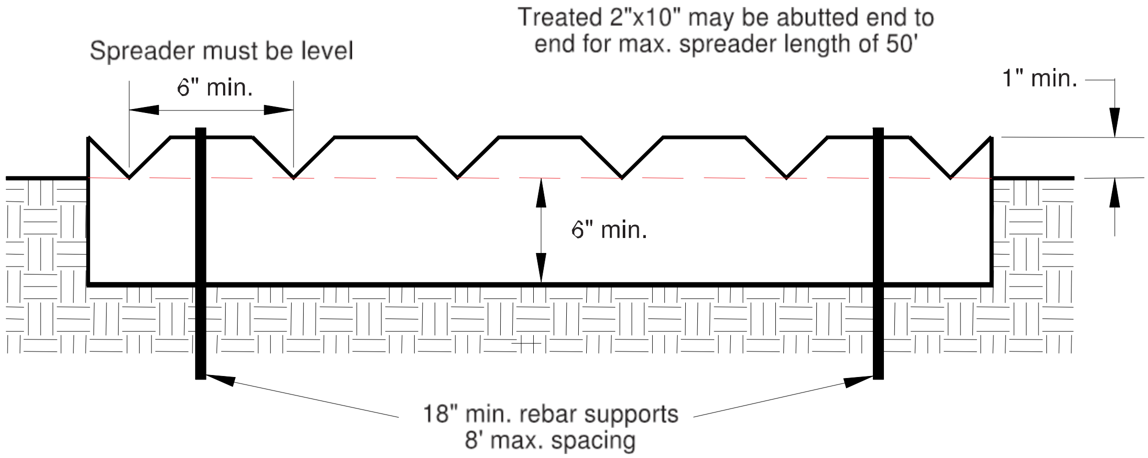


Figure 4.2.6 – Detail of Level Spreader

BMP C207: Check Dams

Purpose Construction of small dams across a swale or ditch reduces the velocity of concentrated flow and dissipates energy at the check dam.

Conditions of Use Where temporary channels or permanent channels are not yet vegetated, channel lining is infeasible, and/or velocity checks are required.

- Check dams may not be placed in streams unless approved by the State Department of Fish and Wildlife. Check dams may not be placed in wetlands without approval from a permitting agency.
- Do not place check dams below the expected backwater from any salmonid bearing water between October 1 and May 31 to ensure that there is no loss of high flow refuge habitat for overwintering juvenile salmonids and emergent salmonid fry.
- Construct rock check dams from appropriately sized rock. The rock used must be large enough to stay in place given the expected design flow through the channel. The rock must be placed by hand or by mechanical means (no dumping of rock to form dam) to achieve complete coverage of the ditch or swale and to ensure that the center of the dam is lower than the edges.
- Check dams may also be constructed of either rock or pea-gravel filled bags. Numerous new products are also available for this purpose. They tend to be re-usable, quick and easy to install, effective, and cost efficient.
- Place check dams perpendicular to the flow of water.
- The dam should form a triangle when viewed from the side. This prevents undercutting as water flows over the face of the dam rather than falling directly onto the ditch bottom.

- Before installing check dams impound and bypass upstream water flow away from the work area. Options for bypassing include pumps, siphons, or temporary channels.
- Check dams in association with sumps work more effectively at slowing flow and retaining sediment than just a check dam alone. A deep sump should be provided immediately upstream of the check dam.
- In some cases, if carefully located and designed, check dams can remain as permanent installations with very minor regrading. They may be left as either spillways, in which case accumulated sediment would be graded and seeded, or as check dams to prevent further sediment from leaving the site.
- The maximum spacing between the dams shall be such that the toe of the upstream dam is at the same elevation as the top of the downstream dam.
- Keep the maximum height at 2 feet at the center of the dam.
- Keep the center of the check dam at least 12 inches lower than the outer edges at natural ground elevation.
- Keep the side slopes of the check dam at 2H:1V or flatter.
- Key the stone into the ditch banks and extend it beyond the abutments a minimum of 18 inches to avoid washouts from overflow around the dam.
- Use filter fabric foundation under a rock or sand bag check dam. If a blanket ditch liner is used, filter fabric is not necessary. A piece of organic or synthetic blanket cut to fit will also work for this purpose.
- In the case of grass-lined ditches and swales, all check dams and accumulated sediment shall be removed when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale - unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. The area beneath the check dams shall be seeded and mulched immediately after dam removal.
- Ensure that channel appurtenances, such as culvert entrances below check dams, are not subject to damage or blockage from displaced stones. Figure 4.2.7 depicts a typical rock check dam.

Maintenance Standards

Check dams shall be monitored for performance and sediment accumulation during and after each runoff producing rainfall. Sediment shall be removed when it reaches one half the sump depth.

- Anticipate submergence and deposition above the check dam and erosion from high flows around the edges of the dam.
- If significant erosion occurs between dams, install a protective riprap liner in that portion of the channel.

Approved as Equivalent

Ecology has approved products as able to meet the requirements of BMP C207. The products did not pass through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept this product approved as equivalent, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local use. The products are available for review on Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/equivalent.html

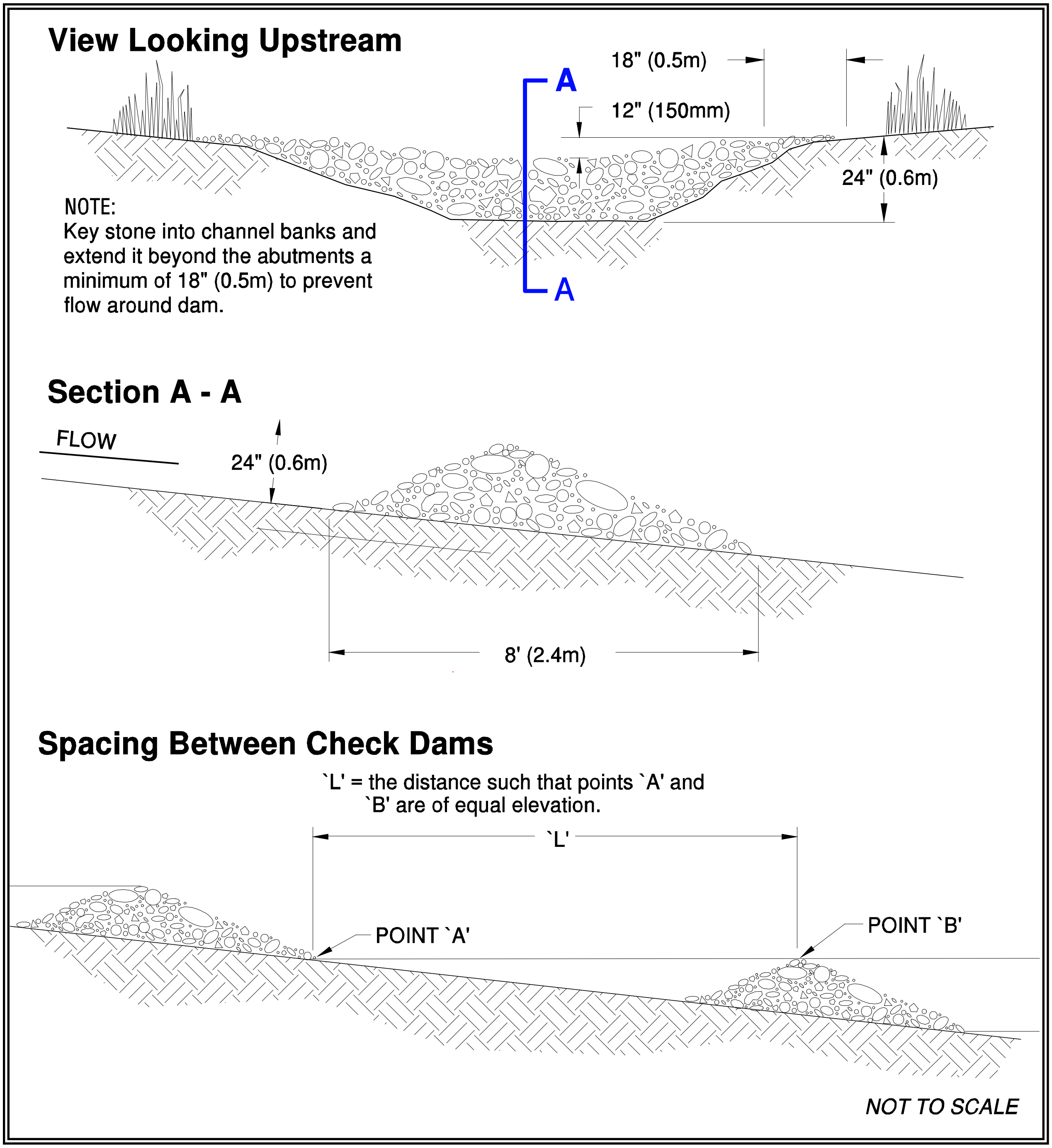


Figure 4.2.7 – Rock Check Dam

BMP C208: Triangular Silt Dike (TSD) (Geotextile-Encased Check Dam)

Purpose

Triangular silt dikes may be used as check dams, for perimeter protection, for temporary soil stockpile protection, for drop inlet protection, or as a temporary interceptor dike.

Conditions of use

- May be used on soil or pavement with adhesive or staples.
- TSDs have been used to build temporary:
  1. sediment ponds;
  2. diversion ditches;
  3. concrete wash out facilities;
  4. curbing;
  5. water bars;
  6. level spreaders; and,
  7. berms.

Design and Installation Specifications

Made of urethane foam sewn into a woven geosynthetic fabric.

It is triangular, 10 inches to 14 inches high in the center, with a 20-inch to 28-inch base. A 2–foot apron extends beyond both sides of the triangle along its standard section of 7 feet. A sleeve at one end allows attachment of additional sections as needed.

- Install with ends curved up to prevent water from flowing around the ends.
- The fabric flaps and check dam units are attached to the ground with wire staples. Wire staples should be No. 11 gauge wire and should be 200 mm to 300 mm in length.
- When multiple units are installed, the sleeve of fabric at the end of the unit shall overlap the abutting unit and be stapled.
- Check dams should be located and installed as soon as construction will allow.
- Check dams should be placed perpendicular to the flow of water.
- When used as check dams, the leading edge must be secured with rocks, sandbags, or a small key slot and staples.
- In the case of grass-lined ditches and swales, check dams and accumulated sediment shall be removed when the grass has matured sufficiently to protect the ditch or swale unless the slope of the swale is greater than 4 percent. The area beneath the check dams shall be seeded and mulched immediately after dam removal.

Maintenance

- Triangular silt dams shall be inspected for performance and sediment

Standards

accumulation during and after each runoff producing rainfall. Sediment shall be removed when it reaches one half the height of the dam.

- Anticipate submergence and deposition above the triangular silt dam and erosion from high flows around the edges of the dam. Immediately repair any damage or any undercutting of the dam.

BMP C209: Outlet Protection

Purpose

Outlet protection prevents scour at conveyance outlets and minimizes the potential for downstream erosion by reducing the velocity of concentrated stormwater flows.

Conditions of use

Outlet protection is required at the outlets of all ponds, pipes, ditches, or other conveyances, and where runoff is conveyed to a natural or manmade drainage feature such as a stream, wetland, lake, or ditch.

Design and Installation Specifications

The receiving channel at the outlet of a culvert shall be protected from erosion by rock lining a minimum of 6 feet downstream and extending up the channel sides a minimum of 1–foot above the maximum tailwater elevation or 1-foot above the crown, whichever is higher. For large pipes (more than 18 inches in diameter), the outlet protection lining of the channel is lengthened to four times the diameter of the culvert.

- Standard wingwalls, and tapered outlets and paved channels should also be considered when appropriate for permanent culvert outlet protection. (See WSDOT Hydraulic Manual, available through WSDOT Engineering Publications).
- Organic or synthetic erosion blankets, with or without vegetation, are usually more effective than rock, cheaper, and easier to install. Materials can be chosen using manufacturer product specifications. ASTM test results are available for most products and the designer can choose the correct material for the expected flow.
- With low flows, vegetation (including sod) can be effective.
- The following guidelines shall be used for riprap outlet protection:
    1. If the discharge velocity at the outlet is less than 5 fps (pipe slope less than 1 percent), use 2-inch to 8-inch riprap. Minimum thickness is 1-foot.
    2. For 5 to 10 fps discharge velocity at the outlet (pipe slope less than 3 percent), use 24-inch to 48-inch riprap. Minimum thickness is 2 feet.
    3. For outlets at the base of steep slope pipes (pipe slope greater than 10 percent), an engineered energy dissipater shall be used.
- Filter fabric or erosion control blankets should always be used under riprap to prevent scour and channel erosion.

- New pipe outfalls can provide an opportunity for low-cost fish habitat improvements. For example, an alcove of low-velocity water can be created by constructing the pipe outfall and associated energy dissipater back from the stream edge and digging a channel, over-widened to the upstream side, from the outfall. Overwintering juvenile and migrating adult salmonids may use the alcove as shelter during high flows. Bank stabilization, bioengineering, and habitat features may be required for disturbed areas. This work may require a HPA. See Volume V for more information on outfall system design.

Maintenance Standards

- Inspect and repair as needed.
- Add rock as needed to maintain the intended function.
- Clean energy dissipater if sediment builds up.

BMP C220: Storm Drain Inlet Protection

Purpose

Storm drain inlet protection prevents coarse sediment from entering drainage systems prior to permanent stabilization of the disturbed area.

Conditions of Use

Use storm drain inlet protection at inlets that are operational before permanent stabilization of the disturbed drainage area. Provide protection for all storm drain inlets downslope and within 500 feet of a disturbed or construction area, unless conveying runoff entering catch basins to a sediment pond or trap.

Also consider inlet protection for lawn and yard drains on new home construction. These small and numerous drains coupled with lack of gutters in new home construction can add significant amounts of sediment into the roof drain system. If possible delay installing lawn and yard drains until just before landscaping or cap these drains to prevent sediment from entering the system until completion of landscaping. Provide 18-inches of sod around each finished lawn and yard drain.

Table 4.2.2 lists several options for inlet protection. All of the methods for storm drain inlet protection tend to plug and require a high frequency of maintenance. Limit drainage areas to one acre or less. Possibly provide emergency overflows with additional end-of-pipe treatment where stormwater ponding would cause a hazard.

Table 4.2.2
Storm Drain Inlet Protection

Type of Inlet Protection	Emergency Overflow	Applicable for Paved/ Earthen Surfaces	Conditions of Use
Drop Inlet Protection			
Excavated drop inlet protection	Yes, temporary flooding will occur	Earthen	Applicable for heavy flows. Easy to maintain. Large area Requirement: 30' X 30'/acre
Block and gravel drop inlet protection	Yes	Paved or Earthen	Applicable for heavy concentrated flows. Will not pond.
Gravel and wire drop inlet protection	No		Applicable for heavy concentrated flows. Will pond. Can withstand traffic.
Catch basin filters	Yes	Paved or Earthen	Frequent maintenance required.
Curb Inlet Protection			
Curb inlet protection with a wooden weir	Small capacity overflow	Paved	Used for sturdy, more compact installation.
Block and gravel curb inlet protection	Yes	Paved	Sturdy, but limited filtration.
Culvert Inlet Protection			
Culvert inlet sediment trap			18 month expected life.

Design and Installation Specifications

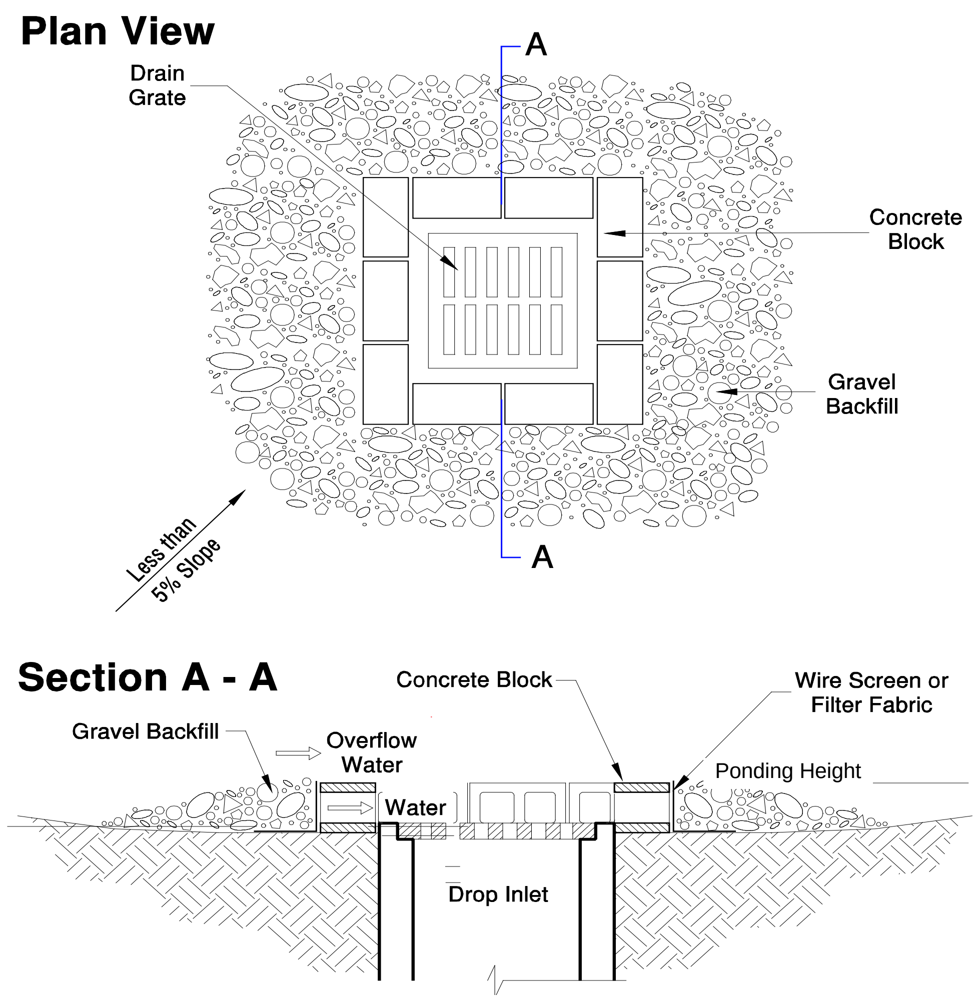
Excavated Drop Inlet Protection - An excavated impoundment around the storm drain. Sediment settles out of the stormwater prior to entering the storm drain.

- Provide a depth of 1-2 ft as measured from the crest of the inlet structure.
- Slope sides of excavation no steeper than 2H:1V.
- Minimum volume of excavation 35 cubic yards.
- Shape basin to fit site with longest dimension oriented toward the longest inflow area.
- Install provisions for draining to prevent standing water problems.
- Clear the area of all debris.
- Grade the approach to the inlet uniformly.
- Drill weep holes into the side of the inlet.
- Protect weep holes with screen wire and washed aggregate.
- Seal weep holes when removing structure and stabilizing area.

- Build a temporary dike, if necessary, to the down slope side of the structure to prevent bypass flow.

Block and Gravel Filter - A barrier formed around the storm drain inlet with standard concrete blocks and gravel. See Figure 4.2.8.

- Provide a height of 1 to 2 feet above inlet.
- Recess the first row 2-inches into the ground for stability.
- Support subsequent courses by placing a 2x4 through the block opening.
- Do not use mortar.
- Lay some blocks in the bottom row on their side for dewatering the pool.
- Place hardware cloth or comparable wire mesh with ½-inch openings over all block openings.
- Place gravel just below the top of blocks on slopes of 2H:1V or flatter.
- An alternative design is a gravel donut.
- Provide an inlet slope of 3H:1V.
- Provide an outlet slope of 2H:1V.
- Provide a1-foot wide level stone area between the structure and the inlet.
- Use inlet slope stones 3 inches in diameter or larger.
- Use gravel ½- to ¾-inch at a minimum thickness of 1-foot for the outlet slope.



Notes:
1. Drop inlet sediment barriers are to be used for small, nearly level drainage areas. (less than 5%)
2. Excavate a basin of sufficient size adjacent to the drop inlet.
3. The top of the structure (ponding height) must be well below the ground elevation downslope to prevent runoff from bypassing the inlet. A temporary dike may be necessary on the downslope side of the structure.

Figure 4.2.8 – Block and Gravel Filter

Gravel and Wire Mesh Filter - A gravel barrier placed over the top of the inlet. This structure does not provide an overflow.

- Use a hardware cloth or comparable wire mesh with ½-inch openings.
- Use coarse aggregate.
- Provide a height 1-foot or more, 18-inches wider than inlet on all sides.
- Place wire mesh over the drop inlet so that the wire extends a minimum of 1-foot beyond each side of the inlet structure.
- Overlap the strips if more than one strip of mesh is necessary.

- Place coarse aggregate over the wire mesh.
- Provide at least a 12-inch depth of gravel over the entire inlet opening and extend at least 18-inches on all sides.

Catchbasin Filters – Use inserts designed by manufacturers for construction sites. The limited sediment storage capacity increases the amount of inspection and maintenance required, which may be daily for heavy sediment loads. To reduce maintenance requirements combine a catchbasin filter with another type of inlet protection. This type of inlet protection provides flow bypass without overflow and therefore may be a better method for inlets located along active rights-of-way.

- Provides 5 cubic feet of storage.
- Requires dewatering provisions.
- Provides a high-flow bypass that will not clog under normal use at a construction site.
- Insert the catchbasin filter in the catchbasin just below the grating.

Curb Inlet Protection with Wooden Weir – Barrier formed around a curb inlet with a wooden frame and gravel.

- Use wire mesh with ½-inch openings.
- Use extra strength filter cloth.
- Construct a frame.
- Attach the wire and filter fabric to the frame.
- Pile coarse washed aggregate against wire/fabric.
- Place weight on frame anchors.

Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Protection – Barrier formed around a curb inlet with concrete blocks and gravel. See Figure 4.2.9.

- Use wire mesh with ½-inch openings.
- Place two concrete blocks on their sides abutting the curb at either side of the inlet opening. These are spacer blocks.
- Place a 2x4 stud through the outer holes of each spacer block to align the front blocks.
- Place blocks on their sides across the front of the inlet and abutting the spacer blocks.
- Place wire mesh over the outside vertical face.
- Pile coarse aggregate against the wire to the top of the barrier.

Curb and Gutter Sediment Barrier – Sandbag or rock berm (riprap and aggregate) 3 feet high and 3 feet wide in a horseshoe shape. See Figure 4.2.10.

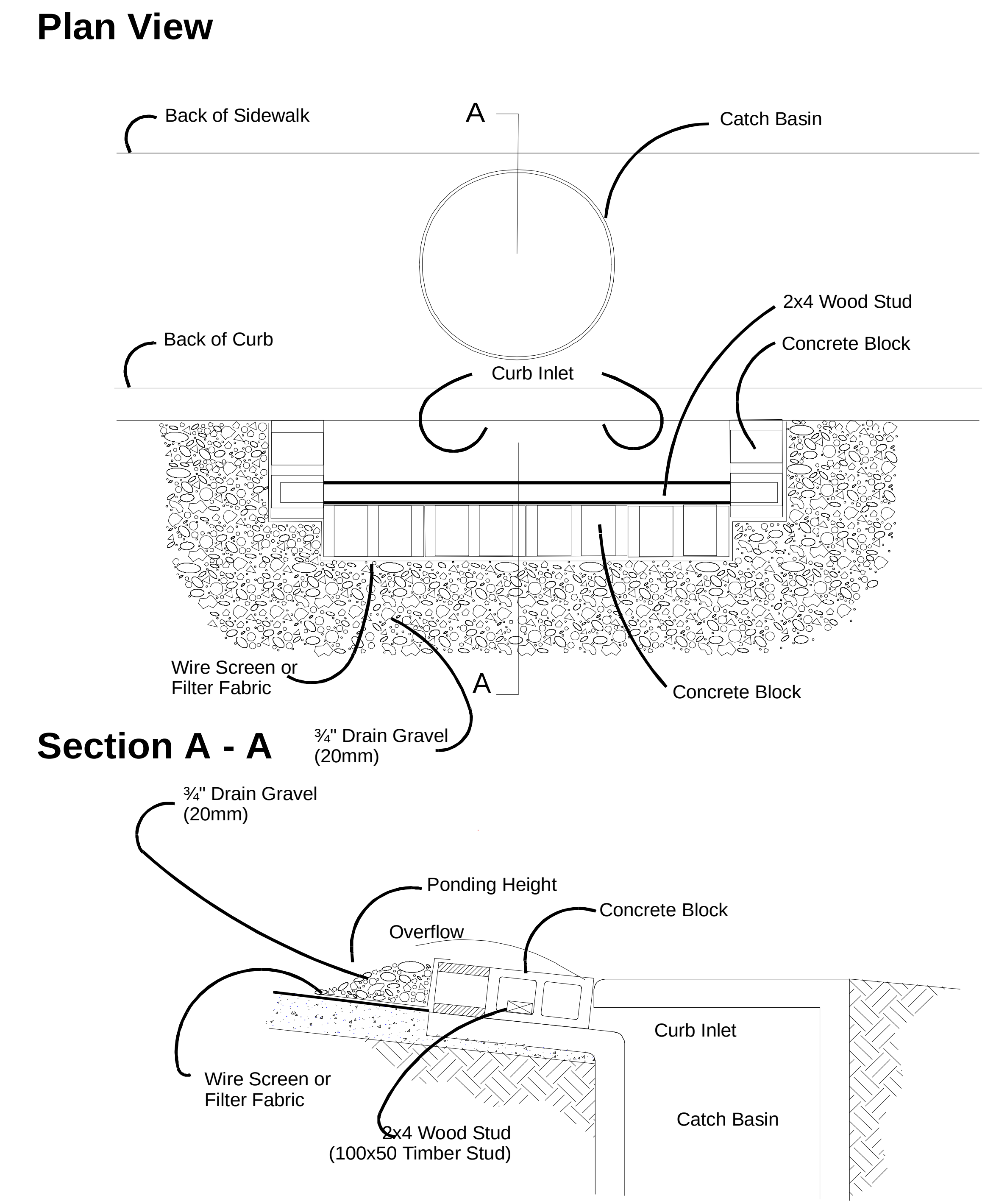
- Construct a horseshoe shaped berm, faced with coarse aggregate if using riprap, 3 feet high and 3 feet wide, at least 2 feet from the inlet.
- Construct a horseshoe shaped sedimentation trap on the outside of the berm sized to sediment trap standards for protecting a culvert inlet.

Maintenance Standards

- Inspect catch basin filters frequently, especially after storm events. Clean and replace clogged inserts. For systems with clogged stone filters: pull away the stones from the inlet and clean or replace. An alternative approach would be to use the clogged stone as fill and put fresh stone around the inlet.
- Do not wash sediment into storm drains while cleaning. Spread all excavated material evenly over the surrounding land area or stockpile and stabilize as appropriate.

Approved as Equivalent

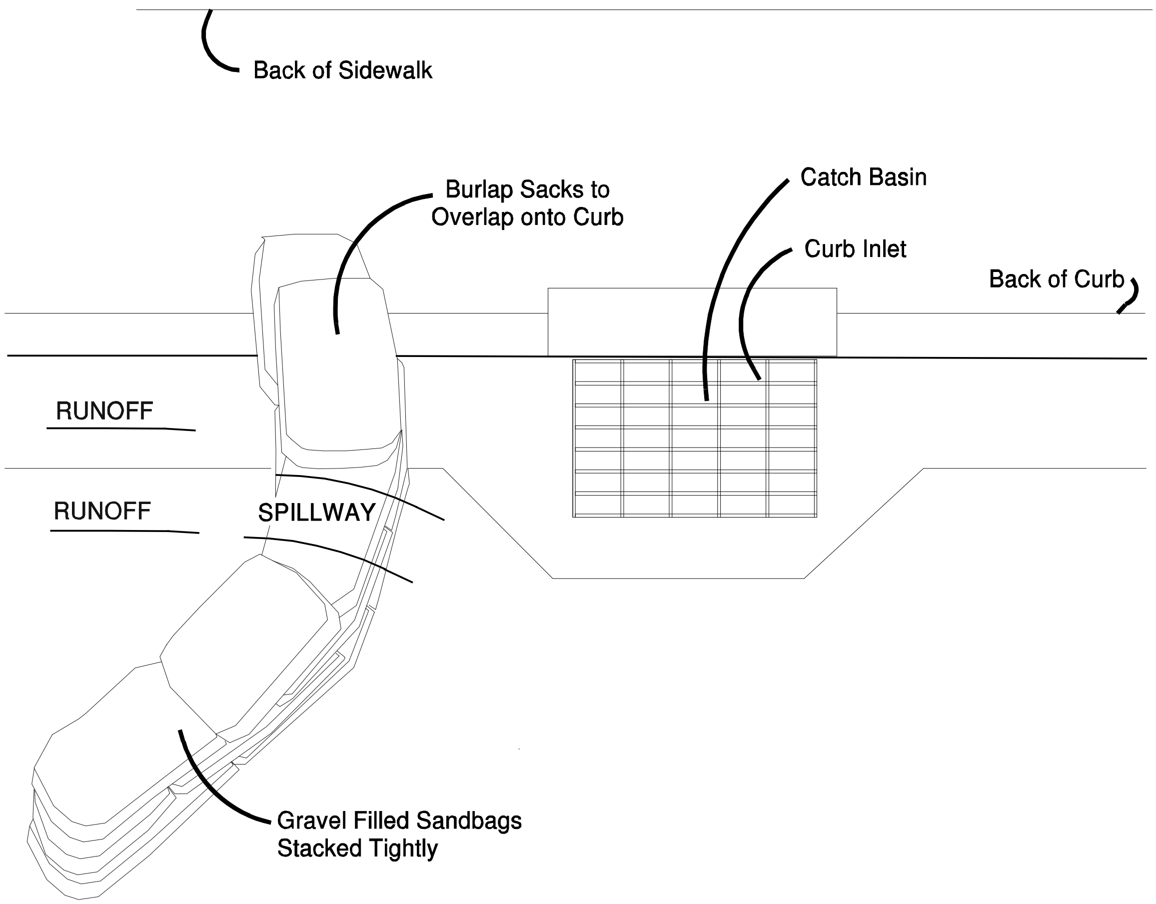
Ecology has approved products as able to meet the requirements of BMP C220. The products did not pass through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept this product approved as equivalent, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local use. The products are available for review on Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/equivalent.html



NOTES:
1. Use block and gravel type sediment barrier when curb inlet is located in gently sloping street segment, where water can pond and allow sediment to separate from runoff.
2. Barrier shall allow for overflow from severe storm event.
3. Inspect barriers and remove sediment after each storm event. Sediment and gravel must be removed from the traveled way immediately.

Figure 4.2.9 – Block and Gravel Curb Inlet Protection

Plan View



NOTES:

1. Place curb type sediment barriers on gently sloping street segments, where water can pond and allow sediment to separate from runoff.
2. Sandbags of either burlap or woven `geotextile' fabric, are filled with gravel, layered and packed tightly.
3. Leave a one sandbag gap in the top row to provide a spillway for overflow.
4. Inspect barriers and remove sediment after each storm event. Sediment and gravel must be removed from the traveled way immediately.

Figure 4.2.10 – Curb and Gutter Barrier

BMP C231: Brush Barrier

Purpose

The purpose of brush barriers is to reduce the transport of coarse sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow.

Conditions of Use

- Brush barriers may be used downslope of all disturbed areas of less than one-quarter acre.
- Brush barriers are not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor are they intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Any concentrated flows must be conveyed through the drainage system to a sediment pond. The only circumstance in which overland flow can be treated solely by a brush barrier, rather than by a sediment pond, is when the area draining to the barrier is small.
- Brush barriers should only be installed on contours.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Height 2 feet (minimum) to 5 feet (maximum).
- Width 5 feet at base (minimum) to 15 feet (maximum).
- Filter fabric (geotextile) may be anchored over the brush berm to enhance the filtration ability of the barrier. Ten-ounce burlap is an adequate alternative to filter fabric.
- Chipped site vegetation, composted mulch, or wood-based mulch (hog fuel) can be used to construct brush barriers.
- A 100 percent biodegradable installation can be constructed using 10-ounce burlap held in place by wooden stakes. Figure 4.2.11 depicts a typical brush barrier.

Maintenance Standards

- There shall be no signs of erosion or concentrated runoff under or around the barrier. If concentrated flows are bypassing the barrier, it must be expanded or augmented by toed-in filter fabric.
- The dimensions of the barrier must be maintained.

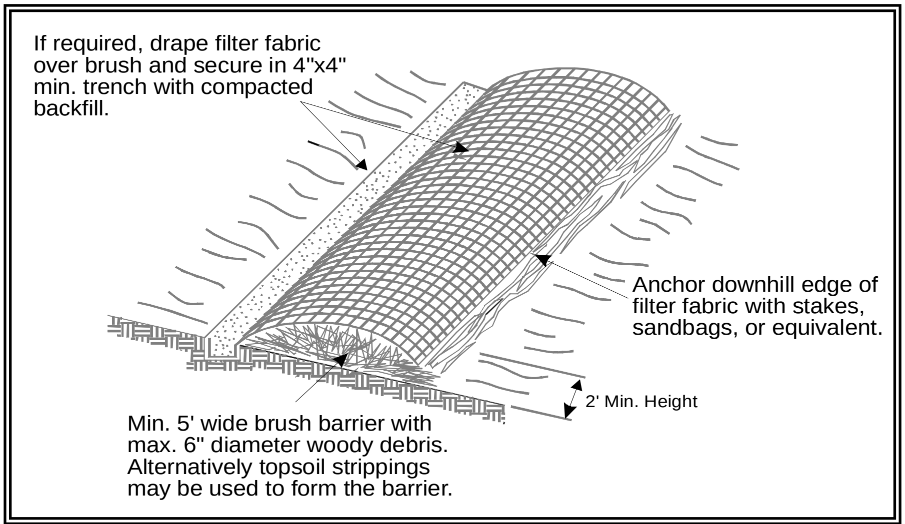


Figure 4.2.11 – Brush Barrier

BMP C232: Gravel Filter Berm

Purpose

A gravel filter berm is constructed on rights-of-way or traffic areas within a construction site to retain sediment by using a filter berm of gravel or crushed rock.

Conditions of Use

Where a temporary measure is needed to retain sediment from rights-of-way or in traffic areas on construction sites.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Berm material shall be ¾ to 3 inches in size, washed well-grade gravel or crushed rock with less than 5 percent fines.
- Spacing of berms:
  - Every 300 feet on slopes less than 5 percent
  - Every 200 feet on slopes between 5 percent and 10 percent
  - Every 100 feet on slopes greater than 10 percent
- Berm dimensions:
  - 1 foot high with 3H:1V side slopes
  - 8 linear feet per 1 cfs runoff based on the 10-year, 24-hour design storm

Maintenance Standards

- Regular inspection is required. Sediment shall be removed and filter material replaced as needed.

BMP C233: Silt Fence

Purpose

Use of a silt fence reduces the transport of coarse sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow. See Figure 4.2.12 for details on silt fence construction.

Conditions of Use

Silt fence may be used downslope of all disturbed areas.

- Silt fence shall prevent soil carried by runoff water from going beneath, through, or over the top of the silt fence, but shall allow the water to pass through the fence.
- Silt fence is not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor is it intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Convey any concentrated flows through the drainage system to a sediment pond.
- Do not construct silt fences in streams or use in V-shaped ditches. Silt fences do not provide an adequate method of silt control for anything deeper than sheet or overland flow.

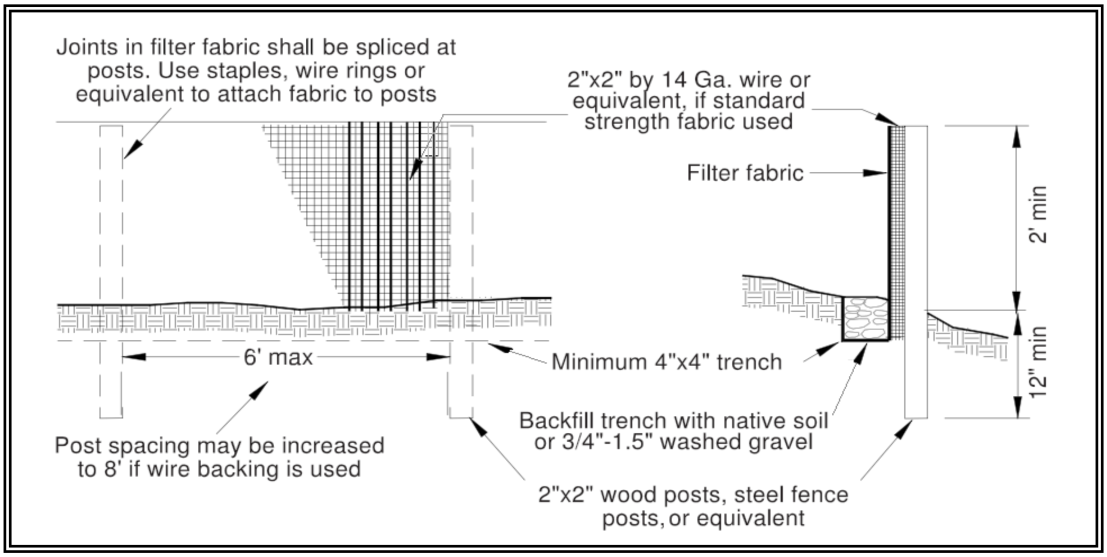


Figure 4.2.12 – Silt Fence

Design and Installation Specifications

- Use in combination with sediment basins or other BMPs.
- Maximum slope steepness (normal (perpendicular) to fence line) 1H:1V.
- Maximum sheet or overland flow path length to the fence of 100 feet.
- Do not allow flows greater than 0.5 cfs.
- The geotextile used shall meet the following standards. All geotextile properties listed below are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in Table 4.2.3):

Table 4.2.3
Geotextile Standards

Polymeric Mesh AOS (ASTM D4751)	0.60 mm maximum for slit film woven (#30 sieve). 0.30 mm maximum for all other geotextile types (#50 sieve). 0.15 mm minimum for all fabric types (#100 sieve).
Water Permittivity (ASTM D4491)	0.02 sec^{-1} minimum
Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4632)	180 lbs. Minimum for extra strength fabric. 100 lbs minimum for standard strength fabric.
Grab Tensile Strength (ASTM D4632)	30% maximum
Ultraviolet Resistance (ASTM D4355)	70% minimum

- Support standard strength fabrics with wire mesh, chicken wire, 2-inch x 2-inch wire, safety fence, or jute mesh to increase the strength of the fabric. Silt fence materials are available that have synthetic mesh backing attached.

- Filter fabric material shall contain ultraviolet ray inhibitors and stabilizers to provide a minimum of six months of expected usable construction life at a temperature range of 0°F. to 120°F.
- One-hundred percent biodegradable silt fence is available that is strong, long lasting, and can be left in place after the project is completed, if permitted by local regulations.
- Refer to Figure 4.2.12 for standard silt fence details. Include the following standard Notes for silt fence on construction plans and specifications:

  1. The contractor shall install and maintain temporary silt fences at the locations shown in the Plans.
  2. Construct silt fences in areas of clearing, grading, or drainage prior to starting those activities.
  3. The silt fence shall have a 2-feet min. and a 2½-feet max. height above the original ground surface.
  4. The filter fabric shall be sewn together at the point of manufacture to form filter fabric lengths as required. Locate all sewn seams at support posts. Alternatively, two sections of silt fence can be overlapped, provided the Contractor can demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Engineer, that the overlap is long enough and that the adjacent fence sections are close enough together to prevent silt laden water from escaping through the fence at the overlap.
  5. Attach the filter fabric on the up-slope side of the posts and secure with staples, wire, or in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Attach the filter fabric to the posts in a manner that reduces the potential for tearing.
  6. Support the filter fabric with wire or plastic mesh, dependent on the properties of the geotextile selected for use. If wire or plastic mesh is used, fasten the mesh securely to the up-slope side of the posts with the filter fabric up-slope of the mesh.
  7. Mesh support, if used, shall consist of steel wire with a maximum mesh spacing of 2-inches, or a prefabricated polymeric mesh. The strength of the wire or polymeric mesh shall be equivalent to or greater than 180 lbs. grab tensile strength. The polymeric mesh must be as resistant to the same level of ultraviolet radiation as the filter fabric it supports.
  8. Bury the bottom of the filter fabric 4-inches min. below the ground surface. Backfill and tamp soil in place over the buried portion of the filter fabric, so that no flow can pass beneath the fence and scouring cannot occur. When wire or polymeric back-up support

mesh is used, the wire or polymeric mesh shall extend into the ground 3-inches min.

9. Drive or place the fence posts into the ground 18-inches min. A 12–inch min. depth is allowed if topsoil or other soft subgrade soil is not present and 18-inches cannot be reached. Increase fence post min. depths by 6 inches if the fence is located on slopes of 3H:1V or steeper and the slope is perpendicular to the fence. If required post depths cannot be obtained, the posts shall be adequately secured by bracing or guying to prevent overturning of the fence due to sediment loading.

10. Use wood, steel or equivalent posts. The spacing of the support posts shall be a maximum of 6-feet. Posts shall consist of either:

    - Wood with dimensions of 2-inches by 2-inches wide min. and a 3-feet min. length. Wood posts shall be free of defects such as knots, splits, or gouges.
    - No. 6 steel rebar or larger.
    - ASTM A 120 steel pipe with a minimum diameter of 1-inch.
    - U, T, L, or C shape steel posts with a minimum weight of 1.35 lbs./ft.
    - Other steel posts having equivalent strength and bending resistance to the post sizes listed above.

11. Locate silt fences on contour as much as possible, except at the ends of the fence, where the fence shall be turned uphill such that the silt fence captures the runoff water and prevents water from flowing around the end of the fence.

12. If the fence must cross contours, with the exception of the ends of the fence, place gravel check dams perpendicular to the back of the fence to minimize concentrated flow and erosion. The slope of the fence line where contours must be crossed shall not be steeper than 3H:1V.

    - Gravel check dams shall be approximately 1-foot deep at the back of the fence. Gravel check dams shall be continued perpendicular to the fence at the same elevation until the top of the check dam intercepts the ground surface behind the fence.
    - Gravel check dams shall consist of crushed surfacing base course, gravel backfill for walls, or shoulder ballast. Gravel check dams shall be located every 10 feet along the fence where the fence must cross contours.

- Refer to Figure 4.2.13 for slicing method details. Silt fence installation using the slicing method specifications:

1. The base of both end posts must be at least 2- to 4-inches above the top of the filter fabric on the middle posts for ditch checks to drain properly. Use a hand level or string level, if necessary, to mark base points before installation.
2. Install posts 3- to 4-feet apart in critical retention areas and 6- to 7-feet apart in standard applications.
3. Install posts 24-inches deep on the downstream side of the silt fence, and as close as possible to the filter fabric, enabling posts to support the filter fabric from upstream water pressure.
4. Install posts with the nipples facing away from the filter fabric.
5. Attach the filter fabric to each post with three ties, all spaced within the top 8-inches of the filter fabric. Attach each tie diagonally 45 degrees through the filter fabric, with each puncture at least 1-inch vertically apart. Each tie should be positioned to hang on a post nipple when tightening to prevent sagging.
6. Wrap approximately 6-inches of fabric around the end posts and secure with 3 ties.
7. No more than 24-inches of a 36-inch filter fabric is allowed above ground level.

   Compact the soil immediately next to the filter fabric with the front wheel of the tractor, skid steer, or roller exerting at least 60 pounds per square inch. Compact the upstream side first and then each side twice for a total of four trips. Check and correct the silt fence installation for any deviation before compaction. Use a flat-bladed shovel to tuck fabric deeper into the ground if necessary.

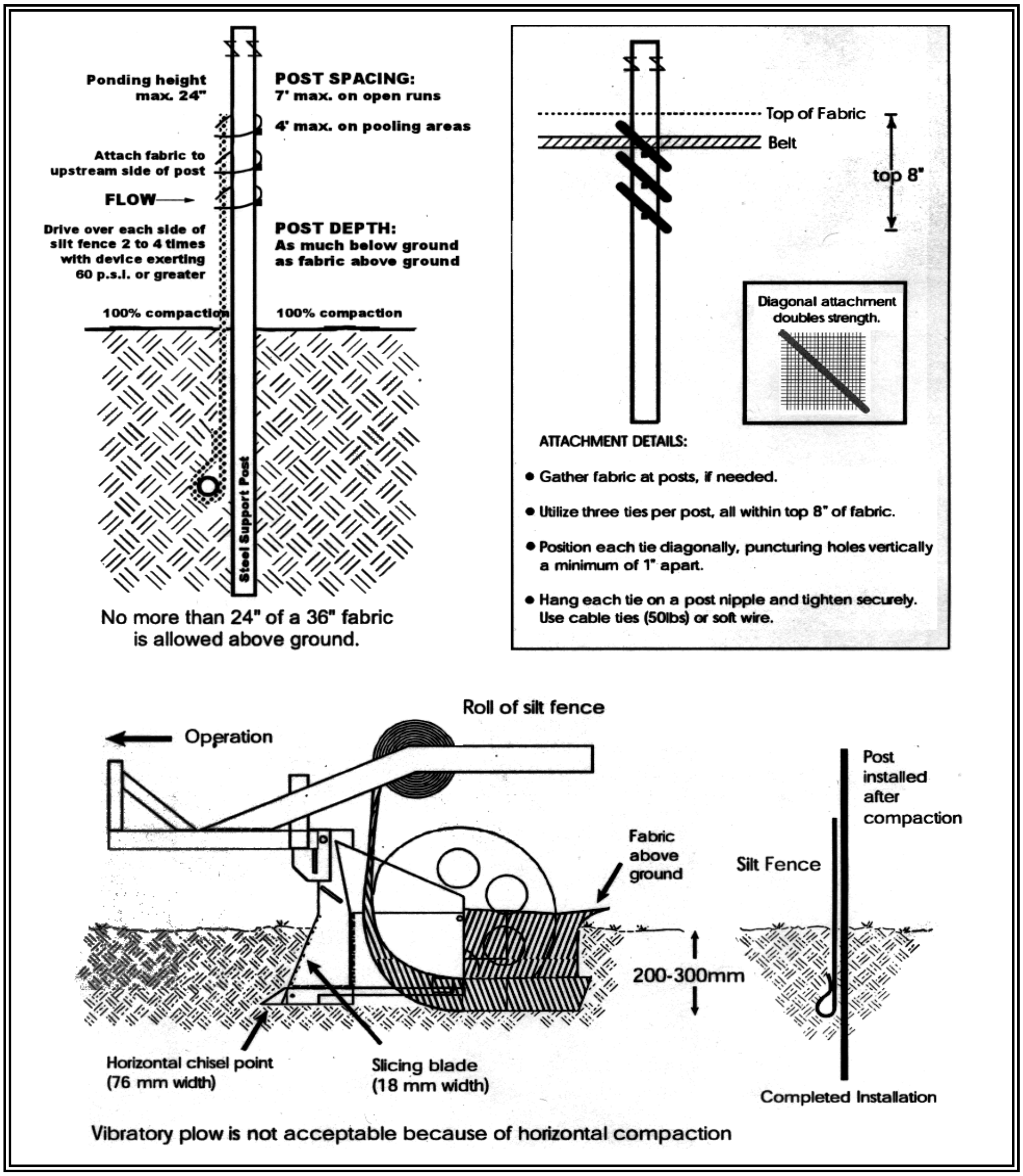


Figure 4.2.13 – Silt Fence Installation by Slicing Method

Maintenance Standards

- Repair any damage immediately.
- Intercept and convey all evident concentrated flows uphill of the silt fence to a sediment pond.
- Check the uphill side of the fence for signs of the fence clogging and acting as a barrier to flow and then causing channelization of flows parallel to the fence. If this occurs, replace the fence or remove the trapped sediment.

- Remove sediment deposits when the deposit reaches approximately one-third the height of the silt fence, or install a second silt fence.
- Replace filter fabric that has deteriorated due to ultraviolet breakdown.

BMP C234: Vegetated Strip

Purpose

Vegetated strips reduce the transport of coarse sediment from a construction site by providing a temporary physical barrier to sediment and reducing the runoff velocities of overland flow.

Conditions of Use

- Vegetated strips may be used downslope of all disturbed areas.
- Vegetated strips are not intended to treat concentrated flows, nor are they intended to treat substantial amounts of overland flow. Any concentrated flows must be conveyed through the drainage system to a sediment pond. The only circumstance in which overland flow can be treated solely by a strip, rather than by a sediment pond, is when the following criteria are met (see Table 4.2.4):

Table 4.2.4
Contributing Drainage Area for Vegetated Strips

Average Contributing area Slope	Average Contributing area Percent Slope	Max Contributing area Flowpath Length
1.5H:1V or flatter	67% or flatter	100 feet
2H:1V or flatter	50% or flatter	115 feet
4H:1V or flatter	25% or flatter	150 feet
6H:1V or flatter	16.7% or flatter	200 feet
10H:1V or flatter	10% or flatter	250 feet

Design and Installation Specifications

- The vegetated strip shall consist of a minimum of a 25-foot flowpath length continuous strip of dense vegetation with topsoil. Grass-covered, landscaped areas are generally not adequate because the volume of sediment overwhelms the grass. Ideally, vegetated strips shall consist of undisturbed native growth with a well-developed soil that allows for infiltration of runoff.
- The slope within the strip shall not exceed 4H:1V.
- The uphill boundary of the vegetated strip shall be delineated with clearing limits.

Maintenance Standards

- Any areas damaged by erosion or construction activity shall be seeded immediately and protected by mulch.
- If more than 5 feet of the original vegetated strip width has had vegetation removed or is being eroded, sod must be installed.
- If there are indications that concentrated flows are traveling across the buffer, surface water controls must be installed to reduce the flows

entering the buffer, or additional perimeter protection must be installed.

BMP C235: Wattles

Purpose

Wattles are temporary erosion and sediment control barriers consisting of straw, compost, or other material that is wrapped in biodegradable tubular plastic or similar encasing material. They reduce the velocity and can spread the flow of rill and sheet runoff, and can capture and retain sediment. Wattles are typically 8 to 10 inches in diameter and 25 to 30 feet in length. Wattles are placed in shallow trenches and staked along the contour of disturbed or newly constructed slopes. See Figure 4.2.14 for typical construction details. WSDOT Standard Plan I-30.30-00 also provides information on Wattles (http://www.wsdot.wa.gov/Design/Standards/Plans.htm#SectionI)

Conditions of Use

- Use wattles:
  - In disturbed areas that require immediate erosion protection.
  - On exposed soils during the period of short construction delays, or over winter months.
  - On slopes requiring stabilization until permanent vegetation can be established.
- The material used dictates the effectiveness period of the wattle. Generally, Wattles are typically effective for one to two seasons.
- Prevent rilling beneath wattles by properly entrenching and abutting wattles together to prevent water from passing between them.

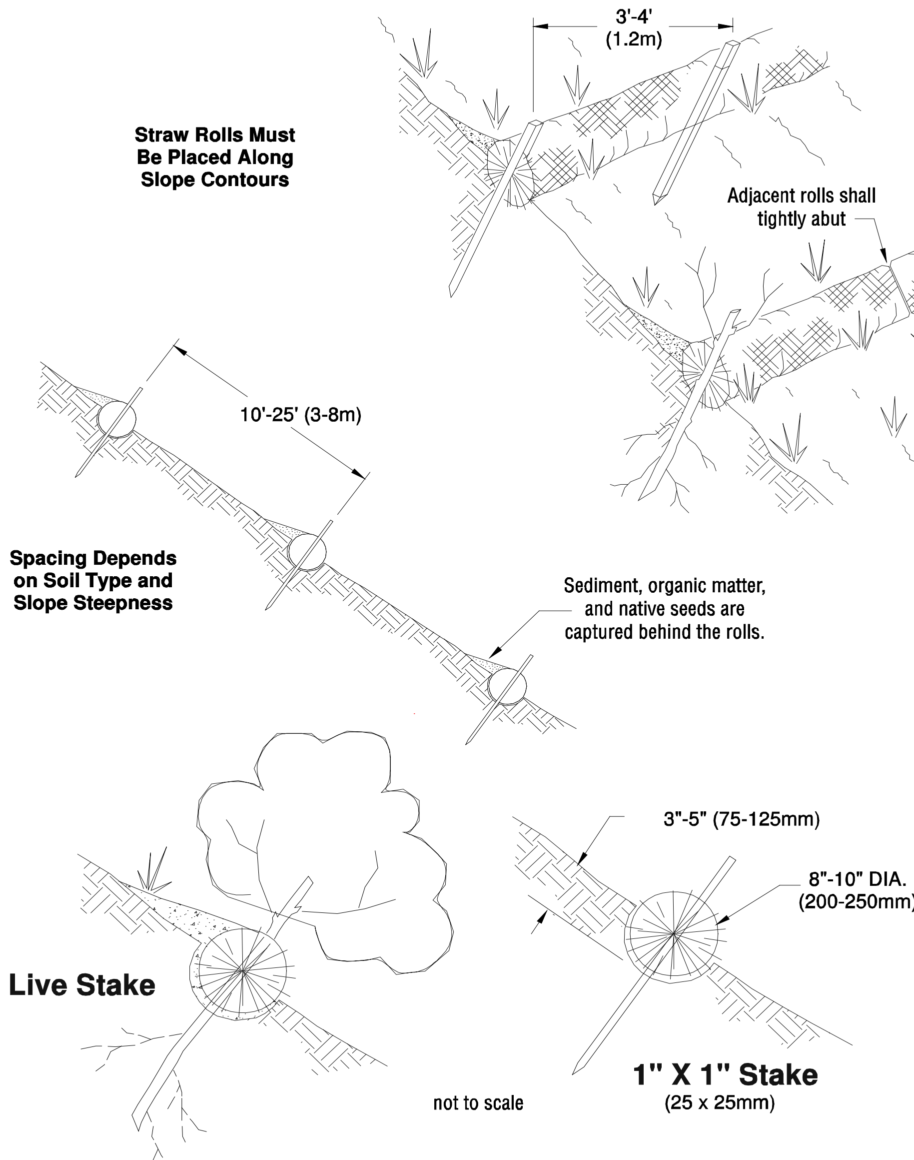
Design Criteria

- Install wattles perpendicular to the flow direction and parallel to the slope contour.
- Narrow trenches should be dug across the slope on contour to a depth of 3- to 5-inches on clay soils and soils with gradual slopes. On loose soils, steep slopes, and areas with high rainfall, the trenches should be dug to a depth of 5- to 7- inches, or 1/2 to 2/3 of the thickness of the wattle.
- Start building trenches and installing wattles from the base of the slope and work up. Spread excavated material evenly along the uphill slope and compacted using hand tamping or other methods.
- Construct trenches at intervals of 10- to 25-feet depending on the steepness of the slope, soil type, and rainfall. The steeper the slope the closer together the trenches.
- Install the wattles snugly into the trenches and abut tightly end to end. Do not overlap the ends.
- Install stakes at each end of the wattle, and at 4-foot centers along entire length of wattle.

- If required, install pilot holes for the stakes using a straight bar to drive holes through the wattle and into the soil.
- Wooden stakes should be approximately 3/4 x 3/4 x 24 inches min. Willow cuttings or 3/8-inch rebar can also be used for stakes.
- Stakes should be driven through the middle of the wattle, leaving 2 to 3 inches of the stake protruding above the wattle.

Maintenance Standards

- Wattles may require maintenance to ensure they are in contact with soil and thoroughly entrenched, especially after significant rainfall on steep sandy soils.



NOTE:
1. Straw roll installation requires the placement and secure staking of the roll in a trench, 3"-5" (75-125mm) deep, dug on contour. runoff must not be allowed to run under or around roll.

Figure 4.2.14 – Wattles

- Inspect the slope after significant storms and repair any areas where wattles are not tightly abutted or water has scoured beneath the wattles.

Approved as Equivalent

Ecology has approved products as able to meet the requirements of BMP C235. The products did not pass through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept this product approved as equivalent, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local use. The products are available for review on Ecology's website at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/equivalent.html

BMP C236: Vegetative Filtration

Purpose

Vegetative Filtration may be used in conjunction with BMP C241 Temporary Sediment Ponds, BMP C206 Level Spreader and a pumping system with surface intake to improve turbidity levels of stormwater discharges by filtering through existing vegetation where undisturbed forest floor duff layer or established lawn with thatch layer are present. Vegetative Filtration can also be used to infiltrate dewatering waste from foundations, vaults, and trenches as long as runoff does not occur.

Conditions of Use

- For every five acre of disturbed soil use one acre of grass field, farm pasture, or wooded area. Reduce or increase this area depending on project size, ground water table height, and other site conditions.
- Wetlands shall not be used for filtration.
- Do not use this BMP in areas with a high ground water table, or in areas that will have a high seasonal ground water table during the use of this BMP.
- This BMP may be less effective on soils that prevent the infiltration of the water, such as hard till.
- Using other effective source control measures throughout a construction site will prevent the generation of additional highly turbid water and may reduce the time period or area need for this BMP.
- Stop distributing water into the vegetated area if standing water or erosion results.

Design Criteria

- Find land adjacent to the project that has a vegetated field, preferably a farm field, or wooded area.
- If the project site does not contain enough vegetated field area consider obtaining permission from adjacent landowners (especially for farm fields).
- Install a pump and downstream distribution manifold depending on the project size. Generally, the main distribution line should reach 100 to 200-feet long (many large projects, or projects on tight soil, will

require systems that reach several thousand feet long with numerous branch lines off of the main distribution line).

- The manifold should have several valves, allowing for control over the distribution area in the field.
- Install several branches of 4” schedule 20, swaged-fit common septic tight-lined sewer line, or 6” fire hose, which can convey the turbid water out to various sections of the field. See Figure 4.2.15.
- Determine the branch length based on the field area geography and number of branches. Typically, branches stretch from 200-feet to several thousand feet. Always, lay branches on contour with the slope.
- On uneven ground, sprinklers perform well. Space sprinkler heads so that spray patterns do not overlap.
- On relatively even surfaces, a level spreader using 4-inch perforated pipe may be used as an alternative option to the sprinkler head setup. Install drain pipe at the highest point on the field and at various lower elevations to ensure full coverage of the filtration area. Pipe should be place with the holes up to allow for a gentle weeping of stormwater evenly out all holes. Leveling the pipe by staking and using sandbags may be required.
- To prevent the over saturation of the field area, rotate the use of branches or spray heads. Do this as needed based on monitoring the spray field.
- Monitor the spray field on a daily basis to ensure that over saturation of any portion of the field doesn’t occur at any time. The presence of standing puddles of water or creation of concentrated flows visually signify that over saturation of the field has occurred.
- Since the operator is handling contaminated water, physically monitor the vegetated spray field all the way down to the nearest surface water, or furthest spray area, to ensure that the water has not caused overland or concentrated flows, and has not created erosion around the spray nozzle.
- Monitoring usually needs to take place 3-5 times per day to ensure sheet-flow into state waters. Do not exceed water quality standards for turbidity.
- Ecology strongly recommends that a separate inspection log be developed, maintained and kept with the existing site logbook to aid the operator conducting inspections. This separate “Field Filtration Logbook” can also aid the facility in demonstrating compliance with permit conditions.

Maintenance Standards

- Inspect the spray nozzles daily, at a minimum, for leaks and plugging from sediment particles.
- If erosion, concentrated flows, or over saturation of the field occurs, rotate the use of branches or spray heads or move the branches to a new field location.
- Check all branches and the manifold for unintended leaks.

Flowpath Guidelines for Vegetative Filtration		
Average Slope	Average Area % Slope	Estimated Flowpath Length (ft)
1.5H:1V	67%	250
2H:1V	50%	200
4H:1V	25%	150
6H:1V	16.7%	115
10H:1V	10%	100

Figure 4.2.15 – Manifold and Braches in a wooded, vegetated spray field

BMP C240: Sediment Trap

Purpose

A sediment trap is a small temporary ponding area with a gravel outlet used to collect and store sediment from sites cleared and/or graded during construction. Sediment traps, along with other perimeter controls, shall be installed before any land disturbance takes place in the drainage area.

Conditions of Use

Prior to leaving a construction site, stormwater runoff must pass through a sediment pond or trap or other appropriate sediment removal best management practice. Non-engineered sediment traps may be used on-site prior to an engineered sediment trap or sediment pond to provide additional sediment removal capacity.

It is intended for use on sites where the tributary drainage area is less than 3 acres, with no unusual drainage features, and a projected build-out time of six months or less. The sediment trap is a temporary measure (with a design life of approximately 6 months) and shall be maintained until the site area is permanently protected against erosion by vegetation and/or structures.

Sediment traps and ponds are only effective in removing sediment down to about the medium silt size fraction. Runoff with sediment of finer grades (fine silt and clay) will pass through untreated, emphasizing the need to control erosion to the maximum extent first.

Whenever possible, sediment-laden water shall be discharged into on-site, relatively level, vegetated areas (see BMP C234 – Vegetated Strip). This is the only way to effectively remove fine particles from runoff unless chemical treatment or filtration is used. This can be particularly useful after initial treatment in a sediment trap or pond. The areas of release must be evaluated on a site-by-site basis in order to determine appropriate locations for and methods of releasing runoff. Vegetated wetlands shall not be used for this purpose. Frequently, it may be possible to pump water from the collection point at the downhill end of the site to an upslope vegetated area. Pumping shall only augment the treatment system, not replace it, because of the possibility of pump failure or runoff volume in excess of pump capacity.

All projects that are constructing permanent facilities for runoff quantity control should use the rough-graded or final-graded permanent facilities for traps and ponds. This includes combined facilities and infiltration facilities. When permanent facilities are used as temporary sedimentation facilities, the surface area requirement of a sediment trap or pond must be met. If the surface area requirements are larger than the surface area of the permanent facility, then the trap or pond shall be enlarged to comply with the surface area requirement. The permanent pond shall also be divided into two cells as required for sediment ponds.

Either a permanent control structure or the temporary control structure (described in BMP C241, Temporary Sediment Pond) can be used. If a permanent control structure is used, it may be advisable to partially restrict the lower orifice with gravel to increase residence time while still allowing dewatering of the pond. A shut-off valve may be added to the control structure to allow complete retention of stormwater in emergency situations. In this case, an emergency overflow weir must be added.

A skimmer may be used for the sediment trap outlet if approved by the Local Permitting Authority.

Design and Installation Specifications

- See Figures 4.2.16 and 4.2.17 for details.
- If permanent runoff control facilities are part of the project, they should be used for sediment retention.
- To determine the sediment trap geometry, first calculate the design surface area (SA) of the trap, measured at the invert of the weir. Use the following equation:

  $SA = FS(Q_2/V_S)$

  where

  Q_2 = Design inflow based on the peak discharge from the developed 2-year runoff event from the contributing drainage area as computed in the hydrologic analysis. The 10-year peak flow shall be used if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection. If no hydrologic analysis is required, the Rational Method may be used.

  V_S = The settling velocity of the soil particle of interest. The 0.02 mm (medium silt) particle with an assumed density of 2.65 g/cm^3 has been selected as the particle of interest and has a settling velocity (V_S) of 0.00096 ft/sec.

  FS = A safety factor of 2 to account for non-ideal settling.

  Therefore, the equation for computing surface area becomes:

  $SA = 2 \text{ x } Q_2/0.00096$ or

  2080 square feet per cfs of inflow

  Note: Even if permanent facilities are used, they must still have a surface area that is at least as large as that derived from the above formula. If they do not, the pond must be enlarged.

- To aid in determining sediment depth, all sediment traps shall have a staff gauge with a prominent mark 1-foot above the bottom of the trap.

- Sediment traps may not be feasible on utility projects due to the limited work space or the short-term nature of the work. Portable tanks may be used in place of sediment traps for utility projects.

Maintenance Standards

- Sediment shall be removed from the trap when it reaches 1-foot in depth.
- Any damage to the pond embankments or slopes shall be repaired.

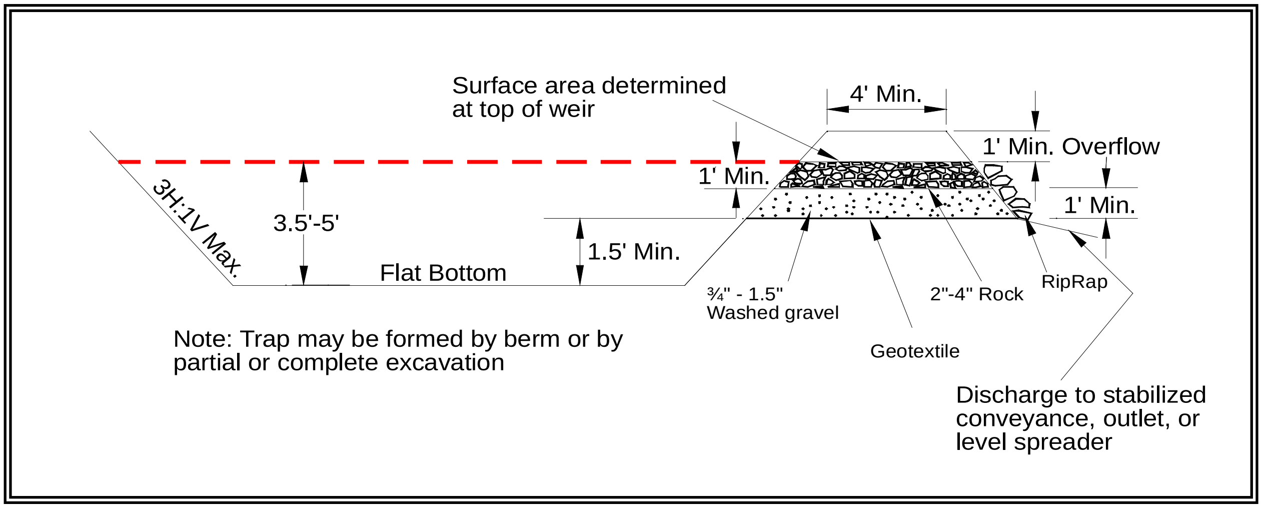


Figure 4.2.16 – Cross Section of Sediment Trap

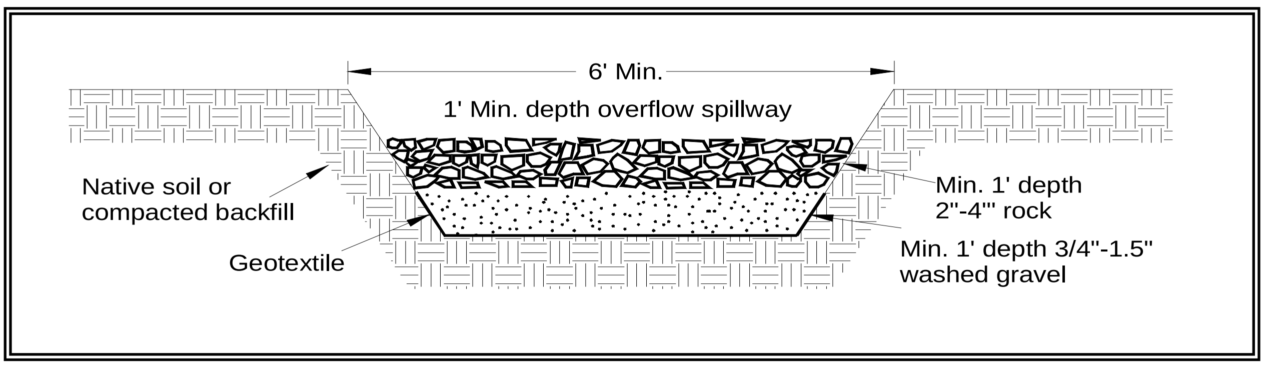


Figure 4.2.17 – Sediment Trap Outlet

BMP C241: Temporary Sediment Pond

Purpose

Sediment ponds remove sediment from runoff originating from disturbed areas of the site. Sediment ponds are typically designed to remove sediment no smaller than medium silt (0.02 mm). Consequently, they usually reduce turbidity only slightly.

Conditions of Use

Prior to leaving a construction site, stormwater runoff must pass through a sediment pond or other appropriate sediment removal best management practice.

A sediment pond shall be used where the contributing drainage area is 3 acres or more. Ponds must be used in conjunction with erosion control practices to reduce the amount of sediment flowing into the basin.

Design and Installation Specifications

- Sediment basins must be installed only on sites where failure of the structure would not result in loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities. Also, sediment traps and ponds are attractive to children and can be very dangerous. Compliance with local ordinances regarding health and safety must be addressed. If fencing of the pond is required, the type of fence and its location shall be shown on the ESC plan.
- Structures having a maximum storage capacity at the top of the dam of 10 acre-ft (435,600 ft^3) or more are subject to the Washington Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC).
- See Figures 4.2.18, 4.2.19, and 4.2.20 for details.
- If permanent runoff control facilities are part of the project, they should be used for sediment retention. The surface area requirements of the sediment basin must be met. This may require temporarily enlarging the permanent basin to comply with the surface area requirements. The permanent control structure must be temporarily replaced with a control structure that only allows water to leave the pond from the surface or by pumping. The permanent control structure must be installed after the site is fully stabilized. .
- Use of infiltration facilities for sedimentation basins during construction tends to clog the soils and reduce their capacity to infiltrate. If infiltration facilities are to be used, the sides and bottom of the facility must only be rough excavated to a minimum of 2 feet above final grade. Final grading of the infiltration facility shall occur only when all contributing drainage areas are fully stabilized. The infiltration pretreatment facility should be fully constructed and used with the sedimentation basin to help prevent clogging.
- Determining Pond Geometry

  Obtain the discharge from the hydrologic calculations of the peak flow for the 2-year runoff event (Q_2). The 10-year peak flow shall be used if the project size, expected timing and duration of construction, or downstream conditions warrant a higher level of protection. If no hydrologic analysis is required, the Rational Method may be used.

Determine the required surface area at the top of the riser pipe with the equation:

$SA = 2 \times Q_2/0.00096$ or
2080 square feet per cfs of inflow

See BMP C240 for more information on the derivation of the surface area calculation.

The basic geometry of the pond can now be determined using the following design criteria:

- Required surface area SA (from Step 2 above) at top of riser.
- Minimum 3.5-foot depth from top of riser to bottom of pond.
- Maximum 3H:1V interior side slopes and maximum 2H:1V exterior slopes. The interior slopes can be increased to a maximum of 2H:1V if fencing is provided at or above the maximum water surface.
- One foot of freeboard between the top of the riser and the crest of the emergency spillway.
- Flat bottom.
- Minimum 1-foot deep spillway.
- Length-to-width ratio between 3:1 and 6:1.
- Sizing of Discharge Mechanisms.

The outlet for the basin consists of a combination of principal and emergency spillways. These outlets must pass the peak runoff expected from the contributing drainage area for a 100-year storm. If, due to site conditions and basin geometry, a separate emergency spill-way is not feasible, the principal spillway must pass the entire peak runoff expected from the 100-year storm. However, an attempt to provide a separate emergency spillway should always be made. The runoff calculations should be based on the site conditions during construction. The flow through the dewatering orifice cannot be utilized when calculating the 100-year storm elevation because of its potential to become clogged; therefore, available spillway storage must begin at the principal spillway riser crest.

The principal spillway designed by the procedures contained in this standard will result in some reduction in the peak rate of runoff. However, the riser outlet design will not adequately control the basin discharge to the predevelopment discharge limitations as stated in Minimum Requirement #7: Flow Control. However, if the basin for a permanent stormwater detention pond is used for a temporary sedimentation basin, the control structure for the permanent pond can be used to maintain predevelopment discharge limitations. The size of the basin, the expected life of the construction project, the anticipated downstream effects and the anticipated weather conditions during construction, should be considered to determine the need of additional discharge control. See Figure 4.2.21 for riser inflow curves.

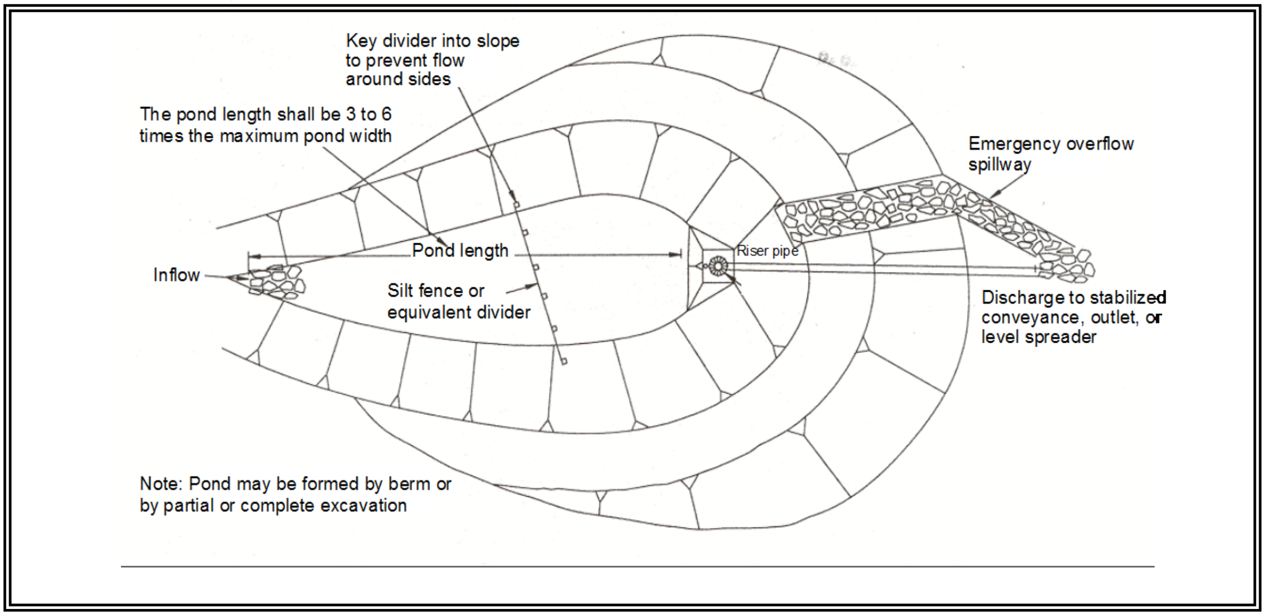


Figure 4.2.18 – Sediment Pond Plan View

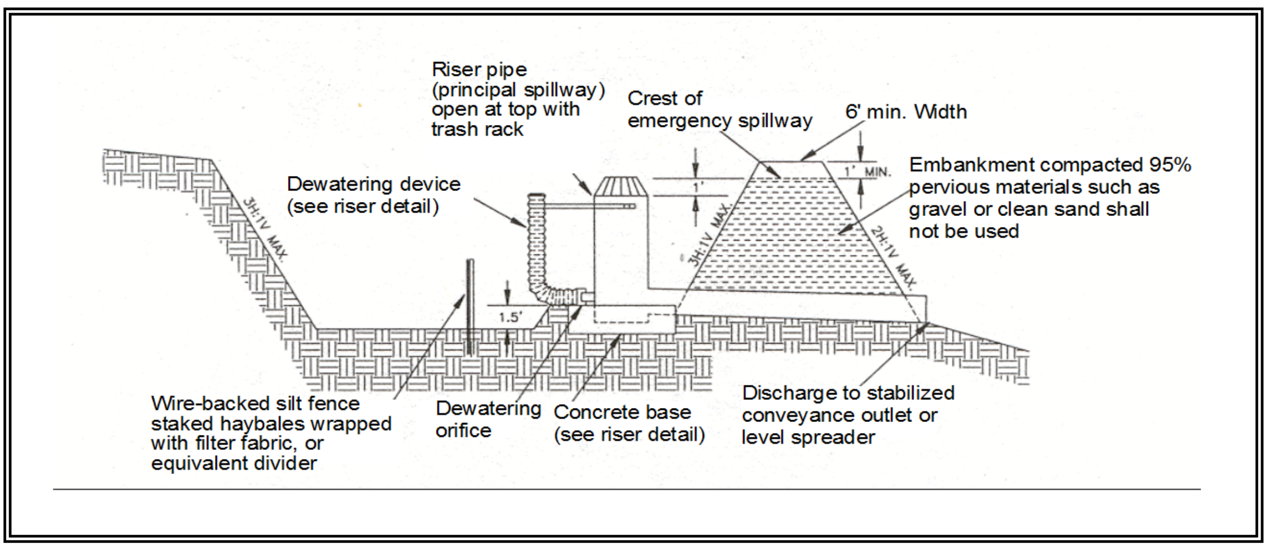


Figure 4.2.19 – Sediment Pond Cross Section

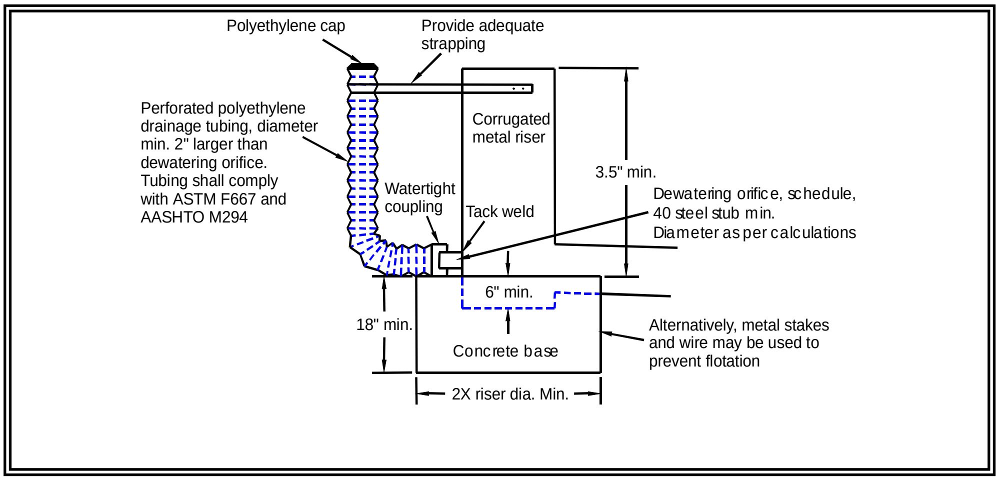


Figure 4.2.20 – Sediment Pond Riser Detail

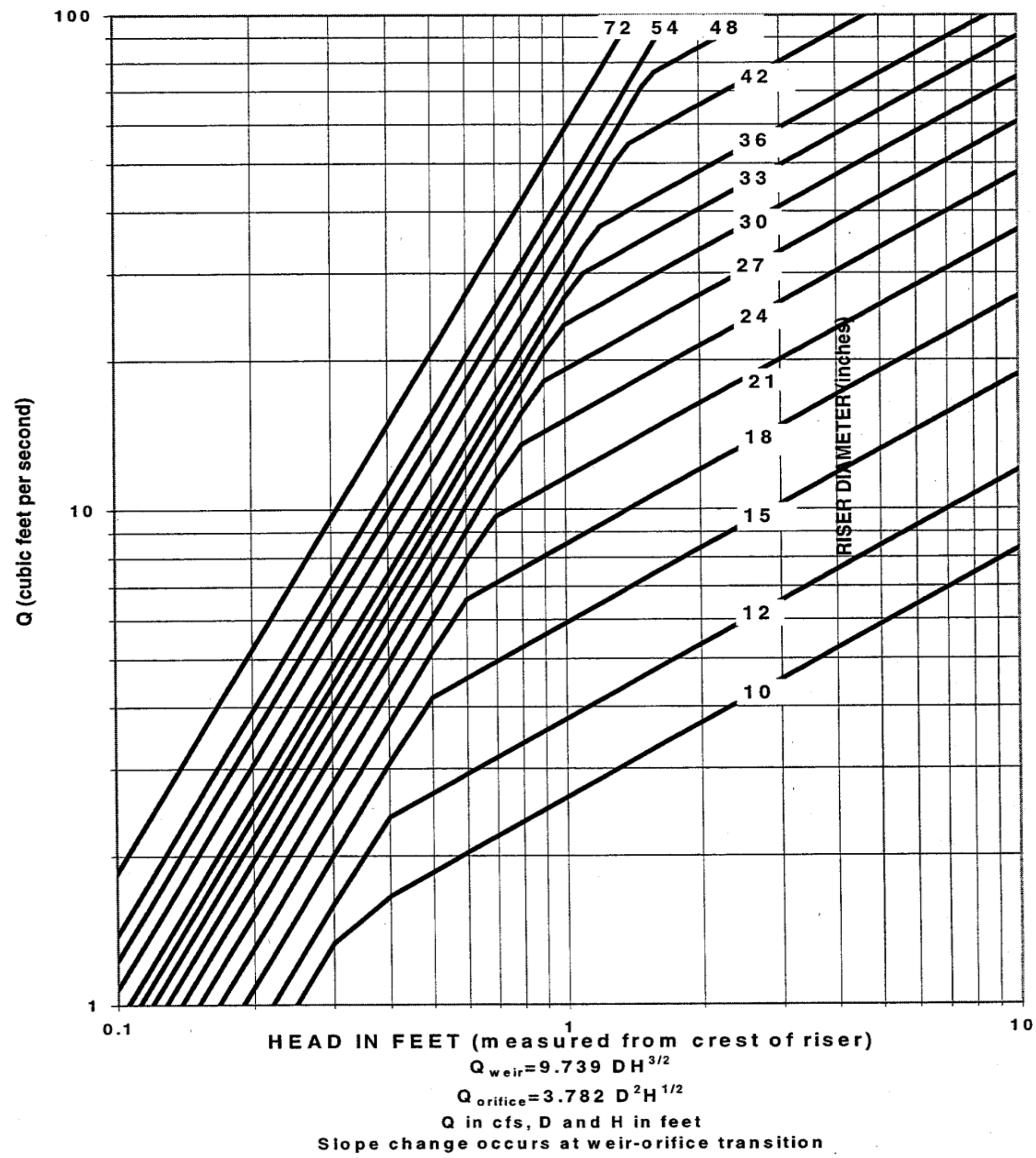


Figure 4.2.21 – Riser Inflow Curves

Principal Spillway: Determine the required diameter for the principal spillway (riser pipe). The diameter shall be the minimum necessary to pass the site's 15-minute, 10-year flowrate. If using the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM), Version 2 or 3, design flow is the 10-year (1 hour) flow for the developed (unmitigated) site, multiplied by a factor of 1.6. Use Figure 4.2.21 to determine this diameter (h = 1-foot). *Note: A permanent control structure may be used instead of a temporary riser.*

Emergency Overflow Spillway: Determine the required size and design of the emergency overflow spillway for the developed 100-year peak flow using the method contained in Volume III.

Dewatering Orifice: Determine the size of the dewatering orifice(s) (minimum 1-inch diameter) using a modified version of the discharge equation for a vertical orifice and a basic equation for the area of a circular orifice. Determine the required area of the orifice with the following equation:

$$A_o = \frac{A_s (2h)^{0.5}}{0.6 \text{x} 3600 T g^{0.5}}$$

where A_O = orifice area (square feet)

A_S = pond surface area (square feet)

h = head of water above orifice (height of riser in feet)

T = dewatering time (24 hours)

g = acceleration of gravity (32.2 feet/second^2)

Convert the required surface area to the required diameter D of the orifice:

$$D = 24\text{x}\sqrt{\frac{A_o}{\pi}} = 13.54\text{x}\sqrt{A_o}$$

The vertical, perforated tubing connected to the dewatering orifice must be at least 2 inches larger in diameter than the orifice to improve flow characteristics. The size and number of perforations in the tubing should be large enough so that the tubing does not restrict flow. The orifice should control the flow rate.

- Additional Design Specifications

  The pond shall be divided into two roughly equal volume cells by a permeable divider that will reduce turbulence while allowing movement of water between cells. The divider shall be at least one-half the height of the riser and a minimum of one foot below the top of the riser. Wire-backed, 2- to 3-foot high, extra strength filter fabric supported by treated 4"x4"s can be used as a divider. Alternatively, staked straw bales wrapped with filter fabric (geotextile) may be used. If the pond is more than 6 feet deep, a different mechanism must be proposed. A riprap embankment is one acceptable method of separation for deeper ponds. Other designs that satisfy the intent of this provision are allowed as long as the divider is permeable, structurally sound, and designed to prevent erosion under or around the barrier.

To aid in determining sediment depth, one-foot intervals shall be prominently marked on the riser.

If an embankment of more than 6 feet is proposed, the pond must comply with the criteria contained in Volume III regarding dam safety for detention BMPs.

- The most common structural failure of sedimentation basins is caused by piping. Piping refers to two phenomena: (1) water seeping through fine-grained soil, eroding the soil grain by grain and forming pipes or tunnels; and, (2) water under pressure flowing upward through a granular soil with a head of sufficient magnitude to cause soil grains to lose contact and capability for support.

  The most critical construction sequences to prevent piping will be:

  1. Tight connections between riser and barrel and other pipe connections.
  2. Adequate anchoring of riser.
  3. Proper soil compaction of the embankment and riser footing.
  4. Proper construction of anti-seep devices.

Maintenance Standards

- Sediment shall be removed from the pond when it reaches 1–foot in depth.
- Any damage to the pond embankments or slopes shall be repaired.

BMP C250: Construction Stormwater Chemical Treatment

Purpose

This BMP applies when using stormwater chemicals in batch treatment or flow-through treatment.

Turbidity is difficult to control once fine particles are suspended in stormwater runoff from a construction site. Sedimentation ponds are effective at removing larger particulate matter by gravity settling, but are ineffective at removing smaller particulates such as clay and fine silt. Traditional erosion and sediment control BMPs may not be adequate to ensure compliance with the water quality standards for turbidity in receiving water.

Chemical treatment can reliably provide exceptional reductions of turbidity and associated pollutants. Chemical treatment may be required to meet turbidity stormwater discharge requirements, especially when construction is to proceed through the wet season.

Conditions of Use

Formal written approval from Ecology is required for the use of chemical treatment regardless of site size. The Local Permitting Authority may also require review and approval. When approved, the chemical treatment systems must be included in the Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

Design and Installation Specifications

See Appendix II-B for background information on chemical treatment.

Criteria for Chemical Treatment Product Use: Chemically treated stormwater discharged from construction sites must be nontoxic to aquatic organisms. The Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol (CTAPE) must be used to evaluate chemicals proposed for stormwater treatment. Only chemicals approved by Ecology under the CTAPE may be used for stormwater treatment. The approved chemicals, their allowable application techniques (batch treatment or flow-through treatment), allowable application rates, and conditions of use can be found at the Department of Ecology Emerging Technologies website: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/technologies.html.

Treatment System Design Considerations: The design and operation of a chemical treatment system should take into consideration the factors that determine optimum, cost-effective performance. It is important to recognize the following:

- Only Ecology approved chemicals may be used and must follow approved dose rate.
- The pH of the stormwater must be in the proper range for the polymers to be effective, which is typically 6.5 to 8.5
- The coagulant must be mixed rapidly into the water to ensure proper dispersion.
- A flocculation step is important to increase the rate of settling, to produce the lowest turbidity, and to keep the dosage rate as low as possible.
- Too little energy input into the water during the flocculation phase results in flocs that are too small and/or insufficiently dense. Too much energy can rapidly destroy floc as it is formed.
- Care must be taken in the design of the withdrawal system to minimize outflow velocities and to prevent floc discharge. Discharge from a batch treatment system should be directed through a physical filter such as a vegetated swale that would catch any unintended floc discharge. Currently, flow-through systems always discharge through the chemically enhanced sand filtration system.
- System discharge rates must take into account downstream conveyance integrity.

Polymer Batch Treatment Process Description:

A batch chemical treatment system consists of the stormwater collection system (either temporary diversion or the permanent site drainage system), a storage pond, pumps, a chemical feed system, treatment cells, and interconnecting piping.

The batch treatment system shall use a minimum of two lined treatment cells in addition to an untreated stormwater storage pond. Multiple treatment cells allow for clarification of treated water while other cells are being filled or emptied. Treatment cells may be ponds or tanks. Ponds with constructed earthen embankments greater than six feet high or which impound more than 10 acre-feet require special engineering analyses. The Ecology Dam Safety Section has specific design criteria for dams in Washington State (see http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/GuidanceDocs.html).

Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted by gravity or by pumping to an untreated stormwater storage pond or other untreated stormwater holding area. The stormwater is stored until treatment occurs. It is important that the holding pond be large enough to provide adequate storage.

The first step in the treatment sequence is to check the pH of the stormwater in the untreated stormwater storage pond. The pH is adjusted by the application of carbon dioxide or a base until the stormwater in the storage pond is within the desired pH range, 6.5 to 8.5. When used, carbon dioxide is added immediately downstream of the transfer pump. Typically sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) is used as a base, although other bases may be used. When needed, base is added directly to the untreated stormwater storage pond. The stormwater is recirculated with the treatment pump to provide mixing in the storage pond. Initial pH adjustments should be based on daily bench tests. Further pH adjustments can be made at any point in the process.

Once the stormwater is within the desired pH range (dependant on polymer being used), the stormwater is pumped from the untreated stormwater storage pond to a treatment cell as polymer is added. The polymer is added upstream of the pump to facilitate rapid mixing.

After polymer addition, the water is kept in a lined treatment cell for clarification of the sediment-floc. In a batch mode process, clarification typically takes from 30 minutes to several hours. Prior to discharge samples are withdrawn for analysis of pH, flocculent chemical concentration, and turbidity. If both are acceptable, the treated water is discharged.

Several configurations have been developed to withdraw treated water from the treatment cell. The original configuration is a device that withdraws the treated water from just beneath the water surface using a float with adjustable struts that prevent the float from settling on the cell bottom. This reduces the possibility of picking up sediment-floc from the bottom of the pond. The struts are usually set at a minimum clearance of about 12 inches; that is, the float will come within 12 inches of the bottom of the cell. Other systems have used vertical guides or cables which constrain the float, allowing it to drift up and down with the water level. More recent designs have an H-shaped array of pipes, set on the horizontal.

This scheme provides for withdrawal from four points rather than one. This configuration reduces the likelihood of sucking settled solids from the bottom. It also reduces the tendency for a vortex to form. Inlet diffusers, a long floating or fixed pipe with many small holes in it, are also an option.

Safety is a primary concern. Design should consider the hazards associated with operations, such as sampling. Facilities should be designed to reduce slip hazards and drowning. Tanks and ponds should have life rings, ladders, or steps extending from the bottom to the top.

Polymer Batch Treatment Process Description:

At a minimum, a flow-through chemical treatment system consists of the stormwater collection system (either temporary diversion or the permanent site drainage system), an untreated stormwater storage pond, and the chemically enhanced sand filtration system.

Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted by gravity or by pumping to an untreated stormwater storage pond or other untreated stormwater holding area. The stormwater is stored until treatment occurs. It is important that the holding pond be large enough to provide adequate storage.

Stormwater is then pumped from the untreated stormwater storage pond to the chemically enhanced sand filtration system where polymer is added. Adjustments to pH may be necessary before chemical addition. The sand filtration system continually monitors the stormwater for turbidity and pH. If the discharge water is ever out of an acceptable range for turbidity or pH, the water is recycled to the untreated stormwater pond where it can be retreated.

For batch treatment and flow-through treatment, the following equipment should be located in a lockable shed:

- The chemical injector.
- Secondary containment for acid, caustic, buffering compound, and treatment chemical.
- Emergency shower and eyewash.
- Monitoring equipment which consists of a pH meter and a turbidimeter.

System Sizing:

Certain sites are required to implement flow control for the developed sites. These sites must also control stormwater release rates during construction. Generally, these are sites that discharge stormwater directly, or indirectly, through a conveyance system, into a fresh water. System sizing is dependent on flow control requirements.

Sizing Criteria for Batch Treatment Systems for Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies:

The total volume of the untreated stormwater storage pond and treatment ponds or tanks must be large enough to treat stormwater that is produced during multiple day storm events. It is recommended that at a minimum the untreated stormwater storage pond be sized to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event. Bypass should be provided around the chemical treatment system to accommodate extreme storm events. Runoff volume shall be calculated using the methods presented in Volume 3, Chapter 2. Worst-case land cover conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff) should be used for analyses (in most cases, this would be the land cover conditions just prior to final landscaping).

Primary settling should be encouraged in the untreated stormwater storage pond. A forebay with access for maintenance may be beneficial.

There are two opposing considerations in sizing the treatment cells. A larger cell is able to treat a larger volume of water each time a batch is processed. However, the larger the cell the longer the time required to empty the cell. A larger cell may also be less effective at flocculation and therefore require a longer settling time. The simplest approach to sizing the treatment cell is to multiply the allowable discharge flow rate times the desired drawdown time. A 4-hour drawdown time allows one batch per cell per 8-hour work period, given 1 hour of flocculation followed by two hours of settling.

If the discharge is directly to a flow control exempt receiving water listed in Appendix I-E of Volume I or to an infiltration system, there is no discharge flow limit.

Ponds sized for flow control water bodies must at a minimum meet the sizing criteria for flow control exempt waters.

Sizing Criteria for Flow-Through Treatment Systems for Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies:

When sizing storage ponds or tanks for flow-through systems for flow control exempt water bodies, the treatment system capacity should be a factor. The untreated stormwater storage pond or tank should be sized to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event minus the treatment system flowrate for an 8-hour period. For a chitosan-enhanced sand filtration system, the treatment system flowrate should be sized using a hydraulic loading rate between 6-8 gpm/ft^2. Other hydraulic loading rates may be more appropriate for other systems. Bypass should be provided around the chemical treatment system to accommodate extreme storms. Runoff volume shall be calculated using the methods presented in Volume 3, Chapter 2. Worst-case land cover conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff) should be used for analyses (in most cases, this would be the land cover conditions just prior to final landscaping).

Sizing Criteria for Flow Control Water Bodies:

Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site condition must also control stormwater release rates during construction. Construction site stormwater discharges shall not exceed the discharge durations of the pre-developed condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from ½ of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow as predicted by an approved continuous runoff model. The pre-developed condition to be matched shall be the land cover condition immediately prior to the development project. This restriction on release rates can affect the size of the storage pond and treatment cells.

The following is how WWHM can be used to determine the release rates from the chemical treatment systems:

1. Determine the pre-developed flow durations to be matched by entering the existing land use area under the “Pre-developed” scenario in WWHM. The default flow range is from ½ of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow.
2. Enter the post developed land use area in the “Developed Unmitigated” scenario in WWHM.
3. Copy the land use information from the “Developed Unmitigated” to “Developed Mitigated” scenario.
4. While in the “Developed Mitigated” scenario, add a pond element under the basin element containing the post-developed land use areas. This pond element represents information on the available untreated stormwater storage and discharge from the chemical treatment system. In cases where the discharge from the chemical treatment system is controlled by a pump, a stage/storage/discharge (SSD) table representing the pond must be generated outside WWHM and imported into WWHM. WWHM can route the runoff from the post-developed condition through this SSD table (the pond) and determine compliance with the flow duration standard. This would be an iterative design procedure where if the initial SSD table proved to be inadequate, the designer would have to modify the SSD table outside WWHM and re-import in WWHM and route the runoff through it again. The iteration will continue until a pond that complies with the flow duration standard is correctly sized.

Notes on SSD table characteristics:

- The pump discharge rate would likely be initially set at just below ½ of the 2-year flow from the pre-developed condition. As runoff coming into the untreated stormwater storage pond increases and the available untreated stormwater storage volume gets used up, it would be necessary to increase the pump discharge rate above ½ of the 2-year. The increase(s) above ½ of the 2-year must be such that they provide some relief to the untreated stormwater storage needs but at the same time will not cause violations of the flow duration standard at the higher flows. The final design SSD table will identify the appropriate pumping rates and the corresponding stage and storages.
- When building such a flow control system, the design must ensure that any automatic adjustments to the pumping rates will be as a result of changes to the available storage in accordance with the final design SSD table.

5. It should be noted that the above procedures would be used to meet the flow control requirements. The chemical treatment system must be able to meet the runoff treatment requirements. It is likely that the discharge flow rate of ½ of the 2-year or more may exceed the treatment capacity of the system. If that is the case, the untreated stormwater discharge rate(s) (i.e., influent to the treatment system) must be reduced to allow proper treatment. Any reduction in the flows would likely result in the need for a larger untreated stormwater storage volume.

   If the discharge is to a municipal storm drainage system, the allowable discharge rate may be limited by the capacity of the public system. It may be necessary to clean the municipal storm drainage system prior to the start of the discharge to prevent scouring solids from the drainage system. If the municipal storm drainage system discharges to a water body not on the flow control exempt list, the project site is subject to flow control requirements. Obtain permission from the owner of the collection system before discharging to it.

If system design does not allow you to discharge at the slower rates as described above and if the site has a retention or detention pond that will serve the planned development, the discharge from the treatment system may be directed to the permanent retention/detention pond to comply with the flow control requirement. In this case, the untreated stormwater storage pond and treatment system will be sized according to the sizing criteria for flow-through treatment systems for flow control exempt water bodies described earlier except all discharge (water passing through the treatment system and stormwater bypassing the treatment system) will be directed into the permanent retention/detention pond. If site constraints make locating the untreated stormwater storage pond difficult, the permanent retention/detention pond may be divided to serve as the untreated stormwater storage pond and the post-treatment flow control pond. A berm or barrier must be used in this case so the untreated water does not mix with the treated water. Both untreated stormwater storage requirements, and adequate post-treatment flow control must be achieved. The post-treatment flow control pond's revised dimensions must be entered into the WWHM and the WWHM must be run to confirm compliance with the flow control requirement.

Maintenance Standards

Monitoring: At a minimum, the following monitoring shall be conducted. Test results shall be recorded on a daily log kept on site. Additional testing may be required by the NPDES permit based on site conditions.

Operational Monitoring:

- Total volume treated and discharged.
- Flow must be continuously monitored and recorded at not greater than 15-minute intervals.
- Type and amount of chemical used for pH adjustment.
- Amount of polymer used for treatment.
- Settling time.

Compliance Monitoring:

- Influent and effluent pH, flocculent chemical concentration, and turbidity must be continuously monitored and recorded at not greater than 15-minute intervals. pH and turbidity of the receiving water.

Biomonitoring:

Treated stormwater must be non-toxic to aquatic organisms. Treated stormwater must be tested for aquatic toxicity or residual chemicals. Frequency of biomonitoring will be determined by Ecology.

Residual chemical tests must be approved by Ecology prior to their use.

If testing treated stormwater for aquatic toxicity, you must test for acute (lethal) toxicity. Bioassays shall be conducted by a laboratory accredited by Ecology, unless otherwise approved by Ecology. Acute toxicity tests shall be conducted per the CTAPE protocol.

Discharge Compliance: Prior to discharge, treated stormwater must be sampled and tested for compliance with pH, flocculent chemical concentration, and turbidity limits. These limits may be established by the Construction Stormwater General Permit or a site-specific discharge permit. Sampling and testing for other pollutants may also be necessary at some sites. pH must be within the range of 6.5 to 8.5 standard units and not cause a change in the pH of the receiving water of more than 0.2 standard units. Treated stormwater samples and measurements shall be taken from the discharge pipe or another location representative of the nature of the treated stormwater discharge. Samples used for determining compliance with the water quality standards in the receiving water shall not be taken from the treatment pond prior to decanting. Compliance with the water quality standards is determined in the receiving water.

Operator Training: Each contractor who intends to use chemical treatment shall be trained by an experienced contractor. Each site using chemical treatment must have an operator trained and certified by an organization approved by Ecology.

Standard BMPs: Surface stabilization BMPs should be implemented on site to prevent significant erosion. All sites shall use a truck wheel wash to prevent tracking of sediment off site.

Sediment Removal and Disposal:

- Sediment shall be removed from the storage or treatment cells as necessary. Typically, sediment removal is required at least once during a wet season and at the decommissioning of the cells. Sediment remaining in the cells between batches may enhance the settling process and reduce the required chemical dosage.
- Sediment that is known to be non-toxic may be incorporated into the site away from drainages.

BMP C251: Construction Stormwater Filtration

Purpose

Filtration removes sediment from runoff originating from disturbed areas of the site.

Background Information:

Filtration with sand media has been used for over a century to treat water and wastewater. The use of sand filtration for treatment of stormwater has developed recently, generally to treat runoff from streets, parking lots, and residential areas. The application of filtration to construction stormwater treatment is currently under development.

Conditions of Use

Traditional BMPs used to control soil erosion and sediment loss from sites under development may not be adequate to ensure compliance with the water quality standard for turbidity in the receiving water. Filtration may be used in conjunction with gravity settling to remove sediment as small as fine silt (0.5 µm). The reduction in turbidity will be dependent on the particle size distribution of the sediment in the stormwater. In some circumstances, sedimentation and filtration may achieve compliance with the water quality standard for turbidity.

The use of construction stormwater filtration does not require approval from Ecology as long as treatment chemicals are not used. Filtration in conjunction with polymer treatment requires testing under the Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (CTAPE) before it can be initiated. Approval from the appropriate regional Ecology office must be obtained at each site where polymers use is proposed prior to use. For more guidance on stormwater chemical treatment see BMP C250.

Design and Installation Specifications

Two types of filtration systems may be applied to construction stormwater treatment: rapid and slow. Rapid sand filters are the typical system used for water and wastewater treatment. They can achieve relatively high hydraulic flow rates, on the order of 2 to 20 gpm/sf, because they have automatic backwash systems to remove accumulated solids. In contrast, slow sand filters have very low hydraulic rates, on the order of 0.02 gpm/sf, because they do not have backwash systems. Slow sand filtration has generally been used to treat stormwater. Slow sand filtration is mechanically simple in comparison to rapid sand filtration but requires a much larger filter area.

Filtration Equipment. Sand media filters are available with automatic backwashing features that can filter to 50 μm particle size. Screen or bag filters can filter down to 5 μm. Fiber wound filters can remove particles down to 0.5 μm. Filters should be sequenced from the largest to the smallest pore opening. Sediment removal efficiency will be related to particle size distribution in the stormwater.

Treatment Process Description. Stormwater is collected at interception point(s) on the site and is diverted to an untreated stormwater sediment pond or tank for removal of large sediment and storage of the stormwater before it is treated by the filtration system. The untreated stormwater is pumped from the trap, pond, or tank through the filtration system in a rapid sand filtration system. Slow sand filtration systems are designed as flow through systems using gravity.

Maintenance Standards

Rapid sand filters typically have automatic backwash systems that are triggered by a pre-set pressure drop across the filter. If the backwash water volume is not large or substantially more turbid than the untreated stormwater stored in the holding pond or tank, backwash return to the untreated stormwater pond or tank may be appropriate. However, other means of treatment and disposal may be necessary.

- Screen, bag, and fiber filters must be cleaned and/or replaced when they become clogged.
- Sediment shall be removed from the storage and/or treatment ponds as necessary. Typically, sediment removal is required once or twice during a wet season and at the decommissioning of the ponds.

Sizing Criteria for Flow-Through Treatment Systems for Flow Control Exempt Water Bodies:

When sizing storage ponds or tanks for flow-through systems for flow control exempt water bodies the treatment system capacity should be a factor. The untreated stormwater storage pond or tank should be sized to hold 1.5 times the runoff volume of the 10-year, 24-hour storm event minus the treatment system flowrate for an 8-hour period. For a chitosan-enhanced sand filtration system, the treatment system flowrate should be sized using a hydraulic loading rate between 6-8 gpm/ft^2. Other hydraulic loading rates may be more appropriate for other systems. Bypass should be provided around the chemical treatment system to accommodate extreme storms. Runoff volume shall be calculated using the methods presented in Volume 3, Chapter 2. Worst-case conditions (i.e., producing the most runoff) should be used for analyses (most likely conditions present prior to final landscaping).

Sizing Criteria for Flow Control Water Bodies:

Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site condition must also control stormwater release rates during construction. Construction site stormwater discharges shall not exceed the discharge durations of the pre-developed condition for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 1/2 of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow as predicted by an approved continuous runoff model. The pre-developed condition to be matched shall be the land cover condition immediately prior to the development project. This restriction on release rates can affect the size of the storage pond, the filtration system, and the flow rate through the filter system.

The following is how WWHM can be used to determine the release rates from the filtration systems:

1. Determine the pre-developed flow durations to be matched by entering the land use area under the "Pre-developed" scenario in WWHM. The default flow range is from ½ of the 2-year flow through the 10-year flow.
2. Enter the post developed land use area in the "Developed Unmitigated" scenario in WWHM.
3. Copy the land use information from the "Developed Unmitigated" to "Developed Mitigated" scenario.
4. There are two possible ways to model stormwater filtration systems:
    a. The stormwater filtration system uses an untreated stormwater storage pond/tank and the discharge from this pond/tank is pumped to one or more filters. In-line filtration chemicals would be added to the flow right after the pond/tank and before the filter(s). Because the discharge is pumped, WWHM can't generate a stage/storage /discharge (SSD) table for this system. This system is modeled the same way as described in BMP C250 and is as follows:

       While in the "Developed Mitigated" scenario, add a pond element under the basin element containing the post-developed land use areas. This pond element represents information on the available untreated stormwater storage and discharge from the filtration system. In cases where the discharge from the filtration system is controlled by a pump, a stage/storage/discharge (SSD) table representing the pond must be generated outside WWHM and imported into WWHM. WWHM can route the runoff from the post-developed condition through this SSD table (the pond) and determine compliance with the flow duration standard. This would be an iterative design procedure where if the initial SSD table proved to be out of compliance, the designer would have to modify the SSD table outside WWHM and re-import in WWHM and route the runoff through it again. The iteration will continue until a pond that enables compliance with the flow duration standard is designed.

Notes on SSD table characteristics:

- The pump discharge rate would likely be initially set at just below ½ if the 2-year flow from the pre-developed condition. As runoff coming into the untreated stormwater storage pond increases and the available untreated stormwater storage volume gets used up, it would be necessary to increase the pump discharge rate above ½ of the 2-year. The increase(s) above ½ of the 2-year must be such that they provide some relief to the untreated stormwater storage needs but at the same time they will not cause violations of the flow duration standard at the higher flows. The final design SSD table will identify the appropriate pumping rates and the corresponding stage and storages.
- When building such a flow control system, the design must ensure that any automatic adjustments to the pumping rates will be as a result of changes to the available storage in accordance with the final design SSD table.

b. The stormwater filtration system uses a storage pond/tank and the discharge from this pond/tank gravity flows to the filter. This is usually a slow sand filter system and it is possible to model it in WWHM as a Filter element or as a combination of Pond and Filter element placed in series. The stage/storage/discharge table(s) may then be generated within WWHM as follows:

(i) While in the "Developed Mitigated" scenario, add a Filter element under the basin element containing the post-developed land use areas. The length and width of this filter element would have to be the same as the bottom length and width of the upstream untreated stormwater storage pond/tank.

(ii) In cases where the length and width of the filter is not the same as those for the bottom of the upstream untreated stormwater storage tank/pond, the treatment system may be modeled as a Pond element followed by a Filter element. By having these two elements, WWHM would then generate a SSD table for the storage pond which then gravity flows to the Filter element. The Filter element downstream of the untreated stormwater storage pond would have a storage component through the media, and an overflow component for when the filtration capacity is exceeded.

WWHM can route the runoff from the post-developed condition through the treatment systems in 4b and determine compliance with the flow duration standard. This would be an iterative design procedure where if the initial sizing estimates for the treatment system proved to be inadequate, the designer would have to modify the system and route the runoff through it again. The iteration would continue until compliance with the flow duration standard is achieved.

5. It should be noted that the above procedures would be used to meet the flow control requirements. The filtration system must be able to meet the runoff treatment requirements. It is likely that the discharge flow rate of ½ of the 2-year or more may exceed the treatment capacity of the system. If that is the case, the untreated stormwater discharge rate(s) (i.e., influent to the treatment system) must be reduced to allow proper treatment. Any reduction in the flows would likely result in the need for a larger untreated stormwater storage volume.

If system design does not allow you to discharge at the slower rates as described above and if the site has a retention or detention pond that will serve the planned development, the discharge from the treatment system may be directed to the permanent retention/detention pond to comply with the flow control requirements. In this case, the untreated stormwater storage pond and treatment system will be sized according to the sizing criteria for flow-through treatment systems for flow control exempt waterbodies described earlier except all discharges (water passing through the treatment system and stormwater bypassing the treatment system) will be directed into the permanent retention/detention pond. If site constraints make locating the untreated stormwater storage pond difficult, the permanent retention/detention pond may be divided to serve as the untreated stormwater discharge pond and the post-treatment flow control pond. A berm or barrier must be used in this case so the untreated water does not mix with the treated water. Both untreated stormwater storage requirements, and adequate post-treatment flow control must be achieved. The post-treatment flow control pond's revised dimensions must be entered into the WWHM and the WWHM must be run to confirm compliance with the flow control requirement.

BMP C252: High pH Neutralization Using CO_2

Purpose

When pH levels in stormwater rise above 8.5 it is necessary to lower the pH levels to the acceptable range of 6.5 to 8.5, this process is called pH neutralization. pH neutralization involves the use of solid or compressed carbon dioxide gas in water requiring neutralization. Neutralized stormwater may be discharged to surface waters under the General Construction NPDES permit.

Neutralized process water such as concrete truck wash-out, hydro-demolition, or saw-cutting slurry must be managed to prevent discharge to surface waters. Any stormwater contaminated during concrete work is considered process wastewater and must not be discharged to surface waters.

Reason for pH Neutralization:

A pH level range of 6.5 to 8.5 is typical for most natural watercourses, and this neutral pH is required for the survival of aquatic organisms. Should the pH rise or drop out of this range, fish and other aquatic organisms may become stressed and may die.

Calcium hardness can contribute to high pH values and cause toxicity that is associated with high pH conditions. A high level of calcium hardness in waters of the state is not allowed.

The water quality standard for pH in Washington State is in the range of 6.5 to 8.5. Ground water standard for calcium and other dissolved solids in Washington State is less than 500 mg/l.

Conditions of Use

Causes of High pH:

High pH at construction sites is most commonly caused by the contact of stormwater with poured or recycled concrete, cement, mortars, and other Portland cement or lime containing construction materials. (See BMP C151: Concrete Handling for more information on concrete handling procedures). The principal caustic agent in cement is calcium hydroxide (free lime).

Advantages of CO_2 Sparging:

- Rapidly neutralizes high pH water.
- Cost effective and safer to handle than acid compounds.
- CO_2 is self-buffering. It is difficult to overdose and create harmfully low pH levels.
- Material is readily available.

The Chemical Process:

When carbon dioxide (CO_2) is added to water (H_2O), carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) is formed which can further dissociate into a proton (H^+) and a bicarbonate anion (HCO_3^-) as shown below:

$$CO_2 + H_2O \leftrightarrow H_2CO_3 \leftrightarrow H^+ + HCO_3^-$$

The free proton is a weak acid that can lower the pH. Water temperature has an effect on the reaction as well. The colder the water temperature is the slower the reaction occurs and the warmer the water temperature is the quicker the reaction occurs. Most construction applications in Washington State have water temperatures in the 50°F or higher range so the reaction is almost simultaneous.

Design and Installation Specifications

Treatment Process:

High pH water may be treated using continuous treatment, continuous discharge systems. These manufactured systems continuously monitor influent and effluent pH to ensure that pH values are within an acceptable range before being discharged. All systems must have fail safe automatic shut off switches in the event that pH is not within the acceptable discharge range. Only trained operators may operate manufactured systems. System manufacturers often provide trained operators or training on their devices.

The following procedure may be used when not using a continuous discharge system:

1. Prior to treatment, the appropriate jurisdiction should be notified in accordance with the regulations set by the jurisdiction.
2. Every effort should be made to isolate the potential high pH water in order to treat it separately from other stormwater on-site.
3. Water should be stored in an acceptable storage facility, detention pond, or containment cell prior to treatment.
4. Transfer water to be treated to the treatment structure. Ensure that treatment structure size is sufficient to hold the amount of water that is to be treated. Do not fill tank completely, allow at least 2 feet of freeboard.
5. The operator samples the water for pH and notes the clarity of the water. As a rule of thumb, less CO_2 is necessary for clearer water. This information should be recorded.
6. In the pH adjustment structure, add CO_2 until the pH falls in the range of 6.9-7.1. Remember that pH water quality standards apply so adjusting pH to within 0.2 pH units of receiving water (background pH) is recommended. It is unlikely that pH can be adjusted to within 0.2 pH units using dry ice. Compressed carbon dioxide gas should be introduced to the water using a carbon dioxide diffuser located near

the bottom of the tank, this will allow carbon dioxide to bubble up through the water and diffuse more evenly.

7. Slowly discharge the water making sure water does not get stirred up in the process. Release about 80% of the water from the structure leaving any sludge behind.
8. Discharge treated water through a pond or drainage system.
9. Excess sludge needs to be disposed of properly as concrete waste. If several batches of water are undergoing pH treatment, sludge can be left in treatment structure for the next batch treatment. Dispose of sludge when it fills 50% of tank volume.

Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site must also control stormwater release rates during construction. All treated stormwater must go through a flow control facility before being released to surface waters which require flow control.

Maintenance Standards

Safety and Materials Handling:

- All equipment should be handled in accordance with OSHA rules and regulations.
- Follow manufacturer guidelines for materials handling.

Operator Records:

Each operator should provide:

- A diagram of the monitoring and treatment equipment.
- A description of the pumping rates and capacity the treatment equipment is capable of treating.

Each operator should keep a written record of the following:

- Client name and phone number.
- Date of treatment.
- Weather conditions.
- Project name and location.
- Volume of water treated.
- pH of untreated water.
- Amount of CO_2 needed to adjust water to a pH range of 6.9-7.1.
- pH of treated water.
- Discharge point location and description.

A copy of this record should be given to the client/contractor who should retain the record for three years.

BMP C253: pH Control for High pH Water

Purpose

When pH levels in stormwater rise above 8.5 it is necessary to lower the pH levels to the acceptable range of 6.5 to 8.5, this process is called pH neutralization. Stormwater with pH levels exceeding water quality standards may be treated by infiltration, dispersion in vegetation or compost, pumping to a sanitary sewer, disposal at a permitted concrete batch plant with pH neutralization capabilities, or carbon dioxide sparging. BMP C252 gives guidelines for carbon dioxide sparging.

Reason for pH Neutralization:

A pH level range of 6.5 to 8.5 is typical for most natural watercourses, and this pH range is required for the survival of aquatic organisms. Should the pH rise or drop out of this range, fish and other aquatic organisms may become stressed and may die.

Conditions of Use

Causes of High pH:

High pH levels at construction sites are most commonly caused by the contact of stormwater with poured or recycled concrete, cement, mortars, and other Portland cement or lime containing construction materials. (See BMP C151: Concrete Handling for more information on concrete handling procedures). The principal caustic agent in cement is calcium hydroxide (free lime).

Design and Installation Specifications

Disposal Methods:

Infiltration

- Infiltration is only allowed if soil type allows all water to infiltrate (no surface runoff) without causing or contributing to a violation of surface or ground water quality standards.
- Infiltration techniques should be consistent with Volume V, Chapter 7

Dispersion

Use BMP T5.30 Full Dispersion

Sanitary Sewer Disposal

- Local sewer authority approval is required prior to disposal via the sanitary sewer.

Concrete Batch Plant Disposal

- Only permitted facilities may accept high pH water.
- Facility should be contacted before treatment to ensure they can accept the high pH water.

Stormwater Discharge

Any pH treatment options that generate treated water that must be discharged off site are subject to flow control requirements. Sites that must implement flow control for the developed site must also control stormwater release rates during construction. All treated stormwater must go through a flow control facility before being released to surface waters which require flow control.

Resource Materials

Association of General Contractors of Washington, Water Quality Manual.

Clark County Conservation District, Erosion and Runoff Control, January 1981.

King County Conservation District, Construction and Erosion Control, December 1981.

King County Department of Transportation Road Maintenance BMP Manual (Final Draft), May 1998.

King County Surface Water Design Manual, September 1998.

Maryland Erosion and Sedimentation Control Manual, 1983.

Michigan State Guidebook for Erosion and Sediment Control, 1975.

Snohomish County Addendum to the 1992 Ecology Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin, September 1998.

University of Washington, by Loren Reinelt, Construction Site Erosion and Sediment Control Inspector Training Manual, Center for Urban Water Resources Management, October 1991.

University of Washington, by Loren Reinelt, Processes, Procedures, and Methods to Control Pollution Resulting from all Construction Activity, Center for Urban Water Resources Management, October 1991.

Virginia Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook, 2nd Edition, 1980.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix II-A Recommended Standard Notes for Erosion Control Plans

The following standard notes are suggested for use in erosion control plans. Local jurisdictions may have other mandatory notes for construction plans that are applicable. Plans should also identify with phone numbers the person or firm responsible for the preparation of and maintenance of the erosion control plan.

Standard Notes

Approval of this erosion/sedimentation control (ESC) plan does not constitute an approval of permanent road or drainage design (e.g. size and location of roads, pipes, restrictors, channels, retention facilities, utilities).

The implementation of these ESC plans and the construction, maintenance, replacement, and upgrading of these ESC facilities is the responsibility of the applicant/contractor until all construction is completed and approved and vegetation/landscaping is established.

The boundaries of the clearing limits shown on this plan shall be clearly flagged in the field prior to construction. During the construction period, no disturbance beyond the flagged clearing limits shall be permitted. The flagging shall be maintained by the applicant/contractor for the duration of construction.

The ESC facilities shown on this plan must be constructed in conjunction with all clearing and grading activities, and in such a manner as to insure that sediment and sediment laden water do not enter the drainage system, roadways, or violate applicable water standards.

The ESC facilities shown on this plan are the minimum requirements for anticipated site conditions. During the construction period, these ESC facilities shall be upgraded as needed for unexpected storm events and to ensure that sediment and sediment-laden water do not leave the site.

The ESC facilities shall be inspected daily by the applicant/contractor and maintained as necessary to ensure their continued functioning.

The ESC facilities on inactive sites shall be inspected and maintained a minimum of once a month or within the 48 hours following a major storm event.

At no time shall more than one foot of sediment be allowed to accumulate within a trapped catch basin. All catch basins and conveyance lines shall be cleaned prior to paving. The cleaning operation shall not flush sediment laden water into the downstream system.

Stabilized construction entrances shall be installed at the beginning of construction and maintained for the duration of the project. Additional measures may be required to insure that all paved areas are kept clean for the duration of the project.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix II-B Background Information on Chemical Treatment

Coagulation and flocculation have been used for over a century to treat water. It is used less frequently for the treatment of wastewater. The use of coagulation and flocculation for treating stormwater is a very recent application. Experience with the treatment of water and wastewater has resulted in a basic understanding of the process, in particular factors that affect performance. This experience can provide insights as to how to most effectively design and operate similar systems in the treatment of stormwater.

Fine particles suspended in water give it a milky appearance, measured as turbidity. Their small size, often much less than 1 µm in diameter, give them a very large surface area relative to their volume. These fine particles typically carry a negative surface charge. Largely because of these two factors, small size and negative charge, these particles tend to stay in suspension for extended periods of time. Thus, removal is not practical by gravity settling. These are called stable suspensions. Polymers, as well as inorganic chemicals such as alum, speed the process of clarification. The added chemical destabilizes the suspension and causes the smaller particles to agglomerate. The process consists of three steps: coagulation, flocculation, and settling or clarification. Each step is explained below as well as the factors that affect the efficiency of the process.

<u>Coagulation:</u> Coagulation is the first step. It is the process by which negative charges on the fine particles that prevent their agglomeration are disrupted. Chemical addition is one method of destabilizing the suspension, and polymers are one class of chemicals that are generally effective. Chemicals that are used for this purpose are called coagulants. Coagulation is complete when the suspension is destabilized by the neutralization of the negative charges. Coagulants perform best when they are thoroughly and evenly dispersed under relatively intense mixing. This rapid mixing involves adding the coagulant in a manner that promotes rapid dispersion, followed by a short time period for destabilization of the particle suspension. The particles are still very small and are not readily separated by clarification until flocculation occurs.

<u>Flocculation:</u> Flocculation is the process by which fine particles that have been destabilized bind together to form larger particles that settle rapidly. Flocculation begins naturally following coagulation, but is enhanced by gentle mixing of the destabilized suspension. Gentle mixing helps to bring particles in contact with one another such that they bind and continually grow to form "flocs." As the size of the flocs increases they become heavier and tend to settle more rapidly.

<u>Clarification:</u> The final step is the settling of the particles. Particle density, size and shape are important during settling. Dense, compact flocs settle more readily than less dense, fluffy flocs. Because of this, flocculation to form dense, compact flocs is particularly important during water treatment. Water temperature is important during settling. Both the density and viscosity of water are affected by temperature; these in turn affect settling. Cold temperatures increase viscosity and density, thus slowing down the rate at which the particles settle.

The conditions under which clarification is achieved can affect performance. Currents can affect settling. Currents can be produced by wind, by differences between the temperature of the incoming water and the water in the clarifier, and by flow conditions near the inlets and outlets.

Quiescent water such as that which occurs during batch clarification provides a good environment for effective performance as many of these factors become less important in comparison to typical sedimentation basins. One source of currents that is likely important in batch systems is movement of the water leaving the clarifier unit. Given that flocs are relatively small and light the exit velocity of the water must be as low as possible. Sediment on the bottom of the basin can be resuspended and removed by fairly modest velocities.

Coagulants: Polymers are large organic molecules that are made up of subunits linked together in a chain-like structure. Attached to these chain-like structures are other groups that carry positive or negative charges, or have no charge. Polymers that carry groups with positive charges are called cationic, those with negative charges are called anionic, and those with no charge (neutral) are called nonionic.

Cationic polymers can be used as coagulants to destabilize negatively charged turbidity particles present in natural waters, wastewater and stormwater. Aluminum sulfate (alum) can also be used as this chemical becomes positively charged when dispersed in water. In practice, the only way to determine whether a polymer is effective for a specific application is to perform preliminary or on-site testing.

Polymers are available as powders, concentrated liquids, and emulsions (which appear as milky liquids). The latter are petroleum based, which are not allowed for construction stormwater treatment. Polymer effectiveness can degrade with time and also from other influences. Thus, manufacturers' recommendations for storage should be followed. Manufacturer's recommendations usually do not provide assurance of water quality protection or safety to aquatic organisms. Consideration of water quality protection is necessary in the selection and use of all polymers.

Application Considerations: Application of coagulants at the appropriate concentration or dosage rate for optimum turbidity removal is important for management of chemical cost, for effective performance, and to avoid aquatic toxicity. The optimum dose in a given application depends on several site-specific features. Turbidity of untreated water can be important with turbidities greater than 5,000 NTU. The surface charge of particles to be removed is also important. Environmental factors that can influence dosage rate are water temperature, pH, and the presence of constituents that consume or otherwise affect polymer effectiveness. Laboratory experiments indicate that mixing previously settled sediment (floc sludge) with the untreated stormwater significantly improves clarification, therefore reducing the effective dosage rate. Preparation of working solutions and thorough dispersal of polymers in water to be treated is also important to establish the appropriate dosage rate.

For a given water sample, there is generally an optimum dosage rate that yields the lowest residual turbidity after settling. When dosage rates below this optimum value (underdosing) are applied, there is an insufficient quantity of coagulant to react with, and therefore destabilize, all of the turbidity present. The result is residual turbidity (after flocculation and settling) that is higher than with the optimum dose. Overdosing, application of dosage rates greater than the optimum value, can also negatively impact performance. Again, the result is higher residual turbidity than that with the optimum dose.

Mixing in Coagulation/Flocculation: The G-value, or just "G", is often used as a measure of the mixing intensity applied during coagulation and flocculation. The symbol G stands for "velocity gradient", which is related in part to the degree of turbulence generated during mixing. High G-values mean high turbulence, and vice versa. High G-values provide the best conditions for coagulant addition. With high G's, turbulence is high and coagulants are rapidly dispersed to their appropriate concentrations for effective destabilization of particle suspensions.

Low G-values provide the best conditions for flocculation. Here, the goal is to promote formation of dense, compact flocs that will settle readily. Low G's provide low turbulence to promote particle collisions so that flocs can form. Low G's generate sufficient turbulence such that collisions are effective in floc formation, but do not break up flocs that have already formed.

Design engineers wishing to review more detailed presentations on this subject are referred to the following textbooks.

- Fair, G., J. Geyer and D. Okun, Water and Wastewater Engineering, Wiley and Sons, NY, 1968.
- American Water Works Association, Water Quality and Treatment, McGraw-Hill, NY, 1990.
- Weber, W.J., Physiochemical Processes for Water Quality Control, Wiley and Sons, NY, 1972.

<u>Adjustment of the pH and Alkalinity:</u> The pH must be in the proper range for the polymers to be effective, which is 6.5 to 8.5 for Calgon CatFloc 2953, the most commonly used polymer. As polymers tend to lower the pH, it is important that the stormwater have sufficient buffering capacity. Buffering capacity is a function of alkalinity. Without sufficient alkalinity, the application of the polymer may lower the pH to below 6.5. A pH below 6.5 not only reduces the effectiveness of the polymer, it may create a toxic condition for aquatic organisms. Stormwater may not be discharged without readjustment of the pH to above 6.5. The target pH should be within 0.2 standard units of the receiving water pH.

Experience gained at several projects in the City of Redmond has shown that the alkalinity needs to be at least 50 mg/L to prevent a drop in pH to below 6.5 when the polymer is added.

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume III
Hydrologic Analysis and Flow Control BMPs

Prepared by:
Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

December 2014
Publication No. 14-10-055
(A revision of Publication No. 12-10-030)

Acknowledgments

The Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) gratefully acknowledges the valuable time, comments, and expertise provided by the people listed below who contributed to the 2012 revision of Volume III of the SWMMWW. Ecology is solely responsible for any errors, omissions, and final decisions related to the 2012 SWMMWW.

Name	Affiliation
Pat Allen	Thurston County
Dustin Atchison	CH2M Hill, Inc.
David Baumgarten	Associated Earth Sciences, Inc.
Philip Benenati	AECOM
Doug Beyerlein	Clear Creek Solutions, Inc.
Joe Brascher	Clear Creek Solutions, Inc.
Art Chi	City of Bellevue
Shanti Colwell	Seattle Public Utilities
Jeff Fowler	City of Seattle
Claire Gibson	Seattle Public Utilities
Kim Gridley	Washington State University
Curtis Hinman	Washington State University
Josh Johnson	City of Longview
Scott Kindred	Aspect Consulting, Inc.
Curtis Koger	Associated Earth Sciences, Inc.
Alice Lancaster	Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc.
Bill Leif	Snohomish County
Dino Marshalonis	U.S. EPA
Glorilyn Maw	MP Stormwater Engineering LLC
Chris May	Kitsap County
Aimee Navickis-Brasch	Washington State Dept. of Transportation
Leigh Nelson	Gray & Osborn, Inc.
Robert Nolan	Ecology, Water Quality, NWRO
Elissa Ostergaard	City of Bellevue
Charles Pitz	Ecology, Environmental Assessment
Aaron Poresky	Geosyntec Consultants
Chris Robertson	Shannon & Wilson, Inc.
Jerallyn Roetemeyer	City of Redmond
Stacey Rush	City of Kirkland
Jennifer Saltonstall	Associated Earth Sciences, Inc.
Mary Shaleen-Hansen	Ecology, Water Quality
Tracy Tackett	Seattle Public Utilities
David Tucker	Kitsap County
Phyllis Varner	City of Bellevue
Rick Watson	City of Bellevue
Larry West	Shannon & Wilson, Inc.

Ecology Technical Lead
Ed O'Brien, P.E. – 2012 edit
Foroozan Labib, P.E. – 2012 edit

Technical Review and Editing
Carrie A. Graul – 2012 edit
Julie Robertson – 2012 edit
Kelsey Highfill – 2012 edit

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Chapter 1 - Introduction

1.1 Purpose of this Volume

Best Management Practices (BMPs) are schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, managerial practices, or structural features that prevent or reduce adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. As described in Volume I of this stormwater manual, BMPs for long-term management of stormwater at developed sites can be divided into three main categories:

- BMPs addressing the volume and timing of stormwater flows,
- BMPs addressing prevention of pollution from potential sources.
- BMPs addressing treatment of runoff to remove sediment and other pollutants.

This volume of the stormwater manual focuses mainly on the first category. It presents techniques of hydrologic analysis, and BMPs related to management of the amount and timing of stormwater flows from developed sites. The purpose of this volume is to provide guidance on the estimation and control of stormwater runoff quantity.

BMPs for preventing pollution of stormwater runoff and for treating contaminated runoff are presented in Volumes IV and V, respectively.

1.2 Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume III of the stormwater manual contains three chapters. Chapter 1 serves as an introduction. Chapter 2 reviews methods of hydrologic analysis, covers the use of hydrograph methods for designing BMPs, and provides an overview of various computerized modeling methods and analysis of closed depressions. Chapter 3 describes flow control BMPs and provides design specifications for roof downspouts and detention facilities. It also provides design considerations of infiltration facilities for flow control.

This volume includes three appendices. Appendix A has isopluvial maps for western Washington. Appendix B has information and assumptions on the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM). Appendix C includes detailed information concerning how to represent various Low Impact Development (LID) techniques in continuous runoff models so that the models predict lower surface runoff rates and volumes.

Design considerations for conveyance systems are not included in the stormwater manual, as this topic is adequately covered in standard engineering references.

1.3 How to Use this Volume

Volume I should be consulted to determine Minimum Requirements for flow management (e.g., Minimum Requirements #4, #5 and #7 in Chapter 2 of Volume I). After the Minimum Requirements have been determined, this volume should be consulted to design flow management facilities. These facilities can then be included in Stormwater Site Plans (see Volume I, Chapter 3).

Chapter 2 - Hydrologic Analysis

The broad definition of hydrology is "the science which studies the source, properties, distribution, and laws of water as it moves through its closed cycle on the earth (the hydrologic cycle)." As applied in this manual, however, the term "hydrologic analysis" addresses and quantifies only a small portion of this cycle. That portion is the relatively short-term movement of water over the land resulting directly from precipitation and called surface water or stormwater runoff. Localized and long-term ground water movement must also be of concern, but generally only as this relates to the movement of water on or near the surface, such as stream base flow or infiltration systems.

The purpose of this chapter is to define the minimum computational standards required, to outline how these may be applied, and to reference where more complete details may be found, should they be needed. This chapter also provides details on the hydrologic design process; that is, what are the steps required in conducting a hydrologic analysis, including flow routing.

2.1 Minimum Computational Standards

The minimum computational standards depend on the type of information required and the size of the drainage area to be analyzed, as follows:

1. For the purpose of designing most types of runoff treatment BMPs, a calibrated continuous simulation hydrologic model based on the EPA's HSPF (Hydrologic Simulation Program-Fortran) program, or an approved equivalent model, must be used to calculate runoff and determine the water quality design flow rates and volumes.

   For the purpose of designing wetpool treatment facilities, there are two acceptable methods: an approved continuous runoff model to estimate the 91st percentile, 24-hour runoff volume, or the NRCS (Natural Resources Conservation Service) curve number method to determine a water quality design storm volume. The water quality design storm volume is the amount of runoff predicted from the 6-month, 24-hour storm.

   For the purpose of designing flow control BMPs, a calibrated continuous simulation hydrologic model, based on the EPA's HSPF, must be used.

   The circumstances under which different methodologies apply are summarized below in Table 2.1.1.

Table 2.1.1
Summary of the application design methodologies

Method	BMP designs in western Washington	
	Treatment	Flow Control
SCSUH/SBUH (Soil Conservation Service Unit Hydrograph/Santa Barbara Unit Hydrograph)	Method applies for BMPs that are sized based on the volume of runoff from a 6-month, 24-hour storm. Currently, that includes only wetpool-facilities. **Note**: These BMPs don't require generating a hydrograph.	Not Applicable
Continuous Runoff Models: (WWHM or approved alternatives. See below)	Method applies to all BMPs.	Method applies throughout Western Washington

2. If a basin plan is being prepared, then a hydrologic analysis should be performed using a continuous simulation model such as the EPA's HSPF model, the EPA's Stormwater Management Model (SWMM), or an equivalent model as approved by the local government.

   Significant progress has been made in the development and availability of HSPF-based continuous runoff models for Western Washington. The Department of Ecology has coordinated the development of the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM). It uses rainfall/runoff relationships developed for specific basins in the Puget Sound region to all parts of western Washington. Where field monitoring establishes basin-specific rainfall/runoff parameter calibrations, those can be entered into the model, superseding the default input parameters.

   Two other HSPF-based continuous runoff models have been approved by the Department of Ecology: MGS Flood and KCRTS (King County Runoff Time Series). Though MGS Flood uses different, extended precipitation files, its features and more importantly, its runoff estimations are very similar to those predicted by WWHM. KCRTS is a pre-packaged set of runoff files developed by King County. It can be used throughout King County. Use of other continuous simulation models should receive prior approval from Ecology.

   Where large master-planned developments are proposed, local governments should consider requiring a basin-specific calibration of HSPF rather than use of the default parameters in the above-referenced models. Ecology suggests such basin-specific calibrations should be considered for projects that will occupy more than 320 acres.

2.1.1 Discussion of Hydrologic Analysis Methods Used for Designing BMPs

This section provides a discussion of the methodologies to be used for calculating stormwater runoff from a project site. It includes a discussion of estimating stormwater runoff with single event models, such as the Santa Barbara Unit Hydrograph (SBUH), versus continuous simulation models.

Single Event and Continuous Simulation Model

A continuous simulation model has considerable advantages over the single event-based methods such as the SCSUH, SBUH, or the Rational Method. HSPF is a continuous simulation model that is capable of simulating a wider range of hydrologic responses than the single event models such as the SBUH method. Single event models cannot take into account storm events that may occur just before or just after the single event (the design storm) that is under consideration. In addition, the runoff files generated by the HSPF models are the result of a considerable effort to introduce local parameters and actual rainfall data into the model and therefore produce better estimations of runoff than the SCSUH, SBUH, or Rational methods.

Ecology has developed a continuous simulation hydrologic model (WWHM) based on the HSPF for use in western Washington (see Section 2.2). Continuous rainfall records/data files have been obtained and appropriate adjustment factors were developed as input to HSPF. Input algorithms (referred to as IMPLND and PERLND) have been developed for a number of watershed basins in King, Pierce, Snohomish, and Thurston counties. These rainfall files and model algorithms are used in the HSPF in western Washington. Local counties and cities are encouraged to develop basin-specific calibrations of HSPF that can be input into the WWHM. However, until such a calibration is developed for a specific basin, the input data mentioned above must be used throughout western Washington.

Concerns with SBUH

A summary of the concerns with SBUH and other single event models is in order.

While SBUH may give acceptable estimates of total runoff volumes, it tends to overestimate peak flow rates from pervious areas because it cannot adequately model subsurface flow (which is a dominant flow regime for pre-development conditions in western Washington basins). One reason SBUH overestimates the peak flow rate for pervious areas is that the actual time of concentration is typically greater than what is assumed. Better flow estimates could be made if a longer time of concentration was used. This would change both the peak flow rate (i.e., it would be lower) and the shape of the hydrograph (i.e., peak occurs somewhat later) such that the hydrograph would better reflect actual pre-developed conditions.

Another reason for overestimation of the runoff is the curve numbers (CN) in the 1992 Manual. These curve numbers were developed by US-Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), formerly the Soil Conservation Service (SCS) and published as the Western Washington Supplemental Curve Numbers. These CN values are typically higher than the standard CN values published in Technical Release 55, June 1986. In 1995, the NRCS recalled the use of the western Washington CNs for floodplain management and found that the standard CNs better describe the hydrologic conditions for rainfall events in western Washington. However, based on runoff comparisons with the KCRTS better estimates of runoff are obtained when using the western Washington CNs for the developed areas such as parks, lawns, and other landscaped areas. Accordingly, the CNs in this manual (see Table 2.3.2) are changed to those in the Technical Release 55 except for the open spaces category for the developed areas which include, lawn, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, and landscaped areas. For these areas, the western Washington CNs are used. These changes are intended to provide better runoff estimates using the SBUH method.

Another major weakness of SBUH is that it is used to model a 24-hour storm event, which is too short to model longer-term storms in western Washington. The use of a longer-term (e.g., 3- or 7-day storm) is perhaps better suited for western Washington.

Related to the last concern is the fact that single event approaches, such as SBUH, assume that flow control ponds are empty at the start of the design event. Continuous runoff models are able to simulate a continuous long-term record of runoff and soil moisture conditions. They simulate situations where ponds are not empty when another rain event begins.

Finally, single event models do not allow for estimation and analyses of flow durations nor water level fluctuations. Flow durations are necessary for discharges to streams. Estimates of water level fluctuations are necessary for discharges to wetlands and for tracking influent water elevations and bypass quantities to properly size treatment facilities.

2.2 Western Washington Hydrology Model

This section summarizes the assumptions made in creating the western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) and discusses limitations of the model. Appendix III-B contains more information on the assumptions and on WWHM. However, since the first version of WWHM was developed and released to public in 2001, the WWHM program has gone through several upgrades incorporating new features and capabilities including low impact development (LID) modeling capability. WWHM users should periodically check Ecology's WWHM web site for the latest releases of

WWHM, user manual, and any supplemental instructions. The web address for WWHM is: www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/wwhmtraining/index.html.

2.2.1 Limitations to the WWHM

Ecology created WWHM for the specific purpose of sizing stormwater control facilities for new developments in western Washington. WWHM can be used for a range of conditions and developments; however, certain limitations are inherent in this software.

WWHM uses the EPA HSPF software program to do all of the rainfall-runoff and routing computations. Therefore, HSPF limitations are included in WWHM. For example, backwater or tailwater control situations are not explicitly modeled by HSPF. This is also true in WWHM.

Earlier versions of WWHM, WWHM1and WWHM2 had limited routing capabilities. The routing capabilities of WWHM3 and WWHM2012 have improved and the user can input multiple stormwater control facilities and runoff is routed through them. If the proposed development site involves routing through a natural lake or wetland in addition to multiple stormwater control facilities, WWHM2012 can be used to do the routing computations and additional analysis.

2.2.2 Assumptions made in creating the WWHM

Precipitation data.

- WWHM uses long-term (over 50 years) precipitation data to simulate the potential impacts of land use development in western Washington. A minimum period of 20 years is required to simulate enough peak flow events to produce accurate flow frequency results.
- WWHM uses a over 17 precipitation stations, representing the different rainfall regimes found in western Washington. Ecology encourages local governments to use more detailed local precipitation data when available.
- The precipitation stations represent rainfall at elevations below 1500 feet. WWHM does not include snowfall and snowmelt.
- National Weather Service stations provide the primary source for precipitation data.
- The base computational time step used in the earlier versions of WWHM was one hour. However, WWHM2012 incorporates and uses 15-minute precipitation data.

The 15-minute time step was selected to better represent the temporal variability of actual precipitation. These data are used in WWHM2012 computations to generate runoff hydrograph. The computations include generating design flows and volumes for sizing water quality treatment facilities. The 15-minute water quality design flows are used for the design of water quality treatment facilities that are expected to have a hydraulic residence time of less than one hour. **Precipitation multiplication factors.**

- WWHM uses precipitation multiplication factors to increase or decrease recorded precipitation data to better represent local rainfall conditions.
- The factors are based on the ratio of the 24-hour, 25-year rainfall intensities for the representative precipitation gage and the surrounding area represented by that gage's record.
- The factors have been placed in the WWHM database and linked to each county's map. They will be transparent to the general user: however, the advanced user has the ability to change the coefficient for a specific site where justified and approved by the reviewing jurisdiction. Changes made by the user will be recorded in the WWHM output. By default, WWHM does not allow the precipitation multiplication factor to go below 0.8 or above 2.

Pan evaporation data.

- WWHM uses pan evaporation coefficients to compute the actual evapotranspiration potential (AET) for a site, based on the potential evapotranspiration (PET) and available moisture supply. AET accounts for the precipitation that returns to the atmosphere without becoming runoff.
- The pan evaporation coefficients have been placed in the WWHM database and linked to each county's map. They will be transparent to the general user. Advanced users have the ability to change the coefficient for a specific site where justified and approved by the reviewing jurisdiction. These changes will be recorded in the WWHM output.

Soil data.

- WWHM uses three predominant soil types to represent the soils of western Washington: till, outwash, and saturated.
- The user determines actual local soil conditions for the specific development planned and inputs that data into WWHM. The user inputs the number of acres of outwash (A/B), till (C), and saturated (wetland) soils for the site conditions.
- Additional soils will be included in WWHM if appropriate HSPF parameter values are found to represent other major soil groups.

Vegetation data.

- WWHM represents the vegetation of western Washington with three predominant vegetation categories: forest, pasture, and lawn (also known as grass).
- The predevelopment land conditions are generally assumed as forest (the default condition), however, the user has the option of specifying pasture if there is documented evidence that pasture vegetation was native to the pre-development site. In highly urbanized basins (see Minimum Requirement #7 in Volume I, Chapter 2), it is possible to use the existing land cover as the pre-developed land condition.

Development land use data.

- Development land use data are used to represent the type of development planned for the site and are used to determine the appropriate size of the required stormwater mitigation facility.
- Earlier versions of WWHM included a Standard residential development option which made specific assumptions about the amount of impervious area per lot and its division between driveways and rooftops. Streets and sidewalk areas were input separately. Ecology had selected a standard impervious area of 4200 square feet per residential lot, with 1000 square feet of that as driveway, walkways, and patio area, and the remainder as rooftop area.

The more recent versions of WWHM (e.g., WWHM3 or WWHM2012) no longer have the Standard residential development category. Users can use the above land use assumptions for a modeling runoff from Standard residential development or, where better land use information is available, use that information to model and estimate runoff from the residential development.

- WWHM distinguishes between effective impervious area and non-effective impervious area in calculating total impervious area.
- Credits are given for infiltration and dispersion of roof runoff and for use of porous pavement for driveway areas. Ecology anticipates that future versions of WWHM will include LID modeling features, will calculate credits directly in the model, and will come with a user manual that provides modeling instructions for LIDs.
- Forest and pasture vegetation areas are only appropriate for separate undeveloped parcels dedicated as open space, wetland buffer, or park within the total area of the development. ***Development areas must only be designated as forest or pasture where legal restrictions can be documented that protect these areas from future disturbances.***
- WWHM can model bypassing a portion of the runoff from the development area around a stormwater detention facility and/or having off-site inflow enter the development area.

Application of WWHM in Redevelopments Projects

Redevelopment requirements may allow, for some portions of the redevelopment project area, the predeveloped condition to be modeled as the existing condition rather than forested or pasture condition. For instance, where the replaced impervious areas do not have to be served by updated flow control facilities because area or cost thresholds in Section 2.4.2 of Volume I are not exceeded.

Pervious and Impervious Land Categories (PERLND and IMPLND parameter values)

- In WWHM (and HSPF) pervious land categories are represented by PERLNDs; impervious land categories by IMPLNDs.
- WWHM provides over 20 unique PERLND parameters that describe various hydrologic factors that influence runoff and 4 parameters to represent IMPLND.

These values are based on regional parameter values developed by the U.S. Geological Survey for watersheds in western Washington (Dinicola, 1990) plus additional HSPF modeling work conducted by AQUA TERRA Consultants.

Surface runoff and interflow are computed based on the PERLND and IMPLND parameter values. Ground water flow can also be computed and added to the total runoff from a development if there is a reason to believe that ground water would be surfacing (such as where there is a cut in a slope). However, the default condition in WWHM assumes that no ground water flow from small catchments reaches the surface to become runoff.

2.2.3 Guidance for flow-related standards

Flow-related standards are used to determine whether or not a proposed stormwater facility will provide a sufficient level of mitigation for the additional runoff from land development. There are three flow-related standards stated in Volume I of this Manual: Minimum Requirement #5 – On-site Stormwater Management; Minimum Requirement #7 - Flow Control; and Minimum Requirement #8 - Wetlands Protection).

Minimum Requirement #5 allows the user to demonstrate compliance with the LID Performance Standard of matching developed discharge durations to pre-developed durations for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 8% of the 2-year peak flow to 50% of the 2-year peak flow. If the postdevelopment flow duration values exceed any of the predevelopment flow levels between 8% and 50% of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow values, then the LID performance standard has not been met.

Minimum Requirement #7 specifies that stormwater discharges to streams shall match developed discharge durations to predeveloped durations for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow.

WWHM computes the predevelopment 2- through 100-year flow frequency values and computes the post-development runoff 2- through 100-year flow frequency values from the outlet of the proposed stormwater facility.

- The model uses pond discharge data to compare the predevelopment and postdevelopment durations and determines if the flow control standards have been met.
- There are three criteria by which flow duration values are compared:
  1. If the postdevelopment flow duration values exceed any of the predevelopment flow levels between 50% and 100% of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow values (100 Percent Threshold) then the flow duration requirement has not been met.
  2. If the postdevelopment flow duration values exceed any of the predevelopment flow levels between 100% of the 2-year and 100% of the 50-year predevelopment peak flow values more than 10 percent of the time (110 Percent Threshold) then the flow duration requirement has not been met.
  3. If more than 50 percent of the flow duration levels exceed the 100 percent threshold then the flow duration requirement has not been met.

Minimum Requirement #8 specifies that total discharge to a wetland must not deviate by more than 20% on daily basis, and must not deviate by more than 15% on a monthly basis. Flow components feeding the wetland under both pre- and post-development scenarios are assumed to be the sum of the surface, interflow, and ground water flows from the project site. Ecology has added the capability to model flows to wetlands and analyze the daily and monthly flow deviations per Minimum Requirements #8 (above) in WWHM2012.

2.3 Single Event Hydrograph Method

Hydrograph analysis utilizes the standard plot of runoff flow versus time for a given design storm, thereby allowing the key characteristics of runoff such as peak, volume, and phasing to be considered in the design of drainage facilities. Because the only utility for single event methods in this manual is to size wet pool treatment facilities, only the subjects of design storms, curve numbers and calculating runoff volumes are presented. If single event methods are used to size temporary and permanent conveyances, the reader should reference other texts and software for assistance.

2.3.1 Water Quality Design Storm

The design storm for sizing wetpool treatment facilities is the 6-month, 24-hour storm. Unless amended to reflect local precipitation statistics, the 6-month, 24-hour precipitation amount may be assumed to be 72 percent of the 2-year, 24-hour amount. Precipitation estimates of the 6-month and 2-year, 24-hour storms for certain towns and cities are listed in Appendix 1-B of Volume I. For other areas, interpolating between isopluvials for the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation and multiplying by 72% yields the appropriate storm size.

The total depth of rainfall (in tenths of an inch) for storms of 24-hour duration and 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, and 100-year recurrence intervals are published by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA). The information is presented in the form of "isopluvial" maps for each state. Isopluvial maps are maps where the contours represent total inches of rainfall for a specific duration. Isopluvial maps for the 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, and 100-year recurrence interval and 24-hour duration storm events can be found in the NOAA Atlas 2, "Precipitation - Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX-Washington." Appendix II-A provides the isopluvials for the 2, 10, and 100-year, 24-hour design storms. Other precipitation frequency data may be obtained through the Western Regional Climate Center (WRCC) at Tel: (775) 674-7010. WRCC can generate 1-30 day precipitation frequency data for the location of interest using data from 1880 to present (currently June 2012).

2.3.2 Runoff Parameters

All storm event hydrograph methods require input of parameters that describe physical drainage basin characteristics. These parameters provide the basis from which the runoff hydrograph is developed. This section describes only the key parameter of curve number that is used to estimate the runoff from the water quality design storm.

Curve Number

The NRCS (formerly SCS) has, for many years, conducted studies of the runoff characteristics for various land types. After gathering and analyzing extensive data, NRCS has developed relationships between land use, soil type, vegetation cover, interception, infiltration, surface storage, and runoff. The relationships have been characterized by a single runoff coefficient called a "curve number." The National Engineering Handbook - Section 4: Hydrology (NEH-4, SCS, August 1972) contains a detailed description of the development and use of the curve number method.

NRCS has developed "curve number" (CN) values based on soil type and land use. They can be found in *Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds,* Technical Release 55 (TR-55), June 1986, published by the NRCS. The combination of these two factors is called the "soil-cover complex." The soil-cover complexes have been assigned to one of four hydrologic soil groups, according to their runoff characteristics. NRCS has classified over

4,000 soil types into these four soil groups. Table 2.3.1 shows the hydrologic soil group of most soils in the state of Washington and provides a brief description of the four groups. For details on other soil types refer to the NRCS publication mentioned above (TR-55, 1986).

Table 2.3.1
Hydrologic Soil Series for Selected Soils in Washington State

Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group	Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group
Agnew	C	Hoko	C
Ahl	B	Hoodsport	C
Aits	C	Hoogdal	C
Alderwood	C	Hoypus	A
Arents, Alderwood	B	Huel	A
Arents, Everett	B	Indianola	A
Ashoe	B	Jonas	B
Baldhill	B	Jumpe	B
Barneston	C	Kalaloch	C
Baumgard	B	Kapowsin	C/D
Beausite	B	Katula	C
Belfast	C	Kilchis	C
Bellingham	D	Kitsap	C
Bellingham variant	C	Klaus	C
Boistfort	B	Klone	B
Bow	D	Lates	C
Briscot	D	Lebam	B
Buckley	C	Lummi	D
Bunker	B	Lynnwood	A
Cagey	C	Lystair	B
Carlsborg	A	Mal	C
Casey	D	Manley	B
Cassolary	C	Mashel	B
Cathcart	B	Maytown	C
Centralia	B	McKenna	D
Chehalis	B	McMurray	D
Chesaw	A	Melbourne	B
Cinebar	B	Menzel	B
Clallam	C	Mixed Alluvial	variable
Clayton	B	Molson	B
Coastal beaches	variable	Mukilteo	C/D
Colter	C	Naff	B
Custer	D	Nargar	A
Custer, Drained	C	National	B
Dabob	C	Neilton	A
Delphi	D	Newberg	B
Dick	A	Nisqually	B
Dimal	D	Nooksack	C
Dupont	D	Norma	C/D
Earlmont	C	Ogarty	C
Edgewick	C	Olete	C
Eld	B	Olomount	C
Elwell	B	Olympic	B
Esquatzel	B	Orcas	D
Everett	A	Oridia	D
Everson	D	Orting	D
Galvin	D	Oso	C
Getchell	A	Ovall	C
Giles	B	Pastik	C
Godfrey	D	Pheeney	C
Greenwater	A	Phelan	D

Table 2.3.1
Hydrologic Soil Series for Selected Soils in Washington State

Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group	Soil Type	Hydrologic Soil Group
Grove	C	Pilchuck	C
Harstine	C	Potchub	C
Hartnit	C	Poulsbo	C
Hoh	B	Prather	C
Puget	D	Solleks	C
Puyallup	B	Spana	D
Queets	B	Spanaway	A/B
Quilcene	C	Springdale	B
Ragnar	B	Sulsavar	B
Rainier	C	Sultan	C
Raught	B	Sultan variant	B
Reed	D	Sumas	C
Reed, Drained or Protected	C	Swantown	D
Renton	D	Tacoma	D
Republic	B	Tanwax	D
Riverwash	variable	Tanwax, Drained	C
Rober	C	Tealwhit	D
Salal	C	Tenino	C
Salkum	B	Tisch	D
Sammamish	D	Tokul	C
San Juan	A	Townsend	C
Scamman	D	Triton	D
Schneider	B	Tukwila	D
Seattle	D	Tukey	C
Sekiu	D	Urbana	C
Semiahmoo	D	Vailton	B
Shalcar	D	Verlot	C
Shano	B	Wapato	D
Shelton	C	Warden	B
Si	C	Whidbey	C
Sinclair	C	Wilkeson	B
Skipopa	D	Winston	A
Skykomish	B	Woodinville	B
Snahopish	B	Yelm	C
Snohomish	D	Zynbar	B
Solduc	B		

Notes:

Hydrologic Soil Group Classifications, as Defined by the Soil Conservation Service:

A = *(Low runoff potential) Soils having low runoff potential and high infiltration rates, even when thoroughly wetted. They consist chiefly of deep, well to excessively drained sands or gravels and have a high rate of water transmission (greater than 0.30 in/hr.).*

B = *(Moderately low runoff potential). Soils having moderate infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of moderately deep to deep, moderately well to well drained soils with moderately fine to moderately coarse textures. These soils have a moderate rate of water transmission (0.15-0.3 in/hr.).*

C = *(Moderately high runoff potential). Soils having low infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of soils with a layer that impedes downward movement of water and soils with moderately fine to fine textures. These soils have a low rate of water transmission (0.05-0.15 in/hr.).*

D = *(High runoff potential). Soils having high runoff potential. They have very low infiltration rates when thoroughly wetted and consist chiefly of clay soils with a high swelling potential, soils with a permanent high water table, soils with a hardpan or clay layer at or near the surface, and shallow soils over nearly impervious material. These soils have a very low rate of water transmission (0-0.05 in/hr.).*

** = From SCS, TR-55, Second Edition, June 1986, Exhibit A-1. Revisions made from SCS, Soil Interpretation Record, Form #5, September 1988 and various county soil surveys.*

Additional Note: Where field infiltration tests indicate a measured (initial) infiltration rate less than 0.30 in/hr, the WWHM user may model the site as a C soil. .

Table 2.3.2 shows the CNs, by land use description, for the four hydrologic soil groups. These numbers are for a 24-hour duration storm and typical antecedent soil moisture condition preceding 24-hour storms.

The following are important criteria/considerations for selection of CN values:

Many factors may affect the CN value for a given land use. For example, the movement of heavy equipment over bare ground may compact the soil so that it has a lesser infiltration rate and greater runoff potential than would be indicated by strict application of the CN value to developed site conditions.

CN values can be area weighted when they apply to pervious areas of similar CNs (within 20 CN points). However, high CN areas should not be combined with low CN areas. In this case, separate estimates of S (potential maximum natural detention) and Q_d (runoff depth) should be generated and summed to obtain the cumulative runoff volume unless the low CN areas are less than 15 percent of the subbasin.

Separate CN values must be selected for the pervious and impervious areas of an urban basin or subbasin. For residential districts the percent impervious area given in Table 2.3.2 must be used to compute the respective pervious and impervious areas. For proposed commercial areas, planned unit developments, etc., the percent impervious area must be computed from the site plan. For all other land uses the percent impervious area must be estimated from best available aerial topography and/or field reconnaissance. The pervious area CN value must be a weighted average of all the pervious area CNs within the subbasin. The impervious area CN value shall be 98.

Example: The following is an example of how CN values are selected for a sample project.

Select CNs for the following development:

Existing Land Use	-	forest (undisturbed)
Future Land Use	-	residential plat (3.6 DU/GA)
Basin Size	-	60 acres
Soil Type	-	80 percent Alderwood, 20 percent Ragnor

Table 2.3.1 shows that Alderwood soil belongs to the “C” hydrologic soil group and Ragnor soil belongs to the “B” group. Therefore, for the existing condition, CNs of 70 and 55 are read from Table 2.3.2 and areal weighted to obtain a CN value of 67. For the developed condition with 3.6 DU/GA the percent impervious of 39 percent is interpolated from Table 2.3.2 and used to compute pervious and impervious areas of 36.6 acres and 23.4 acres, respectively. The 36.6 acres of pervious area is assumed to be in Fair condition (for a conservative design) with residential yards and lawns covering the same proportions of Alderwood and Ragnor soil (80 percent and 20 percent respectively). Therefore, CNs of 90 and 85 are

read from Table 2.3.2 and areal weighted to obtain a pervious area CN value of 89. The impervious area CN value is 98. The result of this example is summarized below:

On-Site Condition	Existing	Developed
Land use	Forest	Residential
Pervious area	60 ac.	36.6 ac.
CN of pervious area	67	89
Impervious area	0 ac.	23.4 ac.
CN of impervious area	--	98

Table 2.3.2
Runoff Curve Numbers for Selected Agricultural, Suburban, and Urban Areas

(Sources: TR 55, 1986, and Stormwater Management Manual, 1992. See Section 2.1.1 for explanation)

	CNs for hydrologic soil group			
Cover type and hydrologic condition.	A	B	C	D
Curve Numbers for Pre-Development Conditions				
Pasture, grassland, or range-continuous forage for grazing:				
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed).	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
Woods:				
Fair (Woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil).	36	60	73	79
Good (Woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil).	30	55	70	77
Curve Numbers for Post-Development Conditions				
Open space (lawns, parks, golf courses, cemeteries, landscaping, etc.)[1]				
Fair condition (grass cover on 50% - 75% of the area).	77	85	90	92
Good condition (grass cover on >75% of the area)	68	80	86	90
Impervious areas:				
Open water bodies: lakes, wetlands, ponds etc.	100	100	100	100
Paved parking lots, roofs[2], driveways, etc. (excluding right-of-way)	98	98	98	98
Permeable Pavement (See Appendix C to decide which condition below to use)				
Landscaped area	77	85	90	92
50% landscaped area/50% impervious	87	91	94	96
100% impervious area	98	98	98	98
Paved	98	98	98	98
Gravel (including right-of-way)	76	85	89	91
Dirt (including right-of-way)	72	82	87	89
Pasture, grassland, or range-continuous forage for grazing:				
Poor condition (ground cover <50% or heavily grazed with no mulch).	68	79	86	89
Fair condition (ground cover 50% to 75% and not heavily grazed).	49	69	79	84
Good condition (ground cover >75% and lightly or only occasionally grazed)	39	61	74	80
Woods:				
Poor (Forest litter, small trees, and brush are destroyed by heavy grazing or regular burning).	45	66	77	83
Fair (Woods are grazed but not burned, and some forest litter covers the soil).	36	60	73	79
Good (Woods are protected from grazing, and litter and brush adequately cover the soil).	30	55	70	77

Single family residential[3]**:** Dwelling Unit/Gross Acre	Should only be used for subdivisions > 50 acres	Average Percent impervious area[3,4]	
1.0 DU/GA		15	Separate curve number
1.5 DU/GA		20	shall be selected for
2.0 DU/GA		25	pervious & impervious
2.5 DU/GA		30	portions of the site or
3.0 DU/GA		34	basin
3.5 DU/GA		38	
4.0 DU/GA		42	
4.5 DU/GA		46	
5.0 DU/GA		48	
5.5 DU/GA		50	
6.0 DU/GA		52	
6.5 DU/GA		54	
7.0 DU/GA		56	
7.5 DU/GA		58	
PUD's, condos, apartments, commercial businesses, industrial areas & & subdivisions < 50 acres	%impervious must be computed	Separate curve numbers shall be selected for pervious and impervious portions of the site	

For a more detailed and complete description of land use curve numbers refer to chapter two (2) of the Soil Conservation Service's Technical Release No. 55 , (210-VI-TR-55, Second Ed., June 1986).

[1] Composite CN's may be computed for other combinations of open space cover type.
[2]Where roof runoff and driveway runoff are infiltrated or dispersed according to the requirements in Chapter 3, the average percent impervious area may be adjusted in accordance with the procedure described under "Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Infiltration" (Section 3.1.1), and "Flow Credit for Roof Downspout Dispersion" (Section 3.1.2).
[3]Assumes roof and driveway runoff is directed into street/storm system.
[4]All the remaining pervious area (lawn) are considered to be in good condition for these curve numbers.

NRCS Curve Number Equations for determination of runoff depths and volumes

The rainfall-runoff equations of the NRCS curve number method relates a land area's runoff depth (precipitation excess) to the precipitation it receives and to its natural storage capacity, as follows:

$$Q_d = (P - 0.2S)^2 / (P + 0.8S) \qquad \text{for } P \geq 0.2S$$

and $$Q_d = 0 \qquad \text{for } P < 0.2S$$

Where:

Q_d = runoff depth in inches over the area,
P = precipitation depth in inches over the area, and
S = potential maximum natural detention, in inches over the area, due to infiltration, storage, etc.

The area's potential maximum detention, S, is related to its curve number, CN:

$$S = (1000 / CN) - 10$$

The combination of the above equations allows for estimation of the total runoff volume by computing total runoff depth, Q_d, given the total precipitation depth, P. For example, if the curve number of the area is 70, then the value of S is 4.29. With a total precipitation for the design event of 2.0 inches, the total runoff depth would be:

$$Q_d = [2.0 - 0.2\,(4.29)]^2 / [2.0 + 0.8\,(4.29)] = 0.24 \text{ inches}$$

This computed runoff represents inches over the tributary area. Therefore, the total volume of runoff is found by multiplying Q_d by the area (with necessary conversions):

Calculating the design volume for wetpool treatment facilities

Total runoff Volume (cu. ft.)	=	3,630 (cu. ft./ac. in.)	x	Q_d (in)	x	A (ac)

If the area is 10 acres, the total runoff volume is:

3,630 cu. ft./ac. in. x 0.24 in. x 10 ac. = 8,712 cu. ft.

This is the design volume for treatment BMPs for which the design criterion is based on the volume of runoff.

2.4 Closed Depression Analysis

The analysis of closed depressions requires careful assessment of the existing hydrologic performance in order to evaluate the impacts a proposed project will have. The applicable requirements (see Minimum Requirement #7) and the local government's Sensitive Areas Ordinance and Rules (if applicable) should be thoroughly reviewed prior to proceeding with the analysis.

Closed depressions generally facilitate infiltration of runoff. If a closed depression is classified as a wetland, then the Minimum Requirement #8 for wetlands applies. If there is an outflow from this wetland to a surface water (such as a creek), then the flow from this wetland must also meet the Minimum Requirement #7 for flow control. A calibrated continuous simulation hydrologic model must be used for closed depression analysis and design of mitigation facilities. If a closed depression is not classified as a wetland, model the ponding area at the bottom of the closed depression as an infiltration pond using WWHM or an approved equivalent runoff model.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 3 - Flow Control Design

Note: Figures in Chapter 3 courtesy of King County, except as noted

This chapter presents methods, criteria, and details for hydraulic analysis and design of flow control facilities and roof downspout controls. Flow control facilities are detention or infiltration facilities engineered to meet the flow control standards specified in Volume I. Roof downspout controls include infiltration trenches, dry wells, and partial dispersion systems for use in individual lots, proposed plats, and short plats. Roof downspout controls are used in conjunction with, and in addition to, any flow control facilities that may be necessary. They are included in the list of BMPs to consider for compliance with Minimum Requirement #5. Implementation of roof downspout controls may reduce the total effective impervious area and result in less runoff from these surfaces. Ecology's Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) incorporates flow credits for implementing two types of roof downspout controls. These are:

- If roof runoff is ***infiltrated*** according to the requirements of this section, the roof area may be discounted from the total project area used for sizing stormwater facilities.
- If roof runoff is ***dispersed*** according to the requirements of this section on single-family lots greater than 22,000 square feet, and the *vegetative flow*[*] path is 50 feet or larger through un***disturbed*** native landscape or lawn/landscape area that meets BMP T5.13, the roof area may be modeled as grassed surface.

This chapter also provides design procedures, criteria, and field tests methods concerning infiltration facilities used for flow control or treatment. Section 3.4 covers design of bioretention and permeable pavement facilities. Additional design considerations for bioretention facilities, a type of infiltration design, are covered in Chapter 7 of Volume V.

3.1 Roof Downspout Controls

This section presents the criteria for design and implementation of roof downspout controls. Roof downspout controls are simple pre-engineered designs for infiltrating and/or dispersing runoff from roof areas for the purposes of increasing opportunities for ground water recharge and reduction of runoff volumes from new developments.

Selection of Roof Downspout Controls

Large lots in rural areas (5 acres or greater) typically have enough area to disperse or infiltrate roof runoff. Lots created in urban areas will typically be smaller (about 8,000 square feet) and have a limited amount of area in which to site infiltration or dispersion trenches.

[*] *Vegetative flow* path is measured from the downspout or dispersion system discharge point to the downstream property line, stream, wetland, or other impervious surface.

Downspout infiltration should be used in those soils that readily infiltrate. Dispersion BMPs should be used for urban lots located in less permeable soils, where infiltration is not feasible. Where dispersion is not feasible because of very small lot size, or where there is a potential for creating drainage problems on adjacent lots, connect downspouts with perforated stub-out connections to the street storm drain system, which directs the runoff to a stormwater management facility.

Where roof downspout controls are planned, the following types must be considered in descending order of preference:

1. Full Dispersion in accordance with BMP T5.30 in Chapter 5 of Volume V, or Downspout Full Infiltration Systems in accordance with BMP T5.10A in Chapter 5 of Volume V.
2. Rain Gardens in accordance with BMP T5.14A in Chapter 5 of Volume V ,or if the project area is subject to Minimum Requirements #6 and/or #7, Bioretention in accordance with BMP T7.30 in Chapter 7 of Volume V.
3. Downspout Dispersion Systems in accordance with BMP T5.10B in Section 3.1.2.
4. Perforated Stub-out Connections in accordance with BMP T5.10C in Section 3.1.3.

Figure 3.1.1 illustrates, in general, how roof downspout controls are selected and applied in single-family subdivision projects. Where supported by appropriate soil infiltration tests, downspout full infiltration in finer soils may be practical using a larger infiltration system.

Roof downspout controls can be applied to individual commercial lot developments when the percent impervious area and pollutant characteristics are comparable to those from residential lots.

Note: Other innovative downspout control BMPs such as rain barrels, ornamental ponds, downspout cisterns, or other downspout water storage devices may be used to supplement any of the above BMPs if approved by the reviewing authority.

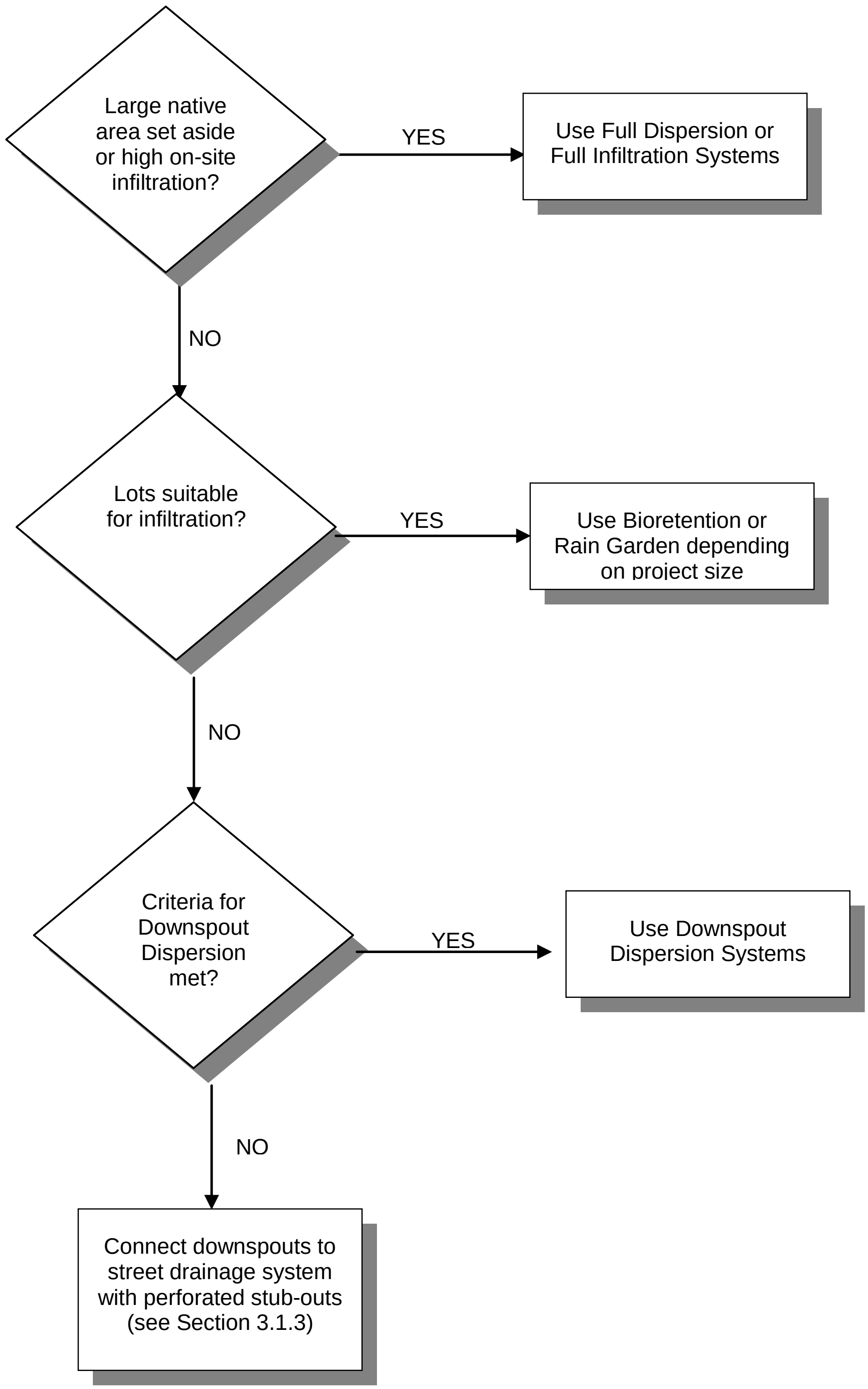


Figure 3.1.1 - Flow Diagram Showing Selection of Roof Downspout Controls

3.1.1 Downspout Full Infiltration Systems (BMP T5.10A)

Downspout full infiltration systems are trench or drywell designs intended only for use in infiltrating runoff from roof downspout drains. They are not designed to directly infiltrate runoff from pollutant-generating impervious surfaces.

Application

Projects subject to Minimum Requirement #5 (Section 2.5.5, Volume I) must provide for individual downspout full infiltration systems or full dispersion if feasible. Evaluate the feasibility, or applicability, of downspout full infiltration unless full dispersion is proposed. Use the evaluation procedure below to determine the feasibility of downspout full infiltration.

Runoff Modeling for Roof Downspout Full Infiltration

If roof runoff is infiltrated according to the requirements of this section, the roof area may be discounted from the project area used for sizing stormwater facilities.

Procedure for Evaluating Feasibility

1. Have one of the following prepare a soils report to determine if soils suitable for infiltration are present on the site:
   - A professional soil scientist certified by the Soil Science Society of America (or an equivalent national program)
   - A locally licensed on-site sewage designer
   - A suitably trained person working under the supervision of a professional engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist registered in the State of Washington.

   The report shall reference a sufficient number of soils logs to establish the type and limits of soils on the project site. The report should at a minimum identify the limits of any outwash type soils (i.e., those meeting USDA soil texture classes ranging from coarse sand and cobbles to medium sand) versus other soil types and include an inventory of topsoil depth.

2. If the lots or site does not have outwash or loam soils, and full dispersion is not feasible, then consider a rain garden or bioretention BMPs (the next lower priority on-site stormwater management system).

3. Complete additional site-specific testing on lots or sites containing outwash (coarse sand and cobbles to medium sand) and loam type soils.

   Individual lot or site tests must consist of at least one soils log at the location of the infiltration system, a minimum of 4 feet in depth from the proposed grade and at least 1 foot below the expected bottom elevation of the infiltration trench or dry well.

Identify the NRCS series of the soil and the USDA textural class of the soil horizon through the depth of the log, and note any evidence of high ground water level, such as mottling.

4. Downspout infiltration is considered feasible on lots or sites that meet all of the following:
   - 3 feet or more of permeable soil from the proposed final grade to the seasonal high ground water table.
   - At least 1-foot of clearance from the expected bottom elevation of the infiltration trench or dry well to the seasonal high ground water table.
   - The downspout full infiltration system can be designed to meet the minimum design criteria specified below.

Design Criteria for Infiltration Trenches

Figure 3.1.2 shows a typical downspout infiltration trench system, and Figure 3.1.3 presents an alternative infiltration trench system for sites with coarse sand and cobble soils. These systems are designed as specified below.

General

1. The following minimum lengths (linear feet) per 1,000 square feet of roof area based on soil type may be used for sizing downspout infiltration trenches.

Coarse sands and cobbles	20 LF
Medium sand	30 LF
Fine sand, loamy sand	75 LF
Sandy loam	125 LF
Loam	190 LF

2. Maximum length of trench shall not exceed 100 feet from the inlet sump.
3. Minimum spacing between trench centerlines shall be 6 feet.
4. Filter fabric shall be placed over the drain rock as shown on Figure 3.1.2 prior to backfilling.
5. Infiltration trenches may be placed in fill material if the fill is placed and compacted under the direct supervision of a geotechnical engineer or professional civil engineer with geotechnical expertise, and if the measured infiltration rate is at least 8 inches per hour. Trench length in fill must be 60 linear feet per 1,000 square feet of roof area. Infiltration rates can be tested using the methods described in Section 3.3.
6. Infiltration trenches should not be built on slopes steeper than 25% (4:1). A geotechnical analysis and report may be required on slopes over 15 percent or if located within 200 feet of the top of slope steeper than 40%, or in a landslide hazard area.

7. Trenches may be located under pavement if a small yard drain or catch basin with grate cover is placed at the end of the trench pipe such that overflow would occur out of the catch basin at an elevation at least one foot below that of the pavement, and in a location which can accommodate the overflow without creating a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage systems. This is intended to prevent saturation of the pavement in the event of system failure.

Design Criteria for Infiltration Drywells

Figure 3.1.4 shows a typical downspout infiltration drywell system. These systems are designed as specified below.

General

1. Drywell bottoms must be a minimum of 1 foot above seasonal high ground water level or impermeable soil layers.
2. When located in course sands and cobbles, drywells must contain a volume of gravel equal to or greater than 60 cubic feet per 1000 square feet of impervious surface served. When located in medium sands, drywells must contain at least 90 cubic feet of gravel per 1,000 square feet of impervious surface served.
3. Drywells must be at least 48 inches in diameter (minimum) and deep enough to contain the gravel amounts specified above for the soil type and impervious surface served.
4. Filter fabric (geotextile) must be placed on top of the drain rock and on trench or drywell sides prior to backfilling.
5. Spacing between drywells must be a minimum of 10 feet.
6. Downspout infiltration drywells must not be built on slopes greater than 25% (4:1). Drywells may not be placed on or above a landslide hazard area or on slopes greater than 15% without evaluation by a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist, and with jurisdiction approval.

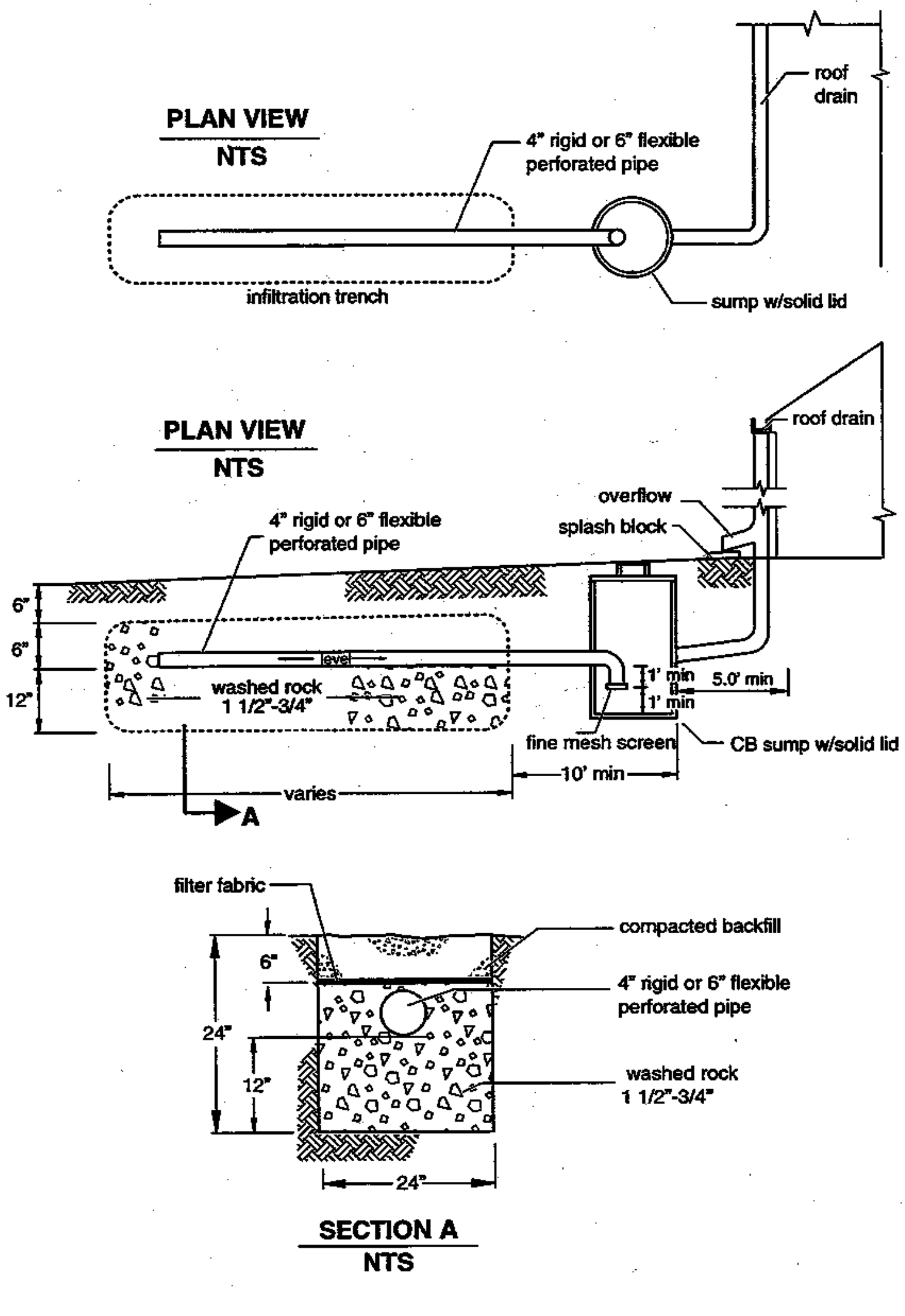


Figure 3.1.2 - Typical Downspout Infiltration Trench

Source: King County

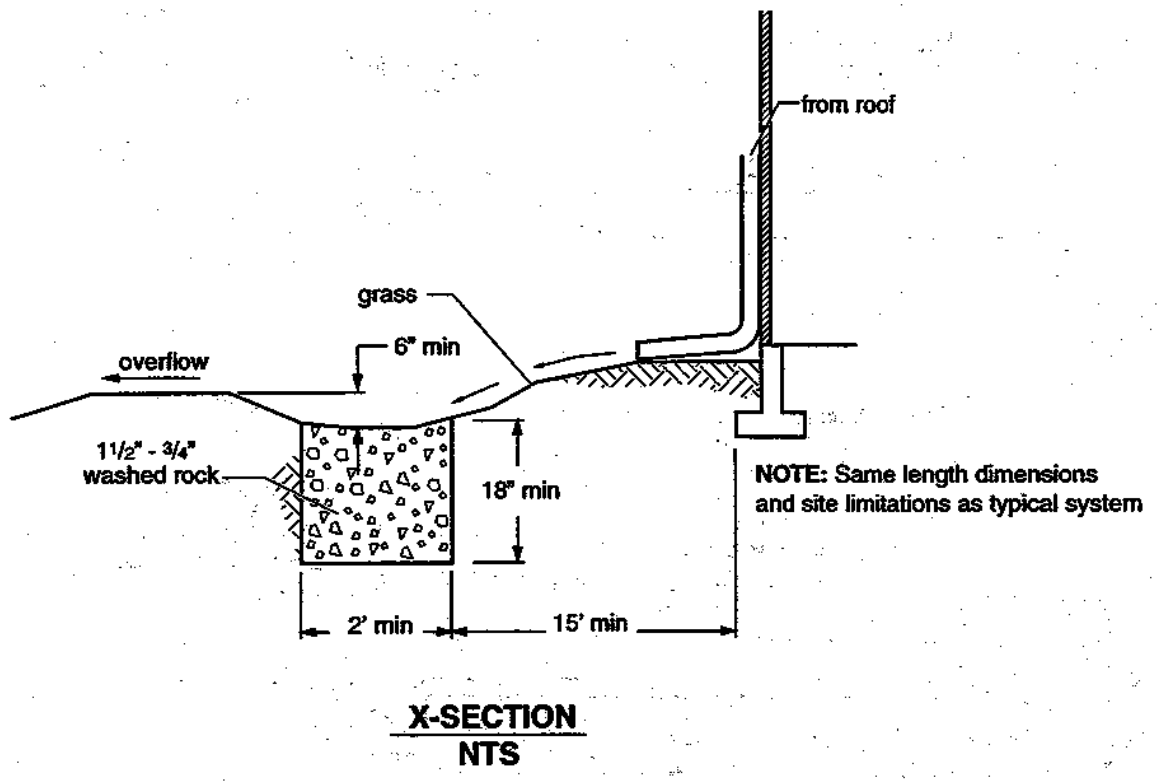


Figure 3.1.3 - Alternative Downspout Infiltration Trench System for Coarse Sand and Gravel

Source: King County

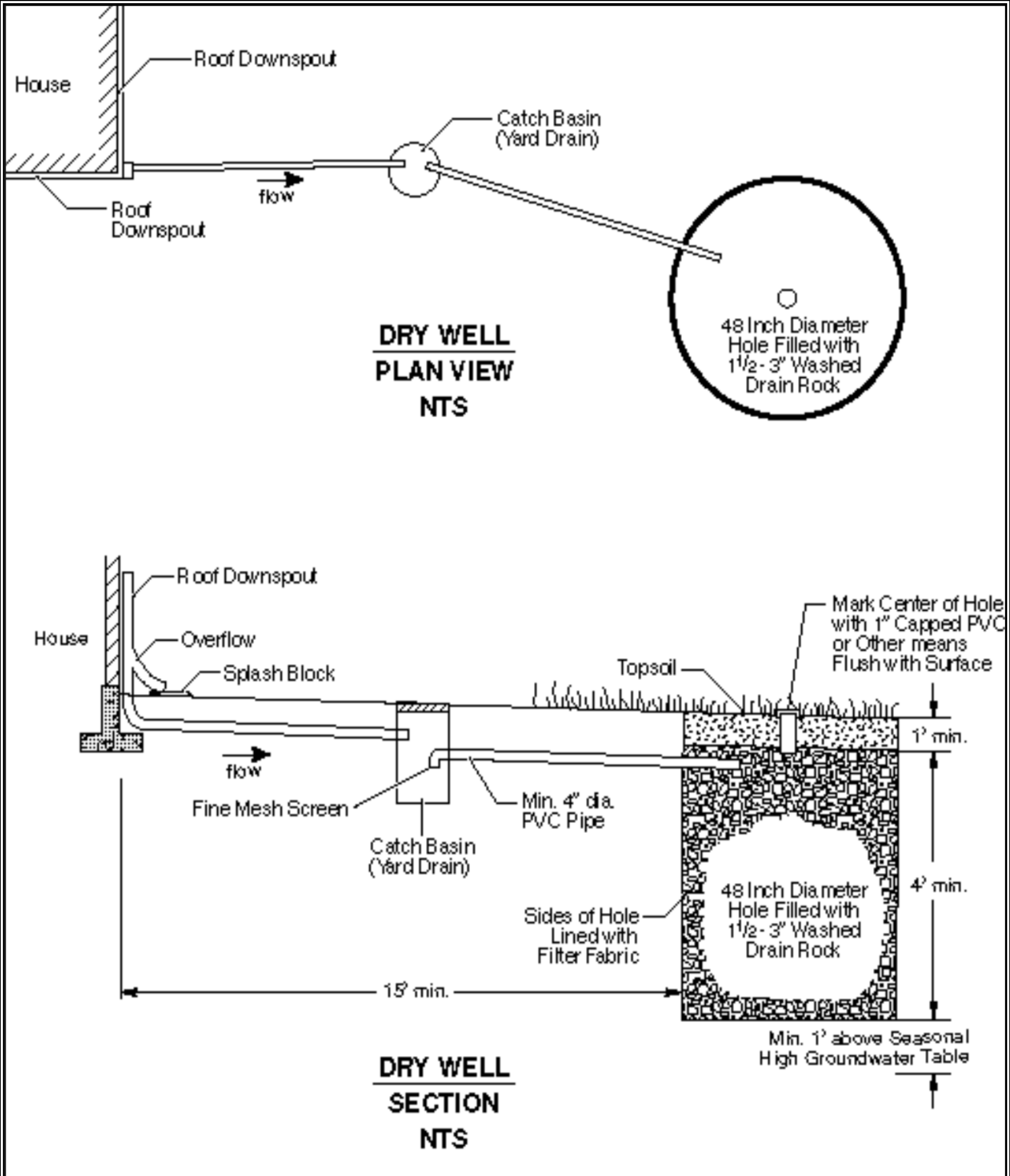


Figure 3.1.4 - Typical Downspout Infiltration Drywell

Source: King County

Setbacks

Local governments may require specific setbacks in sites with slopes over 40%, land slide areas, open water features, springs, wells, and septic tank drain fields. Adequate room for maintenance access and equipment should also be considered. Examples of setbacks commonly used include the following:

1. All infiltration systems should be at least 10 feet from any structure, property line, or sensitive area (except slopes over 40%).
2. All infiltration systems must be at least 50 feet from the top of any slope over 40%. This setback may be reduced to 15 feet based on a geotechnical evaluation, but in no instances may it be less than the buffer width.
3. For sites with septic systems, infiltration systems must be downgradient of the drainfield unless the site topography clearly prohibits subsurface flows from intersecting the drainfield.

3.1.2 Downspout Dispersion Systems (BMP T5.10B)

Downspout dispersion systems are splash blocks or gravel-filled trenches, which serve to spread roof runoff over vegetated pervious areas. Dispersion attenuates peak flows by slowing the runoff entering into the conveyance system, allowing some infiltration, and providing some water quality benefits.

Applications & Limitations

Downspout dispersion may be used in all subdivision lots where downspout full infiltration, full dispersion, and bioretention/rain gardens are not feasible.

Runoff Modeling for Roof Downspout Dispersion

In WWHM, roof areas may be modeled as grassed surfaces (landscape) if roof runoff is dispersed according to the requirements of this section on lots greater than 22,000 square feet, and the vegetated flowpath is 50 feet or larger through undisturbed native landscape or lawn/landscape area that meets BMP T5.13. If the available vegetated flowpath is 25 to 50 feet, use of a dispersion trench allows modeling the roof as 50% impervious/50% landscape. This is done in WWHM on the Mitigated Scenario screen by entering the roof area into one of the entry options for dispersal of impervious area runoff. For WWHM2012, see Appendix III-C in this Volume.

Design Criteria

1. Use downspout trenches designed as shown in Figures 3.1.5 and 3.1.6 for all downspout dispersion applications except where splash blocks are allowed below.

2. Splash blocks shown in Figure 3.1.7 may be used for downspouts discharging to a vegetated flowpath at least 50 feet in length as measured from the downspout to the downstream property line, structure, slope over 15%, stream, wetland, or other impervious surface. Sensitive area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths.

3. Cover the vegetated flowpath with well-established lawn or pasture, landscaping with well-established groundcover, or native vegetation with natural groundcover. The groundcover shall be dense enough to help disperse and infiltrate flows and to prevent erosion.

4. If the vegetated flowpath (measured as defined above) is less than 25 feet, a perforated stub-out connection per Section 3.1.3 may be used in lieu of downspout dispersion. A perforated stub-out may also be used where implementation of downspout dispersion might cause erosion or flooding problems, either on site or on adjacent lots. For example, this provision might be appropriate for lots constructed on steep hills where downspout discharge could culminate and might pose a potential hazard for lower lying lots, or where dispersed flows could create problems for adjacent off-site lots. This provision does not apply to situations where lots are flat and on-site downspout dispersal would result in saturated yards. Perforated stub-outs are not appropriate when seasonal water table is <1 foot below trench bottom.

Note: For all other types of projects, the use of a perforated stub-out in lieu of downspout dispersion shall be as determined by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

5. For sites with septic systems, the discharge point of all dispersion systems must be downgradient of the drainfield. This requirement may be waived if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

Design Criteria for Dispersion Trenches

1. A vegetated flowpath of at least 25 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any property line, structure, stream, wetland, or impervious surface. A vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet in length must be maintained between the outlet of the trench and any slope steeper than 15%. Sensitive area buffers may count towards flowpath lengths.
2. Trenches serving up to 700 square feet of roof area may be simple 10-foot-long by 2-foot wide gravel filled trenches as shown in Figure 3.1.5. For roof areas larger than 700 square feet, a dispersion trench with notched grade board as shown in Figure 3.1.6 or alternative material approved by the Local Plan Approval Authority may be used. The total length of this design must not exceed 50 feet and must provide at least 10 feet of trench per 700 square feet of roof area.
3. Maintain a setback of at least 5 feet between any edge of the trench and any structure or property line.
4. No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
5. Have a geotechnical engineer or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist evaluate runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas. Don not place the discharge point on or above slopes greater than 15% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and jurisdiction approval.
6. For purposes of maintaining adequate separation of flows discharged from adjacent dispersion devices, the outer edge of the vegetated flowpath segment for the dispersion trench must not overlap with other flowpath segments, except those associated with sheet flow from a non-native pervious surface.

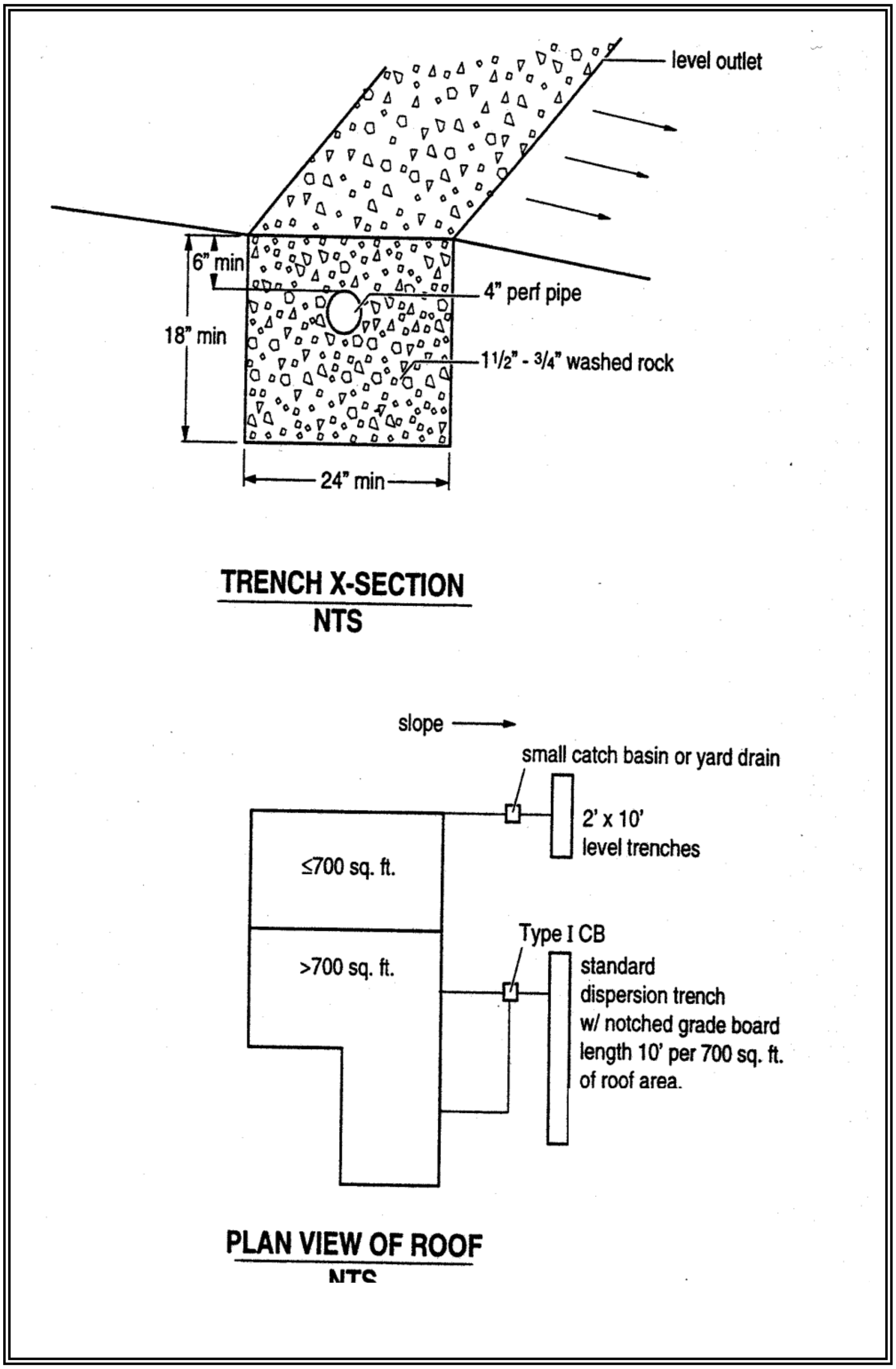


Figure 3.1.5 - Typical Downspout Dispersion Trench

Source: King County

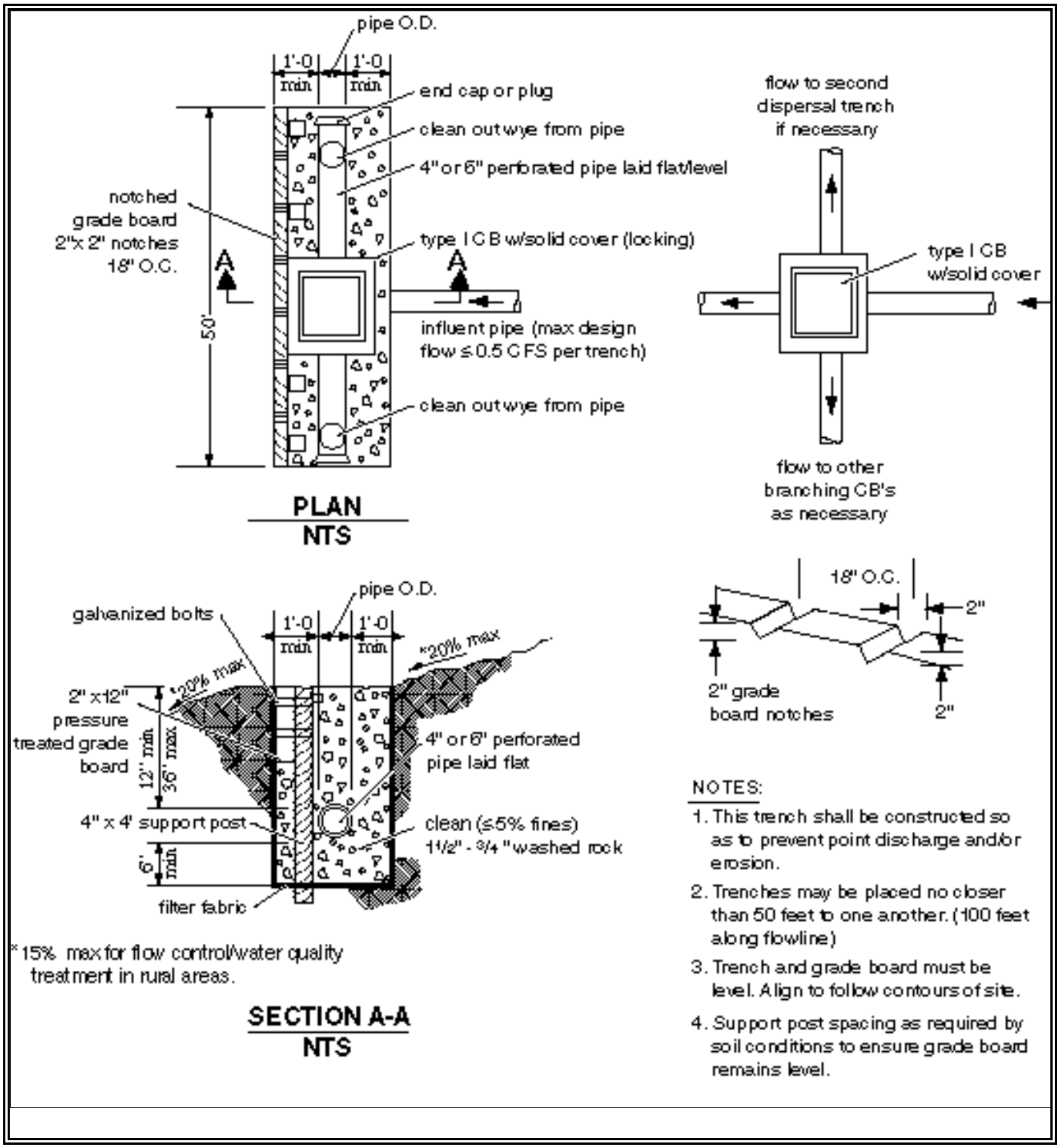


Figure 3.1.6 - Standard Dispersion Trench with Notched Grade Board

Design Criteria for Splashblocks

A typical downspout splashblock is shown in Figure 3.1.7. In general, if the ground is sloped away from the foundation and there is adequate vegetation and area for effective dispersion, splashblocks will adequately disperse storm runoff. If the ground is fairly level, if the structure includes a basement, or if foundation drains are proposed, splashblocks with downspout extensions may be a better choice because the discharge point is moved away from the foundation. Downspout extensions can include piping to a splashblock/discharge point a considerable distance from the downspout, as long as the runoff can travel through a well-vegetated area as described below.

The following apply to the use of splashblocks:

1. Maintain a vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet between the discharge point and any property line, structure, slope steeper than 15%, stream, wetland, lake, or other impervious surface. Sensitive area buffers may count toward flowpath lengths.
2. A maximum of 700 square feet of roof area may drain to each splashblock.
3. For purposes of maintaining adequate separation of flows discharged from adjacent dispersion devices, the vegetated flowpath segment for the splashblock must not overlap with other flowpath segments, except those associated with sheet flow from a non-native pervious surface.
4. Place a splashblock or a pad of crushed rock (2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) at each downspout discharge point.
5. No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
6. Have a geotechnical engineer or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist evaluate runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas. Do not place Splashblocks on or above slopes greater than 15% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist, and approval by the Local Plan Approval Authority.
7. For sites with septic systems, the discharge point must be downslope of the primary and reserve drainfield areas. This requirement may be waived if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield or where site conditions (soil permeability, distance between systems, etc.) indicate that this is unnecessary.

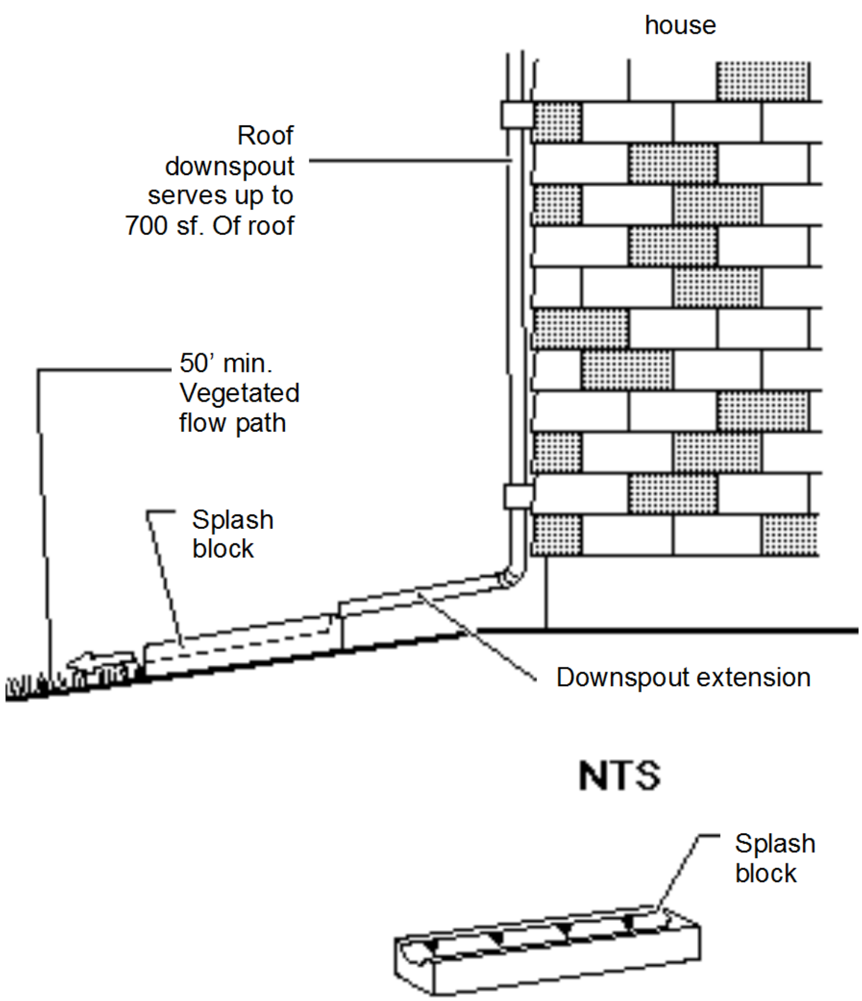


Figure 3.1.7 - Typical Downspout Splashblock Dispersion

3.1.3 Perforated Stub-Out Connections (BMP T5.10C)

A perforated stub-out connection is a length of perforated pipe within a gravel-filled trench that is placed between roof downspouts and a stub-out to the local drainage system. Figure 3.1.8 illustrates a perforated stub-out connection. These systems are intended to provide some infiltration during drier months. During the wet winter months, they may provide little or no flow control.

Applications & Limitations

Perforated stub-outs are not appropriate when seasonal water table is less than one foot below trench bottom.

In projects subject to Minimum Requirement #5 (see Volume I), perforated stub-out connections may be used only when all other higher priority on-site stormwater management BMPs are not feasible, per the criteria for each of those BMPs.

Select the location of the connection to allow a maximum amount of runoff to infiltrate into the ground (ideally a dry, relatively well drained, location). To facilitate maintenance, do not locate the perforated pipe portion of the system under impervious or heavily compacted (e.g., driveways and parking areas) surfaces. Use the same setbacks as for infiltration trenches in Section 3.1.1.

Have a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist evaluate potential runoff discharges towards landslide hazard areas. Do not place the perforated portion of the pipe on or above slopes greater than 20% or above erosion hazard areas without evaluation by a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise or qualified geologist and jurisdiction approval.

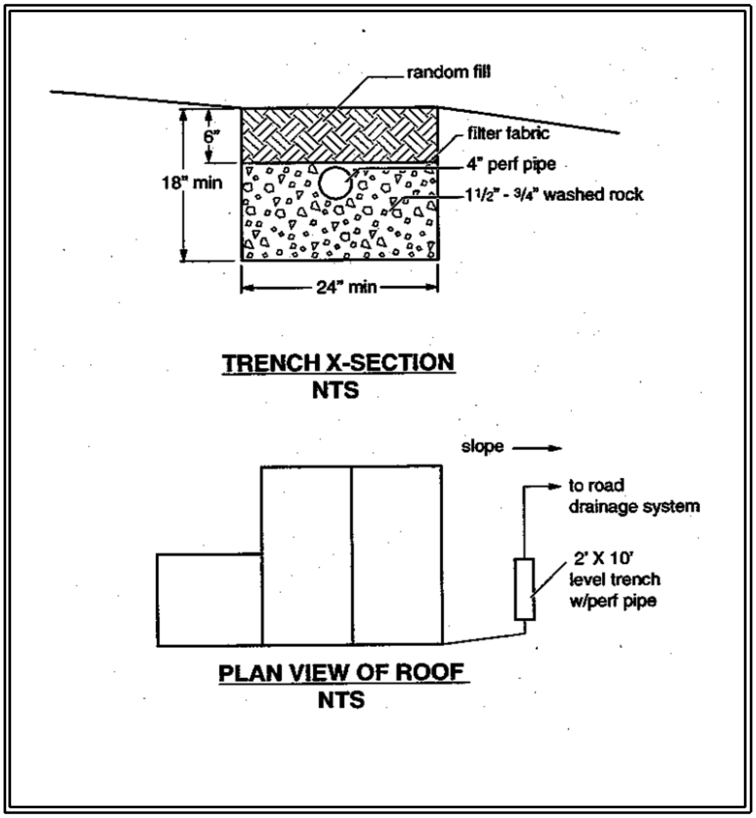
For sites with septic systems, the perforated portion of the pipe must be downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas. This requirement can be waived if site topography will clearly prohibit flows from intersecting the drainfield or where site conditions (soil permeability, distance between systems, etc.) indicate that this is unnecessary.

Design Criteria

Perforated stub-out connections consist of at least 10 feet of perforated pipe per 5,000 square feet of roof area laid in a level, 2-foot wide trench backfilled with washed drain rock. Extend the drain rock to a depth of at least 8 inches below the bottom of the pipe and cover the pipe. Lay the pipe level and cover the rock trench with filter fabric and 6 inches of fill (see Figure 3.1.8).

Runoff Model Representation

Any flow reduction is variable and unpredictable. No computer modeling techniques are allowed that would predict any reduction in flow rates and volumes from the connected area.



Source: King County

Figure 3.1.8 - Perforated Stub-Out Connection

3.2 Detention Facilities

This section presents the methods, criteria, and details for design and analysis of detention facilities. These facilities provide for the temporary storage of increased surface water runoff resulting from development pursuant to the performance standards set forth in Minimum Requirement #7 for flow control (Volume I).

There are three primary types of detention facilities described in this section: detention ponds, tanks, and vaults.

3.2.1 Detention Ponds

The design criteria in this section are for detention ponds. However, many of the criteria also apply to infiltration ponds (Section 3.3 and Volume V), and water quality wetponds and combined detention/wetponds (Volume V).

Dam Safety for Detention BMPs

Stormwater detention facilities that can impound 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet; 3.26 million gallons) or more with the water level measured at the embankment crest are subject to the state's dam safety requirements, even if water storage is intermittent and infrequent (WAC 173-175-020(1)). The principal safety concern is for the downstream population at risk if the dam should breach and allow an uncontrolled release of the pond contents. Peak flows from dam failures are typically much larger than the 100-year flows which these ponds are typically designed to accommodate.

The Dam Safety Office of the Department of Ecology uses consequence dependent design levels for critical project elements. There are eight design levels with storm recurrence intervals ranging from 1 in 500 for design step, 1 to 1 in 1,000,000 for design step 8. The specific design step for a particular project depends on the downstream population and other resources that would be at risk from a failure of the dam. Precipitation events more extreme than the 100-year event may be rare at any one location, but have historically occurred somewhere within Washington State every few years on average.

With regard to the engineering design of stormwater detention facilities, the primary effect of the state's dam safety requirements is in sizing the emergency spillway to accommodate the runoff from the dam safety design storm without overtopping the dam. The hydrologic computation procedures are the same as for the original pond design, except that the computations must use more extreme precipitation values and the appropriate dam safety design storm hyetographs. This information is described in detail within guidance documents developed by and available from the Dam Safety Office. In addition to the other design requirements for stormwater detention BMPs described elsewhere in this manual, dam safety requirements should be an integral part of planning and design for stormwater detention ponds. It is most cost-effective to consider these requirements right from the beginning of the project.

In addition to the hydrologic and hydraulic issues related to precipitation and runoff, other dam safety requirements include geotechnical issues, construction inspection and documentation, dam breach analysis, inundation mapping, emergency action planning, and periodic inspections by project owners and by Dam Safety engineers. All of these requirements, plus procedural requirements for plan review and approval and payment of construction permit fees are described in detail in guidance documents developed by and available from the Dam Safety Office.

In addition to the written guidance documents, Dam Safety engineers are available to provide technical assistance to project owners and design engineers in understanding and addressing the dam safety requirements for their specific project. In the interest of providing a smooth integration of dam safety requirements into the stormwater detention project and streamlining Dam Safety's engineering review and issuance of the construction permit, it is recommended and requested that Dam Safety be contacted early in the facilities planning process. The Dam Safety Office is located in the Ecology headquarters building in Lacey. Electronic versions of the guidance documents in PDF format are available on the Department of Ecology Web site at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wr/dams/dss.html.

Design Criteria

Standard details for detention ponds are shown in Figure 3.2.1 through Figure 3.2.3. Control structure details are provided in Section 3.2.4.

General

1. Ponds must be designed as flow-through systems (however, parking lot storage may be utilized through a back-up system; see Section 3.2.5). Developed flows must enter through a conveyance system separate from the control structure and outflow conveyance system. Maximizing distance between the inlet and outlet is encouraged to promote sedimentation.
2. Pond bottoms should be level and be located a minimum of 0.5 foot (preferably 1 foot) below the inlet and outlet to provide sediment storage.
3. Design guidelines for outflow control structures are specified in Section 3.2.4.
4. A geotechnical analysis and report must be prepared for slopes over 15%, or if located within 200 feet of the top of a slope steeper than 40%, or landslide hazard area. The scope of the geotechnical report should include the assessment of impoundment seepage on the stability of the natural slope where the facility will be located within the setback limits set forth in this section.

Side Slopes

1. Interior side slopes up to the emergency overflow water surface should not be steeper than 3H:1V unless a fence is provided (see “Fencing”).
2. Exterior side slopes must not be steeper than 2H:1V unless analyzed for stability by a geotechnical engineer.
3. Pond walls may be vertical retaining walls, provided:
    - They are constructed of reinforced concrete per Section 3.2.3, Material.
    - A fence is provided along the top of the wall.
    - The entire pond perimeter may be retaining walls, however, it is recommended that at least 25 percent of the pond perimeter be a vegetated soil slope not steeper than 3H:1V. If the entire pond perimeter is to be retaining walls, provide ladders on the walls for safety reasons.
    - The design is stamped by a licensed civil engineer with structural expertise.

    Other retaining walls such as rockeries, concrete, masonry unit walls, and keystone type wall may be used if designed by a geotechnical engineer or a civil engineer with structural expertise.

Embankments

1. Have a professional engineer with geotechnical expertise design pond berm embankments higher than 6 feet.
2. For berm embankments 6 feet or less, the minimum top width should be 6 feet or as recommended by a geotechnical engineer.
3. Construct pond berm embankments on native consolidated soil (or adequately compacted and stable fill soils analyzed by a geotechnical engineer) free of loose surface soil materials, roots, and other organic debris.
4. Construct pond berm embankments greater than 4 feet in height by excavating a key equal to 50 percent of the berm embankment cross-sectional height and width, unless specified otherwise by a geotechnical engineer.
5. Embankment compaction should be accomplished in such a manner as to produce a dense, low permeability engineered fill that can tolerate post-construction settlements with a minimum of cracking. Place the embankment fill on a stable subgrade and compact to a minimum of 95% of the Standard Proctor Maximum Density, ASTM Procedure D698. Placement moisture content should lie within 1% dry to 3% wet of the optimum moisture content. The referenced compaction standard may have to be increased to comply with local regulations.

Construct the berm embankment of soils with the following characteristics: a minimum of 20% silt and clay, a maximum of 60% sand, a maximum of 60% silt, with nominal gravel and cobble content. Soils outside this specified range can be used, provided the design satisfactorily addresses the engineering concerns posed by these soils. The paramount concerns with these soils are their susceptibility to internal erosion or piping and to surface erosion from wave action and runoff on the upstream and downstream slopes, respectively. *Note: In general, excavated glacial till is well suited for berm embankment material.*

6. Place anti-seepage filter-drain diaphragms on outflow pipes in berm embankments impounding water with depths greater than 8 feet at the design water surface. See Dam Safety Guidelines, Part IV, Section 3.3.B on pages 3-27 to 3-30. An electronic version of the Dam Safety Guidelines is available in PDF format at https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/summarypages/9255d.html.

Overflow

1. Provide a primary overflow (usually a riser pipe within the control structure; see Section 3.2.4) in all ponds, tanks, and vaults to bypass the 100-year developed peak flow over or around the restrictor system. This assumes the facility will be full due to plugged orifices or high inflows; the primary overflow is intended to protect against breaching of a pond embankment (or overflows of the upstream conveyance system in the case of a detention tank or vault). The design must provide controlled discharge directly into the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point.

2. Provide a secondary inlet to the control structure in ponds as additional protection against overtopping should the inlet pipe to the control structure become plugged. A grated opening ("jailhouse window") in the control structure manhole functions as a weir (see Figure 3.2.2) when used as a secondary inlet.
Note: The maximum circumferential length of this opening must not exceed one-half the control structure circumference. The "birdcage" overflow structure as shown in Figure 3.2.3 may also be used as a secondary inlet.

Emergency Overflow Spillway

1. In addition to the above overflow provisions, ponds must have an emergency overflow spillway. For impoundments of 10 acre-feet or greater, the emergency overflow spillway must meet the state's dam safety requirements (see above). For impoundments under 10 acre-feet, ponds must have an emergency overflow spillway that is sized to pass the 100-year developed peak flow in the event of total control structure failure (e.g., blockage of the control structure outlet pipe) or extreme inflows. Emergency overflow spillways are intended to control the

location of pond overtopping and direct overflows back into the downstream conveyance system or other acceptable discharge point.

2. Provide emergency overflow spillways for ponds with constructed berms over 2 feet in height, or for ponds located on grades in excess of 5 percent. As an option for ponds with berms less than 2 feet in height and located at grades less than 5 percent, emergency overflow may be provided by an emergency overflow structure, such as a Type II manhole fitted with a birdcage as shown in Figure 3.2.3. The emergency overflow structure must be designed to pass the 100-year developed peak flow, with a minimum 6 inches of freeboard, directly to the downstream conveyance system or another acceptable discharge point. Where an emergency overflow spillway would discharge to a slope steeper than 15%, consideration should be given to providing an emergency overflow structure in addition to the spillway.

3. Armour the emergency overflow spillway with riprap in conformance with BMP C209: Outlet Protection in Volume II. The spillway must be armored full width, beginning at a point midway across the berm embankment and extending downstream to where emergency overflows re-enter the conveyance system (see Figure 3.2.2).

4. Emergency overflow spillway designs must be analyzed as broad-crested trapezoidal weirs as described in Methods of Analysis at the end of this section. Either one of the weir sections shown in Figure 3.2.2 may be used.

5. Design the emergency overflow spillway to allow a minimum of 1 foot of freeboard.

Access

The following guidelines for access may be used.

3. Provide maintenance access road(s) to the control structure and other drainage structures associated with the pond (e.g., inlet or bypass structures). It is recommended that manhole and catch basin lids be in or at the edge of the access road and at least three feet from a property line.

4. An access ramp is needed for removal of sediment with a trackhoe and truck. Extend the ramp to the pond bottom if the pond bottom is greater than 1,500 square feet (measured without the ramp). If the pond bottom is less than 1,500 square feet (measured without the ramp), the ramp may end at an elevation 4 feet above the pond bottom.

   On large, deep ponds, provide truck access to the pond bottom via an access ramp so loading can be done in the pond bottom. On small deep ponds, the truck can remain on the ramp for loading. On small shallow ponds, a ramp to the bottom may not be required if the trackhoe can load a truck parked at the pond edge or on the internal berm of a wetpond or combined pond (trackhoes can negotiate interior pond side slopes).

5. The internal berm of a wetpond, or combined detention and wetpond, may be used for access if all of the following apply:
   - The internal berm is no more than 4 feet above the first wetpool cell.
   - The first wetpool cell is less than 1,500 square feet (measured without the ramp).
   - The internal berm is designed to support a loaded truck, considering the berm is normally submerged and saturated.
6. Access ramps must meet the requirements for design and construction of access roads specified below.
7. If a fence is required, access should be limited by a double-posted gate or by bollards – two fixed bollards on each side of the access road and two removable bollards equally located between the fixed bollards.

Design of Access Roads

The design guidelines for access roads:

1. A maximum grade of 15%.
2. A minimum of 40 feet outside turning radius.
3. Locate fence gates only on straight sections of road.
4. 15 feet in width on curves and 12 feet on straight sections.
5. Provide a paved apron where access roads connect to paved public roadways.

Construction of Access Roads

Construct access roads with permeable pavement, gravel surface, or modular grid pavement. All surfaces must conform to the jurisdictional standards and manufacturer's specifications.

Fencing

1. A fence is needed at the emergency overflow water surface elevation, or higher, where a pond interior side slope is steeper than 3H:1V, or where the impoundment is a wall greater than 24 inches in height. The fence need only be constructed for those slopes steeper than 3H:1V. Other regulations such as the International Building Code or Uniform Building Code may require fencing of vertical walls. If more than 10 percent of slopes are steeper 3H:1V, it is recommended that the entire pond be fenced.

   Detention ponds on school sites will need to comply with safety standards developed by the Department of Health (DOH) and the Superintendent for Public Instruction (SPI). These standards include what is called a ‘non-climbable fence.’ One example of a non-climbable fence is a chain-link fence with a tighter mesh, so children cannot get a foot-hold for climbing. For school sites, and possibly for parks and playgrounds, the designer should consult the DOH's Office of Environmental Programs.

Fences discourage access to portions of a pond where steep side slopes (steeper than 3:1) increase the potential for slipping into the pond. Fences also serve to guide those who have fallen into a pond to side slopes that are flat enough (flatter than 3:1 and unfenced) to allow for easy escape.

2. It is recommended that fences be 6 feet in height. For example designs, see WSDOT Standard Plan L-2, Type 1 or Type 3 chain link fence. The fence may be a minimum of 4 feet in height if the depth of the impoundment (measured from the lowest elevation in the bottom of the impoundment, directly adjacent to the bottom of the fenced slope, up to the emergency overflow water surface) is 5 feet or less. For example designs, see WSDOT Standard Plan L-2, Type 4 or Type 6 chain link fence.
3. Access road gates may be 16 feet in width consisting of two swinging sections 8 feet in width. Provide additional vehicular access gates as needed to facilitate maintenance access.
4. Pedestrian access gates (if needed) should be 4 feet in width.
5. Vertical metal balusters or 9 gauge galvanized steel fabric with bonded vinyl coating can be used as fence material. For steel fabric fences, consider the following aesthetic features:
    a) Vinyl coating that is compatible with the surrounding environment (e.g., green in open, grassy areas and black or brown in wooded areas). All posts, cross bars, and gates may be painted or coated the same color as the vinyl clad fence fabric.
    b) Fence posts and rails that conform to WSDOT Standard Plan L-2 for Types 1, 3, or 4 chain link fence.
6. For metal baluster fences, Uniform Building Code standards apply.
7. Wood fences may be used in subdivisions where the fence will be maintained by homeowners associations or adjacent lot owners.
8. Wood fences should have pressure treated posts (ground contact rated) either set in 24-inch deep concrete footings or attached to footings by galvanized brackets. Rails and fence boards may be cedar, pressure-treated fir, or hemlock.
9. Where only short stretches of the pond perimeter (< 10 percent) have side slopes steeper than 3:1, use split rail fences (3-foot minimum height) or densely planted thorned hedges (e.g., barberry, holly) in place of a standard fence.

Signage

Detention ponds, infiltration ponds, wetponds, and combined ponds should have a sign placed for maximum visibility from adjacent streets, sidewalks, and paths. An example of sign specifications for a permanent surface water control pond is illustrated in Figure 3.2.4.

Right-of-Way

Right-of-way may be needed for detention pond maintenance. It is recommended that any tract not abutting public right-of-way have 15-20 foot wide extension of the tract to an acceptable access location.

Setbacks

It is recommended that facilities be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government. The detention pond water surface at the pond outlet invert elevation must be set back 100 feet from proposed or existing septic system drainfields. However, the setback requirements are generally specified by the local government, uniform building code, or other statewide regulation and may be different from those mentioned above.

All facilities must be a minimum of 50 feet from the top of any steep (greater than 15%) slope. A geotechnical analysis and report must be prepared addressing the potential impact of the facility on a slope steeper than 15%.

Seeps and Springs

Intermittent seeps along cut slopes are typically fed by a shallow ground water source (interflow) flowing along a relatively impermeable soil stratum. These flows are storm driven and should discontinue after a few weeks of dry weather. However, more continuous seeps and springs, which extend through longer dry periods, are likely from a deeper ground water source. When continuous flows are intercepted and directed through flow control facilities, adjustments to the facility design may have to be made to account for the additional base flow.

Planting Requirements

Sod or seed exposed earth on the pond bottom and interior side slopes with an appropriate seed mixture. Plant all remaining areas of the tract with grass or landscape and mulch with a 3-inch cover of hog fuel or shredded wood mulch. Shredded wood mulch is made from shredded tree trimmings, usually from trees cleared on site. The mulch should be free of garbage and weeds and should not contain excessive resin, tannin, or other material detrimental to plant growth. Do not use construction materials wood debris or wood treated with preservatives for producing shredded wood mulch.

Landscaping

Landscaping is encouraged for most stormwater tract areas (see below for areas not to be landscaped). However, if provided, landscaping should adhere to the criteria that follow so as not to hinder maintenance operations. Landscaped stormwater tracts may, in some instances, provide a recreational space. In other instances, "naturalistic" stormwater facilities may be placed in open space tracts.

Follow these guidelines if landscaping is proposed for facilities:

1. Do not plant trees or shrubs on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety.
2. Do not plant trees or shrubs within 10 feet of inlet or outlet pipes or manmade drainage structures such as spillways or flow spreaders. Avoid using species with roots that seek water, such as willow or poplar, within 50 feet of pipes or manmade structures.
3. Restrict planting on berms that impound water permanently or temporarily during storms. This restriction does not apply to cut slopes that form pond banks, only to berms.
    a) Do not plant trees or shrubs on portions of water- impounding berms taller than four feet high. Plant only grasses on berms taller than four feet.

       Grasses allow unobstructed visibility of berm slopes for detecting potential dam safety problems such as animal burrows, slumping, or fractures in the berm.
    b) Trees planted on portions of water-impounding berms less than 4 feet high must be small, not higher than 20 feet mature height, and have a fibrous root system. Table 3.2.1 gives some examples of trees with these characteristics developed for the central Puget Sound.

       These trees reduce the likelihood of blow-down trees, or the possibility of channeling or piping of water through the root system, which may contribute to dam failure on berms that retain water.

    Note: The internal berm in a wetpond is not subject to this planting restriction since the failure of an internal berm would be unlikely to create a safety problem.
4. Plant all landscape material, including grass, in good topsoil. Make native underlying soils suitable for planting by amending with 4 inches of compost tilled into the subgrade. Refer to BMP T5.13 in Volume V for soil quality standards.
5. Soil in which trees or shrubs are planted may need additional enrichment or additional compost top-dressing. Consult a nursery, landscape professional, or arborist for site-specific recommendations.
6. For a naturalistic effect as well as ease of maintenance, plant trees or in clumps to form "landscape islands" rather than spacing evenly.

7. The landscaped islands should be a minimum of six feet apart, and if set back from fences or other barriers, the setback distance should also be a minimum of 6 feet. Where tree foliage extends low to the ground, the six feet setback should be counted from the outer drip line of the trees (estimated at maturity).

   This setback allows a 6-foot wide mower to pass around and between clumps.

8. Evergreen or columnar deciduous trees along the west and south sides of ponds are recommended to reduce thermal heating. Evergreen trees or shrubs are preferred to avoid problems associated with leaf drop. Columnar deciduous trees (e.g., hornbeam, Lombardy poplar) typically have fewer leaves than other deciduous trees.

   In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the attendant phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Setback trees so the branches will not extend over the pond.

9. Drought tolerant species are recommended.

Table 3.2.1
Small Trees and Shrubs with Fibrous Roots

Small Trees / High Shrubs	Low Shrubs
*Red twig dogwood *(Cornus stolonifera)*	*Snowberry *(Symporicarpus albus)*
*Serviceberry *(Amelanchier alnifolia)*	*Salmonberry *(Rubus spectabilis)*
*Filbert (*Corylus cornuta*, others)	Rosa rugosa (avoid spreading varieties)
Highbush cranberry *(Vaccinium opulus)*	Rock rose *(Cistus spp.)*
Blueberry *(Vaccinium spp.)*	Ceanothus spp. choose hardier varieties)
Fruit trees on dwarf rootstock	New Zealand flax (Phormium penax)
Rhododendron (native and ornamental varieties)	Ornamental grasses (e.g., Miscanthis, Pennisetum)

*Native species

Guidelines for Naturalistic Planting. Stormwater facilities may sometimes be located within open space tracts if “natural appearing.” Two generic kinds of naturalistic planting are outlined below, but other options are also possible. Native vegetation is preferred in naturalistic plantings.

Open Woodland. In addition to the general landscaping guidelines above, the following are recommended.

1. Landscaped islands (when mature) should cover a minimum of 30 percent or more of the tract, exclusive of the pond area.
2. Underplant tree clumps with shade-tolerant shrubs and groundcover plants. The goal is to provide a dense understory that need not be weeded or mowed.
3. Place landscaped islands at several elevations rather than "ring" the pond, and vary the size of clumps from small to large to create variety.
4. Not all islands need to have trees. Shrub or groundcover clumps are acceptable, but lack of shade should be considered in selecting vegetation.

Note: Landscaped islands are best combined with the use of wood-based mulch (hog fuel) or chipped on-site vegetation for erosion control (only for slopes above the flow control water surface). *It is often difficult to sustain a low-maintenance understory if the site was previously hydroseeded. Compost or composted mulch (typically used for constructed wetland soil) can be used below the flow control water surface (materials that are resistant to and preclude flotation). The method of construction of soil landscape systems can also cause natural selection of specific plant species. Consult a soil restoration or wetland soil scientist for site-specific recommendations.*

Northwest Savannah or Meadow. In addition to the general landscape guidelines above, the following are recommended.

1. Landscape islands (when mature) should cover 10 percent or more of the site, exclusive of the pond area.
2. Planting groundcovers and understory shrubs is encouraged to eliminate the need for mowing under the trees when they are young.
3. Place landscape islands at several elevations rather than "ring" the pond.

Plant the remaining site area with an appropriate grass seed mix, which may include meadow or wildflower species. Native or dwarf grass mixes are preferred. Table 3.2.2 below gives an example of dwarf grass mix developed for central Puget Sound. Apply grass seed at 2.5 to 3 pounds per 1,000 square feet.

Note: Amended soil or good topsoil is required for all plantings.

Creation of areas of emergent vegetation in shallow areas of the pond is recommended. Native wetland plants, such as sedges (Carex sp.), bulrush (*Scirpus sp.*), water plantain (*Alisma sp.*), and burreed (*Sparganium sp.*) are recommended. If the pond does not hold standing water, a clump of wet-tolerant, non-invasive shrubs, such as salmonberry or snowberry, is recommended below the detention design water surface.

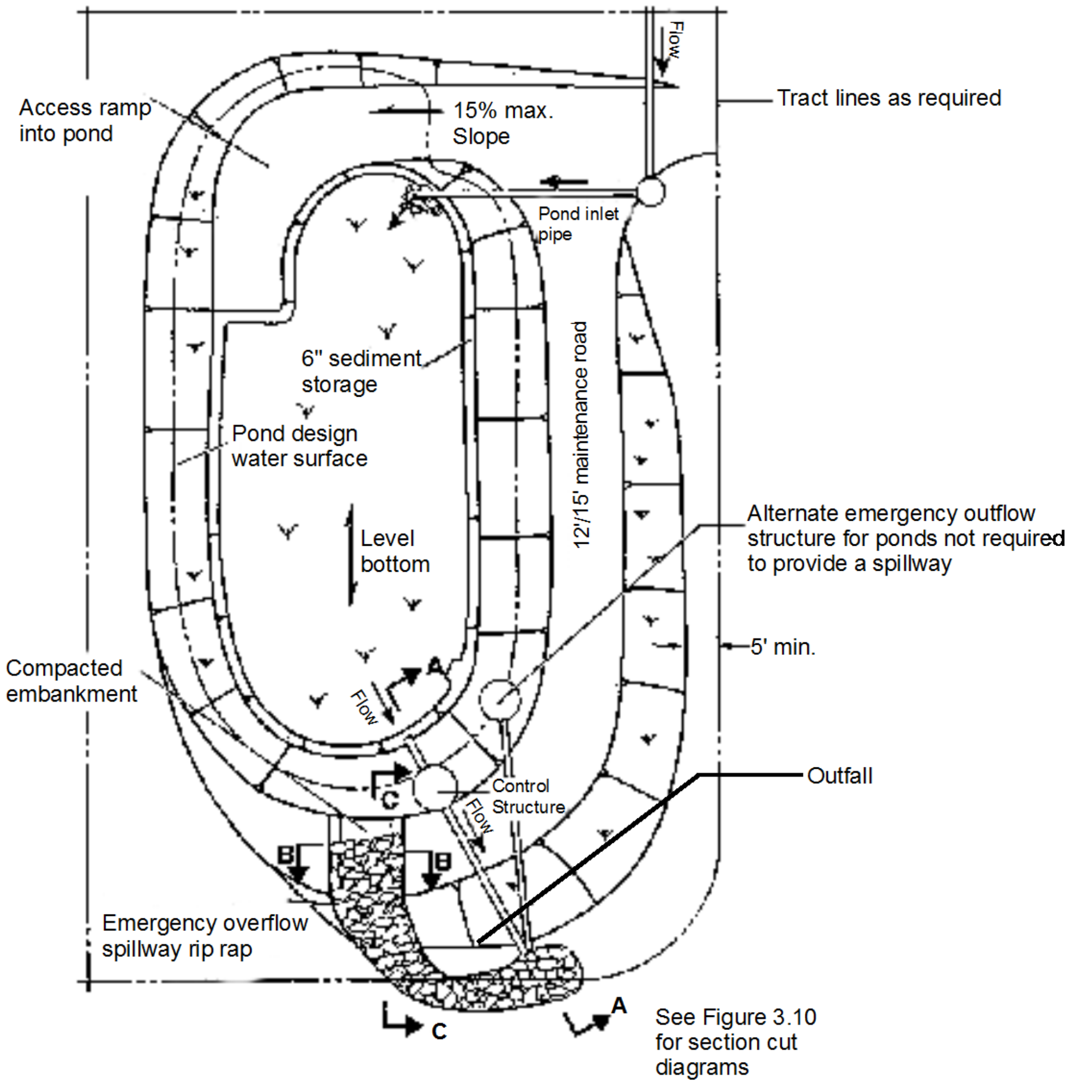
Note: This landscape style is best combined with the use of grass or sod for site stabilization and erosion control.

Seed Mixes. The seed mixes listed below were developed for central Puget Sound.

Table 3.2.2
Stormwater Tract "Low Grow" Seed Mix

Seed Name	Percentage of Mix
Dwarf tall fescue	40%
Dwarf perennial rye "Barclay"*	30%
Red fescue	25%
Colonial bentgrass	5%

* If wildflowers are used and sowing is done before Labor Day, the amount of dwarf perennial rye can be reduced proportionately to the amount of wildflower seed used.



Note:
This detail is a schematic representation only. Actual configuration will vary depending on specific site constraints and applicable design criteria.

Figure 3.2.1 - Typical Detention Pond

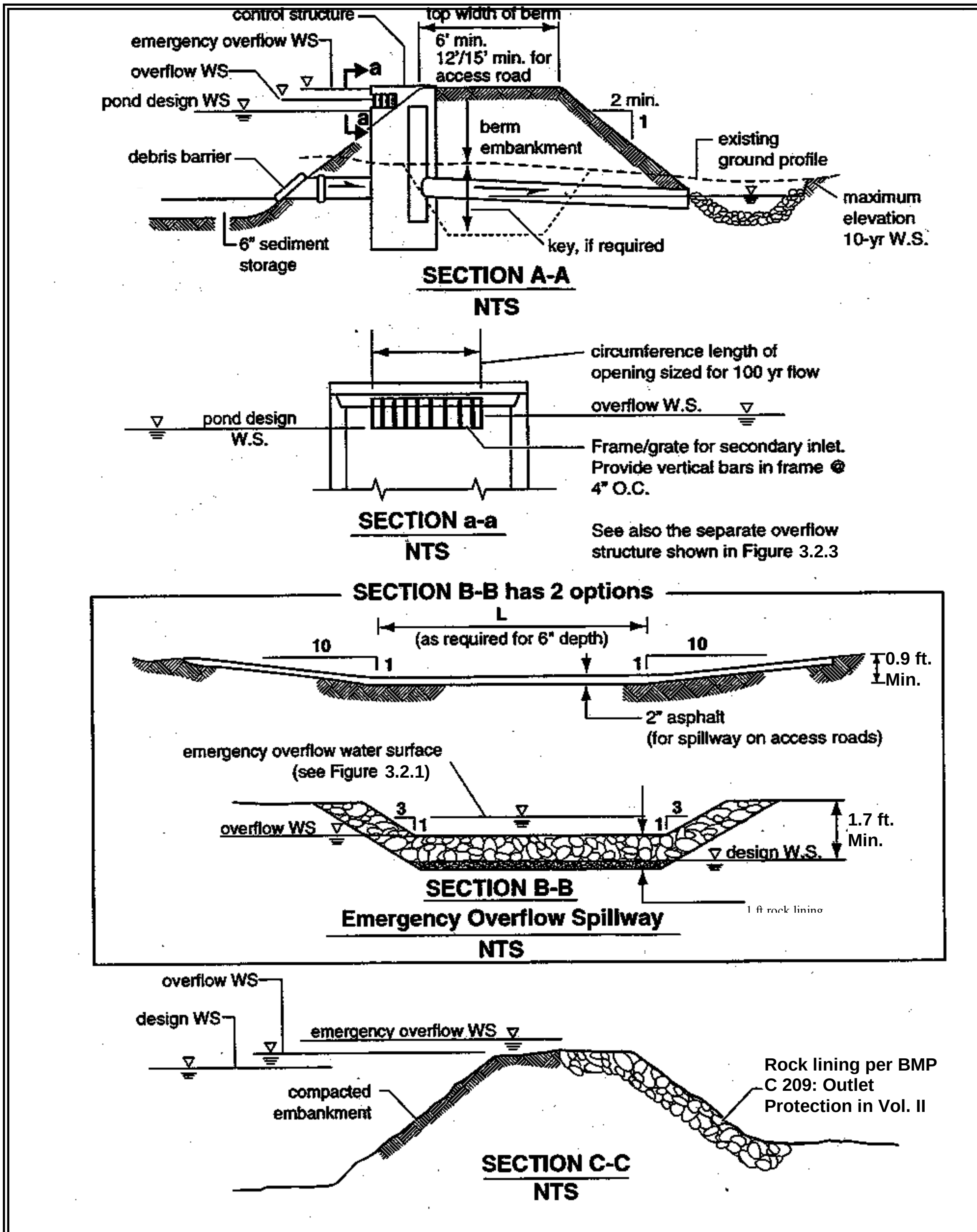
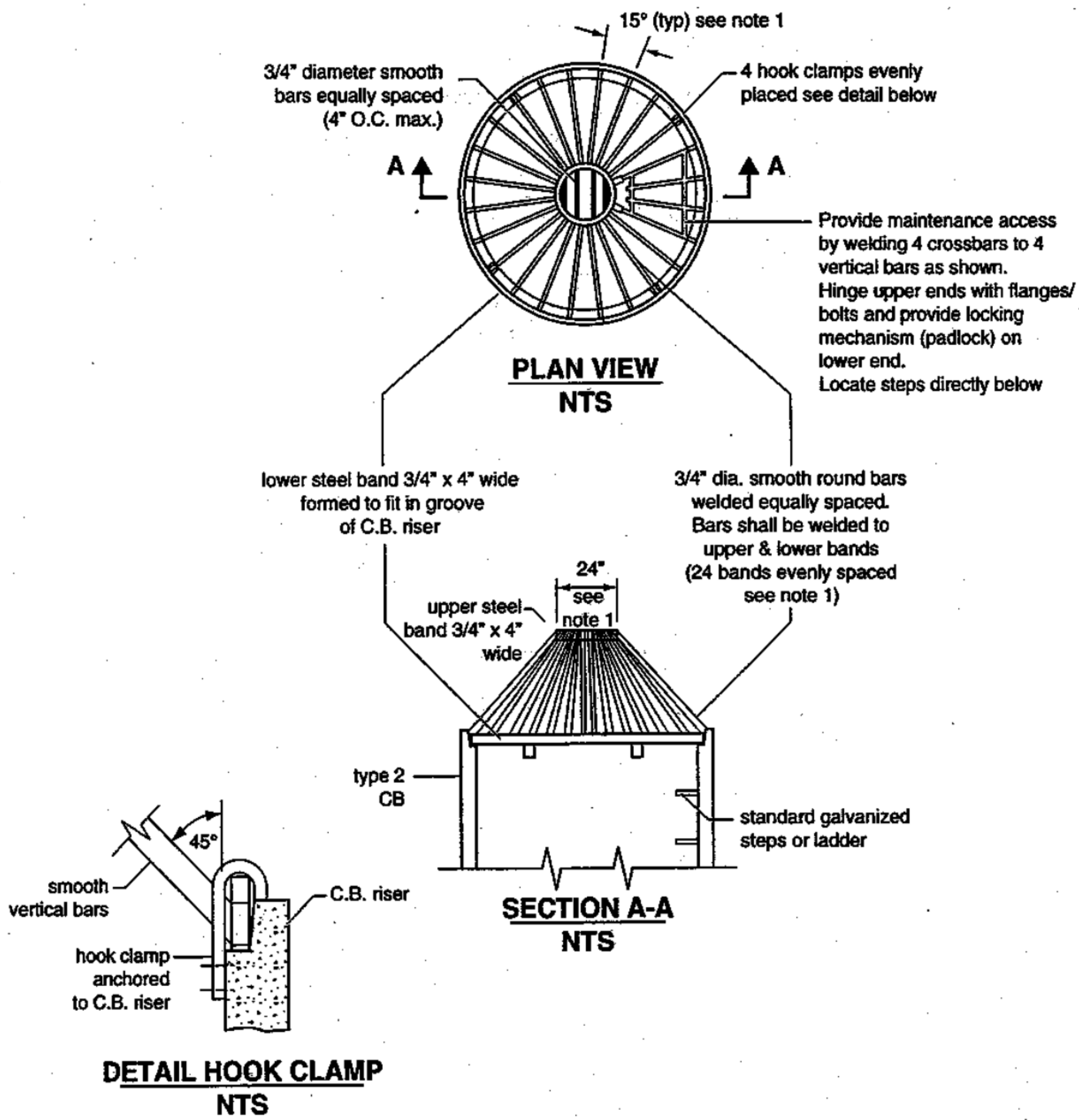


Figure 3.2.2 - Typical Detention Pond Sections



NOTES:

1. Dimensions are for illustration on 54" diameter CB For different diameter CB's adjust to maintain 45° angle on "vertical" bars and 7" o.c. maximum spacing of bars around lower steel band.
2. Metal parts must be corrosion resistant; steel bars must be galvanized.
3. This debris barrier is also recommended for use on the inlet to roadway cross-culverts with high potential for debris collection (except on type 2 streams)

Figure 3.2.3 - Overflow Structure

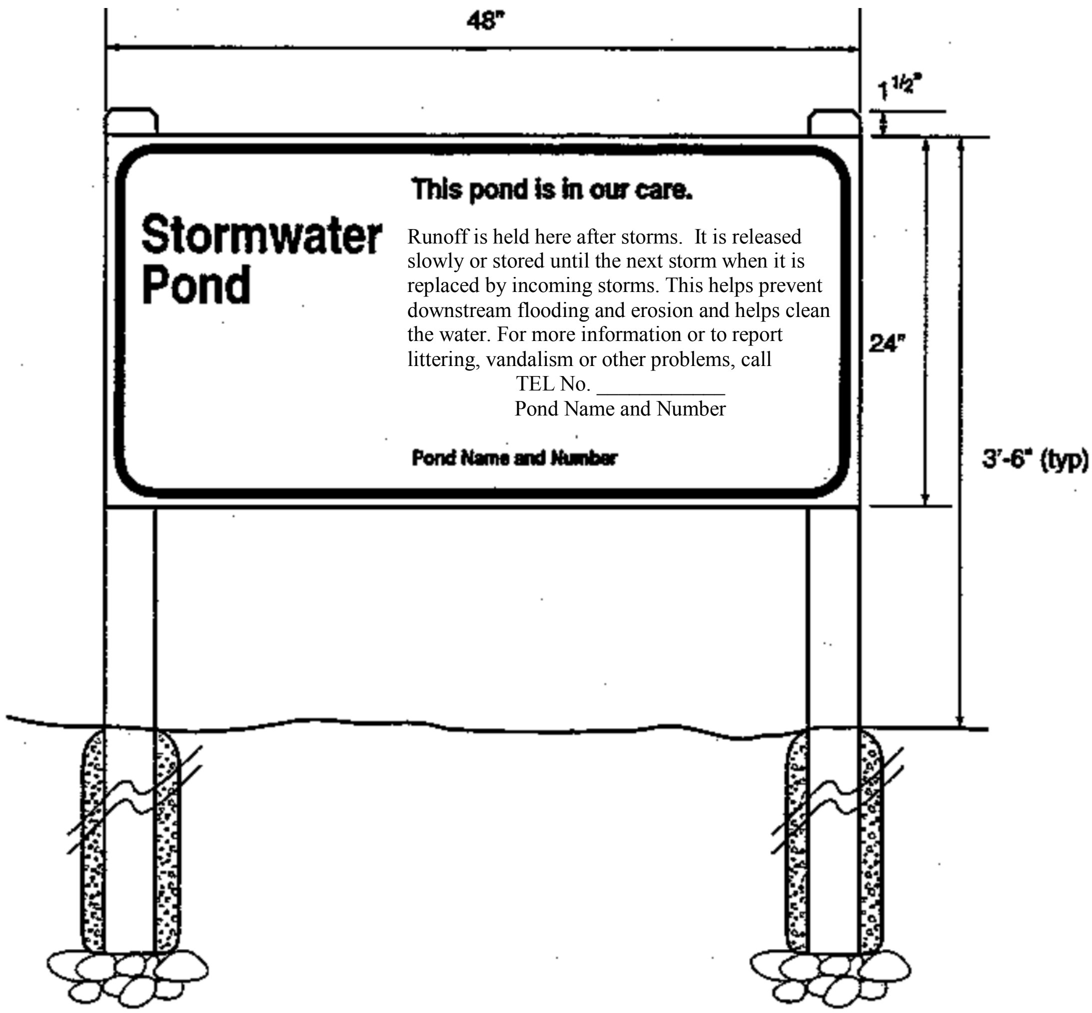


Figure 3.2.4 - Example of Permanent Surface Water Control Pond Sign

Sample Specifications:

Size:	48 inches by 24 inches
Material:	0.125-gauge aluminum
Face:	Non-reflective vinyl or 3 coats outdoor enamel (sprayed).
Lettering:	Silk screen enamel where possible, or vinyl letters.
Colors:	Beige background, teal letters.
Type face:	Helvetica condensed. Title: 3 inch; Sub-Title: 1½ inch; Text: 1 inch; Outer
border:	1/8 inch border distance from edge: 1/4 inch; all text 1¾ inch from border.
Posts:	Pressure treated, beveled tops, 1½ inch higher than sign.
Installation:	Secure to chain link fence if available. Otherwise install on two 4"x4" posts, pressure treated, mounted atop gravel bed, installed in 30-inch concrete filled post holes (8-inch minimum diameter). Top of sign no higher than 42 inches from ground surface.

Placement: Face sign in direction of primary visual or physical access. Do not block any access road. Do not place within 6 feet of structural facilities (e.g. manholes, spillways, pipe inlets).

Special Notes: This facility is lined to protect ground water (if a liner that restricts infiltration of stormwater exists).

Maintenance

General. Maintenance is of primary importance if detention ponds are to continue to function as originally designed. A local government, a designated group such as a homeowners' association, or some individual must accept the responsibility for maintaining the structures and the impoundment area. Formulate a specific maintenance plan outlining the schedule and scope of maintenance operations. Achieve debris removal in detention basins by using trash racks or other screening devices.

Design with maintenance in mind. Good maintenance will be crucial to successful use of the impoundment. Hence, build in provisions to facilitate maintenance operations into the project when it is installed. Maintenance must be a basic consideration in design and in determination of first cost. See Table 4.5.2 in Volume V for specific maintenance requirements.

Handle any standing water and sediments removed during the maintenance operation in a manner consistent with Appendix IV-G in Volume IV.

Vegetation. If a shallow marsh is established, then periodic removal of dead vegetation may be necessary. Since decomposing vegetation can release pollutants captured in the wet pond, especially nutrients, it may be necessary to harvest dead vegetation annually prior to the winter wet season. Otherwise the decaying vegetation can export pollutants out of the pond and also can cause nuisance conditions to occur. If harvesting is to be done in the wetland, have a wetland scientist prepare a written harvesting procedure and submitted it with the drainage design to the local government.

Sediment. Maintenance of sediment forebays and attention to sediment accumulation within the pond is extremely important. Continually monitor sediment deposition in the basin. Owners, operators, and maintenance authorities should be aware that significant concentrations of metals (e.g., lead, zinc, and cadmium) as well as some organics such as pesticides, may be expected to accumulate at the bottom of these treatment facilities. Regularly conduct testing sediment, especially near points of inflow, to determine the leaching potential and level of accumulation of potentially hazardous material before disposal.

Methods of Analysis

Detention Volume and Outflow. Design volumes and outflows for detention ponds in accordance with Minimum Requirements #7 in Volume I and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 2 of this Volume. Design guidelines for restrictor orifice structures are given in Section 3.2.4.

Note: The design water surface elevation is the highest elevation which occurs in order to meet the required outflow performance for the pond.

Detention Ponds in Infiltrative Soils. Detention ponds may occasionally be sited on till soils that are sufficiently permeable for a properly functioning infiltration system (see Section 3.3). These detention ponds have a surface discharge and may also utilize infiltration as a second pond outflow. Detention ponds sized with infiltration as a second outflow must meet all the requirements of Section 3.3 for infiltration ponds, including a soils report, testing, ground water protection, pre-settling, and construction techniques.

Emergency Overflow Spillway Capacity. For impoundments under 10-acre-feet, the emergency overflow spillway weir section must be designed to pass the 100-year runoff event for developed conditions assuming a broad-crested weir. The **broad-crested weir equation** for the spillway section in Figure 3.2.5, for example, would be:

$$Q_{100} = C\,(2g)^{1/2}\left[\frac{2}{3}LH^{3/2} + \frac{8}{15}(\operatorname{Tan}\theta)\,H^{5/2}\right] \qquad \text{(equation 1)}$$

Where Q_{100} = peak flow for the 100-year runoff event (cfs)
C = discharge coefficient (0.6)
g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)
L = length of weir (ft)
H = height of water over weir (ft)
θ = angle of side slopes

Q_{100} is either the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step from the 100-year, 24-hour storm and a Type 1A distribution, or the 100-year, 1-hour flow, indicated by an approved continuous runoff model, multiplied by a factor of 1.6.

Assuming C = 0.6 and Tan θ = 3 (for 3:1 slopes), the equation becomes:

$$Q_{100} = 3.21[LH^{3/2} + 2.4\,H^{5/2}] \qquad \text{(equation 2)}$$

To find width L for the weir section, the equation is rearranged to use the computed Q_{100} and trial values of H (0.2 feet minimum):

$$L = [Q_{100}/(3.21H^{3/2})] - 2.4\,H \quad \text{or} \quad 6 \text{ feet minimum} \qquad \text{(equation 3)}$$

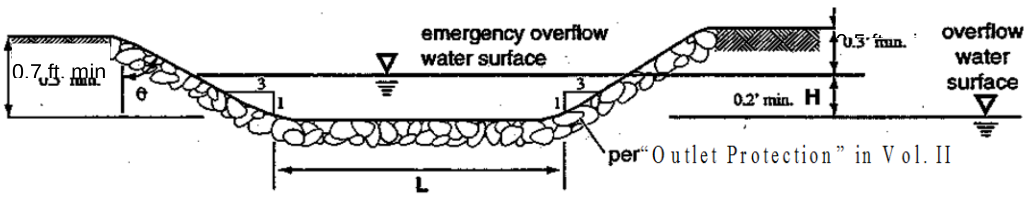


Figure 3.2.5 - Weir Section for Emergency Overflow Spillway

3.2.2 Detention Tanks

Detention tanks are underground storage facilities typically constructed with large diameter corrugated metal pipe. Standard detention tank details are shown in Figure 3.2.6 and Figure 3.2.7. Control structure details are shown in Section 3.2.4.

Design Criteria

General. Typical design guidelines are as follows:

1. Tanks may be designed as flow-through systems with manholes in line (see Figure 3.2.6) to promote sediment removal and facilitate maintenance. Tanks may be designed as back-up systems if preceded by water quality facilities, since little sediment should reach the inlet/control structure and low head losses can be expected because of the proximity of the inlet/control structure to the tank.
2. Locate the detention tank bottom 0.5 feet below the inlet and outlet to provide dead storage for sediment.
3. Use a 36-inch minimum pipe diameter.
4. Tanks larger than 36 inches may be connected to each adjoining structure with a short section (2-foot maximum length) of 36-inch minimum diameter pipe.
5. Refer to the details of outflow control structures in Section 3.2.4.

Note: Control and access manholes should have additional ladder rungs to allow ready access to all tank access pipes when the catch basin sump is filled with water (see Figure 3.2.9, plan view).

Materials. Galvanized metals leach zinc into the environment, especially in standing water situations. This can result in zinc concentrations that can be toxic to aquatic life. Therefore, use of galvanized materials in stormwater facilities and conveyance systems is discouraged. Where other metals, such as aluminum or stainless steel, or plastics are available, they should be used.

Pipe material, joints, and protective treatment for tanks should be in accordance with Section 9.05 of the *WSDOT/APWA Standard Specification*.

Structural Stability. Tanks must meet structural requirements for overburden support and traffic loading if appropriate. Accommodate H-20 live loads for tanks lying under parking areas and access roads. Design metal tank end plates for structural stability at maximum hydrostatic loading conditions. Flat end plates generally require thicker gage material than the pipe and/or require reinforcing ribs. Place tanks on stable, well consolidated native material with a suitable bedding. Do not place tanks in fill slopes, unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructability.

Buoyancy. In moderately pervious soils where seasonal ground water may induce flotation, balance buoyancy tendencies by either ballasting with backfill or concrete backfill, providing concrete anchors, increasing the total weight, or providing subsurface drains to permanently lower the ground water table. Calculations that demonstrate stability must be documented.

Access. The following guidelines for access may be used.

1. The maximum depth from finished grade to tank invert should be 20 feet.
2. Position access openings a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the tank.
3. All tank access openings may have round, solid locking lids (usually 1/2 to 5/8-inch diameter Allen-head cap screws).
4. Thirty-six-inch minimum diameter CMP riser-type manholes (Figure 3.2.7) of the same gage as the tank material may be used for access along the length of the tank and at the upstream terminus of the tank in a backup system. The top slab is separated (1-inch minimum gap) from the top of the riser to allow for deflections from vehicle loadings without damaging the riser tank.
5. Make all tank access openings readily accessible by maintenance vehicles.
6. Tanks must comply with the OSHA confined space requirements, which includes clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser(s), just under the access lid.

Access Roads. Access roads are needed to all detention tank control structures and risers. Design and construct access roads as specified for detention ponds in Section 3.2.1.

Right-of-Way. Right-of-way may be needed for detention tank maintenance. It is recommended that any tract not abutting public right-of-way have a 15 to 20-foot wide extension of the tract to accommodate an access road to the facility.

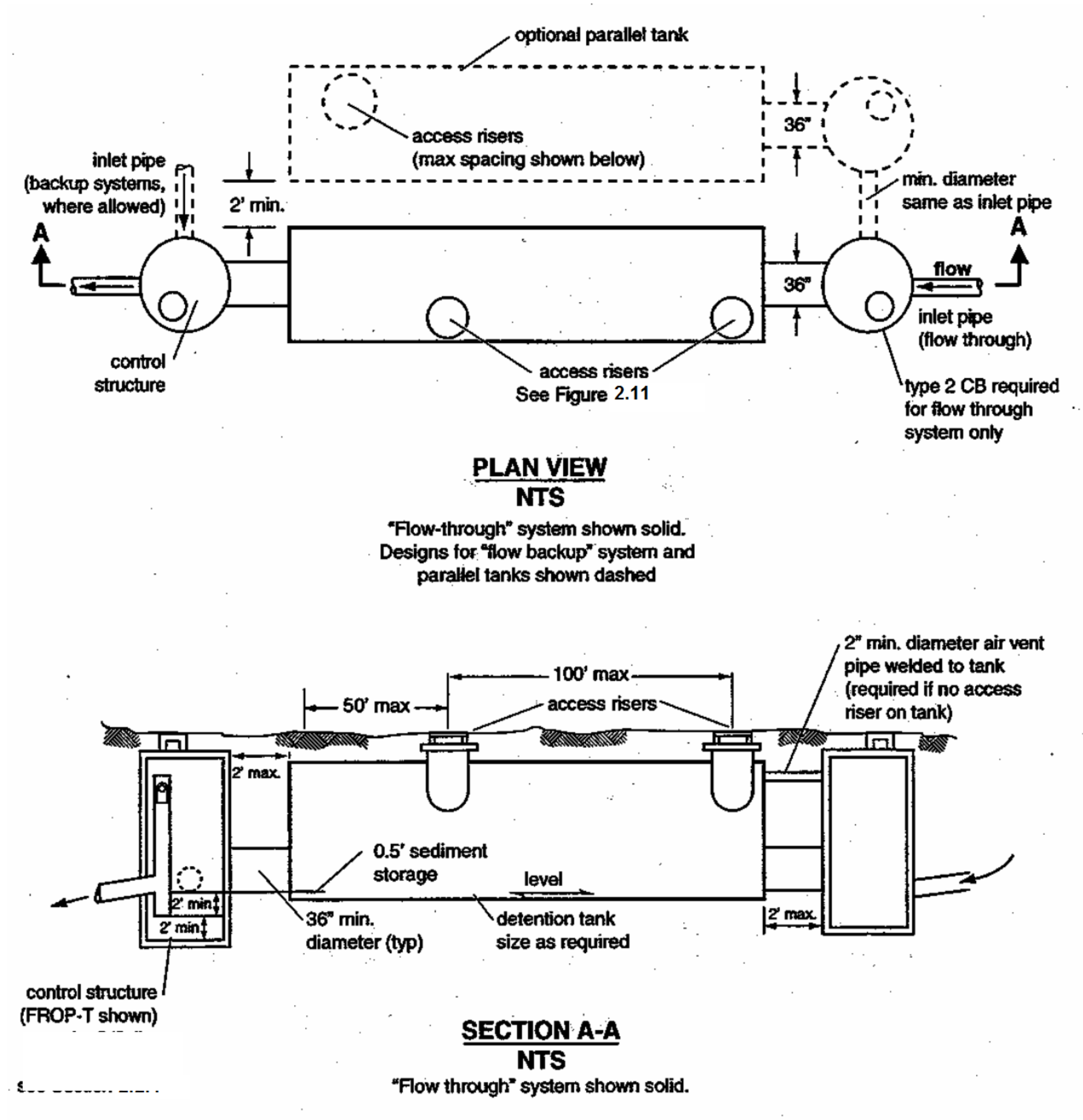
Setbacks. It is recommended that facilities be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government and from any septic drainfield. However, the setback requirements are generally specified by the local government, uniform building code, or other statewide regulation and may be different from those mentioned above.

All facilities must be a minimum of 50 feet from the top of any steep (greater than 15%) slope. A geotechnical analysis and report must be prepared addressing the potential impact of the facility on a slope steeper than 15%.

Maintenance. Build in provisions to facilitate maintenance operations into the project when it is installed. Maintenance must be a basic consideration in design and in determination of first cost. See Table 4.5.2. in Volume V for specific maintenance requirements.

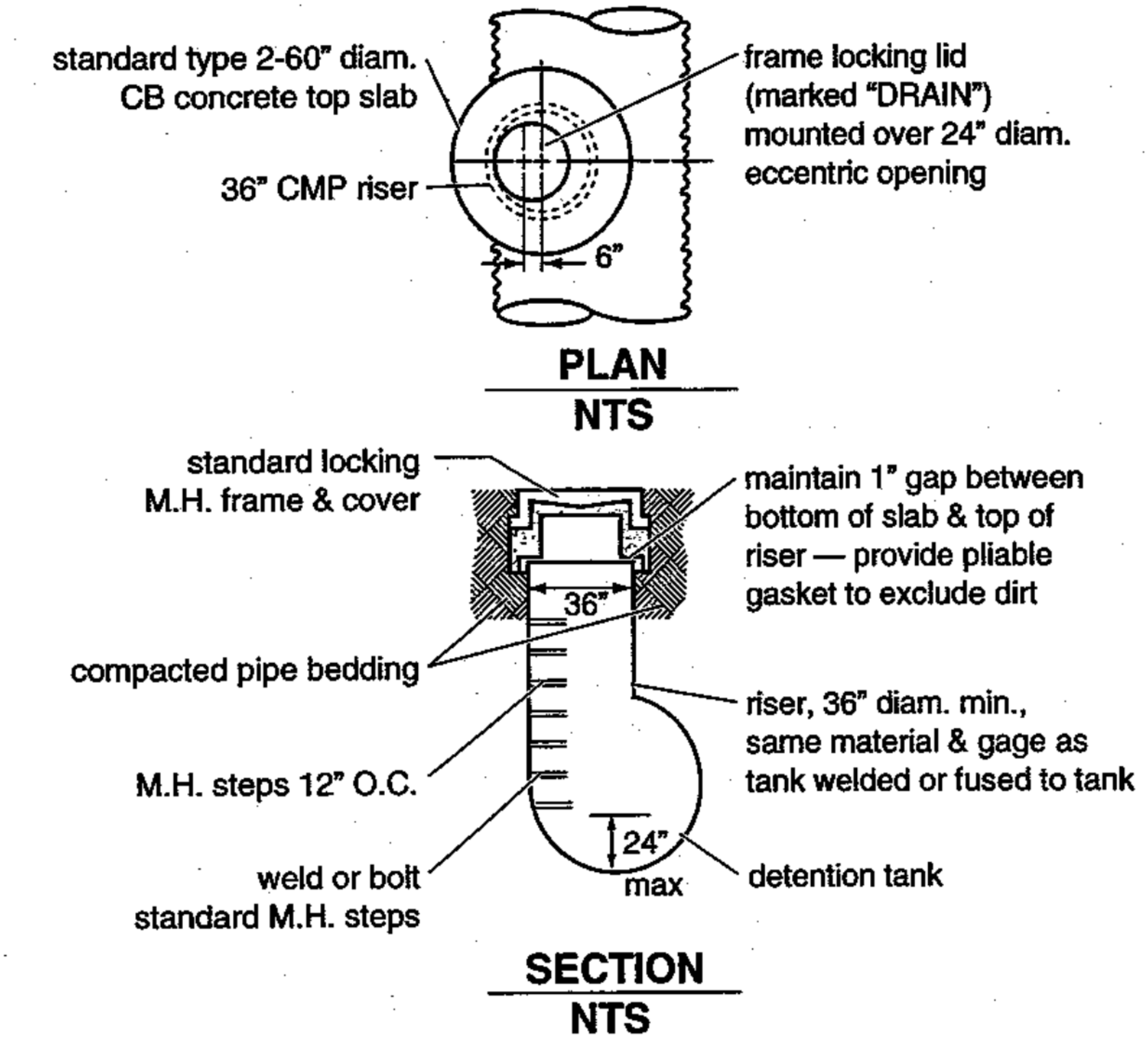
Methods of Analysis **Detention Volume and Outflow**

The volume and outflow design for detention tanks must be in accordance with Minimum Requirement #7 in Volume I and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Chapter 2. Restrictor and orifice design are given in Section 3.2.4.



NOTE:
All metal parts corrosion resistant.
Steel parts galvanized and asphalt coated (Treatment 1 or better).

Figure 3.2.6 - Typical Detention Tank



Notes:
1. Use adjusting blocks as required to bring frame to grade.
2. All materials to be aluminum or galvanized and asphalt coated (Treatment 1 or better).
3. Must be located for access by maintenance vehicles.
4. May substitute WSDOT special Type IV manhole (RCP only).

Figure 3.2.7 - Detention Tank Access Detail

3.2.3 Detention Vaults

Detention vaults are box-shaped underground storage facilities typically constructed with reinforced concrete. A standard detention vault detail is shown in Figure 3.2.8. Control structure details are shown in Section 3.2.4.

Design Criteria

General. Typical design guidelines are as follows:

1. Detention vaults may be designed as flow-through systems with bottoms level (longitudinally) or sloped toward the inlet to facilitate sediment removal. Maximize the distance between the inlet and outlet as feasible.
2. The detention vault bottom may slope at least 5 percent from each side towards the center, forming a broad "v" to facilitate sediment removal. More than one "v" may be used to minimize vault depth. However, the vault bottom may be flat with 0.5-1 foot of sediment storage if removable panels are provided over the entire vault. It is recommended that the removable panels be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.
3. Elevate the invert elevation of the outlet above the bottom of the vault to provide an average 6 inches of sediment storage over the entire bottom. Also, elevate the outlet a minimum of 2 feet above the orifice to retain oil within the vault.
4. Details of outflow control structures are given in Section 3.2.4.

Materials. Minimum 3,000 psi structural reinforced concrete may be used for detention vaults. Provide all construction joints with water stops.

Structural Stability. All vaults must meet structural requirements for overburden support and H-20 traffic loading (See Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges, 1998 Interim Revisions, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials). Vaults located under roadways must meet any live load requirements of the local government. Design cast-in-place wall sections as retaining walls. Structural designs for cast-in-place vaults must be stamped by a licensed civil engineer with structural expertise. Place vaults on stable, well-consolidated native material with suitable bedding. Do not place vaults in fill slopes, unless analyzed in a geotechnical report for stability and constructability.

Access. Provide access over the inlet pipe and outlet structure. Use the following guidelines for access.

1. Position access openings a maximum of 50 feet from any location within the tank. Additional access points may be needed on large vaults. Provide access to each "v" if more than one "v" is provided in the vault floor.
2. For vaults with greater than 1,250 square feet of floor area, provide a 5' by 10' removable panel over the inlet pipe (instead of a standard frame, grate and solid cover). Or, provide a separate access vault as shown in Figure 3.2.8.
3. For vaults under roadways, locate the removable panel outside the travel lanes. Or, provide multiple standard locking manhole covers. Ladders and hand-holds need only be provided at the outlet pipe and inlet pipe, and as needed to meet OSHA confined space requirements. Vaults

providing manhole access at 12-foot spacing need not provide corner ventilation pipes as specified in Item 10 below.

4. All access openings, except those covered by removable panels, may have round, solid locking lids, or 3-foot square, locking diamond plate covers.
5. Vaults with widths 10 feet or less must have removable lids.
6. The maximum depth from finished grade to the vault invert should be 20 feet.
7. Provise internal structural walls of large vaults with openings sufficient for maintenance access between cells. Size and situate the openings to allow access to the maintenance "v" in the vault floor.
8. The minimum internal height should be 7 feet from the highest point of the vault floor (not sump), and the minimum width should be 4 feet. However, concrete vaults may be a minimum 3 feet in height and width if used as tanks with access manholes at each end, and if the width is no larger than the height. Also, the minimum internal height requirement may not be needed for any areas covered by removable panels.
9. Vaults must comply with the OSHA confined space requirements, which includes clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser(s), just under the access lid.
10. Provide ventilation pipes (minimum 12-inch diameter or equivalent) in all four corners of vaults to allow for artificial ventilation prior to entry of maintenance personnel into the vault. Or, provide removable panels over the entire vault.

Access Roads. Access roads are needed to the access panel (if applicable), the control structure, and at least one access point per cell, and they may be designed and constructed as specified for detention ponds in Section 3.2.1.

Right-of-Way. Right-of-way is needed for detention vaults maintenance. It is recommended that any tract not abutting public right-of-way should have a 15 to 20-foot wide extension of the tract to accommodate an access road to the facility.

Setbacks. It is recommended that facilities be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government and from any septic drainfield. However, the setback requirements are generally specified by the local government, uniform building code, or other statewide regulation and may be different from those mentioned above.

All facilities must be a minimum of 50 feet from the top of any steep (greater than 15%) slope. A geotechnical analysis and report must be prepared addressing the potential impact of the facility on a slope steeper than 15%.

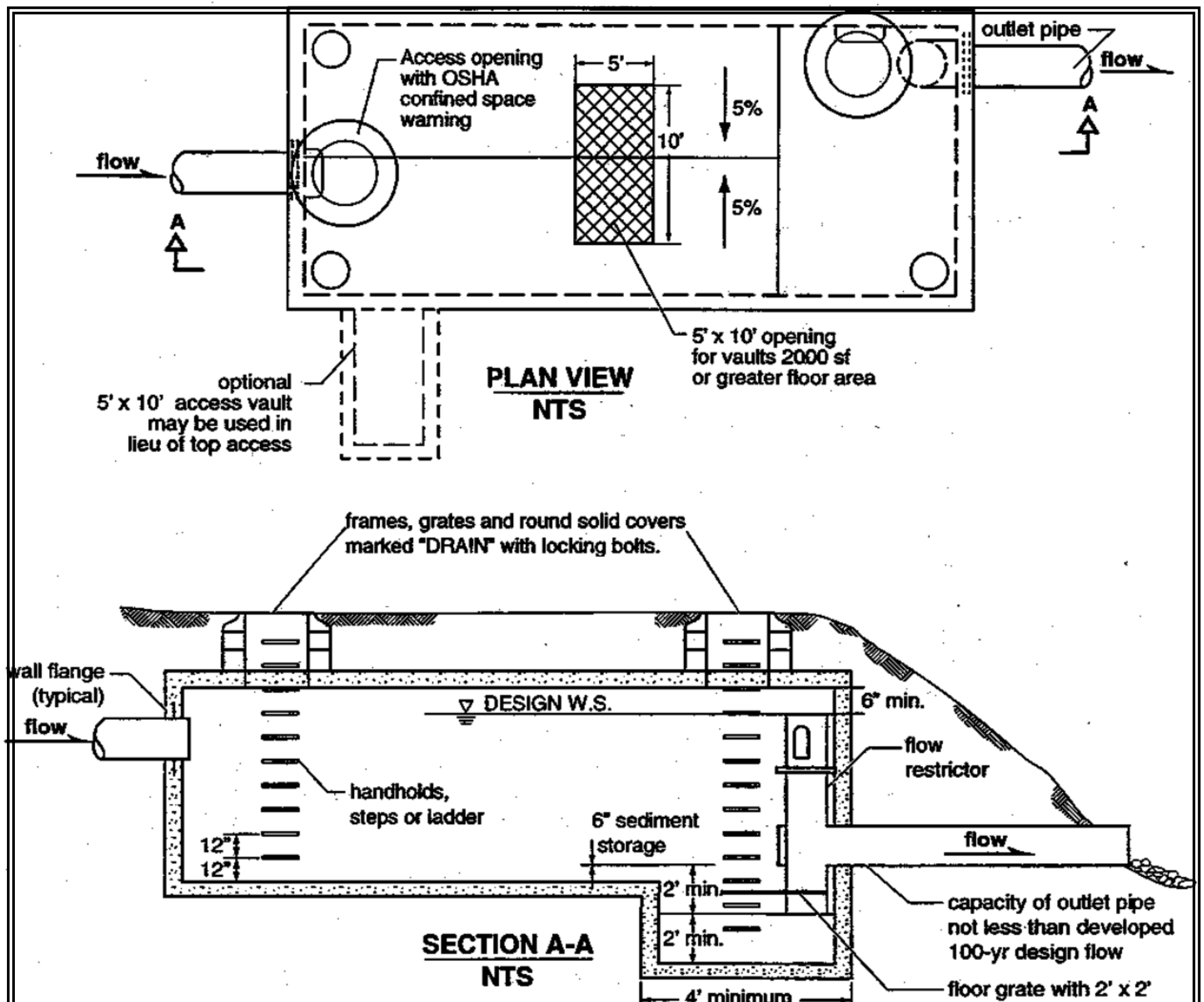
Maintenance. Build in provisions to facilitate maintenance operations into the project when it is installed. Maintenance must be a basic consideration in design and in determination of first cost. See Table 3.2.4 for specific maintenance requirements.

Methods of Analysis

Detention Volume and Outflow

Design the volume and outflow for detention vaults in accordance with Minimum Requirement #7 in Volume I and the hydrologic analysis and design methods in Section 2.2.3. Restrictor and orifice design are given in Section 3.2.4.

NOTE: All vault areas must be within 50' of an access point



NOTES:

1. All metal parts must be corrosion resistant. Steel parts must be galvanized and asphalt coated (Treatment I or better).
2. Provide water stop at all cast-in-place construction joints. Precast vaults shall have approved rubber gasket system.
3. Vaults ≤ 10' wide must use removable lids.
4. Prefabricated vault sections may require structural modifications to support 5' x 10' opening over main vault. Alternatively, access can be provided via a side vestibule as shown.

Figure 3.2.8 - Typical Detention Vault

3.2.4 Control Structures

Control structures are catch basins or manholes with a restrictor device for controlling outflow from a facility to meet the desired performance. Riser type restrictor devices ("tees" or "FROP-Ts") also provide some incidental oil/water separation to temporarily detain oil or other floatable pollutants in runoff due to accidental spill or illegal dumping.

The restrictor device usually consists of two or more orifices and/or a weir section sized to meet performance requirements.

Standard control structure details are shown in Figure 3.2.9 through Figure 3.2.11.

Design Criteria

Multiple Orifice Restrictor

In most cases, control structures need only two orifices: one at the bottom and one near the top of the riser, although additional orifices may best utilize detention storage volume. Several orifices may be located at the same elevation if necessary to meet performance requirements.

1. Minimum orifice diameter is 0.5 inches. *Note:* In some instances, a 0.5-inch bottom orifice will be too large to meet target release rates, even with minimal head. In these cases, the live storage depth need not be reduced to less than 3 feet in an attempt to meet the performance standards. Also, under such circumstances, flow-throttling devices may be a feasible option. These devices will throttle flows while maintaining a plug-resistant opening.
2. Orifices may be constructed on a tee section as shown in Figure 3.2.9 or on a baffle as shown in Figure 3.2.10.
3. In some cases, performance requirements may require the top orifice/elbow to be located too high on the riser to be physically constructed (e.g., a 13-inch diameter orifice positioned 0.5 feet from the top of the riser). In these cases, a notch weir in the riser pipe may be used to meet performance requirements (see Figure 3.2.13).
4. Consider the backwater effect of water surface elevations in the downstream conveyance system. High tailwater elevations may affect performance of the restrictor system and reduce live storage volumes.

Riser and Weir Restrictor

1. Properly designed weirs may be used as flow restrictors (see Figure 3.2.11 and Figure 3.2.13 through Figure 3.2.15). However, they must be designed to provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow discharging to the detention facility.
2. The combined orifice and riser (or weir) overflow may be used to meet performance requirements; however, the design must still provide for primary overflow of the developed 100-year peak flow assuming all orifices are plugged. Figure 3.2.16 can be used to calculate the head in feet above a riser of given diameter and flow.

Access. The following guidelines for access may be used.

1. Provide an access road to the control structure for inspection and maintenance. Design and construct the access road as specified for detention ponds in Section 3.3.1.
2. Manhole and catch basin lids for control structures must be locking, and rim elevations must match proposed finish grade.
3. Manholes and catch-basins must meet the OSRA confined space requirements, which include clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser, just under the access lid.

Information Plate. It is recommended that a brass or stainless steel plate be permanently attached inside each control structure with the following information engraved on the plate:

Name and file number of project

Name and company of (1) developer, (2) engineer, and (3) contractor

Date constructed

Date of manual used for design

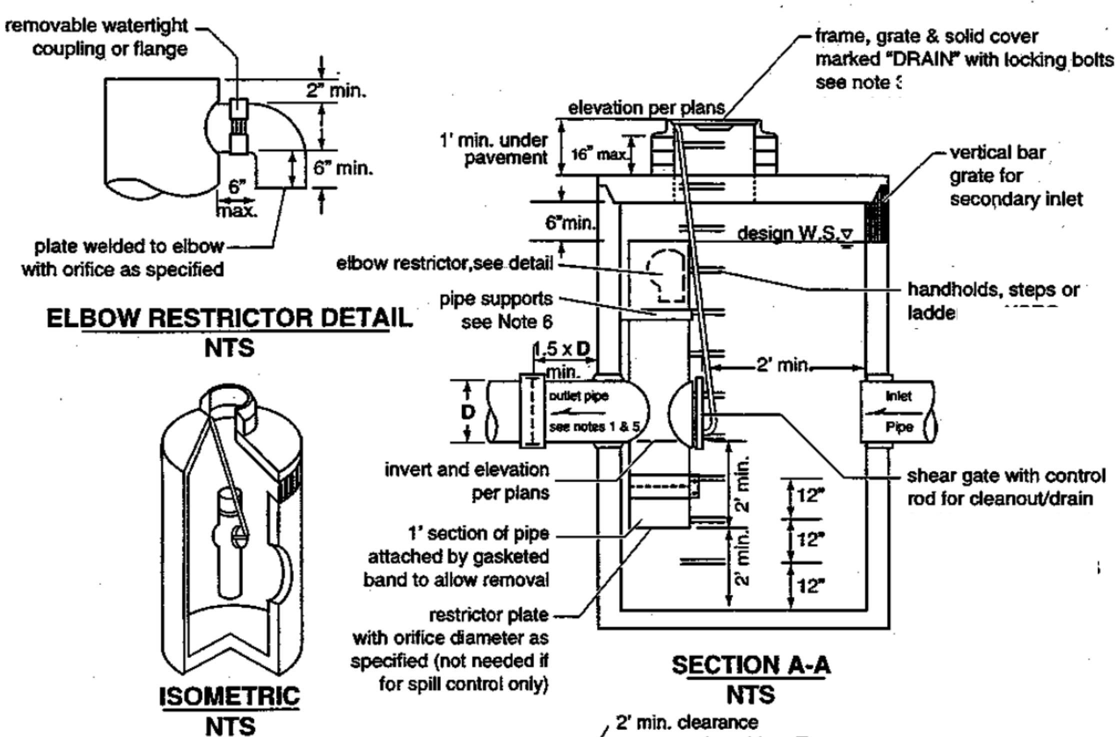
Outflow performance criteria

Release mechanism size, type, and invert elevation

List of stage, discharge, and volume at one-foot increments

Elevation of overflow

Recommended frequency of maintenance.



NOTES:

1. Use a minimum of a 54" diameter type 2 catch basin.
2. Outlet Capacity: 100-Year developed peak flow.
3. Metal Parts: Corrosion resistant. Non-Galvanized parts perferred. Galvanized pipe parts to have asphalt treatment 1.
4. Frame and ladder or steps offset so:
   A. Cleanout gate is visible from top.
   B. Climb-down space is clear of riser and cleanout gate.
   C. Frame is clear of curb.
5. If metal outlet pipe connects to cement concrete pipe: outlet pipe to have smooth O.D. equal to concrete pipe I.D. less 1/4".
6. Provide at least one 3" X .090 inches support bracket anchored to concrete wall. (maximum 3'-0" vertical spacing)
7. Locate elbow restrictor(s) as necessary to provide minimum clearance as shown.
8. Locate additional ladder rungs in structures used as access to tanks or vaults to allow access when catch basin is filled with water.

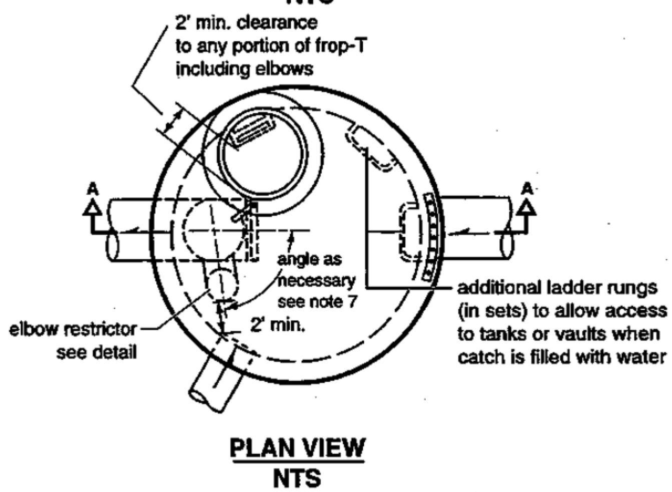


Figure 3.2.9 - Flow Restrictor (TEE)

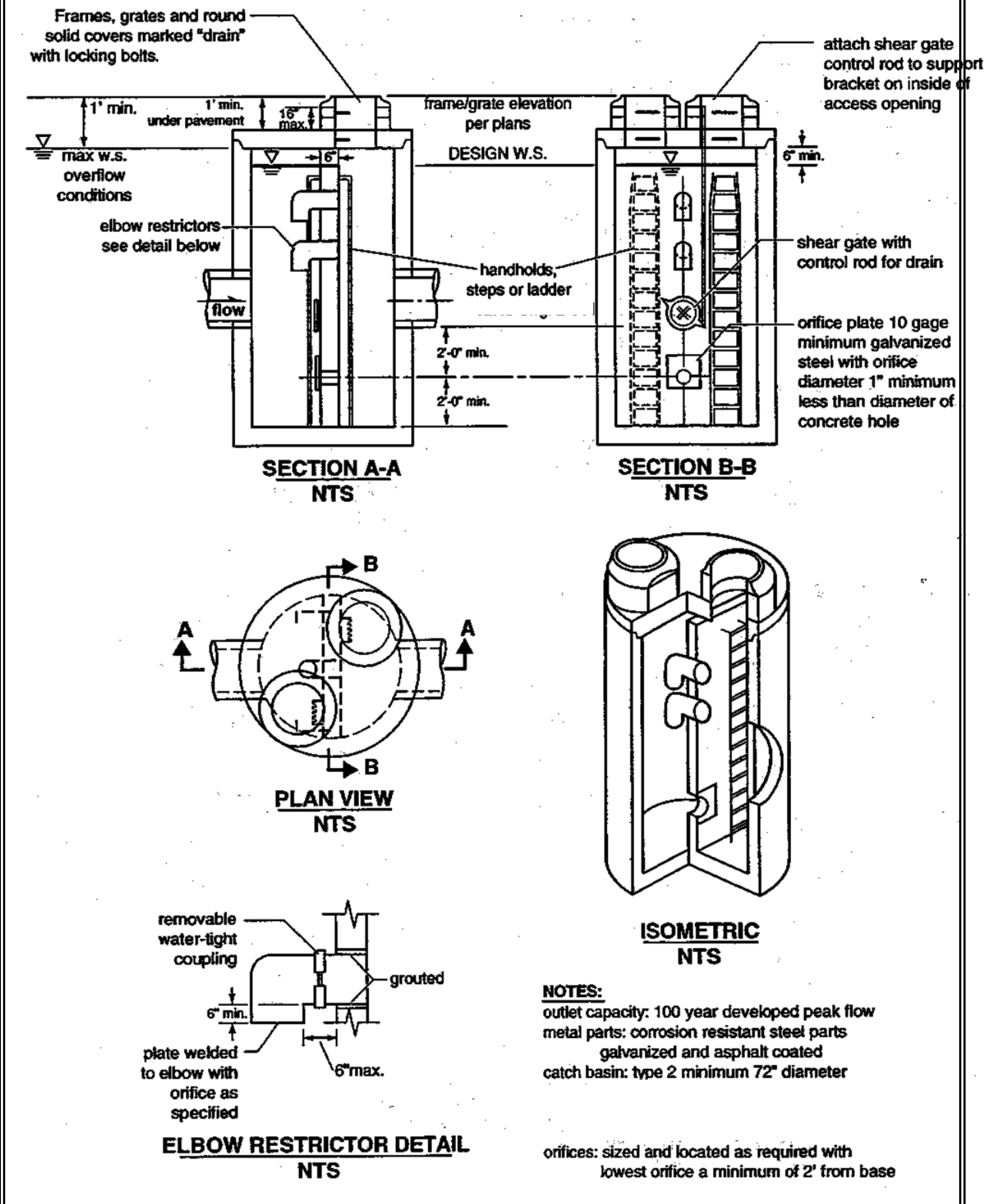
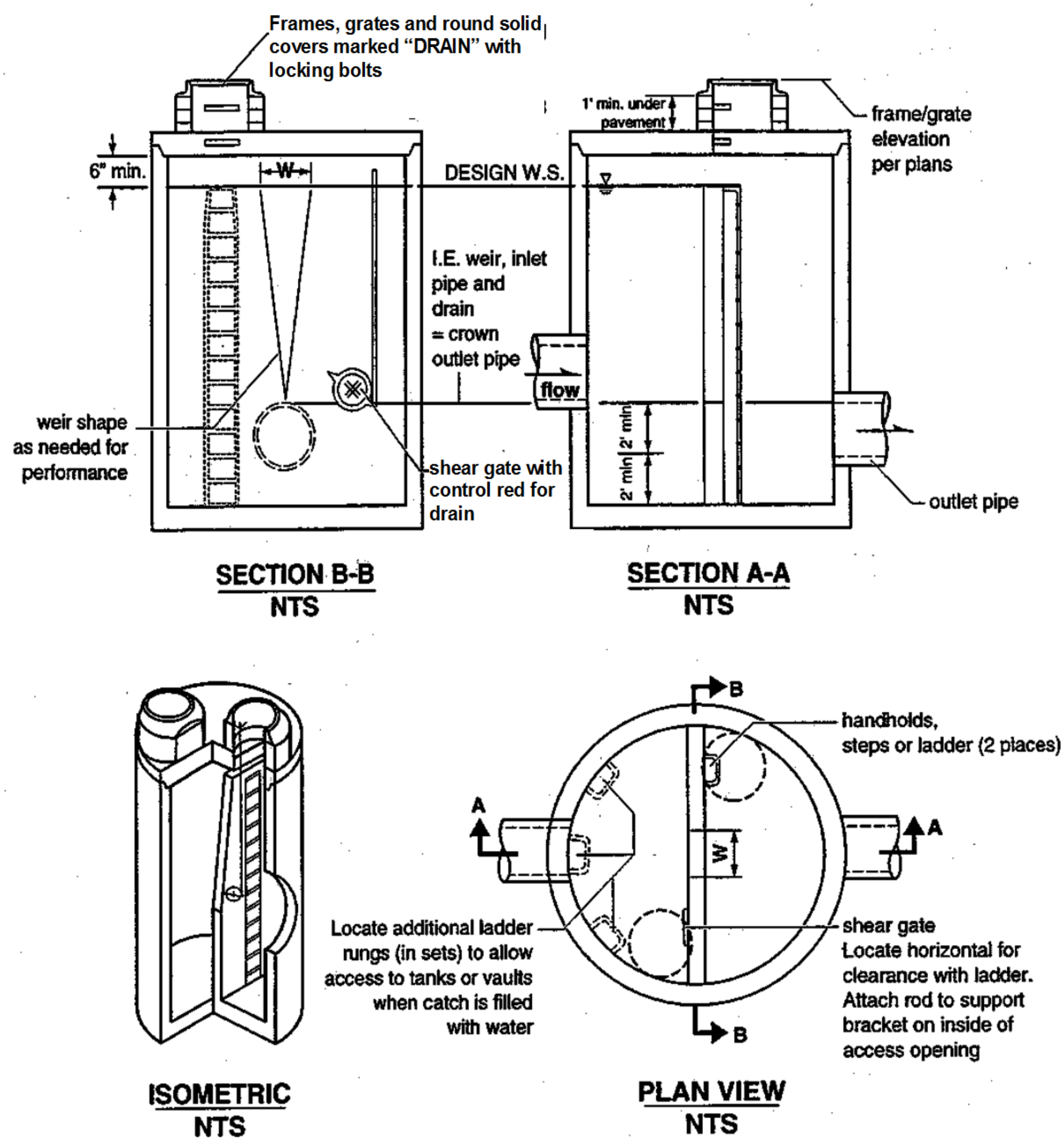


Figure 3.2.10 - Flow Restrictor (Baffle)



NOTES:

Outlet Capacity: 100-year developed peak flow.

Metal Parts: corrosion resistant steel parts galvanized and asphalt coated.

Catch Basin: type 2 Min. 72" diameter

Baffle Wall: to be designed with concrete reinforcing as required.

Spill containment must be provided to temporarily detain oil or floatable pollutants in runoff due to accidental spill or illegal dumping.

Figure 3.2.11 - Flow Restrictor (Weir)

Maintenance. Control structures and catch basins have a history of maintenance-related problems and it is imperative to establish a good maintenance program for them to function properly. Typical sediment builds up inside the structure, which blocks or restricts flow to the inlet. To prevent this problem routinely clean out these structures at least twice per year. Conduct regular inspections of control structures to detect the need for non-routine cleanout, especially if construction or land-disturbing activities occur in the contributing drainage area.

Install a 15-foot wide access road to the control structure for inspection and maintenance.

Table 4.5.2 in Volume V provides maintenance recommendations for control structures and catch basins.

Methods of Analysis This section presents the methods and equations for design of **control structure restrictor devices.** Included are details for the design of orifices, rectangular sharp-crested weirs, v-notch weirs, sutro weirs, and overflow risers.

Orifices. Flow-through orifice plates in the standard tee section or turn-down elbow may be approximated by the general equation:

$$Q = C\,A\sqrt{2gh} \qquad \text{(equation 4)}$$

where Q = flow (cfs)
C = coefficient of discharge (0.62 for plate orifice)
A = area of orifice (ft^2)
h = hydraulic head (ft)
g = gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)

Figure 3.2.12 illustrates this simplified application of the orifice equation.

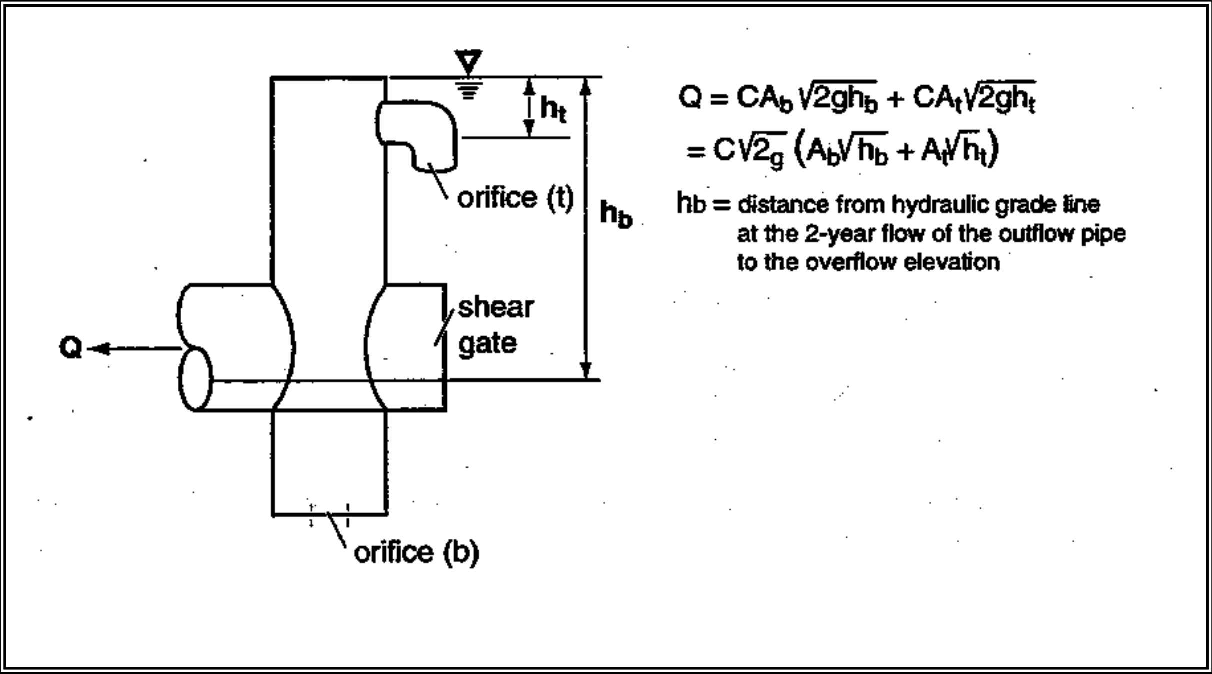


Figure 3.2.12 - Simple Orifice

The diameter of the orifice is calculated from the flow. The orifice equation is often useful when expressed as the orifice diameter in inches:

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{36.88Q}{\sqrt{h}}} \qquad \text{(equation 5)}$$

where d = orifice diameter (inches)
Q = flow (cfs)
h = hydraulic head (ft)

Rectangular Sharp-Crested Weir. The rectangular sharp-crested weir design shown in Figure 3.2.13 may be analyzed using standard weir equations for the fully contracted condition.

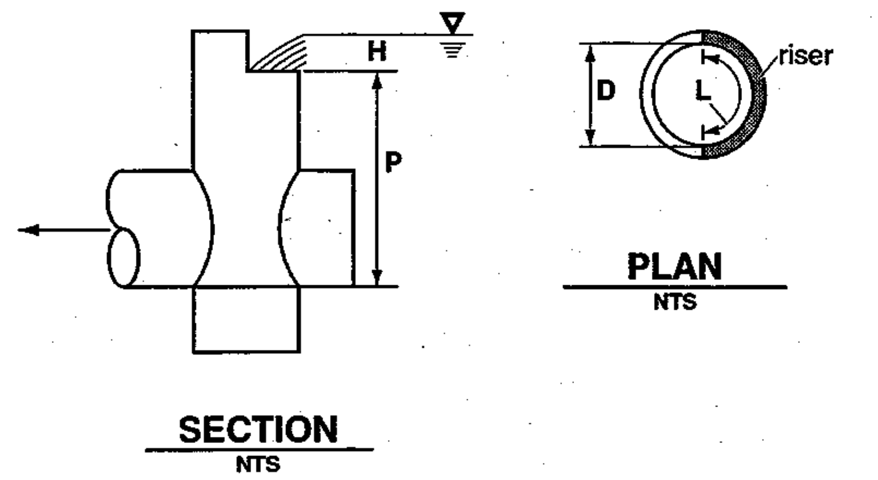


Figure 3.2.13 - Rectangular, Sharp-Crested Weir

$Q=C\ (L - 0.2H)H^{3/2}$ (equation 6)

where Q = flow (cfs)

C = 3.27 + 0.40 H/P (ft)

H, P are as shown above

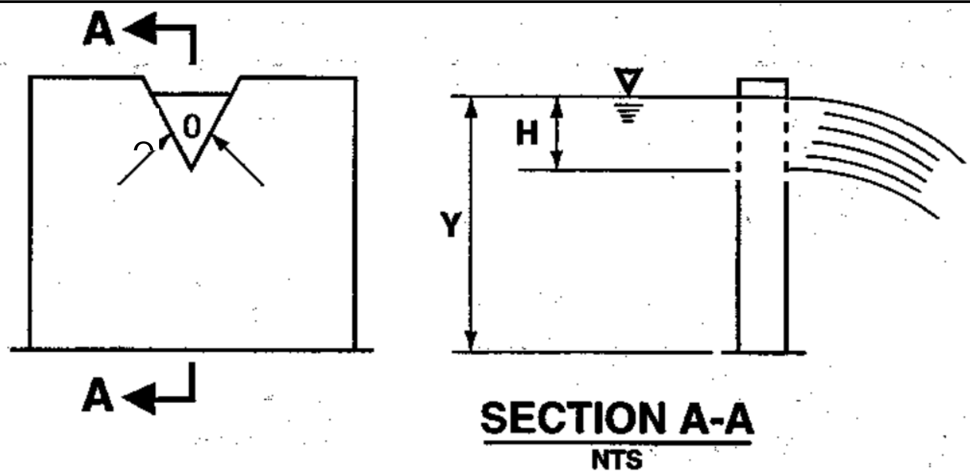
L = length (ft) of the portion of the riser circumference as necessary not to exceed 50 percent of the circumference

D = inside riser diameter (ft)

Note that this equation accounts for side contractions by subtracting 0.1H from L for each side of the notch weir.

V-Notch Sharp - Crested Weir

V-notch weirs as shown in Figure 3.2.14 may be analyzed using standard equations for the fully contracted condition.



$$Q = C_d(\tan \Theta/2)H^{5/2}, \text{ in cfs}$$

Where values of C_d may be taken from the following chart:

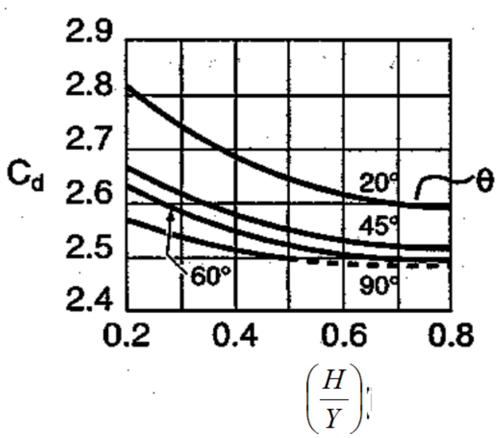


Figure 3.2.14 - V-Notch, Sharp-Crested Weir

Proportional or Sutro Weir. Sutro weirs are designed so that the discharge is proportional to the total head. This design may be useful in some cases to meet performance requirements.

The sutro weir consists of a rectangular section joined to a curved portion that provides proportionality for all heads above the line A-B (see Figure 3.2.15). The weir may be symmetrical or non-symmetrical.

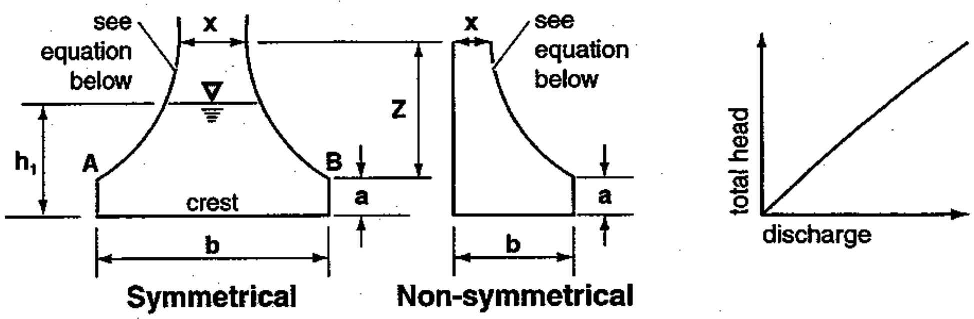


Figure 3.2.15 - Sutro Weir

For this type of weir, the curved portion is defined by the following equation (calculated in radians):

$$\frac{x}{b} = 1 - \frac{2}{\pi} Tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{Z}{a}} \qquad \text{(equation 7)}$$

where a, b, x and Z are as shown in Figure 3.2.15. The head-discharge relationship is:

$$Q = (C_d)\,(b)\,(\sqrt{2ga})(h_1 - \frac{a}{3}) \qquad \text{(equation 8)}$$

Values of *Cd* for both symmetrical and non-symmetrical sutro weirs are summarized in Table 3.2.3.

Note: When b > 1.50 or a > 0.30, use Cd=0.6.

Table 3.2.3
Values of C_d for Sutro Weirs

Cd *Values, Symmetrical*					
	b (ft)				
a (ft)	**0.50**	**0.75**	**1.0**	**1.25**	**1.50**
0.02	0.608	0.613	0.617	0.6185	0.619
0.05	0.606	0.611	0.615	0.617	0.6175
0.10	0.603	0.608	0.612	0.6135	0.614
0.15	0.601	0.6055	0.610	0.6115	0.612
0.20	0.599	0.604	0.608	0.6095	0.610
0.25	0.598	0.6025	0.6065	0.608	0.6085
0.30	0.597	0.602	0.606	0.6075	0.608

***Cd* Values, Non-Symmetrical**					
	***b* (ft)**				
a (ft)	**0.50**	**0.75**	**1.0**	**1.25**	**1.50**
0.02	0.614	0.619	0.623	0.6245	0.625
0.05	0.612	0.617	0.621	0.623	0.6235
0.10	0.609	0.614	0.618	0.6195	0.620
0.15	0.607	0.6115	0.616	0.6175	0.618
0.20	0.605	0.610	0.614	0.6155	0.616
0.25	0.604	0.6085	0.6125	0.614	0.6145
0.30	0.603	0.608	0.612	0.6135	0.614

Riser Overflow. The nomograph in Figure 3.2.16 can be used to determine the head (in feet) above a riser of given diameter and for a given flow (usually the 100-year peak flow for developed conditions).

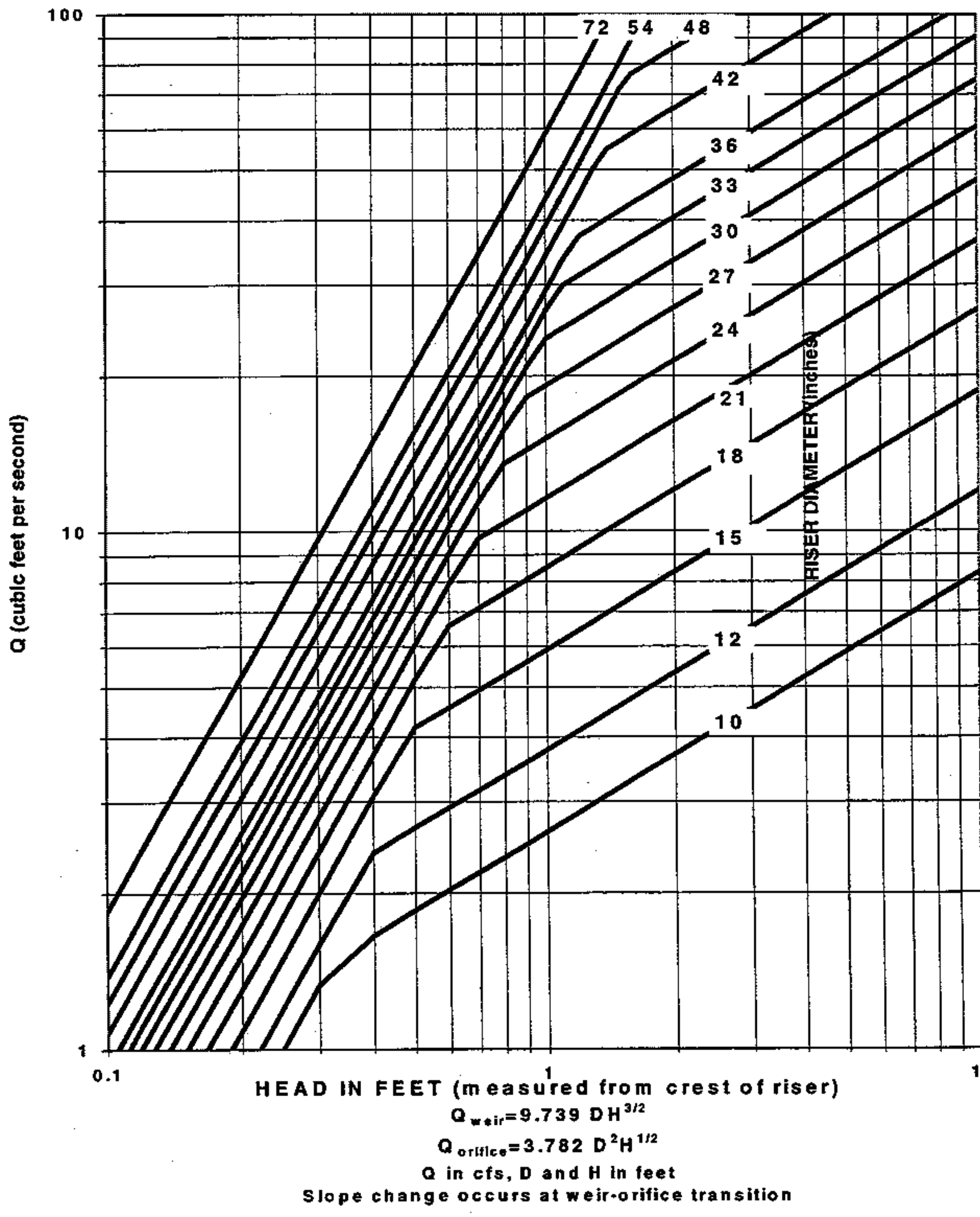


Figure 3.2.16 - Riser Inflow Curves

3.2.5 Other Detention Options

This section presents other design options for detaining flows to meet flow control facility requirements.

Use of Parking Lots for Additional Detention. Private parking lots may be used to provide additional detention volume for runoff events greater than the 2-year runoff event provided all of the following are met:

1. The depth of water detained does not exceed 1 foot at any location in the parking lot for runoff events up to and including the 100-year event.
2. The gradient of the parking lot area subject to ponding is 1 percent or greater.
3. The emergency overflow path is identified and noted on the engineering plan. The overflow must not create a significant adverse impact to downhill properties or drainage system.
4. Fire lanes used for emergency equipment are free of ponding water for all runoff events up to and including the 100-year event.

Use of Roofs for Detention

Detention ponding on roofs of structures may be used to meet flow control requirements provided all of the following are met:

1. The roof support structure is analyzed by a structural engineer to address the weight of ponded water.
2. The roof area subject to ponding is sufficiently waterproofed to achieve a minimum service life of 30 years.
3. The minimum pitch of the roof area subject to ponding is 1/4-inch per foot.
4. An overflow system is included in the design to safely convey the 100-year peak flow from the roof
5. A mechanism is included in the design to allow the ponding area to be drained for maintenance purposes or in the event the restrictor device is plugged.

3.3 Infiltration Facilities for Flow Control and for Treatment

3.3.1 Purpose

The purpose of this section is to describe the steps required to: evaluate the suitability of a site for infiltration facilities; establish a design infiltration rate; and design facilities for infiltration.

This section applies to infiltration ponds/basins, trenches, vaults and tanks. It does not apply to downspout infiltration trenches. This section only applies to the design of Bioretention facilities, permeable pavements, and filter media devices where specific references are made in:

- Section 3.4.
- BMP T7.30 – Bioretention (see Volume V).
- BMP T5.15 – Permeable Pavement (see Volume V).

This section also highlights design criteria that are applicable to infiltration facilities serving a treatment function.

3.3.2 Description

An infiltration facility is typically an open basin (pond), trench, or buried perforated pipe used for distributing the stormwater runoff into the underlying soil (See Figure 3.3.1). Stormwater dry-wells receiving uncontaminated or properly treated stormwater can also be considered as infiltration facilities. (See Underground Injection Control Program, Chapter 173-218 WAC).

Coarser more permeable soils can be used for complying with the LID performance standard (an option in Minimum Requirement #5), and the flow control requirement (Minimum Requirement #7) provided that the infiltrated stormwater does not cause a violation of ground water quality standards. At a minimum, pre-treatment for removal of TSS is necessary prior to discharge to the infiltration facility if any runoff comes from a pollution-generating surface. An oil control facility is also necessary for "high use" sites. Pre-treatment facilities that have the capability for removal of soluble pollutants, particularly, petroleum-related pollutants and bacteria, are advisable if Site Suitability Criterion SSC-6 is not met at the infiltration facility.

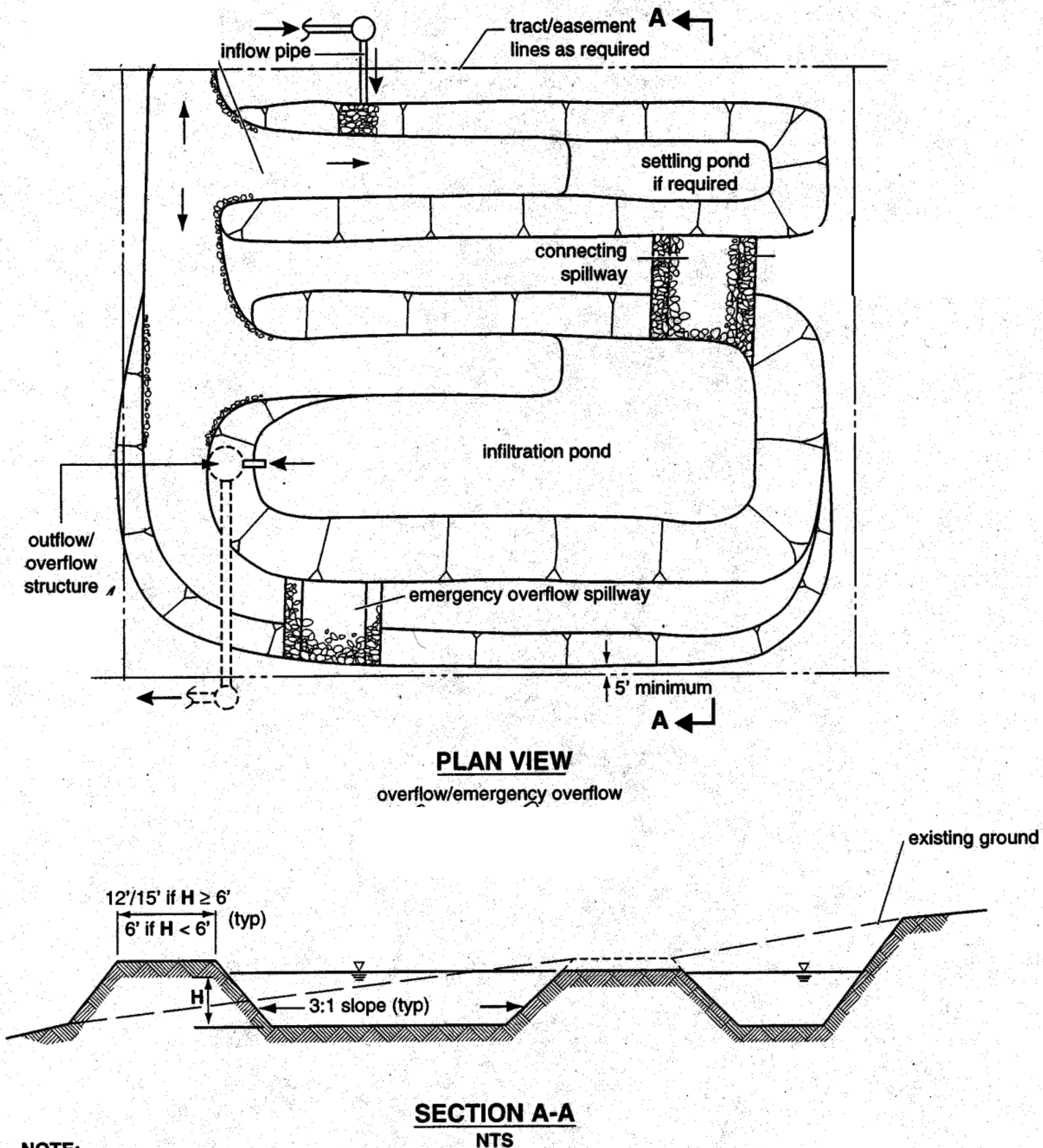
Use of the soil for treatment purposes is an option as long as it is preceded by a pre-settling basin or a basic treatment BMP. This pre-treatment should reduce the incidence of plugging and extend operational times between major maintenance.

3.3.3 Applications

Infiltration facilities for complying with the LID performance standard and the flow control requirement are used to convey stormwater runoff from new development or redevelopment to the ground and ground water after appropriate treatment. Infiltration facilities for treatment purposes rely on the soil profile to provide treatment. In either case, manage runoff in excess of the infiltration capacity of the facilities to comply with the flow control requirement in Volume I, if flow control applies to the project.

Infiltration facilities can help accomplish the following:

- Ground water recharge.
- Discharge of uncontaminated or properly treated stormwater to dry-wells in compliance with Ecology's UIC regulations (Chapter 173-218 WAC).
- Retrofits in limited land areas: Infiltration trenches can be considered for residential lots, commercial areas, parking lots, and open space areas.
- Flood control.
- Streambank erosion control.



NOTE:
Detail is a schematic representation only. Actual configuration will vary depending on specific site constraints and applicable design criteria.

Figure 3.3.1 - Typical Infiltration Pond/Basin

3.3.4 Steps for the Design of Infiltration Facilities - Simplified Approach

The simplified approach for the design of infiltration facilities was derived from high ground water and shallow pond sites in western Washington, and in general will produce conservative designs. This approach can be used when determining the trial geometry of the infiltration facility, for small facilities serving short plats or commercial developments less than 1 acre of contributing area. Designs of infiltration facilities for larger projects should use the detailed approach and may have to incorporate the results of a ground water mounding analysis as described in Section 3.3.8. *Note:* A ground water mounding analysis is advisable for facilities with drainage areas smaller than 1 acre if the depth to a low permeability layer (e.g., less than 0.1 inches per hour) is less than 10 feet.

The simplified approach is applicable to ponds and trenches and includes the process in Figure 3.3.2 and the following steps:

1. Select a location:

This will be based on the ability to convey flow to the location and the expected soil conditions of the location. Conduct a preliminary surface and sub-surface characterization study (Section 3.3.5). Do a preliminary check of Site Suitability Criteria (Section 3.3.7) to initially estimate feasibility of locating an infiltration facility on the site.

2. Estimate volume of stormwater, Vdesign:

Estimate the volume of stormwater by using a continuous hydrograph and an approved continuous runoff model such as WWHM, MGSFlood, or KCRTS for the calculations. The runoff file developed for the project site serves as input to the infiltration basin.

For infiltration basins sized simply to meet treatment requirements, the basin must successfully infiltrate 91% of the influent runoff file. The remaining 9% of the influent file can bypass the infiltration facility.

For infiltration basins sized to meet the flow control standard, the basin must infiltrate either all of the influent file, or a sufficient amount of the influent file such that any overflow/bypass meets the flow duration standard. In addition, the overflow/bypass must meet the LID performance standard if it is the option chosen to meet Minimum Requirement #5, or if it is required of the project.

3. Develop trial infiltration facility geometry:

To develop the trial facility geometry assume an infiltration rate based on previously available data, or a default infiltration rate of 0.5 inches/hour. Use this trial facility geometry to help locate the facility and for planning purposes in developing the geotechnical subsurface investigation plan.

4. Complete More Detailed Site Characterization Study and Consider Site Suitability Criteria:

Information gathered during initial geotechnical and surface investigations is necessary to know whether infiltration is feasible. The geotechnical investigation evaluates the suitability of the site for infiltration, establishes the infiltration rate for design, and evaluates slope stability, foundation capacity, and other geotechnical design information needed to design and assess constructability of the facility.

See sections 3.3.5 and 3.3.7.

5. Determine the design infiltration rate as follows:

Estimate the design (long-term) infiltration rate as follows:

- Use the Large Scale or Small Scale Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) method (or other local-approved method) as described in Section 3.3.6 to estimate a measured (initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}). Testing should occur between December 1 and April 1. Alternatively, for sites underlain with soils not consolidated by glacial advance (e.g., recessional outwash soils), the measured saturated hydraulic conductivity rate (K_{sat}) may be estimated using the grain size analysis method in Section 3.3.6.
- Assume that the K_{sat} is the measured (initial) infiltration rate for the facility.
- Adjust this rate using the appropriate correction factors, as explained in Section 3.3.6 for the PIT results and the Gradation Analysis results, to obtain the design infiltration rate.

6. Size the facility:

The maximum ponded water depth should be between 2 and 6 feet with at least one foot of freeboard.

If sizing a treatment facility, use the output files from an approved continuous runoff model to document: 1) that the facility can infiltrate 91 percent of the influent runoff file; and 2) that the Water Quality Design Storm Volume (indicated by WWHM or MGS Flood) can infiltrate through the infiltration basin surface within 48 hours. The latter can be calculated by multiplying a horizontal projection of the infiltration basin mid-depth dimensions by the estimated long-term infiltration rate; and multiplying the result by 48 hours.

If sizing a facility to meet the flow control requirement, use the output files of an approved continuous runoff model to document that the total of any bypass and overflow meets the applicable flow control standard.

If choosing, or required, to comply with the LID performance standard use the output files to document that the facility's total of bypass and overflow meets the LID performance standard. *Note:* Use of distributed LID facilities dispersed throughout the project site will help achieve the LID performance standard.

7. Construct the facility & Conduct Performance Testing:

Test and monitor the constructed facility to demonstrate that the facility performs as designed. Use the same test method for saturated hydraulic conductivity as used in the planning stages so that results are comparable. Perform the testing after stabilizing the construction site. Submit the results and comparisons to the pre-project measured (initial) and design rates to the local stormwater authority that approved the project design. If the rates are lower than the design saturated hydraulic conductivity, the applicant shall implement measures to improve infiltration capability within the footprint of the constructed facility and re-test. If less intensive measures prove unsuccessful, replacement of the top foot of soil – or more if visual observation indicates deeper fouling of the bed with fine sediment – with a soil meeting the design needs (i.e., treatment, flow control, or both) shall be provided. Longer-term monitoring of drawdown times and periodic testing of the facility should provide an indication of when the facility needs maintenance to restore infiltration rates.

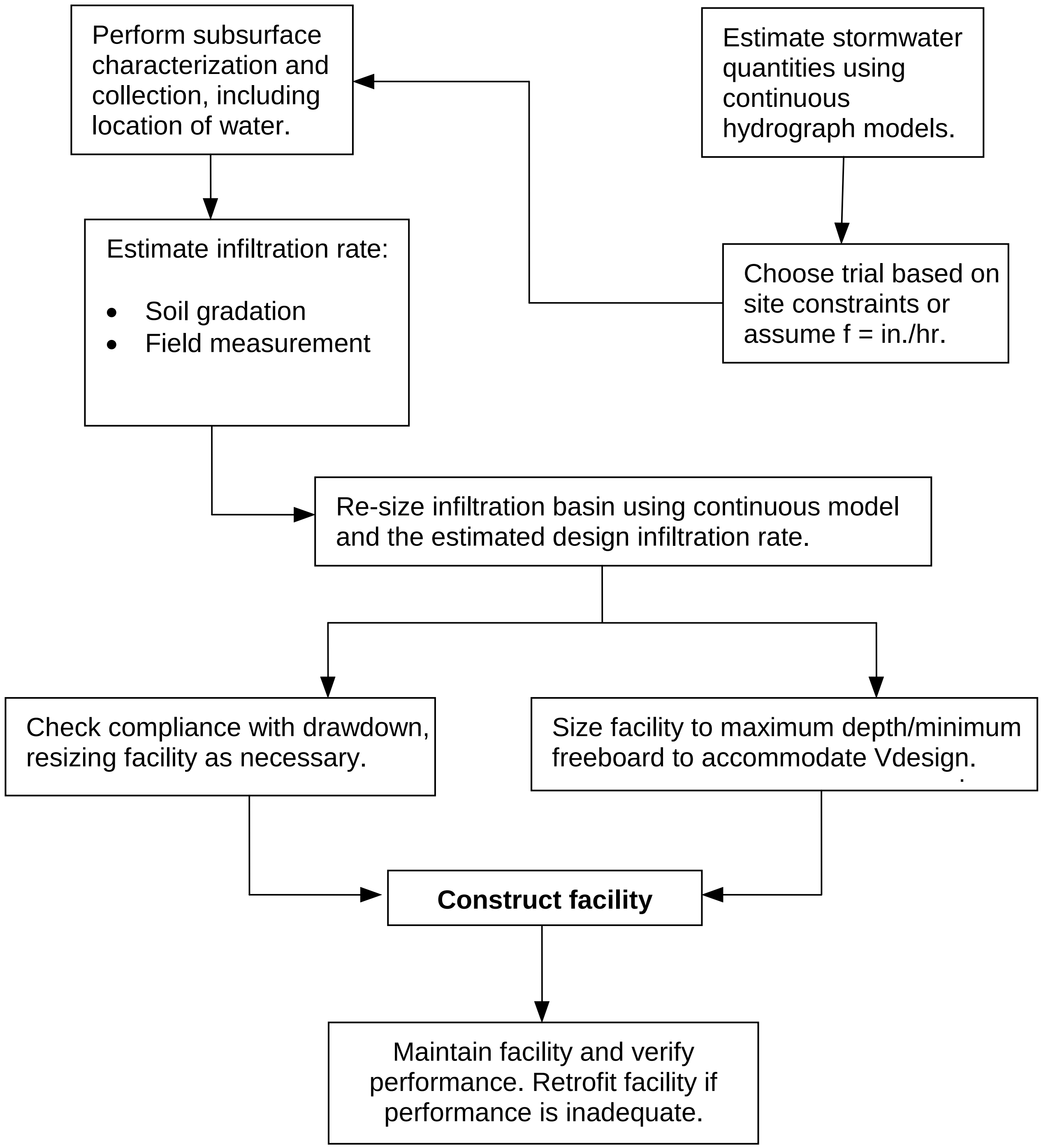


Figure 3.3.2 - Steps for Design of Infiltration Facilities – Simplified Approach

3.3.5 Site Characterization Criteria

One of the first steps in siting and designing infiltration facilities is to conduct a characterization study that includes the following:

Note: Information gathered during initial geotechnical investigations can be used for the site characterization.

Surface Features Characterization:

1. Topography within 500 feet of the proposed facility.
2. Anticipated site use (street/highway, residential, commercial, high-use site).
3. Location of water supply wells within 500 feet of proposed facility.
4. Location of ground water protection areas and/or 1, 5 and 10 year time of travel zones for municipal well protection areas (if available).
5. A description of local site geology, including soil or rock units likely to be encountered, the ground water regime, and geologic history of the site.

Subsurface Characterization:

1. Subsurface explorations (test holes or test pits) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of at least 5 times the maximum design depth of ponded water proposed for the infiltration facility, but not less than 10 feet below the base of the facility. However, at sites with shallow ground water (less than 15 feet from the estimated base of facility), if a ground water mounding analysis is necessary, determine the thickness of the saturated zone.

   Continuous sampling (representative samples from each soil type and/or unit within the infiltration receptor) to a depth below the base of the infiltration facility of 2.5 times the maximum design ponded water depth, but not less than 10 feet. For large infiltration facilities serving drainage areas of 10 acres or more, perform soil grain size analyses on layers up to 50 feet deep (or no more than 10 feet below the water table).
2. If proposing to estimate the infiltration rate using the soil grain size analysis method, obtain samples adequate for the purposes of that gradation/classification testing.
   - For basins, at least one test pit or test hole per 5,000 ft^2 of basin infiltrating surface (in no case less than two per basin).
   - For trenches, at least one test pit or test hole per 200 feet of trench length (in no case less than two per trench).

Note: The depth and number of test holes or test pits, and samples should be increased, if in the judgment of a licensed engineer with geotechnical *expertise (P.E.), a licensed geologist, engineering geologist, hydrogeologist, or other licensed professional acceptable to the local jurisdiction, the conditions are highly variable and such increases are necessary to accurately estimate the performance of the infiltration system. The exploration program may also be decreased if, in the opinion of the licensed engineer or other professional, the conditions are relatively uniform and the borings/test pits omitted will not influence the design or successful operation of the facility. In high water table sites, the subsurface exploration sampling need not be conducted lower than two (2) feet below the ground water table.*

3. Prepare detailed logs for each test pit or test hole and a map showing the location of the test pits or test holes. Logs must include at a minimum, depth of pit or hole, soil descriptions, depth to water, presence of stratification. *(Note: Logs must substantiate whether stratification does or does not exist. The licensed professional may consider additional methods of analysis to substantiate the presence of stratification that will significantly impact the design of the infiltration facility).*

4. Ground water monitoring wells (or driven well points if expected shallow depth to ground water) installed to locate the ground water table and establish its gradient, direction of flow, and seasonal variations, considering both confined and unconfined aquifers. For facilities serving a drainage area less than an acre, establish that the depth to ground water or other hydraulic restriction layer will be at least 10 feet below the base of the facility. Use subsurface explorations or information from nearby wells.

   In general, a minimum of three wells per infiltration facility, or three hydraulically connected surface or ground water features, are needed to determine the direction of flow and gradient. If in the assessment of the site professional, the surrounding site conditions indicate that gradient and flow direction are not critical (e.g., there is low risk of down-gradient impacts) one monitoring well may be sufficient. Alternative means of establishing the ground water levels may also be considered. If the ground water in the area is known to be greater than 50 feet below the proposed facility, detailed investigation of the ground water regime is not necessary.

   Monitoring through at least one wet season is required, unless substantially equivalent site historical data regarding ground water levels is available.

5. If using the soil Grain Size Analysis Method for estimating infiltration rates: laboratory testing as necessary to establish the soil gradation characteristics and other properties as necessary, to complete the infiltration facility design. At a minimum, conduct one-grain size analysis per soil stratum in each test hole within 2.5 times the

maximum design water depth, but not less than 10 feet. When assessing the hydraulic conductivity characteristics of the site, soil layers at greater depths must be considered if the licensed professional conducting the investigation determines that deeper layers will influence the rate of infiltration for the facility, requiring soil gradation/classification testing for layers deeper than indicated above.

Soil Testing:

Soil characterization for each soil unit (soils of the same texture, color, density, compaction, consolidation and permeability) encountered should include:

- Grain-size distribution (ASTM D422 or equivalent AASHTO specification) (*If using the grain size analysis method to estimate infiltration rates)*
- Visual grain size classification
- Percent clay content (include type of clay, if known)
- Color/mottling
- Variations and nature of stratification

If the infiltration facility will provide treatment as well as flow control, the soil characterization should also include:

- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) and organic matter content for each soil type and strata where distinct changes in soil properties occur, to a depth below the base of the facility of at least 2.5 times the maximum design water depth, but not less than 6 feet.
- For soils with low CEC and organic content, deeper characterization of soils may be warranted (refer to Section 3.3.7 Site Suitability Criteria)

Infiltration Receptor:

Infiltration receptor (unsaturated and saturated soil receiving the stormwater) characterization should include:

1. The information obtained from ground water monitoring in #4 of the Subsurface Characterization above.
2. An assessment of the ambient ground water quality, if that is a concern.
3. An estimate of the volumetric water holding capacity of the infiltration receptor soil. This is the soil layer below the infiltration facility and above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock, hardpan, or other low permeability layer. Conduct this analysis at a conservatively high infiltration rate based on vadose zone porosity, and the water quality runoff volume to be infiltrated. This, along with an analysis of ground water movement, will be useful in determining if there are volumetric

limitations that would adversely affect drawdown, and if a ground water mounding analysis should be conducted.

4. Determination of:
   - Depth to ground water table and to bedrock/impermeable layers.
   - Seasonal variation of ground water table based on well water levels and observed mottling.
   - Existing ground water flow direction and gradient.
   - Lateral extent of infiltration receptor.
   - Horizontal hydraulic conductivity of the saturated zone to assess the aquifer's ability to laterally transport the infiltrated water.
   - Impact of the infiltration rate and volume at the project site on ground water mounding, flow direction, and water table; and the discharge point or area of the infiltrating water. Conduct a ground water mounding analysis at all sites where the depth to seasonal ground water table or low permeability stratum is less than 15 feet from the estimated bottom elevation of the infiltration facility, and the runoff to the infiltration facility is from more than one acre.

3.3.6 Design Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity – Guidelines and Criteria

Measured (initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity (Ksat)rates can be determined using in-situ field measurements, or, if the site has soils unconsolidated by glacial advance, by a correlation to grain size distribution from soil samples. The latter method uses the ASTM soil size distribution test procedure (ASTM D422), which considers the full range of soil particle sizes, to develop soil size distribution curves. Using the Simplified Approach in Section 3.3.4, the estimate obtained for the measured (initial) K_{sat} is used as the initial infiltration rate. Using the Detailed Approach in Section 3.3.8, the initial Ksat is combined with other information to compute an estimate for an initial infiltration rate.

Three Methods for Determining Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity for Sizing Infiltration Facilities

For designing the infiltration facility the site professional should select one of the three methods described below that will best represent the measured (a.k.a., initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) rate at the site. Use the measured saturated hydraulic conductivity to determine the design (long-term) infiltration rate. Then use the design (long-term) infiltration rate for routing and sizing the basin/trench, and for checking for compliance with the maximum drawdown time of 48 hours.

In the Simplified Approach (Section 3.3.4), the design infiltration rate is derived by applying appropriate correction factors to the measured K_{sat} as specified below.

In the Detailed Approach (Section 3.3.8), the design infiltration rate is derived by applying correction factors and additional equations to the measured (initial) $K_{sat.}$ Verification testing of the completed facility is strongly encouraged. (See Site Suitability Criterion # 7-Verification Testing)

1. <u>Large Scale Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT)</u>

Large-scale in-situ infiltration measurements, using the Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) described below is the preferred method for estimating the measured (initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) of the soil profile beneath the proposed infiltration facility. The PIT reduces some of the scale errors associated with relatively small-scale double ring infiltrometer or "stove-pipe" infiltration tests. It is not a standard test but rather a practical field procedure recommended by Ecology's Technical Advisory Committee.

Infiltration Test

- Excavate the test pit to the estimated surface elevation of the proposed infiltration facility. Lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test. Alternatively, consider shoring the sides of the test pit.
- The horizontal surface area of the bottom of the test pit should be approximately 100 square feet. Accurately document the size and geometry of the test pit.
- Install a vertical measuring rod (minimum 5-ft. long) marked in half-inch increments in the center of the pit bottom.
- Use a rigid 6-inch diameter pipe with a splash plate on the bottom to convey water to the pit and reduce side-wall erosion or excessive disturbance of the pond bottom. Excessive erosion and bottom disturbance will result in clogging of the infiltration receptor and yield lower than actual infiltration rates.
- Add water to the pit at a rate that will maintain a water level between 6 and 12 inches above the bottom of the pit. A rotameter can be used to measure the flow rate into the pit.

  Note: The depth should not exceed the proposed maximum depth of water expected in the completed facility. For infiltration facilities serving large drainage areas, designs with multiple feet of standing water can have infiltration tests with greater than 1 foot of standing water.

Every 15-30 min, record the cumulative volume and instantaneous flow rate in gallons per minute necessary to maintain the water level at the same point on the measuring rod.

Keep adding water to the pit until one hour after the flow rate into the pit has stabilized (constant flow rate; a goal of 5% variation or less variation in the total flow) while maintaining the same pond water level. The total of the pre-soak time plus one hour after the flow rate has stabilized should be no less than 6 hours.

- After the flow rate has stabilized for at least one hour, turn off the water and record the rate of infiltration (the drop rate of the standing water) in inches per hour from the measuring rod data, until the pit is empty. Consider running this falling head phase of the test several times to estimate the dependency of infiltration rate with head.
- At the conclusion of testing, over-excavate the pit to see if the test water is mounded on shallow restrictive layers or if it has continued to flow deep into the subsurface. The depth of excavation varies depending on soil type and depth to hydraulic restricting layer, and is determined by the engineer or certified soils professional. Mounding is an indication that a mounding analysis is necessary.

Data Analysis

Calculate and record the saturated hydraulic conductivity rate in inches per hour in 30 minutes or one-hour increments until one hour after the flow has stabilized.

Note: Use statistical/trend analysis to obtain the hourly flow rate when the flow stabilizes. This would be the lowest hourly flow rate.

Apply appropriate correction factors to determine the site-specific design infiltration rate. See the discussion of correction factors for infiltration facilities in this Section 3.3, and the discussion of correction factors for bioretention facilities and permeable pavement in Section 3.4.

Example

The area of the bottom of the test pit is 8.5-ft. by 11.5-ft.

Water flow rate was measured and recorded at intervals ranging from 15 to 30 minutes throughout the test. Between 400 minutes and 1,000 minutes the flow rate stabilized between 10 and 12.5 gallons per minute or 600 to 750 gallons per hour, or an average of (9.8 + 12.3) / 2 = 11.1 inches per hour.

2. <u>Small-Scale Pilot Infiltration Test</u>

A smaller-scale PIT can be substituted for the large-scale PIT in any of the following instances.

- The drainage area to the infiltration site is less than 1 acre.

- The testing is for the LID BMP's of bioretention or permeable pavement that either serve small drainage areas and /or are widely dispersed throughout a project site.
- The site has a high infiltration rate, making a full-scale PIT difficult, and the site geotechnical investigation suggests uniform subsurface characteristics.

Infiltration Test

- Excavate the test pit to the estimated surface elevation of the proposed infiltration facility. In the case of bioretention, excavate to the estimated elevation at which the imported soil mix will lie on top of the underlying native soil. For permeable pavements, excavate to the elevation at which the imported subgrade materials, or the pavement itself, will contact the underlying native soil. If the native soils (road subgrade) will have to meet a minimum subgrade compaction requirement, compact the native soil to that requirement prior to testing. Note that the permeable pavement design guidance recommends compaction not exceed 90% - 92%. Finally, lay back the slopes sufficiently to avoid caving and erosion during the test. Alternatively, consider shoring the sides of the test pit.
- The horizontal surface area of the bottom of the test pit should be 12 to 32 square feet. It may be circular or rectangular, but accurately document the size and geometry of the test pit.
- Install a vertical measuring rod adequate to measure the ponded water depth and that is marked in half-inch increments in the center of the pit bottom.
- Use a rigid pipe with a splash plate on the bottom to convey water to the pit and reduce side-wall erosion or excessive disturbance of the pond bottom. Excessive erosion and bottom disturbance will result in clogging of the infiltration receptor and yield lower than actual infiltration rates. Use a 3-inch diameter pipe for pits on the smaller end of the recommended surface area, and a 4-inch pipe for pits on the larger end of the recommended surface area.
- Pre-soak period: Add water to the pit so that there is standing water for at least 6 hours. Maintain the pre-soak water level at least 12 inches above the bottom of the pit.
- At the end of the pre-soak period, add water to the pit at a rate that will maintain a 6-12 inch water level above the bottom of the pit over a full hour. The depth should not exceed the proposed maximum depth of water expected in the completed facility.
- Every 15 minutes, record the cumulative volume and instantaneous flow rate in gallons per minute necessary to maintain the water level at the same point (between 6 inches and 1 foot) on the measuring rod.

The specific depth should be the same as the maximum designed ponding depth (usually 6 – 12 inches).

- After one hour, turn off the water and record the rate of infiltration (the drop rate of the standing water) in inches per hour from the measuring rod data, until the pit is empty.
- A self-logging pressure sensor may also be used to determine water depth and drain-down.
- At the conclusion of testing, over-excavate the pit to see if the test water is mounded on shallow restrictive layers or if it has continued to flow deep into the subsurface. The depth of excavation varies depending on soil type and depth to hydraulic restricting layer, and is determined by the engineer or certified soils professional. The soils professional should judge whether a mounding analysis is necessary.

Data Analysis

See the explanation under the guidance for large-scale pilot infiltration tests.

3. Soil Grain Size Analysis Method

For each defined layer below the infiltration pond to a depth below the pond bottom of 2.5 times the maximum depth of water in the pond, but not less than 10 feet, estimate the initial saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) in cm/sec using the following relationship (see Massmann 2003, and Massmann et al., 2003). For large infiltration facilities serving drainage areas of 10 acres or more, soil grain size analyses should be performed on layers up to 50 feet deep (or no more than 10 feet below the water table).

$$\log_{10}(K_{sat}) = -1.57 + 1.90D_{10} + 0.015D_{60} - 0.013D_{90} - 2.08f_{fines} \quad (1)$$

Where, D_{10}, D_{60} and D_{90} are the grain sizes in mm for which 10 percent, 60 percent and 90 percent of the sample is more fine and f_{fines} is the fraction of the soil (by weight) that passes the number-200 sieve (K_{sat} is in cm/s).

For bioretention facilities, analyze each defined layer below the top of the final bioretention area subgrade to a depth of at least 3 times the maximum ponding depth, but not less than 3 feet (1 meter). For permeable pavement, analyze for each defined layer below the top of the final subgrade to a depth of at least 3 times the maximum ponding depth within the base course, but not less than 3 feet (1 meter).

If the licensed professional conducting the investigation determines that deeper layers will influence the rate of infiltration for the facility, soil layers at greater depths must be considered when assessing the site's hydraulic conductivity characteristics. Massmann (2003) indicates that where the water table is deep, soil or rock strata up to 100 feet below an infiltration facility can influence the rate of infiltration. Note that only the layers near and above the water table or low permeability zone (e.g., a clay, dense glacial till, or rock layer) need to be considered, as the layers below the ground water table or low permeability zone do not significantly influence the rate of infiltration. Also note that this equation for estimating K_{sat} assumes minimal compaction consistent with the use of tracked (i.e., low to moderate ground pressure) excavation equipment.

If the soil layer being characterized has been exposed to heavy compaction (e.g., due to heavy equipment with narrow tracks, narrow tires, or large lugged, high pressure tires) the hydraulic conductivity for the layer could be approximately an order of magnitude less than what would be estimated based on grain size characteristics alone (Pitt, 2003). In such cases, compaction effects must be taken into account when estimating hydraulic conductivity.

For clean, uniformly graded sands and gravels, the reduction in K_{sat} due to compaction will be much less than an order of magnitude. For well-graded sands and gravels with moderate to high silt content, the reduction in K_{sat} will be close to an order of magnitude. For soils that contain clay, the reduction in K_{sat} could be greater than an order of magnitude.

If greater certainty is desired, the in-situ saturated conductivity of a specific layer can be obtained through the use of a pilot infiltration test (PIT). Note that these field tests generally provide a K_{sat} combined with a hydraulic gradient (i.e., Equation 5 in Section 3.3.8). In some of these tests, the hydraulic gradient may be close to 1.0; therefore, in effect, the test infiltration rate result is the same as the hydraulic conductivity. In other cases, the hydraulic gradient may be close to the gradient that is likely to occur in the full-scale infiltration facility. The hydraulic gradient will need to be evaluated on a case-by-case basis when interpreting the results of field tests. It is important to recognize that the gradient in the test may not be the same as the gradient likely to occur in the full-scale infiltration facility in the long-term (i.e., when ground water mounding is fully developed).

Once the K_{sat} for each layer has been identified, determine the effective average K_{sat} below the pond. K_{sat} estimates from different layers can be combined using the harmonic mean:

$$K_{equiv} = \frac{d}{\sum \frac{d_i}{K_i}} \qquad (2)$$

Where, d is the total depth of the soil column, d_i is the thickness of layer "i" in the soil column, and K_i is the saturated hydraulic conductivity of layer "*i*" in the soil column. The depth of the soil column, *d*, typically would include all layers between the pond bottom and the water table. However, for sites with very deep water tables (>100 feet) where ground water mounding to the base of the pond is not likely to occur, it is recommended that the total depth of the soil column in Equation 2 be limited to approximately 20 times the depth of pond, but not more than 50 feet. This is to ensure that the most important and relevant layers are included in the hydraulic conductivity calculations. Deep layers that are not likely to affect the infiltration rate near the pond bottom should not be included in Equation 2.

Equation 2 may over-estimate the effective K_{sat} value at sites with low conductivity layers immediately beneath the infiltration pond. For sites where the lowest conductivity layer is within five feet of the base of the pond, it is suggested that this lowest K_{sat} value be used as the equivalent hydraulic conductivity rather than the value from Equation 2. Using the layer with the lowest K_{sat} is advised for designing bioretention facilities or permeable pavements. The harmonic mean given by Equation 2 is the appropriate effective hydraulic conductivity for flow that is perpendicular to stratigraphic layers, and will produce conservative results when flow has a significant horizontal component such as could occur due to ground water mounding.

Correction Factors

Correction Factors for PIT results and Grain Size Method - The K_{sat} obtained from the PIT test or Grain Size Method is a measured (initial) rate. This measured rate must be reduced through correction factors that are appropriate for the design situation to produce a design infiltration rate. This adjustment is made in Step 5 of the Design of Infiltration Facilities (Section 3.3.4).

Correction factors account for site variability, number of tests conducted, uncertainty of the test method, and the potential for long-term clogging due to siltation and bio-buildup. Table 3.3.1 summarizes the typical range of correction factors to account for these issues. The specific correction factors used shall be determined based on the professional judgment of the licensed engineer or other site professional considering all issues that may affect the infiltration rate over the long term, subject to the approval of the local jurisdictional authority**.**

Table 3.3.1 Correction Factors to be Used With In-Situ Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity Measurements to Estimate Design Rates.	
Issue	**Partial Correction Factor**
Site variability and number of locations tested	CF_v = 0.33 to 1.0
Test Method Large-scale PIT Small-scale PIT Other small-scale (e.g. Double ring, falling head) Grain Size Method	 CF_t = 0.75 = 0.50 = 0.40 = 0.40
Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	CF_m = 0.9

Total Correction Factor, $CF_T = CF_v \times CF_t \times CF_m$

CF_T is used in step 5 of the Design of Infiltration Facilities (Section 3.3.4) to adjust the measured (initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity.

K_{sat} design = K_{sat} initial X CF_T

Site variability and number of locations tested (CF_v) - The number of locations tested must be capable of producing a picture of the subsurface conditions that fully represents the conditions throughout the facility site. The partial correction factor used for this issue depends on the level of uncertainty that adverse subsurface conditions may occur. If the range of uncertainty is low - for example, conditions are known to be uniform through previous exploration and site geological factors - one pilot infiltration test (or grain size analysis location) may be adequate to justify a partial correction factor at the high end of the range.

If the level of uncertainty is high, a partial correction factor near the low end of the range may be appropriate. This might be the case where the site conditions are highly variable due to conditions such as a deposit of ancient landslide debris, or buried stream channels. In these cases, even with many explorations and several pilot infiltration tests (or several grain size test locations), the level of uncertainty may still be high.

A partial correction factor near the low end of the range could be assigned where conditions have a more typical variability, but few explorations and only one pilot infiltration test (or one grain size analysis location) is conducted. That is, the number of explorations and tests conducted do not match the degree of site variability anticipated.

Uncertainty of test method (CF_t) accounts for uncertainties in the testing methods. For the full scale PIT method, CF_t = 0.75; for the small-scale PIT method, CF_t = 0.50; for smaller-scale infiltration tests such as the double-ring infiltrometer test, CF_t = 0.40; for grain size analysis, CF_t =

0.40. These values are intended to represent the difference in each test's ability to estimate the actual saturated hydraulic conductivity. The assumption is the larger the scale of the test, the more reliable the result.

Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup (CF_m)
Even with a pre-settling basin or a basic treatment facility for pre-treatment, the soil's initial infiltration rate will gradually decline as more and more stormwater, with some amount of suspended material, passes through the soil profile. The maintenance schedule calls for removing sediment when the facility is infiltrating at only 90% of its design capacity. Therefore, a correction factor, CF_m, of 0.9 is called for.

This correction is used in Step 5 of the Design of Infiltration Facilities (Section 3.3.4).

3.3.7 Site Suitability Criteria (SSC)

This section provides criteria that must be considered for siting infiltration systems. When a site investigation reveals that any of the applicable criteria cannot be met appropriate mitigation measures must be implemented so that the infiltration facility will not pose a threat to safety, health, and the environment.

For site selection and design decisions a geotechnical and hydrogeologic report should be prepared by a licensed engineer with geotechnical and hydrogeologic experience, or a licensed geologist, hydrogeologist, or engineering geologist. The design engineer may utilize a team of certified or registered professionals in soil science, hydrogeology, geology, and other related fields.

SSC-1 Setback Criteria

Setback requirements are generally required by local regulations, uniform building code requirements, or other state regulations.

These Setback Criteria are provided as guidance.

- Stormwater infiltration facilities should be set back at least 100 feet from drinking water wells, septic tanks or drainfields, and springs used for public drinking water supplies. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water supplies and within 1, 5, and 10-year time of travel zones must comply with Health Dept. requirements (Washington State Wellhead Protection Program Guidance Document, DOH, 6/2010). Infiltration systems that qualify as Underground Injection Control Wells must comply with Chapter xd173-218 and follow "Guidance for UIC Wells that Manage Stormwater," Publication No. 05-10-067, Washington Dept. of Ecology, 12/06.

- Additional setbacks must be considered if roadway deicers or herbicides are likely to be present in the influent to the infiltration system
- From building foundations; ≥ 20 feet downslope and ≥100 feet upslope
- From a Native Growth Protection Easement (NGPE); ≥20 feet
- From the top of slopes >15%; ≥ 50 feet.
- Evaluate on-site and off-site structural stability due to extended subgrade saturation and/or head loading of the permeable layer, including the potential impacts to downgradient properties, especially on hills with known side-hill seeps.

SSC-2 Ground Water Protection Areas

A site is not suitable if the infiltration facility will cause a violation of Ecology's Ground Water Quality Standards (Chapter 173-200 WAC). (See SSC-3 through SSC-6, and SSC-8 for measures to protect ground water quality. Consult local jurisdictions for applicable pollutant removal requirements upstream of the infiltration facility, and to determine whether the site is located in an aquifer sensitive area, sole source aquifer, or a wellhead protection zone.

SSC-3 High Vehicle Traffic Areas

An infiltration BMP may be considered for runoff from areas of industrial activity and the high vehicle traffic areas described below. For such applications, provide sufficient pollutant removal (including oil removal) upstream of the infiltration facility to ensure that ground water quality standards will not be violated and that the infiltration facility is not adversely affected.

High Vehicle Traffic Areas are:

- Commercial or industrial sites subject to an expected average daily traffic count (ADT) ≥100 vehicles/1,000 ft^2 gross building area (trip generation).
- Road intersections with an ADT of ≥ 25,000 on the main roadway and ≥ 15,000 on any intersecting roadway.

SSC-4 Soil Infiltration Rate/Drawdown Time

Infiltration Rates: measured (initial) and design (long-term):

For infiltration facilities used for treatment purposes, the measured (initial) soil infiltration rate should be 9 in./hour, or less. Design (long-term) infiltration rates up to 3.0 inches/hour can also be considered, if the infiltration receptor is not a sole-source aquifer, and in the judgment of the site professional, the treatment soil has characteristics comparable to those specified in SSC-6 to adequately control the target pollutants.

The design infiltration rate should also be used for maximum drawdown time and routing calculations.

Drawdown time:

For infiltration facilities designed strictly for flow control purposes, there isn't a maximum drawdown time. If sizing a treatment facility, document that the water quality design storm volume (indicated by WWHM or MGS Flood, or runoff from a 6-month, 24-hour rain event) can infiltrate through the infiltration basin surface within 48 hours. This can be calculated multiplying the horizontal projection of the infiltration basin mid-depth dimensions by the estimated design infiltration rate, and multiplying the result by 48 hours.

This drawdown restriction is intended to meet the following objectives:

- Aerate vegetation and soil to keep the vegetation healthy.
- Enhance the biodegradation of pollutants and organics in the soil.

Note: This is a check procedure, not a method for determining basin size. If the design fails the check procedure, redesign the basin.

SSC-5 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer

The base of all infiltration basins or trench systems shall be ≥ 5 feet above the seasonal high-water mark, bedrock (or hardpan) or other low permeability layer. A separation down to 3 feet may be considered if the ground water mounding analysis, volumetric receptor capacity, and the design of the overflow and/or bypass structures are judged by the site professional to be adequate to prevent overtopping and meet the site suitability criteria specified in this section.

SSC-6 Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment

(Applies to infiltration facilities used as treatment facilities not to facilities used for flow control).

Consider the soil texture and design infiltration rates along with the physical and chemical characteristics specified below to determine if the soil is adequate for removing the target pollutants. The following soil properties must be carefully considered in making such a determination:

- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) of the treatment soil must be ≥5 milliequivalents CEC/100 g dry soil (USEPA Method 9081). *Consider empirical testing of soil sorption capacity, if practicable*. Ensure that soil CEC is sufficient for expected pollutant loadings, particularly heavy metals. CEC values of >5 meq/100g are expected in loamy sands (Buckman and Brady, 1969). Lower CEC content may be considered if it is based on a soil loading capacity determination for the target pollutants that is accepted by the local jurisdiction.
- Depth of soil used for infiltration treatment must be a minimum of 18 inches. Depth of soil below permeable pavements serving as pollution-

generating hard surfaces may be reduced to one foot if the permeable pavement does not accept run-on from other surfaces.

- Organic Content of the treatment soil (ASTM D 2974): Organic matter can increase the sorptive capacity of the soil for some pollutants. A minimum of 1.0 percent organic content is necessary.
- Waste fill materials shall not be used as infiltration soil media nor shall such media be placed over uncontrolled or non-engineered fill soils.

Engineered soils may be used to meet the design criteria in this chapter and the performance goals in Chapters 3 and 4 of Volume V. Field performance evaluation(s), using protocols cited in this manual, would be needed to determine feasibility and acceptability by the local jurisdiction.

SSC-7 Seepage Analysis and Control

Determine whether there would be any adverse effects caused by seepage zones on nearby building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots or sloping sites.

SSC-8 Cold Climate and Impact of Roadway Deicers

Consider the potential impact of roadway deicers on potable water wells in the siting determination. Implement mitigation measures if the infiltration of roadway deicers could cause a violation of ground water quality standards.

3.3.8 Steps for Designing Infiltration Facilities - Detailed Approach

This detailed approach was obtained from Massmann (2003). The detailed approach includes the process in Figure 3.3.3 and the following steps:

1 – 5. Steps 1 through 5 are the same as indicated for the Simplified Approach – Section 3.3.4

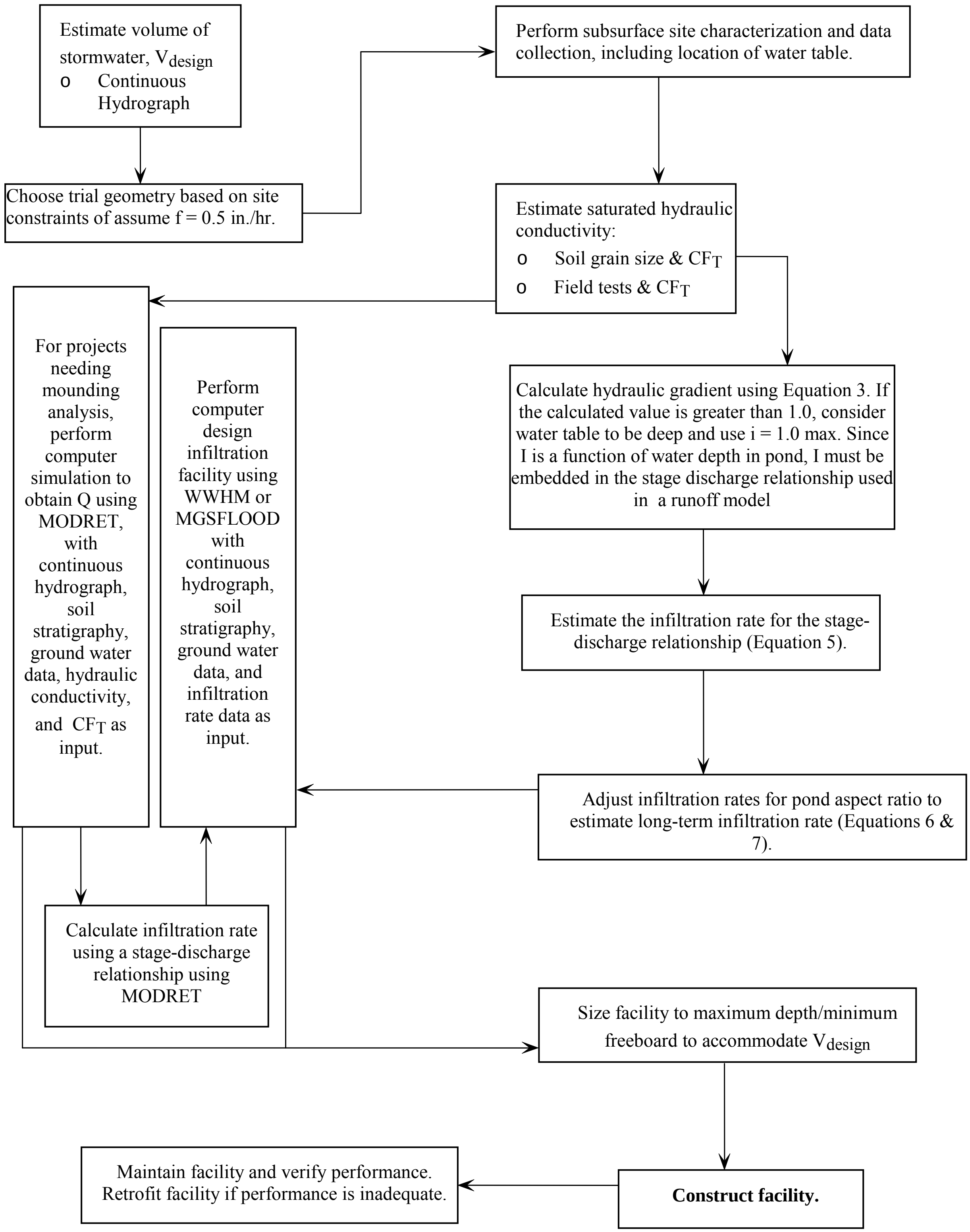


Figure 3.3.3 - Engineering Design Steps for Final Design of Infiltration Facilities Using the Detailed Method

6. Calculate the hydraulic gradient as follows:

Calculate the steady state hydraulic gradient as follows:

$$\text{gradient} = \text{i} \approx \frac{D_{wt} + D_{pond}}{138.62(K^{0.1})} CF_{size} \tag{3}$$

Note: The units in this equation vary from the units normally used in this manual.

Where, D_{wt} is the depth from the base of the infiltration facility to the water table in feet, K is the saturated hydraulic conductivity in feet/day, D_{pond} is one-quarter of the maximum depth of water in the facility in feet (see Massmann et al., 2003, for the development of this equation), and CF_{size}, is the correction for pond size. The correction factor was developed for ponds with bottom areas between 0.6 and 6 acres in size. For small ponds (ponds with area equal to 2/3 acre), the correction factor is equal to 1.0. For large ponds (ponds with area equal to 6 acres), the correction factor is 0.2, as shown in Equation 4.

$$CF_{size} = 0.73(A_{pond})^{-0.76} \tag{4}$$

Where, A_{pond} is the area of pond bottom in acres. This equation generally will result in a calculated gradient of less than 1.0 for moderate to shallow ground water depths (or to a low permeability layer) below the facility, and conservatively accounts for the development of a ground water mound. A more detailed ground water mounding analysis using a program such as MODFLOW will usually result in a gradient that is equal to or greater than the gradient calculated using Equation 3. If the calculated gradient is greater than 1.0, the water table is considered to be deep, and a maximum gradient of 1.0 must be used. Typically, a depth to ground water of 100 feet or more is required to obtain a gradient of 1.0 or more using this equation. Since the gradient is a function of depth of water in the facility, the gradient will vary as the pond fills during the season. The gradient could be calculated as part of the stage-discharge calculation used in the continuous runoff models. As of the date of this update, neither the WWHM nor MGSFlood have that capability. However, updates to those models may soon incorporate the capability. Until that time, use a steady-state hydraulic gradient that corresponds with a ponded depth of ¼ of the maximum ponded depth – as measured from the basin floor to the overflow.

7. **Calculate the preliminary design infiltration rate using Darcy's law as follows:**

$$f = K\left(\frac{dh}{dz}\right) = Ki \qquad (5)$$

Where, f is the specific discharge or infiltration rate of water through a unit cross-section of the infiltration facility (L/t), K is the hydraulic conductivity (L/t), dh/dz is the hydraulic gradient (L/L), and "i" is the gradient.

8. **Adjust the preliminary design infiltration rate or infiltration stage-discharge relationship obtained in Step 7:**

Adjustments of the initial infiltration rate estimate should have been made in Step 5. (As explained in Section 3.3.7).

This step adjusts the preliminary design infiltration rate for the effect of pond aspect ratio by multiplying the infiltration rate determined in Step 7 by the aspect ratio correction factor F_{aspect} as shown in the following equation:

$$CF_{aspect} = 0.02A_r + 0.98 \qquad (6)$$

Where, A_r is the aspect ratio for the pond (length/width of the bottom area). In no case shall CF_{aspect} be greater than 1.4.

The final design (long-term) infiltration rate will therefore be as follows:

$$f = K \bullet i \bullet CF_{aspect} \qquad (7)$$

9. **Size the facility:**

Size the facility to ensure that the maximum pond depth is between 2 to 6 feet with one-foot minimum required freeboard.

Where the infiltration facility is being used to meet treatment requirements, check that the Water Quality Design Storm Volume (indicated by WWHM or MGS Flood) can infiltrate through the infiltration basin surface within 48 hours. This can be calculated by multiplying a horizontal projection of the infiltration basin mid-depth dimensions by the estimated design infiltration rate; and multiplying the result by 48 hours (See SSC-4 in Section 3.3.7)

10. **Ground Water Mounding Analysis:**

Ground water Mounding Analysis: On projects where an infiltration facility has a drainage area exceeding 1 acre and has less than fifteen feet depth to seasonal high ground water (as measured from the bottom of the infiltration basin or trench) or other low permeability stratum, determine the final design infiltration rate using an analytical ground water model to investigate the effects of the local hydrologic conditions on facility performance. These larger projects can use the design infiltration rate determined above as input to an approved continuous runoff model

(WWHM, MGS Flood, KCRTS) to do an initial sizing. Then complete the ground water modeling (mounding analysis) of the proposed infiltration facility. Use MODRET or an equivalent model unless the local government approves an alternative analytic technique.

Export the full output hydrograph of the developed condition and use it as input to MODRET. Note that an iterative process may be required beginning with an estimated design rate, WWHM sizing, then ground water model testing. See Figure 3.3.3.

11. Construct the facility & Conduct Performance Testing:

Test and monitor the constructed facility to demonstrate that the facility performs as designed. Use the same test methods for saturated hydraulic conductivity as used in the planning stages so that results are comparable. Perform the testing after stabilizing the construction site. Submit the results and comparisons to the pre-project measured (initial) and design rates to the local stormwater authority that approved the project design. If the rates are lower than the design saturated hydraulic conductivity, the applicant shall implement measures to improve infiltration capability within the footprint of the constructed facility and re-test. If less intensive measures prove unsuccessful, replacement of the top foot of soil – or more if visual observation indicates deeper fouling of the bed with fine sediment – with a soil meeting the design needs (i.e., treatment, flow control, or both) shall be provided. Longer-term monitoring of drawdown times and periodic testing of the facility should provide an indication of when the facility needs maintenance to restore infiltration rates.

3.3.9 General Design, Maintenance, and Construction Criteria for Infiltration Facilities

This section covers design, construction and maintenance criteria that apply to infiltration basins and trenches.

Design Criteria – Sizing Facilities

The size of the infiltration facility can be determined by routing the influent runoff file generated by the continuous runoff model through it. To prevent the onset of anaerobic conditions, an infiltration facility designed for treatment purposes must be designed to drain the Water Quality Design volume within 48 hours (see explanation under SSC-4 in Section 3.3.7). In general, an infiltration facility would have 2 discharge modes. The primary mode of discharge from an infiltration facility is infiltration into the ground. However, when the infiltration capacity of the facility is reached, additional runoff to the facility will cause the facility to overflow. Overflows from an infiltration facility must comply with the Minimum Requirement #7 for flow control in Volume I. Infiltration facilities used for runoff treatment must not overflow more than 9% of the influent runoff file. Infiltration facilities can also be used to demonstrate compliance with the LID Performance Standard of Minimum Requirement #5.

In order to determine compliance with the flow control requirements, use the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM), or an appropriately calibrated continuous simulation model based on HSPF. When using WWHM for simulating flow through an infiltrating facility, represent the facility by using a Pond Element and entering the pre-determined infiltration rates. Below are the procedures for sizing a pond (A) to completely infiltrate 100% of runoff; (B) to treat 91% of runoff to meet the water quality treatment requirements, and (C) to partially infiltrate runoff to meet flow duration standard.

(A) For 100% infiltration

1. Input dimensions of your infiltration pond,
2. Input infiltration rate and safety (rate reduction) factor. When using the Simplified Approach, you may enter the measured (initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity (K_{sat}) and the Total Correction Factor as determined using Section 3.3.6; OR, enter the estimated final design infiltration rate after application of the correction factor and a safety factor of 1. For the Detailed Approach, you should enter your preliminary design infiltration rate after completing Steps 1 through 7 (in Section 3.3.8). Then enter the correction factor for the pond aspect, as noted in Step 8 (in Section 3.3.8), as the safety factor in the model input
3. Input a riser height and diameter (any flow through the riser indicates that you have less than 100% infiltration and must increase your infiltration pond dimensions).
4. Run only HSPF for Developed Mitigated Scenario (if that is where you put the infiltration pond). Do not need to run duration.
5. Go back to your infiltration pond and look at the Percentage Infiltrated at the bottom right. If less than 100% infiltrated, increase pond dimension until you get 100%.

(B) For 91% infiltration (water quality treatment volume)

The procedure is the same as above, except that your target is 91%.

Infiltration facilities for treatment can be located upstream or downstream of detention and can be off-line or on-line.

On-line treatment facilities placed ***upstream or downstream*** of a detention facility must be sized to infiltrate 91% of the runoff file volume directed to it.

Off-line treatment facilities placed ***upstream*** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 15-minute water quality flow rate, as predicted by WWHM (or other approved continuous runoff model), to the treatment facility. Within WWHM, the flow splitter element is placed ahead of the pond element which represents the infiltration basin. Size the treatment facility to infiltrate all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility are allowed).

Off-line treatment facilities placed ***downstream*** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 2-year flow frequency from the detention pond, as predicted by WWHM (or other approved continuous runoff model), to the treatment facility. Within WWHM, the flow splitter element is placed ahead of the pond element which represents the infiltration basin. Size the treatment facility to infiltrate all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility are allowed).

See Section 4.5 of Volume V for flow splitter design details.

(C) To meet flow duration standard with infiltration ponds

This design will allow something less than 100% infiltration as long as any overflows will meet the flow duration standard. Use a discharge structure with orifices and risers similar to a detention facility and include infiltration occurring from the pond.

Additional Design Criteria

- Slope of the base of the infiltration facility should be <3 percent.
- Spillways/overflow structures – Construct a nonerodible outlet or spillway with a firmly established elevation to discharge overflow. Calculate ponding depth, drawdown time, and storage volume from that reference point. Overflow Structure-Refer to Chapter 2 for design details
- For infiltration treatment facilities, side-wall seepage is not a concern if seepage occurs through the same stratum as the bottom of the facility. However, for engineered soils or for soils with very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side-walls may be significant. In those cases, line the side-walls with at least 18 inches of treatment soil to prevent seepage of untreated flows through the side walls.

Design Criteria – Pretreatment

A facility to remove a portion of the influent suspended solids should precede the infiltration facility. Use either an option under the basic treatment facility menu (See Chapter 2 of Volume V), or a pretreatment option from Chapter 6 of Volume V. The lower the influent suspended solids loading to the infiltration facility, the longer the infiltration facility can infiltrate the desired amount of water or more, and the longer interval between maintenance activity.

In facilities such as infiltration trenches where a reduction in infiltration capability can have significant maintenance or replacement costs, selection of a reliable treatment device with high solids removal capability is preferred. In facilities that allow easier access for maintenance and less costly maintenance activity (e.g., infiltration basins with gentle side slopes), there is a trade-off between using a treatment device with a higher solids removal capability and a device with a lower capability. Generally, treatment options on the basic treatment menu are more capable at solids removal than pretreatment devices listed in Chapter 6 of Volume V. Though basic treatment options may be higher in initial cost and space demands, the infiltration facility should have lower maintenance costs.

Construction Criteria

- Conduct initial basin excavation to within 1-foot of the final elevation of the basin floor. Excavate infiltration trenches and basins to final grade only after all disturbed areas in the upgradient project drainage area have been permanently stabilized. The final phase of excavation should remove all accumulation of silt in the infiltration facility before putting it in service. After construction completion, prevent sediment from entering the infiltration facility by first conveying the runoff water through an appropriate pretreatment system such as a pre-settling basin, wet pond, or sand filter.
- Generally, do not use infiltration facilities as temporary sediment traps during construction. If an infiltration facility will be used as a sediment trap, do not excavated to final grade until after the stabilizing the upgradient drainage area. Remove any accumulation of silt in the basin putting it in service.
- Traffic Control – Relatively light-tracked equipment is recommended for this operation to avoid compaction of the basin floor. Consider the use of draglines and trackhoes for constructing infiltration basins. Flag or mark the infiltration area to keep heavy equipment away.

Maintenance Criteria

Make provisions for regular and perpetual maintenance of the infiltration basin/trench, including replacement and/or reconstruction of the any media relied upon for treatment purposes. Conduct maintenance when water remains in the basin or trench for more than 24 hours after the end of runoff, or when overflows occur more frequently than planned. For example, off-line infiltration facilities should not have any overflows. Infiltration facilities designed to completely infiltrate all flows to meet flow control standards should not overflow. An Operation and Maintenance Plan, approved by the local jurisdiction, should ensure maintaining the desired infiltration rate.

Include adequate access for operation and maintenance in the design of infiltration basins and trenches.

Conduct removal of accumulated debris/sediment in the basin/trench every 6 months or as needed to prevent clogging. Indications that the facility is not infiltrating adequately include:

- The Water Quality Design Storm Volume does not infiltrate within 48 hours.
- Water remains in the pond for greater than 24 hours after the end of most moderate rainfall events.

For more detailed information on maintenance, see Volume V, Section 4.6 – Maintenance Standards for Drainage Facilities.

Verification of Performance

During the first 1-2 years of operation verification testing (specified in SSC-9) is strongly recommended, along with a maintenance program that results in achieving expected performance levels. Operating and maintaining ground water monitoring wells (specified in Section 3.3.7 - Site Suitability Criteria) is also strongly encouraged.

3.3.10 Infiltration Basins

This section covers design and maintenance criteria specific for infiltration basins. (See Figure 3.3.4).

Description:

Infiltration basins are earthen impoundments used for the collection, temporary storage and infiltration of incoming stormwater runoff.

Design Criteria Specific for Basins

- Provide access for vehicles to easily maintain the forebay (presettling basin) area and not disturb vegetation, or resuspend sediment any more than absolutely necessary.
- The slope of the basin bottom should not exceed 3% in any direction.
- Size the basin for a maximum ponding depth of between 2 and 6 feet.
- A minimum of one foot of freeboard is recommended when establishing the design ponded water depth. Freeboard is measured from the rim of the infiltration facility to the maximum ponding level or from the rim down to the overflow point if overflow or a spillway is included.
- Treatment infiltration basins must have sufficient vegetation established on the basin floor and side slopes to prevent erosion and sloughing and to provide additional pollutant removal. Provide erosion protection of inflow points to the basin (e.g., riprap, flow spreaders, energy dissipators). Select suitable vegetative materials to stabilize the basin floor and side slopes. Refer to detention pond guidance earlier in this chapter for recommended vegetation.

- Lining material – Basins can be open or covered with a 6 to 12-inch layer of filter material such as coarse sand, or a suitable filter fabric to help prevent the buildup of impervious deposits on the soil surface. Select a nonwoven geotextile that will function sufficiently without plugging (see geotextile specifications in Appendix V-C of Volume V). Replace or clean the filter layer when/if it becomes clogged.
- Vegetation – Stabilize the embankment, emergency spillways, spoil and borrow areas, and other disturbed areas and plant, preferably with grass, in accordance with Stormwater Site Plan (See Minimum Requirement #1 of Volume I). Without healthy vegetation, the surface soil pores will quickly plug.

Maintenance Criteria for Basins

- Maintain basin floor and side slopes to promote dense turf with extensive root growth. This enhances infiltration, prevents erosion and consequent sedimentation of the basin floor, and prevents invasive weed growth. Immediately stabilize and revegetate bare spots.
- Do not allow vegetation growth to exceed 18 inches in height. Mow the slopes periodically and check for clogging, and erosion.
- Use the same seed mixtures as those recommended in Table 3.2.2. The use of slow-growing, stoloniferous grasses will permit long intervals between mowing. Mowing twice a year is generally satisfactory. Apply fertilizers only as necessary and in limited amounts to avoid contributing to ground water pollution. Consult the local agricultural or gardening resources such as Washington State University Extension for appropriate fertilizer type, including slow release fertilizers, and application rates.

3.3.11 Infiltration Trenches

This section covers design, construction, and maintenance criteria specific for infiltration trenches.

Description:

Infiltration trenches are generally at least 24 inches wide, and are backfilled with a coarse stone aggregate, allowing for temporary storage of stormwater runoff in the voids of the aggregate material. Stored runoff then gradually infiltrates into the surrounding soil. The surface of the trench can be covered with grating and/or consist of stone, gabion, sand, or a grassed covered area with a surface inlet. Perforated rigid pipe of at least 8-inch diameter can also be used to distribute the stormwater in a stone trench.

See Figure 3.3.4 for a schematic of an infiltration trench. See Figures 3.3.5, 3.3.6, 3.3.7, 3.3.8, 3.3.9 for examples of trench designs.

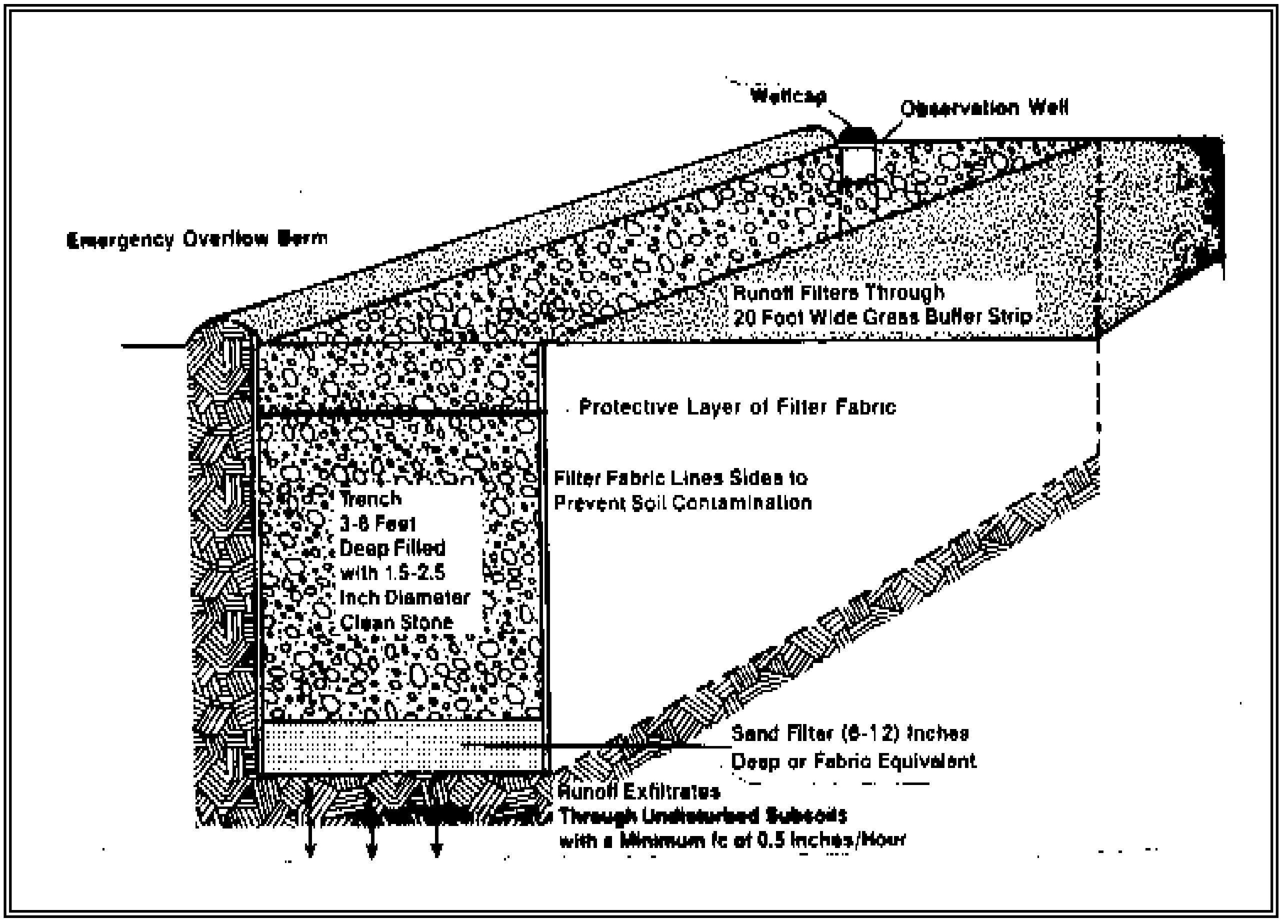


Figure 3.3.4 - Schematic of an Infiltration Trench

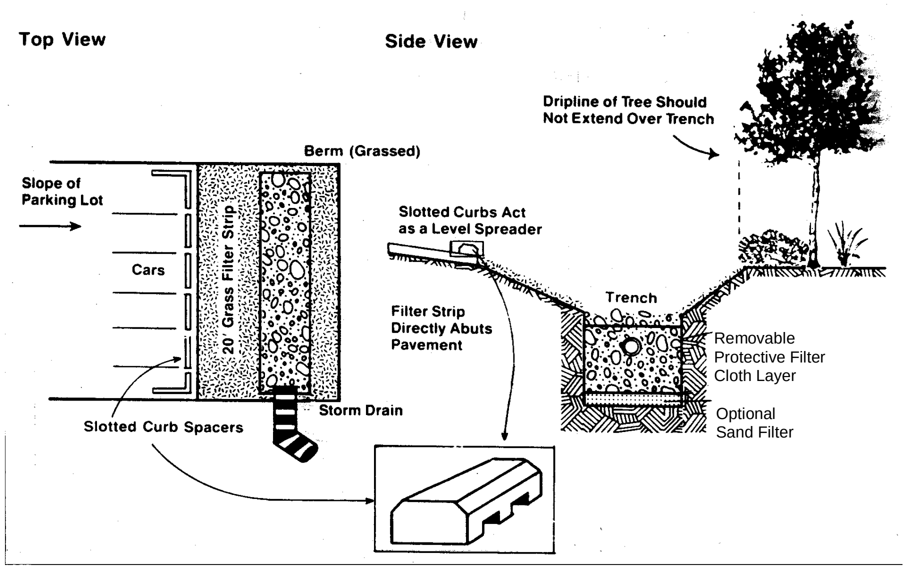
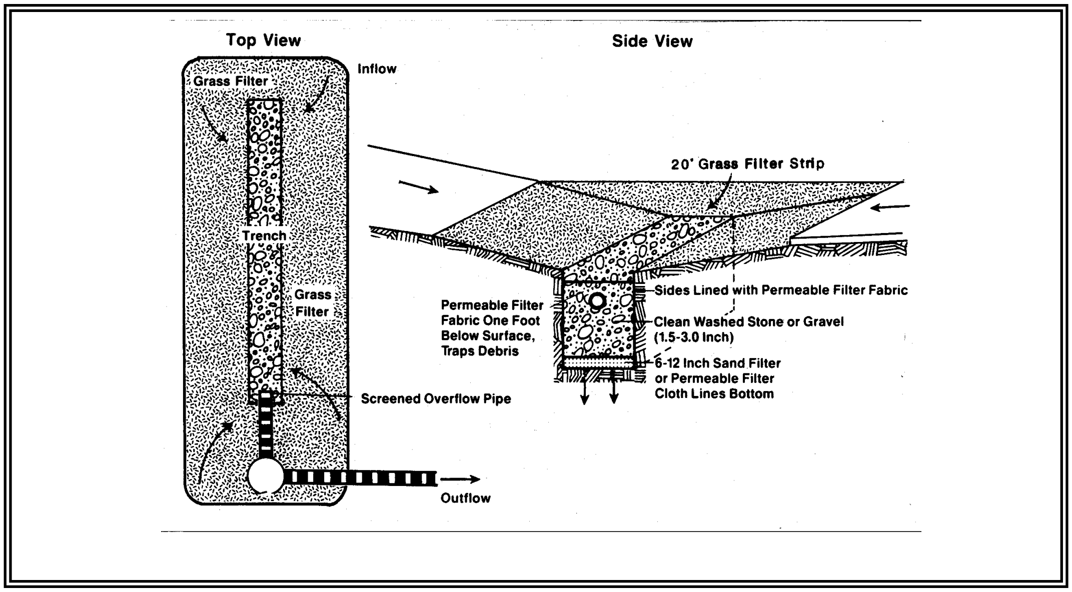
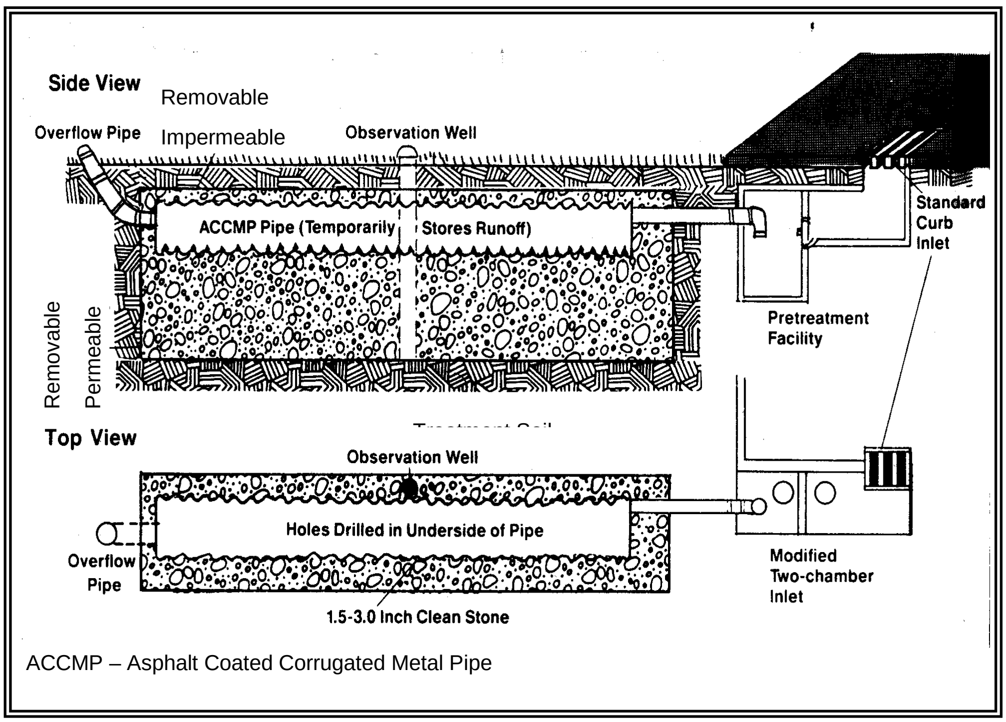


Figure 3.3.5 - Parking Lot Perimeter Trench Design



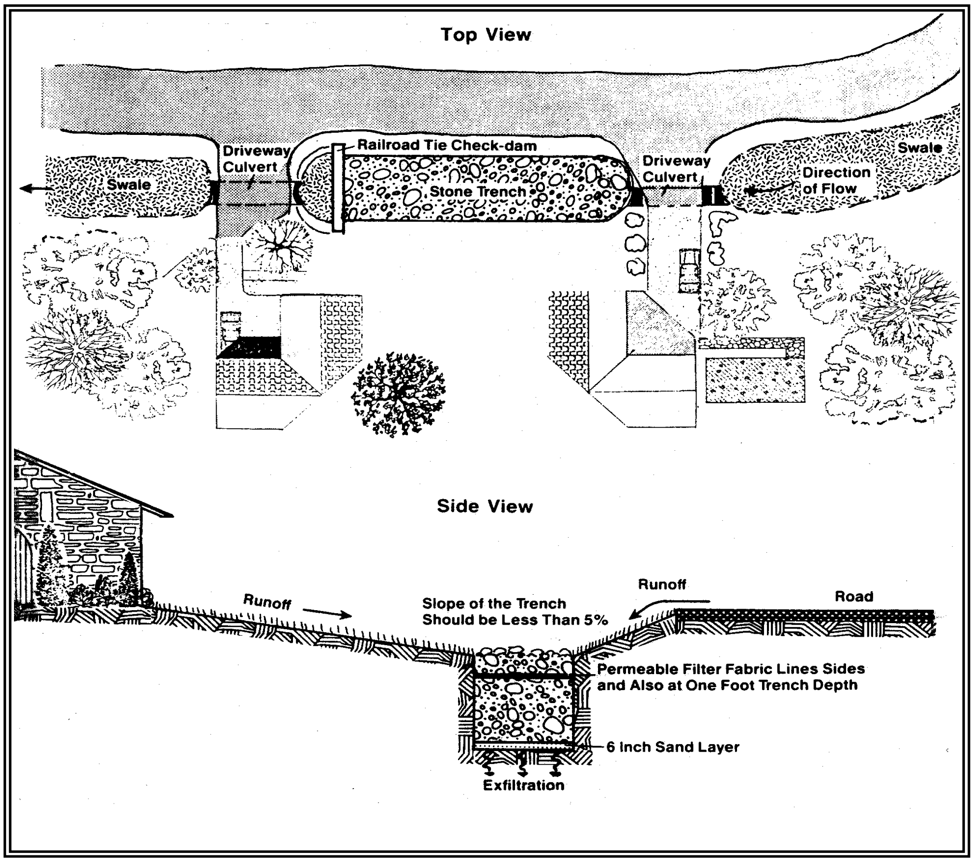
Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

Figure 3.3.6 - Median Strip Trench Design



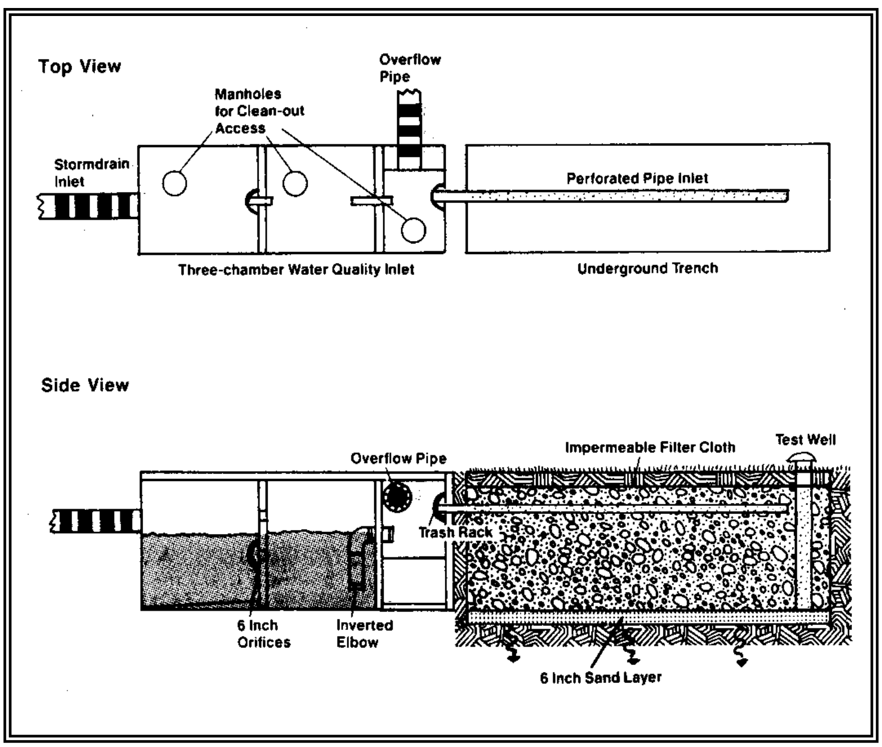
Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

Figure 3.3.7 - Oversized Pipe Trench Design



Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

Figure 3.3.8 - Swale/Trench Design



Source: Schueler (reproduced with permission)

Figure 3.3.9 - Underground Trench with Oil/Grit Chamber

Design Criteria

- Due to accessibility and maintenance limitations, carefully design and construct infiltration trenches. Contact the local jurisdiction for additional specifications.
- Consider including an access port or open or grated top for accessibility to conduct inspections and maintenance.
- Backfill Material - The aggregate material for the infiltration trench should consist of a clean aggregate with a maximum diameter of 3 inches and a minimum diameter of 1.5 inches. Void space for these aggregates should be in the range of 30 to 40 percent.
- Geotextile fabric liner – Completely encase the aggregate fill material in an engineering geotextile material. Geotextile should surround all of the aggregate fill material except for the top one-foot, which is placed over the geotextile. Carefully select geotextile fabric with acceptable properties to avoid plugging (see Appendix V-C of Volume V).
- The bottom sand or geotextile fabric as shown in Figure 3.3.10 is optional.

Refer to the Federal Highway Administration Manual "Geosynthetic Design and Construction Guidelines," Publication No. FHWA HI-95-038, May 1995 for design guidance on geotextiles in drainage applications. Refer to the NCHRP Report 367, "Long-Term Performance of Geosynthetics in Drainage Applications," 1994, for long-term performance data and background on the potential for geotextiles to clog, blind, or to allow piping to occur and how to design for these issues.

- Overflow Channel - Because an infiltration trench is generally used for small drainage areas, an emergency spillway is not necessary. However, provide a non-erosive overflow channel leading to a stabilized watercourse.
- Surface Cover - A stone filled trench can be placed under a porous or impervious surface cover to conserve space.
- Observation Well - Install an observation well at the lower end of the infiltration trench to check water levels, drawdown time, sediment accumulation, and conduct water quality monitoring. Figure 3.3.10 illustrates observation well details. It should consist of a perforated PVC pipe which is 4 to 6 inches in diameter and it should be constructed flush with the ground elevation. For larger trenches a 12-36 inch diameter well can be installed to facilitate maintenance operations such as pumping out the sediment. Cap the top of the well to discourage vandalism and tampering.

Construction Criteria

- Trench Preparation - Place excavated materials away from the trench sides to enhance trench wall stability. Take care to keep this material away from slopes, neighboring property, sidewalks and streets. It is recommended that this material be covered with plastic. (See Volume II, BMP C123 – Plastic Covering).
- Stone Aggregate Placement and Compaction - Place stone aggregate in lifts and compact using plate compactors. In general, a maximum loose lift thickness of 12 inches is recommended. The compaction process ensures geotextile conformity to the excavation sides, thereby reducing potential piping and geotextile clogging, and settlement problems.
- Potential Contamination - Prevent natural or fill soils from intermixing with the stone aggregate. Remove all contaminated stone aggregate and replaced with uncontaminated stone aggregate.
- Overlapping and Covering-Following the stone aggregate placement, fold the geotextile over the stone aggregate to form a 12 inch minimum longitudinal overlap. When overlaps are required between rolls, the upstream roll should overlap a minimum of 2 feet over the downstream roll in order to provide a shingled effect.
- Voids behind Geotextile - Voids between the geotextile and excavation sides must be avoided. Removing boulders or other obstacles from the trench walls is one source of such voids. Place natural soils in these voids at the most convenient time during construction to ensure geotextile conformity to the excavation sides. This remedial process will avoid soil piping, geotextile clogging, and possible surface subsidence.
- Unstable Excavation Sites - Vertically excavated walls may be difficult to maintain in areas where the soil moisture is high or where soft or cohesionless soils predominate. Trapezoidal, rather than rectangular, cross-sections may be needed.

Maintenance Criteria

Monitor sediment buildup in the top foot of stone aggregate or the surface inlet on the same schedule as the observation well.

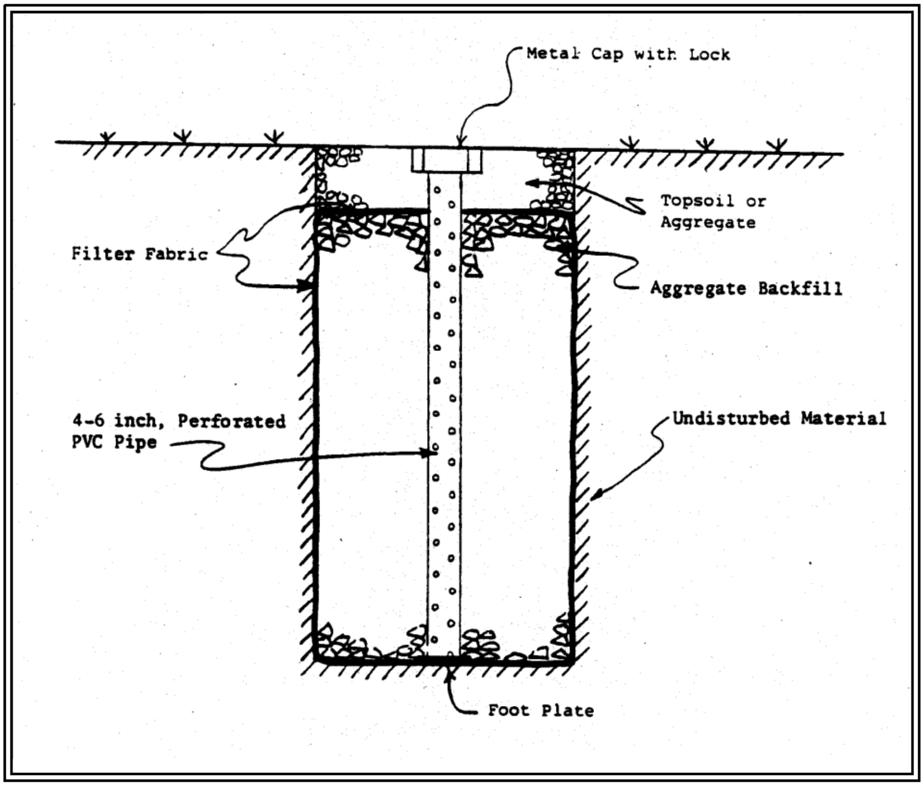


Figure 3.3.10 - Observation Well Details

3.4 Stormwater-related Site Procedures and Design Guidance for Bioretention and Permeable Pavement

3.4.1 Purpose

To locate and estimate the effectiveness of these distributed LID facilities in helping to meet the treatment, flow control, and LID requirements.

3.4.2 Description

The site procedures and design guidelines described in this Section are meant to be implemented after a preliminary project layout has been developed. The preliminary project layout should be developed considering the procedures of Chapter 3 in Volume 1. The designer must perform sufficient infiltration tests to confirm the feasibility of proposed bioretention and permeable pavement sites, and to provide a basis for estimating their contribution to meeting the treatment and flow reduction requirements. The same infiltration test sites may suffice for bioretention and permeable pavement as long as the soil receptor is the same. Testing should occur between December 1 and April 1.

The certified soils professional or engineer can exercise discretion concerning the need for and extent of infiltration rate (saturated hydraulic conductivity, K_{sat}) testing. The professional can consider a reduction in the extent of infiltration (K_{sat}) testing if, in their judgment, information exists confirming that the site is unconsolidated outwash material with high infiltration rates, and there is adequate separation from ground water:

- 1 foot separation from the bottom of a rain garden (per BMP T5.14A)
- 1 foot or 3 foot minimum separation from the bottom of a bioretention installation depending upon drainage area size (per BMP T7.30 Infeasibility Criteria) .
- 1 foot below the bottom of the base course for a permeable pavement (per BMP T5.15).

.

Bioretention and Rain Gardens:

<u>Field Testing Requirements Based upon Project Size:</u>

Projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #5:

In accordance with Section 2.5.5 Minimum Requirement #5 in Volume 1, projects subject only to Minimum Requirements #1 - #5 have to evaluate the feasibility of rain gardens unless a higher priority LID BMP is feasible or the applicant is meeting the LID performance standard through other BMPs. Perform a Small-Scale Pilot Infiltration Test (see Section 3.3.6) –

or an alternative small scale test specified by the local government – to determine if the minimum measured infiltration rate of 0.3 in/hr is exceeded at the proposed rain garden location. Also determine whether the site has at least one foot minimum clearance to the seasonal high ground water or other hydraulic restriction layer.

Please refer to BMP T5.14A in Chapter 5 of Volume V for further design guidance for rain gardens. Projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #9:

Also in accordance with Secion 2.5.5. Minimum Requirement #5 in Volume 1, projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #9 have to evaluate the feasibility of bioretention facilities unless a higher priority LID BMP is feasible or the applicant is meeting the LID performance standard through other BMPs. Infeasibility criteria and design criteria for bioretention are found in Chapter 7 of Volume V.

On a single, smaller commercial property, one bioretention facility will likely be appropriate. In that case, a Small-Scale Pilot Infiltration Test (see Section 3.3.6) – or an alternative small scale test specified by the local government - should be performed at the proposed bioretention location. Tests at more than one site could reveal the advantages of one location over another.

On larger commercial sites, a small-scale test every 5,000 sq. ft. is advisable. If soil characteristics across the site are consistent, a geotechnical professional may recommend a reduction in the number of tests.

On multi-lot residential developments, multiple bioretention facilities, or a facility stretching over multiple properties are appropriate. In most cases, it is necessary to perform small-scale Pilot Infiltration Tests (PIT), or other small-scale tests as allowed by the local jurisdiction. A test is advisable at each potential bioretention site. Long, narrow bioretention facilities, such as one following the road right-of-way, should have a test location at least every 200 lineal feet, and within each length of road with significant differences in subsurface characteristics.

However, if the site subsurface characterization, including soil borings across the development site, indicate consistent soil characteristics and depths to seasonal high ground water conditions or a hydraulic restriction layer, the number of test locations may be reduced to a frequency recommended by a geotechnical professional.

After concluding an infiltration test, Infiltration sites should be over-excavated 3 feet below the projected infiltration facility's bottom elevation unless minimum clearances to seasonal high ground water have or will be determined by another method. This overexcavation is to determine if there are restrictive layers or ground water. Observations through a wet season can identify a seasonal ground water restriction.

If a single bioretention facility serves a drainage area exceeding 1 acre, a ground water mounding analysis may be necessary in accordance with Section 3.3.8.

Assignment of Appropriate Correction Factors to the Sub-grade Soil: *(Applicable to projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #9; and to projects that must or choose to demonstrate compliance with the LID Performance Standard of Minimum Requirement #5).*

If deemed necessary by a qualified professional engineer, a correction factor may be applied to the measured K_{sat} of the subgrade soils to estimate its design (long term) infiltration rate. (*Note:* This is separate design issue from the assignment of a correction factor to the overlying, designed bioretention soil mix. See Chapter 7 of Volume V for that design issue).

The overlying bioretention soil mix provides excellent protection for the underlying native soil from sedimentation. Accordingly, the correction factor for the sub-grade soil does not have to take into consideration the extent of influent control and clogging over time. The correction factor to be applied to in-situ, small-scale infiltration test results is determined by the number of tests in relation to the number of bioretention areas and site variability. See Table 3.4.1. Correction factors range from 0.33 to 1 (no correction) and are determined by a licensed geotechnical engineer or licensed engineering geologist.

Tests should be located and be at an adequate frequency capable of producing a soil profile characterization that fully represents the infiltration capability where the bioretention areas are to be located. The correction factor depends on the level of uncertainty that variable subsurface conditions justify. If a pilot infiltration test is conducted for all bioretention areas or the range of uncertainty is low (for example, conditions are known to be uniform through previous exploration and site geological factors) one pilot infiltration test may be adequate to justify a correction factor of one. If the level of uncertainty is high, a correction factor near the low end of the range may be appropriate. Two example scenarios where low correction factors may apply include:

- Site conditions are highly variable due to a deposit of ancient landslide debris, or buried stream channels. In these cases, even with many explorations and several pilot infiltration tests, the level of uncertainty may still be high.
- Conditions are variable, but few explorations and only one pilot infiltration test is conducted. That is, the number of explorations and tests conducted do not match the degree of site variability anticipated.

Table 3.4.1
Correction factors for in-situ Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity measurements to estimate design (long-term) infiltration rates of subgrade soils underlying Bioretention

Site Analysis Issue	Correction Factor
Site variability and number of locations tested	CF_V = 0.33 to 1
Degree of influent control to prevent siltation and bio-buildup	No correction factor required

Project Submission Requirements:

Submit the results of infiltration (K_{sat}) testing and ground water elevation testing (or other documentation and justification for the rates and hydraulic restriction layer clearances) with the Stormwater Site Plan as justification for the feasibility decision regarding bioretention and as justification for assumptions made in the runoff modeling.

Modeling:

For projects that have to demonstrate compliance with Minimum Requirements #6 and/or #7, it is preferable to enter each bioretention device and its drainage area into the approved computer models for estimating their performance.

However, where site layouts involve multiple bioretention facilities, the modeling schematic can become extremely complicated or not accommodated by the available schematic grid.

In those cases, multiple bioretention facilities with similar designs (i.e., soil depth, ponding depth, freeboard height, and drainage area to ponding area ratio), and infiltration rates (Ecology suggests within a factor of 2) may have their drainage areas and ponded areas be combined, and represented in the runoff model as one drainage area and one bioretention device. In this case, use a weighted average of the design infiltration rates at each location. The averages are weighted by the size of their drainage areas.

Each design infiltration rate is the measured infiltration rate (K_{sat}) multiplied by the appropriate correction (reduction) factors. For these native soils below bioretention soils, a site variability correction factor, $CF_{v,}$ should be considered.

For bioretention with slide slopes of 3H:1V or flatter, infiltration through the side slope areas can be significant. Where side slopes are 3H:1V or flatter, bioretention can be molded allowing infiltration through the side slope areas to the native soil. In WWHM, modeling of infiltration through the side slope areas is accomplished by switching the default setting for "Use Wetted Surface Area (sidewalls): from "NO" to "YES."

Additional guidance concerning LID modeling will be available during training sessions on WWHM 2012.

Legal Documentation to Track Rain Garden and Bioretention Obligations:

Where drainage plan submittals include assumptions with regard to size and location of rain garden or bioretention facilities, approval of the plat, short-plat, or building permit should identify the rain garden or bioretention obligation of each lot; and the appropriate lots should have deed requirements for construction and maintenance of those facilities.

Permeable Pavement:

Field Testing Requirements based upon Project Size:

Projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #5:

In accordance with Section 2.5.5 Minimum Requirement #5 in Volume 1, projects subject only to Minimum Requirements #1 - #5 have to evaluate the feasibility of permeable pavement for a development site unless a higher priority BMP is feasible or the applicant is choosing to meet the LID performance standard using other BMPs. A small-scale Pilot Infiltration Tests (PIT) – or other small-scale tests as allowed by the local jurisdiction - should be performed for every 5,000 sq. ft. of permeable pavement, but not less than 1 test per site. Procedures to test for high ground water and infiltration rate (aka, saturated hydraulic conductivity, K_{sat}) are referenced in Chapter 3 of Volume I. Detailed procedures for the Small-Scale Pilot Infiltration Test are in Section 3.3.6 of this volume. **Submit results as part of the stormwater site plan to establish a basis for a feasibility decision.**

Projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #9:

Projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #9 will likely have to evaluate a site for permeable pavement feasibility. On commercial property that cannot use full dispersion, permeable pavement should be the first choice for parking lots and walkways, unless infeasible or the applicant demonstrates compliance with the LID performance standard through other BMPs. A small-scale Pilot Infiltration Tests (PIT) - or other small-scale tests as allowed by the local jurisdiction - should be performed for every 5,000 sq. ft. of permeable pavement, but not less than 1 test per site.

On residential developments not using full dispersion (BMP T5.30), permeable pavements should be the first choice for residential access roads and walks, and for private walks and driveways on residential lots unless infeasible or the applicant demonstrates compliance with the LID performance standard through other BMPs. Small-scale infiltration tests should be performed at every proposed lot, at least every 200 feet of roadway and within each length of road with significant differences in subsurface characteristics. However, if the site subsurface characterization - including soil borings across the development site - indicate consistent soil characteristics and depths to seasonal high ground water conditions, the number of test locations may be reduced to a frequency recommended by a geotechnical professional.

Unless seasonal high ground water elevations across the site have already been determined, upon conclusion of the infiltration testing, infiltration sites should be over-excavated 1 foot to see any restrictive layers or ground water. Observations through a wet season can identify a seasonal ground water restriction.

Perform infiltration testing in the soil profile at the estimated bottom elevation of base materials for the permeable pavement. If no base materials, (e.g., a pervious concrete sidewalk), perform the testing at the estimated bottom elevation of the pavement.

Assignment of Appropriate Correction Factors:

(Applicable to projects subject to Minimum Requirements #1 - #9; and to projects that must or choose to demonstrate compliance with the LID Performance Standard of Minimum Requirement #5).

The correction factor for in-situ, small-scale pilot infiltration test is determined by the number of tests in relation to the size of the permeable pavement installation, site variability and the quality of the aggregate base material. Correction factors range from 0.33 to 1 (no correction).

Tests should be located and be at adequate frequency capable of producing a soil profile characterization that fully represents the infiltration capability where the permeable pavement is located. If used, the correction factor depends on the level of uncertainty that variable subsurface conditions justify. If enough pilot infiltration tests are conducted across the permeable pavement subgrade to provide an accurate characterization, or the range of uncertainty is low (for example, conditions are known to be uniform through previous exploration and site geological factors), then a correction factor of one for site variability may be justified. Additionally, a correction factor of 1 for the quality of pavement aggregate base material may be necessary if the aggregate base is clean washed material with 1% or less fines passing the 200 sieve. See Table 3.4.2 - Correction factors for in-situ Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity (K_{sat}) Measurements - to estimate design (long-term) infiltration rates.

If the level of uncertainty is high, a correction factor near the low end of the range may be appropriate. Two example scenarios where low correction factors may apply include:

- Site conditions are highly variable due to a deposit of ancient landslide debris, or buried stream channels. In these cases, even with many explorations and several pilot infiltration tests, the level of uncertainty may still be high.
- Conditions are variable, but few explorations and only one pilot infiltration test is conducted. That is, the number of explorations and tests conducted do not match the degree of site variability anticipated.

Table 3.4.2
Correction factors for in-situ Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity (K_{sat}) measurements to estimate design (long-term) infiltration rates

Site Analysis Issue	Correction Factor
Site variability and number of locations tested	CF_v = 0.33 to 1
Quality of pavement aggregate base material	CF_m = 0.9 to 1

Total correction factor (CF_T) = CF_v x CF_m

Soil Suitability Criteria Confirmation:

Where permeable pavements are used for pollution-generating hard surfaces (primarily roads, driveways, and parking lots), there must be a determination whether the soil suitability criteria of Section 3.3.7 are met. The applicable criteria are:

- Cation Exchange Capacity > 5%
- Organic Content > 1%
- Measured (initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity < 12 in./hr.
- One foot depth of soil with above characteristics

Sites not meeting these criteria should be considered infeasible for permeable pavements for pollution-generating hard surfaces.

The information to make this determination may be obtained from various sources: historic site information, estimated qualities of a general soil type, laboratory analysis of field samples. Local jurisdictions may identify regional areas as infeasible for permeable pavements for pollution-generating hard surfaces based upon knowledge of the region's soil characteristics in regard to the criteria listed above.

Project Submission Requirements:

Submit results of infiltration (K_{sat}) testing, ground water elevation testing (or other documentation and justification for the rates and hydraulic restriction layer clearances) with the Stormwater Site Plan as justification for the feasibility decision regarding permeable pavement, and as justification for assumptions made in the runoff modeling. If necessary, also submit documentation of meeting the soil suitability criteria.

Modeling:

In the runoff modeling, similar designs throughout a development can be summed and represented as one large facility. For instance, walkways can be summed into one facility. Driveways with similar designs (and enforced through deed restrictions) can be summed into one facility. In these instances, a weighted average of the design infiltration rates (where within a factor of two) for each location may be used. The averages are weighted by the size of their drainage area. The design infiltration rate for each site is the measured K_{sat} multiplied by the appropriate correction factors.

As an alternative, simply enter walks, patios, and driveways with little storage capacity in the gravel bedding beneath them as lawn/landscape areas in the continuous runoff model. Roads and parking lots that have storage in a base course below the wearing surface should use the permeable pavement element in the continuous runoff model.

<u>Legal Documentation to Track Permeable Pavement Obligations:</u>

Where drainage plan submittals include assumptions in regard to size and location of permeable pavement, approval of the plat or short-plat should identify the permeable pavement obligation of each lot; and the appropriate lots should have deed requirements for construction and maintenance of those facilities.

Volume III References

Buckman, Harry O., and Nyle C. Brady, The Nature and Properties of Soils, Collier Macmillan Ltd., Toronto, Ontario, 1969.

Chin, D.A., Water Resources Engineering, Prentice Hall, New Jersey, 2000.

Chow, V.T., Handbook of Applied Hydrology, McGraw Hill Book Co., New York, 1964.

Department of Ecology, Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin, February, 1992.

Dinicola, R.S., Characterization and Simulation of Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Snohomish Counties, Washington, USGS Water Resources Investigations Report 89-4052, 1989.

Ferguson, Bruce K., Stormwater Infiltration, Lewis Publishers, 1994.

Horner, Richard Fundamentals of Urban Runoff Management-Technical and Institutional Issues, 1994.

Huber, Wayne, and Robert Dickinson, Stormwater Management Model Version 4 Part A: User's Manual, Environmental Research Laboratory, Athens, GA, 1988.

King County Runoff Time Series (KCRTS), King County Department of Natural Resources, Personal Communication, 1999.

Massman, Joel, A Design Manual for Sizing Infiltration Ponds, October 2003.

Massmann, Joel & Carolyn Butchart, U. of Washington Infiltration Characteristics, Performance, and Design of Storm Water Facilities, March 2000.

NOAA Atlas 2, Precipitation Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX-Washington.

Rawls, W. J., Brakensiek, D. L. and Saxton, K. E. Estimation of Soil Properties. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers, Vol. 25, No. 5, pp. 1316-1320, 1982.

Stubdaer, J.M., The Santa Barbara Urban Hydrograph Method, National Symposium on Urban Hydrology and Sediment Control, University of Kentucky, Lexington, KY, 1975.

USDA-SCS, Technical Release No. 20 (TR-20) Model Project Formulation, 1982.

USDA-SCS, Technical Release No. 55: Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, 1986.

USEPA, Hydrological Simulation Program - Fortran HSPF Users Manual for Release 9., EPA 600/3-84-066, Environmental Research Laboratory, Athens, GA, June 1984.

Wiltsie, Edward, Stormwater Facilities Performance Study, Infiltration Pond Testing and Data Evaluation, August 10, 1998.

This page intentionally left blank.

Resource Materials (not specifically referenced in text)

Barfield, B. J., and Warner, R. C., and Haan, C. T. Applied Hydrology and Sedimentology for Disturbed Areas. Oklahoma Technical Press, Stillwater, Oklahoma, 1983.

Bentall, R., Methods of Collecting and Interpreting Ground Water Data, U.S. G. S. Water Supply Paper 1544-H., 1963, 97 p.

Bianchi, W.C. and D.C. Muckel, Ground Water Recharge Hydrology, ARS 41-161, USDA, 1970. 62 p.

Bouwer, Herman., Groundwater Hydrology, McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., N.Y., 1978.

Camp Dresser & McKee, Larry Walker Associates, Uribe and Associates, and Resource Planning Associates. California Storm Water Best Management Practice Handbooks. March 1993

Caraco, D., Claytor, R., Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates USEPA, December 1997

Davis, S.N. and R.J. DeWiest, Hydrogeology. John Wiley and Sons, N.Y., 1966.

Ferguson, Bruce K., Stormwater Infiltration, Lewis Publishers, 1994.

Ferris, J.G., D.B. Knowles, R.H. Brown, and R.W. Stallman, Theory of Aquifer Tests, USGS, Water Supply Paper No. 1536-E.

Gaus, Jennifer J., Soils of Stormwater Infiltration Basins in the Puget Sound Region: Trace Metal Form and Concentration and Comparison to Washington State Department of Ecology Guidelines, Master of Science, U. of Washington, 1993.

Hannon, J. B., Underground Disposal of Storm Water Runoff, Design Guidelines Manual, California Department of Transportation, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC (FHWA-TS-80-218), February 1980.

Harrington, Bruce W., Design and Construction of Infiltration Trenches, Seminar-Urban Watershed Management, How to Design Urban Stormwater Best Management Practices, ASCE, July, 1994.

Hilding, Karen, A Survey of Infiltration Basins in the Puget Sound Regions, Masters Project, U. of California, 1993.

Jacobson, Michael A., Summary and Conclusions from Applied Research on Infiltration Basins and Recommendations for Modifying the Washington Department of Ecology Stormwater Management Manual for the Puget Sound Basin. University of Washington, Center for Urban Water Resources Management. May 1993.

King County, Washington, Surface Water Design Manual, September 1, 1998.

Klochak, John R., An Investigation of the Effectiveness of Infiltration Systems in Treating Urban Runoff, Master of Science, U. of Washington, 1992.

Konrad, C. P., Jensen, B. W., Burges, S. J, Reinelt, L. E. On-Site Residential Stormwater Management Alternatives. Center for Urban Water Resources, University of Washington. September 1995.

Livingston, E. H., Infiltration Practices: The Good, the Bad, and the Ugly, National Conference on Urban Runoff Management, Chicago, Ill. 1993.

Moore, John, Seepage: A System for Early Evaluation of the Pollution Potential of Agriculture Groundwater Environments, SCS, 1988.

Pettyjohn, W.A., Introduction to Artificial Ground Water Recharge, USEPA, Ada, Oklahoma, National Waterwell Association, Worthington, Ohio, 1981, 44 p.

Rawls, W. J., D. L. Brakensiek, and K. E. Saxton, Estimation of Soil Properties. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers, Vol. 25, No. 5, pp. 1316-1320, 1982.

Schueler, Thomas, et al., A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices, March, 1992

Soil Conservation Service, SCS National Engineering Handbook Section 8, Engineering Geology , USDA., 1978.

Soil Conservation Service, USDA, SCS National Engineering Handbook, Section 18 Ground Water, 1968.

Soil Conservation Service, USDA, SCS Technical Release No. 36, Ground Water Recharge, Engineering Division, 1967, 22 p.

Todd, D.K., Ground Water Hydrology, John Wiley and Sons, Inc., N.Y., 1959.

Urbonas and Stahre, “Stormwater Best Management Practices”, Prentiss-Hall, 1993

WEF Manual of Practice #23 Urban Runoff Quality Management, Water Environment Federation & ASCE 1998.

Wenzel, L.K., Methods of Determining Permeability of Water Bearing Materials, USGS Water Supply Paper 887, 1942.

Wiltsie, Edward, Stormwater Facilities Performance Study, Infiltration Pond Testing and Data Evaluation, August 10, 1998

Woodward-Clyde, BMP Design Recommendations, November 1995

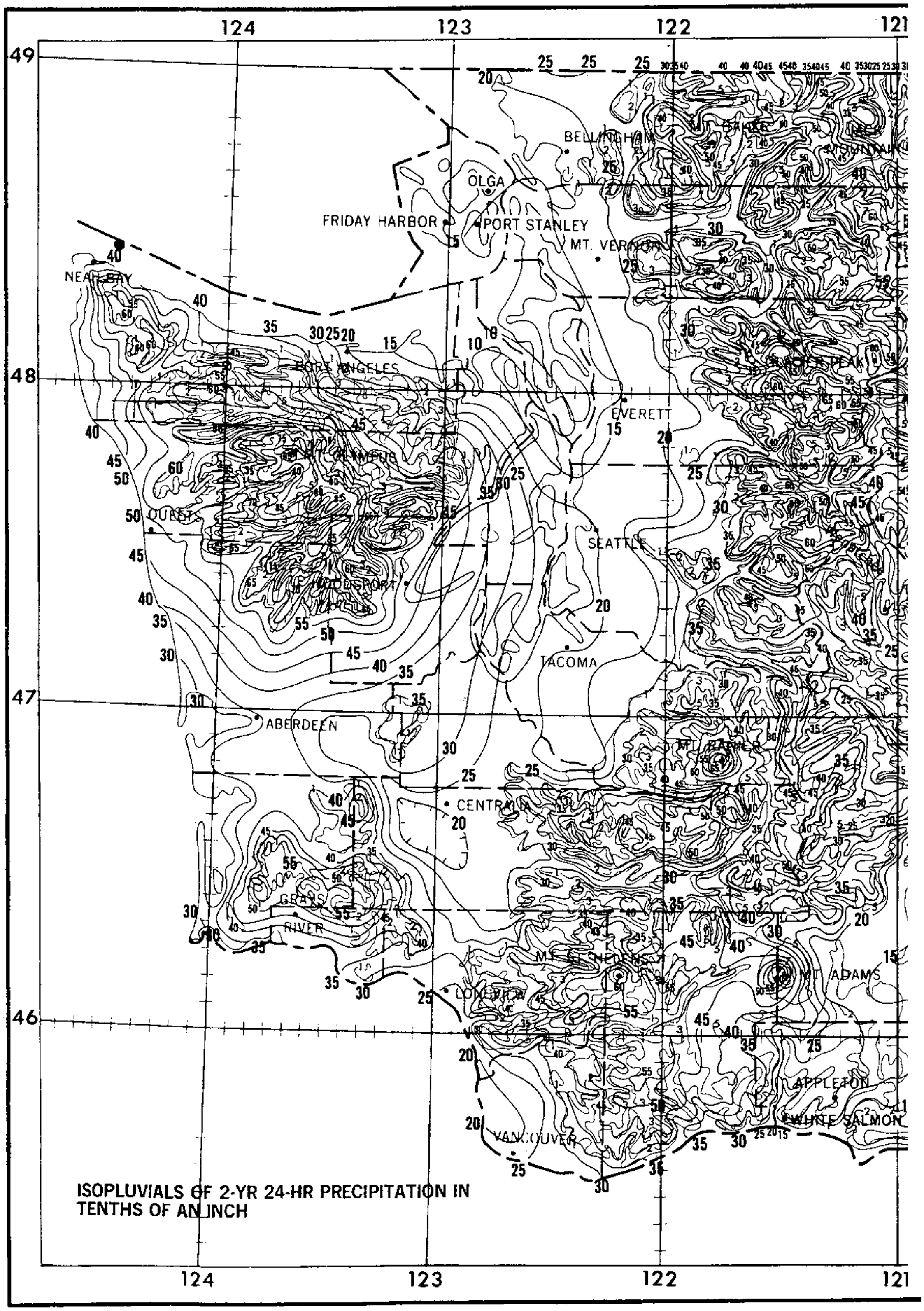
Appendix III-A Isopluvial Maps for Design Storms

Included in this appendix are the 2, 10 and 100-year, 24-hour design storm and mean annual precipitation isopluvial maps for Western Washington. These have been taken from NOAA Atlas 2 "Precipitation - Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX, Washington and are available on link at the following web address:

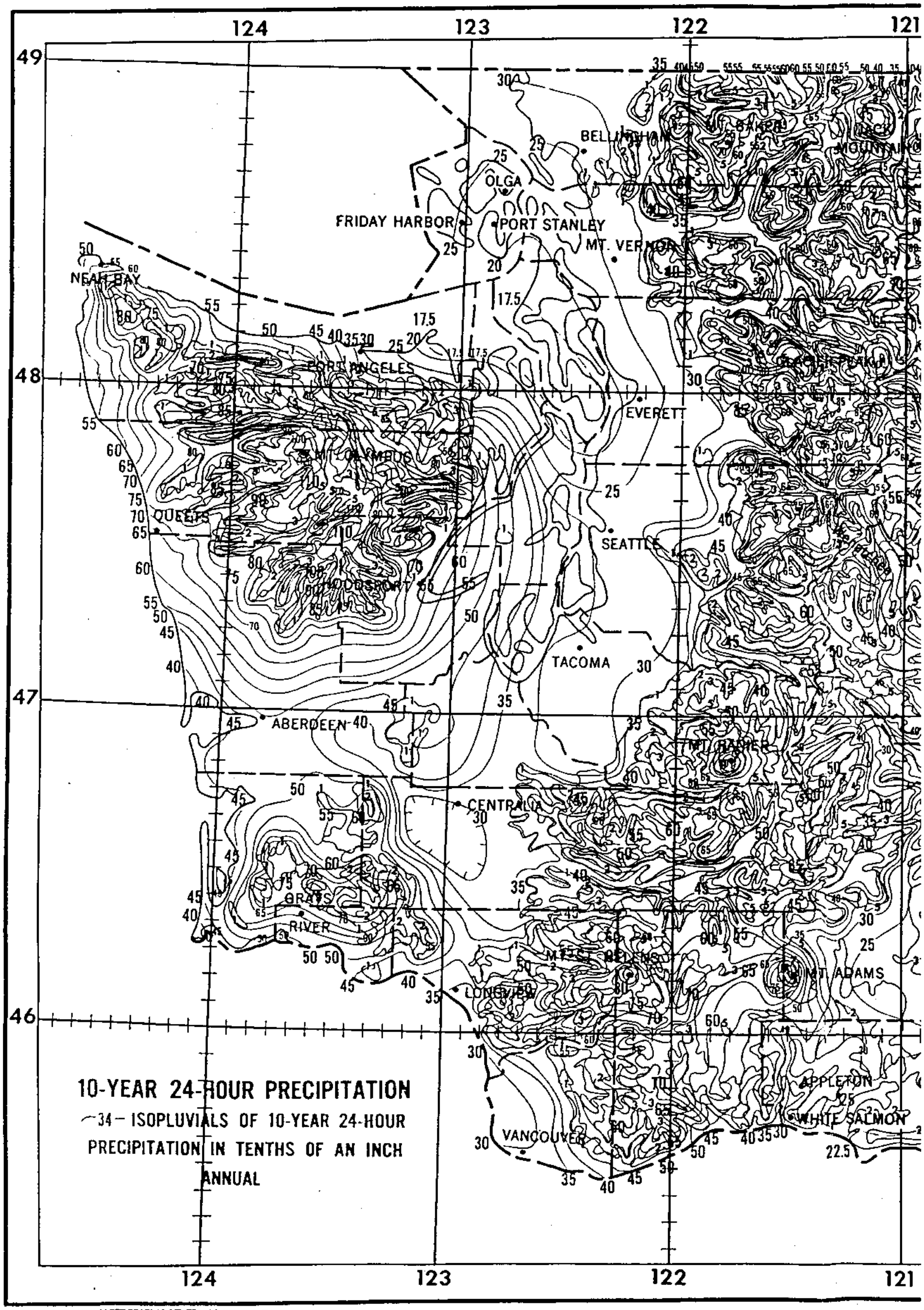
http://www.nws.noaa.gov/oh/hdsc/PF_documents/Atlas2_Volume9.pdf

This page intentionally left blank.

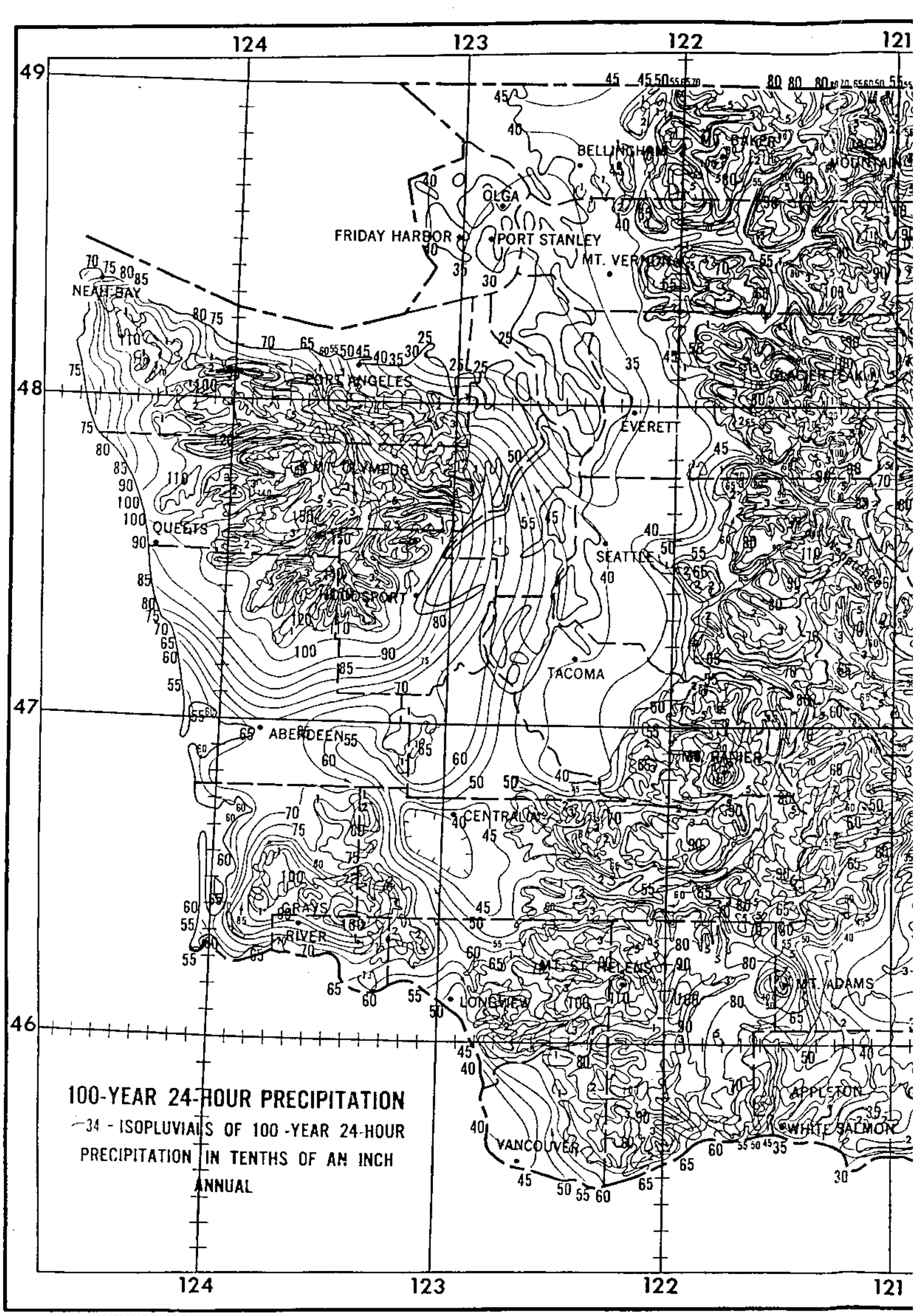
Western Washington Isopluvial 2-year, 24 hour



Western Washington Isopluvial 10-year, 24 hour



Western Washington Isopluvial 100-year, 24 hour



This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix III-B Western Washington Hydrology Model – Information, Assumptions, and Computation Steps

This appendix describes some of the information and assumptions used in the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM). However, since the first version of WWHM was developed and released to public in 2001, WWHM program has gone through several upgrades incorporating new features and capabilities. It is anticipated that the next upgrade to WWHM will add low impact development (LID) modeling capability. WWHM users should periodically check Ecology's WWHM web site for the latest releases of WWHM, user manual, and any supplemental instructions. The web address for WWHM is: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/wwhmtraining/index.html WWHM Limitations

WWHM has been created for the specific purpose of sizing stormwater control facilities for new development and redevelopment projects in Western Washington. WWHM can be used for a range of conditions and developments; however, certain limitations are inherent in this software. These limitations are described below.

The WWHM uses the EPA HSPF software program to do all of the rainfall-runoff and routing computations. Therefore, HSPF limitations are included in the WWHM. For example, HSPF does not explicitly model backwater or tailwater control situations. This is also true in the WWHM.

WWHM Information and Assumptions

1. Precipitation data.

Length of record.

The WWHM uses long-term (50 - 70 years) precipitation data to simulate the potential impacts of land use development in western Washington. A minimum period of 20 years is sufficient to simulate enough peak flow events to produce accurate flow frequency results. A 40 to 50-year record is preferred. The actual length of record of each precipitation station varies, but all exceed 50 years.

Rainfall distribution.

The precipitation data are representative of the different rainfall regimes found in western Washington. More than 17 precipitation stations are used. These stations represent rainfall at elevations below 1500 feet. WWHM does not include snowfall and melt.

The primary source for precipitation data is National Weather Service stations. The secondary source is precipitation data collected by local jurisdictions. During development of WWHM, county engineers at 19 western Washington counties were contacted to obtain local precipitation data.

Earlier versions of WWHM used hourly data from the precipitation stations in the table below to generate precipitation timeseries for use in WWHM. For WWHM2012, more recent precipitation data have been used to generate precipitation timeseries in15-min time steps.

Precipitation Station	Years of Data	County Coverage
Astoria, OR	1955-1998 = 43	Wahkiakum
Blaine	1948-1998 = 50	Whatcom, San Juan
Burlington	1948-1998 = 50	Skagit, Island
Clearwater	1948-1998 = 50	Jefferson (west)
Darrington	1948-1996 = 48	Snohomish (northeast)
Everett	1948-1996 = 48	Snohomish (excluding northeast)
Frances	1948-1998 = 50	Pacific
Landsburg	1948-1997 = 49	King (east)
Longview	1955-1998 = 43	Cowlitz, Lewis (south)
McMillian	1948-1998 = 50	Pierce
Montesano	1955-1998 = 43	Grays Harbor
Olympia	1955-1998 = 43	Thurston, Mason (south), Lewis (north)
Port Angeles	1948-1998 = 50	Clallam (east)
Portland, OR	1948-1998 = 50	Clark, Skamania
Quilcene	1948-1998 = 50	Jefferson (east), Mason (north), Kitsap
Sappho	1948-1998 = 50	Clallam (west)
SeaTac	1948-1997 = 49	King (west)

The records were reviewed for length, quality, and completeness of record. Annual totals were checked along with hourly maximum totals. Using these checks, data gaps and errors were corrected, where possible. A "Quality of Record" summary was produced for each precipitation record reviewed.

The reviewed and corrected data were placed in multiple WDM (Watershed Data Management) files. One WDM file was created per county and contains all of the precipitation data to be used by the WWHM for that particular county. A local government that believes that it has a more accurate precipitation record to use with the WWHM should petition Ecology to allow use of that record, and to possibly incorporate that record into the WWHM. This may be more easily done in the future if the WWHM is upgraded to allow use of custom precipitation time series.

Computational time step.

The computational time step used in the earlier versions of WWHM has been one hour. The one-hour time step was selected to better represent the temporal variability of actual precipitation than daily data. WWHM2012 incorporates 15-minute precipitation time series.

.

2. Precipitation multiplication factors.

Precipitation multiplication factors increase or decrease recorded precipitation data to better represent local rainfall conditions. This is particularly important when the precipitation gage is located some distance from the study area.

Precipitation multiplication factors were developed for western Washington. The factors are based on the ratio of the 24-hour, 25-year rainfall intensities for the representative precipitation gage and the surrounding area represented by that gage's record. The 24-hour, 25-year rainfall intensities were determined from the NOAA Atlas 2 (*Precipitation-Frequency Atlas of the Western United States, Volume IX – Washington, 1973*).

These multiplication factors were created for the Puget Sound lowlands plus all western Washington valleys and hillside slopes below 1500 feet elevation. The factors were placed in the WWHM database and linked to each county's map. They are transparent to the general user and the default range is set to 0.8 – 2. The advanced user will have the ability to change the precipitation multiplication factor for a specific site. However, such changes will be recorded in the WWHM output.

3. Pan evaporation data.

Pan evaporation data are used to determine the potential evapotranspiration (PET) of a study area. Actual evapotranspiration (AET) is computed by the WWHM based on PET and available moisture supply. AET accounts for the precipitation that returns to the atmosphere without becoming runoff. Soil moisture conditions and runoff are directly influenced by PET and AET.

Evaporation is not highly variable like rainfall. Puyallup pan evaporation data are used for all of the 19 western Washington counties.

Pan evaporation data were assembled and checked for the same time period as the precipitation data and placed in the appropriate county WDM files.

Pan evaporation data are collected in the field, but PET is used by the WWHM. PET is equal to pan evaporation times a pan evaporation coefficient. Depending on climate, pan evaporation coefficients for western Washington range from 0.72 to 0.82.

NOAA Technical Report NWS 33, *Evaporation Atlas for the Contiguous 48 United States*, was used as the source for the pan evaporation coefficients. Pan evaporation coefficient values are shown on Map 4 of that publication.

As with the precipitation multiplication factors, the pan evaporation coefficients have been placed in the WWHM database and linked to each county's map. They will be transparent to the general user. The advanced user will have the ability to change the coefficient for a specific site. However, such changes will be recorded in the WWHM output.

4. Soil data.

Soil type, along with vegetation type, greatly influences the rate and timing of the transformation of rainfall to runoff. Sandy soils with high infiltration rates produce little or no surface runoff; almost all runoff is from ground water. Soils with a compressed till layer slowly infiltrate water and produce larger amounts of surface runoff during storm events.

WWHM uses three predominant soil type to represent the soils of western Washington: till, outwash, and saturated

Till soils have been compacted by glacial action. Under a layer of newly formed soil lies a compressed soil layer commonly called "hardpan". This hardpan has very poor infiltration capacity. As a result, till soils produce a relatively large amount of surface runoff and interflow. A typical example of a till soil is an Alderwood soil (SCS class C). Where field infiltration tests indicate a measured (initial) infiltration rate less than 0.30 in/hr, the user may model the site as a class C soil.

Outwash soils have a high infiltration capacity due to their sand and gravel composition. Outwash soils have little or no surface runoff or interflow. Instead, almost all of their runoff is in the form of ground water. An Everett soil (SCS class A) is a typical outwash soil.

Outwash soils over high ground water or an impervious soil layer have low infiltration rates and act like till soils. Where ground water or an impervious soil layer is within 5 feet from the surface, outwash soils may be modeled as till soils in the WWHM.

Saturated soils are usually found in wetlands. They have a low infiltration rate and a high ground water table. When dry, saturated soils have a high storage capacity and produce very little runoff. However, once they become saturated they produce surface runoff, interflow, and ground water in large quantities. Mukilteo muck (SCS class D) is a typical saturated/wetland soil.

The user will be required to investigate actual local soil conditions for the specific development planned. The user will then input the number of acres of outwash (A/B), till (C/D), and saturated/wetland soils for the site conditions.

Alluvial soils are found in valley bottoms. These are generally fine-grained and often have a high seasonal water table. There has been relatively little experience in calibrating the HSPF model to runoff from these soils, so in the absence of better information, these soils may be modeled as till soils.

Additional soils will be included in the WWHM if appropriate HSPF parameter values are found to represent other major soil groups.

The three predominant soil types are represented in the WWHM by specific HSPF parameter values that represent the hydrologic characteristics of these soils. More information on these parameter values is presented below.

5. Vegetation data.

As with soil type, vegetation types greatly influence the rate and timing of the transformation of rainfall to runoff. Vegetation intercepts precipitation, increases its ability to percolate through the soil, and evaporates and transpires large volumes of water that would otherwise become runoff.

WWHM represents the vegetation of western Washington with three predominant vegetation categories: forest, pasture, and lawn (also known as grass).

Forest vegetation represents the typical second growth Douglas fir found in the Puget Sound lowlands. Forest has a large interception storage capacity. This means that a large amount of precipitation is caught in the forest canopy before reaching the ground and becoming available for runoff. Precipitation intercepted in this way is later evaporated back into the atmosphere. Forest also has the ability to transpire moisture from the soil via its root system. This leaves less water available for runoff.

Pasture vegetation is typically found in rural areas where the forest has been cleared and replaced with shrub or grass lots. Some pasture areas may be used to graze livestock. The interception storage and soil evapotranspiration capacity of pasture are less than forest. Soils may have also been compressed by mechanized equipment during clearing activities. Livestock can also compact soil. Pasture areas typically produce more runoff (particularly surface runoff and interflow) than forest areas.

Lawn vegetation is representative of the suburban vegetation found in typical residential developments. Soils have been compacted by earth moving equipment, often with a layer of topsoil removed. Sod and ornamental bushes replace native vegetation. The interception storage and evapotranspiration of lawn vegetation is less than pasture, more runoff results.

Predevelopment default land conditions are forest, although the user has the option of specifying pasture if there is documented evidence that pasture vegetation was native to the predevelopment site. If this option is used, the change will be recorded in the WWHM output.

Forest vegetation is represented by specific HSPF parameter values that represent the forest hydrologic characteristics. As described above, the existing regional HSPF parameter values for forest are based on undisturbed second-growth Douglas fir forest found today in western Washington lowland watersheds.

Postdevelopment vegetation will reflect the new vegetation planned for the site. The user has the choice of forest, pasture, and landscaped vegetation. Forest and pasture are only appropriate for postdevelopment vegetation in parcels separate from standard residential or non-standard residential/commercial developments. Development areas must only be designated as forest or pasture where legal restrictions can be documented that protect these areas from future disturbances. WWHM assumes the pervious land portion of developed areas is covered with lawn vegetation, as described above.

6. Development land use data.

The WWHM user must enter land use information for the pre-developed condition and the proposed development condition into the model. WWHM users must select the appropriate land use category and slope, where slope of 0-5% is flat, 5-15% is moderate, and greater than 15% is steep. The land use categories include: Impervious areas such as Roads, Roof, Driveways, Sidewalks, Parking, Ponds; and Pervious areas such as Lawn (this includes lawn, garden, areas with ornamental plants, and any natural areas not legally protected from future disturbance), Forest, and Pasture. The soils types available are A/B (outwash), C (Till), and Saturated (wetland).

Forest and pasture vegetation areas are only appropriate for separate undeveloped parcels dedicated as open space, wetland buffer, or park within the total area of the standard residential development. ***Development areas must only be designated as forest or pasture where legal restrictions can be documented that protect these areas from future disturbances.***

Impervious, as the name implies, allows no infiltration of water into the pervious soil. All runoff is surface runoff. Impervious land typically consists of paved roads, sidewalks, driveways, and parking lots. Roofs are also impervious.

For the purposes of hydrologic modeling, only effective impervious area is categorized as impervious. Effective impervious area (EIA) is the area where there is no opportunity for surface runoff from an impervious site to infiltrate into the soil before it reaches a conveyance system (pipe, ditch, stream, etc.). An example of an EIA is a shopping center parking lot where the water runs off the pavement and directly goes into a catch basin where it then flows into a pipe and eventually to a stream. In contrast, some homes with impervious roofs collect the roof runoff into roof gutters and send the water down downspouts. When the water reaches the base of the downspout it can be directed into an infiltration system. If roof runoff is infiltrated according to the requirements of BMP T5.10A, the roof area can be considered ineffective impervious area. The roof area may be discounted from the project area entered into WWHM.

The non-effective impervious area uses the adjacent or underlying soil and vegetation properties. Vegetation often varies by the type of land use. The assumption is made in the WWHM that the EIA equals the TIA (total impervious area). This is consistent with King County's determination of EIA acres for new developments. Where appropriate, the TIA can be reduced through the use of runoff credits (more on that below).

Earlier versions of WWHM (WWHM1 and WWHM2) provided the 2 optional features below for modeling of Standard Residential development and obtaining flow credits for incorporating low impact development (LID) techniques. Later upgrades to WWHM have provided for direct input of the standard residential development details by the WWHM users. WWHM2012 allows direct modeling of some LID techniques through use of new LID Elements. Other LID techniques will continue to be modeled in accordance with Appendix C of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington.

Standard Residential: For housing developments where lot-specific details (e.g., size of roof and driveway) are not yet determined, the earlier versions of WWHM provided a set of default assumptions about the amount of impervious area per lot and its division between driveways and rooftops under the "Standard Residential" development land use type. Later versions of WWHM (e.g., WWHM3 or WWHM2012) do not have this option programmed in the model but the land use assumptions for the "Standard Residential" development are given below.

Ecology has selected a standard impervious area of 4200 square feet per residential lot, with 1000 square feet of that as driveway, walkways, and patio area, and the remainder as rooftop area. The rest of the lot acres will be assumed to be landscaped area (including lawn). The user inputs the number of residential lots and the total acreage of the residential lots (public right-of-way acreages and non-residential lot acreages excluded). The number of residential lots and the associated number of acres will be used to compute the average number of residential lots per acre. This value together with the number of residential lots and the impervious area in the public right-of-way will be used by the model to calculate the TIA for the proposed development. The areas covered by streets, parking areas, and sidewalk areas are input separately by the user.

Runoff Credits: Please note that the modeling of runoff credits using some of the low impact development techniques described in Appendix C have been updated. WWHM 2012 can now provide LID modeling capabilities in accordance with this manual. **The following LID credit modeling is based on modeling in earlier versions of WWHM (WWHM2 and WWHM3)**.

Runoff credits can be obtained using any or all of the low impact development methods listed below. The WWHM has an automated procedure for taking credits for infiltrating or dispersing roof runoff - methods #1 and #2 below. Credits for using methods 3,4,8, and 9 must be taken by following the guidance in Appendix C. Methods 5, 6, and 10 also have guidance in Appendix C for taking credits. However, the new LID elements in WWHM2012 would allow direct modeling of methods 4, 5, 6, and 10 which would be a better representation of how they function to reduce surface runoff. Roof areas using method #7 -rainwater harvesting systems designed in accordance with the guidance in Appendix C need not be entered into the model. Also, if using method 11 – Full dispersion – the runoff model need not be used for the area that meets the criteria in Appendix C.

1. Infiltrate roof runoff
2. Disperse roof runoff
3. Disperse driveway and other hard surface runoff
4. Porous pavement for driveways and walks
5. Porous pavement for roads and parking lots
6. Vegetated Roofs
7. Rainwater Harvesting
8. Reverse slope sidewalks
9. Low impact foundations
10. Bioretention Areas
11. Full dispersion

1. Infiltrate Roof Runoff

Credit is given for disconnecting the roof runoff from the development's stormwater conveyance system and infiltrating on the individual residential lots. The WWHM assumes that this infiltrated roof runoff does not contribute to the runoff flowing to the stormwater detention pond site. It disappears from the system and does not have to be mitigated. See Section 3.1.1. of Volume III for design requirements for downspout infiltration systems.

2. Disperse Roof Runoff

Credit is also given for disconnecting the roof runoff from the development's stormwater conveyance system and dispersing it on the lawn/landscaped surface of individual lots. If the runoff is dispersed using a dispersion trench designed according to the requirements of Section 3.1.2. of Volume III, on single-family lots greater than 22,000 square feet, and the vegetative flow path of the runoff is 50 feet or longer through undisturbed native or compost-amended soils, the roof area can be entered into the model as landscaped area rather than impervious surface.

3. Disperse driveway and other hard surface runoff:

If runoff is dispersed in accordance with the guidance in BMP T5.11 or BMP T5.12, the driveway or other hard surface may be modeled as landscaped area.

4. & 5. Porous pavement

The third option for runoff credit is the use of porous pavement for private driveways, sidewalks, streets, and parking areas. The LID credit guidance in Appendix C was developed before WWHM2012, with the capability to directly model permeable pavements, became available. The LID credit guidance in Appendix C will direct you to enter a certain percentage of the pervious pavement area into the landscaped area category rather than the street/sidewalk/parking lot category. Even thoughWWHM2012 has other methods for calculating the impacts of permeable pavement, the methods described in Part 1 of Appendix C are still appropriate to use where the pervious pavement does not have a significant depth of base course for storage.

Follow similar procedures for vegetated roofs, reverse slope sidewalks, and low impact foundations. The LID credit guidance of Appendix C directs how these surfaces should be entered into the model. If you do not know the specific quantities of the different land cover types for your development (e.g., the individual lots will be sold to builders who will determine layout and size of home), you should start with the assumption of 4200 sq. ft. of impervious area per lot – including 1,000 sq. ft. for driveways, and begin making adjustments in those totals as allowed in the LID guidance of Appendix C

Other Development Options and Model Features

WWHM allows the flexibility of bypassing a portion of the development area around a flow control facility and/or having off-site inflow that is entering the development area pass through the flow control facility.

Bypass occurs when a portion of the development does not drain to a stormwater detention facility. On-site runoff from a proposed development project may bypass the flow control facility provided that all of the following conditions are met.

1. Runoff from both the bypass area and the flow control facility converges within a quarter-mile downstream of the project site discharge point.
2. The flow control facility is designed to compensate for the uncontrolled bypass area such that the net effect at the point of convergence downstream is the same with or without bypass.
3. The 100-year peak discharge from the bypass area will not exceed 0.4 cfs.
4. Runoff from the bypass area will not create a significant adverse impact to downstream drainage systems or properties.
5. Water quality requirements applicable to the bypass area are met.

Off-site Inflow occurs when an upslope area outside the development drains to the flow control facility in the development. If the existing 100-year peak flow rate from any upstream off-site area is greater than 50% of the 100-year developed peak flow rate (undetained) for the project site, then the runoff from the off-site area must not flow to the on-site flow control facility. The bypass of off-site runoff must be designed so as to achieve both of the following:

1. Any existing contribution of flows to an on-site wetland must be maintained.
2. Off-site flows that are naturally attenuated by the project site under predeveloped conditions must remain attenuated, either by natural means or by providing additional on-site detention so that peak flows do not increase.

<u>Application of WWHM in Re-developments Projects</u>

WWHM allows only forest or pasture as the predevelopment land condition in the Design Basin screen. This screen does not allow other types of land uses such as impervious and landscaped areas to be entered for existing condition. However, WWHM can be used for redevelopment projects by modeling the existing developed areas that are not subject to the flow control requirements of Volume I as off-site areas. For the purposes of predicting runoff from such an existing developed area, enter the existing area in the Off-site Inflow screen. This screen is designed to predict runoff from impervious and landscaped areas in addition to the forest and pasture areas. If the existing 100-year peak flow rate from the existing developed areas that are not subject to flow control is greater than 50% of the 100-year developed peak flow rate (undetained but subject to the flow control requirements of Volume I), then the runoff from the off-site area must not be allowed to flow to the on-site flow control facility.

7. PERLND and IMPLND parameter values.

In WWHM (and HSPF) pervious land categories are represented by PERLNDs; impervious land categories (EIA) by IMPLNDs. An example of a PERLND is a till soil covered with forest vegetation. This PERLND has a unique set of HSPF parameter values. For each PERLND there are 16 parameters that describe various hydrologic factors that influence runoff. These range from interception storage to infiltration to active ground water evapotranspiration. Only four parameters are required to represent IMPLND.

The PERLND and IMPLND parameter values to be used in the WWHM are listed below. These values are based on regional parameter values developed by the U.S. Geological Survey for watersheds in western Washington (Dinicola, 1990) plus additional HSPF modeling work conducted by AQUA TERRA Consultants.

PERLND Parameters

	TF	TP	TL	OF	OP	OL	SF	SP	SL
Name									
LZSN	4.5	4.5	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	4.0	4.0	4.0
INFILT	0.08	0.06	0.03	2.0	1.6	0.80	2.0	1.8	1.0
LSUR	400	400	400	400	400	400	100	100	100
SLSUR	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.10	0.001	0.001	0.001
KVARY	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.5	0.5	0.5
AGWRC	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996	0.996
INFEXP	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	10.0	10.0	10.0
INFILD	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0
BASETP	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0
AGWETP	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.7	0.7	0.7

CEPSC	0.20	0.15	0.10	0.20	0.15	0.10	0.18	0.15	0.10
UZSN	0.5	0.4	0.25	0.5	0.5	0.5	3.0	3.0	3.0
NSUR	0.35	0.30	0.25	0.35	0.30	0.25	0.50	0.50	0.50
INTFW	6.0	6.0	6.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
IRC	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7	0.7
LZETP	0.7	0.4	0.25	0.7	0.4	0.25	0.8	0.8	0.8

PERLND types:

TF = Till Forest
TP = Till Pasture
TL = Till Lawn
OF = Outwash Forest
OP = Outwash Pasture
OL = Outwash Lawn
SF = Saturated Forest
SP = Saturated Pasture
SL = Saturated Lawn

PERLND parameters:

LZSN = lower zone storage nominal (inches)
INFILT = infiltration capacity (inches/hour)
LSUR = length of surface overland flow plane (feet)
SLSUR = slope of surface overland flow plane (feet/feet)
KVARY = ground water exponent variable ($inch^{-1}$)
AGWRC = active ground water recession constant (day^{-1})
INFEXP = infiltration exponent
INFILD = ratio of maximum to mean infiltration
BASETP = base flow evapotranspiration (fraction)
AGWETP = active ground water evapotranspiration (fraction)
CEPSC = interception storage (inches)
UZSN = upper zone storage nominal (inches)
NSUR = roughness of surface overland flow plane (Manning's n)
INTFW = interflow index
IRC = interflow recession constant (day-1)
LZETP = lower zone evapotranspiration (fraction)

A more complete description of these PERLND parameters is found in the HSPF User Manual (Bicknell et al, 1997).

PERLND parameter values for other additional soil/vegetation categories will be investigated and added to the WWHM, as appropriate.

IMPLND Parameters

	EIA
Name	
LSUR	400
SLSUR	0.01
NSUR	0.10
RETSC	0.10

IMPLND parameters:

LSUR = length of surface overland flow plane (feet)
SLSUR = slope of surface overland flow plane (feet/feet)

NSUR = roughness of surface overland flow plane (Manning's n)
RETSC = retention storage (inches)

A more complete description of these IMPLND parameters is found in the HSPF User Manual (Bicknell et al, 1997).

The PERLND and IMPLND parameter values will be transparent to the general user. The advanced user will have the ability to change the value of a particular parameter for that specific site. However, the only PERLND and IMPLND parameters that are authorized to be adjusted by the user are LSUR, SLSUR, and NSUR. These are parameters whose values are observable at an undeveloped site, and whose values can be reasonably estimated for the proposed development site. Any such changes will be recorded in the WWHM output. The user should submit justifications for changes with their project submittal to the reviewing jurisdiction. Ecology will issue guidance within the WWHM Users Manual on the range of and methods for estimating acceptable parameter changes.

Earlier versions of WWHM (WWHM1 and WWHM2) provided only one category of moderate land slope (typically 5-15% slopes). In more recent versions of WWHM (WWHM3 and WWHM2012), two additional land categories have been added to account for the flat (0-5%) and steep (15-25%) land slopes.

Surface runoff and interflow will be computed based on the PERLND and IMPLND parameter values. Ground water flow can also be computed and added to the total runoff from a development if there is a reason to believe that ground water would be surfacing (such as where there is a cut in a slope). However, the default condition in WWHM assumes that no ground water flow from small catchments reaches the surface to become runoff. This is consistent with King County procedures (King County, 1998).

8. Guidance for flow-related standards.

Use flow-related standards to determine whether or not a proposed stormwater facility will provide a sufficient level of mitigation for the additional runoff from land development. Guidance is provided on the standards that must be met to comply with the Ecology Stormwater Management Manual.

There are three flow-related standards stated in Volume I: Minimum Requirement #5 – On-site Stormwater Management; Minimum Requirement #7 - Flow Control and Minimum Requirement #8 - Wetlands Protection.

Minimum Requirement #5 allows the user to demonstrate compliance with the LID Performance Standard of matching developed discharge durations to pre-developed durations for the range of pre-developed discharge rates from 8% of the 2-year peak flow to 50% of the 2-year peak flow. If the post-development flow duration values exceed any of the predevelopment flow levels between 8% and 50% of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow values, then the LID performance standard not been met.

Minimum Requirement #7 specifies that stormwater discharges to streams shall match developed discharge durations to predeveloped durations for the range of predeveloped discharge rates from 50% of the 2-year peak flow up to the full 50-year peak flow. In general, matching discharge durations between 50% of the 2-year and 50-year will result in matching the peak discharge rates in this range.

WWHM uses the predevelopment peak flow value for each water year to compute the predevelopment 2- through 100-year flow frequency values. The postdevelopment runoff 2- through 100-year flow frequency values are computed from the outlet of the proposed stormwater facility. The user must enter the stage-surface area-storage-discharge table (HSPF FTABLE) for the stormwater facility. The model then routes the postdevelopment runoff through the stormwater facility. As with the predevelopment peak flow values, the model will select the maximum developed flow value for each water year to compute the developed 2- through 100-year flow frequency.

The actual flow frequency calculations are made using the federal standard Log Pearson Type III distribution described in Bulletin 17B (United States Water Resources Council, 1981). This standard flow frequency distribution is provided in U.S. Geological Survey program J407, version 3.9A-P, revised 8/9/89. The Bulletin 17B algorithms in program J407 are included in the WWHM calculations.

Minimum Requirement #7 is based on flow duration. WWHM will use the entire predevelopment and post-development runoff record to compute flow duration. The standard requires that post-development runoff flows must not exceed the flow duration values of the predevelopment runoff between the predevelopment flow values of 50 percent of the 2-year flow and 100 percent of the 50-year flow.

Flow duration is computed by counting the number of flow values that exceed a specified flow level. The specified flow levels used by WWHM in the flow duration analysis are listed below.

1. 50% of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow.
2. 100% of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow.
3. 100% of the 50-year predevelopment peak flow.

In addition, flow durations are computed for 97 other incremental flow values between 50 percent of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow and 100 percent of the 50-year predevelopment peak flow.

There are three criteria by which flow duration values are compared:

1. If the postdevelopment flow duration values exceed any of the predevelopment flow levels between 50% and 100% of the 2-year predevelopment peak flow values (100 Percent Threshold) then the flow duration requirement has not been met.
2. If the postdevelopment flow duration values exceed any of the predevelopment flow levels between 100% of the 2-year and 100% of the 50-year predevelopment peak flow values more than 10 percent of the time (110 Percent Threshold) then the flow duration requirement has not been met.
3. If more than 50 percent of the flow duration levels exceed the 100 percent threshold then the flow duration requirement has not been met.

The results are provided in the WWHM report.

Minimum Requirement #8 specifies that total discharges to wetlands must not deviate by more than 20% on daily basis, and must not deviate by more than 15% on monthly basis. Flow components feeding the wetland under both Pre-and Post-development scenarios are assumed to be the sum of the surface, interflow, and ground water flows from the project site. The WWHM is being revised to more easily allow this comparison.

References for Western Washington Hydrology Model

Beyerlein, D.C. 1996. Effective Impervious Area: The Real Enemy. Presented at the Impervious Surface Reduction Research Symposium, The Evergreen State College. Olympia, WA.

Bicknell, B.R., J.C. Imhoff, J.L. Kittle Jr, A.S. Donigian Jr, and R.C. Johanson. 1997. Hydrological Simulation Program – Fortran User's Manual for Version 11. EPA/600/R-97/080. National Exposure Research Laboratory. Office of Research and Development. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Research Triangle Park, NC.

Dinicola, R.S. 1990. Characterization and Simulation of Rainfall-Runoff Relations for Headwater Basins in Western King and Snohomish Counties, Washington. Water-Resources Investigations Report 89-4052. U.S. Geological Survey. Tacoma, WA.

King County. 1998. Surface Water Design Manual. Department of Natural Resources. Seattle, WA.

United States Water Resources Council. 1981. Guidelines for Determining Flood Flow Frequency. Bulletin #17B of the Hydrology Committee. Washington, DC.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix III-C Washington State Department of Ecology Low Impact Development Flow Modeling Guidance

Note – The modeling guidance in this section was developed for use with an earlier version of WWHM, WWHM3. Since then, WWHM has been updated to incorporate direct modeling of some LID techniques in WWHM2012 to better represent how they would function to reduce surface runoff. The new LID elements include Permeable Pavement, Green Roof, and Bio-retention discussed in Part 2 of this Appendix.

The Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) requires the use of the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM) and other approved runoff models (currently approved alternative models are the King County Runoff Time Series and MGS Flood) for estimating surface runoff and sizing stormwater control and treatment facilities. Part 1 of this appendix explains how to represent various LID techniques within WWHM 3 so that their benefit in reducing surface runoff can be estimated. The lower runoff estimates should translate into smaller stormwater treatment and flow control facilities. In certain cases, use of various techniques can result in the elimination of those facilities.

As Puget Sound gains more experience with and knowledge of LID techniques, the design criteria will evolve. Also, our ability to model their performance will change as our modeling techniques improve. Therefore, we anticipate this guidance will be updated periodically to reflect the new knowledge and modeling approaches.

One such update should be available later this year (2012). The updated guidance will explain modeling techniques to be used with the latest publicly available version of the WWHM (tentative name: WWHM 2012). A summary of the modeling techniques planned for WWHM 2012 is included as Part 2 in this appendix. Because WWHM 2012 and the updated LID modeling guidance won't be released until later this year, municipal stormwater permittees are not obligated to require its use during the 2013-2018 permit term. However, because WWHM 2012 will make modeling LID developments easier and more technically accurate; and because it will include a number of other updates and improvements (e.g., updated rainfall files), Ecology will encourage its use. We anticipate that most local governments will choose to require its use or an equivalent program (e.g., an updated MGS Flood) once they are readily available. Ecology intends to make sure that sufficient training opportunities are available on WWHM 2012, so that municipal staff and designers have adequate opportunity to become familiar with it prior to the deadlines in the municipal permits for adopting and applying updated stormwater requirements.

In previous editions of the manual, Appendix III-C included a summary of design criteria for each LID BMP. The reader is now directed to Volume V for those design criteria.

Part 1: Guidance for Use with WWHM 3

C.1 Permeable Pavements

C.1.1 Porous Asphalt or Concrete

Description	Model Surface as
1. Base material laid above surrounding grade:	
a) Without underlying perforated drain pipes to collect stormwater	Grass over underlying soil type (till or outwash)
b) With underlying perforated drain pipes for stormwater collection:	
at or below bottom of base layer	Impervious surface
elevated within the base course	Impervious surface
2. Base material laid partially or completely below surrounding grade:	
a) Without underlying perforated drain pipes underlying soil type	Option 1: Grass over Option 2: Impervious surface routed to a Gravel Trench/Bed[1]
b) With underlying perforated drain pipes:	
at or below bottom of base layer	Impervious surface
elevated within the base course[2]	Model as impervious surface routed to a Gravel Trench/Bed[1]

C.1.2 Grid/lattice systems (non-concrete) and Paving Blocks

Description	Model Surface as
1. Base material laid above surrounding grade	
a) Without underlying perforated drain pipes	Grid/lattice systems: grass on underlying soil (till or outwash). Paving Blocks: 50% grass on underlying soil; 50% impervious.
b) With underlying perforated drain pipes	Impervious surface

[1] See section C.11 for detailed instructions concerning how to represent the base material below grade as a gravel trench/bed in the Western Washington Hydrology Model.

[2] If the perforated pipes function is to distribute runoff directly below the wearing surface, and the pipes are above the surrounding grade, follow the directions for 2a above.

2. Base material laid partially or completely below surrounding grade

a) Without underlying perforated drain pipes	Option 1: Grid/lattice as grass on underlying soil. Paving blocks as 50% grass; 50% impervious. Option 2: Impervious surface routed to a Gravel Trench/Bed.[1]
b) With underlying perforated drain pipes	
at or below bottom of base layer	Impervious surface
elevated within the base course[2]	Model as impervious surface routed to a Gravel Trench/Bed.[1]

C.2 Dispersion

C.2.1 Full Dispersion for the Entire Development Site

Residential Developments that implement BMP T5.30 do not have to use approved runoff models to demonstrate compliance. They are assumed to fully meet the treatment and flow control requirements.

C.2.2 Full Dispersion for Part of the Development Site

Those portions of residential developments that implement BMP T5.30 do not have to use approved runoff models to demonstrate compliance. They are assumed to fully meet the treatment and flow control requirements.

C.2.3 Partial Dispersion on residential lots and commercial buildings

If roof runoff is dispersed on single-family lots or commercial lots according to the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B of Volume III, through undisturbed native landscape or lawn/landscape area that meets the guidelines in BMP T5.13, the user has two options.

Option 1: The roof area may be modeled as landscaped area if the vegetated flow path is 50 feet or more. In WWHM this can be done on the Mitigated Scenario screen by entering the roof area into one of the entry options for dispersal of impervious area runoff. Alternatively, in WWHM, this can be done by entering the roof area as landscaped area with the appropriate landscaped slope. Where the flow path is between 25 and 50 feet and a dispersion trench is used, the roof area may be modeled as 50% landscape/50% impervious. Do this in WWHM on the Mitigated Scenario screen by entering 50% of the roof area as impervious and the other 50% as landscaped area.

Option #2: Use the lateral flow basin elements in WWHM for dispersing runoff from the roof area on the landscaped area. In this option, the “Impervious Lateral Basin” element/icon is used to represent the roof area(s). That element/icon is then connected to a “Pervious Lateral Basin” icon that represents the pervious area into which the roof is being dispersed. The user must direct Surface Flow from the Impervious Lateral Basin (roof area) to the “Surface” Flow of the Pervious Lateral Basin (landscaped area). Then, the user should direct surface runoff and interflow from the Pervious Lateral Basin to a treatment system, retention/detention basin, or directly to a point of compliance.

Whether option #1 or #2 is used, the vegetated flow path is measured from the downspout or dispersion system discharge point to the downgradient edge of the vegetated area. That flow path must be at least 50 feet unless a dispersion trench per BMP T5.10B is used with a vegetated flow path of 25 to 50 feet.

Where BMP T5.11 (concentrated flow dispersion) or BMP T5.12 (sheet flow dispersion) of Volume V – Chapter 5 is used to disperse runoff from impervious areas other than roofs into a native vegetation area or an area that meets the guidelines in BMP T5.13 of Volume V – Chapter 5, the same two options as described above are available. The user may model the impervious area as landscaped area (50 feet or more of vegetated flow path), 50% landscape/50% impervious (25 to 50 feet of vegetated flow path), or the lateral flow element/icons may be used. As above, the vegetated flow path from the dispersal point to the downgradient edge of the vegetated area must be at least 50 feet, unless a dispersion trench (see BMP 5.10B) is used with a vegetated flow path of 25 to 50 feet.

C.3 Downspout Full Infiltration

Roof areas served by downspouts that drain to infiltration dry wells or infiltration trenches that are sized in accordance with the guidance in BMP T5.10A do not have to be entered into the runoff model. They are assumed to fully infiltrate the roof runoff.

C.4 Vegetated Roofs

C.4.1 Option 1 Design Criteria

- 3 inches to 8 inches of soil/growing media

Runoff Model Representation

- 50% till landscaped area; 50% impervious area

C.4.2 Option 2 Design Criteria

- $\geq$ 8 inches of soil/media

Runoff Model Representation

- 50% till pasture; 50% impervious area

C.5 Rainwater Harvesting

Do not enter drainage area into the runoff model.

Note: This applies only to drainage areas for which a monthly water balance indicates no overflow of the storage capacity.

C.6 Reverse Slope Sidewalks

- Enter sidewalk area as landscaped area over the underlying soil type.
- Alternatively, use the “lateral flow” icons. Use the “Lateral Flow Impervious Area” icon for the sidewalk, and use the “Lateral Flow Basin” icon for the downgradient vegetated area.

C.7 Minimal Excavation Foundations

- Where residential roof runoff is dispersed on the upgradient side of a structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B of Volume III – Chapter 3, the tributary roof area may be modeled as pasture on the native soil.
- In "step forming," the building area is terraced in cuts of limited depth. This results in a series of level plateaus on which to erect the form boards. Where "step forming" is used on a slope, the square footage of roof that can be modeled as pasture must be reduced to account for lost soils. The following equation (suggested by Rick Gagliano of Pin Foundations, Inc.) can be used to reduce the roof area that can be modeled as pasture.

$$A_1 - \frac{dC(.5)}{dP} \times A_1 = A_2$$

A_1 = roof area draining to up gradient side of structure

dC = depth of cuts into the soil profile

dP = permeable depth of soil (The A horizon plus an additional few inches of the B horizon where roots permeate into ample pore space of soil).

A_2 = roof area that can be modeled as pasture on the native soil. The rest of the roof is modeled as impervious surface unless it is dispersed in accordance with the next bullet.

- If roof runoff is dispersed downgradient of the structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B of Volume III – Chapter 3, AND there is at least 50 feet of vegetated flow path through native material or lawn/landscape area that meets the guidelines in BMP T5.13 of Volume V – Chapter 5, the tributary roof areas may be modeled as landscaped area. Alternatively, use the lateral flow elements to send roof runoff onto the lawn/landscape area that will be used for dispersion.

C.8 Tree Retention and Planting

C.8.1 Tree Retention Flow Control Credit

Flow control credits for retained trees are provided in Table C.1 by tree type. These credits can be applied to reduce impervious or other hard surface area requiring flow control. Credits are given as a percentage of the existing tree canopy area. The minimum credit for existing trees ranges from 50 to 100 square feet.

Table C.1
Flow Control Credits for Retained Trees.

Tree Type	Credit
Evergreen	20% of canopy area (minimum of 100 sq. ft./tree
Deciduous	10% of canopy area (minimum of 50 sq. ft./tree

Impervious Area Mitigated = Σ Canopy Area x Credit (%)/100.

Tree credits are not applicable to trees in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control credit. Credits are also not applicable to trees in planter boxes. The total tree credit for retained and newly planted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of impervious or other hard surface requiring mitigation.

C.8.2 Newly Planted Tree Flow Control Credits

Flow control credits for newly planted trees are provided in Table C.2 by tree type. These credits can be applied to reduce the impervious or other hard surface area requiring flow control. Credits range from 20 to 50 square feet per tree.

Table C.2.
Flow Control Credits for Newly Planted Trees.

Tree Type	Credit
Evergreen	50 sq. ft. per tree
Deciduous	20 sq. ft. per tree

Impervious Area Mitigated = Σ Number of Trees x Credit (sq. ft.).

Tree credits are not applicable to trees in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control credit. Credits are also not applicable to trees in planter boxes. The total tree credit for retained and newly planted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of impervious or other hard surface requiring mitigation.

C.9 Soil Quality and Depth

All areas that meet the soil quality and depth requirement may be entered into the model as pasture rather than lawn/landscaping.

C.10. Bioretention

C.10.1 Runoff Model Representation

Pothole design (bioretention cells)

Bioretention is represented by using the "Gravel trench/bed" icon with a steady-state infiltration rate. Proper infiltration rate selection is described below. The user inputs the dimensions of the gravel trench. Layer 1 on the input screen is the bioretention soil layer. Enter the soil depth and a porosity of 40%. Layer 2 is the free standing water above the bioretention soil. Enter the maximum depth of free standing water (i.e., up to the invert of an overflow pipe or a spillway, whatever engages first for surface release of water), and 100% for porosity. Bioretention with underlying perforated drain pipes that discharge to the surface can also be modeled as gravel trenches/beds with steady-state infiltration rates. However, the only volume available for storage (and modeled as storage as explained herein) is the void space within the imported material (usually sand or gravel) below the bioretention soil and below the invert of the drain pipe.

Using one of the procedures explained in Volume III - Chapter 3 of this manual, estimate the initial measured (a.k.a., short-term) infiltration rate of the native soils beneath the bioretention soil and any base materials. Because these soils are protected from fouling, no correction factor will be applied.

Facilities without an underdrain:

If using the default bioretention soil mix from Chapter 7 of Volume V, 12 inches per hour is the initial infiltration rate. The long-term rate is either 3inches per hour or 6 inches per hour depending upon the size of the drainage area, and the use of a pretreatment device for solids removal prior to the bioretention facility. See Chapter 7 of Volume V. If using a custom imported soil mix other than the default, its saturated hydraulic conductivity (used as the infiltration rate) must be determined using the procedures described in Chapter 7 of Volume V. The long-term infiltration rate is one-fourth or one-half of that rate depending upon the size of the drainage area and the use of a pretreatment device for solids removal. See Chapter 7 of Volume V.

Facilities with an elevated underdrain:

Note that only the estimated void space of the aggregate bedding layer that is below the invert of the underdrain pipe provides storage volume that provides a flow control benefit. Assume a 40% void volume for the Type 26 mineral aggregate specificed in Chapter 7 of Volume V.

<u>Linear Design: (bioretention swale or slopes)</u>

Swales

Where a swale design has a roadside slope and a back slope between which water can pond due to an elevated, and an overflow/drainage pipe at the lower end of the swale, the swale may be modeled as a gravel trench/bed with a steady state infiltration rate. This method does not apply to swales that are underlain by a drainage pipe.

If the long-term infiltration rate through the imported bioretention soil is lower than the infiltration rate of the underlying soil, the surface dimensions and slopes of the swale should be entered into the WWHM as the trench dimensions and slopes. The effective depth is the distance from the soil surface at the bottom of the swale to the invert of the overflow/drainage pipe. If the infiltration rate through the underlying soil is lower than the estimated long-term infiltration rate through the imported bioretention soil, the trench/bed dimensions entered into the WWHM should be adjusted to account for the storage volume in the void space of the bioretention soil. Use 40 percent porosity for bioretention planting mix soils recommended above for Layer 1 in WWHM.

This procedure to estimate storage space should only be used on bioretention swales with a 1% slope or less. Swales with higher slopes should more accurately compute the storage volume in the swale below the drainage pipe invert.

For a swale design with an underdrain, the directions above under Pothole design apply.

C.10.2 WWHM Routing and Runoff File Evaluation

In WWHM3, all infiltrating facilities must have an overflow riser to model overflows that occur should the available storage be exceeded. So in the Riser/Weir screen, for the Riser head enter a value slightly smaller than the effective depth of the trench (say 0.1 ft below the Effective Depth); and for the Riser diameter enter a large number (say 10,000 inches) to ensure that there is ample capacity for overflows. The overflow should be routed to the point of compliance or a downstream facility. If the facility is underdrained, the underdrain must be similarly routed.

Within the model, route the runoff into the gravel trench by grabbing the gravel trench icon and placing it below the tributary “basin” area. Be sure to include the surface area of the bioretention area in the tributary “basin” area. Run the model to produce the effluent runoff file from the theoretical gravel trench. For projects subject to the flow control standard, compare the flow duration graph of that runoff file to the target pre-developed runoff file for compliance with the flow duration standard. If the standard is not achieved a downstream retention or detention facility must be sized (using the WWHM standard procedures) and located in the field. A conveyance system should be designed to route all overflows from the bioretention areas to centralized treatment facilities, and to flow control facilities if flow control applies to the project.

C.10.3 Modeling of Multiple Bioretention facilities

Where multiple bioretention facilities are scattered throughout a development, it may be possible to cumulatively represent a group of them that have similar characteristics as one large bioretention facility serving the cumulative area tributary to those facilities. For this to be a reasonable representation, the design of each bioretention facility in the group should be similar (e.g., same depth of soil, same depth of surface ponded water, roughly the same ratio of impervious area to bioretention volume). In addition, the group should have similar (0.5x to 1.5x the average) controlling infiltration rates (i.e., either the long-term rate of the bioretention soil, or the initial rate of the underlying soil) that can be averaged as a single rate.

C.11 WWHM Instructions for Estimating Runoff Losses in Road Base Material Volumes that are Below Surrounding Grade

Introduction

This section applies to roads or parking lots that have been constructed with a permeable pavement and whose underlying base materials extend below the surrounding grade of land. The over-excavated volume can temporarily store water before it infiltrates or overflows to the surrounding ground surface. This section describes design criteria and modeling approaches for such designs.

Pre-requisite

Before using this guidance to estimate infiltration losses, the designer should have sufficient information to know whether adequate depth to a seasonal high ground water table, or other infiltration barrier (such as bedrock) is available. The minimum depth necessary is 3 feet as measured from the bottom of the base materials.

C.11.1 Instructions for Roads on Zero to 2% Grade

For road projects whose base materials extend below the surrounding grade, the below grade volume of base materials may be modeled in WWHM as a Gravel trench/bed with a set infiltration rate. The pervious pavement area is entered as a basin with an equivalent amount of impervious area that is routed to the gravel trench/bed. If an underdrain is installed at the bottom of the base materials, the pavement is modeled as impervious surface without a gravel trench.

First, place a “basin” icon in the “Schematic” grid. Enter the appropriate pre-developed and post-developed descriptions of your project site (or threshold discharge area of the project site). Assume that your pervious pavement surfaces are impervious surfaces. By placing a Gravel trench/bed icon below the basin icon in the Schematic grid, we are routing the runoff from the road and any other tributary area into the below grade volume that is represented by the Gravel trench/bed.

Enter the dimensions of the Gravel trench/bed: the length of the base materials that are below grade (parallel to the road); the width of the below grade material volume; and the depth. The available storage is the void volume in the gravel base layer below the pervious pavement. Enter the void ratio for the gravel base in the Layer 1 field. For example, for a project with a gravel base of 32% porosity, enter 0.32 for the Layer 1 porosity. If the below grade base course has perforated drainage pipes elevated above the bottom of the base course, but below the elevation of the surrounding ground surface, the "Layer 1 Thickness" is the distance from the invert of the lowest pipe to the bottom of the base course.

Also in WWHM3, the Gravel trench/bed facilities must have an overflow riser to model overflows that occur should the available storage get exceeded. So for the "Riser Height", enter a value slightly smaller than the effective depth of the base materials (say 0.1 ft below the Effective Total Depth); and for the "Riser Diameter" enter a large value (say 10,000 inches) to ensure that there is ample capacity should overflows from the trench occur.

For all infiltration facilities, WWHM3 has a button that asks, "Use Wetted Surface Area?" The answer should remain "NO."

Using one of the procedures explained in Chapter 3, estimate the initial measured (a.k.a., short-term) infiltration rate of the native soils beneath the base materials. Enter that into the "measured infiltration rate" field. For the Infiltration Reduction Factor, enter 0.5.

Run the model to produce the overflow runoff file from the gravel trench. Compare the flow duration graph of that runoff file to the target pre-developed runoff file for compliance with the flow duration standard. If the standard is not achieved a downstream retention or detention facility must be sized (using the WWHM standard procedures) and located in the field. Design the road base materials to direct any water that does not infiltrate into a conveyance system that leads to the retention or detention facility.

C.11.2 Instructions for Roads on Grades above 2%

Road base material volumes that are below the surrounding grade and that are on a slope can be modeled as a gravel trench with an infiltration rate and a nominal depth. Represent the below grade volume as the gravel trench. Grab the gravel trench icon and place it below the "basin" icon so that the computer model routes all of the runoff into the gravel trench.

The dimensions of the gravel trench are: the length (parallel to and beneath the road) of the base materials that are below grade; the width of the below grade base materials; and an Effective Total Depth of 1 inch. In WWHM3, all infiltrating facilities must have an overflow riser to model overflows that occur should the available storage get exceeded. So, enter 0.04 ft (½ inch) for the "Riser Height" and a large Riser Diameter (say 1000 inches) to ensure that there is no head build up.

Note: If a drainage pipe is embedded and elevated in the below grade base materials, the pipe should only have perforations on the lower half (below the spring line) or near the invert. Pipe volume and trench volume above the pipe invert cannot be assumed as available storage space. If a drainage pipe is placed at the bottom of the base material, the pavement is modeled as an impervious surface without any gravel trench.

Estimate the infiltration rate of the native soils beneath the base materials. See the previous section (Instructions for Roads on Zero to 2% Grade) for estimating options and for how to enter infiltration rates and infiltration reduction factors for the gravel trench. In the "Material Layers" field, enter ½ inch for Layer 1 Thickness and its appropriate porosity. For all infiltration facilities, WWHM3 has a button that asks, "Use Wetted Surface Area?" The answer should remain "NO."

Run the model to produce the effluent runoff file from the gravel trench (base materials). Compare the flow duration graph of that runoff file to the target pre-developed runoff file for compliance with the flow duration standard. If the standard is not achieved a downstream retention or detention facility must be sized (using the WWHM standard procedures) and located in the field. The road base materials should be designed to direct any water that does not infiltrate into a conveyance system that leads to the retention or detention facility.

C.11.3 Instructions for Roads on a Slope with Internal Dams within the Base Materials that are Below Grade

In this option, a series of infiltration basins is created by placing relatively impermeable barriers across the below grade base materials at intervals downslope. The barriers inhibit the free flow of water down the grade of the base materials. The barriers must not extend to the elevation of the surrounding ground. Provide a space sufficient to pass water from upgradient to lower gradient basins without causing flows to surface out the sides of the base materials that are above grade.

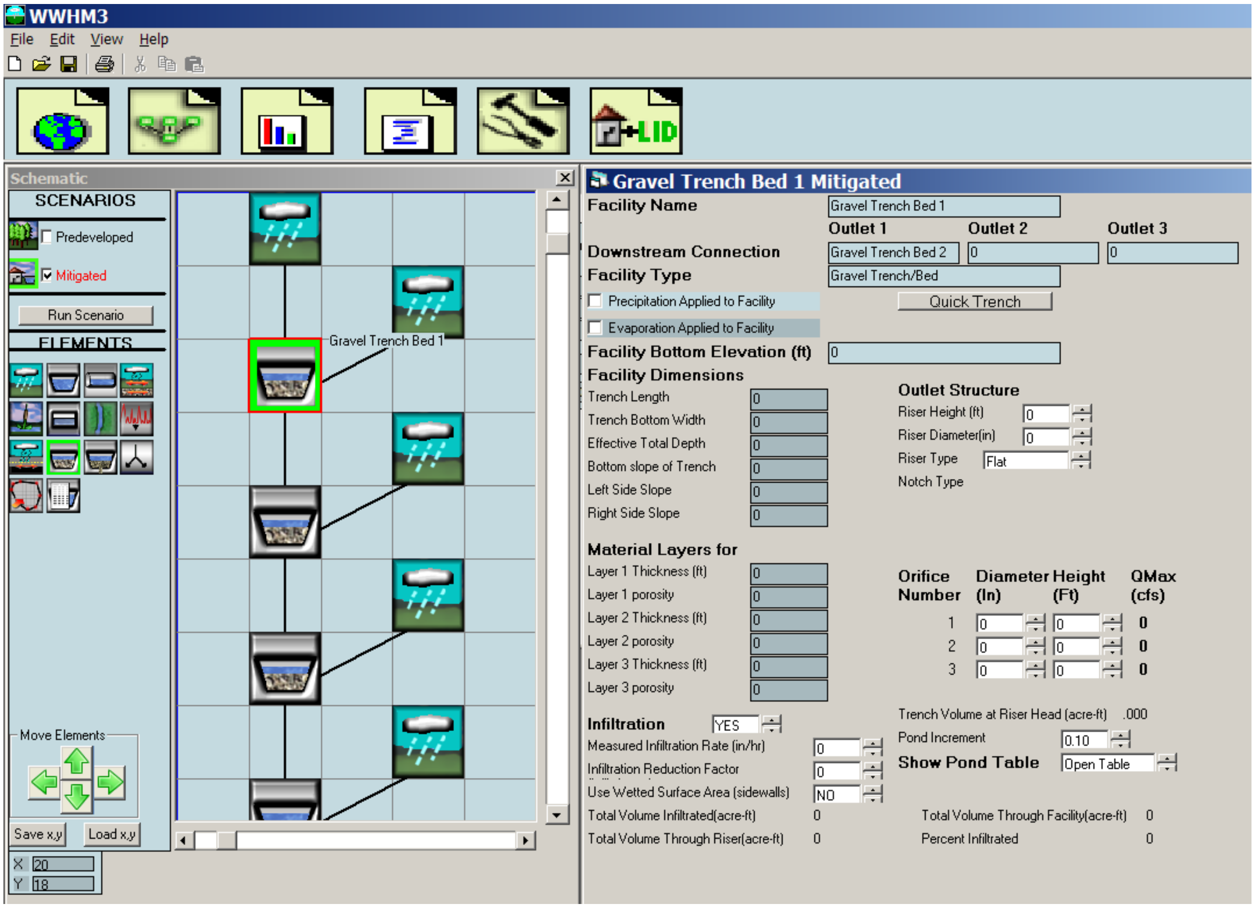
Each stretch of trench (cell) that is separated by barriers can be modeled as a gravel trench. This is done by placing the "Gravel trench/bed" icons in series in WWHM. For each cell, determine the average depth of water within the cell (Average Cell Depth) at which the barrier at the lower end will be overtopped.

Specify the dimensions of each cell of the below-grade base materials using the "Gravel trench/bed" dimension fields for: the "Trench Length" (length of the cell parallel to the road); the "Trench Bottom Width"(width of the bottom of the base material); and the Effective Total Depth (the Average Cell Depth as determined above).

Also in WWHM3, all infiltrating facilities must have an overflow riser to model overflows that occur should the available storage get exceeded. For each trench cell, the available storage is the void space within the Average Cell Depth. WWHM calculates the storage/void volume of the trench cell using the porosity values entered in the "Layer porosity" fields. The value for the "***Riser Height***" should be slightly below the "Effective Total Depth" (say by about 1/8" to ¼"). For the ***Riser diameter***, enter a large number (say 10,000 inches) to ensure that there is ample capacity should overflows from the below-grade trench occur.

Each cell should have its own tributary drainage area that includes the road above it, any project site pervious areas whose runoff drains onto and through the road, and any off-site areas. Each drainage area is represented with a "basin" icon.

Below is the computer graphic representation of a series of Gravel trench/beds and the Basins that flow into them.



It is possible to represent a series of cells as one infiltration basin (using a single gravel trench icon) if the cells all have similar length and width dimensions, slope, and Average Cell Depth. A single "basin" icon is also used to represent all of the drainage area into the series of cells.

On the Gravel Trench screen under "Infiltration", there is a field that asks the following "Use Wetted Surface Area?" By default, it is set to "NO". It should stay "NO" if the below-grade base material trench has sidewalls steeper than 2 horizontal to 1 vertical.

Using the procedures explained above for roads on zero grade, estimate the infiltration rate of the native soils beneath the trench. Also as explained above, enter the appropriate values into the "Measured Infiltration Rate" and "Infiltration Reduction Factor" boxes.

Run the model to produce the effluent runoff file from the below grade trench of base materials. Compare the flow duration graph of that runoff file to the target pre-developed runoff file for compliance with the flow duration standard. If the standard is not achieved size a downstream retention or detention facility (using the WWHM standard procedures) and locate it in the field. Design the road base materials to direct any water that does not infiltrate into a conveyance system that leads to the retention or detention facility.

Part 2: Summary of WWHM 2012 Representation of LID BMPs

Downspout Dispersion – BMP T5.10B

Where BMP T5.10B – Downspout Dispersion - is used to disperse runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets BMP T5.13 – Soil Quality and Depth, and the vegetated flow path is at least 50 feet, the connected roof area should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area. Do this in WWHM on the Mitigated Scenario screen by connecting the dispersed impervious area to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element representing the area that will be used for dispersion.

Ecology may develop guidance for representing multiple downspout dispersions in a project site. If such guidance is not forthcoming, in situations where multiple downspout dispersions will occur, Ecology may allow the roof area to be modeled as a landscaped area (where the 50 foot flowpath requirement is met), or as 50% landscape/50% lawn (where a gravel trench is used to disperse into a vegetated area with a 25 to 50 foot flowpath) so that the project schematic in WWHM becomes manageable.

Concentrated Flow Dispersion – BMP T5.11

Where BMP T5.11- Concentrated Flow Dispersion - is used to disperse impervious area runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets BMP T5.13 – Soil Quality and Depth, and the vegetated flow path is at least 50 feet, the impervious area should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area. Do this in WWHM on the Mitigated Scenario screen by connecting the dispersed impervious area to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element representing the area that will be used for dispersion.

Ecology may develop guidance for representing multiple concentrated flow dispersions in a project site. If such guidance is not forthcoming, in situations where multiple concentrated flow dispersions will occur, Ecology may allow the impervious area to be modeled as a landscaped area so that the project schematic in WWHM becomes manageable.

Sheet Flow Dispersion – BMP T5.12

Where BMPT5.12 – Sheet Flow Dispersion - is used to disperse impervious area runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets BMP T5.13 – Soil Quality and Depth, the impervious area should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area. Do this in WWHM on the Mitigated Scenario screen by connecting the dispersed impervious area to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element representing the area that will be used for dispersion.

Ecology may develop guidance for representing multiple sheet flow dispersions in a project site. If such guidance is not forthcoming, in situations where multiple sheet flow dispersions will occur, Ecology may allow the impervious area to be modeled as a landscaped area so that the project schematic in WWHM becomes manageable.

Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth – BMP T5.13

Enter area as pasture

Bioretention – BMP T7.30

Use new bioretention element for each type: cell, swale, or planter box.

The equations used by the elements are intended to simulate the wetting and drying of soil as well as how the soils function once they are saturated. This group of LID elements uses the modified Green Ampt equation to compute the surface infiltration into the amended soil. The water then moves through the top amended soil layer at the computed rate, determined by Darcy's and Van Genuchten's equations. As the soil approaches field capacity (i.e., gravity head is greater than matric head), the model determines when water will begin to infiltrate into the second soil layer (lower layer). This occurs when the matric head is less than the gravity head in the first layer (top layer). The second layer is intended to prevent loss of the amended soil layer. As the second layer approaches field capacity, the water begins to move into the third layer – the gravel underlayer. For each layer, the user inputs the depth of the layer and the type of soil.

For the Ecology-recommended soil specifications for each layer in the design criteria for bioretention, the model will automatically assign pre-determined appropriate values for parameters that determine water movement through that soil. These include: wilting point, minimum hydraulic conductivity, maximum saturated hydraulic conductivity, and Van Genuchten number.

If a user opts to use soils that deviate from the recommended specifications, the default parameter values do not apply. The user will have to use the Gravel Trench element to represent the bioretention facility and follow the procedures identified for WWHM3.

For Bioretention with underlying perforated drain pipes that discharge to the surface, the only volume available for storage (and modeled as storage as explained herein) is the void space within the aggregate bedding layer below the invert of the drain pipe. Use 40% void space for the Type 26 mineral aggregate specified in Chapter 7 of Volume V.

Using one of the procedures explained in Volume III - Chapter 3 of this manual, estimate the initial measured (a.k.a., short-term) infiltration rate of the native soils beneath the bioretention soil and any base materials. Because these soils are protected from fouling, no correction factor will be applied.

Permeable Pavements – BMP T5.15

Use new porous pavement element.

User specifies pavement thickness & porosity, aggregate base material thickness & porosity, maximum allowed ponding depth & infiltration rate into native soil. For grades greater than 2%, see additional guidance under the WWHM3 section.

Vegetated Roofs – BMP T5.17

Use new green roof element

User specifies media thickness, vegetation type, roof slope, and length of drainage.

Impervious Reverse Slope Sidewalks – BMP T5.18

Use the lateral flow elements to send the impervious area runoff onto the lawn/landscape area that will be used for dispersion.

Ecology may develop guidance for representing multiple impervious reverse slope sidewalks in a project site. If such guidance is not forthcoming, in situations where multiple impervious reverse slop sidewalks will occur, Ecology may allow the impervious area to be modeled as a landscaped area so that the project schematic in WWHM becomes manageable.

Minimal Excavation Foundations – BMP T5.19

- Where residential roof runoff is dispersed on the up gradient side of a structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B, the tributary roof area may be modeled as pasture on the native soil.
- In "step forming," the building area is terraced in cuts of limited depth. This results in a series of level plateaus on which to erect the form boards. Where "step forming" is used on a slope, the square footage of roof that can be modeled as pasture must be reduced to account for lost soils. The following equation (suggested by Rick Gagliano of Pin Foundations, Inc.) can be used to reduce the roof area that can be modeled as pasture.

$$A_1 - \frac{dC(.5)}{dP} \times A_1 = A_2$$

A_1 = roof area draining to up gradient side of structure

dC = depth of cuts into the soil profile

dP = permeable depth of soil (The A horizon plus an additional few inches of the B horizon where roots permeate into ample pore space of soil).

A_2 = roof area that can be modeled as pasture on the native soil. The rest of the roof is modeled as impervious surface unless it is dispersed in accordance with the next bullet.

- If roof runoff is dispersed down gradient of the structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B, AND there is at least 50 feet of vegetated flow path through native material or lawn/landscape area that meets the guidelines in BMP T5.13, the tributary roof areas should be modeled as a lateral flow impervious area. This is done in WWHM on the Mitigated Scenario screen by connecting the dispersed impervious area to the lawn/landscape lateral flow soil basin element representing the area that will be used for dispersion.

  Ecology may develop guidance for representing multiple downspout dispersions in a project site. If such guidance is not forthcoming, in situations where multiple downspout (down gradient) dispersions will occur, Ecology may allow the roof area to be modeled as a landscaped area so that the project schematic in WWHM becomes manageable.

Full dispersion – BMP T5.30

Full downspout infiltration – BMP T5.10A

Rainwater Harvesting – BMP T5.20

If BMP design criteria are followed, the area draining to the three BMPs listed immediately above is not entered into the runoff model.

Newly planted trees – BMP T5.16

Retained trees – BMP T5.16

If BMP design criteria are followed, the total impervious/hard surface areas entered into the runoff model may be reduced by an amount indicated in the criteria for the tree BMPs listed immediately above.

Perforated Stub-out Connection – BMP T5.10C

Any flow reduction is variable and unpredictable. No computer modeling techniques are allowed that would predict any reduction in flow rates and volumes from the connected area.

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume IV
Source Control BMPs

Prepared by:

Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

December 2014

Publication No. 14-10-055
(A revision of Publication No. 12-10-030)

Acknowledgements

The Washington State Department of Ecology (Ecology) gratefully acknowledges the valuable time, comments, and expertise provided by the people listed below who contributed to the 2012 revision of Vol. IV of the Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (SWMMWW). Ecology is solely responsible for any errors, omissions, and final decisions related to the 2012 SWMMWW.

Name	**Affiliation**
Mieke Hoppin	City of Tacoma
Nancy Kmet	Ecology
Peter Kmet	Ecology
Jeff Killelea	Ecology
Jim McCauley	Ecology
Doug Navetski	King County
Marc Pacifico	Ecology
John Schmidt	Snohomish County
Marni Solheim	Ecology
Ellen Stewart	Seattle Public Utilities
Alan Sugino	Boeing
Robert Wright	Ecology

Ecology Technical Lead

Daniel S. Gariépy, P.E. – 2012 edit
Douglas C. Howie, P.E. – 2012 edit

Technical Review and Editing

Kathleen Emmett – 2012 edit
Carrie A. Graul – 2012 edit
Julie Robertson – 2012 edit
Kelsey Highfill – 2012 edit

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 1 - Introduction

1.1 Purpose of this Volume

This volume provides guidance for selecting source control Best Management Practices (BMPs) to meet Minimum Requirement #3, in Volume I. Best Management Practices (BMPs) means schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, and other physical, structural, and/or managerial practices that prevent or reduce the release of pollutants and other adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. BMPs can be used singularly or in combination.

Stormwater source control BMPs focus on preventing stormwater pollution from occurring. As opposed to other BMP types that attempt to reduce the volume, timing, or existing pollution in stormwater flows (refer to volumes II, III, V).

Facilities covered under Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit, Boatyard General Permit, or Sand and Gravel General Permit should also consult this volume to identify applicable (mandatory) and recommended operational and structural BMPs. All three permits require permittees to develop and implement Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs). Industrial SWPPPs and Boatyard SWPPPs must include Operational Source Control BMPs and Structural Source Control BMPs listed as "applicable" in this volume.

Applying the source control BMPs in this volume can also help local governments and business control urban sources of conventional and toxic pollutants in stormwater (see Appendix IV-B) and aid them in meeting State water quality standards to protect beneficial uses of receiving waters.

Local governments may require commercial, industrial, and multifamily properties to use the source control BMPs in this volume through ordinances or other documents.

1.2 Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume IV of the stormwater manual contains two chapters. Chapter 1 serves as an introduction and provides descriptions of operational and structural source control BMPs. It distinguishes between applicable (mandatory) BMPs, and recommended BMPs. It describes the relationship between the source control BMPs in this volume and regulatory requirements.

In Chapter 2, Section 2.1 presents operational BMPs that are generally appropriate for commercial and industrial establishments. Section 2.2 contains operational and structural BMPs designed to address specific types of pollutant sources.

The appendices in this volume contain additional information on selected topics. In particular, Appendix IV-A lists common pollutant sources associated with specific businesses and public agencies.

1.3 How to Use this Volume

Use this volume to select specific BMPs for source control for inclusion in Permanent Stormwater Control Plans (as required in Volume I, Section 3.1.5).

Operators under Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit, Boatyard General Permit, or Sand and Gravel General Permit should use this volume to identify applicable (mandatory) and recommended operational and structural source control BMPs for inclusion in their Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs).

Operators of commercial, industrial, and multifamily properties not under an Ecology permit should use this volume in developing their SWPPPS and should check with their jurisdiction about local requirements related to source control BMPs and SWPPPs.

Within this volume, the reader should interpret the term "applicable" when referring to specific operational or structural source controls as meaning "mandatory" or "required".

Users may consult Appendix IV-A regarding their specific businesses and activities and to identify their common pollutant sources. Then refer to Chapter 2 of this volume to identify source control BMPs for a given type of pollutant source. Chapter 2 also contains design criteria for source control BMPs. Some users will wish to refer to additional appendices for specific information on regulatory requirements affecting their projects.

This volume identifies some source control treatment BMPs that apply to specific types of pollutant sources. For a more complete discussion of treatment BMP design information, refer to Volume V.

1.4 Operational and Structural Source Control BMPs

There are two categories of source control BMPs: operational and structural.

Operational source control BMPs are non-structural practices that prevent or reduce pollutants from entering stormwater. Examples include formation of a pollution prevention team, good housekeeping practices, preventive maintenance procedures, spill prevention and cleanup, employee training, inspections of pollutant sources, and record keeping. They can also include process changes, raw material/product changes, and recycling wastes. Section 2.1 contains a general discussion of operational source controls that are frequently used.

Most stormwater experts consider operational source control BMPs the most cost-effective practice to reduce pollution.

Structural source control BMPs are physical, structural, or mechanical devices or facilities intended to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. Structural source control BMPs typically include:

- Enclosing and/or covering the pollutant source (e.g., within a building or other enclosure, a roof over storage and working areas, temporary tarp).
- Physically segregating the pollutant source to prevent run-on of uncontaminated stormwater.
- Devices that direct contaminated stormwater to appropriate treatment BMPs (e.g., discharge to a sanitary sewer if allowed by the local sewer authority).

1.5 Treatment BMPs for Specific Pollutant Sources

This volume also identifies specific treatment BMPs that apply to particular pollutant sources, such as fueling stations, railroad yards, material storage and transfer areas, etc.

Treatment BMPs are intended to remove pollutants from stormwater. Examples include settling basins or vaults, oil/water separators, biofilters, wet ponds, constructed wetlands, infiltration systems, and emerging technologies such as media filtration.

Facilities required to install additional treatment BMPs to comply with Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit (or other General Stormwater Permits) should consider the treatment BMPs identified in Volume IV and V when selecting and designing treatment BMPs. In addition, facilities should consider the sediment control and treatment BMPs in Volume II if turbidity and/or sediment reduction is required.

1.6 Distinction between Applicable BMPs and Recommended BMPs

This volume uses the terminology "applicable BMPs" and "recommended BMPs" to address an important distinction. This section explains the use of these terms.

1.6.1 Applicable (Mandatory) BMPs

The Phase I Municipal Stormwater Permit requires local governments to use operational and structural source control BMPs for pollutant generating sources.

BMPs identified in this volume as applicable (mandatory) must be included (or an equivalent BMP) in local government manuals to be considered equivalent to Ecology’s stormwater manual. Ecology expects local governments to require those BMPs described as applicable at new developments and redevelopment sites.

Local governments may require commercial, industrial, and multifamily properties to implement the BMPs in this volume. Operators of these property types should check with their jurisdiction about local requirements related to source control BMPs and SWPPPs.

All sites covered under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit must include and implement the applicable (mandatory) BMPs in their Industrial SWPPP.

Industrial sites covered by individual industrial stormwater permits must comply with the specific source control and treatment BMPs listed in their permits. Operators under individual industrial stormwater permits may include additional BMPs from this manual, if desired.

All sites covered under the Boatyard Stormwater General Permit must include and implement the applicable (mandatory) BMPs in their Boatyard SWPPP.

Facilities covered under the Sand and Gravel General Permit must include source control BMPs as necessary in their Sand and Gravel SWPPP to achieve AKART and compliance with the stormwater discharge limits in their permit.

Other facilities that are not required by an NPDES permit or local government to use the BMPs described in this volume are encouraged to implement both applicable and recommended BMPs.

Regulatory programs such as the State Environmental Policy Act (SEPA), water quality certification under Section 401 of the Clean Water Act, and Hydraulic Project Approvals (HPAs) may require use of the BMPs described in this volume.

1.6.2 Recommended BMPs

This volume also contains recommended BMPs. Ecology offers these BMPs as approaches that go beyond or complement the applicable (mandatory) BMPs. Implementing the recommended BMPs may improve control of pollutants and provide a more comprehensive and environmentally effective stormwater management program. Ecology encourages all operators to review their SWPPPs and use recommended BMPs where possible.

Facilities covered under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit who trigger a corrective action should consider implementing one or more recommended BMPs as a means to fulfill their corrective action requirements and achieve benchmark values.

1.7 Regulatory Requirements Affecting Stormwater Pollutant Control

Refer to Appendices IV-D and IV-E for information on related requirements from the following organizations:

- Local government or Ecology requirements for discharges to storm, sanitary, and combined sewers; stormwater flow control, treatment and pollutant source control; and air pollution control.
- Ecology requirements for dangerous or hazardous wastes, underground storage tanks, waste reduction, spill control and cleanup, and NPDES stormwater and wastewater discharge permit requirements.
- U. S. Environmental Protection Agency requirements for spill control and cleanup plans, and for NPDES permits on tribal lands.
- Washington State Department of Agriculture requirements for pesticide and fertilizer application control.
- Local Health Department requirements for the disposal of solid wastes to landfills or other facilities.
- U. S. Coast Guard requirements for transfer of petroleum products between marine vessels and onshore facilities and related spill control.
- Local and Washington State Fire Marshall requirements for storage and handling of flammable materials.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 2 - Selection of Operational and Structural Source Control BMPs

Urban stormwater pollutant sources include manufacturing and commercial areas; high use vehicle parking lots; material (including wastes) storage and handling; vehicle/equipment fueling, washing, maintenance, and repair areas; erodible soil; streets/highways; and the handling/application of de-icers and lawn care products.

Operators can achieve reduction or the elimination of stormwater pollutants by implementing operational source control BMPs. Operational source control BMPs including formation of a pollution prevention team, good housekeeping practices, preventive maintenance procedures, spill prevention and cleanup, employee training, regular inspections, and record keeping. These BMPs can be combined with impervious containments and covers, i.e., structural source control BMPs. If operational and structural source control BMPs are not feasible or adequate then stormwater treatment BMPs will be necessary. Owners should select cost-effective source control BMPs based on site specific pollutants and their sources.

Refer to Section 1.6 of this volume to determine which BMPs are mandatory for inclusion in your SWPPP.

Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit (ISGP), Boatyard General Permit, Sand and Gravel General Permit, and Phase I Municipal General Permit require the use of the BMPs described in this chapter in Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plans (SWPPPs). Local governments may also require the use of the BMPs described in this chapter. Refer to Section 1.6 for more information regarding the applicable (mandatory) use of BMPs within SWPPPs.

Under the ISGP, if a facility's sampling triggers Level 1 or Level 2 Corrective Action requirements, operators should consider the *recommended* operational (Level 1) and structural (Level 2) source control BMPs to fulfill permit requirements and reduce pollutant concentrations.

Base the initial selection of source control BMPs on land use and the pollutant generating sources. Appendix IV-A describes various land uses, activities and the potential pollutant generating sources associated with those activities. The BMPs in this chapter may also be appropriate for land uses not listed in Appendix IV-A.

For example, if a commercial printing business conducts weed control with herbicides, loading and unloading of materials, and vehicle washing, it should refer to the following BMP sections for these activities:

- Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Management.
- Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material.
- Washing and Steam Cleaning Vehicle/Equipment/Building Structures.
- Commercial Printing Operations.

Operators under the ISGP or Boatyard permits should take special care to review this chapter in its entirety to ensure that all of the applicable (mandatory) source control BMPs are included within their industrial or boatyard SWPPP (regardless of the listings in Appendix IV-A).

2.1 Applicable (Mandatory) Operational Source Control BMPs

Sites & facilities that require the implementation of source control BMPs

Where required by local code or by an Ecology NPDES Stormwater General Permit, implement the following operational source control BMPs at:

- Commercial properties
- Industrial properties
- Multifamily properties
- Boatyards
- Sand and gravel mining operations

Formation of a Pollution Prevention Team

- Assign one or more individuals to be responsible for stormwater pollution control. Hold regular meetings to review the overall operation of the BMPs. Establish responsibilities for inspections, operation, maintenance, and for emergencies. Train all team members in the operation, maintenance, and inspections of BMPs, and reporting procedures.

Good Housekeeping

- Promptly contain and clean up solid and liquid pollutant leaks and spills including oils, solvents, fuels, and dust from manufacturing operations on any exposed soil, vegetation, or paved area.
- Sweep all appropriate surfaces with vacuum sweepers quarterly or more frequently as needed for the collection and disposal of dust and debris that could contaminate stormwater.
- Do not hose down pollutants from any area to the ground, storm drains, conveyance ditches, or receiving water unless necessary for dust control purposes to meet air quality regulations. Convey pollutants before discharge, to a treatment system approved by the local jurisdiction.
- Clean oils, debris, sludge, etc. from all stormwater facilities regularly, including catch basins, settling/detention basins, oil/water separators, boomed areas, and conveyance systems to prevent the contamination of stormwater. Refer to Appendix IV-D R.3 for references to assist in handling potentially dangerous waste.
- Promptly repair or replace all substantially cracked or otherwise damaged paved secondary containment, high-intensity parking, and any other drainage areas, subjected to pollutant material leaks or spills. Promptly repair or replace all leaking connections, pipes, hoses, valves, etc., which can contaminate stormwater.

- Do not connect floor drains in potential pollutant source areas to storm drains, surface water, or to the ground.

Additional good housekeeping BMPs:

- Clean up pollutant liquid leaks and spills in impervious uncovered containment areas at the end of each working day.
- Use solid absorbents, e.g., clay and peat absorbents and rags for cleanup of liquid spills/leaks, where practicable.
- Promptly repair/replace/reseal damaged paved areas at industrial facilities
- Recycle materials, such as oils, solvents, and wood waste, to the maximum extent practicable.

Preventive Maintenance

- Prevent the discharge of unpermitted liquid or solid wastes, process wastewater, and sewage to ground or surface water, or to storm drains that discharge to surface water, or to the ground. Conduct all oily parts cleaning, steam cleaning, or pressure washing of equipment or containers inside a building, or on an impervious contained area, such as a concrete pad. Direct contaminated stormwater from such an area to a sanitary sewer where allowed by local sewer authority, or to other approved treatment.
- Pressure wash impervious surfaces contaminated with oils, metals, sediment, etc. Collect the resulting washwater for proper disposal (usually involves plugging storm drains, or otherwise preventing discharge and pumping or vactoring up washwater, for discharge to sanitary sewer or for vactor truck transport to a waste water treatment plant for disposal).
- Do not pave over contaminated soil unless it has been determined that ground water has not been and will not be contaminated by the soil. Call Ecology for assistance.
- Construct impervious areas that are compatible with the materials handled. Portland cement concrete, asphalt, or equivalent material may be considered.
- Use drip pans to collect leaks and spills from industrial/ commercial equipment such as cranes at ship/boat building and repair facilities, log stackers, industrial parts, trucks and other vehicles stored outside.
- At industrial and commercial facilities, drain oil and fuel filters before disposal. Discard empty oil and fuel filters, oily rags, and other oily solid waste into appropriately closed and properly labeled containers, and in compliance with the Uniform Fire Code or International Building Code.
- For the storage of liquids use containers, such as steel and plastic drums, that are rigid and durable, corrosion resistant to the weather

and fluid content, non-absorbent, water tight, rodent-proof, and equipped with a close fitting cover.

- For the temporary storage of solid wastes contaminated with liquids or other potential polluted materials use dumpsters, garbage cans, drums, and comparable containers, which are durable, corrosion resistant, non-absorbent, non-leaking, and equipped with either a solid cover or screen cover to prevent littering. If covered with a screen, the container must be stored under a roof or other form of adequate cover.
- Where exposed to stormwater, use containers, piping, tubing, pumps, fittings, and valves that are appropriate for their intended use and for the contained liquid.

Additional preventive maintenance BMPs:

- Where feasible, store potential stormwater pollutant materials inside a building or under a cover and/or containment.
- Minimize use of toxic cleaning solvents, such as chlorinated solvents, and other toxic chemicals.
- Use environmentally safe raw materials, products, additives, etc. such as substitutes for zinc used in rubber production.
- Recycle waste materials such as solvents, coolants, oils, degreasers, and batteries to the maximum extent feasible. Refer to Appendix IV-C for recommendations on recycling or disposal of vehicle waste liquids and other waste materials.
- Empty drip pans immediately after a spill or leak is collected in an uncovered area.
- Stencil warning signs at stormwater catch basins and drains, e.g., “Dump no waste – Drains to waterbody.”

Note: Evidence of stormwater contamination by oils and grease can include the presence of visible sheen, color, or turbidity in the runoff, or present or historical operational problems at the facility. Operators can use simple pH tests, for example with litmus or pH paper. These tests can screen for high or low pH levels (anything outside a 6.5-8.5 range) due to contamination in stormwater.

Spill Prevention and Cleanup

- Stop, contain, and clean up all spills immediately upon discovery.
- If pollutant materials are stored on-site, have spill containment and cleanup kits readily accessible.
- If the spill has reached or may reach a sanitary or a storm sewer, ground water, or surface water notify the local jurisdiction, Ecology, and the local sewer authority immediately. Notification must comply with and federal spill reporting requirements. (See also record keeping

at the end of this section and S406 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances)

- Do not flush or otherwise direct absorbent materials or other spill cleanup materials to a storm drain. Collect the contaminated absorbent material as a solid and place in appropriate disposal containers.

Recommended additional BMP:

Place and maintain emergency spill containment and cleanup kit(s) at outside areas where there is a potential for fluid spills. These kits should be appropriate for the materials and the size of a potential spill. Locate spill kits within 25 feet of all fueling/fuel transfer areas, including on-board mobile fuel trucks.

Facilities covered under Industrial Stormwater General Permit must provide secondary containment for all chemical liquids, fluids, and petroleum products stored on-site.

Note: Ecology recommends that the kit(s) include salvage drums or containers, such as high density polyethylene, polypropylene or polyethylene sheet-lined steel; polyethylene or equivalent disposal bags; an emergency response guidebook; safety gloves/clothes/equipment; shovels or other soil removal equipment; and oil containment booms and absorbent pads; all stored in an impervious container.

Employee Training

Train all employees that work in pollutant source areas in:

- Identifying pollutant sources
- Understanding pollutant control measures
- Responding to spills
- Handling practices that are environmentally acceptable. Particularly those related to vehicle/equipment liquids such as fuels, and vehicle/equipment cleaning.

Inspections

Qualified personnel shall conduct visual inspections monthly. Make and maintain a record of each inspection on-site . Inspections shall:

- Verify the accuracy of the pollutant source descriptions in the SWPPP.
- Verify the performance of the stormwater operational and structural source controls and the treatment BMPs .
- Reflect current conditions on the site.
- Include written observations of the presence of floating materials, suspended solids, oil and grease, discoloration, turbidity and odor in the stormwater discharges; in outside vehicle maintenance/repair; and liquid handling, and storage areas. In areas where acid or alkaline materials are handled or stored use a simple litmus or pH paper to identify those types of stormwater contaminants where needed.

- Eliminate or obtain a permit for unpermitted non-stormwater discharges to storm drains or receiving waters, such as process wastewater and vehicle/equipment washwater.

Retain the following reports for five years:

Record keeping

- Visual inspection reports which should include:
  - Time and date of the inspection
  - Locations inspected
  - Statement on status of compliance with the permit
  - Summary report of any remediation activities required
  - Name, title, and signature of person conducting the inspection
- Reports on spills of oil or hazardous substances in greater than Reportable Quantities (Code of Federal Regulations Title 40 Parts 302.4 and 117). Report spills of the following: antifreeze, oil, gasoline, or diesel fuel, that cause:
  - A violation of the State of Washington's Water Quality Standards.
  - A film or sheen upon or discoloration of the waters of the State or adjoining shorelines.
  - A sludge or emulsion to be deposited beneath the surface of the water or upon adjoining shorelines.
- *To report a spill or to determine if a spill is a substance of a Reportable Quantity, call the Ecology regional office and ask for an oil spill operations or a dangerous waste specialist:*

Northwest Region	*(425)649-7000*
Southwest Region	*(360)407-6300*
Eastern Region	*(509)329-3400*
Central Region	*(509) 575-2490*

In addition, call the Washington Emergency Management Division at 1-800-258-5990 or 1-800-OILS-911 AND the National Response Center at 1-800-424-8802.

Also, refer to Emergency Spill Response in Washington State, Publication # 97-1165-CP.

The following is additional recommended record keeping:

Maintain records of all related pollutant control and pollutant generating activities such as training, materials purchased, material use and disposal, maintenance performed, etc.

2.2 Pollutant Source-Specific BMPs

Where required by local code or by an Ecology NPDES Stormwater General Permit, implement the applicable (mandatory) source control BMPs at:

- Commercial properties
- Industrial properties
- Multifamily properties
- Boatyards
- Sand and gravel mining operations

The Industrial Stormwater General Permit requires covered facilities to consider the recommended source control BMPs for Level 1 and 2 corrective actions.

Industrial sites covered by individual industrial stormwater permits must comply with the specific source control and treatment BMPs listed in their permits. Operators under individual industrial stormwater permits may include additional BMPs from this manual, if desired.

The source-specific BMPs described in this section, may be applied to control the sources of pollutants identified in Appendix IV-A. Ecology encourages all operators of facilities that implement pollutant-generating sources in Appendix IV-A to review their SWPPPs and use both the applicable (mandatory) and recommended BMPs where possible.

There are some emerging technologies that can be used as source controls. If these technologies

S401 BMPs for the Building, Repair, and Maintenance of Boats and Ships

Description of Pollutant Sources: Sources of pollutants for the building, repair, and maintenance of boats and ships at boatyards, shipyards, ports, and marinas include pressure washing, surface preparation, paint removal, sanding, painting, engine maintenance and repairs, and material handling and storage, if conducted outdoors.

Potential pollutants include spent abrasive grits, solvents, oils, ethylene glycol, washwater, paint over-spray, cleaners/detergents, anti-corrosive compounds, paint chips, scrap metal, welding rods, resins, glass fibers, dust, and miscellaneous trash. Pollutant constituents include TSS, oil and grease, organics, copper, lead, tin, and zinc.

Pollutant Control Approach: Apply good housekeeping, preventive maintenance, and cover and contain BMPs in and around work areas.

Applicable Operational BMPs: Ecology's NPDES Boatyard General Permit requires coverage of all boatyards in Washington State which engage in the construction, repair and maintenance of small vessels, 85% of which are 65 feet or less in length, or revenues from which constitute more than 85% of gross receipts. Ecology may require coverage under an individual NPDES permit for large boatyards and shipyards in Washington State not covered by the Boatyard General Permit or Industrial Stormwater General Permit (ISGP). The applicable operational BMPs are:

- Clean regularly all accessible work, service, and storage areas to remove debris, spent sandblasting material, and any other potential stormwater pollutants.
- Avoid the use of soaps, detergents and other chemicals that need to be rinsed or hosed off in the water. If necessary, consider applying sparingly so that a sponge, towel or rag can be used to remove residuals. Consider instead washing the boat in a suitable controlled area (see S431 BMPs for Washing and Steam Cleaning Vehicles/ Equipment/ Building Structures) while it is out of the water.
- Sweep rather than hose debris on the dock. Collect and convey hose water to treatment if hosing is unavoidable,
- Collect spent abrasives regularly and store under cover to await proper disposal.
- Dispose of greasy rags, oil filters, air filters, batteries, spent coolant, and degreasers properly.
- Drain oil filters before disposal or recycling.
- Immediately repair or replace leaking connections, valves, pipes, hoses and equipment that causes the contamination of stormwater.
- Use drip pans, drop cloths, tarpaulins, or other protective devices in all paint mixing and solvent operations unless carried out in impervious contained and covered areas.
- Convey sanitary sewage to pump-out stations, portable on-site pump-outs, or commercial mobile pump-out facilities or other appropriate onshore facilities.
- Maintain automatic bilge pumps in a manner that will prevent automatic pumping of waste material into surface water.
- Prohibit uncontained spray painting, blasting or sanding activities over open water.
- Do not dump or pour waste materials down floor drains, sinks, or outdoor storm drain inlets that discharge to surface water. Plug floor drains connected to storm drains or to surface water. If necessary, install a regularly operated sump pump.

- Prohibit outside spray-painting, blasting, or sanding activities during windy conditions that render containment ineffective.
- Do not burn paint and/or use spray guns on topsides or above decks.
- Immediately clean up any spillage on pier, wharf, boat, ship deck, or adjacent surface areas and dispose of the wastes properly.
- In the event of an accidental discharge of oil or hazardous material into waters of the state or onto land with a potential for entry into state waters, immediately notify the yard, port, or marina owner or manager, local jurisdiction, Ecology, and the National Response Center(see Section 2.1, of this volume). If the spill can reach or has reached marine water, call the U.S. Coast Guard at 1-800-424-8802.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Use fixed platforms with appropriate plastic or tarpaulin barriers as work surfaces and for containment when performing work on a vessel in the water to prevent blast material or paint overspray from contacting stormwater or the receiving water. Keep use of such platforms to a minimum and do not perform extensive repair or construction in the water (anything in excess of 25 percent of the surface area of the vessel above the waterline).
- Use plastic or tarpaulin barriers beneath the hull and between the hull and dry dock walls to contain and collect waste and spent materials. Clean and sweep regularly to remove debris.
- Enclose, cover, or contain blasting and sanding activities to the maximum extent practicable to prevent abrasives, dust, and paint chips, from reaching storm sewers or receiving waters. Use plywood and/or plastic sheeting to cover open areas between decks when sandblasting (scuppers, railings, freeing ports, ladders, and doorways).
- Direct deck drainage to a collection system sump for settling and/or additional treatment.
- Store cracked batteries in covered secondary containers.
- Apply source control BMPs given in this chapter for other activities conducted at the marina, boat yard, shipyard, or port facility (S409 BMPs for Fueling at Dedicated Stations, S431 BMPs for Washing and Steam Cleaning Vehicle/Equipment/Building Structures, and S406 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances).

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs:

- Consider recycling paint, paint thinner, solvents, used oils, oil filters, pressure wash wastewater and any other recyclable materials.
- Perform paint and solvent mixing, fuel mixing, etc., on shore.

S402 BMPs for Commercial Animal Handling Areas

Description of Pollutant Sources: Animals at racetracks, kennels, fenced pens, veterinarians, and businesses that provide boarding services for horses, dogs, cats, etc., can generate pollutants from the following activities: manure deposits, animal washing, grazing, and any other animal handling activity that could contaminate stormwater. Pollutants can include coliform bacteria, nutrients, and total suspended solids. Individual Stormwater Permits covering commercial animal handling facilities include additional applicable source controls.

Pollutant Control Approach: To prevent, to the maximum extent practicable, the discharge of contaminated stormwater from animal handling and keeping areas.

Applicable Operational BMPs

- Regularly sweep and clean animal keeping areas to collect and properly dispose of droppings, uneaten food, and other potential stormwater contaminants.
- Do not hose down areas that contain potential stormwater contaminants where they drain to storm drains or to receiving waters.
- Do not discharge any washwater to storm drains or to receiving waters without proper treatment.
- If the operator keeps animals in unpaved and uncovered areas, the ground must have either vegetative cover or some other type of ground cover such as mulch.
- Surround the area where animals are kept with a fence or other means to prevent animals from moving away from the controlled area where BMPs are used.

S403 BMPs for Commercial Composting

Description of Pollutant Sources: Commercial composting facilities, operating outside without cover, require large areas to decompose wastes and other feedstocks. Design these facilities to separate stormwater from leachate (i.e., industrial wastewater) to the greatest extent possible. When stormwater contacts any active composting areas, including waste receiving and processing areas, it becomes leachate. Pollutants in leachate include nutrients, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), organics, coliform bacteria, acidic pH, color, and suspended solids. Stormwater at composting facilities include runoff from areas not associated with active processing and curing, such as product storage areas, vehicle maintenance areas, and access roads.

NPDES and State Solid Waste Permit Requirements: Composting facilities are regulated under WAC 173-350-220. Solid Waste Regulations require the collection and containment of all leachate produced from activities at commercial composting facilities. Composting facilities that propose to discharge to surface water, municipal sewer system, or ground water must obtain the appropriate permits. Zero discharge is possible by containing all leachate from the facility (in tanks or ponds) for use early in the composting process or preventing production of leachate (by composting under a roof or in an enclosed building).

Pollutant Control Approach: Consider zero leachate discharge.

Applicable Operational, Structural, and Treatment BMPs:

- See WAC 173-350-220, Composting Facilities
- View this Ecology publication for common sense actions that a facility can adopt to help run a successful program: *Siting and operating Composting Facilities in Washington State Good Management Practices.* This document is available at: https://fortress.wa.gov/ecy/publications/publications/1107005.pdf .
- See Ecology's Organic Materials Management Rule and Law page for the most up-to-date information: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/organics/law.html.
- All composting facilities shall obtain the appropriate state and local permits. Contact your local permitting authority and jurisdictional health department or district for more information.
- Apply for coverage under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit if the facility discharges stormwater to surface water or a municipal stormwater system. If all stormwater from the facility properly infiltrates to ground water, the Industrial Stormwater General Permit is not required. There are some cases where an Individual State Waste Discharge permit is required. Check with your local Ecology office and jurisdictional health department or district to discuss your permitting options..

S404 BMPs for Commercial Printing Operations

Description of Pollutant Sources: Materials used in the printing process include inorganic and organic acids, resins, solvents, polyester film, developers, alcohol, vinyl lacquer, dyes, acetates, and polymers. Waste products may include waste inks and ink sludge, resins, photographic chemicals, solvents, acid and alkaline solutions, chlorides, chromium, zinc, lead, spent formaldehyde, silver, plasticizers, and used lubricating oils. With indoor printing operations, the only likely points of potential contact with stormwater are the outside temporary storage of waste materials and offloading of chemicals at external unloading bays. Pollutants can include TSS, pH, heavy metals, oil and grease, and COD.

Pollutant Control Approach: Ensure appropriate disposal and NPDES permitting of process wastes. Cover and contain stored raw and waste materials.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Discharge process wastewaters to a sanitary sewer, if approved by the local sewer authority, or to an approved process wastewater treatment system.
- Do not discharge process wastes or wastewaters into storm sewers or surface water.
- Determine whether any of these wastes qualify for regulation as dangerous wastes and dispose of them accordingly.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMP: Store raw materials or waste materials that could contaminate stormwater in covered and contained areas.

Recommended Additional BMPs:

- Train all employees in pollution prevention, spill response, and environmentally acceptable materials handling procedures.
- Store materials in proper, appropriately labeled containers. Identify and label all chemical substances.
- Regularly inspect all stormwater management devices and maintain as necessary.
- Try to use press washes without listed solvents, and with the lowest VOC content possible. Don't evaporate ink cleanup trays to the outside atmosphere.
- Place cleanup sludges into a container with a tight lid and dispose of as dangerous waste. Do not dispose of cleanup sludges in the garbage or in containers of soiled towels.

For additional information on pollution prevention, Ecology recommends the following Ecology publications: *A Guide for Screen Printers*, Publication #94-137 and *A Guide for Lithographic Printers*, Publication #94-139.

S405 BMPs for Deicing and Anti-Icing Operations - Airports and Streets

Refer to 40 CFR Part 449 for EPA effluent limitations guidelines and new source performance standards to control discharges of pollutants from airport deicing operations

Description of Pollutant Sources: Operators use deicing and/or apply anti-icing compounds on highways, streets, airport runways, and on aircraft to control ice and snow. Typically, ethylene glycol and propylene glycol are deicers used on aircraft. Deicers commonly used on highways and streets include calcium magnesium acetate (CMA), calcium chloride, magnesium chloride, sodium chloride, urea, and potassium acetate. The deicing and anti-icing compounds become pollutants when conveyed to storm drains or to surface water after application. Leaks and spills of these chemicals can also occur during their handling and storage.

BMPs for Airport De/anti-icing Operations

Pollutant Control Approach for Aircraft: Spent glycol discharges in aircraft application areas are regulated process wastewaters under Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit. BMPs for aircraft de/anti-icers must be consistent with aviation safety and the operational needs of the aircraft operator.

Applicable BMPs for Aircraft:

Conduct aircraft deicing or anti-icing applications in impervious containment areas. Collect aircraft deicer or anti-icer spent chemicals, such as glycol, draining from aircraft in deicing or anti-icing application areas and convey to a sanitary sewer, treatment, or other approved disposal or recovery method. Divert deicing runoff from paved gate areas to appropriate collection areas or conveyances for proper treatment or disposal.

Do not discharge spent deicer or anti-icer chemicals or stormwater contaminated with aircraft deicer or anti-icer chemicals from application areas, including gate areas into storm drains. No discharge to surface water, or ground water, directly or indirectly should occur.

Transfer deicing and anti-icing chemicals on an impervious containment pad, or equivalent spill/leak containment area, and store in secondary containment areas. (See Storage of Liquids in Aboveground Tanks)

Note this applicable containment BMP of aircraft de/anti-icing applications, and applicable treatment BMPs for de/anti-icer spent chemicals such as glycols.

Recommended Additional BMPs for Aircraft:

Establish a centralized aircraft de/anti-icing facility, if practicable, or in designated areas of the tarmac equipped with separate collection drains for the spent deicer liquids.

Consider installing an aircraft de/anti-icing chemical recovery system, or contract with a chemical recycler.

Applicable BMPs for Airport Runways/Taxiways:

Avoid excessive application of all de/anti-icing chemicals, which could contaminate stormwater.

Store and transfer de/anti-icing materials on an impervious containment pad or an equivalent containment area and/or under cover in accordance with *BMP Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products, or Finished Products*. Consider other material storage and transfer approaches only if, the de/anti-icer material will not contaminate stormwater.

Recommended Additional BMPs for Airport Runways/Taxiways:

Include limits on toxic materials and phosphorous in the specifications for de/anti-icers, where applicable.

Consider using anti-icing materials rather than deicers if it will result in less adverse environmental impact.

Select cost-effective de/anti-icers that cause the least adverse environmental impact.

S406 BMPs for Streets/ Highways

Applicable BMPs:

- Select de and anti-icers that cause the least adverse environmental impact. Apply only as needed using minimum quantities.
- Where practicable use roadway deicers, such as calcium magnesium acetate, potassium acetate, or similar materials, that cause less adverse environmental impact than urea, and sodium chloride.
- Store and transfer de and anti-icing materials on an impervious containment pad in accordance with *BMP Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products, or Finished Products* in this volume.
- Sweep/clean up accumulated de and anti-icing materials and grit from roads as soon as possible after the road surface clears.

Recommended Additional BMPs

- Intensify roadway cleaning in early spring to help remove particulates from road surfaces.
- Include limits on toxic metals in the specifications for de/anti-icers.

S407 BMPs for Dust Control at Disturbed Land Areas and Unpaved Roadways and Parking Lots

Description of Pollutant Sources: Dust can cause air and water pollution problems particularly at demolition sites and in arid areas where reduced rainfall exposes soil particles to transport by air.

Pollutant Control Approach: Minimize dust generation and apply environmentally friendly and government approved dust suppressant chemicals, if necessary.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Sprinkle or wet down soil or dust with water as long as it does not result in a wastewater discharge.
- Use only local and/or state government approved dust suppressant chemicals such as those listed in Ecology Publication #96-433, *Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression*.
- Avoid excessive and repeated applications of dust suppressant chemicals. Time the application of dust suppressants to avoid or minimize their wash-off by rainfall or human activity such as irrigation.
- Apply stormwater containment to prevent the conveyance of sediment into storm drains or receiving waters.

- Ecology prohibits the use of motor oil for dust control. Take care when using lignin derivatives and other high BOD chemicals in areas susceptible to contaminating surface water or ground water.
- Consult with Ecology and the local permitting authority on discharge permit requirements if the dust suppression process results in a wastewater discharge to the ground, ground water, storm drain, or surface water.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs for Roadways and Other Trafficked Areas:

- Consider limiting use of off-road recreational vehicles on dust generating land.
- Consider graveling or paving unpaved permanent roads and other trafficked areas at municipal, commercial, and industrial areas.
- Consider paving or stabilizing shoulders of paved roads with gravel, vegetation, or local government approved chemicals.
- Encourage use of alternate paved routes, if available.
- Vacuum sweep fine dirt and skid control materials from paved roads soon after winter weather ends or when needed.
- Consider using pre-washed traction sand to reduce dust emissions.

Additional Recommended Operational BMPs for Dust Generating Areas:

- Prepare a dust control plan. Helpful references include: Control of Open Fugitive Dust Sources (EPA-450/3-88-088), and Fugitive Dust Background Document and Technical Information Document for Best Available Control Measures (EPA-450/2-92-004).
- Limit exposure of soil (dust source) as much as feasible.
- Stabilize dust-generating soil by growing and maintaining vegetation, mulching, topsoiling, and/or applying stone, sand, or gravel.
- Apply windbreaks in the soil such as trees, board fences, tarp curtains, bales of hay, etc.

S408 BMPs for Dust Control at Manufacturing Areas

Description of Pollutant Sources: Industrial material handling activities can generate considerable amounts of dust that is typically removed using exhaust systems. Mixing cement and concrete products and handling powdered materials can also generate dust. Particulate materials that can cause air pollution include grain dust, sawdust, coal, gravel, crushed rock, cement, and boiler fly ash. Air emissions can contaminate stormwater. The objective of this BMP is to reduce the stormwater pollutants caused by dust generation and control.

Pollutant Control Approach: Prevent dust generation and emissions where feasible, regularly clean-up dust that can contaminate stormwater, and convey dust contaminated stormwater to proper treatment.

Applicable BMPs:

- Clean, as needed, powder material handling equipment and vehicles.
- Regularly sweep dust accumulation areas that can contaminate stormwater. Conduct sweeping using vacuum filter equipment to minimize dust generation and to ensure optimal dust removal.

Recommended BMPs:

- In manufacturing operations, train employees to handle powders carefully to prevent generation of dust.
- Use dust filtration/collection systems such as bag house filters, cyclone separators, etc. to control vented dust emissions that could contaminate stormwater. Control of zinc dusts in rubber production is one example.
- Use water spray to flush dust accumulations to sanitary sewers where allowed by the local sewer authority or to other appropriate treatment system.
- Use approved dust suppressants such as those listed in Ecology Publication *Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression*, #96-433 (Ecology, 1996). Application of some products may not be appropriate in close proximity to receiving waters or conveyances close to receiving waters. For more information check with Ecology or the local jurisdiction.

Recommended Treatment BMPs: Install sedimentation basins, wet ponds, wet vaults, catch basin filters, vegetated filter strips, or equivalent sediment removal BMPs.

S409 BMPs for Fueling At Dedicated Stations

Description of Pollutant Sources: A fueling station is a facility dedicated to the transfer of fuels from a stationary pumping station to mobile vehicles or equipment. It includes above or underground fuel storage facilities. In addition to general service gas stations, fueling may also occur at 24-hour convenience stores, construction sites, warehouses, car washes, manufacturing establishments, port facilities, and businesses with fleet vehicles. Typical causes of stormwater contamination at fueling stations include leaks/spills of fuels, lube oils, radiator coolants, and vehicle washwater.

Pollutant Control Approach: New or substantially remodeled* fueling stations must be constructed on an impervious concrete pad under a roof to keep out rainfall and stormwater run-on. The facility must use a treatment

BMP for contaminated stormwater and wastewaters in the fueling containment area.

** Substantial remodeling includes replacing the canopy, or relocating or adding one or more fuel dispensers in such a way that modify the Portland cement concrete (or equivalent) paving in the fueling area.*

For new or substantially remodeled Fueling Stations:

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Prepare an emergency spill response and cleanup plan (per S426 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances) and have designated trained person(s) available either on site or on call at all times to promptly and properly implement that plan and immediately cleanup all spills. Keep suitable cleanup materials, such as dry adsorbent materials, on site to allow prompt cleanup of a spill.
- Train employees on the proper use of fuel dispensers. Post signs in accordance with the Uniform Fire Code (UFC) or International Fire Code (IFC). Post "No Topping Off" signs (topping off gas tanks causes spillage and vents gas fumes to the air). Make sure that the automatic shut-off on the fuel nozzle is functioning properly.
- The person conducting the fuel transfer must be present at the fueling pump during fuel transfer, particularly at unattended or self-serve stations.
- Keep drained oil filters in a suitable container or drum.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Design the fueling island to control spills (dead-end sump or spill control separator in compliance with the UFC or IFC), and to treat collected stormwater and/or wastewater to required levels. Slope the concrete containment pad around the fueling island toward drains; either trench drains, catch basins and/or a dead-end sump. The slope of the drains shall not be less than 1 percent (Section 7901.8 of the UFC, Section 5703.6.8 of the IFC).
- Drains to treatment facilities must have a normally closed shutoff valve. The spill control sump must be sized in compliance with Section 7901.8 of the UFC; or
- Design the fueling island as a spill containment pad with a sill or berm raised to a minimum of four inches (Section 7901.8 of the UFC) to prevent the runoff of spilled liquids and to prevent run-on of stormwater from the surrounding area. Raised sills are not required at the open-grate trenches that connect to an approved drainage-control system.
- The fueling pad must be paved with Portland cement concrete, or equivalent. Ecology does not consider asphalt an equivalent material.

- The fueling island must have a roof or canopy to prevent the direct entry of precipitation onto the spill containment pad (see Figure 2.2.1). The roof or canopy should, at a minimum, cover the spill containment pad (within the grade break or fuel dispensing area) and preferably extend several additional feet to reduce the introduction of windblown rain. Convey all roof drains to storm drains outside the fueling containment area.

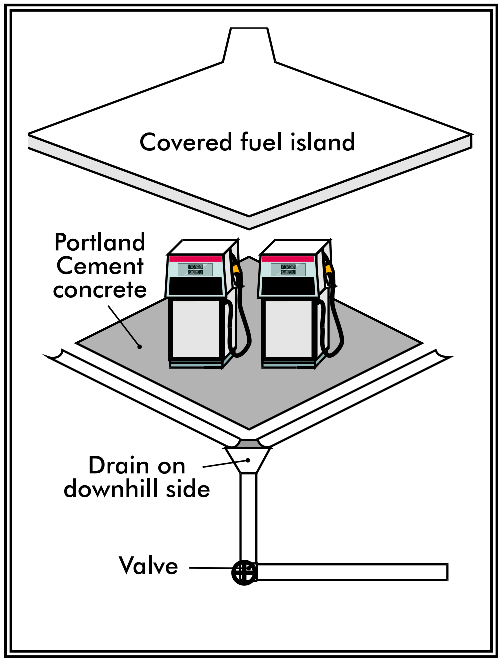


Figure 2.2.1 – Covered Fuel Island

- Convey stormwater collected on the fuel island containment pad to a sanitary sewer system, if approved by the sanitary authority, or to an approved treatment system such as an oil/water separator and a basic treatment BMP. (Basic treatment BMPs are listed in Volume V and include media filters and biofilters). Discharges from treatment systems to storm drains or surface water or to the ground must not display ongoing or recurring visible sheen and must not contain oil and grease.
- Alternatively, collect stormwater from the fuel island containment pad and hold for proper off-site disposal.
- Approval from the local sewer authority is required for conveyance of any fuel-contaminated stormwater to a sanitary sewer. The discharged stormwater must comply with pretreatment regulations (WAC 173-216-060). These regulations prohibit discharges that could "cause fire or explosion." State and federal pretreatment regulations define an explosive or flammable mixture, based on a flash point determination

of the mixture. Stormwater could be conveyed to a sanitary sewer system if it is determined not to be explosive.

- Transfer the fuel from the delivery tank trucks to the fuel storage tank in impervious contained areas and ensure that appropriate overflow protection is used. Alternatively, cover nearby storm drains during the filling process and use drip pans under all hose connections.

Additional BMP for Vehicles 10 feet in height or greater

A roof or canopy may not be feasible at fueling stations that regularly fuel vehicles that are 10 feet in height or greater, particularly at industrial or WSDOT sites. At those types of fueling facilities, the following BMPs apply, as well as the applicable BMPs and fire prevention (UFC requirements) of this BMP for fueling stations:

- If a roof or canopy is impractical, the concrete fueling pad must be equipped with emergency spill control including a shutoff valve for drainage from the fueling area. Maintain the valve in the closed position in the event of a spill. An electronically actuated valve is preferred to minimize the time lapse between spill and containment. Clean up spills and dispose of materials off-site in accordance with S406 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances.
- The valve may be opened to convey contaminated stormwater to a sanitary sewer, if approved by the sewer authority, or to oil removal treatment such as an API or CP oil/water separator, catchbasin insert, or equivalent treatment, and then to a basic treatment BMP. Discharges from treatment systems to storm sewer or surface water or to the ground must not display ongoing or recurring visible sheen and must not contain greater than a significant amount of oil and grease.

S410 BMPs for Illicit Connections to Storm Drains

Description of Pollutant Sources: Illicit connections are unpermitted sanitary or process wastewater discharges to a storm sewer or to surface water, rather than to a sanitary sewer, industrial process wastewater, or other appropriate treatment. They can also include swimming pool water, filter backwash, cleaning solutions/washwaters, cooling water, etc. Experience has shown that illicit connections are common, particularly in older buildings.

Pollutant Control Approach: Identify and eliminate unpermitted discharges or obtain an NPDES permit, where necessary, particularly at industrial and commercial facilities.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Eliminate unpermitted wastewater discharges to storm sewer, ground water, or surface water.
- Convey unpermitted discharges to a sanitary sewer if allowed by the local sewer authority, or to other approved treatment.
- Obtain appropriate state and local permits for these discharges.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs: At commercial and industrial facilities, conduct a survey of wastewater discharge connections to storm drains and to surface water as follows:

- Conduct a field survey of buildings, particularly older buildings, and other industrial areas to locate storm drains from buildings and paved surfaces. Note where these join the public storm drain(s).
- During non-stormwater conditions inspect each storm drain for non-stormwater discharges. Record the locations of all non-stormwater discharges. Include all permitted discharges.
- If useful, prepare a map of each area. Show on the map the known location of storm sewers, sanitary sewers, and permitted and unpermitted discharges. Aerial photos may be useful. Check records such as piping schematics to identify known side sewer connections and show these on the map. Consider using smoke, dye, or chemical analysis tests to detect connections between two conveyance systems (e.g., process water and stormwater). If desirable, conduct TV inspections of the storm drains and record the footage on videotape.
- Compare the observed locations of connections with the information on the map and revise the map accordingly. Note suspect connections that are inconsistent with the field survey.
- Identify all connections to storm sewers or to surface water and take the actions specified above as applicable BMPs.

S411 BMPs for Landscaping and Lawn/ Vegetation Management

Description of Pollutant Sources: Landscaping can include grading, soil transfer, vegetation removal, pesticide and fertilizer applications, and watering. Stormwater contaminants include toxic organic compounds, heavy metals, oils, total suspended solids, coliform bacteria, fertilizers, and pesticides.

Lawn and vegetation management can include control of objectionable weeds, insects, mold, bacteria, and other pests with pesticides. Examples include weed control on golf course lawns, access roads, and utility corridors and during landscaping; sap stain and insect control on lumber and logs; rooftop moss removal; killing nuisance rodents; fungicide application to patio decks, and residential lawn/plant care. It is possible to release toxic pesticides such as pentachlorophenol, carbamates, and organometallics to the environment by leaching and dripping from treated parts, container leaks, product misuse, and outside storage of pesticide contaminated materials and equipment. Poor management of the vegetation and poor application of pesticides or fertilizers can cause appreciable stormwater contamination.

Pollutant Control Approach: Control of fertilizer and pesticide applications, soil erosion, and site debris to prevent contamination of stormwater.

Develop and implement an Integrated Pest Management Plan (IPM) and use pesticides only as a last resort. Carefully apply pesticides/ herbicides, in accordance with label instructions. Maintain appropriate vegetation, with proper fertilizer application where practicable, to control erosion and the discharge of stormwater pollutants. Where practicable grow plant species appropriate for the site, or adjust the soil properties of the subject site to grow desired plant species.

Applicable Operational BMPs for Landscaping:

- Install engineered soil/landscape systems to improve the infiltration and regulation of stormwater in landscaped areas.
- Do not dispose of collected vegetation into waterways or storm sewer systems.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs for Landscaping:

- Conduct mulch-mowing whenever practicable
- Dispose of grass clippings, leaves, sticks, or other collected vegetation, by composting, if feasible.
- Use mulch or other erosion control measures on soils exposed for more than one week during the dry season or two days during the rainy season.
- Store and maintain appropriate oil and chemical spill cleanup materials in readily accessible locations when using oil or other chemicals. Ensure that employees are familiar with proper spill cleanup procedures.
- Till fertilizers into the soil rather than dumping or broadcasting onto the surface. Determine the proper fertilizer application rate for the types of soil and vegetation encountered.
- Till a topsoil mix or composted organic material into the soil to create a well-mixed transition layer that encourages deeper root systems and drought-resistant plants.
- Use manual and/or mechanical methods of vegetation removal rather than applying herbicides, where practical.

Applicable Operational BMPs for the Use of Pesticides:

- Develop and implement an IPM (See section on IPM in *Applicable Operational BMPs for Vegetation Management*) and use pesticides only as a last resort.
- Implement a pesticide-use plan and include at a minimum: a list of selected pesticides and their specific uses; brands, formulations, application methods and quantities to be used; equipment use and maintenance procedures; safety, storage, and disposal methods; and monitoring, record keeping, and public notice procedures. All procedures shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 17.21 RCW and Chapter 16-228 WAC (Appendix IV-D R.7).
- Choose the least toxic pesticide available that is capable of reducing the infestation to acceptable levels. The pesticide should readily degrade in the environment and/or have properties that strongly bind it to the soil. Conduct any pest control activity at the life stage when the pest is most vulnerable. For example, if it is necessary to use a Bacillus thuringiens application to control tent caterpillars, apply it to the material before the caterpillars cocoon or it will be ineffective. Any method used should be site-specific and not used wholesale over a wide area.
- Apply the pesticide according to label directions. Do not apply pesticides in quantities that exceed manufacturer's instructions.
- Mix the pesticides and clean the application equipment in an area where accidental spills will not enter surface or ground waters, and will not contaminate the soil.
- Store pesticides in enclosed areas or in covered impervious containment. Do not discharge pesticide contaminated stormwater or spills/leaks of pesticides to storm sewers. Do not hose down the paved areas to a storm sewer or conveyance ditch. Store and maintain appropriate spill cleanup materials in a location known to all near the storage area.
- Clean up any spilled pesticides. Keep pesticide contaminated waste materials in designated covered and contained areas.
- The pesticide application equipment must be capable of immediate shutoff in the event of an emergency.
- Spraying pesticides within 100 feet of open waters including wetlands, ponds, and rivers, streams, creeks, sloughs and any drainage ditch or channel that leads to open water may have additional regulatory requirements beyond just following the pesticide product label. Additional requirements may include:
    - Obtaining a discharge permit from Ecology.
    - Obtaining a permit from the local jurisdiction.
    - Using an aquatic labeled pesticide.

- Flag all sensitive areas including wells, creeks, and wetlands prior to spraying.
- Post notices and delineate the spray area prior to the application, as required by the local jurisdiction or by Ecology.
- Conduct spray applications during weather conditions as specified in the label direction and applicable local and state regulations. Do not apply during rain or immediately before expected rain.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs for the use of pesticides:

- Consider alternatives to the use of pesticides such as covering or harvesting weeds, substitute vegetative growth, and manual weed control/moss removal.
- Consider the use of soil amendments, such as compost, that are known to control some common diseases in plants, such as Pythium root rot, ashy stem blight, and parasitic nematodes. The following are three possible mechanisms for disease control by compost addition (USEPA Publication 530-F-9-044):
    1. Successful competition for nutrients by antibiotic production;
    2. Successful predation against pathogens by beneficial microorganism; and
    3. Activation of disease-resistant genes in plants by composts.

Installing an amended soil/landscape system can preserve both the plant system and the soil system more effectively. This type of approach provides a soil/landscape system with adequate depth, permeability, and organic matter to sustain itself and continue working as an effective stormwater infiltration system and a sustainable nutrient cycle.

- Once a pesticide is applied, evaluate its effectiveness for possible improvement. Records should be kept showing the effectiveness of the pesticides considered.
- Develop an annual evaluation procedure including a review of the effectiveness of pesticide applications, impact on buffers and sensitive areas (including potable wells), public concerns, and recent toxicological information on pesticides used/proposed for use. If individual or public potable wells are located in the proximity of commercial pesticide applications, contact the regional Ecology hydrogeologist to determine if additional pesticide application control measures are necessary.
- Rinseate from equipment cleaning and/or triple-rinsing of pesticide containers should be used as product or recycled into product.

For more information, contact the Washington State University (WSU) Extension Home-Assist Program, (253) 445-4556, or Bio-Integral Resource Center (BIRC), P.O. Box 7414, Berkeley, CA.94707, or EPA to *obtain a publication entitled "Suspended, Canceled, and Restricted Pesticides" which lists all restricted pesticides and the specific uses that are allowed.*

Applicable Operational BMPs for Vegetation Management:

- Use at least an eight-inch "topsoil" layer with at least 8 percent organic matter to provide a sufficient vegetation-growing medium. Amending existing landscapes and turf systems by increasing the percent organic matter and depth of topsoil can substantially improve the permeability of the soil, the disease and drought resistance of the vegetation, and reduce fertilizer demand. This reduces the demand for fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides. Organic matter is the least water-soluble form of nutrients that can be added to the soil. Composted organic matter generally releases only between 2 and 10 percent of its total nitrogen annually, and this release corresponds closely to the plant growth cycle. Return natural plant debris and mulch to the soil, to continue recycling nutrients indefinitely.
- Select the appropriate turfgrass mixture for the climate and soil type. Certain tall fescues and rye grasses resist insect attack because the symbiotic endophytic fungi found naturally in their tissues repel or kill common leaf and stem-eating lawn insects. However, they do not, repel root-feeding lawn pests such as Crane Fly larvae, and are toxic to ruminants such as cattle and sheep. The fungus causes no known adverse effects to the host plant or to humans. Endophytic grasses are commercially available; use them in areas such as parks or golf courses where grazing does not occur. Local agricultural or gardening resources such as Washington State University Extension office can offer advice on which types of grass are best suited to the area and soil type.
- Use the following seeding and planting BMPs, or equivalent BMPs to obtain information on grass mixtures, temporary and permanent seeding procedures, maintenance of a recently planted area, and fertilizer application rates: *Temporary and Permanent Seeding*, *Mulching*, *Plastic Covering*, and *Sodding* as described in Volume II.
- Adjusting the soil properties of the subject site can assist in selection of desired plant species. For example, design a constructed wetland to resist the invasion of reed canary grass by layering specific strata of organic matters (e.g., composted forest product residuals) and creating a mildly acidic pH and carbon-rich soil medium. Consult a soil restoration specialist for site-specific conditions.
- Aerate lawns regularly in areas of heavy use where the soil tends to become compacted. Conduct aeration while the grasses in the lawn are growing most vigorously. Remove layers of thatch greater than ¾-inch deep.

- Mowing is a stress-creating activity for turfgrass. Grass decreases its productivity when mown too short and there is less growth of roots and rhizomes. The turf becomes less tolerant of environmental stresses, more disease prone and more reliant on outside means such as pesticides, fertilizers, and irrigation to remain healthy. Set the mowing height at the highest acceptable level and mow at times and intervals designed to minimize stress on the turf. Generally mowing only 1/3 of the grass blade height will prevent stressing the turf.

Irrigation:

- The depth from which a plant normally extracts water depends on the rooting depth of the plant. Appropriately irrigated lawn grasses normally root in the top 6 to 12 inches of soil; lawns irrigated on a daily basis often root only in the top 1 inch of soil. Improper irrigation can encourage pest problems, leach nutrients, and make a lawn completely dependent on artificial watering. The amount of water applied depends on the normal rooting depth of the turfgrass species used, the available water holding capacity of the soil, and the efficiency of the irrigation system. Consult with the local water utility, Conservation District, or Cooperative Extension office to help determine optimum irrigation practices.

Fertilizer Management:

- Turfgrass is most responsive to nitrogen fertilization, followed by potassium and phosphorus. Fertilization needs vary by site depending on plant, soil, and climatic conditions. Evaluation of soil nutrient levels through regular testing ensures the best possible efficiency and economy of fertilization. For details on soils testing, contact the local Conservation District, a soils testing professional, or a Washington State University Extension office.
- Apply fertilizers in amounts appropriate for the target vegetation and at the time of year that minimizes losses to surface and ground waters. Do not fertilize when the soil is dry. Alternatively, do not apply fertilizers within three days prior to predicted rainfall. The longer the period between fertilizer application and either rainfall or irrigation, the less fertilizer runoff occurs.
- Use slow release fertilizers such as methylene urea, IDBU, or resin coated fertilizers when appropriate, generally in the spring. Use of slow release fertilizers is especially important in areas with sandy or gravelly soils.
- Time the fertilizer application to periods of maximum plant uptake. Ecology generally recommends application in the fall and spring, although Washington State University turf specialists recommend four fertilizer applications per year.

- Properly trained persons should apply all fertilizers. Apply no fertilizer at commercial and industrial facilities, to grass swales, filter strips, or buffer areas that drain to sensitive water bodies unless approved by the local jurisdiction.

Integrated Pest Management

An IPM program might consist of the following steps:

Step 1: Correctly identify problem pests and understand their life cycle

Step 2: Establish tolerance thresholds for pests.

Step 3: Monitor to detect and prevent pest problems.

Step 4: Modify the maintenance program to promote healthy plants and discourage pests.

Step 5: Use cultural, physical, mechanical or biological controls first if pests exceed the tolerance thresholds.

Step 6: Evaluate and record the effectiveness of the control and modify maintenance practices to support lawn or landscape recovery and prevent recurrence.

For an elaboration of these steps, refer to Appendix IV-F.

S412 BMPs for Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material

Description of Pollutant Sources: Operators typically conduct loading/unloading of liquid and solid materials at industrial and commercial facilities at shipping and receiving, outside storage, fueling areas, etc. Materials transferred can include products, raw materials, intermediate products, waste materials, fuels, scrap metals, etc. Leaks and spills of fuels, oils, powders, organics, heavy metals, salts, acids, alkalis, etc. during transfer may cause stormwater contamination. Spills from hydraulic line breaks are a common problem at loading docks.

Pollutant Control Approach: Cover and contain the loading/unloading area where necessary to prevent run-on of stormwater and runoff of contaminated stormwater.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

At All Loading/ Unloading Areas:

- A significant amount of debris can accumulate at outside, uncovered loading/unloading areas. Sweep these surfaces frequently to remove loose material that could contaminate stormwater. Sweep areas temporarily covered after removal of the containers, logs, or other material covering the ground.
- Place drip pans, or other appropriate temporary containment device, at locations where leaks or spills may occur such as hose connections, hose reels and filler nozzles. Always use drip pans when making and

breaking connections (see Figure 2.2.2). Check loading/ unloading equipment such as valves, pumps, flanges, and connections regularly for leaks and repair as needed.

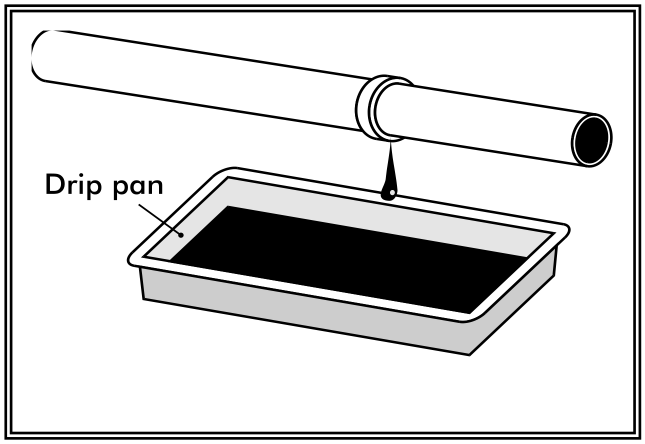


Figure 2.2.2 – Drip Pan

At Tanker Truck and Rail Transfer Areas to Above/Below-ground Storage Tanks:

- To minimize the risk of accidental spillage, prepare an "Operations Plan" that describes procedures for loading/unloading. Train the employees, especially fork lift operators, in its execution and post it or otherwise have it readily available to all employees.
- Report spills of reportable quantities to Ecology.
- Prepare and implement an Emergency Spill Cleanup Plan for the facility (See S406 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances) which includes the following BMPs:
  - Ensure the cleanup of liquid/solid spills in the loading/unloading area immediately, if a significant spill occurs, and, upon completion of the loading/unloading activity, or, at the end of the working day.
  - Retain and maintain an appropriate oil spill cleanup kit on-site for rapid cleanup of material spills. (See S406 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances).
  - Ensure that an employee trained in spill containment and cleanup is present during loading/unloading.

At Rail Transfer Areas to Above/below-ground Storage Tanks: Install a drip pan system as illustrated (see Figure 2.2.3) within the rails to collect spills/leaks from tank cars and hose connections, hose reels, and filler nozzles.

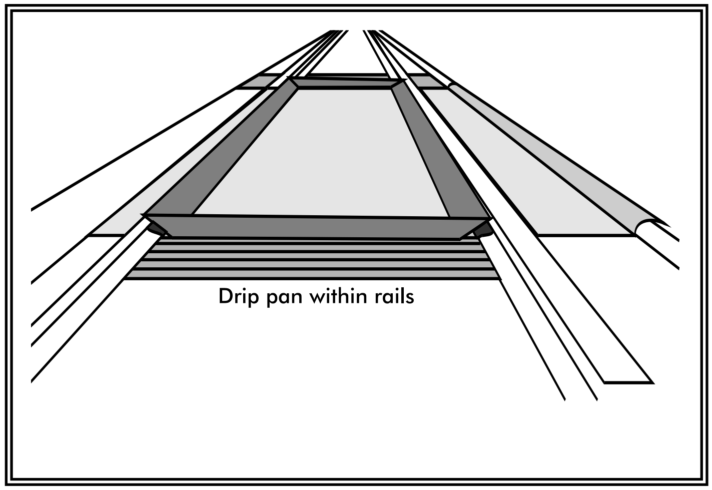


Figure 2.2.3 – Drip Pan Within Rails

Loading/Unloading from/to Marine Vessels: Facilities and procedures for the loading or unloading of petroleum products must comply with Coast Guard requirements specified in Appendix IV-D R.5.

Transfer of Small Quantities from Tanks and Containers: Refer to BMPs Storage of Liquids in Permanent Above-Ground Tanks, and Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers, for requirements on the transfer of small quantities from tanks and containers, respectively.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

At All Loading/ Unloading Areas:

- Consistent with Uniform Fire Code requirements (Appendix IV-D R.2) and to the extent practicable, conduct unloading or loading of solids and liquids in a manufacturing building, under a roof, or lean-to, or other appropriate cover.
- Berm, dike, and/or slope the loading/unloading area to prevent run-on of stormwater and to prevent the runoff or loss of any spilled material from the area.
- Place curbs along the edge of the shoreline, or slope the edge such that the stormwater can flow to an internal storm sewer system that leads to an approved treatment BMP. Avoid draining directly to the surface water from loading areas.
- Pave and slope loading/unloading areas to prevent the pooling of water. Minimize the use of catch basins and drain lines within the

interior of the paved area or place catch basins in designated "alleyways" that are not covered by material, containers, or equipment.

- Retain on-site the necessary materials for rapid cleanup of spills.

Recommended Structural Source Control BMP: For the transfer of pollutant liquids in areas that cannot contain a catastrophic spill, install an automatic shutoff system in case of unanticipated off-loading interruption (e.g. coupling break, hose rupture, overfill, etc.).

At Loading and Unloading Docks:

- Install/maintain overhangs, or door skirts that enclose the trailer end (see Figures 2.2.4 and 2.2.5) to prevent contact with rainwater.
- Design the loading/unloading area with berms, sloping, etc., to prevent the run-on of stormwater.

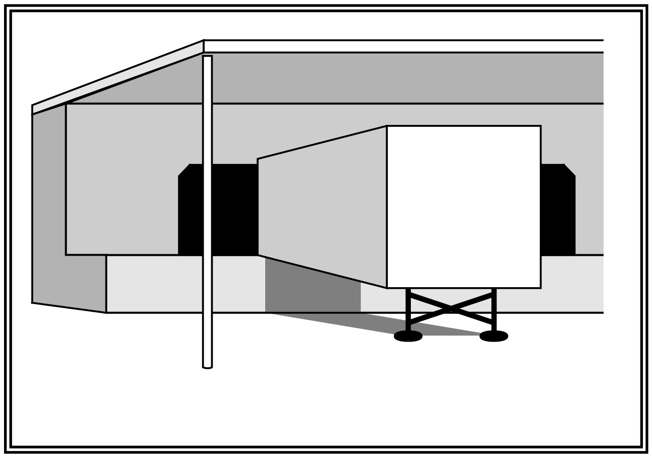


Figure 2.2.4 – Loading Dock with Door Skirt

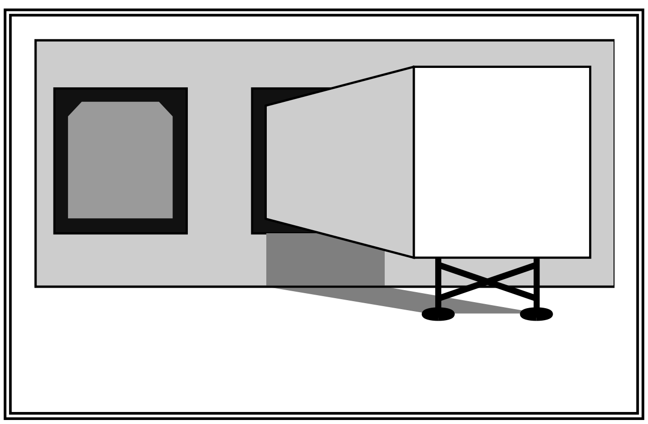


Figure 2.2.5 – Loading Dock with Overhang

At Tanker Truck Transfer Areas to Above/Below-Ground Storage Tanks:

- Pave the area on which the transfer takes place. If any transferred liquid, such as gasoline, is reactive with asphalt, pave the area with Portland cement concrete.
- Slope, berm, or dike the transfer area to a dead-end sump, spill containment sump, a spill control oil/water separator, or other spill control device. The minimum spill retention time should be 15 minutes at the greater flow rate of the highest fuel dispenser nozzle through-put rate, or the peak flow rate of the 6-month, 24-hour storm event over the surface of the containment pad, whichever is greater. The capacity of the spill containment sump should be a minimum of 50 gallons with adequate additional volume provided for grit sedimentation.

S413 BMPs for Log Sorting and Handling

Description of Pollutant Sources: Log yards are paved or unpaved areas where logs are transferred, sorted, debarked, cut, and stored to prepare them for shipment or for the production of dimensional lumber, plywood, chips, poles, or other products. Log yards are generally maintained at sawmills, shipping ports, and pulp mills. Typical pollutants include oil and grease, BOD, settleable solids, total suspended solids (including soil), high and low pH, heavy metals, pesticides, wood-based debris, and leachate

The following are pollutant sources:

- Log storage, rollout, sorting, scaling, and cutting areas
- Log and liquid loading areas
- Log sprinkling
- Debarking, bark bin and conveyor areas
- Bark, ash, sawdust and wood debris piles, and solid wastes
- Metal salvage areas
- Truck, rail, ship, stacker, and loader access areas
- Log trucks, stackers, loaders, forklifts, and other heavy equipment
- Maintenance shops and parking areas
- Cleaning areas for vehicles, parts, and equipment
- Storage and handling areas for hydraulic oils, lubricants, fuels, paints, liquid wastes, and other liquid materials
- Pesticide usage for log preservation and surface protection
- Application of herbicides for weed control
- Contaminated soil resulting from leaks or spills of fluids

Ecology's Baseline General Permit Requirements:

Industries with log yards are required to obtain coverage under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit for discharges of stormwater associated with industrial activities. The permit requires preparation and on-site retention of an Industrial Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). Required and recommended operational, structural source control, and treatment BMPs are presented in detail in Ecology's Guidance Document: *Industrial Stormwater General Permit Implementation Manual for Log Yards*, Publication # 04-10-031. Ecology recommends that all log yard facilities obtain a copy of this document.

S414 BMPs for Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment

Description of Pollutant Sources: Pollutant sources include parts/vehicle cleaning, spills/leaks of fuel and other liquids, replacement of liquids, outdoor storage of batteries/liquids/parts, and vehicle parking.

Pollutant Control Approach: Control of leaks and spills of fluids using good housekeeping and cover and containment BMPs.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Inspect all incoming vehicles, parts, and equipment stored temporarily outside for leaks.
- Use drip pans or containers under parts or vehicles that drip or that are likely to drip liquids, such as during dismantling of liquid containing parts or removal or transfer of liquids.
- Remove batteries and liquids from vehicles and equipment in designated areas designed to prevent stormwater contamination. Store cracked batteries in a covered non-leaking secondary containment system.
- Remove liquids from vehicles retired for scrap.
- Empty oil and fuel filters before disposal. Provide for proper disposal of waste oil and fuel.
- Do not pour/convey washwater, liquid waste, or other pollutants into storm drains or to surface water. Check with the local sanitary sewer authority for approval to convey water to a sanitary sewer.
- Do not connect maintenance and repair shop floor drains to storm drains or to surface water.
- To allow for snowmelt during the winter, install a drainage trench with a sump for particulate collection. Use the drainage trench for draining the snowmelt only and not for discharging any vehicular or shop pollutants.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Conduct all maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment in a building, or other covered impervious containment area that is sloped to prevent run-on of uncontaminated stormwater and runoff of contaminated water.
- Operators may conduct maintenance of refrigeration engines in refrigerated trailers in the parking area. Exercise due caution to avoid the release of engine or refrigeration fluids to storm drains or surface water.
- Park large mobile equipment, such as log stackers, in a designated contained area.

Additional applicable BMPs:

- S409 BMPs for Fueling at Dedicated Stations
- S410 BMPs for Illicit Connections to Storm Drains
- S412 BMPs for Loading and Unloading Areas for Liquid or Solid Material
- S426 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances
- S427 BMPs Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers
- S428 BMPs for Storage of Liquids in Permanent Aboveground Tanks
- S429 BMPs for Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, By-Products, or Finished Products
- S431 BMPs for Washing and Steam Cleaning Vehicle/Equipment/Building Structures

Note this applicable treatment BMP for contaminated stormwater.

Applicable Treatment BMPs: Convey contaminated stormwater runoff from vehicle staging and maintenance areas to a sanitary sewer, if allowed by the local sewer authority, or to an API or CP oil and water separator followed by a basic treatment BMP (See Volume V), applicable filter, or other equivalent oil treatment system.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs:

- Store damaged vehicles inside a building or other covered containment, until successfully removing all liquids.
- Clean parts with aqueous detergent based solutions or non-chlorinated solvents such as kerosene or high flash mineral spirits, and/or use wire brushing or sand blasting whenever practicable. Avoid using toxic liquid cleaners such as methylene chloride, 1,1,1-trichloroethane, trichloroethylene or similar chlorinated solvents. Choose cleaning agents that can be recycled.
- Inspect all BMPs regularly, particularly after a significant storm. Identify and correct deficiencies to ensure that the BMPs are functioning as intended.

- Avoid hosing down work areas. Use dry methods for cleaning leaked fluids.
- Recycle greases, used oil, oil filters, antifreeze, cleaning solutions, automotive batteries, hydraulic fluids, transmission fluids, and engine oils (see Appendix IV-C).
- Do not mix dissimilar or incompatible waste liquids stored for recycling.

S415 BMPs for Maintenance of Public and Private Utility Corridors and Facilities

Description of Pollutant Sources: Passageways and equipment at petroleum product, natural gas, and water pipelines, and electrical power transmission corridors and rights-of-way can be sources of pollutants such as herbicides used for vegetation management, and eroded soil particles from unpaved access roads. At pump stations, waste materials generated during maintenance activities may be temporarily stored outside. Additional potential pollutant sources include the leaching of preservatives from wood utility poles, PCBs in older transformers, water removed from underground transformer vaults, and leaks/spills from petroleum pipelines. The following are potential pollutants: oil and grease, TSS, BOD, organics, PCBs, pesticides, and heavy metals.

Pollutant Control Approach: Control of fertilizer and pesticide applications, soil erosion, and site debris that can contaminate stormwater.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Implement BMPs for "Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Management" and R.7 in Appendix IV-D on Pesticide Regulations.
- When removing water or sediments from electric transformer vaults, determine the presence of contaminants before disposing of the water and sediments. This includes inspecting for the presence of oil or sheen, and determining from records or testing if the transformers contain PCBs. If records or tests indicate that the sediments or water are contaminated above applicable levels, manage these media in accordance with applicable federal and state regulations, including the federal PCB rules (40 CFR 761) and the state MTCA cleanup regulations (Chapter 173-340 WAC). Water removed from the vaults can be discharged in accordance with the federal 40 CFR 761.79, and state regulations (Chapter 173-201A WAC and Chapter 173-200 WAC), or via the sanitary sewer if the requirements, including applicable permits, for such a discharge are met. (See also Appendix IV-D R.1 and R.3).
- Within utility corridors, prepare maintenance procedures to minimize the erosion of soil. An implementation schedule may provide for a vegetative, gravel, or equivalent cover that minimizes bare or thinly vegetated ground surfaces within the corridor.

- Provide maintenance practices to prevent stormwater from accumulating and draining across and/or onto roadways. Convey stormwater through roadside ditches and culverts. The road should be crowned, outsloped, water barred, or otherwise left in a condition not conducive to erosion. Appropriately maintaining grassy roadside ditches discharging to surface waters is an effective way of removing some pollutants associated with sediments carried by stormwater.
- Maintain ditches and culverts at an appropriate frequency to ensure that plugging and flooding across the roadbed, with resulting overflow erosion, does not occur.
- Apply the appropriate BMPs in this Volume for the storage of waste materials that can contaminate stormwater.

Recommended Operational BMPs

- When selecting utility poles for a specific location, consider the potential environmental effects of the pole or poles during storage, handling, and end-use, as well as its cost, safety, efficacy, and expected life. Use wood products treated with chemical preservatives made in accordance with generally accepted industry standards such as the American Wood Preservers Association Standards. Consider alternative materials or technologies if placing poles in or near an environmentally sensitive area, such as a wetland or a drinking water well. Alternative technologies include poles constructed with material(s) other than wood such as fiberglass composites, metal, or concrete. Consider other technologies and materials, such as sleeves or caissons for wood poles, when they are determined to be practicable and available.
- As soon as practicable remove all litter from wire cutting/replacing operations.
- Implement temporary erosion and sediment control in areas cleared of trees and vegetation and during the construction of new roads.

S416 BMPs for Maintenance of Roadside Ditches

Description of Pollutant Sources: Common road debris including eroded soil, oils, vegetative particles, and heavy metals can be sources of stormwater pollutants.

Pollutant Control Approach: Maintain roadside ditches to preserve the condition and capacity for which they were originally constructed, and to minimize bare or thinly vegetated ground surfaces. Maintenance practices should provide for erosion and sediment control (Refer to BMP *Landscaping and Lawn/Vegetation Management*).

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Inspect roadside ditches regularly to identify sediment accumulations and localized erosion.
- Clean ditches on a regular basis, as needed. Keep ditches free of rubbish and debris.
- Vegetation in ditches often prevents erosion and cleanses runoff waters. Remove vegetation only when flow is blocked or excess sediments have accumulated. Conduct ditch maintenance (seeding, fertilizer application, harvesting) in late spring and/or early fall, where possible. This allows re-establishment of vegetative cover by the next wet season thereby minimizing erosion of the ditch as well as making the ditch effective as a biofilter.
- In the area between the edge of the pavement and the bottom of the ditch, commonly known as the "bare earth zone," use grass vegetation, wherever possible. Establish vegetation from the edge of the pavement, if possible, or at least from the top of the slope of the ditch.
- Maintain diversion ditches on top of cut slopes constructed to prevent slope erosion by intercepting surface drainage to retain their diversion shape and capability.
- Do not leave ditch cleanings on the roadway surfaces. Sweep, collect, and dispose of dirt and debris remaining on the pavement at the completion of ditch cleaning operations.
- Consider screening roadside ditch cleanings, not contaminated by spills or other releases and not associated with a stormwater treatment system such as a bioswale, to remove litter. Separate screenings into soil and vegetative matter (leaves, grass, needles, branches, etc.) categories. Compost or dispose of the vegetative matter in a municipal waste landfill. Consult with the jurisdictional health department to discuss use or disposal options for the soil portion. For more information, please see *Recommendations for Management of Street Wastes*, in Appendix IV-G of this volume.
- Roadside ditch cleanings contaminated by spills or other releases known or suspected to contain dangerous waste must be handled following the Dangerous Waste Regulations (Chapter 173-303 WAC). If testing determines materials are not dangerous waste but contaminants are present, consult with the jurisdictional health department for disposal options.
- Examine culverts on a regular basis for scour or sedimentation at the inlet and outlet, and repair as necessary. Give priority to those culverts conveying perennial and/or salmon-bearing streams and culverts near streams in areas of high sediment load, such as those near subdivisions during construction.

Recommended Treatment BMPs:

Install biofiltration swales and filter strips – (See Chapter 9, Volume V) to treat roadside runoff wherever practicable and use engineered topsoils wherever necessary to maintain adequate vegetation. These systems can improve infiltration and stormwater pollutant control upstream of roadside ditches.

S417 BMPs for Maintenance of Stormwater Drainage and Treatment Systems

Description of Pollutant Sources: Facilities include roadside catch basins on arterials and within residential areas, conveyance systems, detention facilities such as ponds and vaults, oil/water separators, biofilters, settling basins, infiltration systems, and all other types of stormwater treatment systems presented in Volume V. Oil and grease, hydrocarbons, debris, heavy metals, sediments and contaminated water are found in catch basins, oil and water separators, settling basins, etc.

Pollutant Control Approach: Provide maintenance and cleaning of debris, sediments, and oil from stormwater collection, conveyance, and treatment systems to obtain proper operation.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

Maintain stormwater treatment facilities per the operations and maintenance (O&M) procedures presented in Section 4.6 of Volume V in addition to the following BMPs:

- Inspect and clean treatment BMPs, conveyance systems, and catch basins as needed, and determine necessary O&M improvements.
- Promptly repair any deterioration threatening the structural integrity of stormwater facilities. These include replacement of clean-out gates, catch basin lids, and rock in emergency spillways.
- Ensure adequacy of storm sewer capacities and prevent heavy sediment discharges to the sewer system.
- Regularly remove debris and sludge from BMPs used for peak-rate control, treatment, etc. and discharge to a sanitary sewer if approved by the sewer authority, or truck to an appropriate local or state government approved disposal site.
- Clean catch basins when the depth of deposits reaches 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to the invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin. However, in no case should there be less than six inches clearance from the debris surface to the invert of the lowest pipe. Some catch basins (for example, WSDOT Type 1L basins) may have as little as 12 inches sediment storage below the invert. These catch basins need frequent inspection and cleaning to prevent scouring. Where these catch basins are part of a stormwater collection and treatment system, the system

owner/operator may choose to concentrate maintenance efforts on downstream control devices as part of a systems approach.

- Clean woody debris in a catch basin as frequently as needed to ensure proper operation of the catchbasin.
- Post warning signs; "Dump No Waste - Drains to Ground Water," "Streams," "Lakes," or emboss on or adjacent to all storm drain inlets *where possible*.
- Disposal of sediments and liquids from the catch basins must comply with "Recommendations for Management of Street Wastes" described in Appendix IV-G of this volume.

Additional Applicable BMPs: Select additional applicable BMPs from this chapter depending on the pollutant sources and activities conducted at the facility. Those BMPs include:

- S425 BMPs for Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites
- S427 BMPs for Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers
- S406 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances
- S410 BMPs for Illicit Connections to Storm Drains
- S430 BMPs for Urban Streets

S418 BMPs for Manufacturing Activities - Outside

Description of Pollutant Sources: Manufacturing pollutant sources include outside process areas, stack emissions, and areas where manufacturing activity has taken place in the past and significant exposed pollutant materials remain.

Pollution Control Approach: Cover and contain outside manufacturing and prevent stormwater run-on and contamination, where feasible.

Applicable Operational BMP:

- Sweep paved areas regularly, as needed, to prevent contamination of stormwater.
- Alter the activity by eliminating or minimizing the contamination of stormwater.
- **Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:** Enclose the activity (see Figure 2.2.6): If possible, enclose the manufacturing activity in a building.
- Cover the activity and connect floor drains to a sanitary sewer, if approved by the local sewer authority. Berm or slope the floor as needed to prevent drainage of pollutants to outside areas. (Figure 2.2.7)

- Isolate and segregate pollutants as feasible. Convey the segregated pollutants to a sanitary sewer, process treatment, or a dead-end sump depending on available methods and applicable permit requirements.

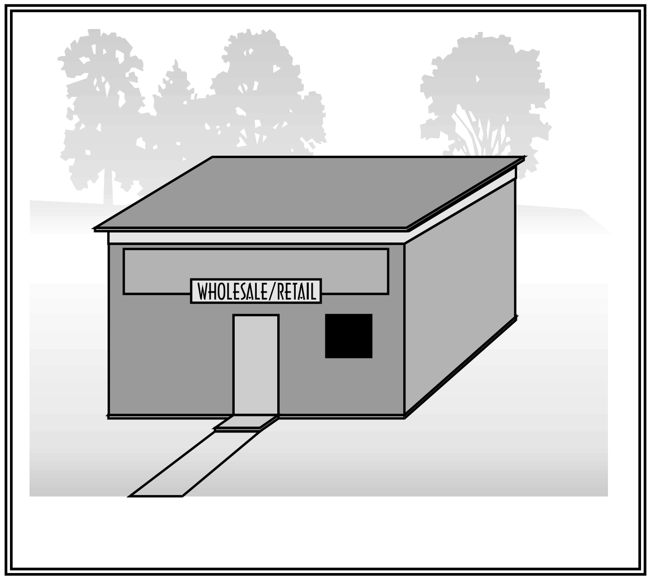


Figure 2.2.6 – Enclose the Activity

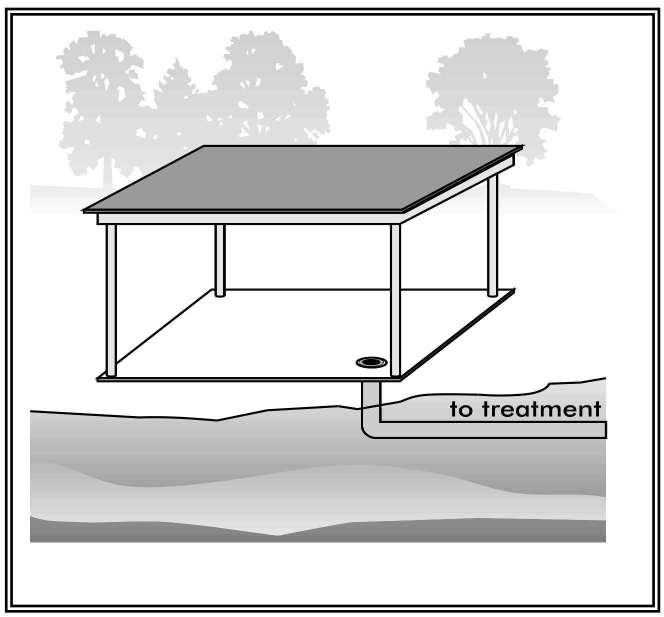


Figure 2.2.7 – Cover the Activity

S419 BMPs for Mobile Fueling of Vehicles and Heavy Equipment

Description of Pollutant Sources: Mobile fueling, also known as fleet fueling, wet fueling, or wet hosing, is the practice of filling fuel tanks of vehicles by tank trucks that are driven to the yards or sites where the vehicles to be fueled are located. Regulators categorize diesel fuel as a

Note that some local fire departments may have restrictions on mobile fueling practices.

Class II Combustible Liquid, whereas they categorize gasoline as a Flammable Liquid.

Historically organizations conducted mobile fueling for off-road vehicles operated for extended periods in remote areas. This includes construction sites, logging operations, and farms. Some organizations conduct mobile fueling of on-road vehicles commercially in the State of Washington.

Pollutant Control Approach: Operators typically need proper training of the fueling operators, and the use of spill/drip control and reliable fuel transfer equipment with backup shutoff valving.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

Organizations and individuals conducting mobile fueling operations must implement the bulleted BMPs below. The operating procedures for the driver/operator should be simple, clear, effective, and their implementation verified by the organization liable for environmental and third party damage.

- Ensure that the local fire department approves all mobile fueling operations. Comply with local and Washington State fire codes.
- In fueling locations that are in close proximity to sensitive aquifers, designated wetlands, wetland buffers, or other waters of the State, approval by local jurisdictions is necessary to ensure compliance with additional local requirements.
- Ensure compliance with all 49 CFR 178 requirements for DOT 406 cargo tanker. Documentation from a Department of Transportation (DOT) Registered Inspector provides proof of compliance.
- Ensure the presence and the constant observation/monitoring of the driver/operator at the fuel transfer location at all times during fuel transfer and ensure implementation of the following procedures at the fuel transfer locations:
  - Locate the point of fueling at least 25 feet from the nearest storm sewer or inside an impervious containment with a volumetric holding capacity equal to or greater than 110 percent of the fueling tank volume, or covering the storm sewer to ensure no inflow of spilled or leaked fuel. Covers are not required for storm sewers that convey the inflow to a spill control separator approved by the local jurisdiction and the fire department. Potential spill/leak conveyance surfaces must be impervious and in good repair.
  - Place a drip pan, or an absorbent pad under each fueling location prior to and during all dispensing operations. The pan (must be liquid tight) and the absorbent pad must have a capacity of at least 5 gallons. There is no need to report spills retained in the drip pan or the pad.

- Manage the handling and operation of fuel transfer hoses and nozzle, drip pan(s), and absorbent pads as needed to prevent spills/leaks of fuel from reaching the ground, storm sewer, and receiving waters.
- Avoid extending the fueling hoses across a traffic lane without fluorescent traffic cones, or equivalent devices, conspicuously placed to block all traffic from crossing the fuel hose.
- Remove the fill nozzle and cease filling the tank when the automatic shut-off valve engages. Do not lock automatic shutoff fueling nozzles in the open position.
- Do not "top off" the fuel receiving equipment.

- Provide the driver/operator of the fueling vehicle with:
  - Adequate flashlights or other mobile lighting to view fuel fill openings with poor accessibility. Consult with local fire department for additional lighting requirements.
  - Two-way communication with his/her home base.
- Train the driver/operator annually in spill prevention and cleanup measures and emergency procedures. Make all employees aware of the significant liability associated with fuel spills.
- The responsible manager shall properly sign and date the fueling operating procedures. Distribute procedures to the operators, retain them in the organization files, and make them available in the event an authorized government agency requests a review.
- Immediately notify the local fire department (911) and the appropriate regional office of Ecology in the event of any spill entering surface or ground waters. Establish a "call down list" to ensure the rapid and proper notification of management and government officials should any significant amount of product be lost off-site. Keep the list in a protected but readily accessible location in the mobile fueling truck. The "call down list" should also pre-identify spill response contractors available in the area to ensure the rapid removal of significant product spillage into the environment.
- Maintain a minimum of the following spill clean-up materials in all fueling vehicles, that are readily available for use:
  - Non-water absorbents capable of absorbing at least15 gallons of diesel fuel.
  - A storm drain plug or cover kit.
  - A non-water absorbent containment boom of a minimum 10 feet in length with a 12-gallon minimum absorbent capacity.
  - A non-spark generating shovel (a steel shovels could generate a spark and cause an explosion in the right environment around a spill).

- Two, five-gallon buckets with lids.

- Use automatic shutoff nozzles for dispensing the fuel. Replace automatic shut-off nozzles as recommended by the manufacturer.
- Maintain and replace equipment on fueling vehicles, particularly hoses and nozzles, at established intervals to prevent failures.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs: Include the following fuel transfer site components:

- Automatic fuel transfer shut-off nozzles.
- An adequate lighting system at the filling point.

S420 BMPs for Painting/ Finishing /Coating of Vehicles/Boats/ Buildings/ Equipment

Description of Pollutant Sources: Surface preparation and the application of paints, finishes, and/or coatings to vehicles, boats, buildings, and/or equipment outdoors can be sources of pollutants. Potential pollutants include organic compounds, oils and greases, heavy metals, and suspended solids.

Pollutant Control Approach: Cover and contain painting and sanding operations and apply good housekeeping and preventive maintenance practices to prevent the contamination of stormwater with painting over sprays and grit from sanding.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Train employees in the careful application of paints, finishes, and coatings to reduce misuse and over spray. Use drop cloths underneath outdoor painting, scraping, sandblasting work, and properly clean and temporarily store collected debris daily.
- Do not conduct spraying, blasting, or sanding activities over open water or where wind may blow paint into water.
- Wipe up spills with rags and other absorbent materials immediately. Do not hose down the area to a storm sewer, receiving water, or conveyance ditch.
- On marine dock areas sweep rather than hose down debris. Collect any hose water generated and convey to appropriate treatment and disposal.
- Use an effective runoff control device if dust, grit, washwater, or other pollutants may escape the work area and enter a catch basin. The containment device(s) must be in place at the beginning of the workday. Collect contaminated runoff and solids and properly dispose of such wastes before removing the containment device(s) at the end of the workday.

- Use a ground cloth, pail, drum, drip pan, tarpaulin, or other protective device for activities such as outdoor paint mixing and tool cleaning, or where spills can contaminate stormwater.
- Properly dispose of all wastes and prevent all uncontrolled releases to the air, ground, or water.
- Clean brushes and tools covered with non-water-based paints, finishes, or other materials in a manner that allows collection of used solvents (e.g., paint thinner, turpentine, xylol) for recycling or proper disposal.
- Store toxic materials under cover (tarp, etc.) during precipitation events and when not in use to prevent contact with stormwater.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs: Enclose and/or contain all work while using a spray gun or conducting sand blasting and in compliance with applicable air pollution control, OSHA, and WISHA requirements. Do not conduct outside spraying, grit blasting, or sanding activities during windy conditions that render containment ineffective.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs:

- Clean paintbrushes and tools covered with water-based paints in sinks connected to sanitary sewers. Dump pollutants collected in portable containers into a sanitary sewer drain, NOT a stormwater drain.
- Recycle paint, paint thinner, solvents, pressure washwater, and any other recyclable materials.
- Use efficient spray equipment such as electrostatic, air-atomized, high volume/low pressure, or gravity feed spray equipment.
- Purchase recycled paints, paint thinner, solvents, and other products, if feasible.

S421 BMPs for Parking and Storage of Vehicles and Equipment

Description of Pollutant Sources: Public and commercial parking lots such as retail store, fleet vehicle (including rent-a-car lots and car dealerships), equipment sale and rental parking lots, and parking lot driveways, can be sources of toxic hydrocarbons and other organic compounds, including oils and greases, metals, and suspended solids.

Pollutant Control Approach: If the parking lot is a **high-use site** as defined below, provide appropriate oil removal equipment for the contaminated stormwater runoff.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- If washing a parking lot, discharge the washwater to a sanitary sewer, if allowed by the local sewer authority, or other approved wastewater treatment system, or collect washwater for off-site disposal.

- Do not hose down the area to a storm sewer or receiving water. Vacuum sweep parking lots, storage areas, and driveways regularly to collect dirt, waste, and debris.

Applicable Treatment BMPs: An oil removal system such as an API or CP oil and water separator, catch basin filter, or equivalent BMP, approved by the local jurisdiction, is necessary for parking lots meeting the threshold vehicle traffic intensity level of a *high-use site.*

Vehicle High-Use Sites

Establishments subject to vehicle high-use intensity are significant sources of oil contamination of stormwater. Examples of potential high use areas include customer parking lots at fast food stores, grocery stores, taverns, restaurants, large shopping malls, discount warehouse stores, quick-lube shops, and banks. If the PGIS for a high-use site exceeds 5,000 square feet in a threshold discharge area, an oil control BMP from the Oil Control Menu (in Volume V) is necessary. A high-use site at a commercial or industrial establishment has one of the following characteristics: (Gaus/King County, 1994)

- Is subject to an expected average daily vehicle traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area: or
- Is subject to storage of a fleet of 25 or more diesel vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.).

S422 BMPs for Railroad Yards

Description of Pollutant Sources: Pollutant sources can include:

- Drips/leaks of vehicle fluids onto the railroad bed
- Human waste disposal
- Litter
- Locomotive/railcar/equipment cleaning areas
- Fueling areas
- Outside material storage areas
- Erosion and loss of soil particles from the railroad bed
- Maintenance and repair activities at railroad terminals
- Switching and maintenance yards
- Herbicides used for vegetation management.

Waste materials can include waste oil, solvents, degreasers, antifreeze solutions, radiator flush, acids, brake fluids, soiled rags, oil filters, sulfuric acid and battery sludges, and machine chips with residual machining oil and toxic fluids/solids lost during transit. Potential pollutants include oil and grease, TSS, BOD, organics, pesticides, and metals.

Pollutant Control Approach: Apply good housekeeping and preventive maintenance practices to control leaks and spills of liquids in railroad yard areas.

Applicable Operational and Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Implement the applicable BMPs in this chapter depending on the pollutant generating activities/sources at a railroad yard facility.
- Do not allow discharge to outside areas from toilets while a train is in transit. Use pumpout facilities to service these units.
- Use drip pans at hose/pipe connections during liquid transfer and other leak-prone areas.
- During maintenance, do not discard debris or waste liquids along the tracks or in railroad yards.

Applicable Treatment BMPs: In areas subjected to leaks/spills of oils or other chemicals, convey stormwater to appropriate treatment such as a sanitary sewer, if approved by the appropriate sewer authority, or, to a CP or API oil/water separator for floating oils, or other treatment, as approved by the local jurisdiction.

S423 BMPs for Recyclers and Scrap Yards

Description of Pollutant Sources: Includes businesses that reclaim various materials for resale or for scrap, such as vehicles and vehicle/ equipment parts, construction materials, metals, beverage containers, and papers.

Potential sources of pollutants include paper, plastic, metal scrap debris, engines, transmissions, radiators, batteries, and other materials contaminated or that contain fluids. Other pollutant sources include leachate from metal components, contaminated soil, and the erosion of soil. Activities that can generate pollutants include the transfer, dismantling, and crushing of vehicles and scrap metal; the transfer and removal of fluids; maintenance and cleaning of vehicles, parts, and equipment; and storage of fluids, parts for resale, solid wastes, scrap parts, and materials, equipment and vehicles that contain fluids; generally in uncovered areas.

Potential pollutants typically found at vehicle recycle and scrap yards include oil and grease, ethylene and propylene glycol, PCBs, total suspended solids, BOD, heavy metals, and acidic pH.

Applicable Best Management Practices:

For facilities subject to Ecology's Industrial Stormwater General Permit refer to BMP Guidance Document #94-146, *Vehicle Recyclers: A Guide for Implementing the Industrial Stormwater General National Pollutant*

Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Permit Requirements, Ecology, March 2011,website: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/94146.html. Apply the BMPs in that guidance document to scrap material recycling facilities depending on the pollutant sources existing at those facilities.

S424 BMPs for Roof/ Building Drains at Manufacturing and Commercial Buildings

Description of Pollutant Sources: Stormwater runoff from roofs and sides of manufacturing and commercial buildings can be sources of pollutants caused by leaching of roofing materials, building vents, and other air emission sources. Research has identified vapors and entrained liquid and solid droplets/particles as potential pollutants in roof/building runoff. Metals, solvents, acidic/alkaline pH, BOD, and organics, are some of the pollutant constituents identified.

Ecology has performed a study on zinc in industrial stormwater. The study is presented in Ecology Publication 08-10-025 *Suggested Practices to reduce Zinc Concentrations in Industrial Stormwater Discharges*, website: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/0810025.html. The user should refer to this document for more details on addressing zinc in stormwater.

Pollutant Control Approach: Evaluate the potential sources of stormwater pollutants and apply source control BMPs where feasible.

Applicable Operational Source Control BMPs:

- If leachates and/or emissions from buildings are suspected sources of stormwater pollutants, then sample and analyze the stormwater draining from the building.
- Sweep the area routinely to remove any zinc residuals.
- If a roof/building stormwater pollutant source is identified, implement appropriate source control measures such as air pollution control equipment, selection of materials, operational changes, material recycle, process changes, etc.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Paint/coat the galvanized surfaces as described in Ecology Publication # 08-10-025.

Applicable Treatment BMPs:

Treat runoff from roofs to the appropriate level. The facility may use enhanced treatment BMPs as described in Volume V of the SWMMWW. Some facilities regulated by the Industrial Stormwater General Permit, or local jurisdiction, may have requirements than cannot be achieved with enhanced treatment BMPs. In these cases, additional treatment measures may be required. A treatment method for meeting stringent requirements such as Chitosan-Enhanced Sand Filtration may be appropriate.

S425 BMPs for Soil Erosion and Sediment Control at Industrial Sites

Description of Pollutant Sources: Industrial activities on soil areas; exposed and disturbed soils; steep grading; etc. can be sources of sediments that can contaminate stormwater runoff.

Pollutant Control Approach: Limit the exposure of erodible soil, stabilize, or cover erodible soil where necessary to prevent erosion, and/or provide treatment for stormwater contaminated with TSS caused by eroded soil.

Applicable BMPs:

Cover Practice Options:

- Vegetative cover such as grass, trees, shrubs, on erodible soil areas.
- Covering with mats such as clear plastic, jute, synthetic fiber.
- Preservation of natural vegetation including grass, trees, shrubs, and vines.

Structural Practice Options:

- Vegetated swale
- Dike
- Silt fence
- Check dam
- Gravel filter berm
- Sedimentation basin
- Proper grading.

(For design information refer to Volume II, "Standards and Specifications for BMPs").

S426 BMPs for Spills of Oil and Hazardous Substances

Description of Pollutant Sources: Federal law requires owners or operators of facilities engaged in drilling, producing, gathering, storing, processing, transferring, distributing, refining, or consuming oil and/or oil products to have a Spill Prevention and Emergency Cleanup Plan (SPECP). The SPECP is required if the above ground storage capacity of the facility, is 1,320 gallons or more of oil. Additionally, the SPECP is required if any single container with a capacity in excess of 660 gallons and which, due to their location, could reasonably be expected to discharge oil in harmful quantities, as defined in 40 CFR Part 110, into or upon the navigable waters of the United States or adjoining shorelines {40 CFR 112.1 (b)}. Onshore and offshore facilities, which, due to their location, could not reasonably be expected to discharge oil into or upon the navigable waters of the United States or adjoining shorelines are exempt from these regulations {40 CFR 112.1(1)(i)}. State Law requires owners of businesses that produce dangerous wastes to have a SPECP. These businesses should refer to Appendix IV-D R.6. The federal definition of oil is oil of any kind or any form, including, but not limited to petroleum, fuel oil, sludge, oil refuse, and oil mixed with wastes other than dredged spoil.

Pollutant Control Approach: Maintain, update, and implement a Spill Prevention and Emergency Cleanup Plan.

Applicable Operational BMPs: The businesses and public agencies identified in Appendix IV-A required to prepare and implement a Spill Prevention and Emergency Cleanup Plan shall implement the following:

- Prepare a Spill Prevention and Emergency Cleanup Plan (SPECP), which includes:
  - A description of the facility including the owner's name and address.
  - The nature of the activity at the facility.
  - The general types of chemicals used or stored at the facility.
  - A site plan showing the location of storage areas for chemicals, the locations of storm drains, the areas draining to them, and the location and description of any devices to stop spills from leaving the site such as positive control valves.
  - Cleanup procedures.
  - Notification procedures used in the event of a spill, such as notifying key personnel. Agencies such as Ecology, local fire department, Washington State Patrol, and the local Sewer Authority, shall be notified.
  - The name of the designated person with overall spill cleanup and notification responsibility.
- Train key personnel in the implementation of the SPECP. Prepare a summary of the plan and post it at appropriate points in the building, identifying the spill cleanup coordinators, location of cleanup kits, and phone numbers of regulatory agencies to contact in the event of a spill.
- Update the SPECP regularly.
- Immediately notify Ecology, the local jurisdiction, and the local Sewer Authority if a spill may reach sanitary or storm sewers, ground water, or surface water, in accordance with federal and Ecology spill reporting requirements.

- Immediately clean up spills. Do not use emulsifiers for cleanup unless there is an appropriate disposal method for the resulting oily wastewater. Do not wash absorbent material down a floor drain or into a storm sewer.
- Locate emergency spill containment and cleanup kit(s) in high-potential spill areas. The contents of the kit shall be appropriate for the type and quantities of chemical liquids stored at the facility.

Recommended Additional Operational BMP: Spill kits should include appropriately lined drums, absorbent pads, and granular or powdered materials for neutralizing acids or alkaline liquids where applicable. In fueling areas: Package absorbent material in small bags for easy use and make available small drums for storage of absorbent and/or used absorbent. Deploy spill kits in a manner that allows rapid access and use by employees.

S427 BMPs for Storage of Liquid, Food Waste, or Dangerous Waste Containers

Description of Pollutant Sources: Steel and plastic drums with volumetric capacities of 55 gallons or less are typically used at industrial facilities for container storage of liquids and powders. The BMPs specified below apply to container(s) located outside a building. Use these BMPs when temporarily storing accumulated food wastes, vegetable or animal grease, used oil, liquid feedstock, cleaning chemicals, or Dangerous Wastes (liquid or solid). These BMPs do not apply when Ecology has permitted the business to store the wastes (Appendix IV-D R.4). Leaks and spills of pollutant materials during handling and storage are the primary sources of pollutants. Oil and grease, acid/alkali pH, BOD, COD are potential pollutant constituents.

Pollutant Control Approach: Store containers in impervious containment under a roof, or other appropriate cover, or in a building. When collection trucks directly pick up roll-containers, ensure a filet is on both sides of the curb to facilitate moving the dumpster. For storage areas on-site for less than 30 days, consider using a portable temporary secondary system like that shown in Figure 2.2.8 in lieu of a permanent system as described above.

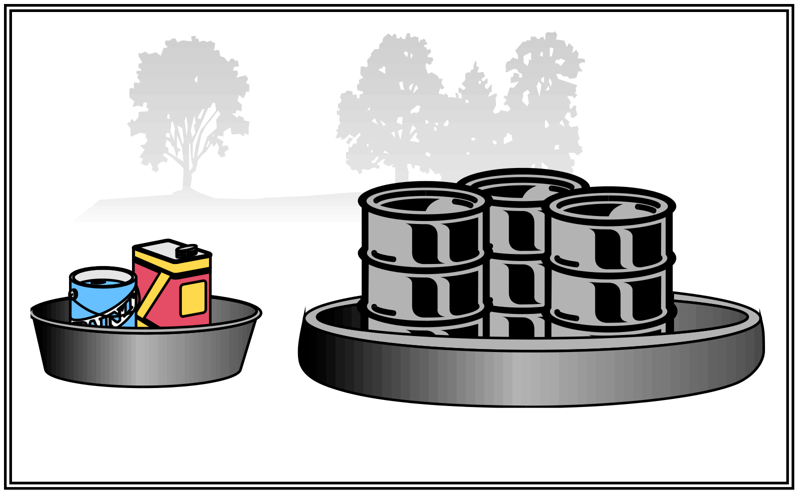


Figure 2.2.8 – Secondary Containment System

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Place tight-fitting lids on all containers.
- Place drip pans beneath all mounted container taps and at all potential drip and spill locations during filling and unloading of containers.
- Inspect container storage areas regularly for corrosion, structural failure, spills, leaks, overfills, and failure of piping systems. Check containers daily for leaks/spills. Replace containers, and replace and tighten bungs in drums as needed.
- Businesses accumulating Dangerous Wastes that do not contain free liquids need only to store these wastes in a sloped designated area with the containers elevated or otherwise protected from storm water run-on.
- Secure drums when stored in an area where unauthorized persons may gain access in a manner that prevents accidental spillage, pilferage, or any unauthorized use (see Figure 2.2.9).

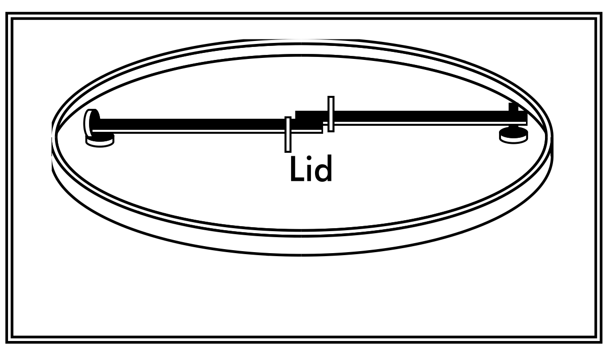


Figure 2.2.9 – Locking System for Drum Lid

- If the material is a Dangerous Waste, the business owner must comply with any additional Ecology requirements as specified in Appendix IV-D R.3.
- Storage of reactive, ignitable, or flammable liquids must comply with the Uniform Fire Code (Appendix IV-D R.2).
- Cover dumpsters, or keep them under cover such as a lean-to, to prevent the entry of stormwater. Replace or repair leaking garbage dumpsters.
- Drain dumpsters and/or dumpster pads to sanitary sewer. Keep dumpster lids closed. Install waterproof liners.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Keep containers with Dangerous Waste, food waste, or other potential pollutant liquids inside a building unless this is not feasible due to site constraints or Uniform/International Fire Code requirements.
- Store containers in a designated area, which is covered, bermed or diked, paved and impervious in order to contain leaks and spills (see Figure 2.2.10). Slope the secondary containment to drain into a dead-end sump for the collection of leaks and small spills.
- For liquid wastes, surround the containers with a dike as illustrated in Figure 2.2.10. The dike must be of sufficient height to provide a volume of either 10 percent of the total enclosed container volume or 110 percent of the volume contained in the largest container, whichever is greater.

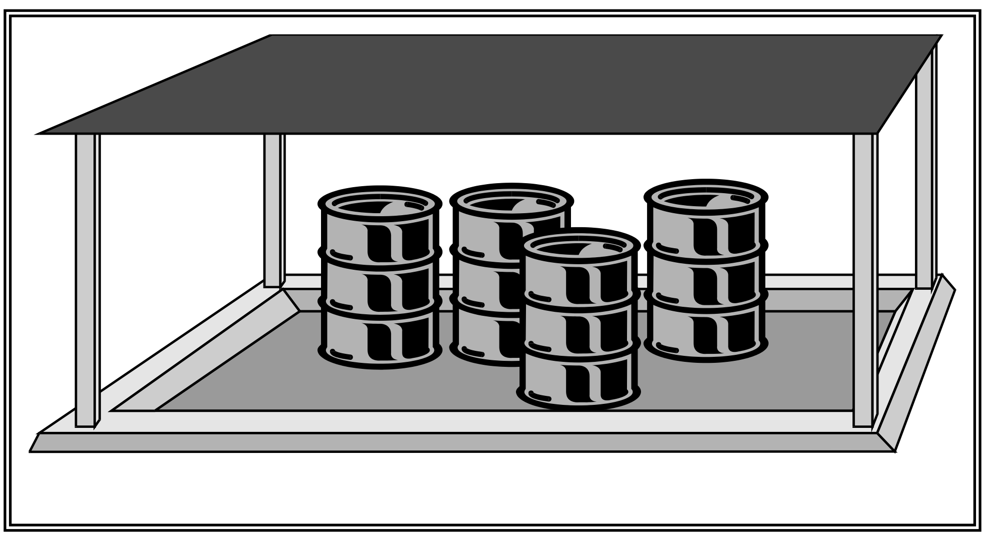


Figure 2.2.10 – Covered and Bermed Containment Area

- Where material is temporarily stored in drums, use a containment system as illustrated, in lieu of the above system (see Figure 2.2.8).

- Place containers mounted for direct removal of a liquid chemical for use by employees inside a containment area as described above. Use a drip pan during liquid transfer (see Figure 2.2.11).

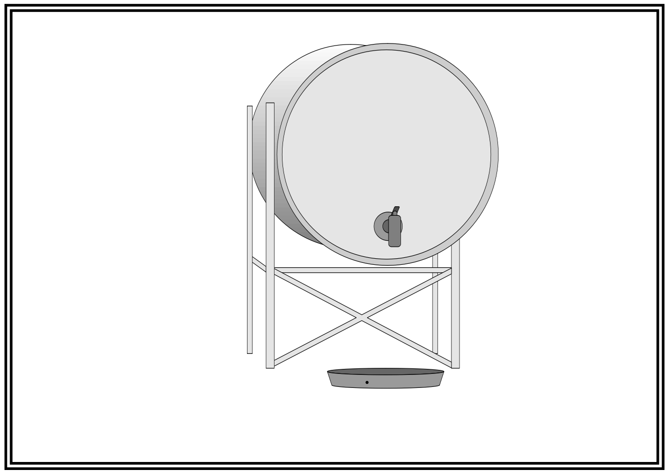


Figure 2.2.11 – Mounted Container - with drip pan
(note that the secondary containment is not shown in this figure)

Applicable Treatment BMP:

Note this treatment BMP for contaminated stormwater from drum storage areas.

- For contaminated stormwater in the containment area, connect the sump outlet to a sanitary sewer, if approved by the local Sewer Authority, or to appropriate treatment such as an API or CP oil/water separator, catch basin filter or other appropriate system (see Volume V). Equip the sump outlet with a normally closed valve to prevent the release of spilled or leaked liquids, especially flammables (compliance with Fire Codes), and dangerous liquids. Open this valve only for the conveyance of contaminated stormwater to treatment.
- Another option for discharge of contaminated stormwater is to pump it from a dead-end sump or catchment to a tank truck or other appropriate vehicle for off-site treatment and/or disposal.

S428 BMPs for Storage of Liquids in Permanent Aboveground Tanks

Description of Pollutant Sources: Aboveground tanks containing liquids (excluding uncontaminated water) may be equipped with a valved drain, vent, pump, and bottom hose connection. Aboveground tanks may be heated with steam heat exchangers equipped with steam traps, if required. Leaks and spills can occur at connections and during liquid transfer. Oil and grease, organics, acids, alkalis, and heavy metals in tank water and condensate drainage can also cause stormwater contamination at storage tanks.

Pollutant Control Approach: Install secondary containment or a double-walled tank. Slope the containment area to a drain with a sump. Operators may need to discharge stormwater collected in the containment area to treatment such as an API or CP oil/water separator, or equivalent BMP. Add safeguards against accidental releases including protective guards around tanks to protect against vehicle or forklift damage, and tagging valves to reduce human error. *Tank water and condensate discharges are process wastewater that may need an NPDES Permit.*

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Inspect the tank containment areas regularly for leaks/spills, cracks, corrosion, etc. to identify problem components such as fittings, pipe connections, and valves
- Place adequately sized drip pans beneath all mounted taps and drip/spill locations during filling/unloading of tanks. Operators may need valved drain tubing in mounted drip pans.
- Vacuum sweep and clean the tank storage area regularly, if paved.
- Replace or repair tanks that are leaking, corroded, or otherwise deteriorating.
- All installations shall comply with the Uniform Fire Code (Appendix IV-D R.2) and the National Electric Code.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Locate permanent tanks in impervious (Portland cement concrete or equivalent) secondary containment surrounded by dikes as illustrated in Figure 2.2.12, or use UL Approved double-walled tanks. The dike must be of sufficient height to provide a containment volume of either 10 percent of the total enclosed tank volume or 110 percent of the volume contained in the largest tank, whichever is greater.
- Slope the secondary containment to drain to a dead-end sump or equivalent, for the collection of small spills.
- Include a tank overfill protection system to minimize the risk of spillage during loading.

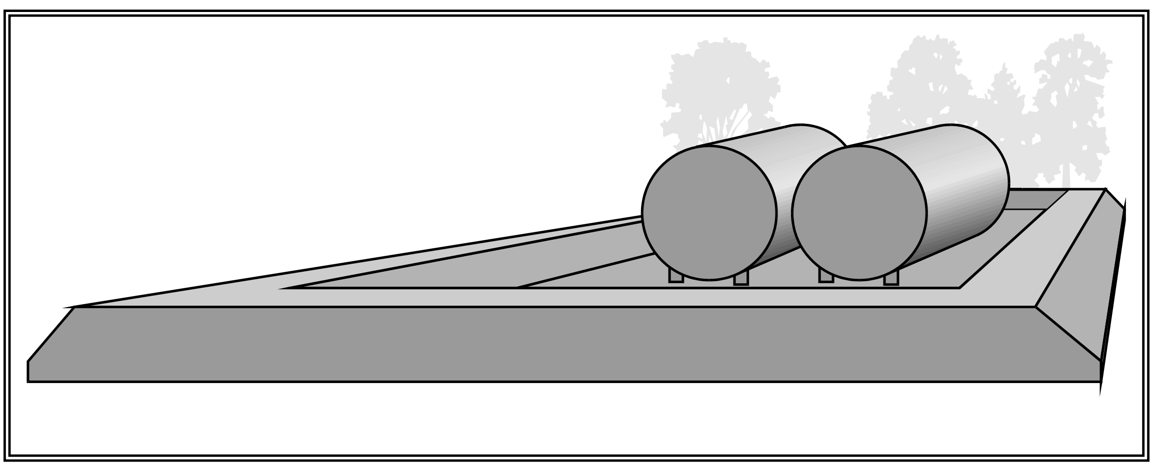


Figure 2.2.12 – Above-ground Tank Storage

Note this applicable treatment BMP for stormwater from petroleum tank farms.

Applicable Treatment BMPs:

- For an uncovered tank containment area, equip the outlet from the spill-containment sump with a normally closed shutoff valve. Operators may open this valve manually or automatically, only to convey contaminated stormwater to approved treatment or disposal, or to convey uncontaminated stormwater to a storm sewer. Evidence of contamination can include the presence of visible sheen, color, or turbidity in the runoff, or existing or historical operational problems at the facility. Use simple pH tests with litmus or pH paper for areas subject to acid or alkaline contamination.
- At petroleum tank farms, convey stormwater contaminated with floating oil or debris in the contained area through an API or CP-type oil/water separator (Volume V, Treatment BMPs), or other approved treatment prior to discharge to storm drain or surface water.

S429 BMPs for Storage or Transfer (Outside) of Solid Raw Materials, Byproducts, or Finished Products

Description of Pollutant Sources: Some pollutant sources stored outside in large piles, stacks, etc. at commercial or industrial establishments include:

- Solid raw materials
- Byproducts
- Gravel
- Sand
- Salts
- Topsoil
- Compost
- Logs
- Sawdust
- Wood chips
- Lumber
- Concrete
- Metal products

Contact between outside bulk materials and stormwater can cause leachate, and erosion of the stored materials. Contaminants may include TSS, BOD, organics, and dissolved salts (sodium, calcium, and magnesium chloride, etc.).

Pollutant Control Approach: Provide impervious containment with berms, dikes, etc. and/or cover to prevent run-on and discharge of leachate pollutant(s) and TSS.

Applicable Operational BMP: Do not hose down the contained stockpile area to a storm drain or a conveyance to a storm drain, or to a receiving water.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMP Options: The source control BMP options listed below are applicable to:

- Stockpiles greater than 5 cubic yards of erodible or water soluble materials such as:
- Soil
- Road deicing salts
- Compost
- Unwashed sand and gravel
- Sawdust
- Outside storage areas for solid materials such as:
- Logs
- Bark
- Lumber
- Metal products

Choose one or more of the following Source Controls:

- Store in a building or paved and bermed covered area as shown in Figure 2.2.13, or;

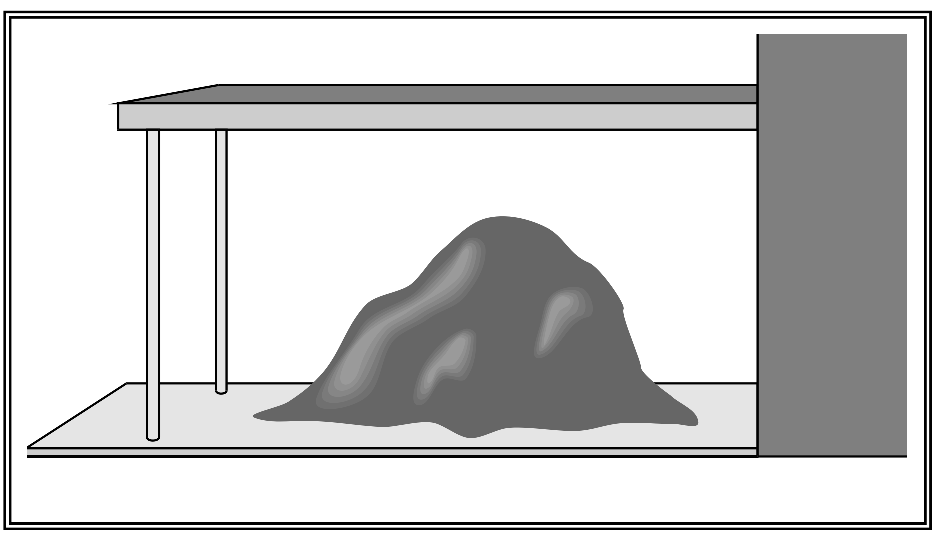


Figure 2.2.13 – Covered Storage Area for Bulk Solids (include berm if needed)

- Place temporary plastic sheeting (polyethylene, polypropylene, hypalon, or equivalent) over the material as illustrated (see Figure 2.2.14), or;

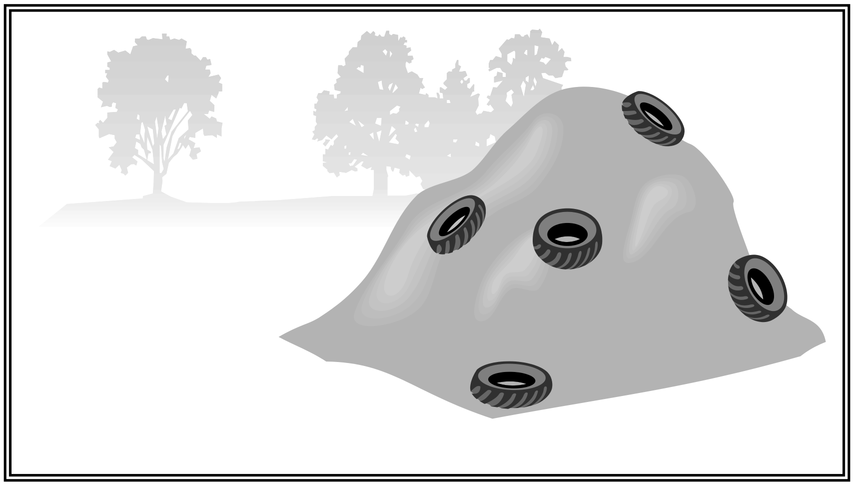


Figure 2.2.14 – Material Covered with Plastic Sheeting

- Pave the area and install a stormwater drainage system. Place curbs or berms along the perimeter of the area to prevent the run-on of uncontaminated stormwater and to collect and convey runoff to treatment. Slope the paved area in a manner that minimizes the contact between stormwater (e.g., pooling) and leachable materials in compost, logs, bark, wood chips, etc.

- For large uncovered stockpiles, implement containment practices at the perimeter of the site and at any catch basins as needed to prevent erosion and discharge of the stockpiled material off-site or to a storm drain. Ensure that no direct discharge of contaminated stormwater to catch basins exists without conveying runoff through an appropriate treatment BMP.

Applicable Treatment BMP: Convey contaminated stormwater from the stockpile area to a wet pond, wet vault, settling basin, media filter, or other appropriate treatment system depending on the contamination.

Recommended Additional Operational BMPs:

- Maintain drainage areas in and around storage of solid materials with a minimum slope of 1.5 percent to prevent pooling and minimize leachate formation. Areas should be sloped to drain stormwater to the perimeter for collection or to internal drainage "alleyways" where no stockpiled material exists.

- Sweep paved storage areas regularly for collection and disposal of loose solid materials.

- If and when feasible, collect and recycle water-soluble materials (leachates).

- Stock cleanup materials, such as brooms, dustpans, and vacuum sweepers near the storage area.

S430 BMPs for Urban Streets

Description of Pollutant Sources: Urban streets can be the source of vegetative debris, paper, fine dust, vehicle liquids, tire and brake wear residues, heavy metals (lead and zinc), soil particles, ice control salts, domestic wastes, lawn chemicals, and vehicle combustion products. Street surface contaminants contain significant concentrations of particle sizes less than 250 microns (Sartor and Boyd, 1972).

Pollutant Control Approach: Conduct efficient street sweeping where and when appropriate to minimize the contamination of stormwater. Do not wash street debris into storm drains.

Facilities not covered under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit may consider a minimum amount of water washing of streets. All facilities must comply with their local stormwater requirements for discharging to storm sewers. Municipal NPDES permittees are required to limit street wash water discharges and may have special conditions or treatment requirements.

Recommended BMPs:

- For maximum stormwater pollutant reductions on curbed streets and high volume parking lots, use efficient vacuum sweepers.

  Note: High-efficiency street sweepers utilize strong vacuums and the mechanical action of main and gutter brooms combined with an air filtration system that only returns clean air to the atmosphere (i.e., filters very fine particulates). They sweep dry and use no water since they do not emit any dust.

  High-efficiency vacuum sweepers have the capability of removing, 80 percent or more of the accumulated street dirt particles whose diameters are less than 250 microns (Sutherland, 1998). *This assumes pavements under good condition and reasonably expected accumulation conditions*.

- For moderate stormwater pollutant reductions on curbed streets use regenerative air sweepers or tandem sweeping operations.

  Note: *A tandem sweeping operation involves a single pass of a mechanical sweeper followed immediately by a single pass of a vacuum sweeper or regenerative air sweeper.*

  - *A regenerative air sweeper blows air down on the pavement to entrain particles and uses a return vacuum to transport the material to the hopper.*

- *These operations usually use water to control dust. This reduces their ability to pick up fine particulates.*

These types of sweepers have the capability of removing approximately 25 to 50 percent of the accumulated street dirt particles whose diameters are less than 250 microns. (Sutherland, 1998). *This assumes pavements under good conditions and typical accumulation conditions.*

- For minimal stormwater pollutant reductions on curbed streets use mechanical sweepers.
  - Note: The industry refers to *mechanical sweepers as broom sweepers and uses the mechanical action of main and gutter brooms to throw material on a conveyor belt that transports it to the hopper.*
  - *These sweepers usually use water to control dust. This reduces their ability to pick up fine particulates.*

  Mechanical sweepers have the capability of removing only 10 to 20 percent of the accumulated street dirt particles whose diameters are less than 250 microns (Sutherland, 1998). *This assumes pavements under good condition and the most favorable accumulation conditions.*

- Conduct vacuum sweeping at optimal frequencies. Optimal frequencies are those scheduled sweeping intervals that produce the most cost-effective annual reduction of pollutants normally found in stormwater and can vary depending on land use, traffic volume and rainfall patterns.
- Train operators in those factors that result in optimal pollutant removal. These factors include sweeper speed, brush adjustment and rotation rate, sweeping pattern, maneuvering around parked vehicles, and interim storage and disposal methods.
- Consider the use of periodic parking restrictions in low to medium density single-family residential areas to ensure the sweeper's ability to sweep along the curb.
- Establish programs for prompt vacuum sweeping, removal, and disposal of debris from special events that will generate higher than normal loadings.
- Disposal of street sweeping solids must comply with "Recommendations for Management of Street Wastes" described in Appendix IV-G of this volume.
- Inform citizens about eliminating yard debris, oil and other wastes in street gutters to reduce street pollutant sources.

S431 BMPs for Washing and Steam Cleaning Vehicles/ Equipment/ Building Structures

Description of Pollutant Sources: Pollutant sources include the commercial cleaning of vehicles, aircraft, vessels, and other transportation, restaurant kitchens, carpets, and industrial equipment, and large buildings with low- or high-pressure water or steam. This includes "charity" car washes at gas stations and commercial parking lots. The cleaning can include hand washing, scrubbing, sanding, etc. Washwater from cleaning activities can contain oil and grease, suspended solids, heavy metals, soluble organics, soaps, and detergents that can contaminate stormwater.

Pollutant Control Approach: The preferred approach is to cover and/or contain the cleaning activity, or conduct the activity inside a building, to separate the uncontaminated stormwater from the washwater sources. Convey washwater to a sanitary sewer after approval by the local sewer authority. Provide temporary storage before proper disposal, or recycling. Under this preferred approach, no discharge to the ground, to a storm drain, or to surface water should occur.

The Industrial Stormwater General Permit prohibits the discharge of process wastewater (e.g., vehicle washing wastewater) to ground water or surface water. Stormwater that commingles with process wastewater is considered process wastewater.

Facilities not covered under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit that are unable to follow one of the preferred approaches listed above may discharge washwater to the ground only after proper treatment in accordance with *Ecology guidance WQ-95-056, Vehicle and Equipment Washwater Discharges/Best Management Practices Manual, November 2012 or most recent update*.

The quality of any discharge to the ground after proper treatment must comply with Ecology's Ground Water Quality Standards, Chapter 173-200 WAC.

Facilities not covered under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit that are unable to comply with one of the preferred approaches and want to discharge to storm sewer, must meet their local stormwater requirements. Local authorities may require treatment prior to discharge.

Contact the local Ecology Regional Office to discuss permitting options for discharge of washwater to surface water or to a storm drain after on-site treatment.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs: Conduct vehicle/ equipment washing in one of the following locations:

- At a commercial washing facility in which the washing occurs in an enclosure and drains to the sanitary sewer, or
- In a building constructed specifically for washing of vehicles and equipment, which drains to a sanitary sewer.

Conduct outside washing operation in a designated wash area with the following features:

- In a paved area, construct a spill containment pad to prevent the run-on of stormwater from adjacent areas. Slope the spill containment area to collect washwater in a containment pad drain system with perimeter drains, trench drains or catchment drains. Size the containment pad to extend out a minimum of four feet on all sides of the washed vehicles and/or equipment.
- Convey the washwater to a sump (like a grit separator) and then to a sanitary sewer (if allowed by the local Sewer Authority), or other appropriate wastewater treatment or recycle system. The containment sump must have a positive control outlet valve for spill control with live containment volume, and oil/water separation. Size the minimum live storage volume to contain the maximum expected daily washwater flow plus the sludge storage volume below the outlet pipe. Shut the outlet valve during the washing cycle to collect the washwater in the sump. The valve should remain shut for at least two hours following the washing operation to allow the oil and solids to separate before discharge to a sanitary sewer.

Note that the purpose of the valve is to convey only washwater and contaminated stormwater to a treatment system.

- Close the inlet valve in the discharge pipe when washing is not occurring, thereby preventing the entry of uncontaminated stormwater into the pretreatment/ treatment system. The stormwater can then drain into the conveyance/discharge system outside of the wash pad (essentially bypassing the sanitary sewer or recycle system). Post signs to inform people of the operation and purpose of the valve. Clean the concrete pad thoroughly until there is no foam or visible sheen in the washwater prior to closing the inlet valve and allowing uncontaminated stormwater to overflow and drain off the pad.
- Collect the washwater from building structures and convey it to appropriate treatment such as a sanitary sewer system if it contains oils, soaps, or detergents. If the washwater does not contain oils, soaps, or detergents (in this case only a low pressure, clean, cold water rinse is allowed) then it could drain to soils that have sufficient natural attenuation capacity for dust and sediment.

Recommended Additional BMPs:

- Mark the wash area at gas stations, multi-family residences and any other business where non-employees wash vehicles.
- Operators may use a manually operated positive control valve for uncovered wash pads, but a pneumatic or electric valve system is preferable. The valve may be on a timer circuit and opened upon completion of a wash cycle. After draining the sump or separator, the timer would then close the valve.
- Use phosphate-free biodegradable detergents when practicable.
- Consider recycling the washwater.

Operators may use soluble/emulsifiable detergents in the wash medium and should use it with care and the appropriate treatment. Carefully consider the selection of soaps and detergents and treatment BMPs. Oil/water separators are ineffective in removing emulsified or water soluble detergents. Another treatment appropriate for emulsified and water soluble detergents may be required.

Exceptions

- At gas stations (for charity car washes) or commercial parking lots, where it is not possible to discharge the washwater to a sanitary sewer, a temporary plug or a temporary sump pump can be used at the storm drain to collect the washwater for off-site disposal such as to a nearby sanitary sewer.
- New and used car dealerships may wash vehicles in the parking stalls as long as employees use a temporary plug system to collect the washwater for disposal as stated above, or an approved treatment system for the washwater is in place.

At industrial sites, contact Ecology for NPDES Permit requirements even when not using soaps, detergents, and/or other chemical cleaners in washing trucks.

S432 BMPs for Wood Treatment Areas

Description of Pollutant Sources: Wood treatment includes both anti-staining and wood preserving using pressure processes or by dipping or spraying. Wood preservatives include creosote, creosote/coal tar, pentachlorophenol, copper naphthenate, arsenic trioxide, malathion, or inorganic arsenicals such as chromated copper arsenate, acid copper chromate, chromate zinc chloride, and fluor-chrome-arsenate-phenol. Anti-staining chemical additives include iodo-prophenyl-butyl carbamate, dimethyl sulfoxide, didecyl dimethyl ammonium chloride, sodium azide, 8-quinolinol; copper (II) chelate, sodium ortho-phenylphenate, 2-(thiocyanomethylthio)-benzothiazole (TCMTB) and methylene bis-(thiocyanate), and zinc naphthenate.

Pollutant sources include drips of condensate or preservative after pressurized treatment; product washwater (in the treatment or storage areas), spills and leaks from process equipment and preservative tanks, fugitive emissions from vapors in the process, blowouts and emergency pressure releases, and kick-back from lumber (phenomenon where preservative leaks as it returns to normal pressure). Potential pollutants typically include the wood treating chemicals, BOD, suspended solids, oil and grease, benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene, phenol, chlorophenols, nitrophenols, heavy metals, and PAH depending on the chemical additive used.

Pollutant Control Approach: Cover and contain all wood treating areas and prevent all leaching of and stormwater contamination by wood treating chemicals. Wood treating facilities may be covered by the Industrial Stormwater General Permit or by an individual permit. Individual permits covering wood treatment areas include applicable source control BMPs or require the development of BMPs or a SWPPP. Facilities covered under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit must prepare and implement a SWPPP. When developing a SWPPP or BMPs, wood treating facilities should include the applicable operational and structural source control BMPs listed below.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Use dedicated equipment for treatment activities to prevent the tracking of treatment chemicals to other areas on the site.
- Eliminate non-process traffic on the drip pad. Scrub down non-dedicated lift trucks on the drip pad.
- Immediately remove and properly dispose of soils with visible surface contamination (green soil) to prevent the spread of chemicals to ground water and/or surface water via stormwater runoff.
- Relocate the wood to a concrete chemical containment structure until the surface is clean and until it is drip free and surface dry, if the wood contributes chemicals to the environment in the treated wood storage area.

Recommended Operational BMP:

Consider using preservative chemicals that do not adversely affect receiving surface water and ground water.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:.

- Cover and/or enclose, and contain with impervious surfaces, all wood treatment areas. Slope and drain areas around dip tanks, spray booths, retorts, and any other process equipment in a manner that allows return of treatment chemicals to the wood treatment process.
- Cover storage areas for freshly treated wood to prevent contact of treated wood products with stormwater. Segregate clean stormwater

from process water. Convey all process water to an approved treatment system.

- Seal any holes or cracks in the asphalt areas that are subject to wood treatment chemical contamination.
- Elevate stored, treated wood products to prevent contact with stormwater run-on and runoff
- Place dipped lumber over the dip tank, or on an inclined ramp for a minimum of 30 minutes to allow excess chemical to drip back to the dip tank.
- Place treated lumber from dip tanks or retorts in a covered paved storage area for at least 24 hours before placement in outside storage. Use a longer storage period during cold weather unless the temporary storage building is heated. Prior to moving wood outside, ensure that the wood is drip free and surface dry.

S433 BMPs for Pools, Spas, Hot Tubs, and Fountains

Description of Pollutant Sources: This section includes BMPs for pools, spas, hot tubs, and fountains used for recreational / decorative purposes that use chemicals and/or that are heated. Permittees that use pools, spas, hot tubs, and fountains as part of an industrial process should refer to their Industrial Stormwater Permit.

Discharge from pools, spas, hot tubs, and fountains can degrade ambient water quality. The waters from these sources typically contain bacteria that contaminate the receiving waters. Chemicals lethal to aquatic life such as chlorine, bromine and algaecides can be found in pools, spas, hot tubs, and fountains. These waters may be at an elevated temperature and can have negative effects on receiving waters and to aquatic life. Diatomaceous earth backwash from swimming pool filters can clog gills and suffocate fish.

Routine maintenance activities generate a variety of wastes. Chlorinated water, backwash residues, algaecides, and acid washes are a few examples. Direct disposal of these waters to storm drain systems and waters of the State is not permitted without prior treatment and approval.

The quality of any discharge to the ground after proper treatment must comply with Ecology's Ground Water Quality Standards, Chapter 173-200 WAC.

The Washington State Department of Health and local health authorities regulate Water Recreation facilities which include pools, spas, and hot tubs. Owners and operators of those facilities must comply with those regulations, policies and procedures. Following the guidelines here does not exempt or supersede any requirements of the regulatory authorities.

Pollutant Control Approach: Many manufacturers do not recommend draining pools, spas, hot tubs or fountains; refer to the facility's operation and maintenance manual. If the water feature must be drained, convey discharges (within hoses or pipes) to a sanitary sewer if approved by the local sewer authority or to a storm sewer following the conditions outlined below. Do not discharge to a septic system, since it may cause the system to fail. No discharge to the ground or to surface water should occur, unless permitted by the proper regulatory authority.

Applicable Operational BMPs:

- Clean the pool, spa, hot tub, or fountain regularly, maintain proper chlorine levels and maintain water filtration and circulation. Doing so will limit the need to drain the facility.
- Manage pH and water hardness to reduce copper pipe corrosion that can stain the facility and pollute receiving waters.
- Before using copper algaecides, try less toxic alternatives. Only use copper algaecides if the others alternative do not work. Ask a pool/spa/hot tub/fountain maintenance service or store for help resolving persistent algae problems without using copper algaecides.
- Develop and regularly update a facility maintenance plan that follows all discharge requirements.
- Dispose of unwanted chemicals properly. Many of them are hazardous wastes when discarded.
- Discharge waters originating from a pool/spa/hot tub/fountain to a sanitary sewer, if approved by the local sewer authority, local health authority or both. Do not discharge waters containing copper-based algaecides to storm sewer systems.
- Do not discharge water directly from a pool, spa, hot tub, fountain, process wastes, or wastewaters into storm drains except if the discharge water is:
    - Dechlorinated/debrominated to 0.1 ppm or less. (Some guidance on dechlorination is provided in the Department of Health's Water System Design Manual, Revised 12/09, DOH Publication 331-123. The Department of Health manual further references AWWA. 1999b. C651 - AWWA Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains. American Water Works Association, Denver, CO. and AWWA. 2002. C652 - AWWA Standard for Disinfecting Water Storage Facilities. American Water Works Association, Denver, CO. for more details.) Contact a pool chemical supplier to obtain the neutralizing chemicals needed.
    - pH-adjusted.
    - Reoxygenated if necessary

    - Free of any coloration, dirt, suds, or algae.
    - Free of any filter media.
    - Free of acid cleaning wastes.
    - At a temperature that will prevent an increase in temperature in the receiving water. Cool heated water prior to discharge.
    - Released at a rate that can be accommodated by the receiving body (i.e. can infiltrate or be safely conveyed).
- Swimming pool cleaning wastewater and filter backwash shall not be discharged to the storm sewer.
- Bag diatomaceous earth (pool filtering agent) and dispose at a landfill.

Applicable Structural Source Control BMPs:

- Ensure that the pool/spa/hot tub/fountain system is free of leaks and operates within the design parameters.
- Do not provide any permanent links to storm drain systems. All connections should be visible and carefully controlled.
- If the dechlorination or cooling process selected requires the water to be stored for a time, it should be contained within the pool or appropriate temporary storage container.

This page intentionally left blank.

Volume IV References

CH2M Hill, Comments on Washington State Department of Ecology Draft Publication 99-11 through 99-15, Soil Improvement Project Engineering Report for Snohomish County, February 2000.

Daar, Olkowski & Olkowski, IPM Training Manual for Gardeners, 1992.

Daar, Sheila, Least Toxic Pest Management for Lawns, Integral Resource Center, Berkeley, CA 94707; 1992.

Field, Richard and Pitt, Robert, E., et. al., Urban Wet-weather Flows, Water Environment Research Literature Review, 1997.

Gaus, J., High Use/Oil Control Decision Paper-Second Draft, King County Surface Water Management, 1994.

King County Surface Water Management, Best Management Practices for Businesses, July 1995.

Olkowski, William, Helga Olkowski and Sheila Daar, What is IPM? In Common Sense Pest Control, Volume 3, summer 1988.

Perry, George et al, A Comprehensive IPM Program, King County Local Hazardous Waste Management Program, November 7, 2000.

Pierce County Stormwater Management and Site Development Manual, Volume IV Source Control, March 1, 2009.

Pitt, Robert, Urban Stormwater Toxic Pollutants: Assessment, Sources, and Treatability, Water Environment Research, May/June 1995.

Sartor, J.D. and B.G. Boyd, Water Pollution Aspects of Street Surface Contaminants, EPA-R2-72-081, November 1972, P.7.

Schueler, Thomas, R., Comparative Pollutant Removal Capability of Urban BMPs: A Reanalysis, Watershed Protection Techniques, June 1997.

Silverman, Gary S. and Michael K. Stenstrom, Source Control of Oil and Grease in an Urban Area, in Design of Urban Runoff Quality Controls, ASCE, 1988.

Standard Industrial Classification Manual, Office of Management and Budget, 1987.

Strecker, Eric, W., et. al., Analysis of Oregon Urban Runoff Water Quality Monitoring Data Collected from 1990 to 1996, The Oregon Association of Clean Water Agencies, February 1997 Draft.

Sutherland, Roger, High Efficiency Sweeping as an Alternative to the Use of Wet Vaults for Stormwater Treatment, 1998.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Multi-sector Stormwater Permit and Fact Sheet, September 1995.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Results of the Nationwide Urban Runoff Program, December 1983.

Washington State Department of Ecology, Implementation Guidance for the Ground Water Quality Standards, publication 96-02, 1996.

Washington Department of Ecology, NPDES and State Waste Discharge Baseline General Permit for Stormwater Discharge Associated with Industrial Activities, November 18, 1995.

Washington State Department of Ecology, Techniques for Dust Prevention and Suppression, publication #96-433, 1996.

Appendix IV-A Urban Land Uses and Pollutant Generating Sources

Use this appendix to identify pollutant-generating sources at various land uses (manufacturing, transportation, communication, wholesale, retail, service - based on the 1987 Standard Industrial Classification codes (OMB, 1987), and public agencies). Applicable operational and structural source control and treatment BMPs for each pollutant source can then be selected by referring to Chapter 2 of this Volume. Other land uses not included in this appendix should also consider implementing applicable (mandatory) BMPs for their pollutant sources.

A.1 Manufacturing Businesses

Cement
SIC: 3241

Description: These businesses produce Portland cement, the binder used in concrete for paving, buildings, pipe, and other structural products. The three basic steps in cement manufacturing are: 1) proportioning, grinding, and blending raw materials; 2) heating raw materials to produce a hard, stony substance known as clinker; and 3) combining the clinker with other materials and grinding the mixture into a fine powdery form. The raw materials include limestone, silica, alumina, iron, chalk, oyster shell marl, or shale. Waste materials from other industries are often used such as slag, fly ash and spent blasting sand. Raw materials are crushed, mixed and heated in a kiln to produce the correct chemical composition. Kilns typically are coal, gas, or oil fired. The output of the kiln is a clinker that is ground to produce the final product.

The basic process may be wet or dry. In the wet process water is mixed with the raw ingredients in the initial crushing operation and in some cases is used to wash the material prior to use. Water may also be used in the air pollution control scrubber. The most significant waste material from cement production is the kiln dust. Concrete products may also be produced at ready-mix concrete facilities. Refer to “Concrete Products” for a description of the BMPs appropriate to these activities.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources*:* Stormwater may be contaminated during the crushing, grinding, storage, and handling of kiln dust, limestone, shale, clay, coal, clinker, gypsum, anhydrite, slag, sand, and product and at the vehicle and equipment maintenance, fueling, and cleaning areas. Total suspended solids, aluminum, iron and other heavy metals, pH, COD, potassium, sulfate, and oil and grease are some of the potential pollutants. The following mean concentrations in stormwater discharges have been reported Environmental Protection Agency (EPA’s) multi-sector permit fact sheet (EPA, 1995): TSS=1067, COD=107.5, aluminum=72.6, iron=7.5, all in mg/L, and pH=2-12. These values may be useful in characterizing stormwater contaminants at cement manufacturing facilities.

Chemicals Manufacturing

SIC: 2800, 3861

Description: This group is engaged in the manufacture of chemicals, or products based on chemicals such as acids, alkalis, inks , chlorine, industrial gases, pigments, chemicals used in the production of synthetic resins, fibers and plastics, synthetic rubber, soaps and cleaners, pharmaceuticals, cosmetics, paints, varnishes, resins, photographic materials, chemicals, organic chemicals, agricultural chemicals, adhesives, sealants, and ink .

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Activities that can contaminate stormwater include bagging, blending, packaging, crushing, milling, shredding, granulation, grinding, storage, distribution, loading/unloading, and processing of materials; equipment storage; application of fertilizers; foundries; lime application; use of machinery; material handling and warehousing; cooling towers; fueling; boilers; dangerous waste treatment, storage and disposal; wastewater treatment; plant yard areas of past industrial activity; access roads and tracks; drum washing, and maintenance and repair.

Chemical businesses in the Seattle area surveyed for dangerous wastes have been found to produce waste caustic solutions, soaps, heavy metal solutions, inorganic and organic chemicals, solvents, acids, alkalis, paints, varnishes, pharmaceuticals, and inks. The potential pollutants include BOD, TSS, COD, oil and grease, pH, total phosphorus, nitrates, nitrites, total Kjeldahl nitrogen, ammonia, specific organics, and heavy metals. EPA stormwater multi-sector permit fact sheet data [(7)] includes the following mean values in mg/L except pH: BOD, 4.4-143.2; TSS, 35-493; COD, 42.36-245.3; Oil and Grease, 0.3-6.0; NO2+NO3, 0.3-35.9; TKN, 1.3-108.9; tot. P, 0.1-65.7; ammonia, 40.45-73.22; Al, 1.20-1.78; Cu, .12-19; Mn, .56-. 71; Zn, 1.74-2.11; Fe, 2.24-3.52 and pH, 3.5-10.4. This data could be helpful in characterizing stormwater pollutants at the facility.

Concrete Products

SIC: 3270

Description: Businesses that manufacture ready-mix concrete, gypsum products, concrete blocks and bricks, concrete sewer or drainage pipe, septic tanks, and prestressed concrete building components. Concrete is prepared on-site and poured into molds or forms to produce the desired product. The basic ingredients of concrete are sand, gravel, Portland cement, crushed stone, clay, and reinforcing steel for some products. Admixtures including fly ash, calcium chloride, triethanolamine, lignosulfonic acid, sulfonated hydrocarbon, fatty acid glyceride, or vinyl acetate, which may be added to obtain desired characteristics such as slower or more rapid curing times.

The first stage in the manufacturing process is proportioning cement, aggregate, admixtures and water, and then transporting the product to a rotary drum, or pan mixer. The mixture is then fed into an automatic block-molding machine that rams, presses, or vibrates the mixture into its final form. The final product is then stacked on iron framework cars where it cures in four hours. After being mixed in a central mixer, concrete is molded in the same manner as concrete block. The concrete cures in the forms for a number of hours. Forms are washed for reuse, and the concrete products are stored until they can be shipped.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Pollutant generating activities/sources include stockpiles; washing of waste concrete from trucks, forms, equipment, and the general work area; and water from the curing of concrete products. Besides the basic ingredients for making concrete products, chemicals used in the curing of concrete and the removal of forms may end up in stormwater. These chemicals can include latex sealants, bitumastic coatings and release agents. Trucks and equipment maintained on-site may generate waste oil and solvents, and other waste materials. Potential pollutants include TSS, COD, BOD, pH, lead, iron, zinc, and oil and grease.

Electrical Products

SIC: 3600, 3800

Description: A variety of products are produced including electrical transformers and switchgear, motors, generators, relays, and industrial controls; communications equipment for radio and TV stations and systems; electronic components and accessories including semiconductors; printed board circuits; electromedical and electrotherapeutic apparatus; and electrical instrumentation. Manufacturing processes include electroplating, machining, fabricating, etching, sawing, grinding, welding, and parts cleaning. Materials used include metals, ceramics, quartz, silicon, inorganic oxides, acids, alkaline solutions, arsenides, phosphides, cyanides, oils, fuels, solvents, and other chemicals.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Pollutant generating activities/sources include bulk storage of raw materials, by-products or finished products; loading and unloading of liquid materials from truck or rail; temporary storage of waste oil and solvents from cleaning manufacturing equipment; used equipment temporarily stored on site that could drip oil and residual process materials; maintenance and repair of vehicles and equipment; and temporary storage of Dangerous Wastes.

Waste liquids which are sometimes stored outside include spent acetone and solvents, ferric chloride solutions, soldering fluxes mixed with thinner or alcohol, spent acids, and oily waste. Several of these liquid wastes contain chlorinated hydrocarbons, ammonium salts, and metals such as chromium, copper, lead, silver, zinc, nickel, and tin. Waste solids include soiled rags and sanding materials.

Wastewater consists of solutions and rinses from electroplating operations, and the wastewaters from cleaning operations. Water may also be used to cool saws and grinding machines. Sludges are produced by the wastewater treatment process. Potential pollutants include TSS, oil and grease, organics, pH, BOD, COD, Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen, Nitrate and Nitrite Nitrogen, copper, zinc, lead, and silver.

Food Products

SIC: 2000

Description: Businesses in this category include meat packing plants, poultry slaughtering and processing, sausage and prepared meats, dairy products, preserved fruits and vegetables, flour, bakery products, sugar and confectioneries, vegetable and animal oils, beverages, canned, frozen or fresh fish, pasta products, snack foods, and manufactured ice. Food processing typically occurs inside buildings. Exceptions are meat packing plants where live animals may be kept outside, and fruit and vegetable plants where the raw material may be temporarily stored outside. Meat production facilities include stockyards, slaughtering, cutting and deboning, meat processing, rendering, and materials recovery. Dairy production facilities include receiving stations, clarification, separation, and pasteurization followed by culturing, churning, pressing, curing, blending, condensing, sweetening, drying, milling, and packaging. Canned frozen and preserved fruits and vegetables are typically produced by washing, cutting, blanching, and cooking followed by drying, dehydrating, and freezing.

Grain mill products are processed during washing, milling, debranning, heat treatment, screening, shaping, and vitamin and mineral supplementing. Bakery products processing includes mixing, shaping, of dough, cooling, and decorating. Operations at an edible oil manufacturer include refining, bleaching, hydrogenation, fractionation, emulsification, deodorization, filtration, and blending. Beverage production includes brewing, distilling, fermentation, blending, and packaging. Wine processors often crush grapes outside the process building and/or store equipment outside when not in use. Some wine producers use juice from grapes crushed elsewhere. Some vegetable and fruit processing plants use caustic solutions.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The following are potential stormwater pollutant causing activities/sources: loading/unloading of materials, equipment/vehicle maintenance, liquid storage in tanks and drums, air emissions (ovens, vents), solid wastes handling and storage, wastewater treatment, pest control, animal containment and transit, and vegetable storage. Materials exposed to stormwater include acids, ammonia, activated carbon, bleach, blood, bone meal, brewing residuals, caustic soda, chlorine, coke oven tar, detergents, eggs, feathers, feed, ferric chloride, fruits, vegetables, coffee beans, gel bone, grain, hides, lard, manure, milk, salts, skim powder, starch, sugar, tallow, ethyl alcohol, oils, fats, whey, yeast, and wastes. The following are the pollutants typically expected from this industry segment: BOD, TSS, Oil and Grease, pH, Kjeldahl Nitrogen, copper, manganese, fecal coliform, and pesticides.

Glass Products

SIC: 3210, 3220, 3230

Description: The glass form produced may be flat or window glass, safety glass, or container glass, tubing, glass wool, or fibers. The raw materials are sand mixed with a variety of oxides such as aluminum, antimony, arsenic, lead, copper, cobalt oxide, and barium. The raw materials are mixed and heated in a furnace. Processes that vary with the intended product shape the resulting molten material. The cooled glass may be edged, ground, polished, annealed and/or heat-treated to produce the final product. Air emissions from the manufacturing buildings are scrubbed to remove particulates.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Raw materials are generally stored in silos except for crushed recycled glass and materials washed off recycled glass. Contamination of stormwater and/or ground water can be caused by raw materials lost during unloading operations, errant flue dust, equipment/vehicle maintenance and engine fluids from mobile lifting equipment that is stored outside. The maintenance of the manufacturing equipment will produce waste lubricants and cleaning solvents. The flue dust is likely to contain heavy metals such as arsenic, cadmium, chromium, mercury, and lead. Potential pollutants include suspended solids, oil and grease, high/low pH, and heavy metals such as arsenic, cadmium, chromium, mercury, and lead.

Industrial Machinery and Equipment, Trucks and Trailers, Aircraft, Aerospace, and Railroad

SIC: 3500, 3713/14, 3720, 3740, 3760, 3800

Description: This category includes the manufacture of a variety of equipment including engines and turbines, farm and garden equipment, construction and mining machinery, metal working machinery, pumps, computers and office equipment, automatic vending machines, refrigeration and heating equipment, and equipment for the manufacturing industries. This group also includes many small machine shops, and the manufacturing of trucks, trailers and parts, airplanes and parts, missiles, spacecraft, and railroad equipment and instruments.

Manufacturing processes include various forms of metal working and finishing, such as electroplating, anodizing, chemical conversion coating, etching, chemical milling, cleaning, machining, grinding, polishing, sand blasting, laminating, hot dip coating, descaling, degreasing, paint stripping, painting, and the production of plastic and fiberglass parts. Raw materials include ferrous and non-ferrous metals, such as aluminum, copper, iron, steel, and their alloys, paints, solvents, acids, alkalis, fuels, lubricating and cutting oils, and plastics.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Potential pollutant sources include fuel islands, maintenance shops, loading/unloading of materials, and outside storage of gasoline, diesel, cleaning fluids, equipment, solvents, paints, wastes, detergents, acids, other chemicals, oils, metals, and scrap materials. Air emissions from stacks and ventilation systems are potential areas for exposure of materials to rainwater.

Metal Products

SIC: 2514, 2522, 2542, 3312, 3314-17, 3320, 3350, 3360, 3400, 3590

Description: This group includes mills that produce basic metals and primary products, as well as foundries, electroplaters, and fabricators of final metal products. Basic metal production includes steel, copper, and aluminum. Mills that transform metal billets, either ferrous or nonferrous such as aluminum, to primary metal products are included. Primary metal forms include sheets, flat bar, building components such as columns, beams and concrete reinforcing bar, and large pipe.

Steel mills in the Pacific Northwest use recycled metal and electric furnaces. The molten steel is cast into billets or ingots that may be reformed on site or taken to rolling mills that produce primary products. As iron and steel billets may sit outside before reforming, surface treatment to remove scale may occur prior to reforming. Foundries pour or inject molten metal into a mold to produce a shape that cannot be readily formed by other processes. The metal is first melted in a furnace. The mold is made of sand or metal die blocks that are locked together to make a complete cavity. The molten metal is ladled in and the mold is cooled. The rough product is finished by quenching, cleaning and chemical treatment. Quenching involves immersion in a plain water bath or water with an additive.

Businesses that fabricate metal products from metal stock provide a wide range of products. The raw stock is manipulated in a variety of ways including machining of various types, grinding, heating, shearing, deformation, cutting and welding, soldering, sand blasting, brazing, and laminating. Fabricators may first clean the metal by sand blasting, descaling, or solvent degreasing. Final finishing may involve electroplating, painting, or direct plating by fusing or vacuum metalizing. Raw materials, in particular recycled metal, are stored outside prior to use, as are billets before reforming. The descaling process may use salt baths, sodium hydroxide, or acid (pickling).

Primary products often receive a surface coating treatment. Prior to the coating the product surface may be prepared by acid pickling to remove scale or alkaline cleaning to remove oils and greases. The two major classes of metallic coating operations are hot and cold coating. Zinc, tin and aluminum coatings are applied in molten metal baths. Tin and chromium are usually applied electrolytically from plating solutions.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Potential pollutant generating sources include outside storage of chemicals, metal feedstock, byproducts (fluxes), finished products, fuels, lubricants, waste oil, sludge, waste solvents, Dangerous Wastes, piles of coal, coke, dusts, fly ash, baghouse waste, slag, dross, sludges, sand refractory rubble, and machining waste; unloading of chemical feedstock and loading of waste liquids such as spent pickle liquor by truck or rail; material handling equipment such as cranes, conveyors, trucks, and forklifts; particulate emissions from scrubbers, baghouses or electrostatic precipitators; fugitive emissions; maintenance shops; erosion of soil from plant yards; and floor, sink, and process wastewater drains.

Based on EPA's multi-sector industrial stormwater permit/fact sheet the following are ranges of mean composite/grab pollutant concentrations from this industrial group (values are in mg/L except pH): BOD at 34.1/32.2; COD at 109.8/221.3; NO2+NO3 N at 1.38/1.17; TKN at 3.05/3.56; Oil and grease at 8.88 (grab); pH at 2.6-10.3 (range-grab); total phosphorus at .52/1.25; TSS at 162/368; copper at 2.28/3.53; lead at .19/.79; zinc at 6.60/8.90; aluminum at 2.6/4.8; iron at 32.30/45.97; cadmium at 0.015/0.074; chromium at 2.2/5.053; nickel at 0.75/0.7; manganese at .59/.68; ammonia at .55/.85; and pyrene at .01/.06.

Paper and Pulp

SIC: 2610, 2620, 2630

Description: Large industrial complexes in which pulp and/or paper, and/or paperboard are produced. Products also include newsprint, bleached paper, glassine, tissue paper, vegetable parchment, and industrial papers. Raw materials include; wood logs, chips, wastepaper, jute, hemp, rags, cotton linters, bagasse, and esparto. The chips for pulping may be produced on-site from logs, and/or imported.

The following manufacturing processes are typically used: raw material preparation, pulping, bleaching, and papermaking. All of these operations use a wide variety of chemicals including caustic soda, sodium and ammonium sulfites, chlorine, titanium oxide, starches, solvents, adhesives, biocides, hydraulic oils, lubricants, dyes, and many chemical additives.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The large process equipment used for pulping is not enclosed. Thus, precipitation falling over these areas may become contaminated. Maintenance of the process equipment produces waste products similar to that produced from vehicle and mobile equipment maintenance. Logs may be stored, debarked and chipped on site. Large quantities of chips are stored outside. Although this can be a source of pollution, the volume of stormwater flow is relatively small because the chip pile retains the majority of the precipitation. Mobile equipment such as forklifts, log stackers, and chip dozers are sources of leaks/spills of hydraulic fluids. Vehicles and equipment are fueled and maintained on-site.

Paper Products

SIC: 2650, 2670

Description: Included are businesses that take paper stock and produce basic paper products such as cardboard boxes and other containers, and stationery products such as envelopes and bond paper. Wood chips, pulp, and paper can be used as feedstock.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The following are potential pollutant sources:

1. Outside loading/unloading of solid and liquid materials.
2. Outside storage and handling of dangerous wastes, and other liquid and solid materials.
3. Maintenance and fueling activities.
4. Outside processing activities comparable to Pulp and Paper processing in preceding section.

Petroleum Products

SIC: 2911, 2950

Description: The petroleum refining industry manufactures gasoline, kerosene, distillate and residual oils, lubricants and related products from crude petroleum, and asphalt paving and roofing materials. Although petroleum is the primary raw material, petroleum refineries also use other materials such as natural gas, benzene, toluene, chemical catalysts, caustic soda, and sulfuric acid. Wastes may include filter clays, spent catalysts, sludges, and oily water.

Asphalt paving products consist of sand, gravel and petroleum-based asphalt that serves as the binder. Raw materials include stockpiles of sand and gravel and asphalt emulsions stored in aboveground tanks.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources:

- Outside processing such as distillation, fractionation, catalytic cracking, solvent extraction, coking, desulfuring, reforming, and desalting.
- Petrochemical and fuel storage and handling.
- Outside liquid chemical piping and tankage.
- Mobile liquid handling equipment such as tank trucks, forklifts, etc.
- Maintenance and parking of trucks and other equipment.
- Waste Piles, and handling and storage of asphalt emulsions, cleaning chemicals, and solvents.
- Waste treatment and conveyance systems.

The following are potential pollutants at oil refineries: oil and grease, BOD5, COD, TOC, phenolic compounds, PAH, ammonia nitrogen, TKN, sulfides, TSS, low and high pH, and chromium (total and hexavalent).

Printing
SIC: 2700

Description: This industrial category includes the production of newspapers, periodicals, commercial printing materials and businesses that do their own printing and those that perform services for the printing industry, for example bookbinding. Processes include typesetting, engraving, photoengraving, and electrotyping.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Various materials used in modifying the paper stock include inorganic and organic acids, resins, solvents, polyester film, developers, alcohol, vinyl lacquer, dyes, acetates, and polymers. Waste products may include waste inks and ink sludge, resins, photographic chemicals, solvents, acid and alkaline solutions, chlorides, chromium, zinc, lead, spent formaldehyde, silver, plasticizers, and used lubricating oils. As the printing operations occur indoors, the only likely points of potential contact with stormwater are the outside temporary storage of waste materials, offloading of chemicals at external unloading bays, and vehicle/equipment repair and maintenance. Pollutants of concern include TSS, pH, heavy metals, oil and grease, and COD.

Rubber and Plastic Products
SIC: 3000

Description: Although different in basic feedstock and processes used, businesses that produce rubber, fiberglass and plastic products belong to the same SIC group. Products in this category include rubber tires, hoses, belts, gaskets, seals; and plastic sheet, film, tubes, pipes, bottles, cups, ice chests, packaging materials, and plumbing fixtures. The rubber and plastics industries use a variety of processes ranging from polymerization to extrusion using natural or synthetic raw materials. These industries use natural or synthetic rubber, plastics components, pigments, adhesives, resins, acids, caustic soda, zinc, paints, fillers, and curing agents.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Pollutant generating sources/activities include storage of liquids, other raw materials or by-products, scrap materials, oils, solvents, inks and paints; unloading of liquid materials from trucks or rail cars; washing of equipment; waste oil and solvents produced by cleaning manufacturing equipment; used equipment that could drip oil and residual process materials; and maintenance shops.

Based on data in EPA's multi-sector permit fact sheet the following are mean pollutant concentrations in mg/L, except for pH (unitless) and 1,1,1 trichloroethane, methylene chloride, toluene, zinc, oil/grease which are min.-max. grab sample values: BOD at 11.21-13.92, COD at 72.08-100.0, NO3 + NO2 Nitrogen at 86-1.26, TKN at 1.55-2.34, total phosphorus at .34-.41, TSS at 119.32-188.55, pH range of 2.56-10.1, trichloroethane at 0.00-0.38, methylene chloride at 0.00-13.0, toluene at 0.00-3.8, zinc at .011-7.60 and oil and grease at 0.0-91.0. These data may be helpful in characterizing potential stormwater pollutants.

Ship and Boat Building and Repair Yards

SIC: 3730

Description: Businesses that build or repair ships and boats. Typical activities include hull scraping, sandblasting, finishing, metal fabrication, electrical repairs, engine overhaul, and welding, fiberglass repairs, hydroblasting and steam cleaning.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Outside boatyard activities that can be sources of stormwater pollution include pressure washing, surface preparation, paint removal, sanding, painting, engine/vessel maintenance and repairs, and material handling and storage.

Secondary sources of stormwater contaminants are cooling water, pump testing, gray water, sanitary waste, washing down the work area, and engine bilge water. Engine room bilge water and oily wastes are typically collected and disposed of through a licensed contracted disposal company. Two prime sources of copper are leaching of copper from anti-fouling paint and wastes from hull maintenance. Wastes generated by boatyard activities include spent abrasive grits, spent solvent, spent oils, fuel, ethylene glycol, washwater, paint overspray, various cleaners/detergents and anti-corrosive compounds, paint chips, scrap metal, welding rods, wood, plastic, resins, glass fibers, dust, and miscellaneous trash such as paper and glass.

Ecology, local shipyards, and METRO have sampled pressure wash wastewater. The effluent quality has been variable and frequently exceeds water quality criteria for copper, lead, tin, and zinc. From monitoring results received to date, metal concentrations typically range from 5 to 10 mg/L, but have gone as high as 190 mg/L copper with an average 55 mg/L copper.

Wood

SIC 2420, 2450, 2434, 2490, 2511/12, 2517, 2519, 2521, 2541

Description: This group includes sawmills, and all businesses that make wood products using cut wood, with the exception of wood treatment businesses. Wood treatment as well as log storage and sorting yards are covered in other sections of this chapter. Included in this group are planing mills, millworks, and businesses that make wooden containers and prefab building components, mobile homes, and glued-wood products like laminated beams, as well as office and home furniture, partitions, and cabinets. All businesses employ cutting equipment whose by-products are chips and sawdust. Finishing is conducted in many operations.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Businesses may have operations that use paints, solvents, wax emulsions, melamine formaldehyde and other thermosetting resins, and produce waste paints and paint thinners, turpentine, shellac, varnishes and other waste liquids. Outside storage, trucking, and handling of these materials can also be pollutant sources.

Potential pollutants reported in EPA's draft multi-sector permit/fact sheet (U.S. EPA, 1995) include the following (all are grab/composite mean values, in mg/L, except for oil and grease and pH): BOD at 39.6/45.4, COD at 297.6/242.5, NO3 + NO2-N at 0.95/0.75, TKN at 2.57/2.32, Tot. Phosphorus at 23.91/6.29; TSS at 1108/575, arsenic at .025/.028, copper at .047/.041, total phenols at .02/.007, oil and grease at 15.2, and pH at 3.6. These data may help in characterizing the potential stormwater pollutants at the facility.

Wood Treatment

SIC: 2491

Description: This group includes both anti-staining and wood preserving. The wood stock must be brought to the proper moisture content prior to treatment, which is achieved by either air-drying or kiln drying. Some wood trimming may occur. After treatment, the lumber is typically stored outside. Forklifts are used to move both the raw and finished product. Wood treatment consists of a pressure process using the chemicals described below. Anti-staining treatment is conducted using dip tanks or by spraying. Wood preservatives include creosote, creosote/coal tar, pentachlorophenol, copper naphthenate or inorganic arsenicals such as chromated copper arsenate dissolved in water. The use of pentachlorophenol is declining in the Puget Sound region.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Potential pollutant generating sources/activities include the retort area, handling of the treated wood, outside storage of treated materials/products, equipment/vehicle storage and maintenance, and the unloading, handling, and use of the preservative chemicals. Based on EPA's multi-sector permit/fact sheet (U.S. EPA, 1995) the following stormwater contaminants have been reported: COD, TSS, BOD, and the specific pesticide(s) used for the wood preservation.

Other Manufacturing Businesses

SIC: 2200, 2300, 2873/74, 3100, 3200, 3250-69, 3280, 3290

Description: Includes manufacturing of textiles and apparel, agricultural fertilizers, leather products, clay products such as bricks, pottery, bathroom fixtures; and nonmetallic mineral products.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Pollutant generating sources at facilities in these categories include fueling, loading & unloading, material storage and handling (especially fertilizers), and vehicle and equipment cleaning and maintenance. Potential pollutants include TSS, BOD, COD, Oil and Grease, heavy metals and fertilizer components including nitrates, nitrites, ammonia nitrogen, Kjeldahl Nitrogen, and phosphorous compounds.

A.2 Transportation and Communication

Airfields and Aircraft Maintenance

SIC: 4513, 4515

Description: Industrial activities include vehicle and equipment fueling, maintenance and cleaning, and aircraft/runway deicing.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Fueling is accomplished by tank trucks at the aircraft and is a source of spills. Dripping of fuel and engine fluids from the aircraft and at vehicle/equipment maintenance/ cleaning areas application of deicing materials to the aircraft and the runways are potential sources of stormwater contamination. Aircraft maintenance and cleaning produces a wide variety of waste products, similar to those found with any vehicle or equipment maintenance, including: used oil and cleaning solvents, paints, oil filters, soiled rags, and soapy wastewater. Deicing materials used on aircraft and/or runways include ethylene and propylene glycol, and urea. Other chemicals currently considered for ice control are sodium and potassium acetates, isopropyl alcohol, and sodium fluoride. Pollutant constituents include oil and grease, TSS, BOD, COD, TKN, pH and specific deicing components such as glycol and urea.

Fleet Vehicle Yards

SIC: 4100*, 4210, 4230, 7381/2, 7510*

Description: Includes all businesses which own, operate and maintain or repair large vehicle fleets, including cars, buses, trucks and taxis, as well as the renting or leasing of cars, trucks, and trailers.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources:

1. Spills/leaks of fuels, used oils, oil filters, antifreeze, solvents, brake fluid, and batteries, sulfuric acid, battery acid sludge, and leaching from empty contaminated containers and soiled rags.
2. Leaking underground storage tanks that can cause ground water contamination and is a safety hazard.
3. Dirt, oils, and greases from outside steam cleaning and vehicle washing.
4. Dripping of liquids from parked vehicles.
5. Solid and liquid wastes (noted above) that are not properly stored while awaiting disposal or recycling.
6. Loading and unloading area.

Railroads

SIC: 4011/13

Description: Railroad activities are spread over a large geographic area: along railroad lines, in switching yards, and in maintenance yards. Railroad activity occurs on both property owned or leased by the railroad and at the loading or unloading facilities of its customers. Employing BMPs at commercial or public loading and unloading areas is the responsibility of the particular property owner.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The following are potential sources of pollutants: dripping of vehicle fluids onto the road bed, leaching of wood preservatives from the railroad ties, human waste disposal, litter, locomotive sanding areas, locomotive/railcar/equipment cleaning areas, fueling areas, outside material storage areas, the erosion and loss of soil particles from the bed, and herbicides used for vegetation management.

Maintenance activities include maintenance shops for vehicles and equipment, track maintenance, and ditch cleaning. In addition to the railroad stock, the maintenance shops service highway vehicles and other types of equipment. Waste materials can include waste oil, solvents, degreasers, antifreeze, radiator flush, acid solutions, brake fluids, soiled rags, oil filters, sulfuric acid and battery sludge, and machine chips with residual machining oil and any toxic fluids or solids lost during transit. The following are potential pollutants at railyards: Oil and grease, TSS, BOD, organics, pesticides, and heavy metals.

Warehouses and Mini-Warehouses

SIC: 4220

Description: Businesses that store goods in buildings and other structures.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The following are potential pollutant sources from warehousing operations: Loading and unloading areas, outside storage of materials and equipment, fueling and maintenance areas. Potential pollutants include oil and grease and TSS.

Other Transportation and Communication

SIC: 4700-4900

Description: This group includes travel agencies, communication services such as TV and radio stations, cable companies, and electric and gas services. It does not include railroads, airplane transport services, airlines, pipeline companies, and airfields.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Gas and electric services are likely to own vehicles that are washed, fueled and maintained on site. Communication service companies can generate used oils and Dangerous Wastes. The following are the potential pollutants: Oil and grease, TSS, BOD, and heavy metals.

A.3 Retail and Wholesale Businesses

Gas Stations

SIC: 5540

Refer to S409 BMPs Fueling at Dedicated Stations in Chapter 2 of this Volume to select applicable BMPs.

Recyclers and Scrap Yards

SIC: 5093, 5015

Refer to S423 BMPs for Recyclers and Scrap Yards

Commercial Composting

SIC 2875

Description: This typically applies to businesses that have numerous compost piles that require large open areas to break down the wastes. Composting can contribute nutrients, organics, coliform bacteria, low pH, color, and suspended solids to stormwater runoff.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The compost is required to be contained, but may be a cause for concern during loading and unloading. Compost can have high levels of nutrients, organics, coliform bacteria, low pH, color concerns and suspended solids. Composting requires heavy equipment such as trucks and loaders. The equipment can generate oil and grease.

Restaurants/Fast Food

SIC: 5800

Description: Businesses that provide food service to the general public, including drive through facilities.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Potential pollutant sources include high-use customer parking lots and garbage dumpsters. The cleaning of roofs and other outside areas of restaurant and cooking vent filters in the parking lot can cause cooking grease to be discharged to the storm drains. The discharge of washwater or grease to storm drains or surface water is not allowed.

Retail/General Merchandise

SIC: 5300, 5600, 5700, 5900, and 5990

Description: This group includes general merchandising stores such as department stores, shopping malls, variety stores, 24-hour convenience stores, and general retail stores that focus on a few product types such as clothing and shoes. It also includes furniture and appliance stores.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Of particular concern are the high-use parking lots of shopping malls and 24-hour convenience stores. Furniture and appliance stores may provide repair services in which Dangerous Wastes may be produced.

Retail/Wholesale Vehicle and Equipment Dealers

SIC: 5010, 5080, and 5500, 751 excluding fueling stations (5540)

Description: This group includes all retail and wholesale businesses that sell, rent, or lease cars, trucks, boats, trailers, mobile homes, motorcycles and recreational vehicles. It includes both new and used vehicle dealers. It also includes sellers of heavy equipment for construction, farming, and industry. With the exception of motorcycle dealers, these businesses have large parking lots. Most retail dealers that sell new vehicles and large equipment also provide repair and maintenance services.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Oil and other materials that have dripped from parked vehicles can contaminate stormwater at high-use parking areas. Vehicles are washed regularly generating vehicle grime and detergent pollutants. The storm or washwater runoff will contain oils and various organics, metals, and phosphorus. Repair and maintenance services generate a variety of waste liquids and solids including used oils and engine fluids, solvents, waste paint, soiled rags, and dirty used engine parts. Many of these materials are Dangerous Wastes.

Retail/Wholesale Nurseries and Building Materials

SIC: 5030, 5198, 5210, 5230, and 5260

Description: These businesses are placed in a separate group because they are likely to store much of their merchandise outside of the main building. They include nurseries, and businesses that sell building and construction materials and equipment, paint (5198, 5230) and hardware.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Some businesses may have small fueling capabilities for forklifts and may also maintain and repair their vehicles and equipment. Some businesses may have unpaved areas, with the potential to contaminate stormwater by leaching of nutrients, pesticides, and herbicides. Businesses in this group surveyed in the Puget Sound area for Dangerous Wastes were found to produce waste solvents, paints and used oil. Storm runoff from exposed storage areas can contain suspended solids, and oil and grease from vehicles and forklifts and high-use customer parking lots, and other pollutants. Runoff from nurseries may contain nutrients, pesticides and/or herbicides.

Retail/Wholesale Chemicals and Petroleum

SIC: 5160, 5170

Description: These businesses sell plastic materials, chemicals and related products. This group also includes the bulk storage and selling of petroleum products such as diesel oil, automotive fuels, etc.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The general areas of concern are the spillage of chemicals or petroleum during loading and unloading, and the washing and maintenance of tanker trucks and other vehicles. Also, the fire code requires that vegetation be controlled within a tank farm to avoid a fire hazard. Herbicides are typically used. The concentration of oil in untreated stormwater is known to exceed the water quality effluent guideline for oil and grease. Runoff is also likely to contain significant concentrations of benzene, phenol, chloroform, lead, and zinc.

Retail/Wholesale Foods and Beverages
SIC 5140, 5180, 541, 542, 543

Description: Included are businesses that provide retail food stores including general groceries, fish and seafood, meats and meat products, dairy products, poultry, soft drinks, and alcoholic beverages.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Vehicles may be fueled, washed and maintained at the business. Spillage of food and beverages may occur. Waste food and broken contaminated glass may be temporarily stored in containers located outside. High-use customer parking lots may be sources of oil and other contaminants

Other Retail/Wholesale Businesses
SIC: 5010 (not 5012), 5040, 5060, 5070, 5090, 515

Description: Businesses in this group include sellers of vehicle parts, tires, furniture and home furnishings, photographic and office equipment, electrical goods, sporting goods and toys, paper products, drugs, and apparel.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Pollutant sources include high-use parking lots, and delivery vehicles that may be fueled, washed, and maintained on premises.

A.4 Service Businesses

Animal Care Services
SIC: 0740, 0750

Description: This group includes racetracks, kennels, fenced pens, veterinarians and businesses that provide boarding services for animals including horses, dogs, and cats.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The primary sources of pollution include animal manure, washwaters, waste products from animal treatment, runoff from pastures where larger livestock are allowed to roam, and vehicle maintenance and repair shops. Pastures may border streams and direct access to the stream may occur. Both surface water and ground water may be contaminated. Potential stormwater contaminants include fecal coliform, oil and grease, suspended solids, BOD, and nutrients.

Commercial Car and Truck Washes

SIC: 7542

Description: Facilities include automatic systems found at individual businesses or at gas stations and 24-hour convenience stores, as well as self-service. There are three main types: tunnels, rollovers and hand-held wands. The tunnel wash, the largest, is housed in a long building through which the vehicle is pulled. At a rollover wash the vehicle remains stationary while the equipment passes over. Wands are used at self-serve car washes. Some car washing businesses also sell gasoline.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Wash wastewater may contain detergents and waxes. Wastewater should be discharged to sanitary sewers. In self-service operations a drain is located inside each car bay. Although these businesses discharge the wastewater to the sanitary sewer, some washwater can find its way to the storm drain, particularly with the rollover and wand systems. Rollover systems often do not have air-drying. Consequently, as it leaves the enclosure the car sheds water to the pavement. With the self-service system, washwater with detergents can spray outside the building and drain to storm sewer. Users of self-serve operations may also clean engines and change oil, dumping the used oil into the storm drain. Potential pollutants include oil and grease, detergents, soaps, BOD, and TSS.

Equipment Repair

SIC: 7353, 7600

Description: This group includes several businesses that specialize in repairing different equipment including communications equipment, radio, TV, household appliances, and refrigeration systems. Also included are businesses that rent or lease heavy construction equipment as miscellaneous repair and maintenance may occur on site.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Potential pollutant sources include storage and handling of fuels, waste oils and solvents, and loading/unloading areas. Potential pollutants include oil and grease, low/high pH, and suspended solids.

Laundries and Other Cleaning Services

SIC: 7211 through 7217

Description: This category includes all types of cleaning services such as laundries, linen suppliers, diaper services, coin-operated laundries and dry cleaners, and carpet and upholstery services. Wet washing may involve the use of acids, bleaches and/or multiple organic solvents. Dry cleaners use an organic-based solvent, although small amounts of water and detergent are sometimes used. Solvents may be recovered and filtered for further use. Carpets and upholstery may be cleaned with dry materials, hot water extraction process, or in-plant processes using solvents followed by a detergent wash.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Wash liquids are discharged to sanitary sewers. Stormwater pollutant sources include: loading and unloading of liquid materials, particularly at large commercial operations, disposal of spent solvents and solvent cans, high-use customer parking lots, and outside storage and handling of solvents and waste materials. Potential stormwater contaminants include oil and grease, chlorinated and other solvents, soaps and detergents, low/high pH, and suspended solids.

Marinas and Boat Clubs

SIC: 7999

Description: Marinas and yacht clubs provide moorage for recreational boats. Marinas may also provide fueling and maintenance services. Other activities include cleaning and painting of boat surfaces, minor boat repair, and pumping of bilges and sanitary holding tanks. Not all marinas have a system to receive pumped bilge water.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Both solid and liquid wastes are produced as well as stormwater runoff from high-use customer parking lots. Waste materials include sewage and bilge water. Maintenance by the tenants will produce used oils, oil filters, solvents, waste paints and varnishes, used batteries, and empty contaminated containers and soiled rags. Potential stormwater contaminants include oil and grease, suspended solids, heavy metals, and low/high pH.

Golf and Country Clubs

SIC: 7992, 7997

Description: Public and private golf courses and parks are included.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Maintenance of grassed areas and landscaped vegetation has historically required the use of fertilizers and pesticides. Golf courses contain small lakes that are sometimes treated with algaecides and/or mosquito larvicides. The fertilizer and pesticide application process can lead to inadvertent contamination of nearby surface waters by overuse, misapplication, or the occurrence of storms shortly after application. Heavy watering of surface greens in golf courses may cause pesticides or fertilizers to migrate to surface and shallow ground water resources. The use of pesticides and fertilizers generates waste containers. Equipment must be cleaned and maintained.

Miscellaneous Services

SIC: 4959, 7260, 7312, 7332, 7333, 7340, 7395, 7641, 7990, 8411

Description: This group includes photographic studios, commercial photography, funeral services, amusement parks, furniture and upholstery repair and pest control services, and other professional offices. Pollutants from these activities can include pesticides, waste solvents, heavy metals, pH, and suspended solids, soaps and detergents, and oil and grease.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Leaks and spills of materials from the following businesses can be sources of stormwater pollutants:

1. Building maintenance produces wash and rinse solutions, oils, and solvents.
2. Pest control produces rinsewater with residual pesticides from washing application equipment and empty containers.
3. Outdoor advertising produces photographic chemicals, inks, waste paints, organic paint sludges containing metals.
4. Funeral services produce formalin, formaldehyde, and ammonia.
5. Upholstery and furniture repair businesses produce oil, stripping compounds, wood preservatives and solvents.

Professional Services
SIC: 6000, 7000 and 8000, 806, 807 not listed elsewhere

Description: The remaining service businesses include theaters, hotels/motels, finance, banking, hospitals, medical/dental laboratories, medical services, nursing homes, schools/universities, and legal, financial and engineering services. Stormwater from parking lots will contain undesirable concentrations of oil and grease, suspended particulates, and metals such as lead, cadmium and zinc. Dangerous wastes might be generated at hospitals, nursing homes and other medical services.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: The primary concern is runoff from high use parking areas, maintenance shops, and storage and handling of dangerous wastes.

Vehicle Maintenance and Repair
SIC: 4000, 7530, 7600

Description: This category includes businesses that paint, repair and maintain automobiles, motorcycles, trucks, and buses and battery, radiator, muffler, lube, tune-up and tire shops, excluding those businesses listed elsewhere in this manual.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Pollutant sources include storage and handling of vehicles, solvents, cleaning chemicals, waste materials, vehicle liquids, batteries, and washing and steam cleaning of vehicles, parts, and equipment. Potential pollutants include waste oil, solvents, degreasers, antifreeze, radiator flush, acid solutions with chromium, zinc, copper, lead and cadmium, brake fluid, soiled rags, oil filters, sulfuric acid and battery sludge, and machine chips in residual machining oil.

Multi-Family Residences
SIC: NA

Description: Multifamily residential buildings such as apartments and condominiums. The activities of concern are vehicle parking, vehicle washing and oil changing, minor repairs, and temporary storage of garbage.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Stormwater contamination can occur at vehicle parking lots and from washing of vehicles. Runoff from parking lots may contain undesirable concentrations of oil and grease, suspended particulates, and metals such as lead, cadmium, and zinc.

Construction Businesses
SIC: 1500, 1600, 1700

Description: This category includes builders of homes, commercial and industrial buildings, and heavy equipment as well as plumbing, painting and paper hanging, carpentry, electrical, roofing and sheet metal, wrecking and demolition, stonework, drywall, and masonry contractors. It does not include construction sites.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Potential pollutant sources include leaks/spills of used oils, solvents, paints, batteries, acids, strong acid/alkaline wastes, paint/varnish removers, tars, soaps, coatings, asbestos, lubricants, anti-freeze compounds, litter, and fuels at the headquarters, operation, staging, and maintenance/repair locations of the businesses.

Demolition contractors may store reclaimed material before resale. Roofing contractors generate residual tars and sealing compounds, spent solvents, kerosene, and soap cleaners, as well as non- dangerous waste roofing materials. Sheet metal contractors produce small quantities of acids and solvent cleaners such as kerosene, metal shavings, adhesive residues and enamel coatings, and asbestos residues that have been removed from buildings. Asphalt paving contractors are likely to store application equipment such as dump trucks, pavers, tack coat tankers and pavement rollers at their businesses. Stormwater passing through this equipment may be contaminated by the petroleum residuals. Potential pollutants include oil and grease, suspended solids, BOD, heavy metals, pH, COD, organic compounds, etc.

A.5 Public Agency Activities

Introduction

Local, state, and federal governments conduct many of the pollutant generating activities conducted at business facilities. Local governments include cities and counties, also single-purpose entities such as fire, sewer and water districts.

Public Facilities and Streets

Description: Included in this group are public buildings. Also included are maintenance (deicing), and repair of streets and roads.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Wastes generated include deicing and anti-icing compounds, solvents, paint, acid and alkaline wastes, paint and varnish removers, and debris. Large amounts of scrap materials are also produced throughout the course of construction and street repair. Potential pollutants include suspended solids, oil and grease, and low/high pH.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Wastes generated include deicing and anti-icing compounds, solvents, paint, acid and alkaline wastes, paint and varnish removers, and debris. Large amounts of scrap materials are also produced throughout the course of construction and street repair. Potential pollutants include suspended solids, oil and grease, and low/high pH.

Maintenance of Open Public Space Areas

Description: The maintenance of large open spaces that are covered by expanses of grass and landscaped vegetation. Examples are zoos and public cemeteries. Golf courses and parks are covered in Chapter 2.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Maintenance of grassed areas and landscaped vegetation has historically required the use of fertilizers and pesticides. Golf courses contain small lakes that are sometimes treated with algaecides and/or mosquito larvicides. The application of pesticides can lead to inadvertent contamination of nearby surface waters by overuse, misapplication, or the occurrence of storms shortly after application. Heavy watering of surface greens in golf courses may cause pesticides or fertilizers to migrate to surface and shallow ground water resources. The application of pesticides and fertilizers generates waste containers. Equipment must be cleaned and maintained. Maintenance shops where the equipment is maintained must comply with the BMPs specified under BMP Maintenance and Repair of Vehicles and Equipment.

Maintenance of Public Stormwater Pollutant Control Facilities

Description: Facilities include roadside catch basins on arterials and within residential areas, conveyance pipes, detention facilities such as ponds and vaults, oil and water separators, biofilters, settling basins, infiltration systems, and all other types of stormwater treatment systems presented in Volume III, Runoff Control.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Research has shown that roadside catch basins can remove from 5 to 15 percent of the pollutants present in stormwater. However, to be effective they must be cleaned. Research has indicated that once catch basins are about 60 percent full of sediment, they cease removing sediments. Generally in urban areas, catch basins become 60 percent full within 6 to 12 months.

Water and solids produced during the cleaning of stormwater treatment systems, including oil and water separators, can adversely affect both surface and ground water quality if disposed of improperly. Ecology has documented water quality violations and fish kills due to improper disposal of decant water (water that is removed) and catch basin sediments from maintenance activities. Disposal of decant water and solids shall be conducted in accordance with local, state, and federal requirements.

Historically, decant water from trucks has been placed back in the storm drain. Solids have been disposed of in permitted landfills and in unpermitted vacant land including wetlands. Research has shown that these residuals contain pollutants at concentrations that exceed water quality criteria. For example, limited sampling by King County and the Washington Department of Transportation of sediments removed from catch basins in residential and commercial areas has found the petroleum hydrocarbons to frequently exceed 200 mg/gram. Above this concentration, regulations require disposal at a lined landfill.

Water and Sewer Districts and Departments

Description: The maintenance of water and sewer systems can produce residual materials that, if not properly handled, can cause short-term environmental impacts in adjacent surface and/or ground waters. With the exception of a few simple processes, both water and sewage treatment produce residual sludge that must be disposed of properly. However, this activity is controlled by other Ecology regulatory programs and is not discussed in this manual. Larger water and sewer districts or departments may service their own vehicles.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Maintenance operations of concern include the cleaning of sewer and water lines, and water reservoirs, general activities around treatment plants, disposal of sludge, and the temporary shutdown of pump stations for either normal maintenance or emergencies. During the maintenance of water transmission lines and reservoirs, water district/departments must dispose of wastewater, both when the line or reservoir is initially emptied, as well as when it is cleaned and then sanitized. Sanitation requires chlorine concentrations of 25 to 100 ppm, considerably above the normal concentration used to chlorinate drinking water. These waters are discharged to sanitary sewers where available.

However, transmission lines from remote water supply sources often pass through both rural and urban-fringe areas where sanitary sewers are not available. In these areas, chlorinated water may have to be discharged to a nearby stream or storm drain, particularly since the emptying of a pipe section occurs at low points that frequently exist at stream crossings. Although prior to disposal the water is dechlorinated using sodium thiosulfate or a comparable chemical, malfunctioning of the dechlorination system can kill fish and other aquatic life. The drainage from reservoirs located in unsewered areas is conveyed to storm drains. The cleaning of sewer lines and manholes generates sediments. These sediments contain both inorganic and organic materials are odorous and contaminated with microorganisms and heavy metals. Activities around sewage treatment plants can be a source of non-point pollution. Besides the normal runoff of stormwater from paved surfaces, grit removed from the headworks of the plant is stored temporarily in dumpsters that may be exposed to the elements. Maintenance and repair shops may produce waste paints, used oil, cleaning solvents, and soiled rags.

Port Districts

Description: The port districts considered here include the following business activities: recreational boat marinas and launch ramps, airfields, container trans-shipment, bulk material import/export including farm products, lumber, logs, alumina, and cement; and break-bulk (piece) material such as machinery, equipment, and scrap metals. Port districts frequently have tenants whose activities are not marine-dependent.

Potential Pollutant Generating Sources: Marine terminals require extensive use of mobile equipment that may drip liquids. Waste materials associated with containers/vehicle/equipment washing/steam cleaning, maintenance and repair may be generated at a marine terminal. Debris can accumulate in loading/unloading or open storage areas, providing a source of stormwater contamination. Wooden debris from the crating of piece cargo crushed by passing mobile loading equipment leaches soluble pollutants when in contact with pooled stormwater. Log sorting yards produce large quantities of bark that can be a source of suspended solids and leached pollutants. Potential pollutants include oil and grease, TSS, heavy metals, and organics.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix IV-B Stormwater Pollutants and Their Adverse Impact

The stormwater pollutants of most concern are total suspended solids (TSS), oil and grease, nutrients, pesticides, other organics, pathogens, biochemical oxygen demand (BOD), heavy metals, and salts (chlorides) (USEPA, 1995, Field and Pitt, 1997, Strecker, et al., 1997)

Total Suspended Solids

This represents particulate solids such as eroded soil, heavy metal precipitates, and biological solids (all considered as conventional pollutants), which can cause sedimentation in streams and turbidity in receiving surface waters. These sediments can destroy the desired habitat for fish and can impact drinking water supplies. The sediment may be carried to streams, lakes, or Puget Sound where they may be toxic to aquatic life and make dredging necessary.

Oil and Grease

Oil and grease can be toxic to aquatic life. Concentrations in stormwater from commercial and industrial areas often exceed Ecology guidelines of: 10 mg/l maximum daily average, 15 mg/L maximum at any time, and no ongoing or frequently recurring visible sheen.

Nutrients

Phosphorus and nitrogen compounds can cause excessive growth of aquatic vegetation in lakes and marine waters.

BOD

Biological Oxygen Demand (BOD) is a measure of the oxygen demand from organic, nitrogenous, and other materials that are consumed by bacteria present in receiving waters. BOD in the water may deplete Oxygen in the process, threatening higher organisms such as fish.

Toxic Organics

A study found 19 of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's 121 priority pollutants present in the runoff from Seattle streets. The most frequently detected pollutants were pesticides, phenols, phthalates, and polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs).

Heavy Metals

Stormwater can contain heavy metals such as lead, zinc, cadmium, and copper at concentrations that often exceed water quality criteria and that can be toxic to fish and other aquatic life. Research in Puget Sound has shown that metals and toxic organics concentrate in sediments and at the water surface (microlayer) where they interfere with the reproductive cycle of many biotic species as well as cause tumors and lesions in fish.

pH

A measure of the alkalinity or acidity that can be toxic to fish if it varies appreciably from neutral pH, which is 7.0.

Bacteria and Viruses

Stormwater can contain disease-causing bacteria and viruses, although not at concentrations found in sanitary sewage. Shellfish subjected to stormwater discharges near urban areas are usually unsafe for human consumption.

Research has shown that the concentrations of pollutants in stormwater from residential, commercial, and industrial areas can exceed Ecology's water quality standards and guidelines.

Appendix IV-C Recycling/Disposal of Vehicle Fluids/Other Wastes*

	RECOMMENDED MANAGEMENT
Antifreeze	Store separately for resale. Separate ethylene glycol from propylene glycol for off-site recycling. If not recyclable, send to Treatment, Storage, and Disposal Facility (TSDF) for disposal.
Batteries	INTACT: Accumulate under cover prior to sale, deliver to recycler, or return to manufacturer. BROKEN: Accumulate acid from broken batteries in resistant containers with secondary containment. Send to TSDF for disposal.
Brake fluid	Accumulate in separate, marked, closed container. Do not mix with waste oil. Recycle.
Fuel	Store gasoline, and diesel separately for use or resale. Mixtures of diesel, gasoline, oil, and other fluids may not be recyclable and may require expensive disposal.
Fuel filters	Drain fluids for use as product. With approval of local landfill operator, dispose to dumpster, if needed.
Oil filters	Puncture the filter dome and drain it for 24 hours. Put oil drained from filters into a "USED OIL ONLY" container. Keep drained filters in a separate container marked "USED OIL FILTERS ONLY." Locate a scrap metal dealer who will pick up and recycle filters. With approval of local landfill operator, dispose of drained filters to dumpster.
Paint	Accumulate oil-based and water-based paints separately for use or resale. If not recyclable, send accumulations to TSDF for disposal.
Power steering fluid	Same as for used oils
Shop towels/oily rags	Use cloth towels that can be laundered and reused. Accumulate used shop towels in a closed container. Sign up with an industrial laundry service that can recycle towels.
Solvents	Consider using less hazardous solvents or switching to a spray cabinet that doesn't use solvent. Accumulate solvents separately. Consider purchasing a solvent still and recycling solvent on site. Do not mix with used oil. Do not evaporate as a means of disposal.
Transmission oil, differential and rear end fluids	Accumulate in a "USED OIL ONLY" container. Arrange for pickup for off-site recycling.
Used oils; including, crankcase oil, transmission oil, power steering fluid and differential/rear end oil	Keep used oil in a separate container marked "USED OIL ONLY." Do not mix with brake fluid, or used antifreeze. Do not mix with any other waste if burning for heating. Arrange for pickup for off-site recycling.
Windshield washer fluid	Accumulate separately for use or resale. Discharge to on-site sewage disposal, or, if acceptable by the local sewer authority, discharge to sanitary sewer.

* Ecology's Hazardous Waste Program developed this information. The Hazardous Waste Service Directory is now available online at: http://apps.ecy.wa.gov/hwsd/default.htm.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix IV-D Regulatory Requirements That Impact Stormwater Programs

R.1 Stormwater Discharges to Public Sanitary Sewers, Septic Systems, Dead-End Sumps, and Industrial Waste Treatment Systems

Stormwater Discharges to Sanitary Sewers. Discharging stormwater to a public sanitary sewer is normally prohibited, as this tends to overload the sewage treatment plant during storm events when flows are already high. Direct discharge of relatively uncontaminated or treated stormwater from businesses typically poses less of a threat to the environment than pass through of solids due to "wash out" at the sewage treatment plant during storm events. Such discharges require the approval of the local Sewer Authority if Ecology has delegated the authority to set pretreatment requirements. If the Sewer Authority has not received such authority, the business or public agency that wishes to discharge stormwater to the sanitary sewer must also apply for a State Waste Discharge Permit.

In setting pretreatment requirements, the local Sewer Authority or Ecology must operate within state regulations (Chapter 173-216 WAC – State Waste Water Discharge Permit Program) which in turn must comply with federal regulations (40 CFR Part 403.5 – National Pretreatment). These regulations specifically prohibit discharge of any materials which:

- Pass through the municipal treatment plant untreated or interfere with its operation.
- Create a fire or explosion hazard, including, but not limited to, waste-streams with a closed cup flash point of less than 140 degrees Fahrenheit or 60 degrees Centigrade using the test methods specified in 40 CFR 261.21.
- Will cause corrosive structural damage to the Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW), but in no case Discharges with pH lower than 5.0, or greater than 11, unless the works is specifically designed to accommodate such Discharges; and the discharge authorized by a permit issued under Chapter 173-216 WAC. (See WAC 173-216-060 (2) (iv)).
- Solid or viscous pollutants in amounts that will cause obstruction to the flow in the POTW resulting in interference.
- Heat in amounts that will inhibit biological activity in the POTW resulting in interference, but in no case heat in such quantities that the temperature at the POTW Treatment Plant exceeds 40 degrees Centigrade (104 degrees Fahrenheit) unless the system is specifically designed to accommodate such discharge, and the discharge is authorized by a permit under Ch 173-216 WAC. (See WAC 173-216-060 (2) (v)).

- Petroleum oil, nonbiodegradable cutting oil or products of mineral oil origin in amounts that will cause interference or pass through the treatment plant.
- Pollutants that result in the presence of toxic gases, vapors, or fumes within the POTW in a quantity that may cause acute worker health and safety problems.
- Any trucked or hauled pollutants, except at discharge points designated by the POTW.
- Any discharge which would violate the dangerous waste regulations, Chapter 173-303 WAC (see WAC 173-216-060(1)).
- Any of the following discharges, unless approved by the department under extraordinary circumstances, such as lack of direct discharge alternatives due to combined sewer service or need to augment sewage flows due to septic conditions: (WAC 173-216-060(2)(vii)):
  - Noncontact cooling water in significant volumes.
  - Stormwater, and other direct inflow sources.
  - Wastewater significantly affecting system hydraulic loading, which do not require treatment or would not be afforded a significant degree of treatment by the system.

Discharges of stormwater authorized under Chapter 173-216 WAC, typically limit flows entering the sanitary sewer based on the available hydraulic capacity of the collection system or the treatment plant by the combined flow of sanitary sewage and stormwater. The allowable concentrations of particular materials such as metals and grease vary with the particular sewer system. Discharges must comply with all local government limits. Please contact both the POTW and the regional water quality program to find out what discharge limits apply to a particular sewerage system.

Stormwater Discharges to an Industrial Waste Treatment System: Operators may process treatment to dispose of polluted stormwater depending on the NPDES permit constraints of the particular business.

Stormwater Discharges to Dead-end Sumps: Do not discharge substances that causes a violation of water quality standards to a septic system, surface water, or ground water. If a sanitary or industrial wastewater treatment system is not available, an alternative is the use of a dead-end sump. Sumps are tanks with drains that can be periodically pumped for appropriate disposal. Depending on the composition of the waste, it may or may not be considered Dangerous Waste.

For more information on disposal requirements for sumps, see Step By Step: Fact Sheets for Hazardous Waste Generators, publication #91-12, available from Ecology's Regional Offices.

R.2 Uniform Fire Code Requirements

Storage of flammable, ignitable, and reactive chemicals and materials must comply with the stricter of local zoning codes, local fire codes, the Uniform Fire Code, Uniform Fire Code standards or the National Electric Code.

R.3 Ecology Requirements for Generators of Dangerous Wastes

The State's Dangerous Waste Regulations (Chapter 173-303 WAC) cover accumulation, storage, transportation, treatment and disposal of dangerous wastes. Of interest to this manual are those businesses or public agencies that accumulate the waste at their building until taken from the site by a contract hauler.

For more information on applicable requirements for dangerous wastes, see Step By Step: Fact Sheets for Hazardous Waste Generators, publication #91-12, available from Ecology's Regional Offices.

R.4 Standards for Solid Waste Containers

Standards for solid waste containers are identified in WAC 173-350-300, On-site Storage, Collection, and Transportation Standards.

R.5 Coast Guard Requirements for Marine Transfer of Petroleum Products

Federal regulations 33 CFR Parts 153, 154 and 155 cover, respectively, general requirements on spill response, spill prevention at marine transfer facilities, and spill prevention for vessels. These regulations specify technical requirements for transfer hoses, loading arms, closure, and monitoring devices. The regulations also cover small discharge containment: they require the use of "fixed catchments, curbing, and other fixed means" at each hose handling and loading arm area and each hose connection manifold area. Operators can use portable containment in exceptional situations where fixed containment is not feasible. The capacity of the containment area varies from the volume of 1 to 4 barrels depending on the size of the transfer hoses.

The regulations also require an operations plan and specify its general contents. The plan shall describe the responsibilities of personnel, nature of the facility, hours of operation, sizes and numbers of vessels using the facility, nature of the cargo, procedures if spills occur, and petroleum transfer procedures. The plan must also include a description and location of equipment for monitoring, containment, and fire fighting. *See also, NFPA 30A Automotive and Marine Service Station Code, American National Standard Institute and the National Fire Protection Association.*

R.6 Washington State/Federal Emergency Spill Cleanup Requirements

Washington State Requirements:
The Oil and Hazardous Substance Spills Act of 1990 and the Oil Spill Prevention and Response Act of 1991 (Chapter 90.56 RCW) authorized Ecology to develop effective oil spill response regulations.

The Facility Contingency Plan and response Contractor Standards (Chapter 173-182 WAC):

This Ecology regulation applies to all oil handling facilities (including pipelines) that are on or near navigable waters and transfer bulk oil by tank, ship, or pipeline. It contains the following elements:

- Standards for contingency plan content
- Procedures to determine the adequacy of contingency plans
- Requirements for periodic review
- Standards for cleanup and containment contractors

The Oil Handling Training and Certification Rule (Chapter 173-180 WAC) establishes oil spill training and certification requirements for key facility personnel including applicable contractors involved in oil handling, transfer, storage, and monitoring operations.

In accordance with WAC 173-303-350 of Ecology's Dangerous Waste Regulations, generators of dangerous wastes must have a Contingency Plan that includes:

- Actions to be taken in the event of spill
- Descriptions of arrangements with local agencies
- The name of the owner's Emergency Coordinator
- A list of emergency equipment available
- An evaluation plan for business personnel

For more information on disposal requirements for solid and dangerous wastes, see Step By Step: Fact Sheets for Hazardous Waste Generators, publication #91-12, available from Ecology's Regional Offices.

Federal Requirements:

The Oil Pollution Act of 1990 is a comprehensive federal law that addresses marine oil spill issues including contingency plans, financial responsibility, marine safety regulations, etc.

Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure (SPCC) Plans:

Federal Regulations require that owners or operators of facilities engaged in drilling, producing, gathering, storing, processing, refining, transferring, or consuming oil and oil products are required to have a Spill Prevention and Control Plan (SPCC), provided that the facility is non-transportation related; and, that the above-ground storage of a single container is in excess of 660 gallons, or an aggregate capacity greater than 1,320 gallons, or a total below-ground capacity in excess of 42,000 gallons. The Plan must:

- Be well thought out in accordance with good engineering;
- Achieve three objectives - prevent spills, contain a spill that occurs, and clean up the spill;
- Identify the name, location, owner, and type of facility;
- Include the date of initial operation and oil spill history;
- Name the designated person responsible;
- Show evidence of approval and certification by the person in authority; and
- Contain a facility analysis.

R.7 WSDA Pesticide Regulations

The Washington State Department of Agriculture (WSDA) administers pesticide laws, under the Washington Pesticide Control Act (Chapter 15.58 RCW), Washington Pesticide Application Act (Chapter 17.21 RCW), and regulations under Chapter 16-228 WAC. The requirements relevant to water quality protection are:

Licenses are required for persons who apply pesticides except:

- People who use general-use pesticides on their own or their employer's property;
- Grounds maintenance people using only general-use pesticides on an occasional basis not amounting to a regular occupation;
- Governmental employees who apply general-use pesticides without utilizing any kind of motorized or pressurized apparatus;
- Employees of a commercial applicator or a government agency who are under direct on-site supervision by a licensed applicator.

Licensed applicators must undergo 40 hours of continuing education to keep their license.

No person shall pollute streams, lakes, or other water supplies while loading, mixing or applying pesticides.

No person shall transport, handle, store, load, apply, or dispose of any pesticide, pesticide container, or apparatus in such a manner as to pollute water supplies or waterways, or cause damage or injury to land, including humans, desirable plants, and animals.

For more information on pesticide application and disposal requirements the following publications may be useful:

"Hazardous Waste Pesticides: A Guide for Growers, Applicators, Consultants and Dealers," Ecology Publication #89-41, August 1989, available from Ecology's Regional Offices.

"Suspended, Canceled and Restricted Pesticides," EPA, available from the EPA Region 10 Office in Seattle.

"Best Management Practices for Agricultural Chemicals-A Guide for Pesticide Secondary Containment," Ecology Publication #94-189.

"Site Evaluation-A Guide for Pesticide Secondary Containment," Ecology Publication #94-188.

"Reducing and Managing Wastes From Catchbasins-A Guide for Pesticide Secondary Containment," Ecology Publication #94-186.

"Spill Reporting and Cleanup in Washington State-A Guide for Pesticide Secondary Containment," Ecology Publication #94-187.

"Pesticide Container Cleaning and Disposal," Ecology Publication #96-431.

"Step By Step: Fact Sheets for Hazardous Waste Generators," Ecology Publication #91-12.

R.8 Air Quality Regulations

Regulation of air pollutant emissions in Washington is controlled by seven local air pollution control agencies, three Ecology regional offices and two Ecology programs (Central Program's Industrial Section, and Nuclear and Mixed Waste Program). All of the local air pollution agencies and the regional offices enforce local, state and federal air pollution regulations. The Industrial Section of Ecology's Central Program enforces state and federal air pollution regulations at chemical pulp mills and aluminum reduction facilities. The Nuclear and Mixed Waste Program enforces state and federal air pollution regulation on the Hanford Nuclear Reservation.

Whether it is to control the generation of fugitive emissions or point source (smoke stack) emissions, new and existing sources of air pollutants must comply with the requirements contained in their air pollution permits, regulatory orders, and local, state, and federal air pollution regulations. This will minimize the effects of each facility's emissions on stormwater.

Fugitive Particulate Matter Emissions: The local and state air pollution control agencies require that all reasonable precautions be taken to prevent fugitive particulate matter (windblown dust) from becoming airborne when handling, loading, transporting, and storing particulate material.

Particulate materials of concern can include grain and grain dust, saw dust, coal, gravel and crushed rock, cement, and boiler fly ash.

Some of the local authorities take the general requirement to control fugitive emissions further. For example, the Puget Sound and Benton County Air Pollution Control Agencies have defined what "reasonable precautions" means for various dust causing activities in their jurisdictions.

Some actions that have been defined as "reasonable precautions" to prevent fugitive particulate emissions include paving of parking and storage areas, minimizing the area of land that has been cleared for housing development, various housekeeping activities such as sweeping paved areas, minimization of the accumulation of mud and dust and preventing mud and dust being tracked onto public roads, and stabilization of materials piles and open, cleared land areas with water sprays, chemical stabilizers or other means that minimize dust generation. All air authorities require sand blasting and spray painting activities be performed indoors with proper air pollution controls in use or, if that is not possible, out of doors but within acceptable, temporary enclosures.

Gaseous Air Pollutant Emissions: Gaseous air pollutants are controlled at the point of origin through add-on emission controls or pollution prevention measures. Each emission point at a plant generally has emission limits that must be complied with.

Sources of gaseous air pollutants can include petroleum storage tank breather and pressure release systems, combustion units (boilers and heaters), commercial printers, can manufacturers, steel mills, pulp and paper plants, auto body repair shops, etc. Examples of gaseous air pollutants that can be emitted include acetone, methylene chloride, styrene, nitrogen oxides, benzene, carbon monoxide, alcohol, organic sulfides and petroleum, and chlorinated solvents.

Some gaseous pollutants can be washed out of the air during rainstorms and enter stormwater. Others are photochemically degraded or converted in the air to other compounds that can be removed by rainfall or by settling on the ground. Gaseous air pollutants such as sulfur dioxide react in the air to generate acidic particulate matter. These particulates are usually removed from the atmosphere by settling out or being washed out of the air. In the case of sulfur oxides, this removal usually occurs at some distance (tens to hundreds of miles) from the facility that emitted the pollutant.

R.9 Ecology Waste Reduction Program

The 1990 Hazardous Waste Reduction Act, Chapter 70.95C RCW, established a goal to reduce dangerous waste generation by 50 percent. The primary means for achieving this goal is through implementation of a pollution prevention-planning program, also established in the Act.

Facilities that generate in excess of 2,640 pounds of dangerous waste per year, or who are required to report under the Toxic Release Inventory (TRI) of Title III of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act (SARA), are subject to this law. Some 650 facilities in Washington currently participate in this planning program.

Pollution prevention planning is an activity that involves:

Inventorying substances used and dangerous waste generated;

Identifying opportunities to prevent pollution;

Analyzing the feasibility of these prevention opportunities; and

Setting goals for hazardous substance use reduction and dangerous waste reduction, recycling and treatment.

Ecology promotes pollution prevention through initiatives other than planning. Several campaigns targeting specific industries have been conducted and more are being planned. These campaigns have a joint focus of pollution prevention and regulatory compliance, and help target future technical assistance. Ecology provides technical assistance through its regional offices, with emphasis on the reduction of hazardous substance use and dangerous waste generation. Site visits, phone consultations, and workshops are some of the ways assistance is provided to businesses and governmental entities.

Pollution prevention has emerged as a key strategy for protecting the environment. Business, industry and government alike recognize the benefits of prevention rather than end of pipe controls. Many factors, including regulatory compliance, cost savings, worker safety and reduced liabilities help validate pollution prevention as an approach to be incorporated into all business practices.

R.10 Washington State Ground Water Quality Standards

In December 1990, the state of Washington adopted ground water quality standards to prevent ground water pollution and protect both current and future beneficial uses of the resource. Beneficial uses of ground water include drinking water, irrigation, and support of wildlife habitat. These standards apply to any activity, including point and non-point, which has a potential to contaminate ground water. The standards protect all ground water within the saturated zone throughout the State of Washington and do not distinguish ground water that is isolated, seasonal, or artificial from that which is extensive and naturally occurring. The standards incorporate an existing part of state water quality law: the antidegradation policy, which is an integral part of both the ground and surface water quality standards.

The standards consist of both numeric criteria and narrative standards designed to protect both current and future beneficial uses of ground water. The numeric criteria for primary, secondary, and radionuclide contaminants have been adopted from the Federal Safe Drinking Water Act of 1971. Numeric criteria for carcinogenic compounds are based upon human health criteria. These criteria represent the maximum allowable contaminant concentration in ground water within the aquifer. However, the antidegradation policy requires that ground water quality be protected to the greatest extent possible prior to contaminant concentrations reaching those specified within the numeric criteria. To address this requirement, narrative standards were developed which are based upon background water quality and use of treatment technologies and are site specific in nature. Under these standards, specific early warning and enforcement limits are set at a point of compliance which must be met by a facility or activity if enforcement action is to be avoided. All facilities or activities within the State of Washington must first attempt to meet these narrative standards. The determination of specific limits is outlined in *Implementation Guidance for the Ground Water Quality Standards, Ecology publication #96-02 (Ecology, 1996).*

In addition to using background ground water quality as a basis for determining specific early warning and enforcement limits, Washington law requires that all activities with the potential to contaminate water implement practices known as AKART – short for "all known available and reasonable methods of prevention, control and treatment." AKART must be used regardless of the quality of the receiving waters. As technology and preventive controls are refined to better protect water quality, AKART is also redefined. In individual cases where AKART fails to protect water quality, the activity must apply additional controls.

State law requires the permitting of any industrial, commercial, or municipal operation, which discharges waste material into ground and/or surface waters. These permits, issued by Ecology, set limits and conditions for discharges. Underground injection activities, while exempt from the State Waste Discharge Program, Chapter 173-216 WAC, are required to meet the ground water quality standards and may be permitted under Chapter 173-218 WAC, Underground Injection Control Program. Guidance for permit development will describe how an industry or commercial or municipal operation must conduct its activities in order to protect ground water quality.

The ground water quality standards provide for several exemptions. One of these exceptions provides that the standards do not apply in the root zone of saturated soils where agricultural pesticides or nutrients have been applied at agronomic rates for agricultural purposes. The standards do apply below the crop's root zone. State approved BMPs may be considered one type of AKART for agriculture, and other point and non-point sources. Another exemption applies to any remedial or clean-up activity conducted under federal CERCLA or state Model Toxics Control Act.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix IV-E NPDES Stormwater Discharge Permits

Summary:

The Environmental Protection Agency's (EPA) National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System Permit (NPDES) regulations for stormwater (40 CFR Parts 122, 123, and 124) became effective on November 16, 1990. Because Washington is an NPDES delegated state, it issues NPDES permits for designated industries, construction sites, and municipalities.

Industrial Stormwater Permits:

USEPA regulations list certain industrial activities (Reference: 40 CFR 122.26(b)(14) which may need to have a stormwater discharge permit. The following categories (1 through 10) of facilities are considered to be engaging in "industrial activity." They are required by EPA to have a stormwater NPDES permit if they have a stormwater discharge to surface water.

1) Facilities subject to stormwater effluent limitations guidelines, new source performance standards, or toxic pollutant effluent standards under 40 CFR subchapter N (except facilities with toxic pollutant effluent standards under category 11 below).

2) Facilities classified by the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) system as:

   24 - Lumber and Wood Products except Furniture (except 2434-Wood Kitchen Cabinets)

   26 - Paper and Allied Products (except 265-Paperboard Containers and Boxes, and except 267-Converted Paper and Paperboard Products except Containers and Boxes)

   28 - Chemicals and Allied Products (except 283-Drugs; and 285-Paints, Varnishes, Lacquers, Enamels, and Allied Products)

   29 - Petroleum Refining and Related Industries

   311 - Leather Tanning and Finishing

   32 - Stone, Clay, Glass and Concrete Products (except 323-Glass Products, made of Purchased Glass)

   33 - Primary Metal Industries

   3441 - Fabricated Structural Metal Products

   373 - Ship and Boat Building and Repair

3) Facilities classified by the Standard Industrial Classification (SIC) system as:

   10 - Metal Mining

   12 - Coal Mining

   13 - Oil and Gas Extraction

   14 - Mining and Quarrying of Nonmetallic Minerals, except Fuels (Includes active or inactive mining operations (except for areas of coal mining operations no longer meeting the definition of a reclamation area under 40 CFR 434.11(1) or except for areas of non-coal mining operations which have been released from applicable state or federal reclamation requirements by December 17, 1990) and oil and gas exploration, production, processing or treatment operations, or transmission facilities that discharge storm water that has come into contact with any overburden, raw material, intermediate products, finished products, byproducts or waste products located on the site of such operation.

4) Dangerous waste treatment, storage, or disposal facilities, including those that are operated under interim status or a permit under subtitle C of RCRA.

5) Landfills, land application sites and open dumps that receive or have received any industrial wastes (waste that is received from any of the facilities described under this subsection) including those that are subject to regulation under subtitle D of RCRA.

6) Facilities involved in the recycling of materials including metal scrap yards, battery reclaimers, salvage yards and automobile junkyards, including but not limited to those classified as SIC 5015-Wholesale Trade Activities of Motor Vehicle Parts, Used; and SIC 5093-Scrap and Waste Materials.

7) Steam electric power generating facilities, including coal-handling sites.

8) Transportation facilities classified under the following SIC codes, which have vehicle maintenance shops, equipment-cleaning operations, and airport deicing operations.

   40 - Railroad Transportation

   41 - Local and Suburban Transit and Interurban Highway Passenger Transportation

   42 - Motor Freight Transportation and Warehousing (except 4221-Farm Product Warehousing and Storage, 4222-Refrigerated Warehousing and Storage, and 4225-General Warehousing and Storage)

43 - United States Postal Service

44 - Water Transportation

45 - Transportation by Air

5171 - Petroleum Bulk Stations and Terminals

9) Treatment works treating domestic sewage or any other sewage sludge or wastewater treatment device or system, used in the storage treatment, recycling, and reclamation of municipal or domestic sewage, including land dedicated to the disposal of sewage sludge that are located within the confines of the facility, with a design flow of 1.0 MGD or more, or required to have an approved pretreatment program under 40 CFR part 403. Not included are farmlands, domestic gardens, or lands used for sludge management where sludge is beneficially reused and which are not physically located in the confines of the facility, or areas that are in compliance with section 405 of the Clean Water Act.

10) Construction activity including clearing, grading and excavation activities except: operations that result in the disturbance of less than one acre of total land area which are not part of a larger common plan of development or sale. (See "Construction Stormwater Permits" below)

11) Facilities under the following SIC classifications need to apply for a stormwater NPDES permit only if they are engaged in an "industrial activity" which is exposed to stormwater and they have a point source stormwater discharge to surface water.

20 - Food and Kindred Products

21 - Tobacco Products

22 - Textile Mill Products

23 - Apparel and Other Finished Products made from Fabrics and Similar Materials Wood Kitchen Cabinets

25 - Furniture and Fixtures

265 - Paperboard Containers and Boxes

267 - Converted Paper and Paperboard Products, Except Containers and Boxes

27 - Printing, Publishing and Allied Industries

283 - Drugs

285 - Paints, Varnishes, Lacquers, Enamels, and Allied Products

30 - Rubber and Miscellaneous Plastic Products

31 - Leather and Leather Products (except 311, Leather Tanning and Finishing)

323 - Glass Products made of Purchased Glass

34 - Fabricated Metal Products, Except Machinery and Transportation Equipment (except 3441, Fabricated Structural Metal Products)

35 - Industrial and Commercial Machinery and Computer Equipment

36 - Electronic and Other Electrical Equipment and Components, Except Computer Equipment

37 - Transportation Equipment (except 373, Ship and Boat Building and Repair)

38 - Measuring, Analyzing, and Controlling Instruments, Photographic, Medical and Optical Goods, Watches and Clocks

39 - Miscellaneous Manufacturing Industries

4221 - Farm Product Warehousing and Storage

4222 - Refrigerated Warehousing and Storage

4225 - General Warehousing and Storage

For the industries identified in SIC categories (1) through (10), a permit is necessary if there is a point source stormwater discharge to a surface water, storm drain which discharges to surface water directly or indirectly, or a municipal storm sewer from any of the following areas of industrial activity: industrial plant yards; immediate access roads and rail lines used or traveled by carriers of raw materials, manufactured products, waste material, or by-products used or created by the facility; material handling sites; refuse sites; sites used for the application or disposal of process waste waters (as defined at 40 CFR part 401); sites used for the storage and maintenance of material handling equipment; sites used for residual treatment, storage, or disposal; shipping and receiving areas; manufacturing buildings; storage areas (including tank farms) for raw materials, and intermediate and finished products; and areas where industrial activity has taken place in the past and significant materials remain and are exposed to storm water.

Industries in Categories 1 through 9 can submit an application and qualify for a Conditional "No Exposure" Certificate.

For the industries identified in SIC category (11), a permit is required for point source discharges from any of the areas that are listed above (except access roads and rail lines of SIC category 11 industries), <u>only if</u> material handling equipment or activities, raw materials, intermediate products, final products, waste materials, by-products, or industrial machinery <u>are exposed to stormwater</u>. However, they must submit a "No Exposure" Certificate to be excused from the permit.

How and When Do I Apply for A Permit?

Three types of permits are possible. Each has a different application process.

General Permit for Industrial Activities: An application for coverage under the Industrial Stormwater General Permit, referred to as a Notice of Intent (NOI), must be submitted to Ecology.

Individual Permit: An industrial facility that is required to have a stormwater permit may volunteer or be required to apply for an individual permit. An individual permit is a permit that is written for and issued to a specific facility. EPA regulations require that industries not covered under a general permit must apply for an individual stormwater permit. Individual permit applicants for discharges composed entirely of stormwater, must comply with 40 CFR 122.21, and complete EPA forms 1 and 2F. Ecology is prepared to issue individual permits for facilities not already under permit only for exceptional circumstances.

Industry-Specific General Permits: Ecology will consider development of industry-specific general permits, as needed. An industry-specific permit is a permit that can apply to all industries of a similar type. Examples of industry-specific general permits that include stormwater are Sand and Gravel, and Boatyards.

What Does The Industrial Stormwater General Permit Require Industries To Do?

The development of an Industrial Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) by each industry is a key Permit requirement. The Industrial SWPPP requirements include:

- Identifying the potential sources of pollutants that may contaminate stormwater.
- A description and implementation of operational and structural source control BMPs to reduce the stormwater pollutants and comply with the stormwater general permit.

The permit also includes requirements for:

- Effluent limitations for certain types of industrial facilities, and certain discharges to 303(d) impaired waterbodies;
- Monitoring: All facilities are required to conduct quarterly monitoring and sampling. There are additional monitoring requirements for certain, identified industry groups;
- Application of additional source control and treatment BMPs to control pollutants further if certain “benchmark” levels of pollutants, as identified in the permit, are exceeded;
- Reporting and Recordkeeping;
- Operation and Maintenance

Municipalities May Have To Apply for an Industrial Stormwater Permit or Other General Permit

Some municipalities own or operate an "industrial activity." If that industrial activity has a stormwater discharge to surface waters or storm drains tributary to surface waters, the municipality must apply for the Industrial Stormwater General Permit (or applicable industry-specific general permit, e.g., Sand & Gravel General Permit, Boatyard General Permit) unless the site qualifies for a Conditional "No Exposure" Certificate. In the latter case, a "no exposure" application form should be submitted.

Examples of industrial activities conducted by municipalities include, but may not be limited to: sand and gravel mining; crushed and broken stone operations; rip rap mining and quarrying; landfills, recycling facilities, land application sites, and open dumps that receive or have received industrial waste; transportation facilities which have vehicle maintenance shops; equipment cleaning; airport de-icing operations; and sewage treatment plants with a design flow above one million gallons per day; and power plants.

Construction Stormwater Permits

Construction sites that will disturb one acre or more and will have a discharge of stormwater from the project site to surface water must apply for Ecology's Construction Stormwater General Permit. The permit requires application of stabilization and structural practices to reduce the potential for erosion and the discharge of sediments from the site. The stabilization and structural practices cited in the permit are similar to the minimum requirements for sedimentation and erosion control in Volume I and II of the SWMM; refer to the Construction Stormwater General Permit for specific requirements.

Municipal Stormwater Permits

NPDES Permit Program for Municipal Stormwater Discharges

Phase I. Ecology has issued stormwater discharge general permits to the cities of Seattle and Tacoma; the counties of King, Pierce, Clark, and Snohomish; and the discharges from state highways managed by the Department of Transportation within those jurisdictions. These permits contain conditions for compliance with both federal and state requirements and are issued as combined NPDES and State Wastewater Discharge Permits. Ecology reissued the Phase I general permit in 2007 and plans to reissue the next permit in 2012.

Phase II. The EPA adopted Phase II stormwater regulations in December 1999. Those rules identify additional municipalities as subject to NPDES municipal stormwater permitting requirements. Over 100 municipalities in

Washington are subject to the requirements. Federal regulations required issuance of Phase II permits by December 2002, and required the Phase II communities to submit their stormwater programs to comply with permit requirements by March 2003. Ecology issued the Phase II permits for Eastern Washington and Western Washington in 2007 and plans to reissue these two general permits in 2012.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix IV-F Example of an Integrated Pest Management Program

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a natural, long-term, ecologically based systems approach to controlling pest populations. This system uses techniques either to reduce pest populations or maintain them at levels below those causing economic injury, or to so manipulate the populations that they are prevented from causing injury. The goals of IPM are to encourage optimal selective pesticide use (away from prophylactic, broad-spectrum use), and to maximize natural controls to minimize the environmental side effects.

A step-by-step comprehensive Integrated Pest Management (IPM) Program is provided below as a guide:

Introduction

This section provides a sound cultural approach to managing lawns and landscapes and minimizing runoff. Many homeowners or property managers will be able to implement most or all of this approach, others will wish to hire these services out. For the do-it yourselfer, an array of resources are available to assist in the effort. Landscaping businesses, agricultural extensions, local agencies, master gardener programs, local nurseries and even the library can all provide assistance. Landscaping professionals (businesses) are particularly encouraged to practice IPM.

Definition

"Integrated pest management, or IPM, is an approach to pest control that uses regular monitoring to determine if and when treatments are needed, and employs physical, mechanical, cultural, and biological tactics to keep pest numbers low enough to prevent intolerable damage or annoyance. Least-toxic chemical controls are used as a last resort."

True IPM is a powerful approach that anticipates and prevents most problems through proper cultural practices and careful observation. Knowledge of the life cycles of the host plants and both beneficial and pest organisms is also important. The IPM section of this study guide is adapted from Least Toxic Pest Management for Lawns by Sheila Daar. Following the IPM process gives you the information you need to minimize damage by weeds, diseases and pests and to treat those problems with the least toxic approaches.

The Integrated Pest Management Process

Step One: Correctly identify problem pests and understand their life cycle.

Learn more about the pest. Observe it and pay attention to any damage that may be occurring. Learn about the life cycle. Many pests are only a problem during certain seasons, or can only be treated effectively in certain phases of the life cycle.

Step Two: Establish tolerance thresholds for pests.

Every landscape has a population of some pest insects, weeds, and diseases. This is good because it supports a population of beneficial species that keep pest numbers in check. Beneficial organisms may compete with, eat, or parasitize disease or pest organisms. Decide on the level of infestation that must be exceeded before treatment needs to be considered. Pest populations under this threshold should be monitored but don't need treatment. For instance, European crane flies usually don't do serious damage to a lawn unless there are between 25 – 40 larvae per square foot feeding on the turf in February (in normal weather years). Also, most people consider a lawn healthy and well maintained even with up to 20% weed cover, so treatment, other than continuing good maintenance practices, is generally unnecessary.

Step Three: Monitor to detect and prevent pest problems.

Regular monitoring is a key practice to anticipate and prevent major pest outbreaks. It begins with a visual evaluation of the lawn or landscape's condition. Take a few minutes before mowing to walk around and look for problems. Keep a notebook, record when and where a problem occurs, then monitor for it at about the same time in future years. Specific monitoring techniques can be used in the appropriate season for some potential problem pests, such as European crane fly.

Step Four: Modify the maintenance program to promote healthy plants and discourage pests.

A healthy landscape is resistant to most pest problems. Lawn aeration and overseeding along with proper mowing height, fertilization, and irrigation will help the grass out-compete weeds. Correcting drainage problems and letting soil dry out between waterings in the summer may reduce the number of crane-fly larvae that survive.

Step Five: If pests exceed the tolerance thresholds

Use cultural, physical, mechanical or biological controls first. If those prove insufficient, use the chemical controls described below that have the least non-target impact. When a pest outbreak strikes (or monitoring shows one is imminent), implement IPM then consider control options that are the least toxic, or have the least non-target impact. Here are two examples of an IPM approach:

1. **Red thread disease** is most likely under low nitrogen fertility conditions and most severe during slow growth conditions. Mow and bag the clippings to remove diseased blades. Fertilize lightly to help the grass recover, then begin grass-cycling and change to fall fertilization with a slow-release or natural-organic fertilizer to provide an even supply of nutrients. Chemical fungicides are not recommended because red thread cannot kill the lawn.

2. **Crane fly damage is** most prevalent on lawns that stay wet in the winter and are irrigated in the summer. Correct the winter drainage and/or allow the soil to dry between irrigation cycles; larvae are susceptible to drying out so these changes can reduce their numbers. It may also be possible to reduce crane fly larvae numbers by using a power de-thatcher on a cool, cloudy day when feeding is occurring close to the surface. Studies are being conducted using beneficial nematodes that parasitize the crane fly larvae; this type of treatment may eventually be a reasonable alternative.

Only after trying suitable non-chemical control methods, or determining that the pest outbreak is causing too much serious damage, should chemical controls be considered. Study to determine what products are available and choose a product that is the least toxic and has the least non-target impact. Refer to the Operational BMPs for the use of Pesticides below for guidelines on choosing, storing and using lawn and garden chemicals.

Step Six: Evaluate and record the effectiveness of the control, and modify maintenance practices to support lawn or landscape recovery and prevent recurrence.

Keep records! Note when, where, and what symptoms occurred, or when monitoring revealed a potential pest problem. Note what controls were applied and when, and the effectiveness of the control. Monitor next year for the same problems. Review your landscape maintenance and cultural practices to see if they can be modified to prevent or reduce the problem.

A comprehensive IPM Program should also include the proper use of pesticides as a last resort, and vegetation/fertilizer management to eliminate or minimize the contamination of stormwater:

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix IV-G Recommendations for Management of Street Wastes

Introduction

This appendix addresses waste generated from stormwater maintenance activities such as street sweeping and the cleaning of catch basins, and to a limited extent, other stormwater conveyance and treatment facilities. Limited information is available on the characteristics of wastes from detention/retention ponds, bioswales, and similar stormwater treatment facilities. The recommendations provided here may be generally applicable to these facilities, with extra diligence given to waste characterization.

These recommendations do not constitute rules or regulations, but are suggestions for street waste handling, reuse, and disposal using current regulations and the present state of knowledge of street waste constituents. The recommendations address the liquid and solid wastes collected during routine maintenance of stormwater catch basins, detention/retention ponds, ditches and similar storm water treatment and conveyance structures, and street and parking lot sweeping. In addition to these recommendations, end users and other authorities may have their own requirements for street waste reuse and handling.

"Street Wastes" include liquid and solid wastes collected during maintenance of stormwater catch basins, detention/retention ponds, ditches and similar storm water treatment and conveyance structures, and solid wastes collected during street and parking lot sweeping.

"Street Wastes," as defined here, does not include solids and liquids from street washing using detergents, cleaning of electrical vaults, vehicle wash sediment traps, restaurant grease traps, industrial process waste, sanitary sewage, mixed process, or combined sewage/stormwater wastes. Wastes from oil/water separators at sites that load fuel are not included as street waste. Street waste also does not include flood debris, landslide debris, and chip seal gravel.

Street waste does not ordinarily classify as dangerous waste. The owner of the storm water facility and/or collector of street waste is considered the waste generator and is responsible for determining whether the waste designates as dangerous waste. Sampling to date has shown that material from routine maintenance of streets and stormwater facilities does not classify as dangerous waste (See Table G.6 below). However, it is possible that street waste from spill sites could classify as dangerous waste. Street waste from areas with exceptionally high average daily traffic counts may contain contaminants - such as heavy metals, total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH), and carcinogenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (c-PAH) - at levels that limit reuse options.

Contamination in Street Waste Solids

Street waste is solid waste. While street waste from normal street and highway maintenance is not dangerous waste, it is solid waste, as defined under The Solid Waste Management Act (Chapter 70.95 RCW) and under the Solid Waste Handling Standards (Chapter 173-350 WAC). The Solid Waste Management Act gives local health departments primary jurisdiction over solid waste management. Street waste solids may contain contaminants at levels too high to allow unrestricted reuse. There are no specific references in the Solid Waste Handling Standards to facilities managing street waste solids although these facilities typically fit under the section dealing with Piles Used for Storage and Treatment (Section 320). There are no specific references for reuse and disposal options for street wastes in the Solid Waste Handling Standards because they do not apply to clean soils. Clean soils are defined as "soils and dredged material which are not dangerous wastes, contaminated soils, or contaminated dredged material ..." (WAC 173-350-100). Whether or not a soil is a clean soil depends primarily upon the level of contaminants and, to a lesser degree, on the background level of contaminants at a particular location and the exposure potential to humans or other living organisms. Therefore, evaluate both the soil and potential land application sites to determine if a soil is a clean soil.

There is no simple regulatory mechanism available to classify street waste solids for uncontrolled reuse or disposal. Street wastes are defined simply as solid waste. Local health districts have historically used the Model Toxics Control Act Cleanup Regulation (MTCA) Method A residential soil cleanup levels to approximate "clean" and to make decisions on land application proposals. The MTCA regulation is not intended to be directly applied to setting contaminant concentration levels for land application proposals. However, they may provide human health and environmental threat information and a useful framework for such decisions, when used in conjunction with other health and environmental considerations. In addition to MTCA, Ecological Soil Screening Levels from EPA, ODEQ Risk-based concentrations, Toxicological benchmarks from Oak Ridge National Labs, and natural background levels can be considered. Contact the local health department to determine local requirements for making this determination.

Using the old MTCA regulations, many local health departments have set criterion of 200 mg/Kg Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH) for diesel and heavy fuel oils as a threshold level for clean soil. Using the new MTCA terrestrial ecological evaluation procedures, allowable TPH levels for land application could range from 200 – 460, depending on site characteristics and intended land use. Street waste sampling has historically yielded TPH values higher than 200 mg/kg for hydrocarbons in the diesel and heavy oil range. These values typically reflect interference from natural organic material and, to a lesser extent, relatively immobile petroleum hydrocarbons. The mobile hydrocarbons that are of concern for ground water protection are generally not retained with street waste solids. Ecology's Manchester Lab has developed an analytical method to reduce the problem of natural organic material being included in the TPH analysis for diesel and heavier range hydrocarbons. This method, called NWTPH-Dx, reduces the background interference associated with vegetative matter by as much as 85% to 95%. However, even with the new methodology, TPH test results for street waste may still be biased by the presence of natural vegetative material and may still exceed 200 mg/kg. Where the laboratory results report no 'fingerprint' or chromatographic match to known petroleum hydrocarbons, the soils should not be considered to be petroleum contaminated soils. Table G.1 lists Typical TPH levels in street sweeping and catch basin solids.

Table G.1 - Typical TPH Levels in Street Sweeping and Catch Basin Solids

Reference:	Street Sweeping (mg/kg)	Catch Basin Solid (mg/kg)
Snohomish County (1) (Landau 1995)	390 – 4300	
King County (1) (Herrera 1995)		123 – 11049 (Median 1036)
Snohomish County & Selected Cities (1) (W & H Pacific, 1993)	163 - 1500 (Median 760)	163 – 1562 (Median 760)
City of Portland (2)) (Bresch)		MDL – 1830 (Median – 208)
City of Seattle – Diesel Range(2) (Hererra 2009)	330-520	780-1700
City of Seattle – Motor Oil(2) (Herrera 2009)	2000-2800	3500-7000
Oregon (1) (Collins; ODOT 1998) Oregon (3) (Collins; ODOT 1998)	1600 – 2380 98 - 125	

(1) Method WTPH 418.1; does not incorporate new methods to reduce background interference due to vegetative material
(2) Method NWTPH-Dx
(3) Method WTPH – HCID

Street waste solids frequently contain levels of carcinogenic PAHs (c-PAH) that make unrestricted use inappropriate. This is complicated further by analytical interference caused by organic matter that raises practical quantitation or reporting limits. To greatly reduce the level of interference, the use of US EPA Test Method 8270, incorporating the silica gel cleanup step, is recommended. The calculated c-PAH value can vary greatly depending upon how non-detect values are handled. The new MTCA Method A criterion for c-PAH is 0.1 mg/kg (the sum of all seven c-PAH parameters multiplied by the appropriate toxicity equivalency factor)) for unrestricted land uses. The MTCA criteria for soil cleanup levels for industrial properties is 2.0 mg/kg. Following this guidance, most sites where street wastes could be reused as soil will be commercial or industrial sites, or sites where public exposure will be limited or prevented. See Table G.2 for typical c-PAH values in Street Waste Solids and Related Materials. See Table G.3 for typical metals concentrations in Catch Basin Sediments.

Table G.2 - Typical c-PAH Values in Street Waste Solids and Related Materials

Sample Source	City of Everett					WSDOT	
Analyte	**Street Sweepings**	**Soil**	**3-Way Topsoil**	**Vactor Solids**	**Leaf & Sand**	**Sweepings – Fresh**	**Sweepings Weathered**
Benzo(a)anthracene	0.1U	0.076U	0.074U	0.21	0.45	0.56	0.40
Chrysene	0.14	0.09	0.074U	0.32	0.53	0.35	0.35
Benzo(b)fluoranthene	0.11	0.076U	0.074U	0.27	0.52	0.43	0.51
Benzo(k)fluoranthene	0.13	0.076U	0.074U	0.25	0.38	0.39	0.40
Benzo(a)pyrene	0.13	0.076U	0.074U	0.26	0.5	0.41	0.33U
Indeno(1,2,3-cd)pyrene	0.1U	0.076U	0.074U	0.19	0.39	NR	NR
Dibenzo(a,h)anthracene	0.1U	0.076U	0.074U	0.081	0.12	0.39	0.33U
Revised MTCA Benzo(a)pyrene [ND=PQL]	0.215	0.134	0.134	0.388	0.727	0.708	0.597
Benzo(a)pyrene [ND=1/2 PQL]	0.185	0.069	0.067	0.388	0.727	0.708	0.366
Benzo(a)pyrene [See * below]	0.185	0.069	0	0.388	0.727	0.708	0.366
Benzo(a)pyrene [ND=0]	0.155	0.001	0	0.388	0.727	0.708	0.135

*If the analyte was not detected for any PAH, then ND=0; If analyte was detected in at least 1 PAH, then ND=1/2PQL; If the average concentration (using ND=1/2 PQL) is greater than the maximum detected value, then ND=Maximum value.

The new Method A soil cleanup level for unrestricted land use is 0.1 mg/Kg for BAP. (WAC 173-340-900, Table 740-1)

The new Method A soil cleanup level for industrial properties is 2 mg/Kg for BAP. (WAC 173-340-900, Table 745-1)

Table G.3 - Typical Metals Concentrations in Catch Basin Sediments

PARAMETER	Ecology 1993	Thurston 1993	King County 1995	King County 1995	City of Seattle 2003 through 2011
METALS; TOTAL (mg/kg)	**(Min – Max)**	**(Min – Max)**	**(Min - Max)**	**Mean**	**Min- Max (Mean)**
As	<3 -- 24	.39 -- 5.4	4 – 56	0.250	<5 – 50 (9.3)
Cd	0.5 -- 2.0	< 0.22 -- 4.9	0.2 – 5.0	0.5	
Cr	19 -- 241	5.9 -- 71	13 - 100	25.8	
Cu	18 -- 560	25 -- 110	12 - 730	29	9.1 - 3,280 (166)
Pb	24 -- 194	42 -- 640	4 – 850	80	3 - 3,690 (154)
Ni	33 -- 86	23 -- 51	14 – 41	23	
Zn	90 -- 558	97 -- 580	50 – 2000	130	44 - 4,170 (479)
Hg	.04 -- .16	.024 -- .193			<0.03 - 3.8 (0.16)

Permitting of street waste treatment and storage facilities as solid waste handling facilities by the local health department is required. Under the Solid Waste Management Act, local health departments have primary jurisdiction over solid waste management.

Street waste handling facilities are subject to the requirements of the Solid Waste Handling Standards. Specific requirements depend upon the manner in which the waste is managed. Most facilities are permitted under the section dealing with Piles Used for Storage and Treatment (Section 320).

For most facilities, permit requirements include a plan of operation, sampling, record keeping and reporting, inspections, and compliance with other state and local requirements. The plan of operation should include a procedure for characterization of the waste and appropriate reuse and disposal options, consistent with the recommendations in this document and applicable federal, State and local requirements.

Ecology suggests a street waste site evaluation (see sample at end of this appendix) for all street waste as a method to identify spill sites or locations that are more polluted than normal. Ecology based the disposal and reuse options listed below on characteristics of routine street waste and are not appropriate for more polluted wastes. The collector of street waste should evaluate it for its potential to be classified as dangerous waste. The collector should also be aware that this waste may not meet end users requirements.

Street waste suspected to be dangerous waste should not be collected with other street waste. Material in catch basins with obvious contamination (unusual color, staining, corrosion, unusual odors, fumes, and oily sheen) should be left in place or segregated until tested. Base testing activities on probable contaminants. Street waste suspected to be dangerous waste should be collected and handled by someone experienced in handling dangerous waste. If collecting potential dangerous waste because of emergency conditions, or if the waste becomes suspect after it is collected, it should be handled and stored separately until a determination as to proper disposal is made. Street waste treatment and storage facilities should have separate "hot load" storage areas for such waste. **Dangerous Waste** includes street waste known or suspected to be dangerous waste. This waste must be handled following the Dangerous Waste Regulations (Chapter 173-303 WAC) unless testing determines it is not dangerous waste.

Spills should be handled by trained specialists. Public works maintenance crews and private operators conducting street sweeping or cleaning catch basins should have written policies and procedures for dealing with spills or suspected spill materials. Emergency Spill Response telephone numbers should be immediately available as part of these operating policies and procedures.

The end recipient of street waste must be informed of its source and may have additional requirements for its use or testing that are not listed here. This document is based primarily on average street waste's chemical constituents and their potential affect on human health and the environment. There are physical constituents (for example, broken glass or hypodermic needles) or characteristics (for example, fine grain size) that could also limit reuse options. Additional treatment such as drying, sorting, or screening may also be required, depending on the needs and requirements of the end user.

Street waste treatment and storage facilities owned or operated by governmental agencies should be made available to private waste collectors and other governmental agencies on a cost recovery basis. Proper street waste collection and disposal reduces the amount of waste released to the environment. The operators of street waste facilities should restrict the use of their facilities to certified and/or licensed waste collectors who meet their training and liability requirements.

The use of street waste solids under this guidance should not lead to designation as a dangerous waste site, requiring cleanup under MTCA. Exceeding MTCA Method A unrestricted land use cleanup levels in street waste and products made from street waste, does not automatically make the site where street waste is reused a cleanup site. A site is reportable only if "-a release poses a threat to human health or the environment-" (Model Toxic Control Act). The reuse options proposed below are designed to meet the condition of not posing a threat to human health or the environment.

Testing of street waste solids will generally be required as part of a plan of operation that includes procedures for characterization of the waste. Testing frequency, numbers of samples, parameters to be analyzed, and contaminant limit criteria should all be provided as part of an approved plan of operation. However, street sweepings that consist primarily of leaves, pine needles, branches, and grass clippings do not require testing. Tables G.4 and G.5 below provide some recommended parameters and sampling frequencies for piles of street waste solids from routine street maintenance. These are provided as guidance only, and are intended to assist the utility and the local health department in determining appropriate requirements. Sampling requirements may be modified, over time, based on accumulated data. When the material is from a street waste facility or an area that has never been characterized by testing, the test should be conducted on a representative sample before co-mingling with other material. Testing in these instances would be to demonstrate that the waste does not designate as dangerous waste and to characterize the waste for reuse. At a minimum, the parameters in Table G.4 are recommended for these cases. Note that it will generally not be necessary to conduct TCLP analyses when the observed values do not exceed the recommended values in Table G.4. Table G.6 illustrates some observed relationships between total metals and TCLP metals values.

For further information on testing methods and sampling plans, refer to:

- SW 846 (US EPA, Office of Solid Waste, Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Wastes, 3rd Ed.) and
- Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater (American Public Health Association, et al., 18th Edition 1992)

Table G.4 - Recommended Parameters and Suggested Values for Determining Reuse & Disposal Options

Parameter	Suggested Maximum Value
Arsenic, Total	20.0 mg/kg (a)
Cadmium, Total	2.0 mg/kg (b)
Chromium, Total	42 mg/kg (c)
Copper, Total	100 mg/kg (e)
Lead, total	250 mg/kg (d)
Nickel	100 mg/kg (e)
Zinc	270 mg/kg (e)
Mercury (Inorganic)	2.0 mg/kg (f)
PAHs (Carcinogenic)	0.1 – 2.0 mg/kg (see Note at (g) below)
TPH (Heavy Fuel Oil)	2,000 mg/kg (see Note at (h) below)
TPH (Diesel)	200 mg/kg (see Note at (i) below)
TPH (Gasoline)	100 mg/kg (j)
Benzene	0.03 mg/kg (j)
Ethylbenzene	6 mg/kg (j)
Toluene	7 mg/kg (j)
Xylenes (Total)	9 mg/kg (j)

(a) Arsenic: from MTCA Method A - Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses
(b) Cadmium: from MTCA Method A – Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses.
(c) Chromium; from MTCA Method A - Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses
(d) Lead; from MTCA Method A – Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses
(e) Copper, Nickel and Zinc; from MTCA Table 749-2: Protection of Terrestrial Plants and Animals
(f) Mercury; from MTCA Method A – Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses
(g) PAH-Carcinogenic; from MTCA Method A – Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses and Table 745-1, industrial properties, based on cancer risk via direct contact with contaminated soil (ingestion of soil) in residential land use situations and commercial/industrial land uses. Note: The local health department may permit higher levels as part of a Plan of Operation, where they determine that the proposed end use poses little risk of direct human contact or ingestion of soil.
(h) TPH (Heavy Fuel Oil); from MTCA Method A – Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses
(i) TPH (Diesel): from MTCA Table 749-3: Protection of Terrestrial Plants and Animals..
(j) BETX; from MTCA Method A - Table 740-1: Soil cleanup levels for unrestricted land uses.

Table G.5 - Recommended Sampling Frequency for Street Waste Solids

Cubic Yards of Solids	Minimum Number of Samples
0 – 100	3
101 – 500	5
501 – 1000	7
1001 – 2000	10
>2000	10 + 1 for each additional 500 cubic yards

Modified from Ecology's Interim Compost Guidelines (no longer in effect)

Table G.6 - Pollutants in Catch Basin Solids – Comparison to Dangerous Waste Criteria

PARAMETER	Range of Values in Catch Basin Waste	Range of Values in Catch Basin Waste	Dangerous Waste Criteria
METALS	Total Metals (mg/kg)	TCLP Metals (mg/kg)	TCLP values (mg/l)
As	<3 - 56	< .02 - 0 .5	5.0
Cd	<.22 - 5	.0002 - .03	1.0
Cr	5.9 - 241	.0025 - .1	5.0
Cu	12 - 730	.002 -- .88	none
Pb	4 - 850	.015 -- 3.8	5.0
Ni	23 - 86	< .01 -- .36	none
Zn	50 - 2000	.04 -- 6.7	none
Hg	.02 - .19	.0001 -- .0002	0.2

Data from Thurston County (Thurston County 1993), King County (Herrera 1995) and Ecology (Serdar; Ecology 1993).

For street waste not exceeding the suggested maximum values in Table G.4, Ecology recommends the following street waste solids reuse and disposal options:

- Compost street sweepings that consist primarily of leaves, pine needles and branches, and grass cuttings from mowing grassy swales. Remove litter and other foreign material prior to composting or the composting facility must provide for such removal as part of the process. Dispose of the screened trash is solid waste at an appropriate solid waste handling facility.
- It is possible to reuse coarse sand screened from street sweeping after recent road sanding, for street sanding, providing there is no obvious contamination from spills. The screened trash is solid waste and must be disposed of at an appropriate solid waste handling facility.
- Screen roadside ditch cleanings, not contaminated by a spill or other release and not associated with a stormwater treatment system such as a bioswale, to remove litter and separate into soil and vegetative matter (leaves, grass, needles, branches, etc.). The soils from these activities

are typically unregulated as solid waste. Ditching material that may be contaminated must be stored, tested, and handled in the same manner as other street waste solids. It is the generator's responsibility to visually inspect and otherwise determine whether the materials may be contaminated.

- Construction street wastes; solids collected from sweeping or in storm water treatment systems at active construction sites - may be placed back onto the site that generated it, or managed by one on the methods listed below, provided that it has not been contaminated as a result of a spill. For concrete handling at construction site, refer to BMP C151 in Volume II, Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention.
- Use screened street waste soils as feedstock materials for topsoil operations. Reserve this option for street waste soils with very low levels of contaminants. Evaluate the allowable level of contaminants based on the proposed use of the soil. At a minimum, the contaminate level in the soil should be below established action levels for in situ soils. Do not dilute street waste soils with clean soils or composted material as a substitute for treatment or disposal. There may be unscreened physical contaminants (for example, glass, metal, nails) in street waste. Where present, these contaminants in street waste could preclude its use as feedstock material for topsoil operations.
- Fill in parks, play fields, golf courses and other recreational settings, where direct exposure by the public is limited or prevented. One way to accomplish is to cover the fill with sod, grass or other capping material to reduce the risk of soil ingestion. Evaluate the level of contaminants in the street waste to ensure that the soils meet the definition of clean soils when used in this manner.
- Fill in commercial and industrial areas, including soil or top dressing for use at industrial sites, roadway medians, airport infields and similar sites, where there is limited direct human contact with the soil, and stabilize the soils with vegetation or other means. Evaluate the level of contaminants in the street waste to ensure that the soils meet the definition of clean soils when used in this manner.
- Top dressing on roadway slopes, road or parking lot construction material and road subgrade, parking lot subgrade, or other road fill. Evaluate the level of contaminants in the street waste to ensure that the soils meet the definition of clean soils when used in this manner.
- Daily cover or fill in a permitted municipal solid waste landfill provided the street waste solids have been dewatered. Street waste solids may be acceptable as final cover during a landfill closure. Consult the local health department and landfill operator to determine conditions of acceptance.
- Treatment at a permitted contaminated soil treatment facility.

- Recycling through incorporation into a manufactured product, such as Portland cement, prefabricated concrete, or asphalt. Consult the facility operator to determine conditions of acceptance.
- Other end-use as approved by the local health department
- Disposal at an appropriate solid waste handling facility.

For street waste that exceeds the suggested maximum values in Table G.4, Ecology recommends the following street waste solids reuse and disposal options:

- Treatment at a permitted contaminated soil treatment facility.
- Recycling through incorporation into a manufactured product, such as Portland cement, prefabricated concrete, or asphalt. Consult the facility operator to determine conditions of acceptance.
- Other end-use as approved by the local health department
- Disposal at an appropriate solid waste handling facility.

Street Waste Liquids

General Procedures:

Street waste collection should emphasize retention of solids in preference to liquids. Street waste solids are the principal objective in street waste collection and are substantially easier to store and treat than liquids.

Street waste liquids require treatment before their discharge. Street waste liquids usually contain high amounts of suspended and total solids and adsorbed metals. Treatment requirements depend on the discharge location.

The entity responsible for operation and maintenance of the system must approve discharges to sanitary sewer and storm sewer systems. Ecology will not generally require waste discharge permits for discharge of stormwater decant to sanitary sewers or to stormwater treatment BMPs constructed and maintained in accordance with Ecology's Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington (See Volume 5, Sections 7 through 12 for further detail on approved BMPs).

Follow the following required order of preference, for disposal of catch basin decant liquid and water removed from stormwater treatment facilities.

1. **Discharge of catch basin decant liquids to a municipal sanitary sewer connected to a Public Owned Treatment Works (POTW).** Discharge to a municipal sanitary sewer requires the approval of the sewer authority. Approvals for discharge to a POTW will likely contain pretreatment, quantity, and location conditions to protect the POTW. Following the local sewer authority's conditions is a permit requirement.
2. **Discharge of catch basin decant liquids may be allowed into a Basic or Enhanced Stormwater Treatment BMP, if option 1 is not available.** Only discharge liquid collected from cleaning catch basins and stormwater treatment wetvaults back into the storm sewer system under the following conditions:

- The preferred disposal option of discharge to sanitary sewer is not reasonably available.
- The discharge is to a Basic or Enhanced Stormwater Treatment Facility. If pretreatment does not remove visible sheen from oils, the treatment facility must be able to prevent the discharge of oils causing a visible sheen.
- The discharge is as near to the treatment facility as is practical, to minimize contamination or recontamination of the collection system.
- The storm sewer system owner/operator has granted approval and has determined that the treatment facility will accommodate the increased loading. Part of the approval process may include pretreatment conditions to protect the treatment BMP. Following local pretreatment conditions is a requirement of this permit.
- Ecology must approve in advance flocculants for the pretreatment of catch basin decant liquids. The liquids must be non-toxic under the circumstances of use.

The discharger shall determine if reasonable availability of sanitary sewer discharge exists, by evaluating such factors as distance, time of travel, load restrictions, and capacity of the stormwater treatment facility.

3. **Operators may return water removed from stormwater ponds, vaults, and oversized catch basins to the storm sewer system.** Stormwater ponds, vaults, and oversized catch basins contain substantial amounts of liquid, which hampers the collection of solids and poses problems in hauling the removed waste away from the site. Water removed from these facilities may be discharged back into the pond, vault, or catch basin provided:

- Operators may discharge clear water removed from a stormwater treatment structure directly to a down gradient cell of a treatment pond or into the storm sewer system.
- Turbid water may be discharged back into the structure it was removed from if the removed water has been stored in a clean container (eductor truck, Baker tank, or other appropriate container used specifically for handling stormwater or clean water); and there will be no discharge from the treatment structure for at least 24 hours.
- The storm sewer system owner/operator must approve the discharge.

Table G.7 - Typical Catch Basin Decant Values Compared to Surface Water Quality Criteria

PARAMETER	State Surface Water Quality Criteria		Range of Values Reported	Range of Values Reported
METALS	**Freshwater Acute (ug/l – dissolved metals)**	**Freshwater Chronic (ug/l – dissolved metals)**	**Total Metals (ug/l)**	**Dissolved Metals (ug/l)**
Arsenic	360	190	100 – 43000	60 - 100
Cadmium*	2.73	0.84	64 - 2400	2 - 5
Chromium (total)			13 -- 90000	3 - 6
Chromium (III)*	435	141		
Chromium (VI)	0.5	10		
Copper*	13.04	8.92	81 -- 200000	3 - 66
Lead*	47.3	1.85	255 -- 230000	1 - 50
Nickel*	1114	124	40 -- 330	20 - 80
Zinc*	90.1	82.3	401 -- 440000	1900 - 61000
Mercury	2.10	.012	0.5 -- 21.9	

**Hardness dependent; hardness assumed to be 75 mg/l*

Table G.8 - Typical Values for Conventional Pollutants in Catch Basin Decant

PARAMETER	Ecology 1993	(Min - Max)	King County 1995	(Min - Max)
Values as mg/l; except where stated	**Mean**		**Mean**	
pH	6.94	6.18 - 7.98	8	6.18 - 11.25
Conductivity (umhos/cm)	364	184 - 1110	480	129 - 10,100
Hardness (mg/l CaCO3)	234	73 - 762		
Fecal Coliform (MPN/100 ml)	3000			
BOD	151	28 - 1250		
COD	900	120 - 26,900		
Oil & Grease	11	7.0 - 40	471	15 - 6242
TOC	136	49 - 7880	3670	203 - 30,185
Total Solids	1930	586 - 70,400		
Total Dissolved Solids	212	95 - 550		
Total Suspended Solids	2960	265 - 111,000		
Settleable Solids (ml/l/hr)	27	2 - 234	57	1 - 740
Turbidity (ntu)	1000	55 - 52,000	4673	43 - 78,000

Table G.9 - Catch Basin Decant Values Following Settling[1]

Parameter; Total Metals in mg/l	Portland – Inverness Site Min - Max	King County - Renton Min - Max	METRO Pretreatment Discharge Limits
Arsenic	.0027 .015	< MDL – 0.12	4
Cadmium	.0009 - .0150	< MDL – 0.11	0.6
Chromium	.0046 - .0980	.017 – .189	5
Copper	.015 - .8600	.0501 – .408	8
Lead	.050 – 6.60	.152 – 2.83	4
Nickel	.0052 - .10	.056 - .187	5
Silver	.0003 - .010	< MDL	3
Zinc	.130 – 1.90	.152 – 3.10	10
Settleable Solids; ml/L	No Data	.02 - 2	7
Nonpolar FOG	5.7 - 25	5 - 22	100
Ph (std)	6.1 – 7.2	6.74 – 8.26	5.0 - 12.0
TSS	2.8 - 1310		
Recorded Total Monthly Flow; Gallons	Data not available	31,850 - 111,050	
Recorded Max. Daily Flow; Gallons	Data not available	4,500 - 18,600	25,000 GPD
Calculated Average Daily Flow; GPD	Data not available	1517 - 5428	

1) Data from King County's Renton Facility (data from 1998 – 199) and the City of Portland's Inverness Site (data from 1999 – 2001); detention times not provided

Site Evaluation

Ecology suggests use of a site evaluation as method to identify spill sites or locations that potentially contain dangerous wastes.

The site evaluation will aid in determining if waste is a dangerous waste and in determining what to test for if dangerous waste is suspected. The site evaluation will also help to determine if the waste does not meet the requirements of the end users.

There are three steps to a site evaluation:

1. An **historical review** of the site for spills, previous contamination and nearby toxic cleanup sites and dangerous waste and materials.

The historical review will be easier if done on an area wide basis prior to scheduling any waste collection. The historical review should be more thorough for operators who never collected waste at a site before. At a minimum, the historical review should include operator knowledge of the area's collection history or records kept from previous waste collections.

Private operators should ask the owner of the site for records of previous contamination and the timing of the most recent cleaning. Ecology's Hazardous Substance Information Office maintains a Toxic Release Inventory and a "Facility Site" webpage, tracking more than 15,000 sites. This information is available from Ecology through the Internet at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/epcra/chemical_summary_2008/tri_intro_numbers.html or by calling a toll-free telephone number (1-800-633-7585). The webpage allows anyone with web-access to search for facility information by address, facility name, town, zip code, and SIC code, etc. It lists why Ecology is tracking each one (NPDES, TSCA, RCRA, Clean Air Act, etc.), as well as who to call within Ecology to find out more about the given facility. EPA's toxic release website is http://iaspub.epa.gov/triexplorer/tri_release.chemical

2. An area visual inspection for potential contaminant sources such as a past fire, leaking tanks and electrical transformers, and surface stains.

Evaluate the area around the site for contaminant sources prior to collection of the waste. The area visual inspection may be done either as part of multiple or as single site inspections. If the inspection finds a potential contaminant source, delay the waste collection until the potential contaminant is assessed.

A second portion of the area visual inspection is a subjective good housekeeping evaluation of the area. Locations with poor housekeeping commonly cut corners in less obvious places. Inspect these sites in greater detail for illegal dumping and other contamination spreading practices.

3. **A waste and container inspection** before and during collection.

   The inspection of the waste and catch basin or vault is the last and perhaps most critical step in the site evaluation.

   For example, if the stormwater facility has an unusual color in or around it, then there is a strong possibility that someone dumped something into it. Some colors to be particularly wary of are yellow-green from antifreeze dumping and black and rainbow sheen from oil and/or grease dumping. In addition, if the inspector observes any staining or corrosion, then a solvent may have been dumped.

   Fumes are also good indicators of potential dangerous or dangerous waste. Avoid deliberate smelling of catch basins for worker safety, but suspicious odors may be encountered from catch basins thought to be safe. Some suspicious odors are rotten eggs (hydrogen sulfide is present), gasoline or diesel fumes, or solvent odors. If unusual odors are noted, contact a dangerous waste inspector before cleaning the basin.

   Finally, operator experience is the best guide to avoid collection of contaminated waste.

This page intentionally left blank.

Resource Materials – Management of Street Wastes

Austin, City of, Removal Efficiencies of Stormwater Control Structures. Environmental and Conservation Services Department, 1990.

ASTM D2487 - 06 (2006). Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System). American Society for Testing Materials.

Binkhorst, G.K. and Robbins, G.A. (1998). Conducting and Interpreting Slug tests in Monitoring Wells with Partially Submerged Screens. Ground Water, Volume 36, Number 2, pp. 225-229.

British Petroleum (BP) Corporation of North America (2002). Monitoring Well Comparison Study: An Evaluation of Direct Push vs. Conventional Monitoring Wells. USEPA Office of Underground Storage Tanks, EPA Regions IV and V.

City of Portland Vactor Waste Decant Data, Personal Communication with Katie Bretsch, April 2000

City of Los Angeles website, web page relating to pools and disposal of their associated waters http://www.lacitysan.org/wpd/siteorg/education/bmps/swimpools.htm

County of Napa website, web page relating to pools, spas, fountains and the disposal of their associated waters http://www.countyofnapa.org/Pages/DepartmentContent.aspx?id=4294969083

Campbell, Robert, Street Waste Characterization Testing Program, VTP-1, Snohomish County Public Works Maintenance & Operations Division, March 1994.

Cohen, et al., (1992). Evaluation of Visual Methods to Detect NAPL in soil and Water. Ground Water Monitoring and Remediation, Fall, 1992, pp. 132-141.

Collins, Jay, Oregon Department of Transportation, Street Waste Issues and Options FHWA-OR-RD-99-05, July 1998

Conant et al. (1995). Effect of Well Screen Placement on Recovery of Vertically Stratified Contaminants. Ground Water, Volume 33, Number 2, pages 455-456.

Dahlen et al. (2003). Impacts to Groundwater Resources in Arizona from Leaking Underground Storage Tanks (LUSTS). Arizona State University, in Cooperation with the Arizona Department of Environmental Quality (ADEQ).

Ecology, TPH Draft Guidance Publication 10-09-057..

Ecology, Analytical Methods for Petroleum Hydrocarbons, Publication No. ECY 97-602, June 1997.

Ecology, Dangerous Waste Regulations, Chapter 173-303 WAC.

Ecology, Discussion Draft - Recommendations for Management of Street Waste, June 1999

Ecology, Solid Waste Handling Standards, Chapter 173-350 WAC..

Ecology, Guidance for Remediation of Petroleum Contaminated Soils, pub 91-30, 1994.

Ecology, Model Toxics Control Act (MTCA) Cleanup Regulations, Chapter l73-340 WAC

Ecology, Water Quality Standards For Surface Waters of the State of Washington, Chapter 173-201A.

Fitzgerald, J. (1993). Onsite Analytical Screening of Gasoline Contaminated Media Using a Jar Headspace Procedure: in Principles and Practices for Petroleum Contaminated Soils. E.J. Calabrese and P.T. Kostecki, eds. Lewis Publishers: Boca Raton, Florida. Pp. 49-66.

Hazardous Waste Management Act of 1976, Chapter 70.105 RCW

Henebry, B.J. and Robbins, G.A. (2000). Reducing the Skin Effect on Hydraulic Condictivity Determinations in Multilevel Samplers Installed with Direct Push Methods. Ground Water, Volume 38, Number 6, pp. 883-886.

Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc., King County Maintenance Waste Disposal Characterization Study, prepared for King County Surface Water Management Division, January Draft, 1995.

Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc., Street Truck Operations and Disposal Practices, 1991.

Holz, Thomas, Street Waste Disposal, Thurston County, Washington: Final Engineering Report and One Year Certification, Grant No. Tzx 91-129, May, 1994.

Hutchins, S.R., and S.D. Acree (2000). Groundwater Sampling Bias Observed in Shallow, Conventional Wells. Ground Water Monitoring and Remediation, Volume 20, Number 1, Pages 86-93.

Jacobson, Michael, Data Summary of Catch Basin and Vactor Waste Contamination in Washington State, Final Report, Center for Urban Water Resources, University of Washington, 1993.

Kaplan et. al. (1996) Patterns of Chemical Changes During Environmental Alteration of Hydrocarbon Fuels. Ground Water. Volume 28, Number 2, pp. 244-252.

King County, Vactor Waste Disposal Plan, King County Surface Water Management Division, Water Quality Unit, 1994.

King County's Renton Facility Decant Data, Personal Correspondence with Jerry Creek, and Susan Turner, June 1999

Landau Associates, Inc. Snohomish County Street Waste Characterization, Final Report, December 1995

Marinelli, F. and Durnford, D.S. (1995). LNAPL Thickness in Monitoring Wells Considering Hysteresis and Entrapment. Ground Water, Volume 34, Number 3, pp. 405-414

Kram, M. D. Lorenzana, J. Michaelsen and E. Lory (2001), Performance Comparison: Direct Push Wells versus Drilled Wells. Naval Facilities Engineering Command, Technical Report TR-2120-ENV.

North Dakota Department of Health (2002). Guideline: Procedures for Headspace Analysis of Gasoline Contaminated Soils. Division of Waste Management—Underground Storage Tank Program.

Pitt, R. and P. Bissonnette, Bellevue Urban Runoff Program; Summary Report, Prepared for City of Bellevue Storm and Surface Water Utility,1984.

Pitt, R., 1985, Characterizing and Controlling Urban Runoff through Street and Sewer Cleaning, EPA/600/2-85/038

Pond, Rodney, South Base Pond Report - The Response of Wetland Plants to Stormwater Runoff From a Transit Base, Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle Publication 775, 1993.

Robbins, G.A., G.K. Binkhorst, M.A. Butler, B.K. Bradshaw, C. Troskosky, and K. Billick (1996). Recommended Guidelines for Applying Field Screening Methods in Conducting Expedited Site Investigations at Underground Storage Tank Sites in Connecticut. For the Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection.

Robbins, G.A., Butler, M. and Zack, P. (1997). Recommended Guidelines for Multilevel Sampling of Soil and Groundwater in Conducting Expedited Site Investigations at Underground Storage Tanks Sites in Connecticut. Developed for the LUST Trust Fund Program, Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection.

Robbins, G.A. (2000). Expedited Site Assessment: The CD. Prepared for the Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection (Excel File “constant.xls”).

Schueler, Thomas, R., Pollutant Dynamics of Pond Muck, Wat. Prot. Techniques, 1 (2). Summer 1994

Seattle Public Utilities and Herrera Environmental Consultants, Inc. Seattle Street Sweeping Pilot Study, April 22, 2009 http://www.seattle.gov/util/groups/public/@spu/@drainsew/documents/webcontent/spu01_005046.pdf

Serdar, Dave, Ecology, Contaminants in Vactor Truck Wastes, April 1993

State of Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, Fact Sheet: Disposing of Chlorinated Water from Swimming Pools and Hot Tubs, Updated 1/10/12, on website: http://www.deq.state.or.us/wq/pubs/factsheets/wastewater/bmpchlorwaterdisp.pdf

Thurston County Environmental Health Division, (Environmental Health Division-Unpublished data), 1993

Thurston County Environmental Health Division, *Report on Street Facility Monitoring* Grant Tax No. 91-129, April 1993

TPH Criteria Working Group (1999). Volume 4: Development of Fraction Specific Reference Doses (RFDs) and Reference Concentration (RFCs) for Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons (TPH). Amherst Scientific Publishers. http://www.aehs.com/publications/catalog/contents/tph.htm

TYMCO, Inc. *Best Management Practices - Street Sweeping*, Waco, Texas, 1993.

USEPA (2006). Guidance on Systematic Planning using the Data Quality Objective Process, EPA QA/G-4". EPA/240/B-06/001. http://www.epa.gov/quality1/qs-docs/g4-final.pdf

USEPA (1996). How to Effectively Recover Free Product at Leaking Underground Storage Tank Sites: A Guide for State Regulators. EPA 510-R-96-001. Chapter III: Correction to Compute Hydraulic Head In Wells Containing Free Product Behavior of Hydrocarbons in the Subsurface, Exhibit III-10, p. III-16 http://www.epa.gov/oust/pubs/fprg.htm

US Environmental Protection Agency, "Methods for Evaluating Solid Waste, Physical/ Chemical

US Environmental Protection Agency, Test Methods for Evaluating Solid Wastes, (SW-846), 3rd Edition, 1986.

W&H Pacific, Inc., Street and Street Sweeping Waste Characteristics Snohomish County, Washington, February 1994.

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington

Volume V
Runoff Treatment BMPs

Prepared by:
Washington State Department of Ecology
Water Quality Program

December 2014
Publication No. 14-10-055
(A revision of Publication No. 12-10-030)

Acknowledgments

The Washington State Department of Ecology gratefully acknowledges the valuable time, comments, and expertise provided by the people listed below who contributed to the 2012 revision of Volume V of the SWMMWW. The Washington State Department of Ecology is solely responsible for any errors, omissions, and final decisions related to the 2012 SWMMWW.

Name	Affiliation
Ed Abbasi	Ecology, Water Quality, NWRO
Pat Allen	Thurston County
Hebe C. Bernardo	City of Renton
Steve Hood	Ecology, Water Quality, BFO
Kurt Marx	Washington Stormwater Center
Chris May	Kitsap County Public Works
Maureen Meehan	City of Seattle
Valerie Monsey	City of Issaquah
William M. Reilly	City of Bellingham
Kristen Terpstra	City of Bothell
Anthony Whiley	Ecology, Water Quality
Jane Zimmerman	City of Everett

Ecology Technical Leads
Ed O’Brien, P.E. – 2005 edit and 2012 edit
Douglas C. Howie, P.E. – 2012 edit

Technical Review and Editing
Kathleen Emmett – 2012 edit
Daniel S. Gariépy, P.E. – 2012 edit
Carrie A. Graul – 2012 edit
Julie Robertson – 2012 edit
Kelsey Highfill – 2012 edit

Table of Contents

List of Tables

List of Figures

Chapter 1. - Introduction

1.1 Purpose of this Volume

Best Management Practices (BMPs) are schedules of activities, prohibitions of practices, maintenance procedures, managerial practices, or structural features that prevent or reduce adverse impacts to waters of Washington State. As described in Volume I of this stormwater manual, there are three main categories of BMPs for long-term management of stormwater at developed sites:

- BMPs addressing the amount and timing of stormwater flows;
- BMPs addressing prevention of pollution from potential sources; and
- BMPs addressing treatment of runoff to remove sediment and other pollutants.

This volume of the stormwater manual focuses on the third category, treatment of runoff to remove sediment and other pollutants at developed sites. The purpose of this volume is to provide guidance for selection, design, and maintenance of permanent runoff treatment facilities.

The Manual presents BMPs with respect to controlling stormwater flows and control of pollutant sources in Volumes III and IV, respectively.

1.2 Content and Organization of this Volume

Volume V of the stormwater manual contains 12 chapters. Chapter 1 serves as an introduction and summarizes available options for treatment of stormwater. Chapter 2 outlines a step-by-step process for selecting treatment facilities for new development and redevelopment projects. Chapter 3 presents treatment facility “menus” that are used in applying the step-by-step process presented in Chapter 2. These menus cover different treatment needs that are associated with different sites. Chapter 4 discusses general requirements for treatment facilities. Chapter 5 presents information regarding on-site stormwater management BMPs. The intent of these BMPs is to infiltrate, disperse, or contain runoff on site, as well as to provide treatment. Chapters 6 through 11 provide detailed information regarding specific types of treatment identified in the menus. Chapter 12 discusses special considerations for emerging technologies for stormwater treatment.

The Appendices to this volume contain more detailed information on selected topics described in the various chapters.

1.3 How to Use this Volume

The Reader should consult this volume to select specific BMPs for runoff treatment for the Stormwater Site Plans (see Volume I). After you have identified the Minimum Requirements from Volume I, you can use this volume to select specific treatment facilities for permanent use at developed sites, and as an aid in designing and constructing these facilities.

1.4 Runoff Treatment Facilities

1.4.1 General Considerations

Runoff treatment facilities are designed to remove pollutants contained in stormwater runoff. The pollutants of concern include sand, silt, and other suspended solids; metals such as copper, lead, and zinc; nutrients (e.g., nitrogen and phosphorous); certain bacteria and viruses; and organics such as petroleum hydrocarbons and pesticides. Methods of pollutant removal include sedimentation/settling, filtration, plant uptake, ion exchange, adsorption, and bacterial decomposition. Floatable pollutants such as oil, debris, and scum can be removed with separator structures.

1.4.2 Maintenance

Maintenance is required for all types of runoff treatment facilities. See Section 4.6 for maintenance standards for the treatment facilities discussed in this volume.

1.4.3 Treatment Methods

Methods used for runoff treatment facilities and common terms used in runoff treatment are discussed below:

- **Wetpools.** Wetpools provide runoff treatment by allowing settling of particulates during quiescent conditions (sedimentation), by biological uptake, and by vegetative filtration. Wetpools may be single-purpose facilities, providing only runoff treatment, or they may be combined with a detention pond or vault to also provide flow control. If combined, the wetpool facility can often be stacked under the detention facility with little further loss of development area.
- **Biofiltration.** Biofiltration uses vegetation in conjunction with slow and shallow-depth flow for runoff treatment. As runoff passes through the vegetation, pollutants are removed through the combined effects of filtration, infiltration, and settling. These effects are aided by the reduction of the velocity of stormwater as it passes through the biofilter. Biofiltration facilities include swales that are designed to convey and treat concentrated runoff at shallow depths and slow

velocities, and filter strips that are broad areas of vegetation for treating sheet flow runoff.

- **Oil/Water Separation.** Oil/water separators remove oil floating on the top of the water. There are two general types of separators - the American Petroleum Institute (API) separators and coalescing plate (CP) separators. Both use gravity to remove floating and dispersed oil. API separators, or baffle separators, are generally composed of three chambers separated by baffles. The efficiency of these separators is dependent on detention time in the center, or detention chamber, and on droplet size. CP separators use a series of parallel plates, which improve separation efficiency by providing more surface area, thus reducing the space needed for the separator. Oil/water separators must be located off-line from the primary conveyance/detention system, bypassing flows greater than the water quality design flow. Other devices/facilities that may be used for removal of oil include "emerging technologies" (see definition below), and linear sand filters. Oil control devices/facilities should be placed upstream of other treatment facilities and as close to the source of oil generation as possible.
- **Pretreatment.** Presettling basins are often used to remove sediment from runoff prior to discharge into other treatment facilities. Basic treatment facilities, listed in Step 6 – Figure 2.1.1, can also be used to provide pretreatment. Pretreatment often must be provided for filtration and infiltration facilities to protect them from clogging or to protect ground water. Appropriate pretreatment devices include a pre-settling basin, wet pond/vault, biofilter, constructed wetland, or oil/water separator. A number of patented technologies have received General and Conditional Use Level Designations for Pretreatment through the Washington State Department of Ecology's (Ecology) TAPE (Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology) Program. A listing and descriptions are available at Ecology's Emerging Technologies website http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html
- **Infiltration.** Infiltration refers to the use of the filtration, adsorption, and biological properties of native soils, with or without amendments, to remove pollutants as stormwater soaks into the ground. Infiltration can provide multiple benefits including pollutant removal, peak flow control, ground water recharge, and flood control. One condition that can limit the use of infiltration is the potential adverse impact on ground water quality. You must understand the difference between infiltrating in soils that are suitable for runoff treatment and soils only suitable for flow control to protect ground water. Sufficient organic content and sorption capacity to remove pollutants must be present for soils to provide runoff treatment. Examples of suitable soils are silty and sandy loams. Coarser soils, such as gravelly sands, can provide

flow control but are not suitable for providing runoff treatment. The use of coarser soils to provide flow control for runoff from pollutant generating surfaces must always be preceded by treatment to protect ground water quality. Thus, there will be instances when soils are suitable for treatment but not flow control, and vice versa.

- **Bioretention.** Bioretention refers to the use of imported soils as a treatment medium. As in infiltration, the pollutant removal mechanisms include filtration, adsorption, and biological action. Bioretention facilities can be built within earthen swales or placed within vaults. Water that has passed through the Bioretention Soil Mix (or approved equivalent) may be discharged to the ground or collected and discharged to surface water.

- **Filtration.** Another of a pollutant removal system for stormwater is the use of various media such as sand, perlite, zeolite, and carbon, to remove low levels of total suspended solids (TSS). Specific media such as activated carbon or zeolite can remove hydrocarbons and soluble metals. Filter systems can be configured as basins, vaults, trenches or cartridges. Several Sand Filtration BMPs are discussed in Chapter 9. A number of "Emerging Technologies" filtration devices have completed or are in the processed of being assessed through the "Emerging Technologies" processed described in the following bullet.

- **"Emerging Technologies."** Emerging technologies are those new stormwater treatment devices that are continually being added to the stormwater treatment marketplace. Ecology has established a program – Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) - to evaluate the capabilities of these emerging technologies. Emerging technologies that have been evaluated by this program are approved at some level of use designation under specified conditions. Their use is restricted in accordance with their evaluation as explained in Chapter 12. The recommendations for use of these emerging technologies may change as we collect more data on their performance. Updated recommendations on their use are posted to the Ecology website. Emerging technologies can also be considered for retrofit situations where TAPE approval is not required.

- **"On-line" Systems.** Most treatment facilities can be designed as "On-line" systems with flows above the water quality design flow or volume simply passing through the facility with lesser or no pollutant removal efficiency. It is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to treatment facilities and bypass excess flows around them. These are called "Off-line" systems. An example of an on-line system is a wetpool that maintains a permanent pool of water for runoff treatment purposes.

- **Design Flow.** For information on determining the design storm and flows for sizing treatment facilities refer to Chapter 4 of this volume.

Chapter 2. - Treatment Facility Selection Process

This chapter describes a step-by-step process for selecting the type of treatment facilities that will apply to individual projects. Physical features of sites that are applicable to treatment facility selection are also discussed. Refer to Chapter 3 for additional detail on the four treatment menus - oil control treatment, phosphorous treatment, enhanced treatment, and basic treatment.

Section 12.5 includes links to menus for emerging technologies that have a Use-Level Designation for pretreatment, oil, phosphorous, enhanced, or basic treatment. Only technologies with a General Use-Level Designation (GULD) can have an unlimited number of installations.

2.1 Step-by-Step Selection Process for Treatment Facilities

Please refer to Figure 2.1.1. Use the step-by-step process outlined below to determine the type of treatment facilities applicable to the project.

Step 1: Determine the Receiving Waters and Pollutants of Concern Based on Off-Site Analysis

To obtain a more complete determination of the potential impacts of a stormwater discharge, Ecology encourages local governments to require an Off-site Analysis similar to that in Chapter 2 of Volume I (Vol. I Section 2.6.2). Even without an off-site analysis requirement, the project proponent must determine the natural receiving water for the stormwater drainage from the project site (ground water, wetland, lake, stream, or salt water). This is necessary to determine the applicable treatment menu from which to select treatment facilities. The identification of the receiving water should be verified by the local government agency with review responsibility. If the discharge is to the local municipal storm drainage system, the receiving water for the drainage system must be determined.

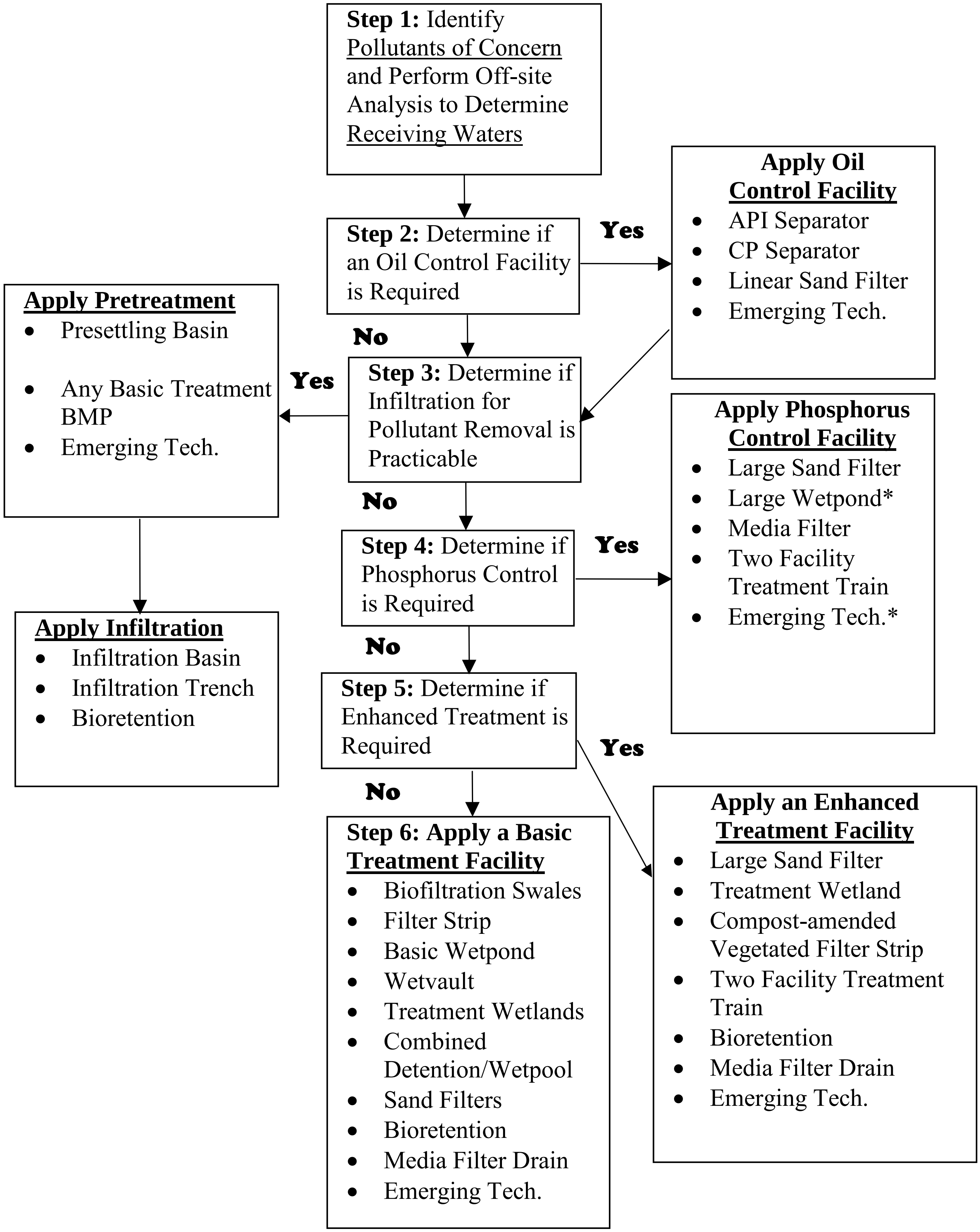
The local government should verify whether any type of water quality management plans and/or local ordinances or regulations have established specific requirements for that (those) receiving waters. Examples of plans to be aware of include:

- Watershed or Basin Plans: These can be developed to cover a wide variety of geographic scales (e.g., Water Resource Inventory Areas, or sub-basins of a few square miles), and can be focused solely on establishing stormwater requirements (e.g., “Stormwater Basin Plans”), or can address a number of pollution and water quantity issues, including urban stormwater (e.g., Puget Sound Non-Point Action Plans).
- Water Clean-up Plans: These plans establish a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) of a pollutant or pollutants in a specific receiving water or basin, and to identify actions necessary to remain below that maximum loading. The plans may identify discharge limitations or management

limitations (e.g., use of specific treatment facilities) for stormwater discharges from new and redevelopment projects.

- Ground water Management Plans (Wellhead Protection Plans): To protect ground water quality and/or quantity, these plans may identify actions required of stormwater discharges.
- Lake Management Plans: These plans are developed to protect lakes from eutrophication due to inputs of phosphorus from the drainage basin. Control of phosphorus from new development is a likely requirement in any such plans.

An analysis of the proposed land use(s) of the project should also be used to determine the stormwater pollutants of concern. Table 2.2.1 lists the pollutants of concern from various land uses. Refer to this table for examples of treatment options after determining whether "basic," "enhanced," or "phosphorus" treatment requirements apply to the project. You make those decisions in the steps below.



*When **Phosphorous Control and Enhanced** treatment are required, the Large Wetpond and certain types of emerging technologies will not meet both types of treatment requirements. A different or an additional treatment facility will be required to meet Enhanced treatment.

Figure 2.1.1 – Treatment Facility Selection Flow Chart

Step 2: Determine if an Oil Control Facility/Device is Required

The use of oil control devices and facilities is dependent upon the specific land use proposed for development.

Where Applied: The Oil Control Menu (see Section 3.2 for more details) applies to projects that have "high-use sites." High-use sites are those that typically generate high concentrations of oil due to high traffic turnover or the frequent transfer of oil. High-use sites include:

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to an expected average daily traffic (ADT) count equal to or greater than 100 vehicles per 1,000 square feet of gross building area.

  Note: Gasoline stations, with or without small food stores, will likely exceed the high-use site threshold.

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to petroleum storage and transfer in excess of 1,500 gallons per year, not including routinely delivered heating oil. Some examples are discussed below.

  Note: The petroleum storage and transfer criterion is intended to address regular transfer operations such as gasoline service stations, not occasional filling of heating oil tanks.

- An area of a commercial or industrial site subject to parking, storage or maintenance of 25 or more vehicles that are over 10 tons gross weight (trucks, buses, trains, heavy equipment, etc.). Some examples are discussed below.

  Note: In general, all-day parking areas are not intended to be defined as **high-use sites**, and should not require an oil control facility.

- A road intersection with a measured average daily traffic (ADT) count of 25,000 vehicles or more on the main roadway and 15,000 vehicles or more on any intersecting roadway, excluding projects proposing primarily pedestrian or bicycle use improvements.

  Note: The traffic count can be estimated using information from "Trip Generation," published by the Institute of Transportation Engineers, or from a traffic study prepared by a professional engineer or transportation specialist with experience in traffic estimation. See: http://www.ite.org/.

- The following land uses may have areas that fall within the definition of "high-use sites" and require oil control treatment. Further, these sites require special attention to the oil control treatment selected. Refer to Section 3.2 for more details.
  - Industrial machinery and equipment, and railroad equipment maintenance areas
  - Log storage and sorting yards

- o Aircraft maintenance areas
- o Railroad yards
- o Fueling stations
- o Vehicle maintenance and repair sites
- o Construction businesses (paving, heavy equipment storage and maintenance, storage of petroleum products.)

  Note: Some land use types require the use of a spill control (SC-type) oil/water separator. Those situations are described in Volume IV and are separate from this treatment requirement.

If oil control is required for the site, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. The general requirements may affect the design and placement of facilities on the site (e.g., flow splitting). Then see Chapter 11 of this volume for guidance on the proper selection of options and design details.

If an Oil Control Facility is required, select and apply an appropriate Oil Control Facility. Please refer to the Oil Control Menu in Section 3.2. After selecting an Oil Control Facility, proceed to Step 3.

If an Oil Control Facility is not required, proceed directly to Step 3.

Step 3: Determine if Infiltration for Pollutant Removal is Practicable

Please check the infiltration treatment design criteria as discussed in the Site Suitability Criteria (SSC) in Section 3.3.7 of Volume III.

Infiltration can be effective at treating stormwater runoff, but soil properties must be appropriate to achieve effective treatment. This effectiveness is discussed in *SSC-6 Soil Physical and Chemical Suitability for Treatment*.

The infiltration facility must also be checked to ensure that it does not adversely impact ground water resources. These are discussed in:

- *SSC-2 Ground Water Protection Areas*
- *SSC-5 Depth to Bedrock, Water Table, or Impermeable Layer*
- *SSC-1 Setback Criteria.*

These suitability criteria check the location and depth to bedrock, the water table, or impermeable layers (such as glacial till), and the proximity to wells, foundations, septic tank drainfields.

Unstable slopes can preclude the use of infiltration (discussed in *SSC-7 Seepage Analysis and Control*).

Infiltration treatment facilities must be preceded by a pretreatment facility, such as a presettling basin or vault, to reduce the occurrence of plugging. Any of the basic treatment facilities, and detention ponds designed to meet flow control requirements, can also be used for pre-treatment. If an oil/water separator is necessary for oil control, it can also function as the pre-settling basin as long as the influent suspended solids concentrations are not high. However, frequent inspections are necessary to determine when accumulated solids exceed the 6-inch depth at which clean-out is recommended (See Chapter 4).

If infiltration is planned, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They can affect the design and placement of facilities on your site.

Infiltration through soils that do not meet the site suitability criteria SSC-6 in Section 3.3.7 of Volume III is allowable as a flow control BMP. Use of infiltration through such soils is acceptable provided:

- The flow control only infiltration facility is NOT within a ¼ mile of a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water.

  Note: When the flow control only infiltration facility IS within ¼ mile of a phosphorous-sensitive water body, phosphorous treatment is required. Refer to the phosphorous treatment menu in Section 3.3 for the special treatment needed prior to infiltration.

- The flow control only infiltration facility is NOT within ¼ mile of a fresh water body designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use.

  Note: When the flow control only infiltration facility IS within a ¼ mile of such a fresh water body, enhanced treatment is required for land use tupes described in Step 5 below. Refer to Section 3.4 Enhanced Treatment Menu for the treatment options.

- The appropriate level of treatment for the land use precedes the infiltration. Refer to Section 3.4 Enhanced Treatment Menu or Section 3.5 Basic Treatment Menu for the treatment needed prior to infiltration.

Infiltration can also be used as part of other treatments and flow control measures. For example, infiltration through the bottom of a detention/retention facility for flow control can also help reduce direct discharge volumes to streams and reduce the size of the facility.

If infiltration is practicable, select and apply pretreatment and an infiltration facility.

If infiltration is not practicable, proceed to Step 4.

Step 4: Determine if Control of Phosphorous is Required

The plans, ordinances, and regulations identified in Step 1 are a good reference to help determine if the subject site is in an area where phosphorous control is required.

The requirement to provide phosphorous control is determined by the local government with jurisdiction, Ecology, or the USEPA. The local government may have developed a management plan and implementing ordinances or regulations for control of phosphorus from new development and redevelopment for the receiving water(s) of the stormwater drainage. The local government can use the following sources of information for pursuing plans and implementing ordinances and/or regulations:

- Those waterbodies reported under section 305(b) of the Clean Water Act, and designated as not supporting beneficial uses due to phosphorous;
- Those listed in Washington State's Nonpoint Source Assessment required under section 319(a) of the Clean Water Act due to nutrients.

If phosphorus control is required, select and apply a phosphorous treatment facility. Please refer to the Phosphorus Treatment Menu in Section 3.3. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site. If you have selected a phosphorus treatment facility, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They may affect the design and placement of the facility on the site.

Note: Project sites subject to the Phosphorus Treatment requirement could also be subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement (see Step 5). In that event, apply a facility or a treatment train that is listed in both the Enhanced Treatment Menu and the Phosphorus Treatment Menu.

If phosphorus treatment is not required for the site, proceed to Step 5.

Step 5: Determine if Enhanced Treatment is Required

Except where specified under Step 6, Enhanced treatment for reduction in dissolved metals is required for the following project sites that: 1) discharge directly to fresh waters or conveyance systems tributary to fresh waters designated for aquatic life use or that have an existing aquatic life use; or 2) use infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment – and the discharge is within ¼ mile of a fresh water designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use:

Industrial project sites,

Commercial project sites,

Multi-family residential project sites, and

High AADT roads as follows:

Within Urban Growth Areas:

- Fully controlled and partially controlled limited access highways with Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT) counts of 15,000 or more
- All other roads with an AADT of 7,500 or greater

Outside of Urban Growth Areas:

- Roads with an AADT of 15,000 or greater unless discharging to a 4^{th} Strahler order stream or larger;
- Roads with an AADT of 30,000 or greater if discharging to a 4^{th} Strahler order stream or larger (as determined using 1:24,000 scale maps to delineate stream order).

Any areas of the above-listed project sites that are identified as subject to Basic Treatment requirements (see Step 6) are not also subject to Enhanced Treatment requirements. For developments with a mix of land use types, the Enhanced Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement comprises 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

If the project must apply Enhanced Treatment, select and apply an appropriate Enhanced Treatment facility. Please refer to the Enhanced Treatment Menu in Section 3.4. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site. Note: Project sites subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement could also be subject to a phosphorus removal requirement if located in an area designated for phosphorus control. In that event, apply a facility or a treatment train that is listed in both the Enhanced Treatment Menu and the Phosphorus Treatment Menu. If you have selected an Enhanced Treatment facility, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They may affect the design and placement of the facility on the site.

If Enhanced Treatment does not apply to the site, please proceed to Step 6.

Step 6: Select a Basic Treatment Facility

The Basic Treatment Menu is required in the following circumstances:

- Project sites that discharge to the ground (see Step 3), UNLESS:
  - The soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment are met (see Chapter 3 of Volume III), and alternative pretreatment is provided (See Chapter 6), or

  - The project site uses infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment - and the discharge is within ¼-mile of a phosphorus sensitive lake (use the Phosphorus Treatment Menu), or
  - The project site is industrial, commercial, multi-family or a high AADT (consistent with the Enhanced Treatment-type thresholds listed above) and is within ¼ mile of a fresh water designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use (use the Enhanced Treatment Menu).

- Residential projects not otherwise needing phosphorus control in Step 4 as designated by USEPA, Ecology, or a local government.
- Project sites discharging directly (or indirectly through a municipal separate storm sewer system) to Basic Treatment Receiving Waters listed in Appendix I-C of Volume I.
- Project sites that drain to fresh water that is not designated for aquatic life use, and does not have an existing aquatic life use; and project sites that drain to waters not tributary to waters designated for aquatic life use or that have an existing aquatic life use.
- Landscaped areas of industrial, commercial, and multi-family project sites, and parking lots of industrial and commercial project sites, dedicated solely to parking of employees' private vehicles that do not involve any other pollution-generating sources (e.g., industrial activities, customer parking, storage of erodible or leachable material, wastes or chemicals). For developments with a mix of land use types, the Basic Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Basic Treatment requirement comprises 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

Please refer to the Basic Treatment Menu in Section 3.5. Select an option from the menu after reviewing the applicability and limitations, site suitability, and design criteria of each for compatibility with the site.

After selecting a Basic Treatment Facility, please refer to the General Requirements in Chapter 4. They may affect the design and placement of the facility on the site.

You have completed the treatment facility selection process.

2.2 Other Treatment Facility Selection Factors

The selection of a treatment facility should be based on site physical factors and pollutants of concern. The requirements for use of Enhanced Treatment or Phosphorus Treatment represent facility selection based on pollutants of concern. Even if the site is not subject to those requirements, try to choose a facility that is more likely to do a better job removing the types of pollutants generated on the site. The types of site physical factors that influence facility selection are summarized below.

Soil Type (Table 2.2.1)

The permeability of the soil underlying a treatment facility has a profound influence on its effectiveness. This is particularly true for infiltration treatment facilities that are sited in sandy to loamy sand soils. They are not generally appropriate for sites that have final infiltration rates (f) of less than 0.5 inches per hour. Wet pond facilities situated on coarser soils will need a synthetic liner or the soils amended to reduce the infiltration rate and provide treatment. Maintaining a permanent pool in the first cell is necessary to avoid resuspension of settled solids. Biofiltration swales in coarse soils can also be amended to reduce the infiltration rate.

High Sediment Input

High TSS loads can clog infiltration soil, sand filters and coalescing plate oil & water separators. Pretreatment with a presettling basin, wet vault, or another basic treatment facility would typically be necessary.

Other Physical Factors

Slope: Steep slopes restrict the use of several BMPs. For example, biofiltration swales are usually situated on sites with slopes of less than 6%, although greater slopes can be considered. Infiltration BMPs are not suitable when the slope exceeds 15%.

High Water Table: Unless there is sufficient horizontal hydraulic receptor capacity the water table acts as an effective barrier to exfiltration and can sharply reduce the efficiency of an infiltration system. If the high water table extends to within five (5) feet of the bottom of an infiltration BMP, the site is seldom suitable.

Depth to Bedrock/ Hardpan/Till: The downward exfiltration of stormwater is also impeded if a bedrock or till layer lies too close to the surface. If the impervious layer lies within five feet below the bottom of the infiltration BMP the site is not suitable. Similarly, pond BMPs are often not feasible if bedrock lies within the area that must be excavated.

Proximity to Foundations and Wells: Since infiltration BMPs convey runoff back into the soil, some sites may experience problems with local seepage. This can be a real problem if the BMP is located too close to a building foundation. Another risk is ground water pollution; hence, the requirement to site infiltration systems more than 100 feet away from drinking water wells.

Maximum Depth: Wet ponds are also subject to a maximum depth limit for the "permanent pool" volume. Deep ponds (greater than 8 feet) may stratify during summer and create low oxygen conditions near the bottom resulting in re-release of phosphorus and other pollutants back into the water.

Table 2.2.1
Screening Treatment Facilities Based on Soil Type

Soil Type	Infiltration/ Bioretention	Wet Pond*	Biofiltration* (Swale or Filter Strip)
Coarse Sand or Cobbles	✕	✕	✕
Sand	✔	✕	✕
Loamy Sand	✔	✕	✔
Sandy Loam	✔	✕	✔
Loam	✕	✕	✔
Silt Loam	✕	✕	✔
Sandy Clay Loam	✕	✔	✔
Silty Clay Loam	✕	✔	✔
Sandy Clay	✕	✔	✔
Silty Clay	✕	✔	✕
Clay	✕	✔	✕

Notes:
✔ Indicates that use of the technology is generally appropriate for this soil type.
✕ Indicates that use of the technology is generally not appropriate for this soil type

* Coarser soils may be used for these facilities if a liner is installed to prevent infiltration, or if the soils are amended to reduce the infiltration rate.
Note: Sand filtration is not listed because its feasibility is not dependent on soil type.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 3. - Treatment Facility Menus

This chapter identifies choices that comprise the treatment facility menus referred to in Chapter 2. The menus in this chapter are discussed in the order of the decision process shown in Figure 2.1.1 and are as follows:

Oil Control Menu, Section 3.2

Phosphorus Treatment Menu, Section 3.3

Enhanced Treatment Menu, Section 3.4

Basic Treatment Menu, Section 3.5

Section 12.5 includes links to menus for emerging technologies that have a Use-Level Designation for pretreatment, oil, phosphorous, enhanced, or basic treatment. Only technologies with a General Use-Level Designation (GULD) can have an unlimited number of installations.

3.1 Guide to Applying Menus

Read the step-by-step selection process for treatment facilities in Section 2.1.

Determine which menus apply to the discharge situation. This will require knowledge of (1) the receiving water(s) that the project site ultimately discharges to, and (2) whether the local government with jurisdiction, Ecology or the USEPA, has identified the receiving water as subject to phosphorus control requirements, and (3) whether the site qualifies as subject to oil control.

Determine if your project requires oil control.

If the project requires oil control, or if you elect to provide enhanced oil pollution control, choose one of the options presented in the Oil Control Menu, Section 3.2. Detailed designs for oil control facilities are given in subsequent chapters.

Note: One of the other three treatment menus will also need to be applied along with oil control.

Find the Treatment Menu that applies to the project – Basic, Enhanced, or Phosphorus.

Each menu presents treatment options. Select one option. Since all options are intended to provide equivalent removal of the target pollutant, the choice will depend only on the constraints and opportunities of the site. A project site may be subject to both the Enhanced Treatment requirement and the Phosphorus Treatment requirement. In that event, select a facility or a treatment train that is listed in both treatment menus. Note: If flow control requirements apply, it will usually be more economical to use the combined detention/wetpool facilities. Detailed facility designs for all the possible options are given in subsequent chapters in this Volume.

Read Chapter 4 concerning general facility requirements.

They apply to all facilities and may affect the design and placement of facilities on the site.

3.2 Oil Control Menu

Note: Where this menu is applicable, it is in addition to facilities required by one of the other Treatment Menus.

Application on the Project Site: Oil control facilities are to be placed upstream of other facilities, as close to the source of oil generation as practical. For high-use sites located within a larger commercial center, only the impervious surface associated with the high-use portion of the site is subject to treatment requirements. If common parking for multiple businesses is provided, treatment shall be applied to the number of parking stalls required for the high-use business only. However, if the treatment collection area also receives runoff from other areas, the treatment facility must be sized to treat all water passing through it.

High-use roadway intersections shall treat lanes where vehicles accumulate during the signal cycle, including left and right turn lanes and through lanes, from the beginning of the left turn pocket. If no left turn pocket exists, the treatable area shall begin at a distance equal to three car lengths from the stop line. If runoff from the intersection drains to more than two collection areas that do not combine within the intersection, treatment may be limited to any two of the collection areas.

Performance Goal: The facility choices in the Oil Control Menu are intended to achieve the goals of no ongoing or recurring visible sheen, and to have a 24-hour average Total Petroleum Hydrocarbon (TPH) concentration no greater than 10 mg/l, and a maximum of 15 mg/l for a discrete sample (grab sample).

Note: Use the method for NWTPH-Dx in Ecology Publication No. ECY 97-602, Analytical Methods for Petroleum Hydrocarbons. If the concentration of gasoline is of interest, the method for NWTPH-Gx should be used to analyze grab samples.

Options: Oil control options include facilities that are small, treat runoff from a limited area, and require frequent maintenance. The options also include facilities that treat runoff from larger areas and generally have less frequent maintenance needs.

- **API-Type Oil/Water Separator** – See Chapter 11
- **Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separator** – See Chapter 11

- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies** – See Chapter 12
- **Linear Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8

Note: The linear sand filter is used in the Basic, Enhanced, and Phosphorus Treatment menus also. If used to satisfy one of those treatment requirements, the same facility shall not also be used to satisfy the oil control requirement unless increased maintenance is assured. This increase in maintenance is to prevent clogging of the filter by oil so that it will function for suspended solids, metals and phosphorus removal as well. Quarterly cleaning is required unless specified otherwise by the designer.

3.3 Phosphorus Treatment Menu

Where Applied: The Phosphorus Treatment Menu applies to projects within watersheds that have been determined by local governments, Ecology, or the USEPA to be sensitive to phosphorus and that are being managed to control phosphorus inputs from stormwater. This menu applies to stormwater conveyed to the lake by surface flow as well as to stormwater infiltrated within one-quarter mile of the lake in soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria in Chapter 3 of Volume III.

Performance Goal: The Phosphorus Menu facility choices are intended to achieve a goal of 50% total phosphorus removal for a range of influent concentrations of 0.1 – 0.5 mg/l total phosphorus. In addition, the choices are intended to achieve the Basic Treatment performance goal. The performance goal applies to the water quality design storm volume or flow rate, whichever is applicable.. The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the facility (off-line treatment facilities), or can be passed through the facility (on-line treatment facilities) provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained. Ecology encourages the design and operation of treatment facilities that engage a bypass at flow rates higher than the water quality design flow rate. This is acceptable provided that the overall reduction in phosphorus loading (treated plus bypassed) is at least equal to that achieved with initiating bypass at the water quality design flow rate. Note that wetpool facilities are always designed to be on-line.

Options: Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the phosphorus treatment requirement.

- **Infiltration (**Chapter 3 of Volume III) **with appropriate pretreatment** (Chapter 6 of Volume V) –Infiltration treatment

  If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum site suitability criteria for infiltration treatment (See Section 3.3.7 of Volume III), a presettling basin or a basic treatment facility can serve for pretreatment.

- Infiltration preceded by Basic Treatment

If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment, treatment must be provided by a basic treatment facility unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.

- Infiltration preceded by Phosphorus Treatment

  If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria **and** the infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water, or a tributary to that water, treatment must be provided by one of the other treatment facility options listed below.

- **Large Sand Filter** – See Chapter 8
- **Large Wetpond** – See Chapter 10
- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies targeted for phosphorus removal** – See Chapter 12
- **Two-Facility Treatment Trains** – See Table 3.3.1

Table 3.3.1
Treatment Trains for Phosphorus Removal

First Basic Treatment Facility	Second Treatment Facility
Biofiltration Swale	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Filter Strip	Linear Sand Filter (no presettling needed)
Linear Sand Filter	Filter Strip
Basic Wetpond	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Wetvault	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Stormwater Treatment Wetland	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault
Basic Combined Detention and Wetpool	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault

3.4 Enhanced Treatment Menu

Where Applied: Except where specified in Section 3.5 - Basic Treatment, Enhanced treatment is required for the following project sites that:

1) Discharge directly to fresh waters or conveyance systems tributary to fresh waters designated for aquatic life use or that have an existing aquatic life use; or

2) Use infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment – and the discharge is within ¼ mile of a fresh water designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use,

Industrial project sites,

Commercial project sites,

Multi-family project sites, and

High AADT roads as follows:

Within Urban Growth Areas:

- Fully controlled and partially controlled limited access highways with Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT) counts of 15,000 or more

- All other roads with an AADT of 7,500 or greater

Outside of Urban Growth Areas:

- Roads with an AADT of 15,000 or greater unless discharging to a 4th Strahler order stream or larger;

- Roads with an AADT of 30,000 or greater if discharging to a 4th Strahler order stream or larger (as determined using 1:24,000 scale maps to delineate stream order).

Any areas of the above-listed project sites that are identified as subject to Basic Treatment requirements (see Section 3.5 below) are not also subject to Enhanced Treatment requirements. For developments with a mix of land use types, the Enhanced Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Enhanced Treatment requirement comprises 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

Performance Goal: The Enhanced Menu facility choices are intended to provide a higher rate of removal of dissolved metals than Basic Treatment facilities. Based on a review of dissolved metals removal of basic treatment options, a "higher rate of removal" is currently defined as greater than 30% dissolved copper removal, and greater than 60% dissolved zinc removal. In addition, the menu choices are intended to achieve the Basic Treatment performance goal. The performance goal assumes that the facility is treating stormwater with dissolved Copper typically ranging from 0.005 to 0.02 mg/l, and dissolved Zinc ranging from 0.02 to 0.3 mg/l.

The performance goal applies to the water quality design storm volume or flow rate, whichever is applicable. The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the facility (off-line treatment facilities), or can be passed through the facility (on-line treatment facilities) provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained. Ecology encourages the design and operation of treatment facilities that engage a bypass at flow rates higher than the water quality design flow rate as long as the reduction in dissolved metals loading exceeds that achieved with initiating bypass at the water quality design flow rate. Note that wetpool facilities are always designed to be on-line.

Options: Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the enhanced treatment requirement:

- **Infiltration (**Chapter 3 of Volume III) **with appropriate pretreatment** (Chapter 6 of Volume V) –
    - Infiltration treatment

      If infiltration is through soils meeting the minimum site suitability criteria for infiltration treatment (See Section 3.3.7 of Volume III), a presettling basin or a basic treatment facility can serve for pretreatment.
    - Infiltration preceded by Basic Treatment

      If infiltration is through soils that do not meet the soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment, treatment must be provided by a basic treatment facility unless the soil and site fit the description in the next option below.
    - Infiltration preceded by Enhanced Treatment

      If the soils do not meet the soil suitability criteria **and** the infiltration site is within ¼ mile of a fresh water designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use, treatment must be provided by one of the other treatment facility options listed below.
- **Large Sand Filter –** See Chapter 8
- **Stormwater Treatment Wetland** – See Chapter 10
- **Compost-amended Vegetated Filter Strip** (CAVFS) – See Chapter7
- **Two Facility Treatment Trains** – See Table 3.4.1

Table 3.4.1 Treatment Trains for Dissolved Metals Removal	
First Basic Treatment Facility	**Second Treatment Facility**
Biofiltration Swale	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Filter Strip	Linear Sand Filter with no pre-settling cell needed
Linear Sand Filter	Filter Strip
Basic Wetpond	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Wetvault	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Basic Combined Detention/Wetpool	Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault or Media Filter(1)
Basic Sand Filter or Sand Filter Vault with a presettling cell if the filter isn't preceded by a detention facility	Media Filter(1)

Footnote:
(1) The media must be a type approved for basic or enhanced treatment use by Ecology. See Chapter 12 for approved media filters.

- **Bioretention** – See Chapter 7**Note: Stormwa**ter runoff that infiltrates through the imported soil mix will have received Enhanced Treatment. Where bioretention is intended to fully meet treatment requirements for its drainage area, it must be designed, using an approved continuous runoff model, to pass at least 91% of the influent runoff file through the imported soil mix.
- **Media Filter Drain (MFD)** – See Chapter 8
- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies** – See Chapter 12

3.5 Basic Treatment Menu

Where Applied: The Basic Treatment Menu is required in the following circumstances:

- Project sites that discharge to the ground (see Step 3 in Chapter 2), UNLESS:
  - The soil suitability criteria for infiltration treatment are met (see Chapter 3 of Volume III), and pretreatment is provided; OR
  - The project uses infiltration strictly for flow control – not treatment - and the discharge is within ¼-mile of a phosphorus sensitive lake (use the Phosphorus Treatment Menu), or within ¼ mile of a fresh water designated for aquatic life use or that has an existing aquatic life use (use the Enhanced Treatment Menu).

- Residential projects not otherwise needing phosphorus control in Step 4 (See Chapter 2) as designated by USEPA, Ecology, or a local government;
- Project sites discharging directly (or indirectly through a municipal separate storm sewer system) to Basic Treatment Receiving Waters listed in Appendix I-C;
- Project sites that drain to fresh waters, or to waters tributary to fresh waters, that are not designated for aquatic life use or that do not have an existing aquatic life use.

Landscaped areas of industrial, commercial, and multi-family project sites, and parking lots of industrial and commercial project sites, dedicated solely to parking of employees' private vehicles, which do not involve any other pollution-generating sources (e.g., industrial activities, customer parking, storage of erodible or leachable material, wastes or chemicals).

For developments with a mix of land use types, the Basic Treatment requirement shall apply when the runoff from the areas subject to the Basic Treatment requirement comprises 50% or more of the total runoff within a threshold discharge area.

Performance Goal: The Basic Treatment Menu facility choices are intended to achieve 80% removal of total suspended solids for influent concentrations that are greater than 100 mg/l, but less than 200 mg/l. For influent concentrations greater than 200 mg/l, a higher treatment goal may be appropriate. For influent concentrations less than 100 mg/l, the facilities are intended to achieve an effluent goal of 20 mg/l total suspended solids.

The performance goal applies to the water quality design storm volume or flow rate, whichever is applicable. The incremental portion of runoff in excess of the water quality design flow rate or volume can be routed around the facility (off-line treatment facilities), or can be passed through the facility (on-line treatment facilities) provided a net TSS reduction is maintained. Ecology encourages the design and operation of treatment facilities that engage a bypass at flow rates higher than the water quality design flow rate as long as the reduction in TSS loading exceeds that achieved with initiating bypass at the water quality design flow rate. Note that wetpool facilities are always designed to be on-line. The performance goal assumes that the facility is treating stormwater with a typical particle size distribution. For a description of a typical particle size distribution, please refer to the stormwater monitoring protocol on Ecology website.

Options: Any one of the following options may be chosen to satisfy the basic treatment requirement:

- **Infiltration –** See Chapter 7 of this volume, and Chapter 3 of Vol. III
- **Sand Filters –** See Chapter 8
- **Biofiltration Swales** – See Chapter 9
- **Vegetated Filter Strip** – See Chapter 9
- **Compost-amended Vegetated Filter Strip (CAVFS)** – See Chapter 7
- **Basic Wetpond** – See Chapter 10
- **Wetvault** – See Chapter 10 (see note)
- **Stormwater Treatment Wetland –** See Chapter 10
- **Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities –** See Chapter 10
- **Bioretention**– See Chapter 7

  Note: Where bioretention is intended to fully meet treatment requirements for its drainage area, it must be designed, using an approved continuous runoff model, to pass at least 91% of the influent runoff file through the imported soil mix.
- **Media filter Drain (MFD)** – See Chapter 8
- **Emerging Stormwater Treatment Technologies** – See Chapter 12

Note: A wetvault may be used for commercial, industrial, or road projects if there are space limitations. Ecology discourages the use of wetvaults for residential projects. Combined detention/wetvaults are allowed; see Section 10.3.

This page purposely left blank

Chapter 4. - General Requirements for Stormwater Facilities

Note: All Figures in Chapter 4 are courtesy of King County

This chapter addresses general requirements for treatment facilities. Requirements discussed in this chapter include design volumes and flows, sequencing of facilities, liners, and hydraulic structures for splitting or dispersing flows.

4.1 Design Volume and Flow

4.1.1 Water Quality Design Storm Volume

The volume of runoff predicted from a 24-hour storm with a 6-month return frequency (a.k.a., 6-month, 24-hour storm). Alternatively, when using an approved continuous runoff model, the water quality design storm volume shall be equal to the simulated daily volume that represents the upper limit of the range of daily volumes that accounts for 91% of the entire runoff volume over a multi-decade period of record.

Wetpool facilities are sized based upon use of the NRCS (formerly known as SCS) curve number equations in Chapter 2 of Volume III, for the 6-month, 24-hour storm. Treatment facilities sized by this simple runoff volume-based approach are the same size whether they precede detention, follow detention, or are integral with the detention facility (i.e., a combined detention and wetpool facility).

Unless amended to reflect local precipitation statistics, the 6-month, 24-hour precipitation amount may be assumed to be 72 percent of the 2-year, 24-hour amount. Precipitation estimates of the 6-month and 2-year, 24-hour storms for certain towns and cities are listed in Appendix I-B of Volume I. For other areas, interpolating between isopluvials for the 2-year, 24-hour precipitation and multiplying by 72% yields the appropriate storm size. Isopluvials for 2-year, 24-hour amounts for Western Washington are reprinted in Volume III.

4.1.2 Water Quality Design Flow Rate

***Downstream of Detention Facilities*: The full 2-year release rate from the detention facility.**

An approved continuous runoff model should identify the 2-year return frequency flow rate discharged by a detention facility that is designed to meet the flow duration standard.

***Preceding Detention Facilities or when Detention Facilities are not required*: The flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume,**

as estimated by an approved continuous runoff model, will be treated. At the time of publication, all BMPs except wetpool-types should use the 15-minute time series from an approved continuous runoff model.

Design criteria for treatment facilities are assigned to achieve the applicable performance goal at the water quality design flow rate (e.g., 80 percent TSS removal).

- *Off-line facilities*: For treatment facilities not preceded by an equalization or storage basin, and when runoff flow rates exceed the water quality design flow rate, the treatment facility should continue to receive and treat the water quality design flow rate to the applicable treatment performance goal. Only the higher incremental portion of flow rates are bypassed around a treatment facility. Ecology encourages design of systems that engage a bypass at higher flow rates provided the reduction in pollutant loading exceeds that achieved with bypass at the water quality design flow rate.

  Treatment facilities preceded by an equalization or storage basin may identify a lower water quality design flow rate provided that at least 91 percent of the estimated runoff volume in the time series of an approved continuous runoff model is treated to the applicable performance goals (e.g., 80 percent TSS removal at the water quality design flow rate and 80 percent TSS removal on an annual average basis).

- *On-line facilities*: Runoff flow rates in excess of the water quality design flow rate can be routed through the facility provided a net pollutant reduction is maintained.

4.1.3 Flows Requiring Treatment

Runoff from pollution-generating hard or pervious surfaces must be treated. Pollution-generating hard surfaces (PGHS) are those hard surfaces considered to be a significant source of pollutants in stormwater runoff. PGHS includes pollution-generating impervious surfaces (PGIS) and pollution-generating permeable pavements. Permeable pavements subject to pollution-generating activities are also considered pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) because of their infiltration capability. The glossary in Volume I provides additional definitions and clarification of these terms.

- PGHS, PGIS, and PGPS include those surfaces which are subject to: vehicular use; industrial activities; or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and which receive direct rainfall or the run-on or blow-in of rainfall. Erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals are those substances which, when exposed to rainfall, measurably alter the physical or chemical characteristics of the rainfall runoff. Examples include erodible soils that are stockpiled, uncovered process wastes, manure, fertilizers, oily substances, ashes, kiln dust, and garbage dumpster leakage. Metal roofs are considered to be PGIS unless they are coated with an inert, non-leachable material (e.g., baked enamel coating). Roofs subject to venting significant amounts of dusts, mists or fumes from manufacturing, commercial, or other indoor activities are also PGIS.

- A surface, whether paved or not, shall be considered subject to vehicular use if it is regularly used by motor vehicles. The following are considered regularly-used surfaces: roads, unvegetated road shoulders, bike lanes within the traveled lane of a roadway, driveways, parking lots, unrestricted access firelanes, vehicular equipment storage yards, and airport runways.
- The following are not considered regularly-used surfaces: paved bicycle pathways separated from and not subject to drainage from roads for motor vehicles, restricted access firelanes, and infrequently used maintenance access roads.
- Pollution-generating pervious surfaces (PGPS) are any non-impervious surface subject to vehicular use, industrial activities (as further defined in the glossary); or storage of erodible or leachable materials, wastes, or chemicals, and that receive direct rainfall or run-on or blow-in of rainfall, the use of pesticides and fertilizers or loss of soil. Typical PGPS include permeable pavement subject to vehicular use, lawns and landscaped areas including: golf courses, parks, cemeteries, and sports fields (natural and artificial turf).

Summary of Areas Needing Treatment

- All runoff from pollution-generating hard surfaces is to be treated through the water quality facilities specified in Chapter 2 and Chapter 3.
- Lawns and landscaped areas specified are pervious but also generate run-off into street drainage systems. In those cases the runoff from the pervious areas must be estimated and added to the runoff from hard surface areas to size treatment facilities.
- Runoff from backyards can drain into native vegetation in areas designated as open space or buffers. In these cases, the area in native vegetation may be used to provide the requisite water quality treatment, provided it meets the requirements in Chapter 5 under the "Cleared Area Dispersion BMPs," of BMP T5.30 Full Dispersion.
- Drainage from hard surfaces that are not pollution- generating need not be treated and may bypass runoff treatment, if it is not mingled with runoff from pollution-generating surfaces.
- Runoff from nonpollution-generating roofs is still subject to flow control per Minimum Requirement #7. The nonpollution-generating roof runoff that is directed to an infiltration trench or dry well must first pass through a catch basin as shown in BMP T5.10A. Note that

metal roofs are considered pollution generating unless they are coated with an inert non-leachabale material. Roofs that are subject to venting of significant amounts of manufacturing, commercial, or other indoor pollutants is considered pollution-generating.

- Drainage from areas in native vegetation should not be mixed with untreated runoff from streets and driveways, if possible. It is best to infiltrate or disperse this relatively clean runoff to maximize recharge to shallow ground water, wetlands, and streams.
- If runoff from non-pollution generating surfaces reaches a runoff treatment BMP, flows from those areas must be included in the sizing calculations for the facility. Once runoff from non-pollution generating areas is mixed with runoff from pollution-generating areas, it cannot be separated before treatment.

4.1.4 Minimum Treatment Facility Size

The treatment requirement is to treat at least 91% of the post-development runoff file as predicted by the WWHM or another approved continuous runoff model. The WWHM 2012 has a feature which allows the user to track the amount of stormwater that has passed through LID BMPs. If the LID BMP qualifies as a treatment facility (i.e., bioretention, permeable pavement with a sand sublayer or native soils that meet the soil suitability requirement), the total amount of runoff that passes through the BMP counts towards meeting the 91% requirement.

Where LID BMPs (that provide treatment) do not quite achieve the 91% requirement, they can be upsized to meet the requirement (e.g., a larger bioretention BMP, or a deeper gravel sub-base below permeable pavement to achieve more infiltration), or a treatment system can be located to treat additional surface runoff. However, Ecology advises against using treatment systems that are very small. For volume-based treatment systems, the minimum recommended size is 0.0093 ac-ft. For flow-rate based treatment systems the minimum design flow rate is 0.0081 cubic feet per second (cfs). Rather than construct a treatment system for a volume or flow rate below these minima, Ecology recommends expanding the size of the LID BMPs. A second option is to build the treatment facility using the minimum volume or flow rate cited above (whichever is applicable for the selected treatment type).

4.2 Sequence of Facilities

The Enhanced Treatment and Phosphorus Removal Menus, described in Chapter 3, include treatment options in which more than one type of treatment facility is used. In those options, the sequence of facilities is prescribed. This is because the specific pollutant removal role of the second or third facility in a treatment often assumes that significant solids' settling has already occurred. For example, phosphorus removal using a two-facility treatment relies on the second facility (sand filter) to remove a finer fraction of solids than those removed by the first facility.

There is also the question of whether treatment facilities should be placed upstream or downstream of detention facilities that are needed for flow control purposes. In general, all treatment facilities may be installed upstream of detention facilities, although presettling basins are needed for sand filters and infiltration basins. However, not all treatment facilities can function effectively if located downstream of detention facilities. Those facilities that treat unconcentrated flows, such as filter strips are usually not practical downstream of detention facilities. Other types of treatment facilities present special problems that must be considered before placement downstream is advisable.

For instance, prolonged flows discharged by a detention facility that is designed to meet the flow duration standard of Minimum Requirement No. 7 may interfere with proper functioning of basic biofiltration swales and sand filters. Grasses typically specified in the basic biofiltration swale design will not survive. A wet biofilter design would be a better choice.

For sand filters, the prolonged flows may cause extended saturation periods within the filter. Saturated sand can lose all oxygen and become anoxic. If that occurs, some amount of phosphorus captured within the filter may become soluble and released. To prevent long periods of sand saturation, adjustments may be necessary after the sand filter is in operation to bypass some areas of the filter. This bypassing will allow them to drain completely. It may also be possible to employ a different type of facility that is less sensitive to prolonged flows.

Oil control facilities must be located upstream of treatment facilities and as close to the source of oil-generating activity as possible. They should also be located upstream of detention facilities, if possible.

Table 4.2.1 summarizes placement considerations of treatment facilities in relation to detention.

Table 4.2.1
Treatment Facility Placement in Relation to Detention

Water Quality Facility	Preceding Detention	Following Detention
Basic biofiltration swale (Chapter 9)	OK	OK. Prolonged flows may reduce grass survival. Consider wet biofiltration swale
Wet biofiltration swale (Chapter 9)	OK	OK
Filter strip (Chapter 9)	OK	No—must be installed before flows concentrate.
Basic or large wetpond (Chapter 10)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation in ponds downstream of detention may improve aesthetic qualities and performance.
Basic or large combined detention and wetpond (Chapter 10)	Not applicable	Not applicable
Wetvault (Chapter 10)	OK	OK
Basic or large sand filter or sand filter vault (Chapter 8)	OK, but presettling and control of floatables needed	OK—sand filters downstream of detention facilities may require field adjustments if prolonged flows cause sand saturation and interfere with phosphorus removal.
Stormwater treatment wetland/pond (Chapter 10)	OK	OK—less water level fluctuation and better plant diversity are possible if the stormwater wetland is located downstream of the detention facility.

Note: Emerging Technologies may be installed either upstream or downstream of detention facilities. The location depends on the type of technology and the level of treatment desired.

4.3 Setbacks, Slopes, and Embankments

The following guidelines for setbacks, slopes, and embankments are intended to provide for adequate maintenance accessibility to runoff treatment facilities. Setback requirements are generally required by local regulations, International building code requirements, or other state regulations. Local governments should require specific setback, slopes and embankment limitations to address public health and safety concerns.

4.3.1 Setbacks

Local governments may require specific setbacks in sites with steep slopes, land-slide areas, open water features, springs, wells, and septic tank drain fields. Setbacks from tract lines are necessary for maintenance access and equipment maneuverability. Adequate room for maintenance equipment should be considered during site design.

Examples of text describing commonly used setbacks include the following:

- Stormwater infiltration systems shall be set back at least 100 feet from open water features and 200 feet from springs used for drinking water supply. Infiltration facilities upgradient of drinking water supplies must comply with Health Department requirements (Washington Wellhead Protection Program, Department of Health, 12/93).
- Stormwater infiltration systems, and unlined wetponds and detention ponds shall be located at least 100 feet from drinking water wells and septic tanks and drainfields.
- Wetvaults and tanks may be required to be set back from building foundations, structures, property lines, and vegetative buffers. A typical setback requirement is 20 feet, for maintenance access.
- All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any steep (greater than 15%) slope. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wetpond on a steep slope

4.3.2 Side Slopes and Embankments

- Side slopes should preferably not exceed a slope of 3H:1V. Moderately undulating slopes are acceptable and can provide a more natural setting for the facility. In general, gentle side slopes improve the aesthetic attributes of the facility and enhance safety.
- Interior side slopes may be retaining walls, if the design is prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer. A fence should be provided along the top of the wall.
- Maintenance access should be provided through an access ramp or other adequate means.

- Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity, including both water and sediment storage volumes, greater than 10 acre-feet above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by Ecology. See Chapter 3, Volume III, for more detail concerning Detention Ponds.

4.4 Facility Liners

Liners are intended to reduce the likelihood that pollutants in stormwater will reach ground water when runoff treatment facilities are constructed. In addition to ground water protection considerations, some facility types require permanent water for proper functioning. An example is the first cell of a wetpond.

Treatment liners amend the soil with materials that treat stormwater before it reaches more freely draining soils. They have slow rates of infiltration, generally less than 2.4 inches per hour (1.7×10^{-3} cm/s), but not as slow as low permeability liners. Treatment liners may use in-place native soils or imported soils.

Low permeability liners reduce infiltration to a very slow rate, generally less than 0.02 inches per hour (1.4×10^{-5} cm/s). These types of liners should be used for industrial or commercial sites with a potential for high pollutant loading in the stormwater runoff. Low permeability liners may be fashioned from compacted till, clay, geomembrane, or concrete. Till liners are preferred because of their general resilience and ease of maintenance.

4.4.1 General Design Criteria

- Table 4.4.1 shows recommendations for the type of liner generally best suited for use with various runoff treatment facilities.
- Liners shall be evenly placed over the bottom and/or sides of the treatment area of the facility as indicated in Table 4.4.1. Areas above the treatment volume required to pass flows greater than the water quality treatment flow (or volume) need not be lined. However, the lining must be extended to the top of the interior side slope and anchored if it cannot be permanently secured by other means.
- For low permeability liners, the following criteria apply:
  1. Where the seasonal high ground water elevation is likely to contact a low permeability liner, liner buoyancy may be a concern. A low permeability liner shall not be used in this situation unless evaluated and recommended by a geotechnical engineer.

2. Where grass must be planted over a low permeability liner per the facility design, a minimum of 6 inches of good topsoil or compost-amended native soil (2 inches compost tilled into 6 inches of native till soil) must be placed over the liner in the area to be planted. Twelve inches of cover is preferred.

- If a treatment liner will be below the seasonal high water level, the pollutant removal performance of the liner must be evaluated by a geotechnical or ground water specialist and found to be as protective as if the liner were above the level of the ground water.

See Sections 4.4.2 and 4.4.3 for more specific design criteria for treatment liners and low permeability liners.

Table 4.4.1
Lining Types Recommended for Runoff Treatment Facilities

WQ Facility	Area to be Lined	Type of Liner Recommended
Presettling basin	Bottom and sides	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the basin will intercept the seasonal high ground water table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Wetpond	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface --------------------------------- Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the wet pond will intercept the seasonal high ground water table, a treatment liner is recommended.) ------------------------------- Treatment liner
Combined detention/WQ facility	First cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface --------------------------------- Second cell: bottom and sides to WQ design water surface	Low permeability liner or Treatment liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high ground water table a treatment liner is recommended.) ------------------------------- Treatment liner
Stormwater wetland	Bottom and sides, both cells	Low permeability liner (If the facility will intercept the seasonal high ground water table, a treatment liner is recommended.)
Sand filtration basin	Basin sides only	Treatment liner
Sand filter vault	Not applicable	No liner needed
Linear sand filter	Not applicable if in vault Bottom and sides of presettling cell if not in vault	No liner needed Low permeability or treatment liner
Media filter (in vault)	Not applicable	No liner needed
Wet vault	Not applicable	No liner needed

4.4.2 Design Criteria for Treatment Liners

This section presents the design criteria for treatment liners.

- A two-foot thick layer of soil with a minimum organic content of 1.0% AND a minimum cation exchange capacity (CEC) of 5 milliequivalents/100 grams can be used as a treatment layer beneath a water quality or detention facility.
- To demonstrate that in-place soils meet the above criteria, one sample per 1,000 square feet of facility area shall be tested. Each sample shall be a composite of subsamples taken throughout the depth of the treatment layer (usually two to six feet below the expected facility invert).
- Typically, side wall seepage is not a concern if the seepage flows through the same stratum as the bottom of the treatment BMP. However, if the treatment soil is an engineered soil or has very low permeability, the potential to bypass the treatment soil through the side walls may be significant. In those cases, the treatment BMP side walls may be lined with at least 18 inches of treatment soil, as described above, to prevent untreated seepage. This lesser soil thickness is based on unsaturated flow as a result of alternating wet-dry periods.
- Organic content shall be measured on a dry weight basis using ASTM D2974.
- Cation exchange capacity (CEC) shall be tested using EPA laboratory method 9081.
- Certification by a soils testing laboratory that imported soil meets the organic content and CEC criteria above shall be provided to the local approval authority.
- Animal manures used in treatment soil layers must be sterilized because of potential for bacterial contamination of the ground water.

4.4.3 Design Criteria for Low Permeability Liner Options

This section presents the design criteria for each of the following four low permeability liner options: compacted till liners, clay liners, geomembrane liners, and concrete liners.

Compacted Till Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 18 inches after compaction.
- Soil shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4×10^{-5} inches per minute (1×10^{-6} cm/s) may also be used instead of Criteria 1 and 2.

- Soil should be placed in 6-inch lifts.
- Soils may be used that meet the following gradation:

Table 4.4.2
Compacted Till Liners

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
6-inch	100
4-inch	90
#4	70 - 100
#200	20

Clay Liners

- Liner thickness shall be 12 inches.
- Clay shall be compacted to 95% minimum dry density, modified proctor method (ASTM D-1557).
- A different depth and density sufficient to retard the infiltration rate to 2.4 x 10-5 inches per minute (1 x 10-6 cm/s) may also be used instead of the above criteria.
- The slope of clay liners must be restricted to 3H: IV for all areas requiring soil cover; otherwise, the soil layer must be stabilized by another method so that soil slippage into the facility does not occur. Any alternative soil stabilization method must take maintenance access into consideration.
- Where clay liners form the sides of ponds, the interior side slope should not be steeper than 3: 1, irrespective of fencing. This restriction is to ensure that anyone falling into the pond may safely climb out.

Geomembrane Liners

- Geomembrane liners shall be ultraviolet (UV) light resistant and have a minimum thickness of 30 mils. A thickness of 40 mils shall be used in areas of maintenance access or where heavy machinery must be operated over the membrane.
- Geomembranes shall be bedded according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Liners shall be installed so that they can be covered with 12 inches of top dressing forming the bottom and sides of the water quality facility, except for liner sand filters. Top dressing shall consist of 6 inches of crushed rock covered with 6 inches of native soil. The rock layer is to mark the location of the liner for future maintenance operations. As an alternative to crushed rock, 12 inches of native soil may be used if orange plastic “safety fencing” or another highly-visible, continuous marker is embedded 6 inches above the membrane.

- If possible, liners should be of a contrasting color so that maintenance workers are aware of any areas where a liner may have become exposed when maintaining the facility.
- Geomembrane liners shall not be used on slopes steeper than 5H:1V to prevent the top dressing material from slipping. Textured liners may be used on slopes up to 3H:1V upon recommendation by a geotechnical engineer that the top dressing will be stable for all site conditions, including maintenance.

Concrete Liners

- Portland cement liners are allowed irrespective of facility size, and shotcrete may be used on slopes. However, specifications must be developed by a professional engineer who certifies the liner against cracking or losing water retention ability under expected conditions of operation, including facility maintenance operations. Weight of maintenance equipment can be up to 80,000 pounds when fully loaded.
- Asphalt concrete may not be used for liners due to its permeability to many organic pollutants.
- If grass is to be grown over a concrete liner, slopes must be no steeper than 5H: IV to prevent the top dressing material from slipping.

4.5 Hydraulic Structures

4.5.1 Flow Splitter Designs

Many water quality (WQ) facilities can be designed as flow-through or on-line systems with flows above the WQ design flow or volume simply passing through the facility at a lower pollutant removal efficiency. However, it is sometimes desirable to restrict flows to WQ treatment facilities and bypass the remaining higher flows around them through off-line facilities. This can be accomplished by splitting flows in excess of the WQ design flow upstream of the facility and diverting higher flows to a bypass pipe or channel. The bypass typically enters a detention pond or the downstream receiving drainage system, depending on flow control requirements. In most cases, it is a designer's choice whether WQ facilities are designed as on-line or off-line; an exception is oil/water separators, which must be designed off-line.

A crucial factor in designing flow splitters is to ensure that low flows are delivered to the treatment facility up to the WQ design flow rate. Above this rate, additional flows are diverted to the bypass system with minimal increase in head at the flow splitter structure to avoid surcharging the WQ facility under high flow conditions.

Flow splitters are typically manholes or vaults with concrete baffles. In place of baffles, the splitter mechanism may be a half tee section with a solid top and an orifice in the bottom of the tee section. A full tee option may also be used as described below in the "General Design Criteria." We show two possible design options for flow splitters in Figure 4.5.1 and Figure 4.5.2 (King County). Other equivalent designs that achieve the result of splitting low flows and diverting higher flows around the facility are also acceptable.

General Design Criteria

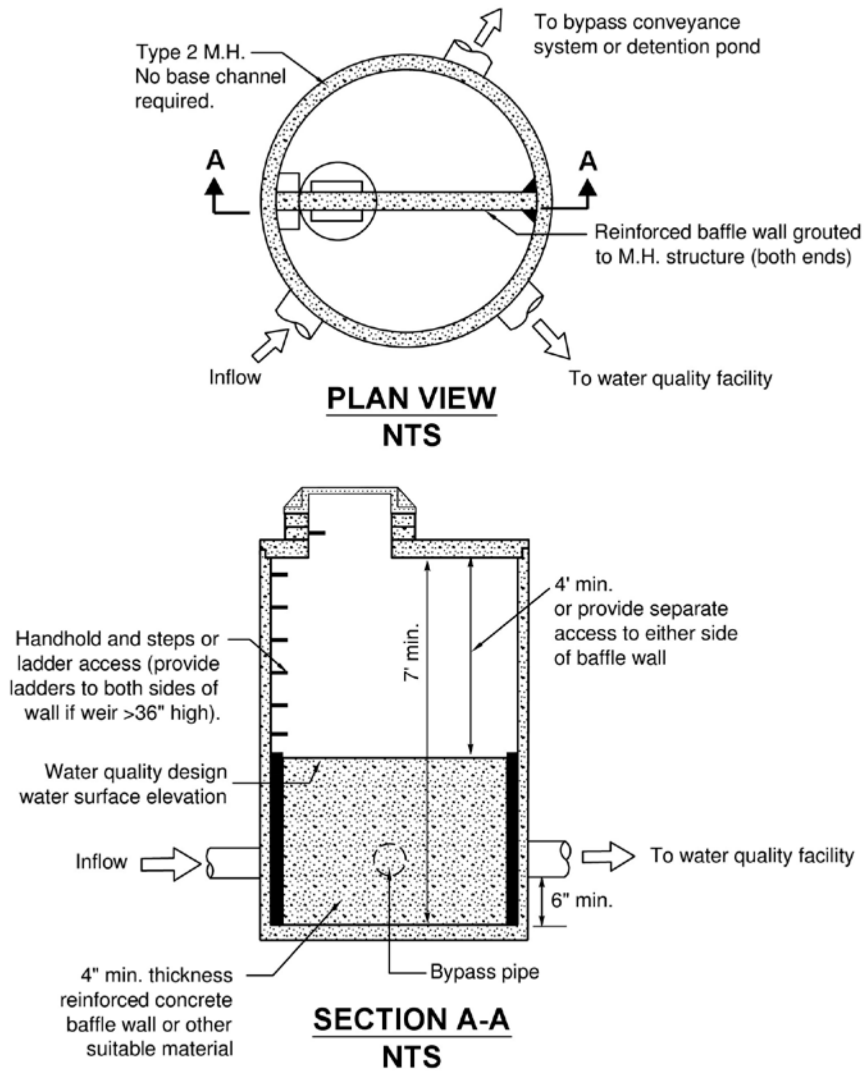
- A flow splitter must be designed to deliver the WQ design flow rate specified in this volume to the WQ treatment facility. For the basic size sand filter, which is sized based on volume, use the WQ design flow rate to design the splitter. For the large sand filter, use the 2-year flow rate or the flow rate that corresponds with treating 95 percent of the runoff volume of a long-term time series predicted by an approved continuous runoff model.
- The top of the weir must be located at the water surface for the design flow. Remaining flows enter the bypass line. Flows modeled using a continuous simulation model should use 15-minute time steps, if available. Otherwise use 1-hour time steps.
- The maximum head must be minimized for flow in excess of the WQ design flow. Specifically, flow to the WQ facility at the 100-year water surface must not increase the design WQ flow by more than 10%.
- Either design shown in Figure 4.5.1 or Figure 4.5.2 or an equivalent design may be used.
- As an alternative to using a solid top plate in Figure 4.5.2, a full tee section may be used with the top of the tee at the 100-year water surface. This alternative would route emergency overflows (if the overflow pipe were plugged) through the WQ facility rather than back up from the manhole.
- Special applications, such as roads, may require the use of a modified flow splitter. The baffle wall may be fitted with a notch and adjustable weir plate to proportion runoff volumes other than high flows.
- For ponding facilities, back water effects must be included in designing the height of the standpipe in the manhole.
- Ladder or step and handhold access must be provided. If the weir wall is higher than 36 inches, two ladders, one to either side of the wall, must be used.

Materials

- The splitter baffle may be installed in a Type 2 manhole or vault.
- The baffle wall must be made of reinforced concrete or another suitable material resistant to corrosion, and have a minimum 4-inch thickness. The minimum clearance between the top of the baffle wall

and the bottom of the manhole cover must be 4 feet; otherwise, dual access points should be provided.

- All metal parts must be corrosion resistant. Examples of preferred materials include aluminum, stainless steel, and plastic. Zinc and galvanized materials are discouraged because of aquatic toxicity. Painted metal parts should not be used because of poor longevity.



Note: The water quality discharge pipe may require an orifice plate to be installed on the outlet to control the height of the design water surface (weir height). The design water surface should be set to provide a minimum headwater/diameter ratio of 2.0 on the outlet pipe.

Figure 4.5.1 – Flow Splitter, Option A

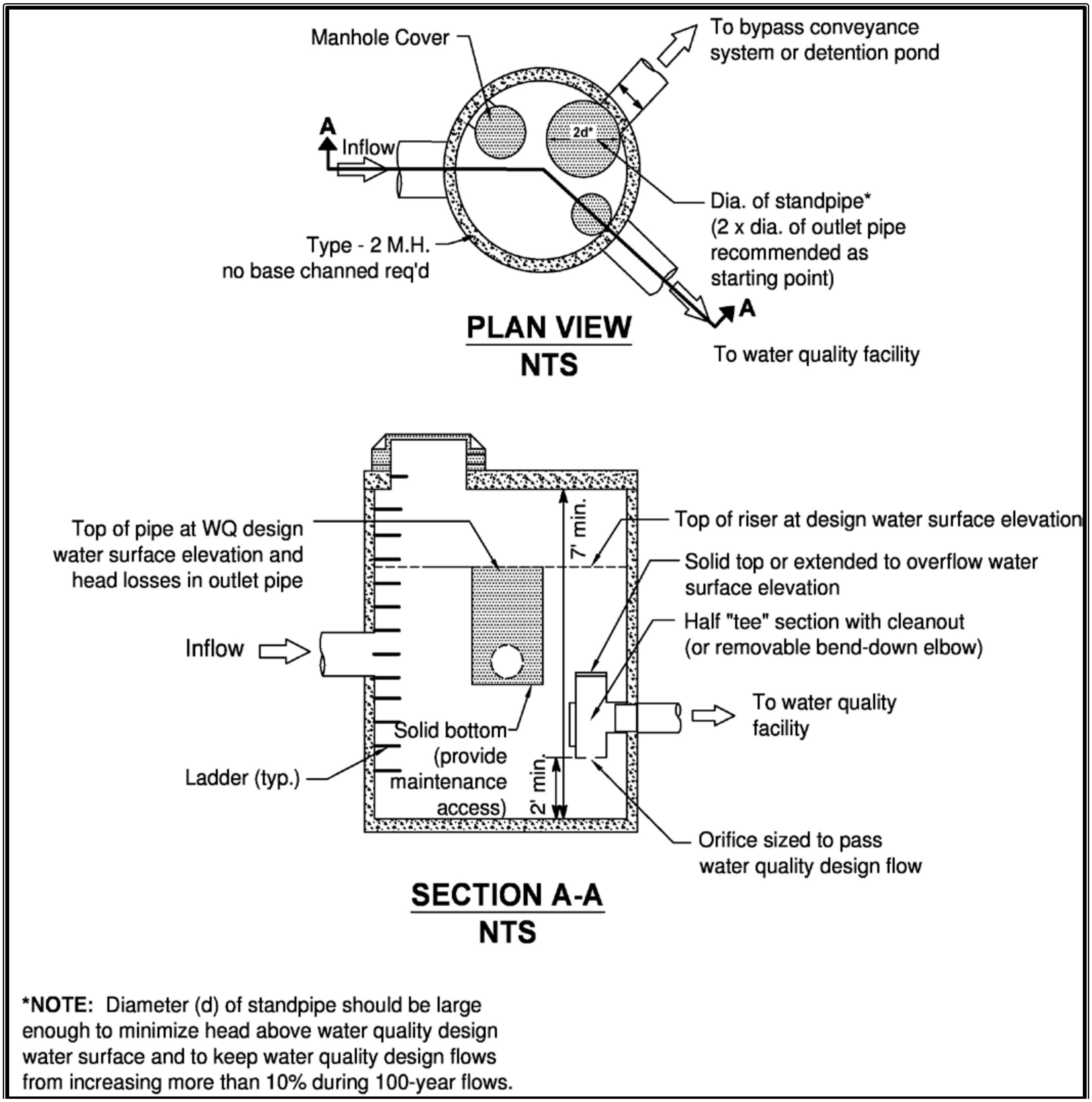


Figure 4.5.2 – Flow Splitter, Option B

4.5.2 Flow Spreading Options

Flow spreaders function to uniformly spread flows across the inflow portion of water quality facilities (e.g., sand filter, biofiltration swale, or filter strip). There are five flow spreader options presented in this section:

Option A – Anchored plate

Option B – Concrete sump box

Option C – Notched curb spreader

Option D – Through-curb ports

Option E – Interrupted curb

Options A through C can be used for spreading flows that are concentrated. Any one of these options can be used when spreading is required by the facility design criteria. Options A through C can also be used for unconcentrated flows, and in some cases must be used, such as to correct for moderate grade changes along a filter strip.

Options D and E are only for flows that are already unconcentrated and enter a filter strip or continuous inflow biofiltration swale. Other flow spreader options are possible with approval from the reviewing authority.

General Design Criteria

- Where flow enters the flow spreader through a pipe, it is recommended that the pipe be submerged to the extent practical to dissipate energy as much as possible.
- For higher inflows (greater than 5 cfs for the 100-yr storm), a Type 1 catch basin should be positioned in the spreader and the inflow pipe should enter the catch basin with flows exiting through the top grate. The top of the grate should be lower than the level spreader plate, or if a notched spreader is used, lower than the bottom of the v-notches.
- Table 4.5.1 provides general guidance for rock protection at outfalls.

Table 4.5.1 Rock Protection at Outfalls					
Discharge Velocity at Design Flow in feet per second (fps)	**Required Protection Minimum Dimensions**				
	Type	**Thickness**	**Width**	**Length**	**Height**
0 – 5	Rock lining[1]	1 foot	Diameter + 6 feet	8 feet *or* 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
5^+ - 10	Riprap[2]	2 feet	Diameter + 6 feet *or* 3 x diameter, whichever is greater	12 feet *or* 4 x diameter, whichever is greater	Crown + 1 foot
10^+ - 20	Gabion outfall	As required	As required	As required	Crown + 1 foot
20^+	Engineered energy dissipater required				

Footnotes:

[1] **Rock lining** shall be quarry spalls with gradation as follows:

Passing 8-inch square sieve: 100%
Passing 3-inch square sieve: 40 to 60% maximum
Passing ¾-inch square sieve: 0 to 10% maximum

[2] **Riprap** shall be reasonably well graded with gradation as follows:

Maximum stone size: 24 inches (nominal diameter)
Median stone size: 16 inches
Minimum stone size: 4 inches

Note: Riprap sizing governed by side slopes on outlet channel, assumed to be approximately 3:1 (H:V).

Option A -- Anchored Plate (Figure 4.5.3)

- An anchored plate flow spreader must be preceded by a sump having a minimum depth of 8 inches and minimum width of 24 inches. If not otherwise stabilized, the sump area must be lined to reduce erosion and to provide energy dissipation.
- The top surface of the flow spreader plate must be level, projecting a minimum of 2 inches above the ground surface of the water quality facility, or V-notched with notches 6 to 10 inches on center and 1 to 6 inches deep (use shallower notches with closer spacing). Alternative designs may also be used.
- A flow spreader plate must extend horizontally beyond the bottom width of the facility to prevent water from eroding the side slope. The horizontal extent should be such that the bank is protected for all flows up to the 100-year flow or the maximum flow that will enter the Water Quality (WQ) facility.
- Flow spreader plates must be securely fixed in place.
- Flow spreader plates may be made of either wood, metal, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or other durable material. If wood, pressure treated 4 by 10-inch lumber or landscape timbers are acceptable.

- Anchor posts must be 4-inch square concrete, tubular stainless steel, or other material resistant to decay.

Option B -- Concrete Sump Box (Figure 4.5.4)

- The wall of the downstream side of a rectangular concrete sump box must extend a minimum of 2 inches above the treatment bed. This serves as a weir to spread the flows uniformly across the bed.
- The downstream wall of a sump box must have “wing walls” at both ends. Side walls and returns must be slightly higher than the weir so that erosion of the side slope is minimized.
- Concrete for a sump box can be either cast-in-place or precast, but the bottom of the sump must be reinforced with wire mesh for cast-in-place sumps.
- Sump boxes must be placed over bases that consists of 4 inches of crushed rock, 5/8-inch minus to help assure the sump remains level.

Option C -- Notched Curb Spreader (Figure 4.5.5)

Notched curb spreader sections must be made of extruded concrete laid side-by-side and level. Typically five “teeth” per four-foot section provide good spacing. The space between adjacent “teeth” forms a v-notch.

Option D -- Through-Curb Ports (Figure 4.5.6)

Unconcentrated flows from paved areas entering filter strips or continuous inflow biofiltration swales can use curb ports or interrupted curbs (Option E) to allow flows to enter the strip or swale. Curb ports use fabricated openings that allow concrete curbing to be poured or extruded while still providing an opening through the curb to admit water to the WQ facility.

Openings in the curb must be at regular intervals but at least every 6 feet (minimum). The width of each curb port opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. Approximately 15 percent or more of the curb section length should be in open ports, and no port should discharge more than about 10 percent of the flow.

Option E -- Interrupted Curb (No Figure)

Interrupted curbs are sections of curb placed to have gaps spaced at regular intervals along the total width (or length, depending on facility) of the treatment area. At a minimum, gaps must be every 6 feet to allow distribution of flows into the treatment facility before they become too concentrated. The opening must be a minimum of 11 inches. As a general rule, no opening should discharge more than 10 percent of the overall flow entering the facility.

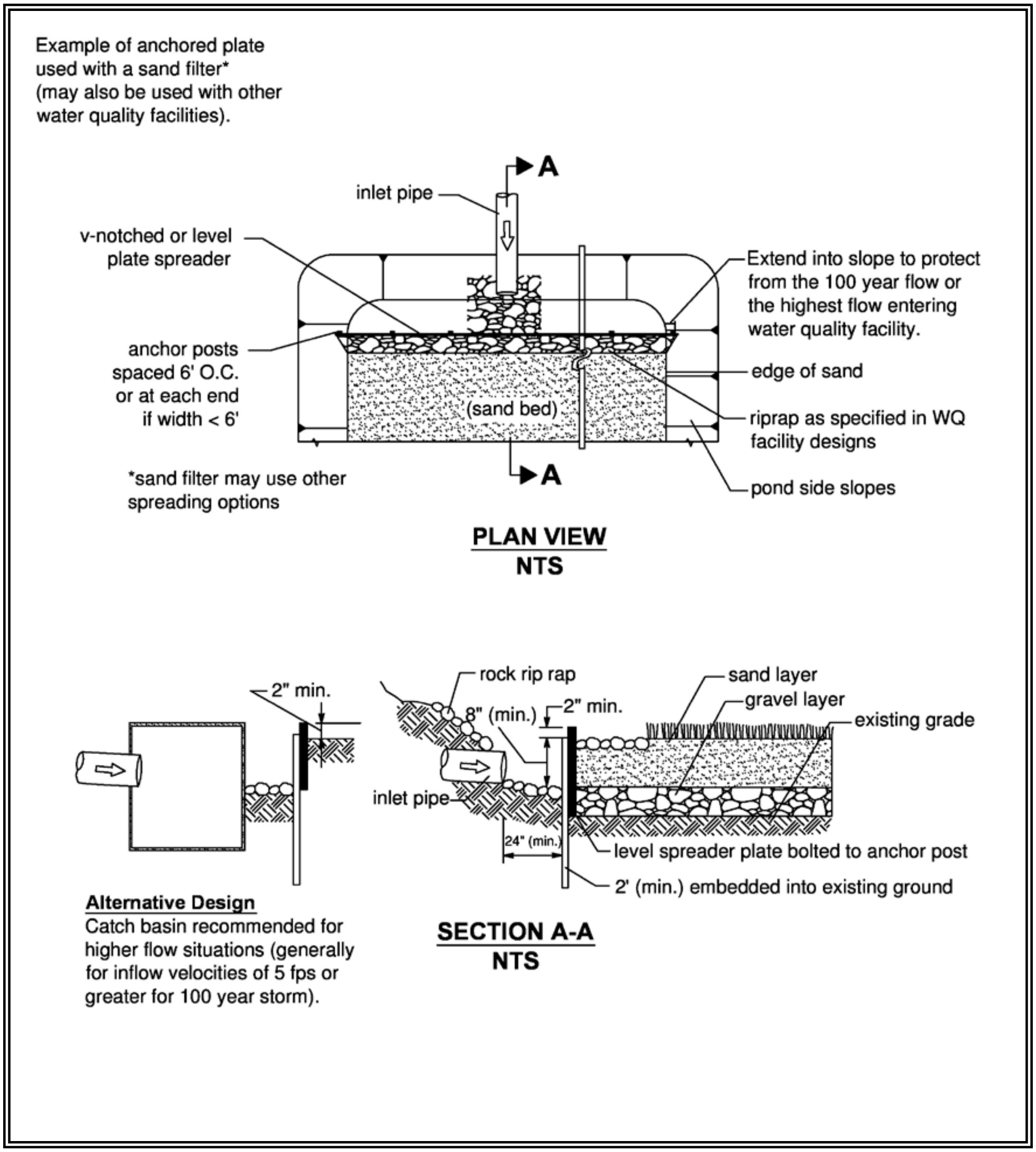


Figure 4.5.3 – Flow Spreader Option A: Anchored Plate

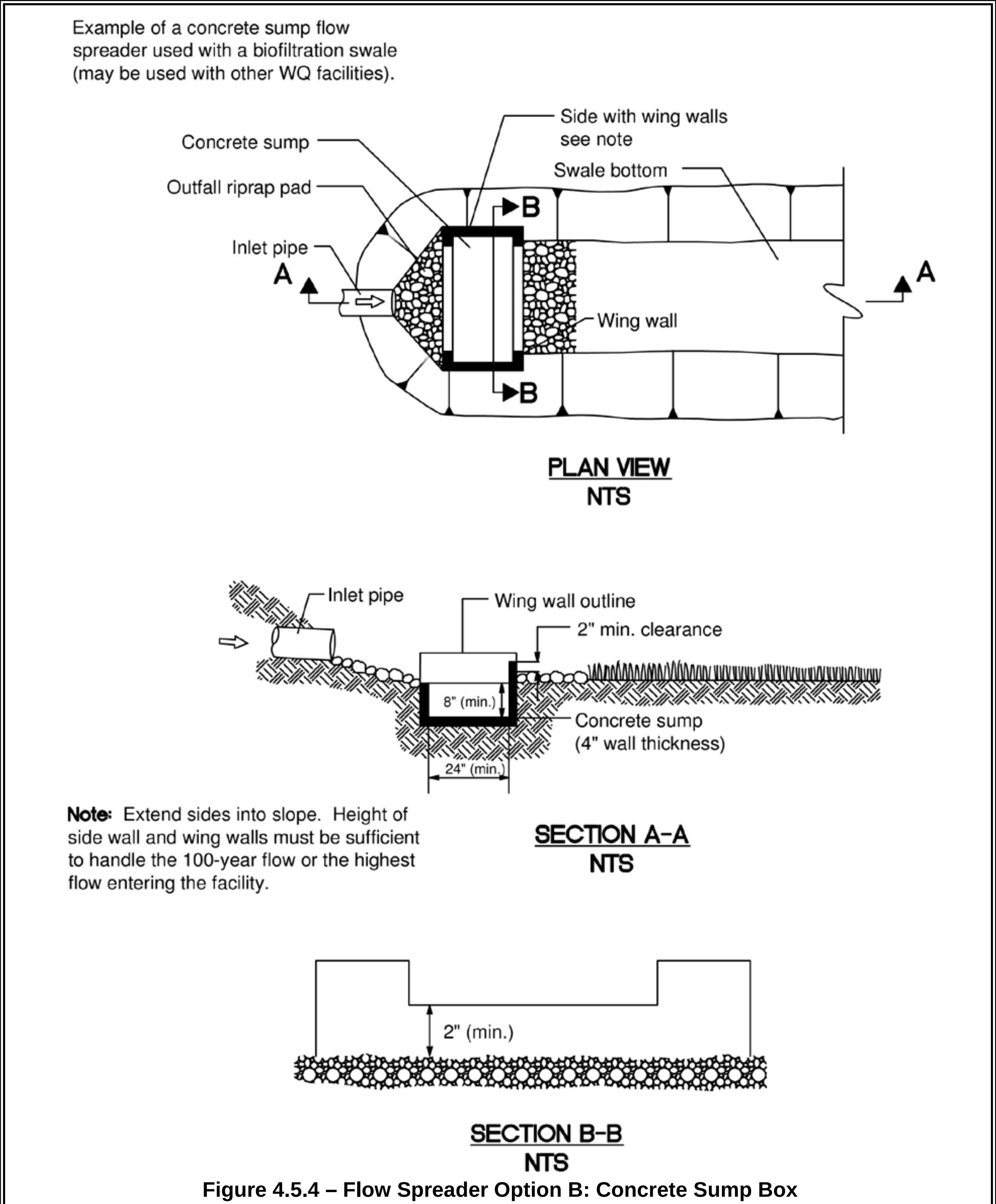


Figure 4.5.4 – Flow Spreader Option B: Concrete Sump Box

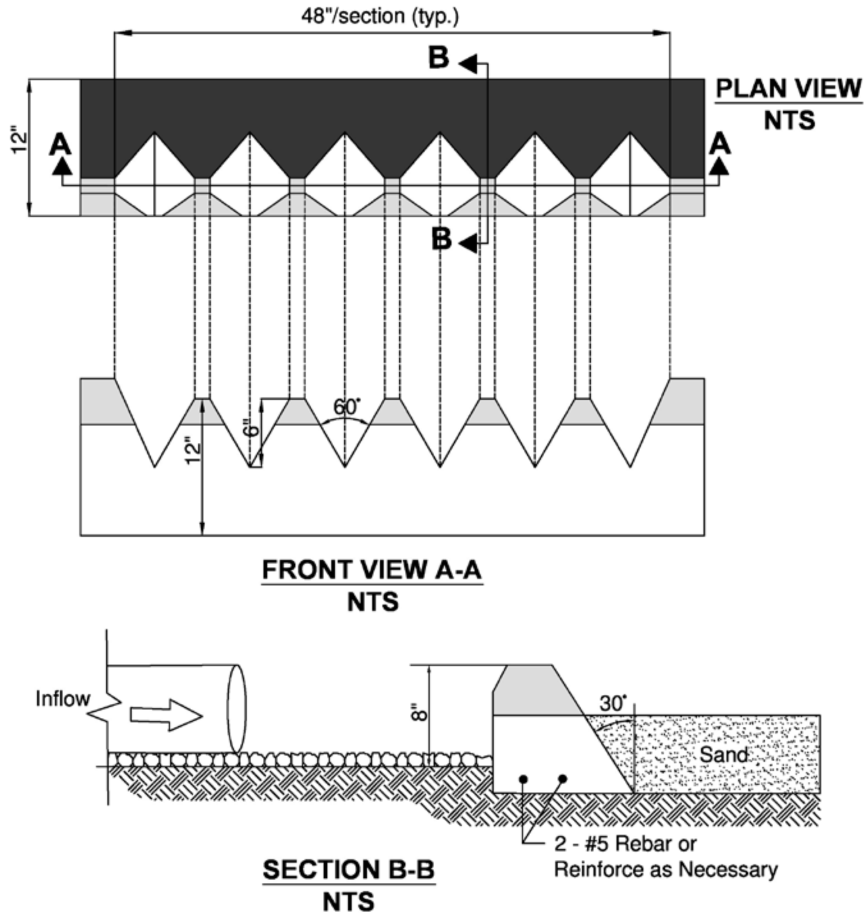


Figure 4.5.5 – Flow Spreader Option C: Notched Curb Spreader

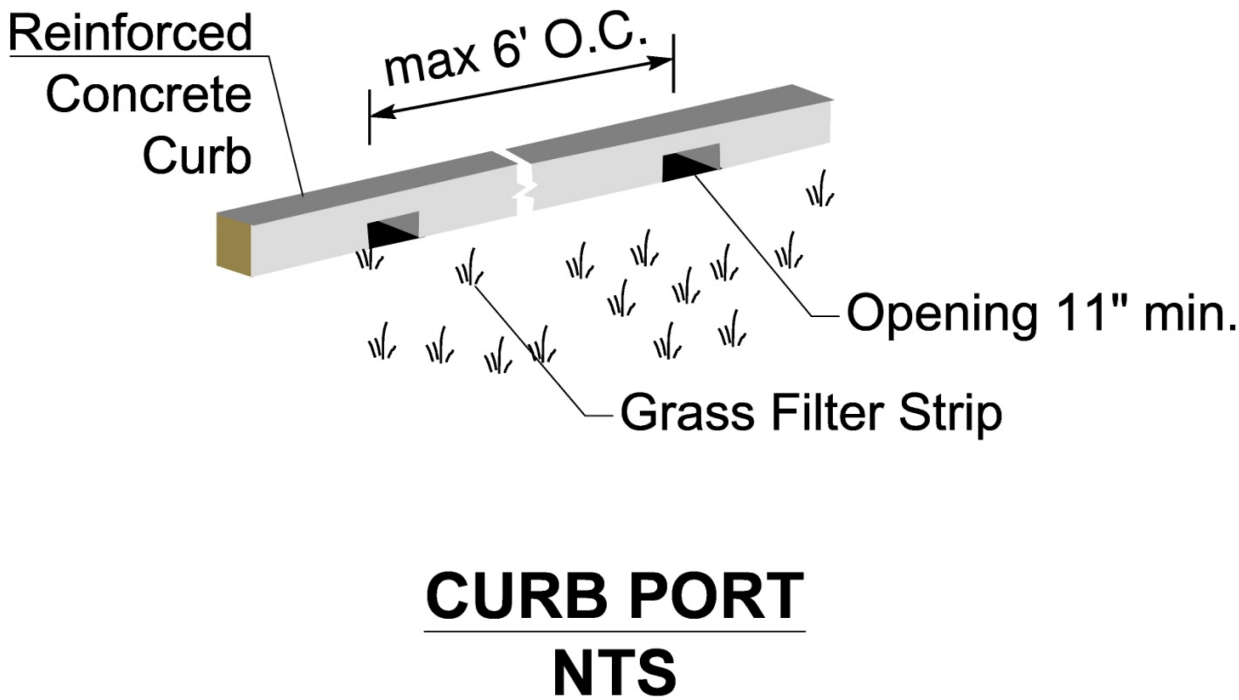


Figure 4.5.6 – Flow Spreader Option D: Through-Curb Port

4.5.3 Outfall Systems

Properly designed outfalls are critical to reducing the chance of adverse impacts as the result of concentrated discharges from pipe systems and culverts, both on-site and downstream. Outfall systems include rock splash pads, flow dispersal trenches, gabion or other energy dissipaters, and tightline systems. A tightline system is typically a continuous length of pipe used to convey flows down a steep or sensitive slope with appropriate energy dissipation at the discharge end.

General Design Criteria

Provided below are general design criteria for both Outfall Features and Tightline Systems.

Outfall Features

At a minimum, all outfalls must be provided with a rock splash pad (see Figure 4.5.7) except as specified below and in Table 4.5.2:

- The flow dispersal trenches shown in Figures 4.5.8 and 4.5.9 should only be used when both criteria below are met:
    1. An outfall is necessary to disperse concentrated flows across uplands where no conveyance system exists and the natural (existing) discharge is unconcentrated; and
    2. The 100-year peak discharge rate is less than or equal to 0.5 cfs.
- For freshwater outfalls with a design velocity greater than 10 fps, a gabion dissipater or engineered energy dissipater may be required. There are many possible designs.

  Note The gabion outfall detail shown in Figure 4.5.10 is illustrative only. A design engineered to specific site conditions must be developed.
- Tightline systems may be needed to prevent aggravation or creation of a downstream erosion problem.
- In marine waters, rock splash pads and gabion structures are not recommended due to corrosion and destruction of the structure, particularly in high energy environments. Diffuser Tee structures, such as that depicted in Figure 4.5.11, are also not generally recommended in or above the intertidal zone. They may be acceptable in low bank or rock shoreline locations. Stilling basins or bubble-up structures are acceptable. Generally, tightlines trenched to extreme low water or dissipation of the discharge energy above the ordinary high water line are preferred. Outfalls below extreme low water may still need an energy dissipation device (e.g., a tee structure) to prevent nearby erosion.

- Engineered energy dissipaters, including stilling basins, drop pools, hydraulic jump basins, baffled aprons, and bucket aprons, are required for outfalls with design velocity greater than 20 fps. These should be designed using published or commonly known techniques found in such references as *Hydraulic Design of Energy Dissipaters for Culverts and Channels*, published by the Federal Highway Administration of the United States Department of Transportation; *Open Channel Flow*, by V.T. Chow; *Hydraulic Design of Stilling Basins and Energy Dissipaters*, EM 25, Bureau of Reclamation (1978); and other publications, such as those prepared by the Soil Conservation Service (now Natural Resource Conservation Service).
- Alternate mechanisms may be used, such as bubble-up structures that eventually drain and structures fitted with reinforced concrete posts. If any alternate mechanisms are to be considered, they should be designed using sound hydraulic principles and consideration of ease of construction and maintenance.
- Mechanisms that reduce velocity prior to discharge from an outfall are encouraged. Some of these are drop manholes and rapid expansion into pipes of much larger size. Other discharge end features may be used to dissipate the discharge energy. An example of an end feature is the use of a Diffuser Tee with holes in the front half, as shown in 4.5.11.

  Note: stormwater outfalls submerged in a marine environment can be subject to plugging due to biological growth and shifting debris and sediments. Therefore, unless intensive maintenance is regularly performed, they may not meet their designed function.
- New pipe outfalls can provide an opportunity for low-cost fish habitat improvements. For example, an alcove of low-velocity water can be created by constructing the pipe outfall and associated energy dissipater back from the stream edge and digging a channel, over widened to the upstream side, from the outfall to the stream (as shown in Figure 4.5.12). Overwintering juvenile and migrating adult salmonids may use the alcove as shelter during high flows. Potential habitat improvements should be discussed with the Washington Department of Fish and Wildlife biologist prior to inclusion in design.
- Bank stabilization, bioengineering and habitat features may be required for disturbed areas.
- Outfall structures should be located where they minimize impacts to fish, shellfish, and their habitats.
- One caution to note is that the in-stream sample gabion mattress energy dissipater may not be acceptable within the ordinary high water mark of fish-bearing waters or where gabions will be subject to abrasion from upstream channel sediments. A four-sided gabion basket

located outside the ordinary high water mark should be considered for these applications.

Note: A Hydraulic Project Approval (Chapter 77.55 RCW) and an Army Corps of Engineers permit may be required for any work within the ordinary high water mark. Other provisions of the RCW or the Hydraulics Code - Chapter 220-110 WAC may also apply. Contact the appropriate regional office of the State Department of Fish and Wildlife.

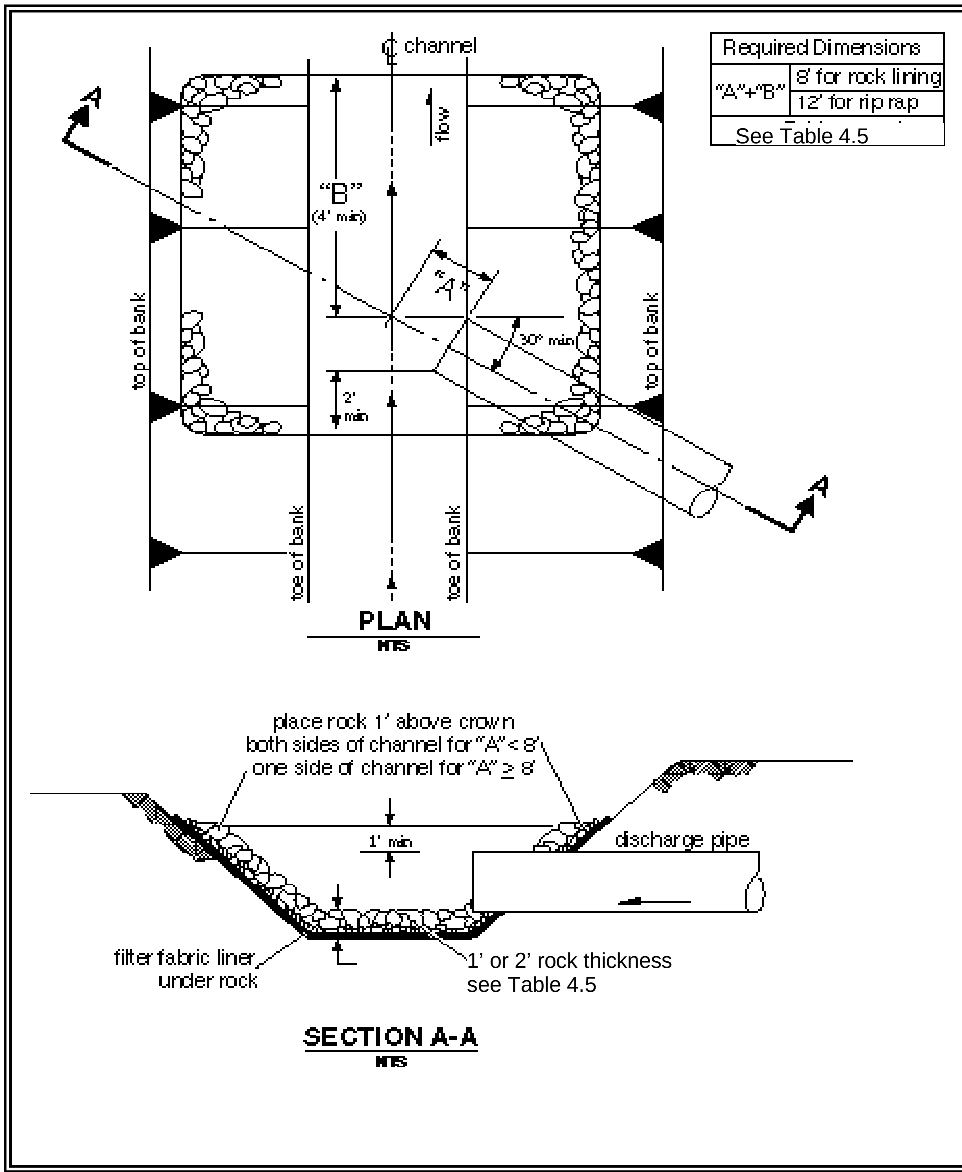


Figure 4.5.7 – Pipe/Culvert Outfall Discharge Protection

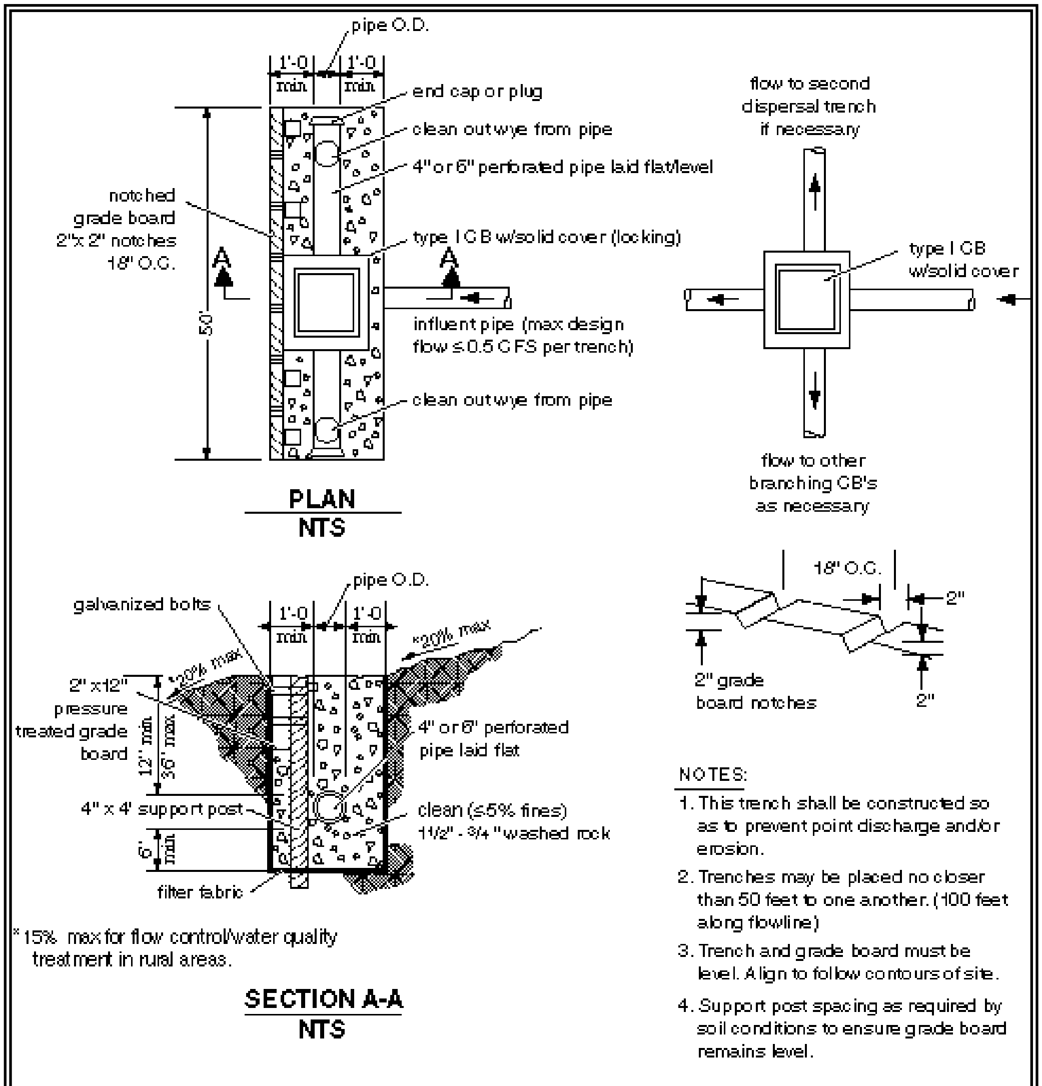


Figure 4.5.8 – Flow Dispersal Trench

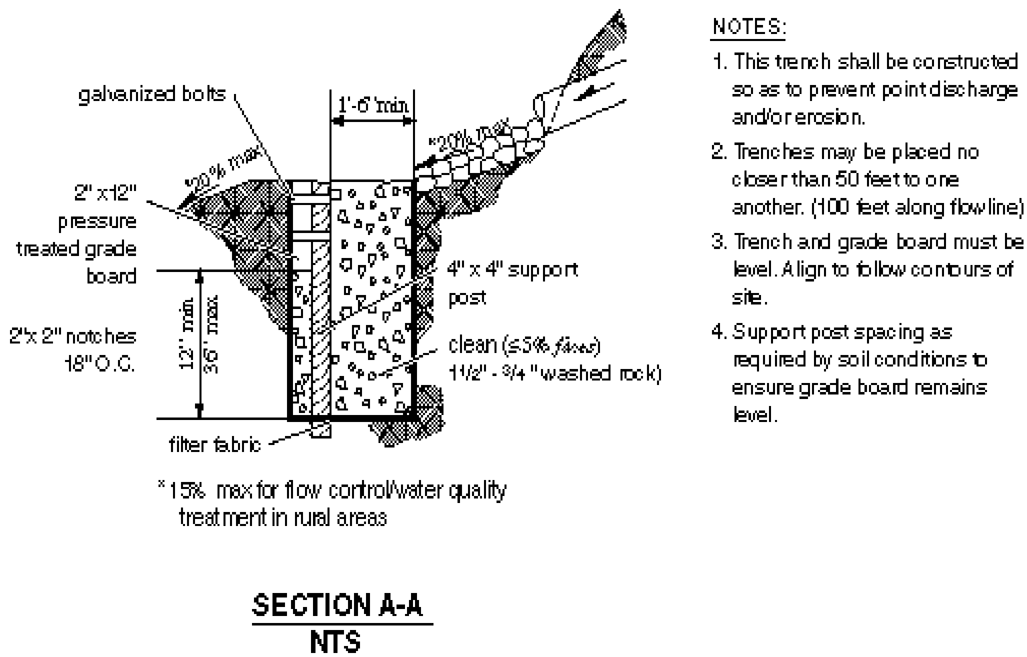


Figure 4.5.9 – Alternative Flow Dispersal Trench

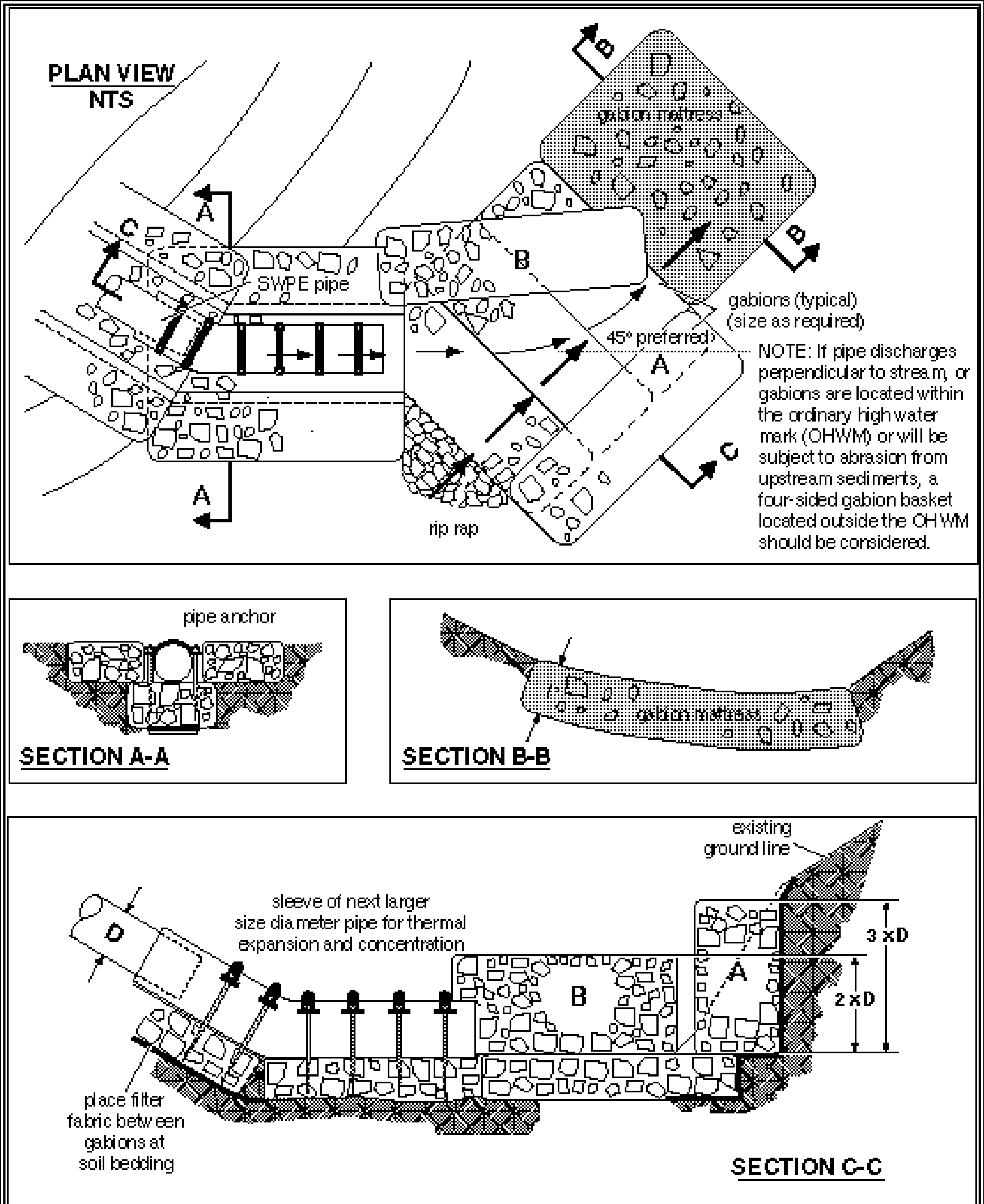


Figure 4.5.10 – Gabion Outfall Detail

Tightline Systems

- Outfall tightlines may be installed in trenches with standard bedding on slopes up to 20%. In order to minimize disturbance to slopes greater than 20%, it is recommended that tightlines be placed at grade with proper pipe anchorage and support.
- Except as indicated above, tightlines or conveyances that traverse the marine intertidal zone and connect to outfalls must be buried to a depth sufficient to avoid exposure of the line during storm events or future changes in beach elevation. If non-native material is used to bed the tightline, such material shall be covered with at least 3 feet of native bed material or equivalent.
- High density polyethylene pipe (HDPP) tightlines must be designed to address the material limitations, particularly thermal expansion and contraction and pressure design, as specified by the manufacturer. The coefficient of thermal expansion and contraction for solid wall polyethylene pipe (SWPE) is on the order of 0.001 inch per foot per Fahrenheit degree. Sliding sleeve connections must be used to address this thermal expansion and contraction. These sleeve connections consist of a section of the appropriate length of the next larger size diameter of pipe into which the outfall pipe is fitted. These sleeve connections must be located as close to the discharge end of the outfall system as is practical.
- Due to the ability of HDPP tightlines to transmit flows of very high energy, special consideration for energy dissipation must be made. Details of a sample gabion mattress energy dissipater have been provided as Figure 4.5.10. Flows of very high energy will require a specifically engineered energy dissipater structure.

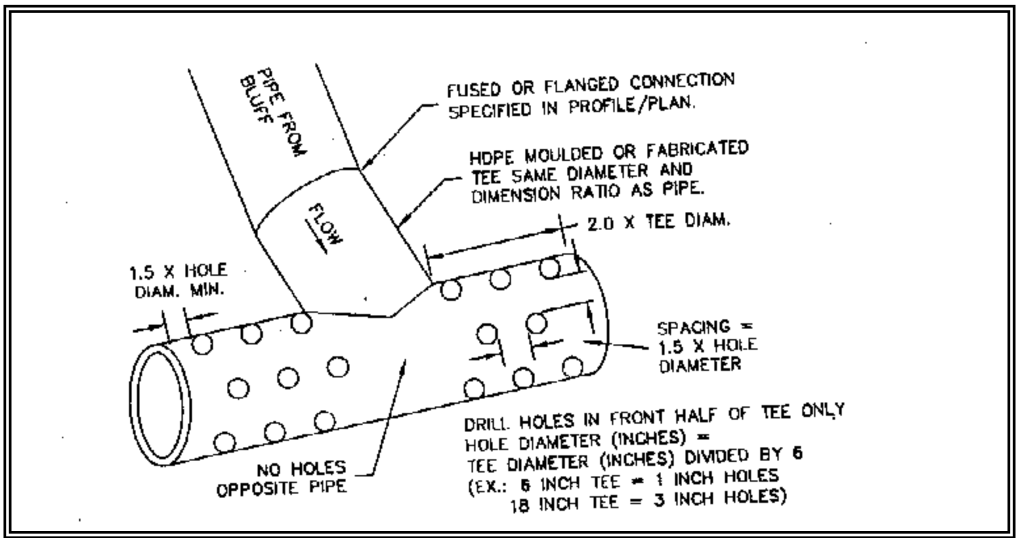


Figure 4.5.11 – Diffuser TEE (an example of energy dissipating end feature)

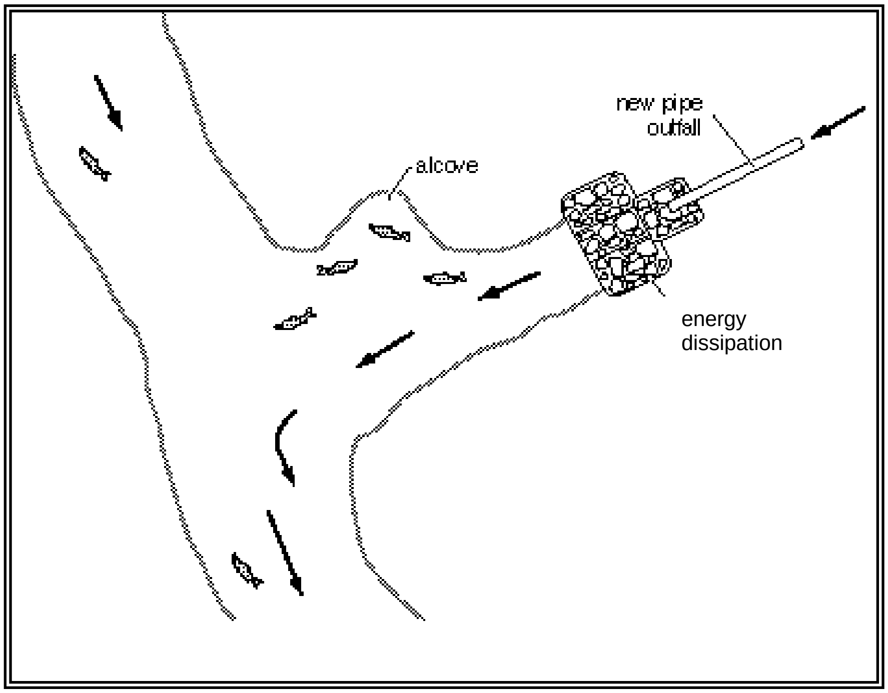


Figure 4.5.12 – Fish Habitat Improvement at New Outfalls

4.6 Maintenance Standards for Drainage Facilities

The facility-specific maintenance standards contained in this section are intended to be conditions for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through inspection. They are not intended to be measures of the facility's required condition at all times between inspections. In other words, exceedence of these conditions at any time between inspections and/or maintenance does not automatically constitute a violation of these standards. However, based upon inspection observations, the inspection and maintenance schedules shall be adjusted to minimize the length of time that a facility is in a condition that requires a maintenance action.

Table 4.5.2 Maintenance Standards

No. 1 – Detention Ponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
General	Trash & Debris	Any trash and debris which exceed 1 cubic feet per 1,000 square feet. In general, there should be no visual evidence of dumping. If less than threshold all trash and debris will be removed as part of next scheduled maintenance.	Trash and debris cleared from site.
	Poisonous Vegetation and noxious weeds	Any poisonous or nuisance vegetation which may constitute a hazard to maintenance personnel or the public. Any evidence of noxious weeds as defined by State or local regulations. (Apply requirements of adopted IPM policies for the use of herbicides).	No danger of poisonous vegetation where maintenance personnel or the public might normally be. (Coordinate with local health department) Complete eradication of noxious weeds may not be possible. Compliance with State or local eradication policies required
	Contaminants and Pollution	Any evidence of oil, gasoline, contaminants or other pollutants (Coordinate removal/cleanup with local water quality response agency).	~~No contaminants or pollutants present.~~
	Rodent Holes	Any evidence of rodent holes if facility is acting as a dam or berm, or any evidence of water piping through dam or berm via rodent holes.	Rodents destroyed and dam or berm repaired. (Coordinate with local health department; coordinate with Ecology Dam Safety Office if pond exceeds 10 acre-feet.)

No. 1 – Detention Ponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
	Beaver Dams	Dam results in change or function of the facility.	Facility is returned to design function. (Coordinate trapping of beavers and removal of dams with appropriate permitting agencies)
	Insects	When insects such as wasps and hornets interfere with maintenance activities.	Insects destroyed or removed from site. Apply insecticides in compliance with adopted IPM policies
	Tree Growth and Hazard Trees	Tree growth does not allow maintenance access or interferes with maintenance activity (i.e., slope mowing, silt removal, vactoring, or equipment movements). If trees are not interfering with access or maintenance, do not remove If dead, diseased, or dying trees are identified (Use a certified Arborist to determine health of tree or removal requirements)	Trees do not hinder maintenance activities. Harvested trees should be recycled into mulch or other beneficial uses (e.g., alders for firewood). Remove hazard Trees
Side Slopes of Pond	Erosion	Eroded damage over 2 inches deep where cause of damage is still present or where there is potential for continued erosion. Any erosion observed on a compacted berm embankment.	Slopes should be stabilized using appropriate erosion control measure(s); e.g., rock reinforcement, planting of grass, compaction. If erosion is occurring on compacted berms a licensed civil engineer should be consulted to resolve source of erosion.
Storage Area	Sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 10% of the designed pond depth unless otherwise specified or affects inletting or outletting condition of the facility.	Sediment cleaned out to designed pond shape and depth; pond reseeded if necessary to control erosion.
	Liner (If Applicable)	Liner is visible and has more than three 1/4-inch holes in it.	Liner repaired or replaced. Liner is fully covered.
Pond Berms (Dikes)	Settlements	Any part of berm which has settled 4 inches lower than the design elevation. If settlement is apparent, measure berm to determine amount of settlement. Settling can be an indication of more severe problems with the berm or outlet works. A licensed civil engineer should be consulted to determine the source of the settlement.	Dike is built back to the design elevation.
	Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Goethechnical engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential resolved.

No. 1 – Detention Ponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
Emergency Overflow/ Spillway and Berms over 4 feet in height.	Tree Growth	Tree growth on emergency spillways creates blockage problems and may cause failure of the berm due to uncontrolled overtopping. Tree growth on berms over 4 feet in height may lead to piping through the berm which could lead to failure of the berm.	Trees should be removed. If root system is small (base less than 4 inches) the root system may be left in place. Otherwise the roots should be removed and the berm restored. A licensed civil engineer should be consulted for proper berm/spillway restoration.
	Piping	Discernable water flow through pond berm. Ongoing erosion with potential for erosion to continue. (Recommend a Goethechnical engineer be called in to inspect and evaluate condition and recommend repair of condition.	Piping eliminated. Erosion potential resolved.
Emergency Overflow/ Spillway	Emergency Overflow/ Spillway	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area five square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil at the top of out flow path of spillway. (Rip-rap on inside slopes need not be replaced.)	Rocks and pad depth are restored to design standards.
	Erosion	See "Side Slopes of Pond"	

No. 2 – Infiltration

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance Is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance Is Performed
General	Trash & Debris	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Poisonous/Noxious Vegetation	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Contaminants and Pollution	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Rodent Holes	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1)
Storage Area	Sediment	Water ponding in infiltration pond after rainfall ceases and appropriate time allowed for infiltration. Treatment basins should infiltrate Water Quality Design Storm Volume within 48 hours, and empty within 24 hours after cessation of most rain events. (A percolation test pit or test of facility indicates facility is only working at 90% of its designed capabilities. Test every 2 to 5 years. If two inches or more sediment is present, remove).	Sediment is removed and/or facility is cleaned so that infiltration system works according to design.
Filter Bags (if applicable)	Filled with Sediment and Debris	Sediment and debris fill bag more than 1/2 full.	Filter bag is replaced or system is redesigned.
Rock Filters	Sediment and Debris	By visual inspection, little or no water flows through filter during heavy rain storms.	Gravel in rock filter is replaced.
Side Slopes of Pond	Erosion	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
Emergency Overflow Spillway and Berms over 4 feet in height.	Tree Growth	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Piping	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
Emergency Overflow Spillway	Rock Missing	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
	Erosion	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).
Pre-settling Ponds and Vaults	Facility or sump filled with Sediment and/or debris	6" or designed sediment trap depth of sediment.	Sediment is removed.

No. 3 – Closed Detention Systems (Tanks/Vaults)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Storage Area	Plugged Air Vents	One-half of the cross section of a vent is blocked at any point or the vent is damaged.	Vents open and functioning.
	Debris and Sediment	Accumulated sediment depth exceeds 10% of the diameter of the storage area for 1/2 length of storage vault or any point depth exceeds 15% of diameter. (Example: 72-inch storage tank would require cleaning when sediment reaches depth of 7 inches for more than 1/2 length of tank.)	All sediment and debris removed from storage area.
	Joints Between Tank/Pipe Section	Any openings or voids allowing material to be transported into facility. (Will require engineering analysis to determine structural stability).	All joint between tank/pipe sections are sealed.
	Tank Pipe Bent Out of Shape	Any part of tank/pipe is bent out of shape more than 10% of its design shape. (Review required by engineer to determine structural stability).	Tank/pipe repaired or replaced to design.
	Vault Structure Includes Cracks in Wall, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch and any evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determines that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repaired to design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering the vault through the walls.	No cracks more than 1/4-inch wide at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
Manhole	Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open manhole requires maintenance.	Manhole is closed.
	Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than 1/2 inch of thread (may not apply to self-locking lids).	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
	Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. Intent is to keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.	Cover can be removed and reinstalled by one maintenance person.
	Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, misalignment, not securely attached to structure wall, rust, or cracks.	Ladder meets design standards. Allows maintenance person safe access.
Catch Basins	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5)	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).

No. 4 – Control Structure/Flow Restrictor

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and Debris (Includes Sediment)	Material exceeds 25% of sump depth or 1 foot below orifice plate.	Control structure orifice is not blocked. All trash and debris removed.
	Structural Damage	Structure is not securely attached to manhole wall.	Structure securely attached to wall and outlet pipe.
		Structure is not in upright position (allow up to 10% from plumb).	Structure in correct position.
		Connections to outlet pipe are not watertight and show signs of rust.	Connections to outlet pipe are water tight; structure repaired or replaced and works as designed.
		Any holes--other than designed holes--in the structure.	Structure has no holes other than designed holes.
Cleanout Gate	Damaged or Missing	Cleanout gate is not watertight or is missing.	Gate is watertight and works as designed.
		Gate cannot be moved up and down by one maintenance person.	Gate moves up and down easily and is watertight.
		Chain/rod leading to gate is missing or damaged.	Chain is in place and works as designed.
		Gate is rusted over 50% of its surface area.	Gate is repaired or replaced to meet design standards.
Orifice Plate	Damaged or Missing	Control device is not working properly due to missing, out of place, or bent orifice plate.	Plate is in place and works as designed.
	Obstructions	Any trash, debris, sediment, or vegetation blocking the plate.	Plate is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Overflow Pipe	Obstructions	Any trash or debris blocking (or having the potential of blocking) the overflow pipe.	Pipe is free of all obstructions and works as designed.
Manhole	See “Closed Detention Systems” (No. 3).	See “Closed Detention Systems” (No. 3).	See “Closed Detention Systems” (No. 3).
Catch Basin	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).

No. 5 – Catch Basins

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is performed
General	Trash & Debris	Trash or debris which is located immediately in front of the catch basin opening or is blocking inletting capacity of the basin by more than 10%.	No Trash or debris located immediately in front of catch basin or on grate opening.
		Trash or debris (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of six inches clearance from the debris surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No trash or debris in the catch basin.
		Trash or debris in any inlet or outlet pipe blocking more than 1/3 of its height.	Inlet and outlet pipes free of trash or debris.
		Dead animals or vegetation that could generate odors that could cause complaints or dangerous gases (e.g., methane).	No dead animals or vegetation present within the catch basin.
	Sediment	Sediment (in the basin) that exceeds 60 percent of the sump depth as measured from the bottom of basin to invert of the lowest pipe into or out of the basin, but in no case less than a minimum of 6 inches clearance from the sediment surface to the invert of the lowest pipe.	No sediment in the catch basin
	Structure Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Top slab has holes larger than 2 square inches or cracks wider than 1/4 inch (Intent is to make sure no material is running into basin).	Top slab is free of holes and cracks.
		Frame not sitting flush on top slab, i.e., separation of more than 3/4 inch of the frame from the top slab. Frame not securely attached	Frame is sitting flush on the riser rings or top slab and firmly attached.
	Fractures or Cracks in Basin Walls/ Bottom	Maintenance person judges that structure is unsound.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
		Grout fillet has separated or cracked wider than 1/2 inch and longer than 1 foot at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or any evidence of soil particles entering catch basin through cracks.	Pipe is regrouted and secure at basin wall.
	Settlement/ Misalignment	If failure of basin has created a safety, function, or design problem.	Basin replaced or repaired to design standards.
	Vegetation	Vegetation growing across and blocking more than 10% of the basin opening.	No vegetation blocking opening to basin.
		Vegetation growing in inlet/outlet pipe joints that is more than six inches tall and less than six inches apart.	No vegetation or root growth present.
	Contamination and Pollution	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	No pollution present.

No. 5 – Catch Basins

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is performed
Catch Basin Cover	Cover Not in Place	Cover is missing or only partially in place. Any open catch basin requires maintenance.	Catch basin cover is closed
	Locking Mechanism Not Working	Mechanism cannot be opened by one maintenance person with proper tools. Bolts into frame have less than 1/2 inch of thread.	Mechanism opens with proper tools.
	Cover Difficult to Remove	One maintenance person cannot remove lid after applying normal lifting pressure. (Intent is keep cover from sealing off access to maintenance.)	Cover can be removed by one maintenance person.
Ladder	Ladder Rungs Unsafe	Ladder is unsafe due to missing rungs, not securely attached to basin wall, misalignment, rust, cracks, or sharp edges.	Ladder meets design standards and allows maintenance person safe access.
Metal Grates (If Applicable)	Grate opening Unsafe	Grate with opening wider than 7/8 inch.	Grate opening meets design standards.
	Trash and Debris	Trash and debris that is blocking more than 20% of grate surface inletting capacity.	Grate free of trash and debris.
	Damaged or Missing.	Grate missing or broken member(s) of the grate.	Grate is in place and meets design standards.

No. 6 – Debris Barriers (e.g., Trash Racks)

Maintenance Components	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash and Debris	Trash or debris that is plugging more than 20% of the openings in the barrier.	Barrier cleared to design flow capacity.
Metal	Damaged/ Missing Bars.	Bars are bent out of shape more than 3 inches.	Bars in place with no bends more than 3/4 inch.
		Bars are missing or entire barrier missing.	Bars in place according to design.
		Bars are loose and rust is causing 50% deterioration to any part of barrier.	Barrier replaced or repaired to design standards.
	Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Debris barrier missing or not attached to pipe	Barrier firmly attached to pipe

No. 7 – Energy Dissipaters

Maintenance Components	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
External:			
Rock Pad	Missing or Moved Rock	Only one layer of rock exists above native soil in area five square feet or larger, or any exposure of native soil.	Rock pad replaced to design standards.
	Erosion	Soil erosion in or adjacent to rock pad.	Rock pad replaced to design standards.
Dispersion Trench	Pipe Plugged with Sediment	Accumulated sediment that exceeds 20% of the design depth.	Pipe cleaned/flushed so that it matches design.
	Not Discharging Water Properly	Visual evidence of water discharging at concentrated points along trench (normal condition is a “sheet flow” of water along trench). Intent is to prevent erosion damage.	Trench redesigned or rebuilt to standards.
	Perforations Plugged.	Over 1/2 of perforations in pipe are plugged with debris and sediment.	Perforated pipe cleaned or replaced.
	Water Flows Out Top of “Distributor” Catch Basin.	Maintenance person observes or receives credible report of water flowing out during any storm less than the design storm or its causing or appears likely to cause damage.	Facility rebuilt or redesigned to standards.
	Receiving Area Over-Saturated	Water in receiving area is causing or has potential of causing landslide problems.	No danger of landslides.
Internal:			
Manhole/Chamber	Worn or Damaged Post, Baffles, Side of Chamber	Structure dissipating flow deteriorates to 1/2 of original size or any concentrated worn spot exceeding one square foot which would make structure unsound.	Structure replaced to design standards.
	Other Defects	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).	See “Catch Basins” (No. 5).

No. 8 – Typical Biofiltration Swale

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment Accumulation on Grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits on grass treatment area of the bio-swale. When finished, swale should be level from side to side and drain freely toward outlet. There should be no areas of standing water once inflow has ceased.
	Standing Water	When water stands in the swale between storms and does not drain freely.	Any of the following may apply: remove sediment or trash blockages, improve grade from head to foot of swale, remove clogged check dams, add underdrains or convert to a wet biofiltration swale.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire swale width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire swale width.
	Constant Baseflow	When small quantities of water continually flow through the swale, even when it has been dry for weeks, and an eroded, muddy channel has formed in the swale bottom.	Add a low-flow pea-gravel drain the length of the swale or by-pass the baseflow around the swale.
	Poor Vegetation Coverage	When grass is sparse or bare or eroded patches occur in more than 10% of the swale bottom.	Determine why grass growth is poor and correct that condition. Re-plant with plugs of grass from the upper slope: plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals. Or re-seed into loosened, fertile soil.
	Vegetation	When the grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10-inches); when nuisance weeds and other vegetation starts to take over.	Mow vegetation or remove nuisance vegetation so that flow not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height of 3 to 4 inches. Remove grass clippings.
	Excessive Shading	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach swale.	If possible, trim back over-hanging limbs and remove brushy vegetation on adjacent slopes.
	Inlet/Outlet	Inlet/outlet areas clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove material so that there is no clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet area.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in the bio-swale.	Remove trash and debris from bioswale.
	Erosion/Scouring	Eroded or scoured swale bottom due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the swale should be re-graded and re-seeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident, or take plugs of grass from the upper slope and plant in the swale bottom at 8-inch intervals.

No. 9 – Wet Biofiltration Swale

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth exceeds 2-inches in 10% of the swale treatment area.	Remove sediment deposits in treatment area.
	Water Depth	Water not retained to a depth of about 4 inches during the wet season.	Build up or repair outlet berm so that water is retained in the wet swale.
	Wetland Vegetation	Vegetation becomes sparse and does not provide adequate filtration, OR vegetation is crowded out by very dense clumps of cattail, which do not allow water to flow through the clumps.	Determine cause of lack of vigor of vegetation and correct. Replant as needed. For excessive cattail growth, cut cattail shoots back and compost off-site. Note: normally wetland vegetation does not need to be harvested unless die-back is causing oxygen depletion in downstream waters.
	Inlet/Outlet	Inlet/outlet area clogged with sediment and/or debris.	Remove clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet areas.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	See "Detention Ponds" (No. 1).	Remove trash and debris from wet swale.
	Erosion/Scouring	Swale has eroded or scoured due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	Check design flows to assure swale is large enough to handle flows. By-pass excess flows or enlarge swale. Replant eroded areas with fibrous-rooted plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) in wet areas or snowberry (Symphoricarpos albus) in dryer areas.

No. 10 – Filter Strips

Maintenance Component	Defect or Problem	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Recommended Maintenance to Correct Problem
General	Sediment Accumulation on Grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits, re-level so slope is even and flows pass evenly through strip.
	Vegetation	When the grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10-inches); when nuisance weeds and other vegetation starts to take over.	Mow grass, control nuisance vegetation, such that flow not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height between 3-4 inches.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated on the filter strip.	Remove trash and Debris from filter.
	Erosion/Scouring	Eroded or scoured areas due to flow channelization, or higher flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with crushed gravel. The grass will creep in over the rock in time. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the filter strip should be re-graded and re-seeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed through entire filter width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire filter width.

No. 11 – Wetponds

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Water level	First cell is empty, doesn't hold water.	Line the first cell to maintain at least 4 feet of water. Although the second cell may drain, the first cell must remain full to control turbulence of the incoming flow and reduce sediment resuspension.
	Trash and Debris	Accumulation that exceeds 1 CF per 1000-SF of pond area.	Trash and debris removed from pond.
	Inlet/Outlet Pipe	Inlet/Outlet pipe clogged with sediment and/or debris material.	No clogging or blockage in the inlet and outlet piping.
	Sediment Accumulation in Pond Bottom	Sediment accumulations in pond bottom that exceeds the depth of sediment zone plus 6-inches, usually in the first cell.	Sediment removed from pond bottom.
	Oil Sheen on Water	Prevalent and visible oil sheen.	Oil removed from water using oil-absorbent pads or vactor truck. Source of oil located and corrected. If chronic low levels of oil persist, plant wetland plants such as Juncus effusus (soft rush) which can uptake small concentrations of oil.
	Erosion	Erosion of the pond's side slopes and/or scouring of the pond bottom, that exceeds 6-inches, or where continued erosion is prevalent.	Slopes stabilized using proper erosion control measures and repair methods.
	Settlement of Pond Dike/Berm	Any part of these components that has settled 4-inches or lower than the design elevation, or inspector determines dike/berm is unsound.	Dike/berm is repaired to specifications.
	Internal Berm	Berm dividing cells should be level.	Berm surface is leveled so that water flows evenly over entire length of berm.
	Overflow Spillway	Rock is missing and soil is exposed at top of spillway or outside slope.	Rocks replaced to specifications.

No. 12 – Wetvaults

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, pipe or inlet/outlet (includes floatables and non-floatables).	Remove trash and debris from vault.
	Sediment Accumulation in Vault	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6-inches.	Remove sediment from vault.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet/outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened or removed, especially by one person.	Pipe repaired or replaced to proper working specifications.
	Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged.	Blocking material removed or cleared from ventilation area. A specified % of the vault surface area must provide ventilation to the vault interior (see design specifications).
	Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection staff.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damage	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not attached to structure wall, missing rungs, has cracks and/or misaligned. Confined space warning sign missing.	Ladder replaced or repaired to specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel. Replace sign warning of confined space entry requirements. Ladder and entry notification complies with OSHA standards.

No. 13 – Sand Filters (above ground/open)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Above Ground (open sand filter)	Sediment Accumulation on top layer	Sediment depth exceeds 1/2-inch.	No sediment deposit on grass layer of sand filter that would impede permeability of the filter section.
	Trash and Debris Accumulations	Trash and debris accumulated on sand filter bed.	Trash and debris removed from sand filter bed.
	Sediment/ Debris in Clean-Outs	When the clean-outs become full or partially plugged with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment removed from clean-outs.
	Sand Filter Media	Drawdown of water through the sand filter media takes longer than 24-hours, and/or flow through the overflow pipes occurs frequently.	Top several inches of sand are scraped. May require replacement of entire sand filter depth depending on extent of plugging (a sieve analysis is helpful to determine if the lower sand has too high a proportion of fine material).
	Prolonged Flows	Sand is saturated for prolonged periods of time (several weeks) and does not dry out between storms due to continuous base flow or prolonged flows from detention facilities.	Low, continuous flows are limited to a small portion of the facility by using a low wooden divider or slightly depressed sand surface.
	Short Circuiting	When flows become concentrated over one section of the sand filter rather than dispersed.	Flow and percolation of water through sand filter is uniform and dispersed across the entire filter area.
	Erosion Damage to Slopes	Erosion over 2-inches deep where cause of damage is prevalent or potential for continued erosion is evident.	Slopes stabilized using proper erosion control measures.
	Rock Pad Missing or Out of Place	Soil beneath the rock is visible.	Rock pad replaced or rebuilt to design specifications.
	Flow Spreader	Flow spreader uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed across sand filter.	Spreader leveled and cleaned so that flows are spread evenly over sand filter.
	Damaged Pipes	Any part of the piping that is crushed or deformed more than 20% or any other failure to the piping.	Pipe repaired or replaced.

No. 14 –Sand Filters (below ground/enclosed)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Below Ground Vault.	Sediment Accumulation on Sand Media Section	Sediment depth exceeds 1/2-inch.	No sediment deposits on sand filter section that which would impede permeability of the filter section.
	Sediment Accumulation in Pre-Settling Portion of Vault	Sediment accumulation in vault bottom exceeds the depth of the sediment zone plus 6-inches.	No sediment deposits in first chamber of vault.
	Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault and inlet/outlet piping.
	Sediment in Drain Pipes/Cleanouts	When drain pipes, cleanouts become full with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment and debris removed.
	Short Circuiting	When seepage/flow occurs along the vault walls and corners. Sand eroding near inflow area.	Sand filter media section re-laid and compacted along perimeter of vault to form a semi-seal. Erosion protection added to dissipate force of incoming flow and curtail erosion.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened, corrosion/deformation of cover. Maintenance person cannot remove cover using normal lifting pressure.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
	Ventilation	Ventilation area blocked or plugged	Blocking material removed or cleared from ventilation area. A specified % of the vault surface area must provide ventilation to the vault interior (see design specifications).
	Vault Structure Damaged; Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab.	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles/Internal walls	Baffles or walls corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired to specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.

No. 15 – Manufactured Media Filters)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
Below Ground Vault	Sediment Accumulation on Media.	Sediment depth exceeds 0.25-inches.	No sediment deposits which would impede permeability of the compost media.
	Sediment Accumulation in Vault	Sediment depth exceeds 6-inches in first chamber.	No sediment deposits in vault bottom of first chamber.
	Trash/Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated on compost filter bed.	Trash and debris removed from the compost filter bed.
	Sediment in Drain Pipes/Clean-Outs	When drain pipes, clean-outs, become full with sediment and/or debris.	Sediment and debris removed.
	Damaged Pipes	Any part of the pipes that are crushed or damaged due to corrosion and/or settlement.	Pipe repaired and/or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened; one person cannot open the cover using normal lifting pressure, corrosion/deformation of cover.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
	Vault Structure Includes Cracks in Wall, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking warping, and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.
Below Ground Cartridge Type	Media	Drawdown of water through the media takes longer than 1 hour, and/or overflow occurs frequently.	Media cartridges replaced.
	Short Circuiting	Flows do not properly enter filter cartridges.	Filter cartridges replaced.

No. 16 – Baffle Oil/Water Separators (API Type)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Monitoring	Inspection of discharge water for obvious signs of poor water quality.	Effluent discharge from vault should be clear with out thick visible sheen.
	Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth in bottom of vault exceeds 6-inches in depth.	No sediment deposits on vault bottom that would impede flow through the vault and reduce separation efficiency.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulation in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault, and inlet/outlet piping.
	Oil Accumulation	Oil accumulations that exceed 1-inch, at the surface of the water.	Extract oil from vault by vactoring. Disposal in accordance with state and local rules and regulations.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired or replaced.
	Access Cover Damaged/Not Working	Cover cannot be opened, corrosion/deformation of cover.	Cover repaired to proper working specifications or replaced.
	Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	See "Catch Basins" (No. 5)	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.

No. 17 – Coalescing Plate Oil/Water Separators

Maintenance Component	Defect	Condition When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Monitoring	Inspection of discharge water for obvious signs of poor water quality.	Effluent discharge from vault should be clear with no thick visible sheen.
	Sediment Accumulation	Sediment depth in bottom of vault exceeds 6-inches in depth and/or visible signs of sediment on plates.	No sediment deposits on vault bottom and plate media, which would impede flow through the vault and reduce separation efficiency.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulated in vault, or pipe inlet/outlet, floatables and non-floatables.	Trash and debris removed from vault, and inlet/outlet piping.
	Oil Accumulation	Oil accumulation that exceeds 1-inch at the water surface.	Oil is extracted from vault using vactoring methods. Coalescing plates are cleaned by thoroughly rinsing and flushing. Should be no visible oil depth on water.
	Damaged Coalescing Plates	Plate media broken, deformed, cracked and/or showing signs of failure.	A portion of the media pack or the entire plate pack is replaced depending on severity of failure.
	Damaged Pipes	Inlet or outlet piping damaged or broken and in need of repair.	Pipe repaired and or replaced.
	Baffles	Baffles corroding, cracking, warping and/or showing signs of failure as determined by maintenance/inspection person.	Baffles repaired or replaced to specifications.
	Vault Structure Damage - Includes Cracks in Walls, Bottom, Damage to Frame and/or Top Slab	Cracks wider than 1/2-inch or evidence of soil particles entering the structure through the cracks, or maintenance/inspection personnel determine that the vault is not structurally sound.	Vault replaced or repairs made so that vault meets design specifications and is structurally sound.
		Cracks wider than 1/2-inch at the joint of any inlet/outlet pipe or evidence of soil particles entering through the cracks.	Vault repaired so that no cracks exist wider than 1/4-inch at the joint of the inlet/outlet pipe.
	Access Ladder Damaged	Ladder is corroded or deteriorated, not functioning properly, not securely attached to structure wall, missing rungs, cracks, and misaligned.	Ladder replaced or repaired and meets specifications, and is safe to use as determined by inspection personnel.

No. 18 – Catchbasin Inserts

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Sediment Accumulation	When sediment forms a cap over the insert media of the insert and/or unit.	No sediment cap on the insert media and its unit.
	Trash and Debris Accumulation	Trash and debris accumulates on insert unit creating a blockage/restriction.	Trash and debris removed from insert unit. Runoff freely flows into catch basin.
	Media Insert Not Removing Oil	Effluent water from media insert has a visible sheen.	Effluent water from media insert is free of oils and has no visible sheen.
	Media Insert Water Saturated	Catch basin insert is saturated with water and no longer has the capacity to absorb.	Remove and replace media insert
	Media Insert-Oil Saturated	Media oil saturated due to petroleum spill that drains into catch basin.	Remove and replace media insert.
	Media Insert Use Beyond Normal Product Life	Media has been used beyond the typical average life of media insert product.	Remove and replace media at regular intervals, depending on insert product.

No. 19 – MEDIA FILTER DRAIN (MFD)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Sediment accumulation on grass filter strip	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches or creates uneven grading that interferes with sheet flow.	Remove sediment deposits on grass treatment area of the embankment. When finished, embankment should be level from side to side and drain freely toward the toe of the embankment slope. There should be no areas of standing water once inflow has ceased.
	No-vegetation zone/flow spreader	Flow spreader is uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed over entire embankment width.	Level the spreader and clean to spread flows evenly over entire embankment width.
	Poor vegetation coverage	Grass is sparse or bare, or eroded patches are observed in more than 10% of the grass strip surface area.	Determine why grass growth is poor and correct the offending condition. Reseed into loosened, fertile soil or compost; or, replant with plugs of grass from the upper slope.
	Vegetation	Grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow vegetation or remove nuisance vegetation to not impede flow. Mow grass to a height of 6 inches.
	Media filter drain mix replacement	Water is seen on the surface of the media filter drain mix long after the storms have ceased. Typically, the 6-month, 24-hour precipitation event should drain within 48 hours. More common storms should drain within 24 hours. Maintenance also needed on a 10-year cycle and during a preservation project.	Excavate and replace all of the media filter drain mix contained within the media filter drain.
	Excessive shading	Grass growth is poor because sunlight does not reach embankment.	If possible, trim back overhanging limbs and remove brushy vegetation on adjacent slopes.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated on embankment.	Remove trash and debris from embankment.
	Flooding of Media filter drain	When media filter drain is inundated by flood water	Evaluate media filter drain material for acceptable infiltration rate and replace if media filter drain does not meet long-term infiltration rate standards.

No. 20 – COMPOST AMENDED VEGETATED FILTER STRIP (CAVFS)

Maintenance Component	Defect	Conditions When Maintenance is Needed	Results Expected When Maintenance is Performed
General	Sediment accumulation on grass	Sediment depth exceeds 2 inches.	Remove sediment deposits. Relevel so slope is even and flows pass evenly through strip.
	Vegetation	Grass becomes excessively tall (greater than 10 inches); nuisance weeds and other vegetation start to take over.	Mow grass and control nuisance vegetation so that flow is not impeded. Grass should be mowed to a height of 6 inches.
	Trash and debris	Trash and debris have accumulated on the vegetated filter strip.	Remove trash and debris from filter.
	Erosion/scouring	Areas have eroded or scoured due to flow channelization or high flows.	For ruts or bare areas less than 12 inches wide, repair the damaged area by filling with a 50/50 mixture of crushed gravel and compost. The grass will creep in over the rock in time. If bare areas are large, generally greater than 12 inches wide, the vegetated filter strip should be regraded and reseeded. For smaller bare areas, overseed when bare spots are evident.
	Flow spreader	Flow spreader is uneven or clogged so that flows are not uniformly distributed over entire filter width.	Level the spreader and clean so that flows are spread evenly over entire filter width

No. 21 - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Bioretention Facilities.

Note that the inspection and routine maintenance frequencies listed below are recommended by Ecology. They do not supersede or replace the municipal stormwater permit requirements for inspection frequency required of municipal stormwater permittees for "stormwater treatment and flow control BMPs/facilities."

Maintenance Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Facility Footprint				
Earthen side slopes and berms	B, S		Erosion (gullies/ rills) greater than 2 inches deep around inlets, outlet, and alongside slopes	• Eliminate cause of erosion and stabilize damaged area (regrade, rock, vegetation, erosion control matting) • For deep channels or cuts (over 3 inches in ponding depth), temporary erosion control measures should be put in place until permanent repairs can be made. • Properly designed, constructed and established facilities with appropriate flow velocities should not have erosion problems except perhaps in extreme events. If erosion problems persist, the following should be reassessed: (1) flow volumes from contributing areas and bioretention facility sizing; (2) flow velocities and gradients within the facility; and (3) flow dissipation and erosion protection strategies at the facility inlet.
	A		Erosion of sides causes slope to become a hazard	Take actions to eliminate the hazard and stabilize slopes
	A, S		Settlement greater than 3 inches (relative to undisturbed sections of berm)	Restore to design height
	A, S		Downstream face of berm wet, seeps or leaks evident	Plug any holes and compact berm (may require consultation with engineer, particularly for larger berms)
	A		Any evidence of rodent holes or water piping in berm	• Eradicate rodents (see "Pest control") • Fill holes and compact (may require consultation with engineer, particularly for larger berms)
Concrete sidewalls	A		Cracks or failure of concrete sidewalls	• Repair/ seal cracks • Replace if repair is insufficient
Rockery sidewalls	A		Rockery side walls are insecure	Stabilize rockery sidewalls (may require consultation with engineer, particularly for walls 4 feet or greater in height)
Facility area		All maintenance visits (at least biannually)	Trash and debris present	Clean out trash and debris
Facility bottom area	A, S		Accumulated sediment to extent that infiltration rate is reduced (see "Ponded water") or surface storage capacity significantly impacted	• Remove excess sediment • Replace any vegetation damaged or destroyed by sediment accumulation and removal • Mulch newly planted vegetation • Identify and control the sediment source (if feasible) • If accumulated sediment is recurrent, consider adding presettlement or installing berms to create a forebay at the inlet
		During/after fall leaf drop	Accumulated leaves in facility	Remove leaves if there is a risk to clogging outlet structure or water flow is impeded
Low permeability check dams and weirs	A, S		Sediment, vegetation, or debris accumulated at or blocking (or having the potential to block) check dam, flow control weir or orifice	Clear the blockage
	A, S		Erosion and/or undercutting present	Repair and take preventative measures to prevent future erosion and/or undercutting
	A		Grade board or top of weir damaged or not level	Restore to level position

[a] Frequency: A = Annually; B = Biannually (twice per year); M = Monthly; W = At least one visit should occur during the wet season (for debris/clog related maintenance, this inspection/maintenance visit should occur in the early fall, after deciduous trees have lost their leaves); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

IPM – Integrated Pest Management

ISA – International Society of Arboriculture

No. 21 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Bioretention Facilities.

Maintenance Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Facility Footprint (cont'd)				
Ponded water	B, S		Excessive ponding water: Water overflows during storms smaller than the design event or ponded water remains in the basin 48 hours or longer after the end of a storm.	Determine cause and resolve in the following order: 1) Confirm leaf or debris buildup in the bottom of the facility is not impeding infiltration. If necessary, remove leaf litter/debris. 2) Ensure that underdrain (if present) is not clogged. If necessary, clear underdrain. 3) Check for other water inputs (e.g., groundwater, illicit connections). 4) Verify that the facility is sized appropriately for the contributing area. Confirm that the contributing area has not increas ed. If steps #1-4 do not solve the problem, the bioretention soil is likely clogged by sediment accumulation at the surface or has become overly compacted. Dig a small hole to observe soil profile and identify compaction depth or clogging front to help determine the soil depth to be removed or otherwise rehabilitated (e.g., tilled). Consultation with an engineer is recommended.
Bioretention soil media	As needed		Bioretention soil media protection is needed when performing maintenance requiring entrance into the facility footprint	• Minimize all loading in the facility footprint (foot traffic and other loads) to the degree feasible in order to prevent compaction of bioretention soils. • Never drive equipment or apply heavy loads in facility footprint. • Because the risk of compaction is higher during saturated soil conditions, any type of loading in the cell (including foot traffic) should be minimized during wet conditions. • Consider measures to distribute loading if heavy foot traffic is required or equipment must be placed in facility. As an example, boards may be placed across soil to distribute loads and minimize compaction. • If compaction occurs, soil must be loosened or otherwise rehabilitated to original design state.
Inlets/Outlets/Pipes				
Splash block inlet	A		Water is not being directed properly to the facility and away from the inlet structure	Reconfigure/ repair blocks to direct water to facility and away from structure
Curb cut inlet/outlet	M during the wet season and before severe storm is forecasted	Weekly during fall leaf drop	Accumulated leaves at curb cuts	Clear leaves (particularly important for key inlets and low points along long, linear facilities)
Pipe inlet/outlet	A		Pipe is damaged	Repair/ replace
	W		Pipe is clogged	Remove roots or debris
	A, S		Sediment, debris, trash, or mulch reducing capacity of inlet/outlet	• Clear the blockage • Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages
		Weekly during fall leaf drop	Accumulated leaves at inlets/outlets	Clear leaves (particularly important for key inlets and low points along long, linear facilities)
		A	Maintain access for inspections	• Clear vegetation (transplant vegetation when possible) within 1 foot of inlets and outlets, maintain access pathways • Consultation with a landscape architect is recommended for removal, transplant, or substitution of plants
Erosion control at inlet	A		Concentrated flows are causing erosion	Maintain a cover of rock or cobbles or other erosion protection measure (e.g., matting) to protect the ground where concentrated water enters the facility (e.g., a pipe, curb cut or swale)

No. 21 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Bioretention Facilities.

Maintenance Component	Recommended Frequency a		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Inlets/Outlets/Pipes (cont'd)				
Trash rack	S		Trash or other debris present on trash rack	Remove/dispose
	A		Bar screen damaged or missing	Repair/replace
Overflow	A, S		Capacity reduced by sediment or debris	Remove sediment or debris/dispose
Underdrain pipe	Clean pipe as needed	Clean orifice at least biannually (may need more frequent cleaning during wet season)	• Plant roots, sediment or debris reducing capacity of underdrain • Prolonged surface ponding (see "Ponded water")	• Jet clean or rotary cut debris/roots from underdrain(s) • If underdrains are equipped with a flow restrictor (e.g., orifice) to attenuate flows, the orifice must be cleaned regularly.
Vegetation				
Facility bottom area and upland slope vegetation	Fall and Spring		Vegetation survival rate falls below 75% within first two years of establishment (unless project O&M manual or record drawing stipulates more or less than 75% survival rate).	• Determine cause of poor vegetation growth and correct condition • Replant as necessary to obtain 75% survival rate or greater. Refer to original planting plan, or approved jurisdictional species list for appropriate plant replacements (See Appendix 3 - Bioretention Plant List, in the LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound). • Confirm that plant selection is appropriate for site growing conditions • Consultation with a landscape architect is recommended for removal, transplant, or substitution of plants
Vegetation (general)	As needed		Presence of diseased plants and plant material	• Remove any diseased plants or plant parts and dispose of in an approved location (e.g., commercial landfill) to avoid risk of spreading the disease to other plants • Disinfect gardening tools after pruning to prevent the spread of disease • See Pacific Northwest Plant Disease Management Handbook for information on disease recognition and for additional resources • Replant as necessary according to recommendations provided for "facility bottom area and upland slope vegetation".
Trees and shrubs		All pruning seasons (timing varies by species)	Pruning as needed	• Prune trees and shrubs in a manner appropriate for each species. Pruning should be performed by landscape professionals familiar with proper pruning techniques • All pruning of mature trees should be performed by or under the direct guidance of an ISA certified arborist
	A		Large trees and shrubs interfere with operation of the facility or access for maintenance	• Prune trees and shrubs using most current ANSI A300 standards and ISA BMPs. • Remove trees and shrubs, if necessary.
	Fall and Spring		Standing dead vegetation is present	• Remove standing dead vegetation • Replace dead vegetation within 30 days of reported dead and dying plants (as practical depending on weather/planting season) • If vegetation replacement is not feasible within 30 days, and absence of vegetation may result in erosion problems, temporary erosion control measures should be put in place immediately. • Determine cause of dead vegetation and address issue, if possible • If specific plants have a high mortality rate, assess the cause and replace with appropriate species. Consultation with a landscape architect is recommended.
	Fall and Spring		Planting beneath mature trees	• When working around and below mature trees, follow the most current ANSI A300 standards and ISA BMPs to the extent practicable (e.g., take care to minimize any damage to tree roots and avoid compaction of soil). • Planting of small shrubs or groundcovers beneath mature trees may be desirable in some cases; such plantings should use mainly plants that come as bulbs, bare root or in 4-inch pots; plants should be in no larger than 1-gallon containers.

No. 21 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Bioretention Facilities.

Maintenance Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Vegetation (cont'd)				
Trees and shrubs (cont'd)	Fall and Spring		Planting beneath mature trees	• When working around and below mature trees, follow the most current ANSI A300 standards and ISA BMPs to the extent practicable (e.g., take care to minimize any damage to tree roots and avoid compaction of soil). • Planting of small shrubs or groundcovers beneath mature trees may be desirable in some cases; such plantings should use mainly plants that come as bulbs, bare root or in 4-inch pots; plants should be in no larger than 1-gallon containers.
	Fall and Spring		Presence of or need for stakes and guys (tree growth, maturation, and support needs)	• Verify location of facility liners and underdrain (if any) prior to stake installation in order to prevent liner puncture or pipe damage • Monitor tree support systems: Repair and adjust as needed to provide support and prevent damage to tree. • Remove tree supports (stakes, guys, etc.) after one growing season or maximum of 1 year. • Backfill stake holes after removal.
Trees and shrubs adjacent to vehicle travel areas (or areas where visibility needs to be maintained)	A		Vegetation causes some visibility (line of sight) or driver safety issues	• Maintain appropriate height for sight clearance • When continued, regular pruning (more than one time/ growing season) is required to maintain visual sight lines for safety or clearance along a walk or drive, consider relocating the plant to a more appropriate location. • Remove or transplant if continual safety hazard • Consultation with a landscape architect is recommended for removal, transplant, or substitution of plants
Flowering plants		A	Dead or spent flowers present	Remove spent flowers (deadhead)
Perennials		Fall	Spent plants	Cut back dying or dead and fallen foliage and stems
Emergent vegetation		Spring	Vegetation compromises conveyance	• Hand rake sedges and rushes with a small rake or fingers to remove dead foliage before new growth emerges in spring or earlier only if the foliage is blocking water flow (sedges and rushes do not respond well to pruning)
Ornamental grasses (perennial)		Winter and Spring	Dead material from previous year's growing cycle or dead collapsed foliage	• Leave dry foliage for winter interest • Hand rake with a small rake or fingers to remove dead foliage back to within several inches from the soil before new growth emerges in spring or earlier if the foliage collapses and is blocking water flow
Ornamental grasses (evergreen)		Fall and Spring	Dead growth present in spring	• Hand rake with a small rake or fingers to remove dead growth before new growth emerges in spring • Clean, rake, and comb grasses when they become too tall • Cut back to ground or thin every 2-3 years as needed
Noxious weeds		M (March – October, preceding seed dispersal)	Listed noxious vegetation is present (refer to current county noxious weed list)	• By law, class A & B noxious weeds must be removed, bagged and disposed as garbage immediately • Reasonable attempts must be made to remove and dispose of class C noxious weeds • It is strongly encouraged that herbicides and pesticides not be used in order to protect water quality; use of herbicides and pesticides may be prohibited in some jurisdictions • Apply mulch after weed removal (see "Mulch")

[a] Frequency: A = Annually; B = Biannually (twice per year); M = Monthly; W = At least one visit should occur during the wet season (for debris/clog related maintenance, this inspection/maintenance visit should occur in the early fall, after deciduous trees have lost their leaves); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

IPM – Integrated Pest Management

ISA – International Society of Arboriculture

No. 21 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Bioretention Facilities.

Maintenance Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Vegetation (cont'd)				
Weeds		M (March – October, preceding seed dispersal)	Weeds are present	• Remove weeds with their roots manually with pincer-type weeding tools, flame weeders, or hot water weeders as appropriate • Follow IPM protocols for weed management (see "Additional Maintenance Resources" section for more information on IPM protocols)
Excessive vegetation		Once in early to mid-May and once in early- to mid-September	Low-lying vegetation growing beyond facility edge onto sidewalks, paths, or street edge poses pedestrian safety hazard or may clog adjacent permeable pavement surfaces due to associated leaf litter, mulch, and soil	• Edge or trim groundcovers and shrubs at facility edge • Avoid mechanical blade-type edger and do not use edger or trimmer within 2 feet of tree trunks • While some clippings can be left in the facility to replenish organic material in the soil, excessive leaf litter can cause surface soil clogging
	As needed		Excessive vegetation density inhibits stormwater flow beyond design ponding or becomes a hazard for pedestrian and vehicular circulation and safety	• Determine whether pruning or other routine maintenance is adequate to maintain proper plant density and aesthetics • Determine if planting type should be replaced to avoid ongoing maintenance issues (an aggressive grower under perfect growing conditions should be transplanted to a location where it will not impact flow) • Remove plants that are weak, broken or not true to form; replace in-kind • Thin grass or plants impacting facility function without leaving visual holes or bare soil areas • Consultation with a landscape architect is recommended for removal, transplant, or substitution of plants
	As needed		Vegetation blocking curb cuts, causing excessive sediment buildup and flow bypass	• Remove vegetation and sediment buildup
Mulch				
Mulch		Following weeding	Bare spots (without mulch cover) are present or mulch depth less than 2 inches	• Supplement mulch with hand tools to a depth of 2 to 3 inches • Replenish mulch per O&M manual. Often coarse compost is used in the bottom of the facility and arborist wood chips are used on side slopes and rim (above typical water levels) • Keep all mulch away from woody stems
Watering				
Irrigation system (if any)		Based on manufacturer's instructions	Irrigation system present	• Follow manufacturer's instructions for O&M
	A		Sprinklers or drip irrigation not directed/located to properly water plants	• Redirect sprinklers or move drip irrigation to desired areas
Summer watering (first year)		Once every 1-2 weeks or as needed during prolonged dry periods	Trees, shrubs and groundcovers in first year of establishment period	• 10 to 15 gallons per tree • 3 to 5 gallons per shrub • 2 gallons water per square foot for groundcover areas • Water deeply, but infrequently, so that the top 6 to 12 inches of the root zone is moist • Use soaker hoses or spot water with a shower type wand when irrigation system is not present o Pulse water to enhance soil absorption, when feasible o Pre-moisten soil to break surface tension of dry or hydrophobic soils/mulch, followed by several more passes. With this method , each pass increases soil absorption and allows more water to infiltrate prior to runoff • Add a tree bag or slow-release watering device (e.g., bucket with a perforated bottom) for watering newly installed trees when irrigation system is not present

[a] Frequency: A = Annually; B = Biannually (twice per year); M = Monthly; W = At least one visit should occur during the wet season (for debris/clog related maintenance, this inspection/maintenance visit should occur in the early fall, after deciduous trees have lost their leaves); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

IPM – Integrated Pest Management

ISA – International Society of Arboriculture

No. 21 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Bioretention Facilities.

Maintenance Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Watering (cont'd)				
Summer watering (second and third years)		Once every 2-4 weeks or as needed during prolonged dry periods	Trees, shrubs and groundcovers in second or third year of establishment period	• 10 to 15 gallons per tree • 3 to 5 gallons per shrub • 2 gallons water per square foot for groundcover areas • Water deeply, but infrequently, so that the top 6 to 12 inches of the root zone is moist • Use soaker hoses or spot water with a shower type wand when irrigation system is not present o Pulse water to enhance soil absorption, when feasible o Pre-moisten soil to break surface tension of dry or hydrophobic soils/mulch, followed by several more passes. With this method , each pass increases soil absorption and allows more water to infiltrate prior to runoff
Summer watering (after establishment)		As needed	Established vegetation (after 3 years)	• Plants are typically selected to be drought tolerant and not require regular watering after establishment; however, trees may take up to 5 years of watering to become fully established • Identify trigger mechanisms for drought-stress (e.g., leaf wilt, leaf senescence, etc.) of different species and water immediately after initial signs of stress appear • Water during drought conditions or more often if necessary to maintain plant cover
Pest Control				
Mosquitoes	B, S		Standing water remains for more than 3 days after the end of a storm	• Identify the cause of the standing water and take appropriate actions to address the problem (see "Ponded water") • To facilitate maintenance, manually remove standing water and direct to the storm drainage system (if runoff is from non pollution-generating surfaces) or sanitary sewer system (if runoff is from pollution-generating surfaces) after getting approval from sanitary sewer authority. • Use of pesticides or *Bacillus thuringiensis israelensis* (Bti)may be considered only as a temporary measure while addressing the standing water cause. If overflow to a surface water will occur within 2 weeks after pesticide use, apply for coverage under the Aquatic Mosquito Control NPDES General Permit.
Nuisance animals	As needed		Nuisance animals causing erosion, damaging plants, or depositing large volumes of feces	• Reduce site conditions that attract nuisance species where possible (e.g., plant shrubs and tall grasses to reduce open areas for geese, etc.) • Place predator decoys • Follow IPM protocols for specific nuisance animal issues (see "Additional Maintenance Resources" section for more information on IPM protocols) • Remove pet waste regularly • For public and right-of-way sites consider adding garbage cans with dog bags for picking up pet waste.
Insect pests	Every site visit associated with vegetation management		Signs of pests, such as wilting leaves, chewed leaves and bark, spotting or other indicators	• Reduce hiding places for pests by removing diseased and dead plants • For infestations, follow IPM protocols (see "Additional Maintenance Resources" section for more information on IPM protocols)

[a] Frequency: A = Annually; B = Biannually (twice per year); M = Monthly; W = At least one visit should occur during the wet season (for debris/clog related maintenance, this inspection/maintenance visit should occur in the early fall, after deciduous trees have lost their leaves); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

IPM – Integrated Pest Management

ISA – International Society of Arboriculture

No. 22 - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Permeable Pavement.

Note that the inspection and routine maintenance frequencies listed below are recommended by Ecology. They do not supersede or replace the municipal stormwater permit requirements for inspection frequency required of municipal stormwater permittees for "stormwater treatment and flow control BMPs/facilities."

Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Surface/Wearing Course				
Permeable Pavements, all	A, S		Runoff from adjacent pervious areas deposits soil, mulch or sediment on paving	• Clean deposited soil or other materials from permeable pavement or other adjacent surfacing • Check if surface elevation of planted area is too high, or slopes towards pavement, and can be regraded (prior to regrading, protect permeable pavement by covering with temporary plastic and secure covering in place) • Mulch and/or plant all exposed soils that may erode to pavement surface
Porous asphalt or pervious concrete		A or B	None (routine maintenance)	Clean surface debris from pavement surface using one or a combination of the following methods: • Remove sediment, debris, trash, vegetation, and other debris deposited onto pavement (rakes and leaf blowers can be used for removing leaves) • Vacuum/sweep permeable paving installation using: o Walk-behind vacuum (sidewalks) o High efficiency regenerative air or vacuum sweeper (roadways, parking lots) o ShopVac or brush brooms (small areas) • Hand held pressure washer or power washer with rotating brushes Follow equipment manufacturer guidelines for when equipment is most effective for cleaning permeable pavement. Dry weather is more effective for some equipment.
	A[b]		Surface is clogged: Ponding on surface or water flows off the permeable pavement surface during a rain event (does not infiltrate)	• Review the overall performance of the facility (note that small clogged areas may not reduce overall performance of facility) • Test the surface infiltration rate using ASTM C1701 as a corrective maintenance indicator. Perform one test per installation, up to 2,500 square feet. Perform an additional test for each additional 2,500 square feet up to 15,000 square feet total. Above 15,000 square feet, add one test for every 10,000 square feet. • If the results indicate an infiltration rate of 10 inches per hour or less, then perform corrective maintenance to restore permeability. To clean clogged pavement surfaces, use one or combination of the following methods: • Combined pressure wash and vacuum system calibrated to not dislodge wearing course aggregate. • Hand held pressure washer or power washer with rotating brushes • Pure vacuum sweepers Note: If the annual/biannual routine maintenance standard to clean the pavement surface is conducted using equipment from the list above, corrective maintenance may not be needed.
	A		Sediment present at the surface of the pavement	• Assess the overall performance of the pavement system during a rain event. If water runs off the pavement and/or there is ponding then see above. • Determine source of sediment loading and evaluate whether or not the source can be reduced/eliminated. If the source cannot be addressed, consider increasing frequency of routine cleaning (e.g., twice per year instead of once per year).
	Summer		Moss growth inhibits infiltration or poses slip safety hazard	• Sidewalks: Use a stiff broom to remove moss in the summer when it is dry • Parking lots and roadways: Pressure wash, vacuum sweep, or use a combination of the two for cleaning moss from pavement surface. May require stiff broom or power brush in areas of heavy moss.
	A		Major cracks or trip hazards and concrete spalling and raveling	• Fill potholes or small cracks with patching mixes • Large cracks and settlement may require cutting and replacing the pavement section. Replace in-kind where feasible. Replacing porous asphalt with conventional asphalt is acceptable if it is a small percentage of the total facility area and does not impact the overall facility function. • Take appropriate precautions during pavement repair and replacement efforts to prevent clogging of adjacent porous materials

[a] Frequency: A= Annually; B= Biannually (twice per year); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

[b] Inspection should occur during storm event.

No. 22 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Permeable Pavement.

Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Surface/Wearing Course (cont'd)				
Interlocking concrete paver blocks and aggregate pavers		A or B	None (routine maintenance)	Clean pavement surface using one or a combination of the following methods: • Remove sediment, debris, trash, vegetation, and other debris deposited onto pavement (rakes and leaf blowers can be used for removing leaves) • Vacuum/sweep permeable paving installation using: o Walk-behind vacuum (sidewalks) o High efficiency regenerative air or vacuum sweeper (roadways, parking lots) o ShopVac or brush brooms (small areas) • Note: Vacuum settings may have to be adjusted to prevent excess uptake of aggregate from paver openings or joints. Vacuum surface openings in dry weather to remove dry, encrusted sediment.
	A [b]		Surface is clogged: Ponding on surface or water flows off the permeable pavement surface during a rain event (does not infiltrate)]	• Review the overall performance of the facility (note that small clogged areas may not reduce overall performance of facility) • Test the surface infiltration rate using ASTM C1701 as a corrective maintenance indicator. Perform one test per installation, up to 2,500 square feet. Perform an additional test for each additional 2,500 square feet up to 15,000 square feet total. Above 15,000 square feet, add one test for every 10,000 square feet. • If the results indicate an infiltration rate of 10 inches per hour or less, then perform corrective maintenance to restore permeability. • Clogging is usually an issue in the upper 2 to 3 centimeters of aggregate. Remove the upper layer of encrusted sediment, and fines, and/or vegetation from openings and joints between the pavers by mechanical means and/or suction equipment (e.g., pure vacuum sweeper). • Replace aggregate in paver cells, joints, or openings per manufacturer's recommendations
	A		Sediment present at the surface of the pavement	• Assess the overall performance of the pavement system during a rain event. If water runs off the pavement and/or there is ponding, then see above. • Determine source of sediment loading and evaluate whether or not the source can be reduced/eliminated. If the source cannot be addressed, consider increasing frequency of routine cleaning (e.g., twice per year instead of once per year).
	Summer		Moss growth inhibits infiltration or poses slip safety hazard	• Sidewalks: Use a stiff broom to remove moss in the summer when it is dry • Parking lots and roadways: Vacuum sweep or stiff broom/power brush for cleaning moss from pavement surface
	A		Paver block missing or damaged	Remove individual damaged paver blocks by hand and replace or repair per manufacturer's recommendations
	A		Loss of aggregate material between paver blocks	Refill per manufacturer's recommendations for interlocking paver sections
	A		Settlement of surface	May require resetting
Open-celled paving grid with gravel		A or B	None (routine maintenance)	• Remove sediment, debris, trash, vegetation, and other debris deposited onto pavement (rakes and leaf blowers can be used for removing leaves) • Follow equipment manufacturer guidelines for cleaning surface.
	A [b]		Aggregate is clogged: Ponding on surface or water flows off the permeable pavement surface during a rain event (does not infiltrate)]	• Use vacuum truck to remove and replace top course aggregate • Replace aggregate in paving grid per manufacturer's recommendations
	A		Paving grid missing or damaged	• Remove pins, pry up grid segments, and replace gravel • Replace grid segments where three or more adjacent rings are broken or damaged • Follow manufacturer guidelines for repairing surface.
	A		Settlement of surface	May require resetting
	A		Loss of aggregate material in paving grid	Replenish aggregate material by spreading gravel with a rake (gravel level should be maintained at the same level as the plastic rings or no more than 1/4 inch above the top of rings). See manufacturer's recommendations.
		A	Weeds present	• Manually remove weeds • Presence of weeds may indicate that too many fines are present (refer to Actions Needed under "Aggregate is clogged" to address this issue)

[a] Frequency: A= Annually; B= Biannually (twice per year); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

[b] Inspection should occur during storm event.

No. 22 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Permeable Pavement.

Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Surface/Wearing Course (cont'd)				
Open-celled paving grid with grass		A or B	None (routine maintenance)	• Remove sediment, debris, trash, vegetation, and other debris deposited onto pavement (rakes and leaf blowers can be used for removing leaves) • Follow equipment manufacturer guidelines for cleaning surface.
	A [b]		Aggregate is clogged: Ponding on surface or water flows off the permeable pavement surface during a rain event (does not infiltrate)]	• Rehabilitate per manufacturer's recommendations.
	A		Paving grid missing or damaged	• Remove pins, pry up grid segments, and replace grass • Replace grid segments where three or more adjacent rings are broken or damaged • Follow manufacturer guidelines for repairing surface.
	A		Settlement of surface	• May require resetting
	A		Poor grass coverage in paving grid	• Restore growing medium, reseed or plant, aerate, and/or amend vegetated area as needed • Traffic loading may be inhibiting grass growth; reconsider traffic loading if feasible
		As needed	None (routine maintenance)	• Use a mulch mower to mow grass
		A	None (routine maintenance)	• Sprinkle a thin layer of compost on top of grass surface (1/2" top dressing) and sweep it in • Do not use fertilizer
		A	Weeds present	• Manually remove weeds • Mow, torch, or inoculate and replace with preferred vegetation
Inlets/Outlets/Pipes				
Inlet/outlet pipe	A		Pipe is damaged	Repair/replace
	A		Pipe is clogged	Remove roots or debris
Underdrain pipe	Clean pipe as needed	Clean orifice at least biannually (may need more frequent cleaning during wet season)	Plant roots, sediment or debris reducing capacity of underdrain (may cause prolonged drawdown period)	• Jet clean or rotary cut debris/roots from underdrain(s) • If underdrains are equipped with a flow restrictor (e.g., orifice) to attenuate flows, the orifice must be cleaned regularly
Raised subsurface overflow pipe	Clean pipe as needed	Clean orifice at least biannually (may need more frequent cleaning during wet season)	Plant roots, sediment or debris reducing capacity of underdrain	• Jet clean or rotary cut debris/roots from underdrain(s) • If underdrains are equipped with a flow restrictor (e.g., orifice) to attenuate flows, the orifice must be cleaned regularly
Outlet structure	A, S		Sediment, vegetation, or debris reducing capacity of outlet structure	• Clear the blockage • Identify the source of the blockage and take actions to prevent future blockages

[a] Frequency: A= Annually; B= Biannually (twice per year); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

[b] Inspection should occur during storm event.

No. 22 (continued) - Maintenance Standards and Procedures for Permeable Pavement.

Component	Recommended Frequency [a]		Condition when Maintenance is Needed (Standards)	Action Needed (Procedures)
	Inspection	Routine Maintenance		
Inlets/Outlets/Pipes (cont'd)				
Overflow	B		Native soil is exposed or other signs of erosion damage are present at discharge point	Repair erosion and stabilize surface
Aggregate Storage Reservoir				
Observation port	A, S		Water remains in the storage aggregate longer than anticipated by design after the end of a storm	If immediate cause of extended ponding is not identified, schedule investigation of subsurface materials or other potential causes of system failure.
Vegetation				
Adjacent large shrubs or trees		As needed	Vegetation related fallout clogs or will potentially clog voids	• Sweep leaf litter and sediment to prevent surface clogging and ponding • Prevent large root systems from damaging subsurface structural components
		Once in May and Once in September	Vegetation growing beyond facility edge onto sidewalks, paths, and street edge	Edging and trimming of planted areas to control groundcovers and shrubs from overreaching the sidewalks, paths and street edge improves appearance and reduces clogging of permeable pavements by leaf litter, mulch and soil.
Leaves, needles, and organic debris		In fall (October to December) after leaf drop (1-3 times, depending on canopy cover)	Accumulation of organic debris and leaf litter	Use leaf blower or vacuum to blow or remove leaves, evergreen needles, and debris (i.e., flowers, blossoms) off of and away from permeable pavement

[a] Frequency: A= Annually; B= Biannually (twice per year); S = Perform inspections after major storm events (24-hour storm event with a 10-year or greater recurrence interval).

[b] Inspection should occur during storm event.

Chapter 5. - On-Site Stormwater Management

Note: Figures 5.1 through 5.5 are courtesy of King County

5.1 Purpose

This Chapter presents the methods for analysis and design of on-site stormwater management Best Management Practices (BMPs). Many of these BMPs, although being used elsewhere, are new locally. Efforts have been underway to further develop these "low impact development" concepts in Western Washington. Ecology has updated these BMPs and added references to the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012), authored by the Washington State University Cooperative Extension and published by the Puget Sound Partnership. The document is available at the following website: http://www.psp.wa.gov/documents.php

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

5.2 Application

The On-Site Stormwater Management BMPs presented in this Chapter help achieve compliance with Minimum Requirement #5, and can contribute toward compliance with Minimum Requirements #6 and #7.

Most of the BMPs serve to reduce runoff flow rates as well as to provide some pollutant reduction benefits. Ecology accepts Full Dispersion as meeting Minimum Requirements #6, and #7. Bioretention and Permeable Pavements can meet the same requirements for their tributary drainage areas depending upon site conditions and sizing.

5.3 Best Management Practices for On-Site Stormwater Management

This chapter contains several On-Site Stormwater Management BMPs.

Projects shall employ these BMPs to infiltrate, disperse, and retain stormwater runoff on site to the maximum extent practicable without causing flooding or erosion impacts. Sites that are required to provide water quality treatment must provide treatment before infiltration or use infiltration as treatment. Sites that can fully infiltrate (see Volume III, Chapter 3, Section 3.3) or fully disperse (see BMP T5.30) are not required to provide additional runoff treatment or flow control facilities. Full dispersion applies to sites (or sub-areas of sites) with a maximum of 10% effective impervious area that is dispersed through 65% of the site maintained in natural vegetation. Full dispersion using substantially less area can also be utilized by roads through soils with high saturated hydraulic conductivity.

Hard surfaces that are not fully dispersed or infiltrated should be partially dispersed or infiltrated to the maximum extent practicable. For projects triggering minimum requirement #7, if the model predicts a 0.10 cfs or greater increase in the 100-year return frequency flow (or a 1.5 cfs increase for 15-minute time steps), or if certain thresholds of impervious surfaces or converted pervious surfaces are exceeded within a threshold discharge area (see Volume 1, Section 2.5.7), then the project must comply with the flow control standard. Also, projects that exceed the thresholds in Section 2.5.6 of Volume 1 must comply with treatment requirements.

5.3.1 On-site Stormwater Management BMPs

Purpose:

The primary purpose of On-site (LID) Stormwater Management BMPs is to reduce the disruption of the natural site hydrology. Local governments under the Municipal Stormwater Permits can require projects to use these BMPs to gain compliance with Minimum Requirement #5. Municipal permittees that adopt different BMPs shall document how those BMPS will protect water quality, reduce the discharge of pollutants to the maximum extent practicable, and satisfy the state AKART requirements

Competing Needs:

The On-site Stormwater Management BMPs can be superseded or restricted where they are in conflict with:

- Requirements of the following federal or state laws, rules, and standards: Historic Preservation Laws and Archaeology Laws as listed at http://www.dahp.wa.gov/learn-and-research/preservation-laws, Federal Superfund or Washington State Model Toxics Control Act, Federal Aviation Administration requirements for airports, Americans with Disabilities Act.
- Where an LID requirement has been found to be in conflict with special zoning district design criteria adopted and being implemented pursuant to a community planning process, the existing local codes may supersede or reduce the LID requirement. This does not relieve municipal stormwater permittees of the requirement to review local design codes, standards, and rules to remove barriers and require use of LID principles and BMP's.
- Public health and safety standards.

- Transportation regulations to maintain the option for future expansion or multi-modal use of public rights-of-way.
- A local Critical Area Ordinance that provides protection of tree species.
- A local code or rule adopted as part of a Wellhead Protection Program established under the Federal Safe Drinking Water Act; or adopted to protect a Critical Aquifer Recharge Area established under the State Growth Management Act.

BMP T5.10A: Downspout Full Infiltration

Please refer to Section 3.1.1 in Volume III of this manual.

BMP T5.10B: Downspout Dispersion Systems

Please refer to Section 3.1.2 in Volume III of this manual.

BMP T5.10C: Perforated Stub-out Connections

Please refer to Section 3.1.3 in Volume III of this manual.

BMP T5.11: Concentrated Flow Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

Dispersion of concentrated flows from driveways or other pavement through a vegetated pervious area attenuates peak flows by slowing entry of the runoff into the conveyance system, allowing for some infiltration, and providing some water quality benefits. See Figure 5.3.1.

Applications and Limitations

- Use this BMP in any situation where concentrated flow can be dispersed through vegetation.
- Figure 5.3.1 shows two possible ways of spreading flows from steep driveways.

Design Guidelines

- Maintain a vegetated flowpath of at least 50 feet between the discharge point and any property line, structure, steep slope, stream, lake, wetland, lake, or other impervious surface.
- A maximum of 700 square feet of impervious area may drain to each concentrated flow dispersion BMP.
- Provide a pad of crushed rock (a minimum of 2 feet wide by 3 feet long by 6 inches deep) at each discharge point.
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
- Runoff discharged towards landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist. Do not place the discharge point on or above slopes greater than 20%, or above erosion hazard areas, without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or

qualified geologist and approval by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

- For sites with septic systems, the discharge point must be ten feet downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas (WAC 246-272A-0210). A Local Plan Approval Authority may waive this requirement if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

Runoff Modeling

Where BMP T5.11 is used to disperse runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets BMP T5.13, and the vegetated flow path is at least 50 feet, the impervious area may be modeled as landscaped area. Where the vegetated flowpath is 25 – 50 feet, using a dispersion trench (see BMP T5.10B) allows modeling the impervious area as 50% impervious/50% landscape. This is done in the WWHM 3 on the Mitigated Scenario screen by entering the dispersed impervious area into one of the entry options for dispersal of impervious area runoff. For procedures in WWHM 2012, see Appendix III-C.

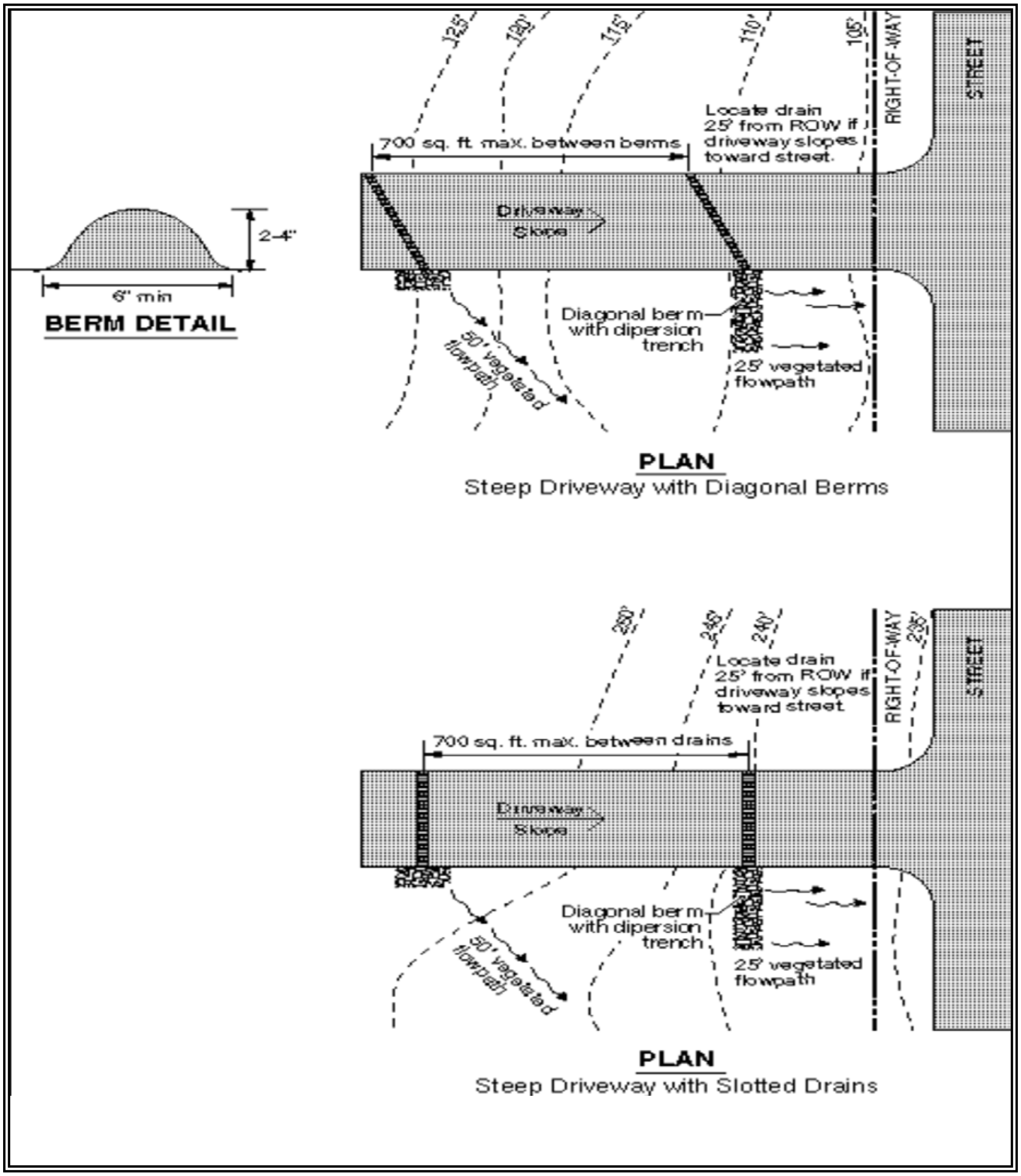


Figure 5.3.1 – Typical Concentrated Flow Dispersion for Steep Driveways

BMP T5.12: Sheet Flow Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

Sheet flow dispersion is the simplest method of runoff control. This BMP can be used for any impervious or pervious surface that is graded to avoid concentrating flows). Because flows are already dispersed as they leave the surface, they need only traverse a narrow band of adjacent vegetation for effective attenuation and treatment.

Applications and Limitations

Use this BMP for flat or moderately sloping (< 15% slope) surfaces such as driveways, sports courts, patios, roofs without gutters, lawns, pastures; or any situation where concentration of flows can be avoided.

Design Guidelines

- See Figure 5.3.2 for details for driveways.
- Provide a 2-foot-wide transition zone to discourage channeling between the edge of the impervious surface (or building eaves) and the downslope vegetation. This transition zone may consist of an extension of subgrade material (crushed rock), modular pavement, drain rock, or other material acceptable to the Local Plan Approval Authority.
- Provide a 10-foot-wide vegetated buffer for up to 20 feet of width of paved or impervious surface. Provide an additional 10 feet of vegetated buffer width for each additional 20 feet of impervious surface width or fraction thereof. (For example, if a driveway is 30 feet wide and 60 feet long provide a 20-foot wide by 60-foot long vegetated buffer, with a 2-foot by 60-foot transition zone.)
- No erosion or flooding of downstream properties may result.
- Runoff discharge toward landslide hazard areas must be evaluated by a geotechnical engineer or a qualified geologist. Do not allow sheet flow on or above slopes greater than 20%, or above erosion hazard areas, without evaluation by a geotechnical engineer or qualified geologist and approval by the Local Plan Approval Authority.
- For sites with septic systems, the discharge area must be ten feet downgradient of the drainfield primary and reserve areas (WAC 246-272A-0210). A Local Plan Approval Authority may waive this requirement if site topography clearly prohibits flows from intersecting the drainfield.

Runoff Modeling

Where BMP T5.12 is used to disperse runoff into an undisturbed native landscape area or an area that meets BMP T5.13, and the vegetated flow path is 50 feet or more, the impervious area may be modeled as landscaped area. Where the vegetated flowpath is 25 to 50 feet, use of a dispersion trench (see BMP T5.10B) allows modeling the impervious area as 50% impervious/50% landscape. This is done in the WWHM3 on the Mitigation Scenario screen by entering the dispersed impervious area into one of the entry options for dispersal of impervious area runoff. For procedures in WWHM 2012, see Appendix III-C in Volume III.

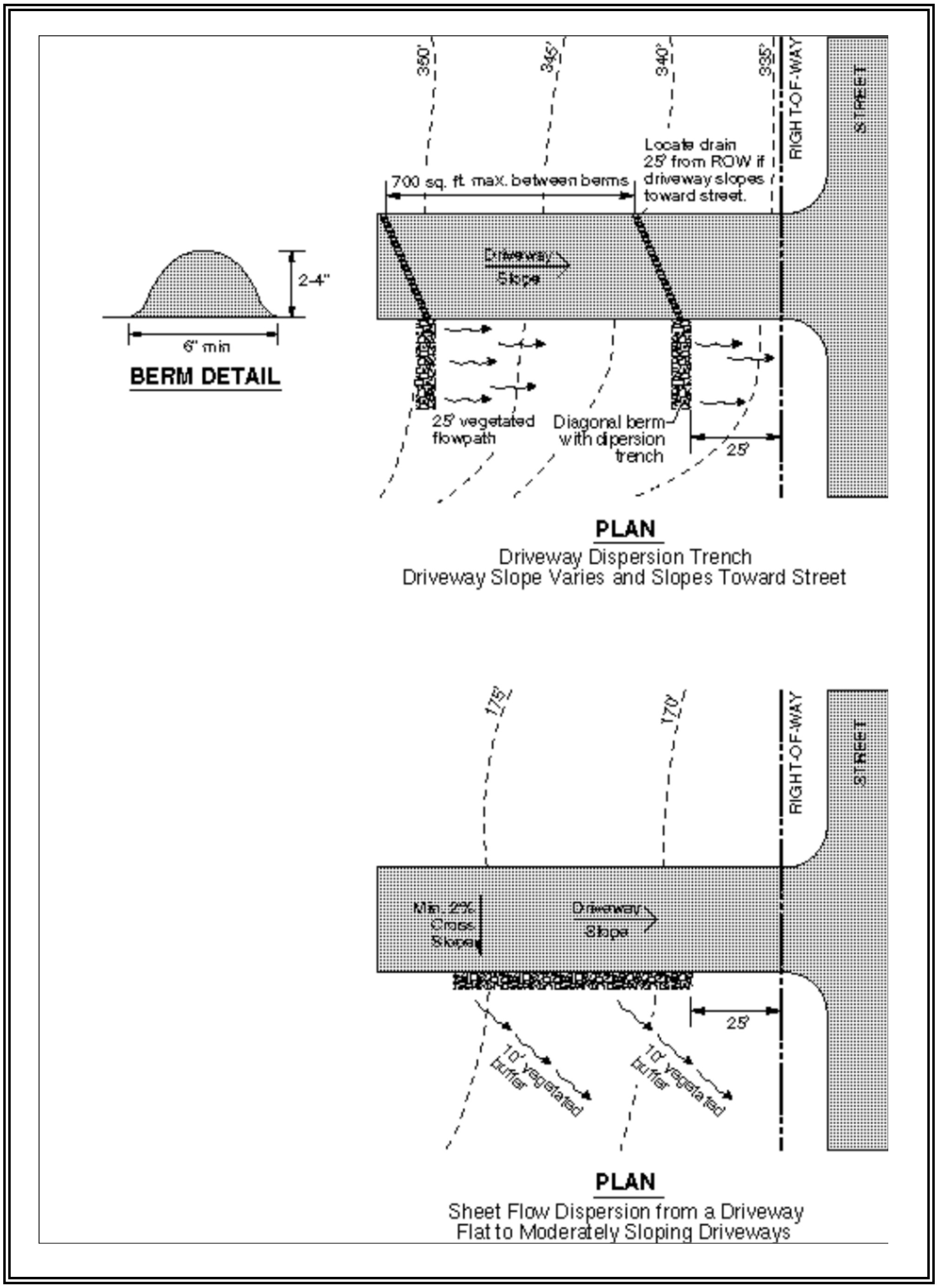


Figure 5.3.2 – Sheet Flow Dispersion for Driveways

BMP T5.13: Post-Construction Soil Quality and Depth

Purpose and Definition

Naturally occurring (undisturbed) soil and vegetation provide important stormwater functions including: water infiltration; nutrient, sediment, and pollutant adsorption; sediment and pollutant biofiltration; water interflow storage and transmission; and pollutant decomposition. These functions are largely lost when development strips away native soil and vegetation and replaces it with minimal topsoil and sod. Not only are these important stormwater functions lost, but such landscapes themselves become pollution generating pervious surfaces due to increased use of pesticides, fertilizers and other landscaping and household/industrial chemicals, the concentration of pet wastes, and pollutants that accompany roadside litter.

Establishing soil quality and depth regains greater stormwater functions in the post development landscape, provides increased treatment of pollutants and sediments that result from development and habitation, and minimizes the need for some landscaping chemicals, thus reducing pollution through prevention.

Applications and Limitations

Establishing a minimum soil quality and depth is not the same as preservation of naturally occurring soil and vegetation. However, establishing a minimum soil quality and depth will provide improved on-site management of stormwater flow and water quality.

Soil organic matter can be attained through numerous materials such as compost, composted woody material, biosolids, and forest product residuals. It is important that the materials used to meet the soil quality and depth BMP be appropriate and beneficial to the plant cover to be established. Likewise, it is important that imported topsoils improve soil conditions and do not have an excessive percent of clay fines.

This BMP can be considered infeasible on till soil slopes greater than 33 percent.

Design Guidelines

- Soil retention. Retain, in an undisturbed state, the duff layer and native topsoil to the maximum extent practicable. In any areas requiring grading remove and stockpile the duff layer and topsoil on site in a designated, controlled area, not adjacent to public resources and critical areas, to be reapplied to other portions of the site where feasible.
- Soil quality. All areas subject to clearing and grading that have not been covered by impervious surface, incorporated into a drainage facility or engineered as structural fill or slope shall, at project completion, demonstrate the following:
  1. A topsoil layer with a minimum organic matter content of 10% dry weight in planting beds, and 5% organic matter content in turf areas, and a pH from 6.0 to 8.0 or matching the pH of the undisturbed soil. The topsoil layer shall have a minimum depth of

eight inches except where tree roots limit the depth of incorporation of amendments needed to meet the criteria. Subsoils below the topsoil layer should be scarified at least 4 inches with some incorporation of the upper material to avoid stratified layers, where feasible.

2. Mulch planting beds with 2 inches of organic material
3. Use compost and other materials that meet these organic content requirements:
    a. The organic content for "pre-approved" amendment rates can be met only using compost meeting the compost specification for Bioretention (BMP T7.30), with the exception that the compost may have up to 35% biosolids or manure.

       The compost must also have an organic matter content of 40% to 65%, and a carbon to nitrogen ratio below 25:1.

       The carbon to nitrogen ratio may be as high as 35:1 for plantings composed entirely of plants native to the Puget Sound Lowlands region.
    b. Calculated amendment rates may be met through use of composted material meeting (a.) above; or other organic materials amended to meet the carbon to nitrogen ratio requirements, and not exceeding the contaminant limits identified in Table 220-B, Testing Parameters, in WAC 173-350-220.

The resulting soil should be conducive to the type of vegetation to be established.

- Implementation Options: The soil quality design guidelines listed above can be met by using one of the methods listed below:
    1. Leave undisturbed native vegetation and soil, and protect from compaction during construction.
    2. Amend existing site topsoil or subsoil either at default "pre-approved" rates, or at custom calculated rates based on tests of the soil and amendment.
    3. Stockpile existing topsoil during grading, and replace it prior to planting. Stockpiled topsoil must also be amended if needed to meet the organic matter or depth requirements, either at a default "pre-approved" rate or at a custom calculated rate.
    4. Import topsoil mix of sufficient organic content and depth to meet the requirements.

    More than one method may be used on different portions of the same site. Soil that already meets the depth and organic matter quality standards, and is not compacted, does not need to be amended.

Planning/Permitting/Inspection/Verification Guidelines & Procedures

- Local governments are encouraged to adopt guidelines and procedures similar to those recommended in *Guidelines and Resources For Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington*. This document is available at: http://www.soilsforsalmon.org/pdf/Soil_BMP_Manual.pdf

Maintenance

- Establish soil quality and depth toward the end of construction and once established, protect from compaction, such as from large machinery use, and from erosion.
- Plant vegetation and mulch the amended soil area after installation.
- Leave plant debris or its equivalent on the soil surface to replenish organic matter.
- Reduce and adjust, where possible, the use of irrigation, fertilizers, herbicides and pesticides, rather than continuing to implement formerly established practices.

Runoff Model Representation

Areas meeting the design guidelines may be entered into approved runoff models as "Pasture" rather than "Lawn."

Flow reduction credits can be taken in runoff modeling when BMP T5.13 is used as part of a dispersion design under the conditions described in:

BMP T5.10B Downspout Dispersion

BMP T5.11 Concentrated Flow Dispersion

BMP T5.12 Sheet Flow Dispersion

BMP T5.18 Reverse Slope Sidewalks

BMP T5.30 Full Dispersion (for public road projects)

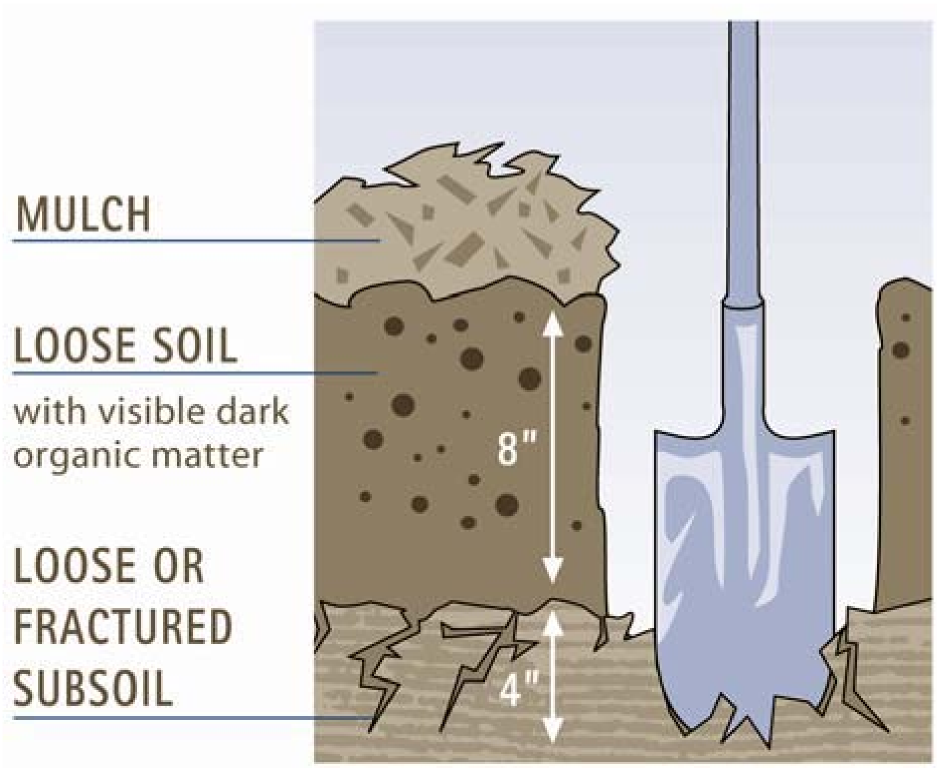


Figure 5.3.3 – Planting bed Cross-Section

(Reprinted from *Guidelines and Resources For Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington*, 2010, Washington Organic Recycling Council)

BMP T5.14A: Rain Gardens

Purpose and Definition

Land development projects may not be of sufficient size such that it is practical to construct engineered stormwater facilities for flow reduction and pollutant removal. However, the cumulative impact of smaller development projects on the natural hydrology and water quality of local waters can be significant. To reduce that cumulative impact, small projects (see Section 2.4 in Volume I) must implement on-site stormwater management BMP's (See Minimum Requirement #5 in Section 2.5 of Volume I). Rain gardens are an on-site stormwater management BMP that can provide effective removal of many stormwater pollutants, and provide reductions in stormwater runoff quantity and surface runoff flow rates.

Rain gardens are non-engineered, shallow, landscaped depressions with compost-amended soils and adapted plants. The depression ponds and temporarily stores stormwater runoff from adjacent areas. A portion of the influent stormwater passes through the amended soil profile and into the native soil beneath. Stormwater that exceeds the storage capacity is designed to overflow to an adjacent drainage system.

Applications and Limitations

Rain gardens are an on-site stormwater management BMP option for projects that have to comply with Minimum Requirements #1 - #5, but not Minimum Requirements #6 - #9. For projects electing to use List #1 of Minimum Requirement #5, rain gardens are to be used to the extent feasible for runoff from roofs and other hard surfaces unless a higher priority BMP is feasible.

Infeasibility criteria for rain gardens are the same as for bioretention. Please see Bioretention infeasibility criteria in BMP T7.30 of this Volume.

Although not required, Ecology recommends installation by a landscaping company with experience in rain garden construction.

Rain gardens constructed with imported compost materials should not be used within one-quarter mile of phosphorus-sensitive waterbodies. Preliminary monitoring indicates that new rain gardens can add phosphorus to stormwater. Therefore, they should also not be used with an underdrain when the underdrain water would be routed to a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water.

Design Guidelines

Refer to the *Rain Garden Handbook for Western Washington* (2013) for rain garden specifications and construction guidance.

For amending the native soil within the rain garden, Ecology recommends use of compost that meets the compost specification for bioretrention (see BMP T7.30). Compost that includes biosolids or manures shall not be used.

For design on projects subject to Minimum Requirement #5, and choosing to use List #1 of that requirement, rain gardens shall have a horizontally projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the total impervious surface area draining to it. If lawn/landscape area will also be draining to the rain garden, Ecology recommends that the rain garden's horizontally projected surface area below the overflow be increased by 2% of the lawn/landscape area.

Underdrains

Ecology does not recommend the use of underdrains for rain gardens. Design and construction of an underdrain system likely requires professional expertise. Where a municipality intends to require or allow underdrained rain gardens in areas with initial infiltration rates between 0.3 and 0.6 inches per hour, the invert of the underdrain shall be 6 inches above the bottom of the aggregate bedding for the underdrain. A larger distance between the underdrain and the bottom of the aggregate bedding is desirable, but cannot be used to trigger infeasibility due to inadequate vertical separation to the seasonal high water table, bedrock, or other impermeable layer.

Ecology recommends that the municipality establish standard design specifications and drawings.

Maintenance

Please refer to the *Rain Garden Handbook for Western Washington* (2013) for tips on mulching, watering, weeding, pruning, and soil management. The "Western Washington Low Impact Development (LID) Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Guidance Doucment" may be consulted for more detailed guidance.

BMP T5.14B: Bioretention

Purpose and Definition

Bioretention areas are shallow landscaped depressions, with a designed soil mix and plants adapted to the local climate and soil moisture conditions, that receive stormwater from a contributing area.

Bioretention provides effective removal of many stormwater pollutants by passing stormwater through a soil profile that meets specified characteristics. Bioretention can also reduce stormwater runoff quantity and surface runoff flow rates significantly where the exfiltrate from the design soil is allowed to infiltrate into the surrounding native soils. Bioretention can be used as a primary or supplemental detention/retention system. Where the native soils have low infiltration rates, underdrain systems can be installed and the facility used to filter pollutants and detain flows. However, designs utilizing underdrains provide less flow control benefits.

Applications and Limitations

Bioretention facilities are an On-site BMP option for projects that only have to comply with Minimum Requirements #1 - #5. For projects electing to use Mandatory List #2 of Minimum Requirement #5, bioretention facilities are to be used to the extent feasible for runoff from roofs and other hard surfaces unless a higher priority BMP is feasible.

Use of bioretention can be restricted by site limitations. Please see Bioretention infeasibility criteria in BMP T7.30 of this Volume.

Design Guidelines

Refer to BMP T7.30 in Chapter 7 of this Volume for detailed design guidelines.

For design on projects subject to Minimum Requirement #5, and choosing to use List #1 or List #2 of that requirement, a bioretention facility shall have a horizontally projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the total impervious surface area draining to it. If lawn/landscape area will also be draining to the bioretention facility, Ecology recommends that the bioretention facility's horizontally projected surface area below the overflow be increased by 2% of the lawn/landscape area.

Maintenance

Refer to BMP T7.30 and Section 4.6 of this Volume for maintenance guidelines.

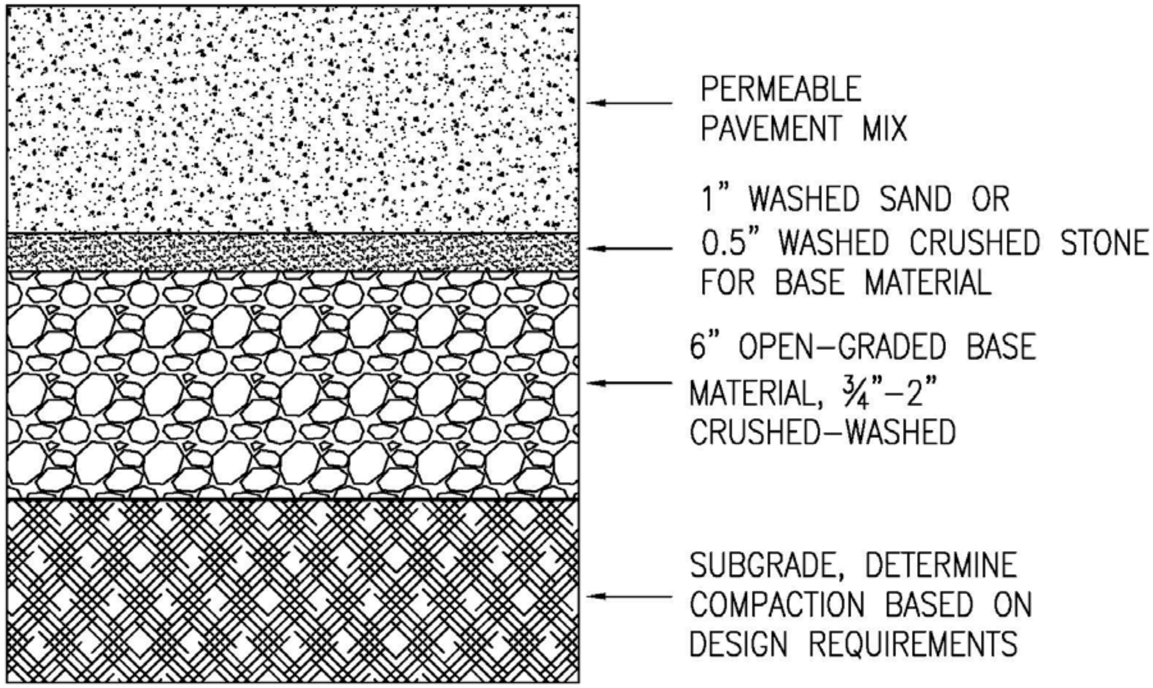
BMP T5.15: Permeable Pavements

Purpose and Definition

Pavement for vehicular and pedestrian travel occupies roughly twice the space of buildings. Stormwater from vehicular pavement can contain significant levels of solids, heavy metals, and hydrocarbon pollutants. Both pedestrian and vehicular pavements also contribute to increased peak flow durations and associated physical habitat degradation of streams and wetlands. Optimum management of stormwater quality and quantity from paved surfaces is, therefore, critical for improving fresh and marine water conditions in Puget Sound.

The general categories of permeable paving systems include:

- ***Porous hot or warm-mix asphalt pavement*** (see Figure 5.3.4) is a flexible pavement similar to standard asphalt that uses a bituminous binder to adhere aggregate together. However, the fine material (sand and finer) is reduced or eliminated and, as a result, voids form between the aggregate in the pavement surface and allow water to infiltrate.
- ***Pervious Portland cement concrete*** (see Figure 5.3.4) is a rigid pavement similar to conventional concrete that uses a cementitious material to bind aggregate together. However, the fine aggregate (sand) component is reduced or eliminated in the gradation and, as a result, voids form between the aggregate in the pavement surface and allow water to infiltrate.



Modified from
City of Portland
Detail SW-110

Figure 5.3.4 – Example of a Permeable Pavement (concrete or asphalt) Section

- ***Permeable interlocking concrete pavements (PICP) and aggregate pavers.*** (see Figure 5.3.5) PICPs are solid, precast, manufactured modular units. The solid pavers are (impervious) high-strength Portland cement concrete manufactured with specialized production equipment. Pavements constructed with these units create joints that are filled with permeable aggregates and installed on an open-graded aggregate bedding course. Aggregate pavers (sometime called pervious pavers) are a different class of pavers from PICP. These include modular precast paving units made with similar sized aggregates bound together with Portland cement concrete with high-strength epoxy or other adhesives. Like PICP, the joints or openings in the units are filled with open-graded aggregate and placed on an open-graded aggregate bedding course. Aggregate pavers are intended for pedestrian use only.

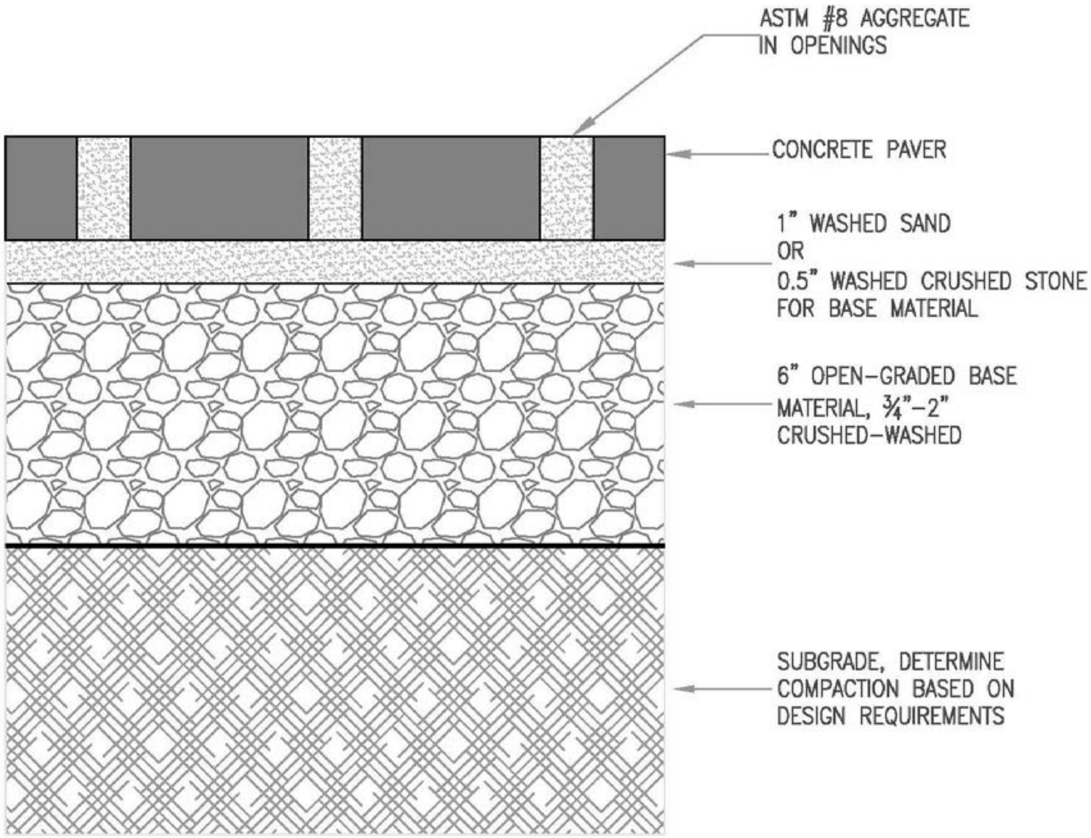


Figure 5.3.5 – Example of a Permeable Paver Section

- ***Grid systems*** include those made of concrete or plastic. Concrete units are precast in a manufacturing facility, packaged and shipped to the site for installation. Plastic grids typically are delivered to the site in rolls or sections. The openings in both grid types are filled with topsoil and grass or permeable aggregate. Plastic grid sections connect together and are pinned into a dense-graded base, or are eventually held in place by the grass root structure. Both systems can be installed on an open-graded aggregate base as well as a dense-graded aggregate base.

Applications and Limitations

Permeable paving surfaces are an important integrated management practice within the LID approach and can be designed to accommodate pedestrian, bicycle and auto traffic while allowing infiltration, treatment and storage of stormwater.

Permeable pavements are appropriate in many applications where traditionally impermeable pavements have been used. Typical applications for permeable paving include parking lots, sidewalks, pedestrian and bike trails, driveways, residential access roads, and emergency and facility maintenance roads.

Limitations:

- No run-on from pervious surfaces is preferred. If runoff comes from minor or incidental pervious areas, those areas must be fully stabilized.
- Unless the pavement, base course, and subgrade have been designed to accept runoff from adjacent impervious surfaces, slope impervious runoff away from the permeable pavement to the maximum extent practicable. Sheet flow from up-gradient impervious areas is not recommended, but permissible if the permeable pavement area is $\geq$ the impervious pavement area.
- Soils must not be tracked onto the wear layer or the base course during construction.

Infeasibility Criteria:

These are conditions that make permeable pavement not required. If a project proponent wishes to use permeable pavement - though not required to because of these feasibility criteria - they may propose a functional design to the local government.

These criteria also apply to impervious pavements that would employ stormwater collection from the surface of impervious pavement with redistribution below the pavement.

Citation of any of the following infeasibility criteria must be based on an evaluation of site-specific conditions and a written recommendation from an appropriate licensed professional (e.g, engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist)

- o Where professional geotechnical evaluation recommends infiltration not be used due to reasonable concerns about erosion, slope failure, or down gradient flooding.
- o Within an area whose ground water drains into an erosion hazard, or landslide hazard area.
- o Where infiltrating and ponded water below new permeable pavement area would compromise adjacent impervious pavements.
- o Where infiltrating water below a new permeable pavement area would threaten existing below grade basements.
- o Where infiltrating water would threaten shoreline structures such as bulkheads.

- Down slope of steep, erosion prone areas that are likely to deliver sediment.
- Where fill soils are used that can become unstable when saturated.
- Excessively steep slopes where water within the aggregate base layer or at the sub-grade surface cannot be controlled by detention structures and may cause erosion and structural failure, or where surface runoff velocities may preclude adequate infiltration at the pavement surface.
- Where permeable pavements can not provide sufficient strength to support heavy loads at industrial facilities such as ports.
- Where installation of permeable pavement would threaten the safety or reliability of pre-existing underground utilities, pre-existing underground storage tanks, or pre-existing road sub-grades.

The following criteria can be cited as reasons for a finding of infeasibility without further justification (though some require professional services to make the observation):

- Within an area designated as an erosion hazard, or landslide hazard.
- Within 50 feet from the top of slopes that are greater than 20%.
- For properties with known soil or ground water contamination (typically federal Superfund sites or state cleanup sites under the Model Toxics Control Act (MTCA)):
    - Within 100 feet of an area known to have deep soil contamination;
    - Where ground water modeling indicates infiltration will likely increase or change the direction of the migration of pollutants in the ground water;
    - Wherever surface soils have been found to be contaminated unless those soils are removed within 10 horizontal feet from the infiltration area;
    - Any area where these facilities are prohibited by an approved cleanup plan under the state Model Toxics Control Act or Federal Superfund Law, or an environmental covenant under Chapter 64.70 RCW.
- Within 100 feet of a closed or active landfill.
- Within 100 feet of a drinking water well, or a spring used for drinking water supply, if the pavement is a pollution-generating surface.
- Within 10 feet of a small on-site sewage disposal drainfield, including reserve areas, and grey water reuse systems. For setbacks from a “large on-site sewage disposal system”, see Chapter 246-272B WAC.
- Within 10 feet of any underground storage tank and connecting underground pipes, regardless of tank size. As used in these criteria, an underground storage tank means any tank used to store petroleum

products, chemicals, or liquid hazardous wastes of which 10% or more of the storage volume (including volume in the connecting piping system) is beneath the ground surface.

- At multi-level parking garages, and over culverts and bridges.
- Where the site design cannot avoid putting pavement in areas likely to have long-term excessive sediment deposition after construction (e.g., construction and landscaping material yards).
- Where the site cannot reasonably be designed to have a porous asphalt surface at less than 5 percent slope, or a pervious concrete surface at less than 10 percent slope, or a permeable interlocking concrete pavement surface (where appropriate) at less than 12 percent slope. Grid systems upper slope limit can range from 6 to 12 percent; check with manufacturer and local supplier.
- Where the native soils below a pollution-generating permeable pavement (e.g., road or parking lot) do not meet the soil suitability criteria for providing treatment. See SSC-6 in Section 3.3.7 of Volume III. Note: In these instances, the local government has the option of requiring a six-inch layer of media meeting the soil suitability criteria or the sand filter specification as a condition of construction.
- Where seasonal high ground water or an underlying impermeable/low permeable layer would create saturated conditions within one foot of the bottom of the lowest gravel base course.
- Where underlying soils are unsuitable for supporting traffic loads when saturated. Soils meeting a California Bearing Ratio of 5% are considered suitable for residential access roads.
- Where appropriate field testing indicates soils have a measured (a.k.a., initial) native soil saturated hydraulic conductivity less than 0.3 inches per hour. (Note: In these instances, unless other infeasibility restrictions apply, roads and parking lots may be built with an underdrain, preferably elevated within the base course, if flow control benefits are desired.)
- Roads that receive more than very low traffic volumes, and areas having more than very low truck traffic. Roads with a projected average daily traffic volume of 400 vehicles or less are very low volume roads (AASHTO, 2001)(U.S. Dept. of Transportation, 2013). Areas with very low truck traffic volumes are roads and other areas not subject to through truck traffic but may receive up to weekly use by utility trucks (e.g., garbage, recycling), daily school bus use, and multiple daily use by pick-up trucks, mail/parcel delivery trucks, and maintenance vehicles. Note: This infeasibility criterion does not extend to sidewalks and other non-traffic bearing surfaces.

- o Where replacing existing impervious surfaces unless the existing surface is a non-pollution generating surface over an outwash soil with a saturated hydraulic conductivity of four inches per hour or greater.
- o At sites defined as "high use sites" in Volume I of this manual.
- o In areas with "industrial activity" as identified in 40 CFR 122.26(b)(14).
- o Where the risk of concentrated pollutant spills is more likely such as gas stations, truck stops, and industrial chemical storage sites.
- o Where routine, heavy applications of sand occur in frequent snow zones to maintain traction during weeks of snow and ice accumulation.

A local government may designate geographic areas within which permeable pavement, or certain types of permeable pavement, may be designated as infeasible due to year-round, seasonal or periodic high groundwater conditions, or due to inadequate infiltration rates. Designations must be based upon a preponderance of field data, collected within the area of concern, that indicate a high likelihood of failure to achieve the minimum groundwater clearance or infiltration rates identified in the above infeasibility criteria. The local government must develop a technical report, and make it available upon request by the Dept. of Ecology. The technical report must be authored by (a) professional(s) with appropriate expertise (e.g., registered engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or certified soil scientist), and document the location and pertinent values/observations of data that were used to recommend the designation and boundaries for the geographic area. The types of pertinent data include, but are not limited to:

- Standing water heights or evidence of recent saturated conditions in observation wells, test pits, test holes, and well logs.
- Observations of areal extent and time of surface ponding, including local government or professional observations of high water tables, frequent or long durations of standing water, springs, wetlands, and/or frequent flooding.
- Results of infiltration tests

In addition, a local government can map areas that meet a specific infeasibility criterion listed above provided they have an adequate data basis. Criteria that are most amenable to mapping are:

- Where land for bioretention is within an area designated by the local government as an erosion hazard, or landslide hazard
- Within 50 feet from the top of slopes that are greater than 20% and over 10 feet vertical relief
- Within 100 feet of a closed or active landfill

Design Guidelines

Ecology has listed below the critical design criteria you must consider when designing permeable pavement. Local governments can adopt alternative design criteria, as long as it does not conflict with the criteria listed below. For modeling guidance of permeable pavements, refer to Appendix III-C of Volume III, and the 2012 WWHM User Manual.

You can find additional guidance for permeable pavement design in the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Subgrade

- Compact the subgrade to the minimum necessary for structural stability. Two guidelines currently used to specify subgrade compaction are “firm and unyielding” (qualitative), and 90- 92% Standard Proctor (quantitative). Do not allow heavy compaction due to heavy equipment operation. The subgrade should not be subject to truck traffic.
- To prevent compaction when installing the aggregate base, the following steps (back-dumping) should be followed: 1) the aggregate base is dumped onto the subgrade from the edge of the installation and aggregate is then pushed out onto the subgrade; 2) trucks then dump subsequent loads from on top of the aggregate base as the installation progresses.
- Use on soil types A through C.

Separation or Bottom Filter Layer (recommended but optional)

- A layer of sand or crushed stone (0.5 inch or smaller) graded flat is recommended to promote infiltration across the surface, stabilize the base layer, protect underlying soil from compaction, and serve as a transition between the base course and the underlying geotextile material.

Base material

- Local governments should adopt their own minimum base material requirements as they see necessary for support of flexible pavements. Many design combinations are possible. The material must be free draining. The municipality should determine and publish estimates of the void space for each standard base material allowed in their jurisdiction.

- To increase infiltration, improve flow attenuation and reduce structural problems associated with subgrade erosion on slopes, impermeable check dams may be placed on the subgrade and below the pavement surface (See Figure 5.3.6). Check dams should have an overflow drain invert placed at the maximum ponding depth. The distance between berms will vary depending on slope, flow control goals and cost.

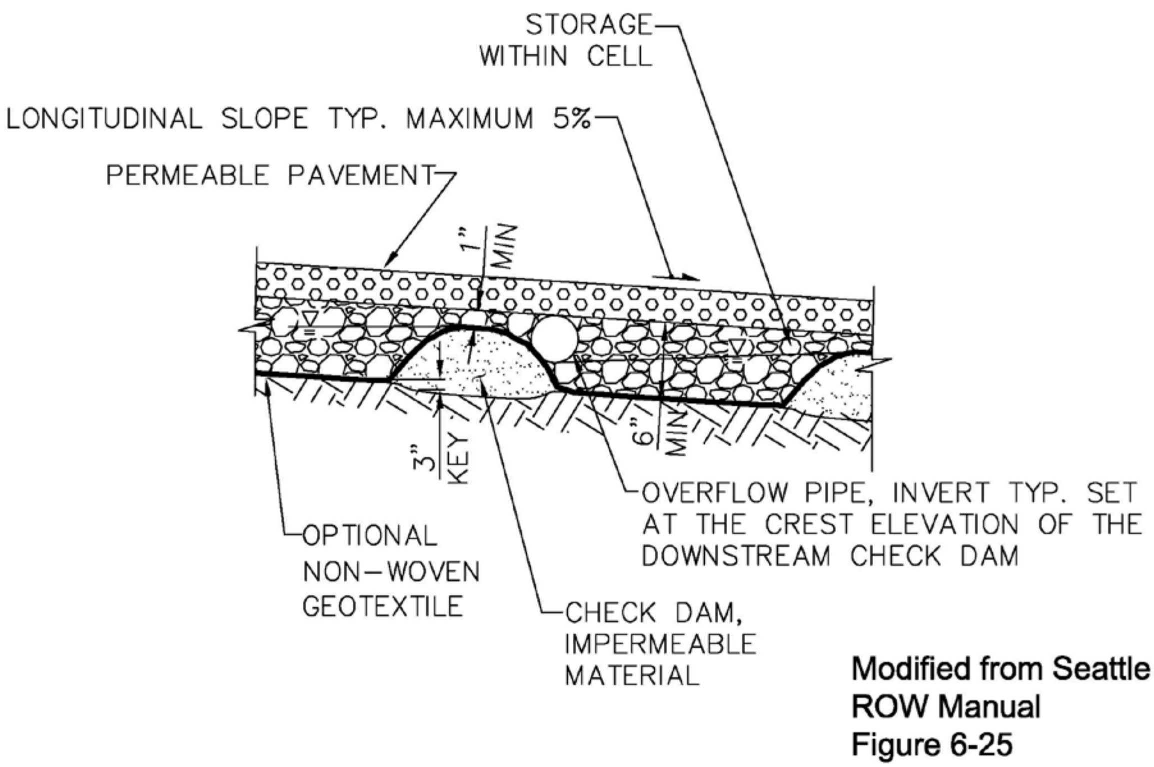


Figure 5.3.6 – Example of a check dam along a sloped section of permeable pavement

Wearing layer

- For all surface types, a minimum initial infiltration rate of 20 inches per hour is necessary. To improve the probability of long-term performance, significantly higher initial infiltration rates are desirable.
- ***Porous Asphalt:*** Products must have adequate void spaces through which water can infiltrate. A void space within the range of 16 – 25% is typical.
- ***Pervious Concrete:*** Products must have adequate void spaces through which water can infiltrate. A void space within the range of 15 – 35% is typical..
- ***Grid/lattice systems filled with gravel, sand, or a soil of finer particles with or without grass****:* The fill material must be at least a minimum of 2 inches of sand, gravel, or soil.
- ***Permeable Interlocking Concrete Pavement and Aggregate Pavers*****:** Pavement joints should be filled with No. 8, 89 or 9 stone.

Drainage conveyance

Roads should still be designed with adequate drainage conveyance facilities as if the road surface was impermeable. Roads with base courses that extend below the surrounding grade should have a designed drainage flow path to safely move water away from the road prism and into the roadside drainage facilities. Use of perforated storm drains to collect and transport infiltrated water from under the road surface will result in less effective designs and less flow reduction benefit.

Underdrains

Note that if an underdrain is placed at or near the bottom of the aggregate base in a permeable pavement design, the permeable pavement is no longer considered an LID BMP and cannot be used to satisfy Minimum Requirement #5. However, designs utilizing an underdrain that is elevated within the aggregate base course to protect the pavement wearing course from saturation is considered an LID BMP and can be used to satisfy Minimum Requirement #5. See Appendix III-C and the WWHM Users Manual for guidance in modeling permeable pavements with underdrains.

Acceptance test

- Driveways can be tested by simply throwing a bucket of water on the surface. If anything other than a scant amount puddles or runs off the surface, additional testing is necessary prior to accepting the construction.
- Roads may be initially tested with the bucket test. In addition, test the initial infiltration with a 6-inch ring, sealed at the base to the road surface, or with a sprinkler infiltrometer. Wet the road surface continuously for 10 minutes. Begin test to determine compliance with 20 inches per hour minimum rate. Use of ASTM C1701 is also recommended.

Stormwater-related Design Procedures See Section 3.4 in Volume III of this manual for more specific guidance regarding required field testing, assignment of infiltration rate correction factors, project submission requirements, and modeling.

Runoff Model Representation See Appendix III-C for runoff modeling guidance under WWHM3 and under WWHM 2012.

Maintenance Please see table 22 within Table 4.5.2 in Chapter 4 of this Volume.

Maintenance recommendations for all facilities:

- Erosion and introduction of sediment from surrounding land uses should be strictly controlled after construction by amending exposed soil with compost and mulch, planting exposed areas as soon as possible, and armoring outfall areas.
- Surrounding landscaped areas should be inspected regularly and possible sediment sources controlled immediately.
- Installations can be monitored for adequate or designed minimum infiltration rates by observing drainage immediately after heavier rainstorms for standing water or infiltration tests using ASTM C1701.
- Clean permeable pavement surfaces to maintain infiltration capacity at least once or twice annually following recommendations below.
- Utility cuts should be backfilled with the same aggregate base used under the permeable paving to allow continued conveyance of stormwater through the base, and to prevent migration of fines from the standard base aggregate to the more open graded permeable base material (Diniz, 1980).
- Ice build up on permeable pavement is reduced and the surface becomes free and clear more rapidly compared to conventional pavement. For western Washington, deicing and sand application may be reduced or eliminated and the permeable pavement installation should be assessed during winter months and the winter traction program developed from those observations. Vacuum and sweeping frequency will likely be required more often if sand is applied.

Porous asphalt and pervious concrete

- Clean surfaces using suction, sweeping with suction or high-pressure wash and suction (sweeping alone is minimally effective). Hand held pressure washers are effective for cleaning void spaces and appropriate for smaller areas such as sidewalks.
- Small utility cuts can be repaired with conventional asphalt or concrete if small batches of permeable material are not available or are too expensive.

Permeable pavers

- ICPI recommends cleaning if the measured infiltration rate falls below 10 in/hr.
- Use sweeping with suction when surface and debris are dry 1-2 times annually (see next bullet for exception). Apply vacuum to a paver test section and adjust settings to remove all visible sediment without excess uptake of aggregate from paver openings or joints. If necessary replace No 8, 89 or 9 stone to specified depth within the paver openings. Washing or power washing should not be used to remove debris and sediment in the openings between the pavers (Smith, 2000).
- For badly clogged installations, wet the surface and vacuumed aggregate to a depth that removes all visible fine sediment and replace with clean aggregate.
- If necessary use No 8, 89 or 9 stone for winter traction rather than sand (sand will accelerate clogging).
- Pavers can be removed individually and replaced when utility work is complete.
- Replace broken pavers as necessary to prevent structural instability in the surface.
- The structure of the top edge of the paver blocks reduces chipping from snowplows. For additional protection, skids on the corner of plow blades are recommended.
- For a model maintenance agreement see “Permeable Interlocking Concrete Pavements” (Smith, 2011).

Plastic or Concrete grid systems

- Remove and replace top course aggregate if clogged with sediment or contaminated (vacuum trucks for stormwater collection basins can be used to remove aggregate).
- Remove and replace grid segments where three or more adjacent rings are broken or damaged.
- Replenish aggregate material in grid as needed.
- Snowplows should use skids to elevate blades slightly above the gravel surface to prevent loss of top course aggregate and damage to plastic grid.
- For grass installations, use normal turf maintenance procedures except do not aerate. Use very slow release fertilizers if needed.

BMP T5.16: Tree Retention and Tree Planting

Purpose and Definition

Trees provide flow control via interception, transpiration, and increased infiltration. Additional environmental benefits include improved air quality, carbon sequestration, reduced heat island effect, pollutant removal, and habitat preservation or formation.

When implemented in accordance with the criteria outlined below, retained and newly planted trees receive credits toward meeting flow control requirements.

The degree of flow control provided by a tree depends on the tree type (i.e., evergreen or deciduous), canopy area, and whether or not the tree canopy overhangs impervious surfaces. Flow control credits may be applied to project sites of all sizes.

Tree Retention Design Criteria

Setbacks of proposed infrastructure from existing trees are critical considerations. Tree protection requirements limit grading and other disturbances in proximity to the tree.

Existing tree species and location must be clearly shown on submittal drawings.

Trees must be viable for long-term retention (i.e., in good health and compatible with proposed construction).

Tree size: To receive flow control credit, retained trees shall have a minimum 6 inches diameter at breast height (DBH). DBH is defined as the outside bark diameter at 4.5 feet above the ground on the uphill side of a tree. For existing trees smaller than this, the newly planted tree credit may be applied.

The retained tree canopy area shall be measured as the area within the tree drip line. A drip line is the line encircling the base of a tree, which is delineated by a vertical line extending from the outer limit of a tree's branch tips down to the ground. If trees are clustered, overlapping canopies are not double counted.

Tree location: Flow control credit for retained trees depends upon proximity to ground level impervious or other hard surfaces. To receive a credit, the existing tree must be on the development site and within 20 feet of new and/or replaced ground level impervious or other hard surfaces (e.g., driveway or patio) on the development site. Distance from impervious or other hard surfaces is measured from the tree trunk center.

An arborist report may be required if impervious surface is proposed within the critical root zone of the existing tree. The critical root zone is defined as the line encircling the base of the tree with half the diameter of the dripline. If the arborist report concludes that impervious surface should not be placed within 20 feet of the tree and canopy overlap with impervious surface is still anticipated given a longer setback, the higher tree flow control credit may be approved.

Protection during construction: The existing tree roots, trunk, and canopy shall be fenced and protected during construction activities.

Retention and protection: Trees shall be retained, maintained and protected on the site after construction and for the life of the development or until any approved redevelopment occurs in the future. Trees that are removed or die shall be replaced with like species during the next planting season (typically in fall). Trees shall be pruned according to industry standards (ANSI A 300 standards).

Tree Retention Flow Control Credit

Flow control credits for retained trees are provided in Table 5.3.1 by tree type. These credits can be applied to reduce impervious or other hard surface area requiring flow control. Credits are given as a percentage of the existing tree canopy area. The minimum credit for existing trees ranges from 50 to 100 square feet.

Table 5.3.1 Flow Control Credits for Retained Trees.

Tree Type	Credit
Evergreen	20% of canopy area (minimum of 100 sq. ft./tree
Deciduous	10% of canopy area (minimum of 50 sq. ft./tree

Impervious/Hard Surface Area Mitigated =
$(\Sigma \text{ Evergreen Canopy Area x .2}) + (\Sigma \text{ Deciduous Canopy Area x 0.1})$

Tree credits are not applicable to trees in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control credit. Credits are also not applicable to trees in planter boxes. The total tree credit for retained and newly planted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of impervious or other hard surface requiring mitigation.

Newly Planted Tree Design Criteria

Tree Species: Each jurisdiction should adopt a list of approved tree species for stormwater credit. An example list of trees from the City of Seattle's tree list is included in Appendix V-E.

Tree Size: To receive flow control credit, new deciduous trees at the time of planting shall be at least 1.5 inches in diameter measured 6 inches above the ground. New evergreen trees shall be at least 4 feet tall.

Tree Location: Trees shall be sited according to sun, soil, and moisture requirements. Planting locations shall be selected to ensure that sight distances and appropriate setbacks are maintained given mature height, size, and rooting depths. Similar to retained trees, flow control credit for newly planted trees depends upon proximity to ground level impervious surfaces. To receive a credit, the tree must be planted on the development site and within 20 feet of new and/or replaced ground level impervious surfaces (e.g., driveway, patio, or parking lot). Distance from impervious surfaces is measured from the edge of the surface to the center of the tree at ground level. To help ensure tree survival and canopy coverage, the minimum tree spacing for newly planted trees shall accommodate mature tree spread. In no circumstance shall flow control credit be given for new tree density exceeding 10 feet on center spacing.

Plant Material and Planting Specifications

Recommended guidelines for planting materials and methods are provided in City of Seattle Standard Specifications 8-02 and 9-14, and Standard Plans 100a, 100b, and 101.

Irrigation: Provisions shall be made for supplemental irrigation during the first three growing seasons after installation to help ensure tree survival.

Tree retention and protection: Trees shall be retained, maintained and protected on the site after construction and for the life of the development as required for retained trees.

Newly Planted Tree Flow Control Credits

Flow control credits for newly planted trees are provided in Table 5.3.2 by tree type. These credits can be applied to reduce the impervious or other hard surface area requiring flow control. Credits range from 20 to 50 square feet per tree.

Table 5.3.2. Flow Control Credits for Newly Planted Trees.

Tree Type	**Credit**
Evergreen	50 sq. ft. per tree
Deciduous	20 sq. ft. per tree

Impervious/Hard Surface Area Mitigated = Σ Number of Trees x Credit (sq. ft.)

Tree credits are not applicable to trees in native vegetation areas used for flow dispersion or other flow control credit. Credits are also not applicable to trees in planter boxes. The total tree credit for retained and newly planted trees shall not exceed 25 percent of impervious or other hard surface requiring mitigation.

BMP T5.17: Vegetated Roofs

Purpose and Definition

Vegetated roofs (also known as ecoroofs and green roofs) are thin layers of engineered soil and vegetation constructed on top of conventional flat or sloped roofs. Vegetated roofs can provide multiple benefits, including stormwater volume reduction and flow attenuation. The range of benefits for a green roof depends on a number of design factors such as plant selection, depth and composition of soil mix, location of the roof, orientation and slope, weather patterns, and the maintenance plan.

All vegetated roofs consist of four basic components: a waterproof membrane, a drainage layer, a light-weight growth medium, and vegetation (see Figure 5.3.7). In addition to these basic components, many systems may also incorporate a protection layer and root barrier to preserve the integrity of the waterproof membrane, a separation/filter layer to stabilize fine particles, capillary mats and mulch/mats to retain moisture and prevent surface erosion due to rain and wind scour.

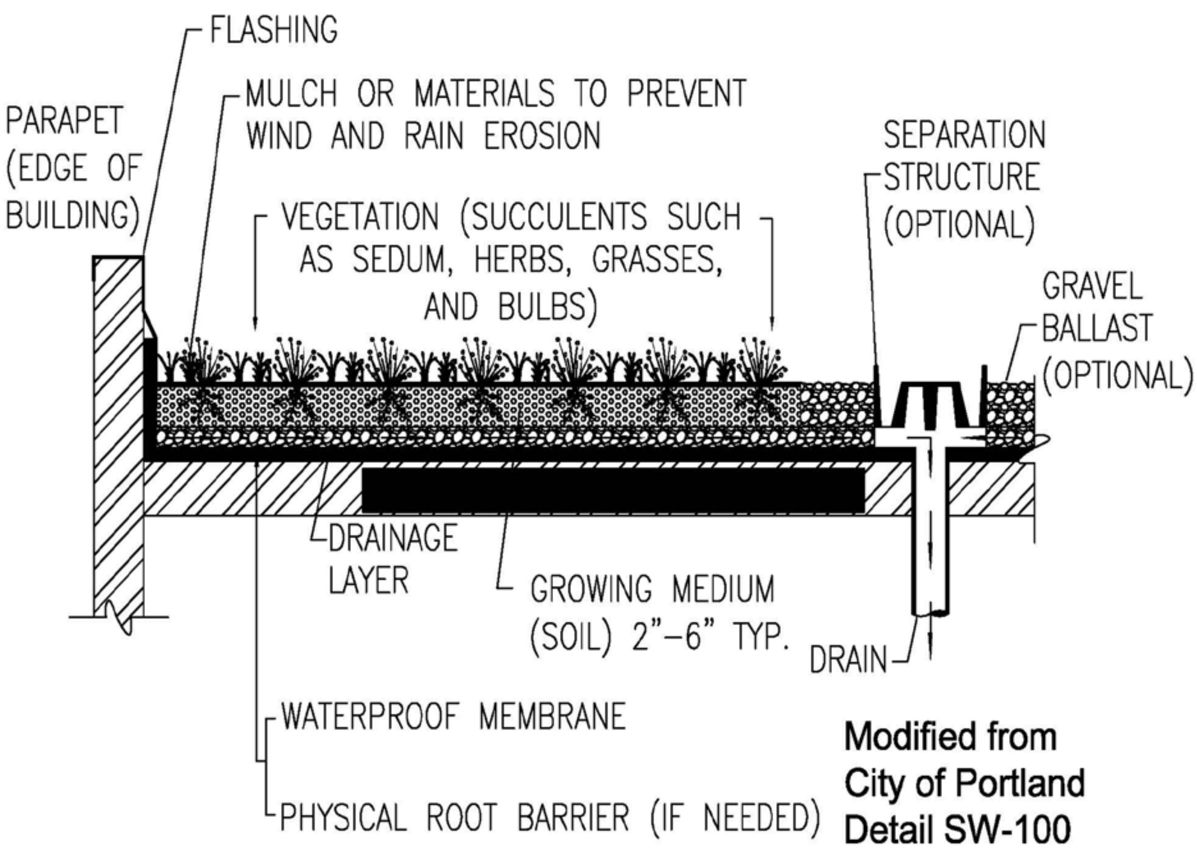


Figure 5.3.7 – Example of a Vegetated Roof Section

Applications and Limitations

While vegetated roofs can be installed on slopes up to 40 degrees, slopes between 5 and 20 degrees (1:12 and 5:12) are most suitable and can provide natural drainage by gravity. Roofs with slopes greater than 10 degrees (2:12) require an analysis of engineered slope stability.

Vegetated roofs are not included in the lists referenced under Minimum Requirement #5. However, they are an option available to project designers who want to use other methods to meet the LID Performance Standard option of Minimum Requirement #5.

Design Criteria

The reader is directed to the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012), for a more detailed description of the components of and design criteria for vegetated roofs. It also includes references to other sources of information and design guidance.

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Runoff Model Representation

See Appendix III-C in Volume III for a summary of how vegetated roofs may be entered into the approved continuous runoff models.

BMP T5.18: Reverse Slope Sidewalks

Purpose and Definition

Reverse slope sidewalks are sloped to drain away from the road and onto adjacent vegetated areas.

Design Criteria

- Greater than 10 feet of vegetated surface downslope that is not directly connected into the storm drainage system.
- Vegetated area receiving flow from sidewalk must be native soil or meet guidelines in BMP T5.13.

Runoff Model Representation

- In WWHM 3, enter sidewalk area as lawn/landscaped area over the underlying soil type. For WWHM 2012, see Appendix III-C in Volume III.

BMP T5.19: Minimal Excavation Foundations

Purpose and Definition

Low impact foundations are defined as those techniques that do not disturb, or minimally disturb the natural soil profile within the footprint of the structure. This preserves most of the hydrologic properties of the native soil. Pin foundations are an example of a minimal excavation foundation.

Applications and Limitations

- To minimize soil compaction, heavy equipment cannot be used within or immediately surrounding the building. Terracing of the foundation area may be accomplished by tracked, blading equipment not exceeding 650 psf.

Runoff Model

- Where residential roof runoff is dispersed on the up gradient side of a

Representation

structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B, the tributary roof area may be modeled as pasture on the native soil.

- Where "step forming" is used on a slope, the square footage of roof that can be modeled as pasture must be reduced to account for lost soils. In "step forming," the building area is terraced in cuts of limited depth. This results in a series of level plateaus on which to erect the form boards. The following equation (suggested by Rick Gagliano of Pin Foundations, Inc.) can be used to reduce the roof area that can be modeled as pasture.

$$A_1 - \frac{dC(.5)}{dP} \times A_1 = A_2$$

A_1 = roof area draining to up gradient side of structure

dC = depth of cuts into the soil profile

dP = permeable depth of soil (The A horizon plus an additional few inches of the B horizon where roots permeate into ample pore space of soil).

A_2 = roof area that can be modeled as pasture on the native soil

- If roof runoff is dispersed down gradient of the structure in accordance with the design criteria and guidelines in BMP T5.10B, AND there is at least 50 feet of vegetated flow path through native material or lawn/landscape area that meets the guidelines in BMP T5.13, the tributary roof areas may be modeled as lawn/landscaped area.

BMP T5.20: Rainwater Harvesting

Purpose and Definition

Rainwater harvesting is the capture and storage of rainwater for beneficial use. Roof runoff may be routed to cisterns for storage and nonpotable uses such as irrigation, toilet flushing, and cold water laundry. Rainwater harvesting can help reduce peak stormwater flows, durations, and volumes. The amount of reduction achieved with cistern storage is a function of contributing area, storage volume, and rainwater use rate.

Design Criteria

- 100% reuse of the annual average runoff volume (use continuous runoff model to get annual average for drainage area).
- System designs involving interior uses must have a monthly water balance that demonstrates adequate capacity for each month and reuse of all stored water annually.

Runoff Model Representation

- Do not enter drainage area into the runoff model.

Other Criteria

- Restrict use to 4 homes/acre housing and lower densities when the captured water is solely for outdoor use.

BMP T5.30: Full Dispersion

Purpose and Definition

This BMP allows for "fully dispersing" runoff from impervious surfaces and cleared areas of development sites that protect at least 65% of the site (or a threshold discharge area on the site) in a forest or native condition.

Applications and Limitations

- Rural single family residential developments should use these dispersion BMPs wherever possible to minimize effective impervious surface to less than 10% of the development site.
- Other types of development that retain 65% of the site (or a threshold discharge area on the site) in a forested or native condition may also use these BMPs to avoid triggering the flow control facility requirement.
- The preserved area may be a previously cleared area that has been replanted in accordance with native vegetation landscape specifications described within this BMP.
- The preserved area should be situated to minimize the clearing of existing forest cover, to maximize the preservation of wetlands (though the wetland area and any streams and lakes do not count toward the 65% forest or native condition area), and to buffer stream corridors.
- The preserved area should be placed in a separate tract or protected through recorded easements for individual lots.
- The preserved area should be shown on all property maps and should be clearly marked during clearing and construction on the site.
- All trees within the preserved area at the time of permit application shall be retained, aside from approved timber harvest activities regulated under WAC Title 222, except for Class IV General Forest Practices that are conversions from timberland to other uses, and the removal of dangerous or diseased trees.
- The preserved area may be used for passive recreation and related facilities, including pedestrian and bicycle trails, nature viewing areas, fishing and camping areas, and other similar activities that do not require permanent structures, provided that cleared areas and areas of compacted soil associated with these areas and facilities do not exceed eight percent of the preserved area.
- The preserved area may contain utilities and utility easements, but not septic systems. Utilities are defined as potable and wastewater underground piping, underground wiring, and power and telephone poles.

Minimum Design Requirements for Residential Projects

Developments that preserve 65% of a site (or a threshold discharge area of a site) in a forested or native condition, can disperse runoff from the developed portion of the site into the native vegetation area as long as the developed areas draining to the native vegetation do not have impervious areas that exceed 10% of the entire site.

Where a development has less than 65% of a site available to maintain or create into a forested or native condition, that area may still be used for full dispersion of a portion of the developed area. The ratio of the native vegetation area to the impervious area, which is dispersed into the native vegetation, must not be less than 65 to 10. The lawn and landscaping areas associated with the impervious areas may also be dispersed into the native vegetation area. The lawn and landscaped area must comply with BMP T5.13. All design requirements listed also must be met.

The portion of the developed area which is not managed through full dispersion can be considered a separate project site. It must be evaluated against the thresholds in Figures 2.2 and 2.3 of Volume 1, whichever is appropriate, to determine the applicable minimum requirements.

Additional impervious areas above the 10% are allowed, but should not drain to the native vegetation area, and are subject to the thresholds, treatment and flow control requirements of this stormwater manual.

Within the context of this dispersion option, the impervious surfaces that are over and above the 10% maximum can be routed into an appropriately sized dry well or into an infiltration basin that meets the flow control standard and does not overflow into the forested or native vegetation area.

Runoff must be dispersed into the native area in accordance with one or more of the dispersion devices, and in accordance with the design criteria and limits for those devices, cited in this BMP. A native vegetation flow path of at least 100 feet in length (25 feet for sheet flow from a non-native pervious surface) must be available along the flowpath that runoff would follow upon discharge from a dispersion device cited in this BMP. The native vegetated flowpath must meet all of the following criteria:

- The flow path must be over native vegetated surface
- The flow path must be on-site or in an off-site tract or easement area reserved for such dispersion
- The slope of the flowpath must be no steeper than 15% for any 20-foot reach of the flowpath. Slopes up to 33% are allowed where level spreaders are located upstream of the dispersion area and at sites where vegetation can be established.
- The flowpath must be located between the dispersion device and any downstream drainage feature such as a pipe, ditch, stream, river, pond, lake, or wetland.

- The flowpaths for adjacent dispersion devices must be sufficiently spaced to prevent overlap of flows in the flowpath areas.

For sites with on-site sewage disposal systems, the discharge of runoff from dispersion devices must be located downslope of the primary and reserve drainfield areas. This requirement may be waived by the permitting jurisdiction if site topography clearly prevents discharged flows from intersecting the drainfield.

Dispersion devices are not allowed in critical area buffers or on slopes steeper than 20%. Dispersion devices proposed on slopes steeper than 15% or within 50 feet of a geologically hazardous area (RCW 36.70A.030(5) must be approved by a geotechnical engineer or engineering geologist.

The dispersion of runoff must not create flooding or erosion impacts.

- **Roof Downspouts**

  Roof surfaces that comply with the Downspout Full Infiltration BMP T5.10A, are considered to be "fully infiltrated" (i.e., zero percent effective imperviousness). All other roof surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" (i.e., at or approaching zero percent effective imperviousness) only if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), AND if they either: 1) comply with the Downspout Dispersion requirements of BMP T5.10B, but with vegetated flow paths of 100 feet or more through the native vegetation preserved area; or 2) disperse the roof runoff along with the road runoff in accordance with the roadway dispersion BMP section below.

- **Driveway Dispersion**

  Driveway surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), AND if they either: 1) comply with BMP 5.11 for concentrated flow and BMP T5.12 for sheet flow- and have flow paths of 100 feet or more through native vegetation; or, 2) disperse driveway runoff along with the road runoff in accordance with the roadway dispersion BMP section below.

- **Roadway Dispersion BMPs**

  Roadway surfaces are considered to be "fully dispersed" if they are within a threshold discharge area that is or will be more than 65% forested (or native vegetative cover) and less than 10% impervious (total), AND if they comply with the following dispersion requirements:

1. The road section shall be designed to minimize collection and concentration of roadway runoff. Sheet flow over roadway fill slopes (i.e., where roadway subgrade is above adjacent right-of-way) should be used wherever possible to avoid concentration.
2. When it is necessary to collect and concentrate runoff from the roadway and adjacent upstream areas (e.g., in a ditch on a cut slope), concentrated flows shall be incrementally discharged from the ditch via cross culverts or at the ends of cut sections. These incremental discharges of newly concentrated flows shall not exceed 0.5 cfs at any one discharge point from a ditch for the 100-year runoff event. Where flows at a particular ditch discharge point were already concentrated under existing site conditions (e.g., in a natural channel that crosses the roadway alignment), the 0.5-cfs limit would be in addition to the existing concentrated peak flows.
3. Ditch discharge points with up to 0.2 cfs discharge for the peak 100-year flow shall use rock pads or dispersion trenches to disperse flows. Ditch discharge points with between 0.2 and 0.5 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow shall use only dispersion trenches to disperse flows.
4. Dispersion trenches shall be designed to accept surface flows (free discharge) from a pipe, culvert, or ditch end, shall be aligned perpendicular to the flowpath, and shall be minimum 2 feet by 2 feet in section, 50 feet in length, filled with ¾-inch to 1½-inch washed rock, and provided with a level notched grade board (see Figure 5.3.2). Manifolds may be used to split flows up to 2 cfs discharge for the 100-year peak flow between up to 4 trenches. Dispersion trenches shall have a minimum spacing of 50 feet between centerlines.
5. Flowpaths from adjacent discharge points must not intersect within the 100-foot flowpath lengths, and dispersed flow from a discharge point must not be intercepted by another discharge point. To enhance the flow control and water quality effects of dispersion, the flowpath shall not exceed 15% slope, and shall be located within designated open space.

   Note: Runoff may be conveyed to an area meeting these flowpath criteria.
6. Ditch discharge points shall be located a minimum of 100 feet upgradient of steep slopes (i.e., slopes steeper than 40%), wetlands, and streams.
7. Where the Local Plan Approval Authority determines there is a potential for significant adverse impacts downstream (e.g., erosive steep slopes or existing downstream drainage problems),

dispersion of roadway runoff may not be allowed, or other measures may be required.

- **Cleared Area Dispersion BMPs**

The runoff from cleared areas that are comprised of bare soil, non-native landscaping, lawn, and/or pasture of up to 25 feet in flow path length can be considered to be "fully dispersed" if it is dispersed through at least 25 feet of native vegetation in accordance with the following criteria:

1. The topography of the non-native pervious surface must be such that runoff will not concentrate prior to discharge to the dispersal area.
2. Slopes within the dispersal area should be no steeper than 15%.

If the width of the non-native pervious surface is greater than 25 feet, the vegetated flowpath segment must be extended 1 foot for every 3 feet of width beyond 25 feet up to a maximum width of 250 feet.

Minimum Design Requirements for Public Road Projects

Applicability:

These criteria apply to the construction of public roads not within the context of residential, commercial, or industrial site development. They will likely only be implementable on roads outside of the urban growth areas where roadside areas are not planned for urban density development.

1) <u>Uncollected or natural dispersion into adjacent vegetated areas</u> (i.e., sheet flow into the dispersion area)

   Full dispersion credit (i.e., no other treatment or flow control required) for sites that meet the following criteria:

   a) *Outwash soils* (Type A – sands and sandy gravels, possibly some Type B – loamy sands) that have an initial saturated hydraulic conductivity rate of 4 inches per hour or greater. The saturated hydraulic conductivity must be based on a Pilot Infiltration Test or the Soil Grain Size Analysis method as identified in Section 3 of Volume III, or another method as allowed by the local government.
      - Up to 20 feet of impervious flow path needs 10 feet of dispersion area width.
      - Each additional foot of impervious flow path needs 0.25 feet of dispersion area width.

   b) *Other soils:* (Types C and D and some Type B not meeting the criterion in 1a above)
      - Dispersion area must have 6.5 feet of width for every 1 foot width of impervious area draining to it. A minimum distance of 100 feet is necessary.

c) *Criteria applicable to all soil types:*

- Depth to the average annual maximum ground water elevation should be at least 3 feet.
- Impervious surface flow path must be ≤ 75 ft. Pervious flow path must be ≤ 150 ft. Pervious flow paths are up-gradient road side slopes that run onto the road and down-gradient road side slopes that precede the dispersion area.
- Lateral slope of impervious drainage area should be ≤ 8%. Road side slopes must be ≤ 25%. Road side slopes do not count as part of the dispersion area unless native vegetation is re-established and slopes are less than 15%. Road shoulders that are paved or graveled to withstand occasional vehicle loading count as impervious surface.
- Longitudinal slope of road should be ≤ 5%.
- Length of dispersion area should be equivalent to length of road.
- Average longitudinal (parallel to road) slope of dispersion area should be ≤ 15%.
- Average lateral slope of dispersion area should be ≤ 15%.

2) <u>Channelized (collected and re-dispersed) stormwater into areas with (a) native vegetation or (b) cleared land in areas outside of Urban Growth Areas that do not have a natural or man-made drainage system.</u>

Full dispersion credit (i.e., no other treatment or flow control required) is given to projects that meet the following criteria:

a) *Outwash soils* (Type A – sands and sandy gravels, possibly some Type B – loamy sands) that have an initial saturated hydraulic conductivity rate of 4 inches per hour or greater. The saturated hydraulic conductivity must be based on field results using procedures (Pilot Infiltration Test or Soil Grain Size Analysis Method) identified in Section 3 of Volume III, or another method approved by the local government.

- Dispersion area should be at least ½ of the impervious drainage area.

b) Other soils: (Types C and D and some Type B not meeting the criterion in 2a above)

- Dispersion area must have 6.5 feet of width for every 1 foot width of impervious area draining to it. A minimum distance of 100 feet is necessary.

c) *Other criteria applicable to all soil types*:

- Depth to the average annual maximum ground water elevation should be at least three feet.

- Channelized flow must be re-dispersed to produce longest possible flow path.
- Flows must be evenly dispersed across the dispersion area.
- Flows must be dispersed using rock pads and dispersion techniques as specified under Roadway Dispersion BMPs.
- Approved energy dissipation techniques may be used.
- Limited to on-site (associated with the road) flows.
- Length of dispersion area should be equivalent to length of the road.
- Average longitudinal and lateral slopes of the dispersion area should be $\leq$ 8%.
- The slope of any flowpath segment must be no steeper than 15% for any 20-foot reach of the flowpath segment.

3) Engineered dispersion of stormwater runoff into an area with engineered soils

Full dispersion credit (i.e., no other treatment or flow control required) is given to projects that meet the following criteria:

- Stormwater can be dispersed via sheet flow or via collection and re-dispersion in accordance with the techniques specified under Roadway Dispersion BMPs.
- Depth to the average annual maximum ground water elevation should be at least three feet.
- Type C and D soils must be compost-amended following guidelines in BMP T5.13. The guidance document *Guidelines and Resources for Implementing Soil Quality and Depth BMP T5.13 in WDOE Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* can be used, or an approved equivalent soil quality and depth specification approved by Ecology. The guidance document is available at http://www.soilsforsalmon.org.
  - o Dispersion area must meet the 65 to 10 ratio for full dispersion credit.
- Type A and B soils that meet or exceed the 4 inches per hour initial saturated hydraulic conductivity rate minimum must be compost amended in accordance with guidelines in BMP T5.13. Compost must be tilled into the soil in accordance with the guidance document cited above.
  - o Up to 20 feet of impervious flow path needs 10 feet of dispersion area width.
  - o Each additional foot of impervious flow path needs 0.25 feet of dispersion area width.

- Average longitudinal (parallel to road) slope of dispersion area should be ≤ 15%.
- Average lateral slope of dispersion area should be ≤ 15%.
- The dispersion area should be planted with native trees and shrubs.

4) Other Characteristics for Dispersal areas

- Dispersal areas must be outside of the urban growth area; or if inside the urban growth area, in legally protected areas (easements, conservation tracts, public parks).
- If outside urban growth areas, legal agreements should be reached with property owners of dispersal areas subject to stormwater that has been collected and is being re-dispersed.
- An agreement with the property owner is advised for uncollected, natural dispersion via sheet flow that represents a continuation of past practice. If not a continuation of past practice, an agreement should be reached with the property owner.

Native Vegetation Landscape Specifications

These specifications may be used in situations where an applicant wishes to convert a previously developed surface to a native vegetation landscape for purposes of meeting full dispersion requirements or code requirements for forest retention. Native vegetation landscape is intended to have the soil, vegetation, and runoff characteristics approaching that of natural forestland.

Conversion of a developed surface to native vegetation landscape requires the removal of impervious surface, de-compaction of soils, and the planting of native trees, shrubs, and ground cover in compost-amended soil according to all of the following specifications:

1. Existing impervious surface and any underlying base course (e.g., crushed rock, gravel) must be completely removed from the conversion area(s).
2. Underlying soils must be broken up to a depth of 18 inches. This can be accomplished by excavation or ripping with either a backhoe equipped with a bucket with teeth, or a ripper towed behind a tractor.
3. At least 4 inches of well-decomposed compost must be tilled into the broken up soil as deeply as possible. The finished surface should be gently undulating and must be only lightly compacted.
4. The area of native vegetated landscape must be planted with native species trees, shrubs, and ground cover. Species must be selected as appropriate for site shade and moisture conditions, and in accordance with the following requirements:

a) Trees: a minimum of two species of trees must be planted, one of which is a conifer. Conifer and other tree species must cover the entire landscape area at a spacing recommended by a professional landscaper or in accordance with local requirements.

b) Shrubs**:** a minimum of two species of shrubs should be planted. Space plants to cover the entire landscape area, excluding points where trees are planted.

c) Groundcover**:** a minimum of two species of ground cover should be planted. Space plants so as to cover the entire landscape area, excluding points where trees or shrubs are planted.

Note: for landscape areas larger than 10,000 square feet, planting a greater variety of species than the minimum suggested above is strongly encouraged. For example, an acre could easily accommodate three tree species, three species of shrubs, and two or three species of groundcover.

5. At least 4 inches of hog fuel or other suitable mulch must be placed between plants as mulch for weed control. It is also possible to mulch the entire area before planting; however, an 18-inch diameter circle must be cleared for each plant when it is planted in the underlying amended soil. *Note: plants and their root systems that come in contact with hog fuel or raw bark have a poor chance of survival.*
6. Plantings must be watered consistently once per week during the dry season for the first two years.
7. The plantings must be well established on at least 90% of the converted area. A minimum of 90% plant survival is required after 3 years.

Conversion of an area that was under cultivation to native vegetation landscape requires a different treatment. Elimination of cultivated plants, grasses and weeds is required before planting and will be required on an on-going basis until native plants are well-established. The soil should be tilled to a depth of 18 inches. A minimum of 8 inches of soil having an organic content of 6 to 12 percent is required, or a four inch layer of compost may be placed on the surface before planting, or 4 inches of clean wood chips may be tilled into the soil, as recommended by a landscape architect or forester. After soil preparation is complete, continue with steps 4 through 7 above. Placing 4 inches of compost on the surface may be substituted for the hog fuel or mulch. For large areas where frequent watering is not practical, bare-root stock may be substituted at a variable spacing from 10 to 12 feet o.c. (with an average of 360 trees per acre) to allow for natural groupings and 4 to 6 feet o.c. for shrubs. Allowable bare-root stock types are 1-1, 2-1, P-1 and P-2. Live stakes at 4 feet o.c. may be substituted for willow and red-osier dogwood in wet areas.

Runoff Model Representation

Areas that are fully dispersed do not use the WWHM or other approved continuous runoff models.

5.3.2 Site Design BMPs

The two BMPs in this section are general practices for design and maintenance. They are listed here as an encouragement to project designers. The extent to which the concepts within these BMPs must be followed depends upon changes in the site development codes, rules, and standards adopted by the local government.

BMP T5.40: Preserving Native Vegetation

Purpose and Definition

Preserving native vegetation on-site to the maximum extent practicable will minimize the impacts of development on stormwater runoff. Preferably 65 percent or more of the development site should be protected for the purposes of retaining or enhancing existing forest cover and preserving wetlands and stream corridors.

Applications and Limitations

New development often takes place on tracts of forested land. In fact, building sites are often selected because of the presence of mature trees. However, unless sufficient care is taken and planning done, in the interval between buying the property and completing construction much of this resource is likely to be destroyed. The property owner is ultimately responsible for protecting as many trees as possible, with their understory and groundcover. This responsibility is usually exercised by agents, the planners, designers and contractors. It takes 20 to 30 years for newly planted trees to provide the benefits for which trees are so highly valued.

Forest and native growth areas allow rainwater to naturally percolate into the soil, recharging ground water for summer stream flows and reducing surface water runoff that creates erosion and flooding. Conifers can hold up to about 50 percent of all rain that falls during a storm. Twenty to 30 percent of this rain may never reach the ground but evaporates or is taken up by the tree. Forested and native growth areas also may be effective as stormwater buffers around smaller developments.

On lots that are one acre or greater, preservation of 65 percent or more of the site in native vegetation will allow the use of full dispersion techniques presented in BMP T5.30. Sites that can fully disperse are not required to provide runoff treatment or flow control facilities.

Design Guidelines

- The preserved area should be situated to minimize the clearing of existing forest cover, to maximize the preservation of wetlands, and to buffer stream corridors.
- The preserved area should be placed in a separate tract or protected through recorded easements for individual lots.
- If feasible, the preserved area should be located downslope from the building sites, since flow control and water quality are enhanced by flow dispersion through duff, undisturbed soils, and native vegetation.

- The preserved area should be shown on all property maps and should be clearly marked during clearing and construction on the site.

Maintenance

- Vegetation and trees should not be removed from the natural growth retention area, except for approved timber harvest activities and the removal of dangerous and diseased trees.

BMP T5.41: Better Site Design

Purpose and Definition

Fundamental hydrological concepts and stormwater management concepts can be applied at the site design phase that are:

- more integrated with natural topography,
- reinforce the hydrologic cycle,
- more aesthetically pleasing, and
- often less expensive to build.

A few site planning principles help to locate development on the least sensitive portions of a site and accommodate residential land use while mitigating its impact on stormwater quality.

Design Guidelines

- **Define Development Envelope and Protected Areas -** The first step in site planning is to define the development envelope. This is done by identifying protected areas, setbacks, easements and other site features, and by consulting applicable local standards and requirements. Site features to be protected may include important existing trees, steep slopes, erosive soils, riparian areas, or wetlands.

  By keeping the development envelope compact, environmental impacts can be minimized, construction costs can be reduced, and many of the site's most attractive landscape features can be retained. In some cases, economics or other factors may not allow avoidance of all sensitive areas. In these cases, care can be taken to mitigate the impacts of development through site work and other landscape treatments.

- **Minimize Directly Connected Impervious Areas -** Impervious areas directly connected to the storm drain system are the greatest contributors to urban nonpoint source pollution. Any impervious surface that drains into a catch basin or other conveyance structure is a "directly connected impervious surface." As stormwater runoff flows across parking lots, roadways, and other paved areas, the oil, sediment, metals, and other pollutants are collected and concentrated. If this runoff is collected by a drainage structure and carried directly along impervious gutters or in sealed underground pipes, it has no opportunity for filtering by plant material or infiltration into the soil. It also increases in velocity and amount, causing increased peak-flows in the winter and decreased base-flows in the summer.

A basic site design principle for stormwater management is to minimize these directly connected impervious areas. This can be done by limiting overall impervious land coverage or by infiltrating and/or dispersing runoff from these impervious areas.

- **Maximize Permeability -** Within the development envelope, many opportunities are available to maximize the permeability of new construction. These include minimizing impervious areas, paving with permeable materials, clustering buildings, and reducing the land coverage of buildings by smaller footprints. All of these strategies make more land available for infiltration and dispersion through natural vegetation.

  Clustered driveways, small visitor parking bays and other strategies can also minimize the impact of transportation-related surfaces while still providing adequate access.

  Once site coverage is minimized through clustering and careful planning, pavement surfaces can be selected for permeability. A patio of brick-on-sand, for example, is more permeable than a large concrete slab. Engineered soil/landscape systems are permeable ground covers suitable for a wide variety of uses. Permeable/porous pavements can be used in place of traditional concrete or asphalt pavements in many low traffic applications.

  Maximizing permeability at every possible opportunity requires the integration of many small strategies. These strategies will be reflected at all levels of a project, from site planning to materials selection. In addition to the environmental and aesthetic benefits, a high-permeability site plan may allow the reduction or elimination of expensive runoff underground conveyance systems, flow control and treatment facilities, yielding significant savings in development costs.

- **Build Narrower Streets -** More than any other single element, street design has a powerful impact on stormwater quantity and quality. In residential development, streets and other transportation-related structures typically can comprise between 60 and 70 percent of the total impervious area, and, unlike rooftops, streets are almost always directly connected to the stormwater conveyance system.

  The combination of large, directly connected impervious areas, together with the pollutants generated by automobiles, makes the street network a principal contributor to stormwater pollution in residential areas.

  Street design is usually mandated by local municipal standards. These standards have been developed to facilitate efficient automobile traffic and maximize parking. Most require large impervious land coverage. In recent years, new street standards have been gaining acceptance that meet the access requirements of local residential streets while reducing impervious land coverage. These standards generally create a new class of street that is narrower than the current local street standard, called an "access" street. An access street is intended only to provide access to a limited number of residences.

Because street design is the greatest factor in a residential development's impact on stormwater quality, it is important that designers, municipalities and developers employ street standards that reduce impervious land coverage.

- **Maximize Choices for Mobility -** Given the costs of automobile use, both in land area consumed and pollutants generated, maximizing choices for mobility is a basic principle for environmentally responsible site design. By designing residential developments to promote alternatives to automobile use, a primary source of stormwater pollution can be mitigated.

  Bicycle lanes and paths, secure bicycle parking at community centers and shops, direct, safe pedestrian connections, and transit facilities are all site-planning elements that maximize choices for mobility.

- **Use Drainage as a Design Element -** Unlike conveyance storm drain systems that hide water beneath the surface and work independently of surface topography, a drainage system for stormwater infiltration or dispersion can work with natural land forms and land uses to become a major design element of a site plan.

  By applying stormwater management techniques early in the site plan development, the drainage system can suggest pathway alignments, optimum locations for parks and play areas, and potential building sites. In this way, the drainage system helps to generate urban form, giving the development an integral, more aesthetically pleasing relationship to the natural features of the site. Not only does the integrated site plan complement the land, it can also save on development costs by minimizing earthwork and expensive drainage features.

Resource Material

Start at the Source. Residential Site Planning & Design Guidance Manual for Stormwater Quality Protection. Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association. January 1997.

Site Planning for Urban Stream Protection. Center for Watershed Protection. December, 1995.

Better Site Design: A Handbook for Changing Development Rules in Your Community. Center for Watershed Protection. August 1998.

http://www.stormwatercenter.net

Chapter 6. - Pretreatment

6.1 Purpose

This chapter presents the methods that may be used to provide pretreatment prior to basic or enhanced runoff treatment facilities. Pretreatment must be provided in the following applications:

- For sand filters and infiltration BMPs to protect them from excessive siltation and debris.
- Where the basic treatment facility or the receiving water may be adversely affected by non-targeted pollutants (e.g., oil), or may by overwhelmed by a heavy load of targeted pollutants (e.g., suspended solids).

6.2 Application

Presettling basins are a typical pretreatment BMP used to remove suspended solids. All of the basic runoff treatment facilities may also be used for pretreatment to reduce suspended solids. Ecology has approved some emerging technologies for pretreatment through the TAPE process. See www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/Pretreatment.html for a list of approved pretreatment technologies.

You may also use a detention pond sized to meet the flow control standard in Volume I to provide pretreatment for suspended solids removal.

6.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Pretreatment

This Chapter has only one BMP for presettling basins. Please use the Pretreatment link in Chapter 12 to access a listing and design criteria for various patented devices that have received a General Use Level Designation for Pretreatment through the TAPE program.

BMP T6.10: Presettling Basin

Purpose and Definition

A Presettling Basin provides pretreatment of runoff in order to remove suspended solids, which can impact other runoff treatment BMPs.

Application and Limitations

Runoff treated by a Presettling Basin may not be discharged directly to a receiving water; it must be further treated by a basic or enhanced runoff treatment BMP.

Design Criteria

1. A presettling basin shall be designed with a wetpool. The treatment volume shall be at least 30 percent of the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.

2. A presettling basin shall be designed with a wetpool. The treatment volume shall be at least 30 percent of the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event.
3. If the runoff in the Presettling Basin will be in direct contact with the soil, it must be lined per the liner requirement in Section 4.4.
4. The Presettling Basin shall conform to the following:
   a) The length-to-width ratio shall be at least 3:1. Berms or baffles may be used to lengthen the flowpath.
   b) The minimum depth shall be 4 feet; the maximum depth shall be 6 feet.
5. Inlets and outlets shall be designed to minimize velocity and reduce turbulence. Inlet and outlet structures should be located at extreme ends of the basin in order to maximize particle-settling opportunities.

Site Constraints and Setbacks

Site constraints are any manmade restrictions such as property lines, easements, structures, etc. that impose constraints on development. Constraints may also be imposed from natural features such as requirements of the local government's Sensitive Areas Ordinance and Rules. These should also be reviewed for specific application to the proposed development.

All facilities shall be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government.

All facilities shall be 100 feet from any septic tank/drainfield (except wet vaults shall be a minimum of 20 feet).

All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any steep (greater than 15 percent) slope. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wet pond on a steep slope.

Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by Ecology. See Volume III for more detail.

Chapter 7. - Infiltration and Bioretention Treatment Facilities

7.1 Purpose

This Chapter provides site suitability, design, and maintenance criteria for infiltration treatment systems. Infiltration treatment Best Management Practices (BMPs) serve the dual purpose of removing pollutants (TSS, heavy metals, phosphates, and organics) and recharging aquifers.

A stormwater infiltration treatment facility is an impoundment; typically a basin, trench, or bioretention swale whose soil removes pollutants from stormwater.

Infiltration treatment soils must contain sufficient organic matter and/or clays to sorb, decompose, and/or filter stormwater pollutants. Pollutant/soil contact time, soil sorptive capacity, and soil aerobic conditions are important design considerations.

This chapter contains design details regarding BMP T7.30, Bioretention cells, swales and planter boxes, since the imported soil for that BMP serves primarily a treatment function. If the exfiltrate of stormwater from the imported soil is allowed to infiltrate into the ground, the facility also serves a flow control function.

7.2 General Considerations

These infiltration and bioretention treatment measures are capable of achieving the performance objectives cited in Chapter 3 for specific treatment menus. In general, these treatment techniques can capture and remove or reduce the target pollutants to levels that will not adversely affect public health or beneficial uses of surface and ground water resources, and will not cause a violation of ground water quality standards.

The terms bioretention and raingarden are sometimes used interchangeably. However, for Washington State, the term bioretention is used to describe an engineered facility that includes designed soil mixes and perhaps underdrains and control structures. The term, rain garden, is used to describe a landscape feature to capture stormwater on small project sites. Rain gardens have less restrictive design criteria for the soil mix and usually do not include underdrains and other control structures.

7.3 Applications

Infiltration treatment systems are typically installed:

- As off-line systems, or on-line for small drainages

- As a polishing treatment for street/highway runoff after pretreatment for TSS and oil
- As part of a treatment train
- As retrofits at sites with limited land areas, such as residential lots, commercial areas, parking lots, and open space areas.
- With appropriate pretreatment for oil and silt control to prevent clogging. Appropriate pretreatment devices include a pre-settling basin, wet pond/vault, constructed wetland, media filter, and oil/water separator.
- An infiltration basin is preferred over a trench for ease of maintenance reasons.
- Rain gardens are an On-site BMP option for projects that only have to comply with Minimum Requirements #1 through #5.
- Bioretention facilities are an On-site BMP option for: 1) projects that only have to comply with Minimum Requirements #1through #5, and 2) projects that trigger Minimum Requirements #1 through #9.
- Bioretention facilities and rain gardens are applications of the same LID concept and can be highly effective for reducing surface runoff and removing pollutants.

7.4 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Infiltration and Bioretention Treatment

The three BMPs discussed below are recognized currently as effective treatment techniques using infiltration and bioretetention. Selection of a specific BMP should be coordinated with the Treatment Facility Menus provided in Chapter 3.

BMP T7.10: Infiltration Basins

The design criteria and design procedures for infiltration basins for treatment are in Chapter 3, section 3.3 of Volume III. Sub-sections 3.3.1 through 3.3.9 provide information pertinent to all infiltration facilities. Sub-section 3.3.10 provides information specific to infiltration basins.

BMP T7.20: Infiltration Trenches

The design criteria and design procedures for infiltration trenches for treatment are in Chapter 3, Section 3.3 of Volume III. Sub-sections 3.3.1 through 3.3.9 provide information pertinent to all infiltration facilities. Sub-section 3.3.11 provides information specific to infiltration trenches.

BMP T7.30: Bioretention Cells, Swales, and Planter Boxes

Purpose

To provide effective removal of many stormwater pollutants, and provide reductions in stormwater runoff quantity and surface runoff flow rates. Where the surrounding native soils have adequate infiltration rates, bioretention can help comply with flow control and treatment requirements. Where the native soils have low infiltration rates, underdrain systems can be installed and the facility used to filter pollutants and detain flows that exceed infiltration capacity of the surrounding soil. However, designs utilizing underdrains provide less flow control benefits.

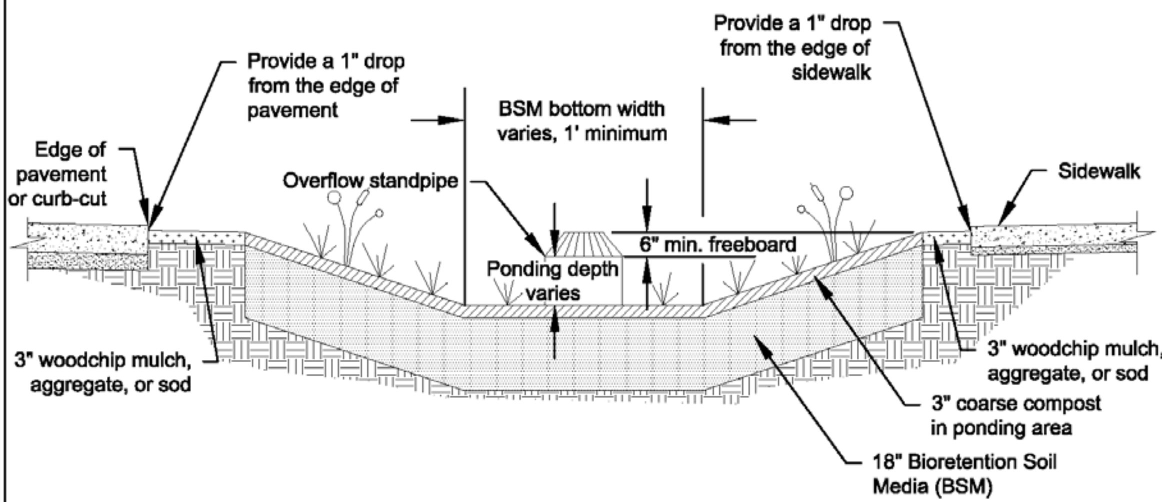
Description

Bioretention areas are shallow landscaped depressions, with a designed soil mix and plants adapted to the local climate and soil moisture conditions, that receive stormwater from a contributing area.

The term, bioretention, is used to describe various designs using soil and plant complexes to manage stormwater. The following terminology is used in this manual:

- *Bioretention cells*: Shallow depressions with a designed planting soil mix and a variety of plant material, including trees, shrubs, grasses, and/or other herbaceous plants. Bioretention cells may or may not have an underdrain and are not designed as a conveyance system. (See Figure 7.4.1)
- *Bioretention swales*: Incorporate the same design features as bioretention cells; however, bioretention swales are designed as part of a system that can convey stormwater when maximum ponding depth is exceeded. Bioretention swales have relatively gentle side slopes and ponding depths that are typically 6 to 12 inches. (See Figure 7.4.1)
- *Bioretention planters and planter boxes*: Designed soil mix and a variety of plant material including trees, shrubs, grasses, and/or other herbaceous plants within a vertical walled container usually constructed from formed concrete, but could include other materials. Planter boxes are completely impervious and include a bottom (must include an underdrain). Planters have an open bottom and allow infiltration to the subgrade. These designs are often used in ultra-urban settings. (See Figure 7.4.2)

Note: Ecology has approved use of certain patented treatment systems that use specific, high rate media for treatment. Such systems are not considered LID BMPs and are not options for meeting the requirements of Minimum Requirement #5. The Ecology approval is meant to be used for Minimum Requirement #6 - Treatment, where appropriate.

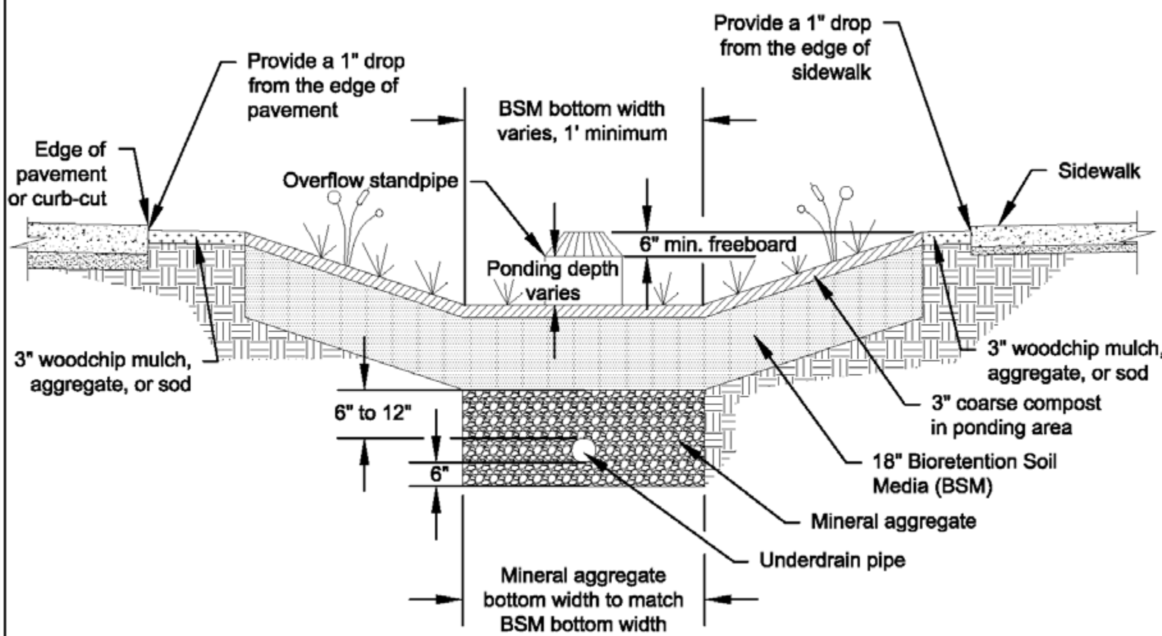


Notes:
1. Scarify subgrade 3" min. before bioretention soil installation
2. Compact BSM to 85% per ASTM 1577

DEPARTMENT OF ECOLOGY
State of Washington

Figure 7.4.1a
Typical Bioretention

Revised November 2014



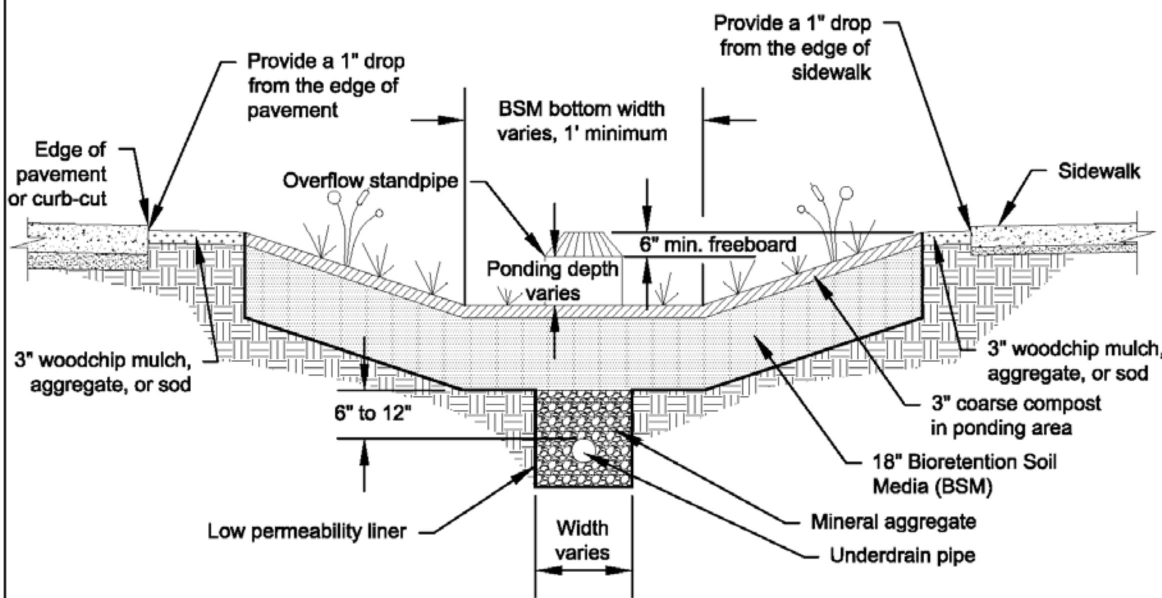
Notes:

1. Scarify subgrade 3" min. before bioretention soil installation
2. Compact BSM to 85% per ASTM 1577

DEPARTMENT OF ECOLOGY State of Washington

Figure 7.4.1b
Typical Bioretention w/Underdrain

Revised November 2014



Notes:

1. Scarify subgrade 3" min. before bioretention soil installation
2. Compact BSM to 85% per ASTM 1577

DEPARTMENT OF ECOLOGY State of Washington

Figure 7.4.1c
Typical Bioretention w/Liner (Not LID)

Revised November 2014

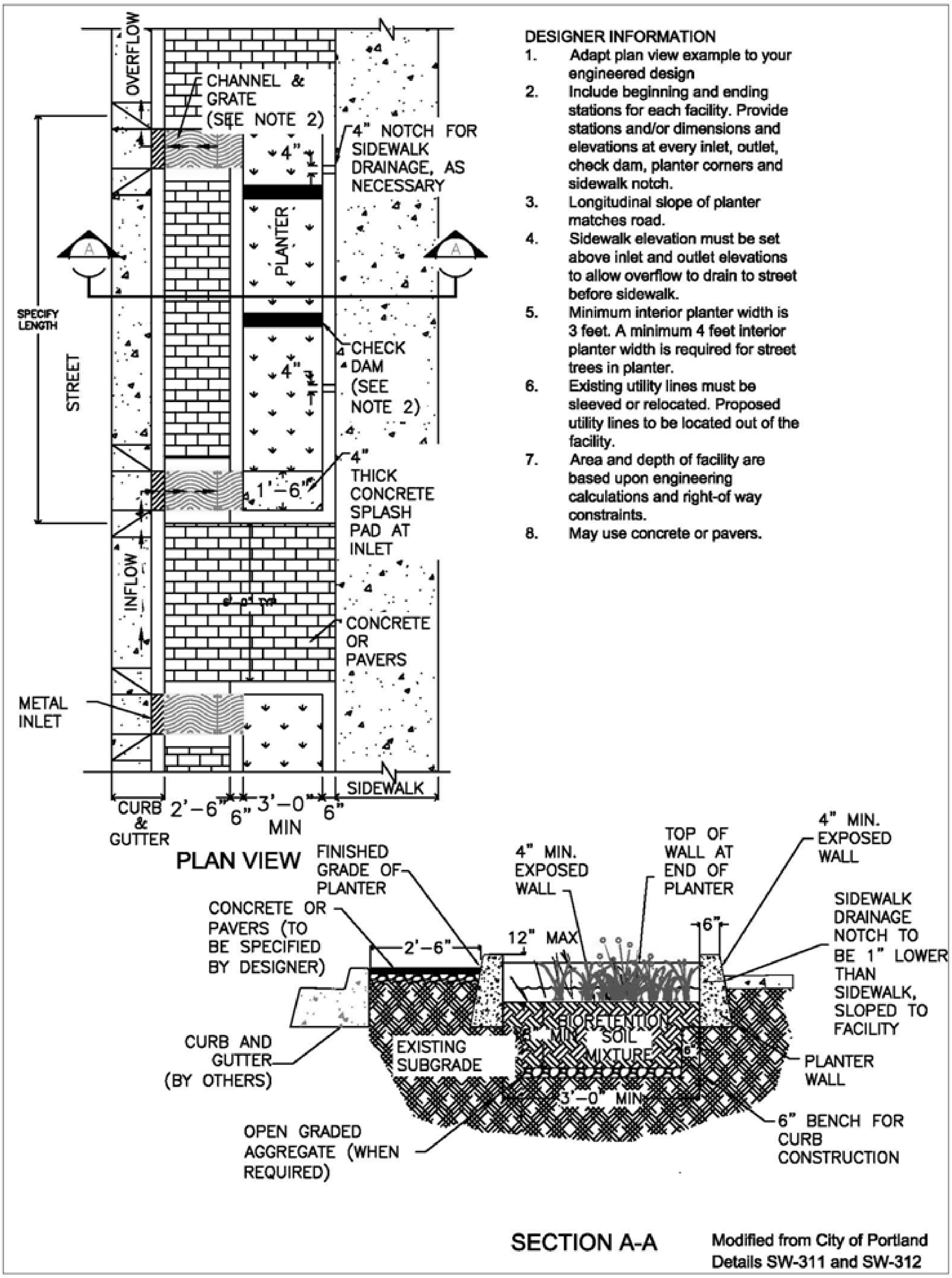


Figure 7.4.2 Example of a Bioretention Planter

Applications and Limitations

Because Bioretention facilities use an imported soil mix that has a moderate design infiltration rate, they are best applied for small drainages, and near the source of the stormwater. Cells may be scattered throughout a subdivision; a swale may run alongside the access road; or a series of planter boxes may serve the road. In these situations, they can but are not required to fully meet the requirement to treat 91% of the stormwater runoff file from pollution-generating surfaces. But the amount of stormwater that is predicted to pass through the soil profile may be estimated and subtracted from the 91% volume that must be treated. Downstream treatment facilities may be significantly smaller as a result.

Bioretention facilities that infiltrate into the ground can also serve a significant flow reduction function. They can, but are not required to fully meet the flow control duration standard of Minimum Requirement #7. Because they typically do not have an orifice restricting overflow or underflow discharge rates, they typically don't fully meet Minimum Requirement #7. However, their performance contributes to meeting the standard, and that can result in much smaller flow control facilities at the bottom of the project site. When used in combination with other low impact development techniques, they can also help achieve compliance with the Performance Standard option of Minimum Requirement #5.

Bioretention constructed with imported composted material should not be used within one-quarter mile of phosphorus-sensitive waterbodies if the underlying native soil does not meet the soil suitability criteria for treatment in Chapter 3 of Volume III. Preliminary monitoring indicates that new bioretention facilities can add phosphorus to stormwater. Therefore, they should also not be used with an underdrain when the underdrain water would be routed to a phosphorus-sensitive receiving water.

Applications with or without underdrains vary extensively and can be applied in new development, redevelopment and retrofits. Typical applications include:

- Individual lots for rooftop, driveway, and other on-lot impervious surface.
- Shared facilities located in common areas for individual lots.
- Areas within loop roads or cul-de-sacs.
- Landscaped parking lot islands.
- Within right-of-ways along roads (often linear bioretention swales and cells).
- Common landscaped areas in apartment complexes or other multifamily housing designs.
- Planters on building roofs, patios, and as part of streetscapes.

Infeasibility Criteria:

The following criteria describe conditions that make bioretention or rain gardens not required. If a project proponent wishes to use a bioretention or rain garden BMP though not required to because of these feasibility criteria, they may propose a functional design to the local government.

Note: Criteria with setback distances are as measured from the bottom edge of the bioretention soil mix.

Citation of any of the following infeasibility criteria must be based on an evaluation of site-specific conditions and a written recommendation from an appropriate licensed professional (e.g., engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist):

- Where professional geotechnical evaluation recommends infiltration not be used due to reasonable concerns about erosion, slope failure, or down gradient flooding.
- Within an area whose ground water drains into an erosion hazard, or landslide hazard area.
- Where the only area available for siting would threaten the safety or reliability of pre-existing underground utilities, pre-existing underground storage tanks, pre-existing structures, or pre-existing road or parking lot surfaces.
- Where the only area available for siting does not allow for a safe overflow pathway to the municipal separate storm sewer system or private storm sewer system.
- Where there is a lack of usable space for rain garden/bioretention facilities at re-development sites, or where there is insufficient space within the existing public right-of-way on public road projects.
- Where infiltrating water would threaten existing below grade basements.
- Where infiltrating water would threaten shoreline structures such as bulkheads.

The following criteria can be cited as reasons for a finding of infeasibility without further justification (though some require professional services):

  - Within setbacks from structures as established by the local government with jurisdiction.
  - Where they are not compatible with surrounding drainage system as determined by the local government with jurisdiction (e.g., project drains to an existing stormwater collection system whose elevation or location precludes connection to a properly functioning bioretention facility).

- Where land for bioretention is within area designated as an erosion hazard, or landslide hazard.
- Where the site cannot be reasonably designed to locate bioretention facilities on slopes less than 8%.
- Within 50 feet from the top of slopes that are greater than 20% and over 10 feet of vertical relief.
- For properties with known soil or ground water contamination (typically federal Superfund sites or state cleanup sites under the Model Toxics Control Act (MTCA)):
  - Within 100 feet of an area known to have deep soil contamination;
  - Where ground water modeling indicates infiltration will likely increase or change the direction of the migration of pollutants in the ground water;
  - Wherever surface soils have been found to be contaminated unless those soils are removed within 10 horizontal feet from the infiltration area;
  - Any area where these facilities are prohibited by an approved cleanup plan under the state Model Toxics Control Act or Federal Superfund Law, or an environmental covenant under Chapter 64.70 RCW.
- Within 100 feet of a closed or active landfill.
- Within 100 feet of a drinking water well, or a spring used for drinking water supply.
- Within 10 feet of small on-site sewage disposal drainfield, including reserve areas, and grey water reuse systems. For setbacks from a "large on-site sewage disposal system", see Chapter 246-272B WAC.
- Within 10 feet of an underground storage tank and connecting underground pipes when the capacity of the tank and pipe system is 1100 gallons or less. (As used in these criteria, an underground storage tank means any tank used to store petroleum products, chemicals, or liquid hazardous wastes of which 10% or more of the storage volume (including volume in the connecting piping system) is beneath the ground surface.
- Within 100 feet of an underground storage tank and connecting underground pipes when the capacity of the tank and pipe system is greater than 1100 gallons.
- Where the minimum vertical separation of 1 foot to the seasonal high water table, bedrock, or other impervious layer would not be achieved below bioretention or rain gardens that would serve a

drainage area that is: 1) less than 5,000 sq. ft. of pollution-generating impervious surface, and 2) less than 10,000 sq. ft. of impervious surface; and, 3) less than ¾ acres of pervious surface.

- Where the a minimum vertical separation of 3 feet to the seasonal high water table, bedrock or other impervious layer would not be achieved below bioretention that: 1) would serve a drainage area that meets or exceeds: a) 5,000 square feet of pollution-generating impervious surface, or b) 10,000 square feet of impervious surface, or c) three-quarter (3/4) acres of pervious surfaces; and 2) cannot reasonably be broken down into amounts smaller than indicated in (1).
- Where the field testing indicates potential bioretention/rain garden sites have a measured (a.k.a., initial) native soil saturated hydraulic conductivity less than 0.30 inches per hour. If the measured native soil infiltration rate is less than 0.30 in/hour, this option should not be used to meet the requirements of MR#5. In these slow draining soils, a bioretention facility with an underdrain may be used to treat pollution- generating surfaces to help meet Minimum Requirement #6, Runoff Treatment. If the underdrain is elevated within a base course of gravel, the bioretention facility will also provide some modest flow reduction benefit that will help achieve Minimum Requirement #7.

A local government may designate geographic boundaries within which bioretention cells, swales, or planters may be designated as infeasible due to year-round, seasonal or periodic high groundwater conditions, or due to inadequate infiltration rates. Designations must be based upon a pre-ponderance of field data, collected within the area of concern, that indicate a high likelihood of failure to achieve the minimum groundwater clearance or infiltration rates identified in the above infeasibility criteria. The local government must develop a technical report and make it available upon request to the Dept. of Ecology. The report must be authored by (a) professional(s) with appropriate expertise (e.g., registered engineer, geologist, hydrogeologist, or certified soil scientist), and document the location and the pertinent values/observations of data that were used to recommend the designation and boundaries for the geographic area. The types of pertinent data include, but are not limited to:

- Standing water heights or evidence of recent saturated conditions in observation wells, test pits, test holes, and well logs.
- Observations of areal extent and time of surface ponding, including local government or professional observations of high water tables, frequent or long durations of standing water, springs, wetlands, and/or frequent flooding.
- Results of infiltration tests

In addition, a local government can map areas that meet a specific infeasibility criterion listed above provided they have an adequate data basis. Criteria that are most amenable to mapping are:

- Where land for bioretention is within an area designated by the local government as an erosion hazard, or landslide hazard
- Within 50 feet from the top of slopes that are greater than 20% and over 10 feet vertical relief
- Within 100 feet of a closed or active landfill

Other Site Suitability Factors:

- Utility conflicts: Consult local jurisdiction requirements for horizontal and vertical separation required for publicly-owned utilities, such as water and sewer. Consult the appropriate franchise utility owners for separation requirements from their utilities, which may include communications and gas. When separation requirements cannot be met, designs should include appropriate mitigation measures, such as impermeable liners over the utility, sleeving utilities, fixing known leaky joints or cracked conduits, and/or adding an underdrain to the bioretention.

- Transportation safety: The design configuration and selected plant types should provide adequate sight distances, clear zones, and appropriate setbacks for roadway applications in accordance with local jurisdiction requirements.

- Ponding depth and surface water draw-down: Flow control needs, as well as location in the development, and mosquito breeding cycles will determine draw-down timing. For example, front yards and entrances to residential or commercial developments may require rapid surface dewatering for aesthetics.
- Impacts of surrounding activities: Human activity influences the location of the facility in the development. For example, locate bioretention areas away from traveled areas on individual lots to prevent soil compaction and damage to vegetation or provide elevated or bermed pathways in areas where foot traffic is inevitable. and provide barriers, such as wheel stops, to restrict vehicle access in roadside applications.
- Visual buffering: Bioretention facilities can be used to buffer structures from roads, enhance privacy among residences, and for an aesthetic site feature.
- Site growing characteristics and plant selection: Appropriate plants should be selected for sun exposure, soil moisture, and adjacent plant communities. Native species or hardy cultivars are recommended and can flourish in the properly designed and placed Bioretention Soil Mix with no nutrient or pesticide inputs and 2-3 years irrigation for establishment. Invasive species control may be necessary.

Field and Design Procedures

Geotechnical analysis is an important first step to develop an initial assessment of the variability of site soils, infiltration characteristics and the necessary frequency and depth of infiltration tests. See the Site Planning guidance in Chapter 3 of Volume 1.

See Section 3.4 in Volume III of this manual for more specific guidance regarding required field testing, assignment of infiltration rate correction factors, project submission requirements, and modeling.

Determining subgrade infiltration rates

Determining infiltration rates of the site soils is necessary to determine feasibility of designs that intend to infiltrate stormwater on-site. It is also necessary to estimate flow reduction benefits of such designs when using the Western Washington Hydrologic Model (WWHM) or MGS Flood.

The following provides recommended tests for the soils underlying bioretention areas. The test should be run at the anticipated elevation of the top of the native soil beneath the bioretention facility.

Method 1:

- Small bioretention cells (bioretention facilities receiving water from 1 or 2 individual lots or < 1/4 acre of pavement or other impervious surface): Small-Scale Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT). See Volume III, Section 3.3.6 for small-scale PIT method description.

See Section 3.4 in Volume III for a discussion of the assignment of an appropriate infiltration correction factor.

- Large bioretention cells (bioretention facilities receiving water from several lots or 1/4 acre or more of pavement or other impervious surface): Multiple small or one large-scale PIT. If using the small-scale test, measurements should be taken at several locations within the area of interest. After completing the infiltration test, excavate the test site at least 3 feet if variable soil conditions or seasonal high water tables are suspected. Observe whether water is infiltrating vertically or only spreading horizontally because of ground water or a restrictive soil layer. See Section 3.4 in Volume III for a discussion of the assignment of an appropriate infiltration correction factor.
- Bioretention swales: approximately 1 small--scale PIT per 200 feet of swale, and within each length of road with significant differences in subsurface characteristics. However, if the site subsurface characterization, including soil borings across the development site, indicate consistent soil characteristics and depths to seasonal high ground water conditions, the number of test locations may be reduced to a frequency recommended by a geotechnical professional. See Section 3.4 in Volume III for a discussion of the assignment of an appropriate infiltration correction factor.

Method 2: Soil Grain Size Analysis Method:

This method is restricted to sites underlain with soils not consolidated by glacial advance (e.g., recessional outwash soils).

- Small bioretention cells: Use the grain size analysis method described in Section 3.3.6 of Volume III based on the layer(s) identified in results of one soil test pit or boring.
- Large bioretention cells: Use the grain size analysis method based on more than one soil test pit or boring. The more test pits/borings used, and the more evidence of consistency in the soils, the less of a correction factor may be used.
- Bioretention swales: Approximately 1 soil test pit/boring per 200 feet of swale and within each length of road with significant differences in subsurface characteristics. However, if the site subsurface characterization, including soil borings across the development site, indicate consistent soil characteristics and depths to seasonal high ground water conditions, the number of test locations may be reduced to the minimum frequency indicated above.

Determining Bioretention soil mix infiltration rate:

Option 1: If using the Bioretention Soil Mix recommended herein, the WWHM assumes a default infiltration rate of 12 inches per hour (15.24 cm/hr)Option 2: If creating a custom bioretention soil mix, Use ASTM D 2434 Standard Test Method for Permeability of granular Soils (Constant Head) with a compaction rate of 85 percent using ASTM D1557 Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort. See Appendix V-B for specific procedures for conducting ASTM D 2434. The WWHM user must enter the derived value into WWHM using "View/Edit Soil Types" pull down menu and adjusting the Ksat value.

After selecting option 1 or 2 above, determine the appropriate safety factor for the saturated hydraulic conductivity (Ksat). If the contributing area of the bioretention cell or swale is equal to or exceeds any of the following limitations:

5,000 square feet of pollution-generating impervious surface;

10,000 square feet of impervious surface;

¾ acre of lawn and landscape,

use 4 as the infiltration rate (Ksat) safety factor. If the contributing area is less than all of the above areas, or if the design includes a pretreatment device for solids removal, use 2 as the Ksat safety factor.

The WWHM has a field for entering the appropriate safety factor.

Design Criteria for Bioretention

These design criteria are from the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012). Refer to that document for additional explanations and background.

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional information purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Flow entrance and presettling

Flow entrance design will depend on topography, flow velocities and volume entering the pretreatment and bioretention area, adjacent land use and site constraints. Flow velocities entering bioretention should be less than 1.0 ft/second to minimize erosion potential. Five primary types of flow entrances can be used for bioretention:

- *Dispersed, low velocity flow across a landscape area:* Landscape areas and vegetated buffer strips slow incoming flows and provide an initial settling of particulates and are the preferred method of delivering flows to the bioretention cell., Dispersed flow may not be possible given space limitations or if the facility is controlling roadway or parking lot flows where curbs are mandatory.

- *Dispersed or sheet flow across pavement or gravel and past wheel stops for parking areas.*
  - *Curb cuts for roadside, driveway or parking lot areas:* Curb cuts should include a rock pad, concrete or other erosion protection material in the channel entrance to dissipate energy. Minimum curb cut width should be 12 inches; however, 18 inches is recommended. Avoid the use of angular rock or quarry spalls and instead use round (river) rock if needed. Removing sediment from angular rock is difficult. Flow entrance should drop 2 to 3 inches from curb line and provide an area for settling and periodic removal of sediment and coarse material before flow dissipates to the remainder of the cell.
  - Curb cuts used for bioretention areas in high use parking lots or roadways require increased level of maintenance due to high coarse particulates and trash accumulation in the flow entrance and associated bypass of flows. The following are methods recommended for areas where heavy trash and coarse particulates are anticipated:
    - Curb cut width: 18 inches.
    - At a minimum the flow entrance should drop 2 to 3 inches from gutter line into the bioretention area and provide an area for settling and periodic removal of debris.
    - Anticipate relatively more frequent inspection and maintenance for areas with large impervious areas, high traffic loads and larger debris loads.
    - Catch basins or forebays may be necessary at the flow entrance to adequately capture debris and sediment load from large contributing areas and high use areas. Piped flow entrance in this setting can easily clog and catch basins with regular maintenance are necessary to capture coarse and fine debris and sediment.
- *Pipe flow entrance:* Piped entrances should include rock or other erosion protection material in the channel entrance to dissipate energy and disperse flow.
- *Catch basin:* In some locations where road sanding or higher than usual sediment inputs are anticipated, catch basins can be used to settle sediment and release water to the bioretention area through a grate for filtering coarse material.

- *Trench drains:* can be used to cross sidewalks or driveways where a deeper pipe conveyance creates elevation problems. Trench drains tend to clog and may require additional maintenance.

Woody plants can restrict or concentrate flows and can be damaged by erosion around the root ball and should not be placed directly in the entrance flow path.

Bottom area and side slopes

Bioretention areas are highly adaptable and can fit various settings such as rural and urban roadsides, ultra urban streetscapes and parking lots by adjusting bottom area and side slope configuration. Recommended maximum and minimum dimensions include:

- Maximum planted side slope if total cell depth is greater than 3 feet: 3H:1V. If steeper side slopes are necessary rockeries, concrete walls or soil wraps may be effective design options. Local jurisdictions may require bike and/or pedestrian safety features, such as railings or curbs with curb cuts, when steep side slopes are adjacent to sidewalks, walkways, or bike lanes.
- Minimum bottom width for bioretention swales: 2 feet recommended and 1 foot minimum. Carefully consider flow depths and velocities, flow velocity control (check dams) and appropriate vegetation or rock mulch to prevent erosion and channelization at bottom widths less than 2 feet.

Bioretention areas should have a minimum shoulder of 12 inches (30.5 cm) between the road edge and beginning of the bioretention side slope where flush curbs are used. Compaction effort for the shoulder should 90 percent proctor.

Ponding area

Ponding depth recommendations:

- Maximum ponding depth: 12 inches (30.5 cm).
- Surface pool drawdown time: 24 hours

For design on projects subject to Minimum Requirement #5, and choosing to use List #1 or List #2 of that requirement, a bioretention facility shall have a horizontally projected surface area below the overflow which is at least 5% of the total impervious surface area draining to it. If lawn/landscape area will also be draining to the bioretention facility, Ecology recommends that the bioretention facility's horizontally projected surface area below the overflow be increased by 2% of the lawn/landscape area.

The ponding area provides surface storage for storm flows, particulate settling, and the first stages of pollutant treatment within the cell. Pool depth and draw-down rate are recommended to provide surface storage, adequate infiltration capability, and soil moisture conditions that allow for a range of appropriate plant species. Soils must be allowed to dry out periodically in order to: restore hydraulic capacity to receive flows from subsequent storms; maintain infiltration rates; maintain adequate soil oxygen levels for healthy soil biota and vegetation; provide proper soil conditions for biodegradation and retention of pollutants. Maximum designed depth of ponding (before surface overflow to a pipe or ditch) must be considered in light of drawdown time.

For bioretention areas with underdrains, elevating the drain to create a temporary saturated zone beneath the drain is advised to promote denitrification (conversion of nitrate to nitrogen gas) and prolong moist soil conditions for plant survival during dry periods (see Underdrain section below for details).

Surface overflow

Surface overflow can be provided by vertical stand pipes that are connected to underdrain systems, by horizontal drainage pipes or armored overflow channels installed at the designed maximum ponding elevations. Overflow can also be provided by a curb cut at the down-gradient end of the bioretention area to direct overflows back to the street. Overflow conveyance structures are necessary for all bioretention facilities to safely convey flows that exceed the capacity of the facility and to protect downstream natural resources and property.

The minimum freeboard from the invert of the overflow stand pipe, horizontal drainage pipe or earthen channel should be 6 inches unless otherwise specified by the local jurisdiction's design standards.

Default Bioretention Soil Media (BSM)

Projects which use the following requirements for the bioretention soil media do not have to test the media for it saturated hydraulic conductivity (aka. Infiltration rate). They may assume the rates specified in the subsection titled "Determining Bioretention Soil Mix Infiltration Rate."

Mineral Aggregate

Percent Fines: A range of 2 to 4 percent passing the #200 sieve is ideal and fines should not be above 5 percent for a proper functioning specification according to ASTM D422.

Aggregate Gradation

The aggregate portion of the BSM should be well-graded. According to ASTM D 2487-98 (Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)), well-graded sand should have the following gradation coefficients:

- Coefficient of Uniformity ($C_u = D_{60}/D_{10}$) equal to or greater than 4, and

- Coefficient of Curve ($C_c = (D_{30})^2/D_{60} \times D_{10}$) greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 3.

Table 7.4.1 provides a gradation guideline for the aggregate component of a Bioretention Soil Mix specification in western Washington (Hinman, Robertson, 2007). The sand gradation below is often supplied as a well-graded utility or screened. With compost this blend provides enough fines for adequate water retention, hydraulic conductivity within recommended range (see below), pollutant removal capability, and plant growth characteristics for meeting design guidelines and objectives.

Table 7.4.1
General Guideline for Mineral Aggregate Gradation

Sieve Size	Percent Passing
3/8"	100
#4	95-100
#10	75-90
#40	25-40
#100	4-10
#200	2-5

Where existing soils meet the above aggregate gradation, those soils may be amended rather than importing mineral aggregate.

Compost to Aggregate Ratio, Organic Matter Content, Cation Exchange Capacity

- Compost to aggregate ratio: 60-65 percent mineral aggregate, 35 – 40 percent compost by volume.
- Organic matter content: 5 – 8 percent by weight.
- Cation Exchange Capacity (CEC) must be $\geq$ 5 milliequivalents/100 g dry soil Note: Soil mixes meeting the above specifications do not have to be tested for CEC. They will readily meet the minimum CEC.

Compost

To ensure that the BSM will support healthy plant growth and root development, contribute to biofiltration of pollutants, and not restrict infiltration when used in the proportions cited herein, the following compost standards are required.

- Meets the definition of "composted material" in WAC 173-350-100 and complies with testing parameters and other standards in WAC 173-350-220.
- Produced at a composting facility that is permitted by the jurisdictional health authority. Permitted compost facilities in Washington are included on a list available at http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/swfa/organics/soil.html

- The compost product must originate a minimum of 65 percent by volume from recycled plant waste comprised ofas "yard debris," "crop residues," and "bulking agents" as those terms are defined in WAC 173-350-100. A maximum of 35 percent by volume of "post-consumer food waste" as defined in WAC 173-350-100 , but not including biosolids, may be substituted for recycled plant waste.
- Stable (low oxygen use and CO_2 generation) and mature (capable of supporting plant growth) by tests shown below. This is critical to plant success in a bioretention soil mixes.
- Moisture content range: no visible free water or dust produced when handling the material.
- Tested in accordance with the U.S. Composting Council "Test Method for the Examination of Compost and Composting" (TMECC), as established in the Composting Council's "Seal of Testing Assurance" (STA) program. Most Washington compost facilities now use these tests.
- Screened to the following size gradations for Fine Compost when tested in accordance with TMECC test method 02.02-B, Sample Sieving for Aggregate Size Classification."

  Fine Compost shall meet the following gradation by dry weight

  Minimum percent passing 2" 100%

  Minimum percent passing 1" 99%

  Minimum percent passing 5/8" 90%

  Minimum percent passing ¼" 75%
- pH between 6.0 and 8.5 (TMECC 04.11-A). "Physical contaminants" (as defined in WAC 173-350-100) content less that 1% by weight (TMECC 03.08-A) total, not to exceed 0.25 percent film plastic by dry weight.
- Minimum organic matter content of 40% (TMECC 05.07-A "Loss on Ignition)
- Soluble salt content less than 4.0 dS/m (mmhos/cm) (TMECC 04.10-A "Electrical Conductivity, 1:5 Slurry Method, Mass Basis")
- Maturity indicators from a cucumber bioassay (TMECC 05.05-A "Seedling Emergence and Relative Growth) must be greater than 80%for both emergence and vigor")
- Stability of 7 mg CO2-C/g OM/day or below (TMECC 05.08-B "Carbon Dioxide Evolution Rate")
- Carbon to nitrogen ratio (TMECC 05.02A " Carbon to Nitrogen Ratio" which uses 04.01 "Organic Carbon" and 04.02D "Total Nitrogen by Oxidation") of less than 25:1. The C:N ratio may be up to

35:1 for plantings composed entirely of Puget Sound Lowland native species and up to 40:1 for coarse compost to be used as a surface mulch (not in a soil mix).

Design Criteria for Custom Bioretention Soil Mixes

Projects which prefer to create a custom Bioretention Soil Mix rather than using the default requirements above must demonstrate compliance with the following criteria using the specified test method:

- CEC ≥ 5 meq/100 grams of dry soil; USEPA 9081
- pH between 5.5 and 7.0
- 5 - 8 percent organic matter content before and after the saturated hydraulic conductivity test; ASTM D2974(Standard Test Method for Moisture, Ash, and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils)
- 2-5 percent fines passing the 200 sieve; TMECC 04.11-A
- Measured (Initial) saturated hydraulic conductivity of less than 12 inches per hour; ASTM D 2434 (Standard Test Method for Permeability of Granular Soils (Constant Head)) at 85% compaction per ASTM D 1557 (Standard Test Method s for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort). Also, use Appendix V-B, Recommended Procedures for ASTM D 2434 When Measuring Hydraulic Conductivity for Bioretention Soil Mixes.
- Design (long-term) saturated hydraulic conductivity of more than 1 inch per hour. Note: Design saturated hydraulic conductivity is determined by applying the appropriate infiltration correction factors as explained above under “Determining Bioretention soil mix infiltration rate.”
- If compost is used in creating the custom mix, it must meet all of the specifications listed above for compost except for the gradation specification. An alternative gradation specification must indicate the minimum percent passing for a range of similar particle sizes.

Soil Depth:

Soil depth must be a minimum of 18 inches to provide water quality treatment and good growing conditions for selected plants

Filter Fabrics:

Do not use filter fabrics between the subgrade and the Bioretention Soil Mix. The gradation between existing soils and Bioretention Soil Mix is not great enough to allow significant migration of fines into the Bioretention Soil Mix. Additionally, filter fabrics may clog with downward migration of fines from the Bioretention Soil Mix.

Underdrain (optional**):**

Where the underlying native soils have an estimated initial infiltration rate between 0.3 and 0.6 inches per hour, bioretention facilities without an underdrain, or with an elevated underdrain directed to a surface outlet, may be used to satisfy List #2 of Minimum Requirement #5. Underdrained bioretention facilities that drain to a retention/detention facility must meet the following criteria if they are used to satisfy list #2 of Minimum Requirement #5.

- the invert of the underdrain must be elevated 6 inches above the bottom of the aggregate bedding layer. A larger distance between the underdrain and bottom of the bedding layer is desirable, but cannot be used to trigger infeasibility due to inadequate vertical separation to the seasonal high water table, bedrock, or other impermeable layer.
- the distance between the bottom of the bioretention soil mix and the crown of the underdrain pipe must be not less than 6 but not more than 12 inches;
- the aggregate bedding layer must run the full length and the full width of the bottom of the bioretention facility;
- the facility must not be underlain by a low permeability liner that prevents infiltration into the native soil.

Figure 7.4.1.b depicts a bioretention facility with an elevated underdrain. Figure 7.4.1.c depicts a bioretention facility with an underdrain and a low permeability liner. The latter is not considered a low impact development BMP. It cannot be used to implement List #2 of Minimum Requirement #5.

The volume above an underdrain pipe in a bioretention facility provides pollutant filtering and minor detention. However, only the void volume of the aggregate below the underdrain invert and above the bottom of the bioretention facility (subgrade) can be used in the WWHM or MGSFlood for dead storage volume that provides flow control benefit. Assume a 40% void volume for the Type 26 mineral aggregate specified below.

Underdrain systems should only be installed when the bioretention facility is:

- Located near sensitive infrastructure (e.g., unsealed basements) and potential for flooding is likely.
- Used for filtering storm flows from gas stations or other pollutant hotspots (requires impermeable liner).
- Located above native soils with infiltration rates that are not adequate to meet maximum pool and system dewater rates, or are below a minimum rate allowed by the local government.

- In an area that does not provide the minimum depth to a hydraulic restriction layer, e.g., high seasonal ground water.

The underdrain can be connected to a downstream open conveyance (bioretention swale), to another bioretention cell as part of a connected treatment system, daylight to a dispersion area using an effective flow dispersion practice, or to a storm drain.

Underdrain pipe:

Underdrains shall be slotted, thick-walled plastic pipe. The slot opening should be smaller than the smallest aggregate gradation for the gravel filter bed (see underdrain filter bed below) to prevent migration of material into the drain. This configuration allows for pressurized water cleaning and root cutting if necessary.

Underdrain pipe recommendations:

- Minimum pipe diameter: 4 inches (pipe diameter will depend on hydraulic capacity required, 4 to 8 inches is common).
- Slotted subsurface drain PVC per ASTM D1785 SCH 40.
- Slots should be cut perpendicular to the long axis of the pipe and be 0.04 to 0.069 inches by 1 inch long and be spaced 0.25 inches apart (spaced longitudinally). Slots should be arranged in four rows spaced on 45-degree centers and cover ½ of the circumference of the pipe. See Filter Materials section for aggregate gradation appropriate for this slot size.
- Underdrains should be sloped at a minimum of 0.5 percent unless otherwise specified by an engineer.

Perforated PVC or flexible slotted HDPE pipe cannot be cleaned with pressurized water or root cutting equipment, are less durable and are not recommended. Wrapping the underdrain pipe in filter fabric increases chances of clogging and is not recommended. A 6-inch rigid non-perforated observation pipe or other maintenance access should be connected to the underdrain every 250 to 300 feet to provide a clean-out port, as well as an observation well to monitor dewatering rates.

Underdrain aggregate filter and bedding layer.

Aggregate filter and bedding layers buffer the underdrain system from sediment input and clogging. When properly selected for the soil gradation, geosynthetic filter fabrics can provide adequate protection from the migration of fines. However, aggregate filter and bedding layers, with proper gradations, provide a larger surface area for protecting underdrains and are preferred.

- Guideline for underdrain aggregate filter and bedding layers with heavy walled slotted pipe (see underdrain pipe guideline above):

Sieve size	Percent Passing
¾ inch	100
¼ inch	30-60
US No. 8	20-50
US No. 50	3-12
US No. 200	0-1

The above gradation is a Type 26 mineral aggregate (gravel backfill for drains, City of Seattle).

- Place underdrain on a bed of the Type 26 aggregate with a minimum thickness of 6 inches and cover with Type 26 aggregate to provide a 1-foot minimum depth around the top and sides of the slotted pipe. See the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) for a related figure.

  Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Orifice and other flow control structures:

- The minimum orifice diameter should be 0.5 inches to minimize clogging and maintenance requirements.

Check dams and weirs

Check dams are necessary for reducing flow velocity and potential erosion, as well as increasing detention time and infiltration capability on sloped sites. Typical materials include concrete, wood, rock, compacted dense soil covered with vegetation, and vegetated hedge rows. Design depends on flow control goals, local regulations for structures within road right-of-ways and aesthetics. Optimum spacing is determined by flow control benefit (modeling) in relation to cost consideration. See the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) for displays of typical designs.

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

UIC discharge

Stormwater that has passed through the bioretention soil mix may also discharge to a gravel-filled dug or drilled drain. Underground Injection Control (UIC) regulations are applicable and must be followed (Chapter 173-218 WAC).

Hydraulic restriction layers:

Adjacent roads, foundations or other infrastructure may require that infiltration pathways are restricted to prevent excessive hydrologic loading. Two types of restricting layers can be incorporated into bioretention designs:

- Clay (bentonite) liners are low permeability liners. Where clay liners are used underdrain systems are necessary. See Volume V section 4.4.3 for guidelines.
- Geomembrane liners completely block infiltration to subgrade soils and are used for ground water protection when bioretention facilities are installed to filter storm flows from pollutant hotspots or on sidewalls of bioretention areas to restrict lateral flows to roadbeds or other sensitive infrastructure. Where geomembrane liners are used to line the entire facility underdrain systems are necessary. The liner should have a minimum thickness of 30 mils and be ultraviolet (UV) resistant.

Plant materials

In general, the predominant plant material utilized in bioretention areas are facultative species adapted to stresses associated with wet and dry conditions. Soil moisture conditions will vary within the facility from saturated (bottom of cell) to relatively dry (rim of cell). Accordingly, wetland plants may be used in the lower areas, if saturated soil conditions exist for appropriate periods, and drought-tolerant species planted on the perimeter of the facility or on mounded areas. See the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) for additional guidance and recommended plant species.

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Mulch layer

You can design Bioretention areas with or without a mulch layer. When used, mulch shall be:

- Coarse compost in the bottom of the facilities (compost is less likely to float during cell inundation). Compost shall not include biosolids or manures.
- Shredded or chipped hardwood or softwood on side slopes above ponding elevation and rim area. Arborist mulch is mostly woody trimmings from trees and shrubs and is a good source of mulch material. Wood chip operations are a good source for mulch material that has more control of size distribution and consistency. Do not use shredded construction wood debris or any shredded wood to which preservatives have been added.
- Free of weed seeds, soil, roots and other material that is not **bole** or branch wood and bark.
- A maximum of 2 to 3 inches thick.

Mulch shall **not** be:

- Grass clippings (decomposing grass clippings are a source of nitrogen and are not recommended for mulch in bioretention areas).
- Pure bark (bark is essentially sterile and inhibits plant establishment).

In bioretention areas where higher flow velocities are anticipated an aggregate mulch may be used to dissipate flow energy and protect underlying Bioretention Soil Mix. Aggregate mulch varies in size and type, but 1 to 1 1/2 inch gravel (rounded) decorative rock is typical.

Installation

Excavation

Soil compaction can lead to facility failure; accordingly, minimizing compaction of the base and sidewalls of the bioretention area is critical. Excavation should never be allowed during wet or saturated conditions (compaction can reach depths of 2-3 feet during wet conditions and mitigation is likely not be possible). Excavation should be performed by machinery operating adjacent to the bioretention facility and no heavy equipment with narrow tracks, narrow tires, or large lugged, high pressure tires should be allowed on the bottom of the bioretention facility. If machinery must operate in the bioretention cell for excavation, use light weight, low ground-contact pressure equipment and rip the base at completion to refracture soil to a minimum of 12 inches. If machinery operates in the facility, subgrade infiltration rates must be field tested and compared to design rates. Failure to meet or exceed the design infiltration rate will require revised engineering designs to verify achievement of treatment and flow control benefits that were estimated in the Stormwater Site Plan.

Prior to placement of the BSM, the finished subgrade shall:

- Be scarified to a minimum depth of 3 inches.
- Have any sediment deposited from construction runoff removed. To remove all introduced sediment, subgrade soil should be removed to a depth of 3-6 inches and replaced with BSM.
- Be inspected by the responsible engineer to verify required subgrade condition.

Sidewalls of the facility, beneath the surface of the BSM, can be vertical if soil stability is adequate. Exposed sidewalls of the completed bioretention area with BSM in place should be no steeper than 3H:1V. The bottom of the facility should be flat.

Soil Placement

On-site soil mixing or placement shall not be performed if Bioretention Soil Mix or subgrade soil is saturated. The bioretention soil mixture should be placed and graded by machinery operating adjacent to the bioretention facility. If machinery must operate in the bioretention cell for soil placement, use light weight equipment with low ground-contact pressure. If machinery operates in the facility, subgrade infiltration rates must be field tested and compared to design rates. Failure to meet or exceed the design infiltration rate will require revised engineering designs to verify achievement of treatment and flow control benefits that were estimated in the Stormwater Site Plan.

The soil mixture shall be placed in horizontal layers not to exceed 6 inches per lift for the entire area of the bioretention facility.

Compact the Bioretention Soil Mix to a relative compaction of 85 percent of modified maximum dry density (ASTM D 1557). Compaction can be achieved by boot packing (simply walking over all areas of each lift), and then apply 0.2 inches (0.5 cm) of water per 1 inch (2.5 cm) of Bioretention Soil Mix depth. Water for settling should be applied by spraying or sprinkling.

Temporary Erosion and Sediment Control (TESC)

Controlling erosion and sediment are most difficult during clearing, grading, and construction; accordingly, minimizing site disturbance to the greatest extent practicable is the most effective sediment management. During construction:

- Bioretention facilities should not be used as sediment control facilities and all drainage should be directed away from bioretention facilities after initial rough grading. Flow can be directed away from the facility with temporary diversion swales or other approved protection. If introduction of construction runoff cannot be avoided see below for guidelines.
- Construction on Bioretention facilities should not begin until all contributing drainage areas are stabilized according to erosion and sediment control BMPs and to the satisfaction of the engineer.
- If the design includes curb and gutter, the curb cuts and inlets should be blocked until Bioretention Soil Mix and mulch have been placed and planting completed (when possible), and dispersion pads are in place.

Every effort during design, construction sequencing and construction should be made to prevent sediment from entering bioretention facilities. However, bioretention areas are often distributed throughout the project area and can present unique challenges during construction. See the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) for guidelines if no other options exist and runoff during construction must be directed through the bioretention facilities.

Note that the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012) is for additional informational purposes only. You must follow the guidance within this manual if there are any discrepancies between this manual and the *LID Technical Guidance Manual for Puget Sound* (2012).

Erosion and sediment control practices must be inspected and maintained on a regular basis.

Verification

If using the default bioretention soil media, pre-placement laboratory analysis for saturated hydraulic conductivity of the bioretention soil media is not required. Verification of the mineral aggregate gradation, compliance with the compost specifications, and the mix ratio must be provided.

If using a custom bioretention soil media, verification of compliance with the minimum design criteria cited above for such custom mixes must be provided. This will require laboratory testing of the material that will be used in the installation. Testing shall be performed by a Seal of Testing Assurance, AASHTO, ASTM or other standards organization accredited laboratory with current and maintained certification. Samples for testing must be supplied from the BSM that will be placed in the bioretention areas.

If testing infiltration rates is necessary for post-construction verification use the Pilot Infiltration Test (PIT) method or a double ring infiltrometer test (or other small-scale testing allowed by the local government with jurisdiction). If using the PIT method, do not excavate Bioretention Soil Mix (conduct test at level of finished Bioretention Soil Mix elevation), use a maximum of 6 inch ponding depth and conduct test before plants are installed.

Maintenance

Bioretention areas require annual plant, soil, and mulch layer maintenance to ensure optimum infiltration, storage, and pollutant removal capabilities. In general, bioretention maintenance requirements are typical landscape care procedures and include:

- Watering: Plants should be selected to be drought tolerant and not require watering after establishment (2 to 3 years). Watering may be required during prolonged dry periods after plants are established.
- Erosion control: Inspect flow entrances, ponding area, and surface overflow areas periodically, and replace soil, plant material, and/or mulch layer in areas if erosion has occurred. Properly designed facilities with appropriate flow velocities should not have erosion problems except perhaps in extreme events. If erosion problems occur the following should be reassessed: (1) flow volumes from contributing areas and bioretention cell sizing; (2) flow velocities and gradients within the cell; and (3) flow dissipation and erosion protection strategies in the pretreatment area and flow entrance. If sediment is deposited in the bioretention area, immediately determine the source within the contributing area, stabilize, and remove excess surface deposits.
- Sediment removal*:* Follow the maintenance plan schedule for visual inspection and remove sediment if the volume of the ponding area has been compromised.
- Plant material: Depending on aesthetic requirements, occasional pruning and removing dead plant material may be necessary. Replace all dead plants and if specific plants have a high mortality rate, assess the cause and replace with appropriate species. Periodic weeding is necessary until plants are established.
- Weeding: Invasive or nuisance plants should be removed regularly and not allowed to accumulate and exclude planted species. At a minimum, schedule weeding with inspections to coincide with important horticultural cycles (e.g., prior to major weed varieties dispersing seeds). Weeding should be done manually and without herbicide applications. The weeding schedule should become less frequent if the appropriate plant species and planting density are used and the selected plants grow to capture the site and exclude undesirable weeds.

- Nutrient and pesticides*:* The soil mix and plants are selected for optimum fertility, plant establishment, and growth. Nutrient and pesticide inputs should not be required and may degrade the pollutant processing capability of the bioretention area, as well as contribute pollutant loads to receiving waters. By design, bioretention facilities are located in areas where phosphorous and nitrogen levels may be elevated and these should not be limiting nutrients. If in question, have soil analyzed for fertility.
- Mulch: Replace mulch annually in bioretention facilities where heavy metal deposition is high (e.g., contributing areas that include gas stations, ports and roads with high traffic loads). In residential settings or other areas where metals or other pollutant loads are not anticipated to be high, replace or add mulch as needed (likely 3 to 5 years) to maintain a 2 to 3 inch depth.

  Soil*:* Soil mixes for bioretention facilities are designed to maintain long-term fertility and pollutant processing capability. Estimates from metal attenuation research suggest that metal accumulation should not present an environmental concern for at least 20 years in bioretention systems, but this will vary according to pollutant load. Replacing mulch media in bioretention facilities where heavy metal deposition is likely provides an additional level of protection for prolonged performance. If in question, have soil analyzed for fertility and pollutant levels.

BMP T7.40: Compost-amended Vegetated Filter Strips (CAVFS)

Description

The CAVFS is a variation of the basic vegetated filter strip that adds soil amendments to the roadside embankment (See Figure 7.4.3). The soil amendments improve infiltration characteristics, increase surface roughness, and improve plant sustainability. Once permanent vegetation is established, the advantages of the CAVFS *a*re higher surface roughness; greater retention and infiltration capacity; improved removal of soluble cationic contaminants through sorption; improved overall vegetative health; and a reduction of invasive weeds. Compost-amended systems have somewhat higher construction costs due to more expensive materials, but require less land area for runoff treatment, which can reduce overall costs.

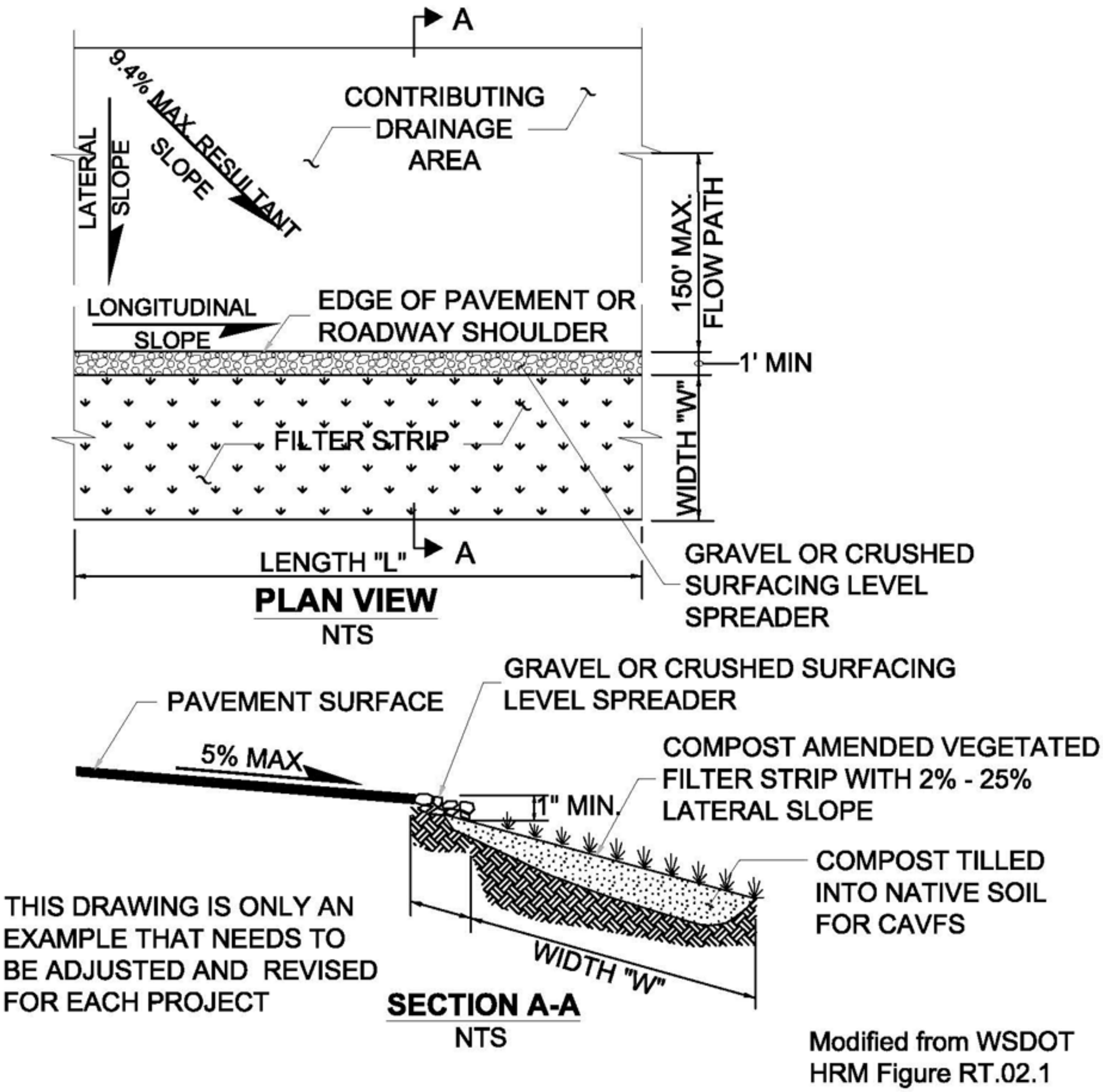


Figure 7.4.3 – Example of a Compost Amended Vegetated Filter Strip (CAVFS)

Applications CAVFS can be used to meet basic runoff treatment and enhanced runoff treatment objectives. It has practical application in areas where there is space for roadside embankments that can be built to the CAVFS specifications.

Soil Design Criteria

The CAVFS design incorporates composted material into the native soils per the criteria in BMP T5.13 for turf areas. However, as noted below, the compost shall not contain biosolids, or manure. The goal is to create a healthy soil environment for a lush growth of turf.

Soil/Compost Mix:

- Presumptive approach: Place and rototill 1.75 inches of composted material into 6.25 inches of soil (a total amended depth of about 9.5 inches), for a settled depth of 8 inches. Water or roll to compact soil to 85% maximum. Plant grass.
- Custom approach: Place and rototill the calculated amount of composted material into a depth of soil needed to achieve 8 inches of settled soil at 5% organic content. Water or roll to compact soil to 85% maximum. Plant grass. The amount of compost or other soil amendments used varies by soil type and organic matter content. If there is a good possibility that site conditions may already contain a relatively high organic content, then it may be possible to modify the pre-approved rate described above and still be able to achieve the 5% organic content target.
- The final soil mix (including compost and soil) should have an initial saturated hydraulic conductivity less than 12 inches per hour, and a minimum long-term hydraulic conductivity of 1.0 inch/hour per ASTM Designation D 2434 (Standard Test Method for Permeability of Granular Soils) at 85% compaction per ASTM Designation D 1557 (Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort. Infiltration rate and hydraulic conductivity are assumed to be approximately the same in a uniform mix soil. Note: Long term saturated hydraulic conductivity is determined by applying the appropriate infiltration correction factors as explained under "Determining Bioretention soil mix infiltration rate" under BMP T7.30.
- The final soil mixture should have a minimum organic content of 5% by dry weight per ASTM Designation D 2974 (Standard Test Method for Moisture, Ash and Organic Matter of Peat and Other Organic Soils) (Tackett, 2004).
- Achieving the above recommendations will depend on the specific soil and compost characteristics. In general, the recommendation can be achieved with 60% to 65% loamy sand mixed with 25% to 30% compost or 30% sandy loam, 30% coarse sand, and 30% compost.
- The final soil mixture should be tested prior to installation for fertility, micronutrient analysis, and organic material content.
- Clay content for the final soil mix should be less than 5%.
- Compost must not contain biosolids,manure, any street or highway sweepings, or any catch basin solids.

- The pH for the soil mix should be between 5.5 and 7.0 (Stenn, 2003). If the pH falls outside the acceptable range, it may be modified with lime to increase the pH or iron sulfate plus sulfur to lower the pH. The lime or iron sulfate must be mixed uniformly into the soil prior to use in LID areas (Low-Impact Development Center, 2004).
- The soil mix should be uniform and free of stones, stumps, roots, or other similar material larger than 2 inches.
- When placing topsoil, it is important that the first lift of topsoil is mixed into the top of the existing soil. This allows the roots to penetrate the underlying soil easier and helps prevent the formation of a slip plane between the two soil layers.

Soil Component:

The texture for the soil component of the LID BMP soil mix should be loamy sand (USDA Soil Textural Classification).

Compost Component:

Follow the specifications for compost in BMP T7.30 – Bioretention

Design Modeling Method

The CAVFS will have an “Element” in the approved continuous runoff models that must be used for determining the amount of water that is treated by the CAVFS. To fully meet treatment requirements, Ninety-one percent of the influent runoff file must pass through the soil profile of the CAVFS. Water that merely flows over the surface is not considered treated. Approved continuous runoff models should be able to report the amount of water that it estimates will pass through the soil profile.

Maintenance

Compost, as with sand filters or other filter mediums, can become plugged with fines and sediment, which may require removal and replacement. Including vegetation with compost helps prevent the medium from becoming plugged with sediment by breaking up the sediment and creating root pathways for stormwater to penetrate into the compost. It is expected that soil amendments will have a removal and replacement cycle; however, this time frame has not yet been established.

Chapter 8. - Filtration Treatment Facilities

Note: Figures in Chapter 8 are courtesy of King County, except as noted.

This Chapter presents criteria for the design, construction and maintenance of runoff treatment sand filters including basin, vault, and linear filters.

8.1 Purpose

Filtration treatment facilities collect and treat design runoff volumes to remove total suspended solids (TSS), phosphorous, and insoluble organics (including oils) from stormwater.

8.2 Description

A typical sand filtration system consists of a pretreatment system, flow spreader(s), sand bed, and underdrain piping. The sand filter bed includes a geotextile fabric between the sand bed and the bottom underdrain system.

Provide an impermeable liner under the facility if the filtered runoff requires additional treatment to remove soluble ground water pollutants; or where additional ground water protection is mandated.

The variations of a sand filter include a basic sand filter basin, large sand filter basin, sand filter vault, and linear sand filter. (Figures throughout this chapter provide examples of various sand filter configurations.)

The Media Filter Drain (MFD) has four basic components: a gravel no-vegetation zone, a grass strip, the MFD mix bed, and a conveyance system for flows leaving the MFD mix. The MFD mix is composed of gravel, perlite, dolomite, and gypsum.

8.3 Performance Objectives

Refer to Chapter 3 for descriptions of the Basic, Oil, Phosphorous, and Enhanced Performance Treatment Goals.

Basic Sand Filter Vault, Sand Filter Vault, and Linear Sand Filter: Ecology expects basic sand filters to achieve the following average pollutant removals:

- Basic Performance Treatment Goal: 80% total suspended solids (TSS) at influent Event Mean Concentrations (EMCs) of 100-200 mg/L.
- Oil Performance Treatment Goal: Oil and grease to below 10 mg/L daily average and 15 mg/L at any time, with no ongoing or recurring visible sheen in the discharge.

Large Sand filter: Ecology expects large sand filters to meet the Phosphorous Treatment Goal by removing at least 50% of the total phosphorous compounds (influent 0.1 to 0.5 mg/l, as total phosphorous) and by collecting and treating 95% of the runoff volume. (ASCE and WEF, 1998)

Media filter drain: Ecology expects media filter drains to achieve the:

- Basic Treatment Goal
- Phosphorous Treatment Goal
- Dissolved Metals (Enhanced) Treatment Goals: greater than 30% reduction of dissolved copper, and greater than 60% reduction of dissolved zinc.

8.4 Applications and Limitations

Filtration can be used in most residential, commercial, and industrial developments where debris, heavy sediment loads, and oils and greases will not clog or prematurely overload the sand, or where adequate pretreatment is provided for these pollutants. Specific applications include residential subdivisions, parking lots for commercial and industrial establishments, gas stations, high-use sites, high-density multi-family housing, roadways, and bridge decks.

Locate sand filters off-line before or after detention (Chang, 2000). Sand filters are also suited for locations with space constraints in retrofit, and new/re-development situations. Carefully design overflow or bypass structures to handle the larger storms. Size off-line systems to treat 91% of the runoff volume predicted by a continuous runoff model. If a project must comply with Minimum Requirement #7, Flow Control, route the flows bypassing the filter and the filter discharge to a retention/detention facility.

Pretreatment is necessary to reduce velocities to the sand filter and remove debris, floatables, large particulate matter, and oils. In high water table areas, adequate drainage of the sand filter may require additional engineering analysis and design considerations. Consider an underground filter in areas subject to freezing conditions (Urbonas, 1997).

8.5 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Sand Filtration

BMP T8.10: Basic Sand Filter Basin

Description

A sand filter basin is constructed so that its surface is at grade and open to the elements, much as an infiltration basin. However, instead of infiltrating into native soils, stormwater filters through a constructed sand bed with an underdrain system. See Figures 8.5.1 through 8.5.4 for more details.

Applications and Limitations

Use a sand filter basin to capture and treat the Water Quality Design Storm volume (see Section 4.1.1); which is 91% of the total runoff volume as predicted by Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM). Only 9% of the total runoff volume would bypass or overflow from the sand filter facility.

Locate off-line sand filters either upstream or downstream of detention facilities. Only locate on-line sand filters downstream of detention to prevent exposure of the sand filter surface to high flow rates that could cause loss of media and previously removed pollutants.

Site Suitability

Consider the following site characteristics when siting a sand filtration system:

- Space availability, including a presettling basin
- Sufficient hydraulic head, at least 4 feet from inlet to outlet
- Adequate Operation and Maintenance capability including accessibility for O & M
- Sufficient pretreatment of oil, debris and solids in the tributary runoff

Design Criteria

Hydraulics

If the drainage area maintains a base flow between storm events, bypass the base flow around the filter to keep the sand from remaining saturated for extended periods.

Assume a ***design filtration rate*** of 1 inch per hour. Though the sand specified below will initially infiltrate at a much higher rate, that rate will slow as the filter accumulates sediment. When the filtration rate falls to 1 inch per hour, removal of sediment is necessary to maintain rates above the rate assumed for sizing purposes.

On-line:

- Do NOT place ***upstream*** of a detention facility. In order to prevent exposure of the sand filter surface to high flow rates that could cause loss of media and previously removed pollutants.
- Size on-line sand filters placed ***downstream*** of a detention facility using WWHM or an approved equivalent continuous runoff model to filter the water quality runoff volume.
- Include an ***overflow*** in the design. The overflow height should be at the maximum hydraulic head of the pond above the sand bed. On-line filters shall have overflows (primary, secondary, and emergency) in accordance with the design criteria for detention ponds (Volume III, Section 3.2.1).

Off-line:

- Off-line sand filters placed ***upstream*** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 15-

minute water quality flow rate, as predicted by WWHM, to the sand filter.

- Size the facility to filter all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility should occur). Note that WWHM allows bypass flows and filtered runoff to be directed to the downstream detention facility.
- Off-line sand filters placed ***downstream*** of a detention facility must have a flow splitter designed to send all flows at or below the 2-year flow frequency from the detention pond, as predicted by WWHM, to the treatment facility. The treatment facility must be sized to filter all the runoff sent to it (no overflows from the treatment facility should occur).
- For off-line filters, design the underdrain structure to pass the 2-year peak inflow rate, as determined using 15-minute time steps in an approved continuous runoff model.

Additional Design Criteria

1. Pretreat(e.g., presettling basin, etc. depending on pollutants) runoff directed to the sand filter to remove debris and other solids. In high use sites, the pretreatment should be an appropriate oil treatment as described in Section 3.3.

2. Design inlet bypass and flow spreading structures (e.g., flow spreaders, weirs or multiple orifice openings) to capture the applicable design flow rate, minimize turbulence and to spread the flow uniformly across the surface of the sand filter. Install stone riprap or other energy dissipation devices to prevent gouging of the sand medium and to promote uniform flow. Include emergency spillway or overflow structures.

   a. If the sand filter is curved or an irregular shape, provide a flow spreader for a minimum of 20 percent of the filter perimeter.

   b. If the length-to-width ration of the filter is 2:1 or greater, locate a flow spreader on the longer side of the filter and for a minimum length of 20 percent of the facility perimeter.

   c. Provide erosion protection along the first foot of the sand bed adjacent to the flow spreader. Methods for this include geotextile weighted with sand bags at 15-foot intervals and quarry spalls.

3. The following are design criteria for the underdrain piping:

   Types of acceptable underdrains:

   - A central collector pipe with lateral feeder pipes in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock bed.

   - A central collector pipe with a geotextile drain strip in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock bed.

   - Longitudinal pipes in an 8-inch gravel backfill or drain rock with a collector pipe at the outlet end.

- Upstream of detention, size underdrain piping to handle double the two-year return frequency flow indicated by WWHM (the doubling factor is a safety factor used in the absence of a conversion factor from the 1-hr. time step to a 15 minute time step). Downstream of detention, size the underdrain piping for the two-year return frequency flow indicated by WWHM. In both instances provide at least one (1) foot of hydraulic head above the invert of the upstream end of the collector pipe. (King County, 1998)
- Use underdrain pipe with a minimum of internal diameter of six (6) inches, with two rows of ½-inch holes spaced 6 inches apart longitudinally (maximum), and rows 120 degrees apart (laid with holes downward). Maintain a maximum perpendicular distance between two feeder pipes, or the edge of the filter and a feeder pipe, of 15 feet. For all piping use schedule 40 PVC or piping with a greater wall thickness.
- Slope the main collector underdrain pipe at 0.5 percent minimum. (King County, 1998)
- Use a geotextile fabric (specifications in Appendix V-C) between the sand layer and drain rock or gravel. Cover the geotextile fabric with 1-inch of drain rock/gravel. Use 0.75-1.5 inch drain rock or gravel backfill, washed free of clay and organic material. (King County, 1998)

Place cleanout wyes with caps or junction boxes at both ends of the collector pipes. Extend cleanouts to the surface of the filter. Supply a valve box for access to the cleanouts. Provide access for cleaning all underdrain piping. This may consist of installing cleanout ports, which tee into the underdrain system and surface above the top of the sand bed. To facilitate maintenance of the sand filter an inlet shutoff/bypass valve is recommended.

4. Sand specification: The sand shall be 18 inches minimum in depth and must consist of a medium sand meeting the size gradation (by weight) given in Table 8.5.1. The contractor must obtain a grain size analysis from the supplier to certify that the sand meets the No. 100 and No. 200 sieve requirements. *(Note: Standard backfill for sand drains, Wa. Std. Spec. 9-03.13, does not meet this specification and do not use Spec 9-03.13 for sand filters.)*

Table 8.5.1 **Sand Medium Specification**	
U.S. Sieve Number	**Percent Passing**
4	95-100
8	70-100
16	40-90
30	25-75
50	2-25
100	<4
200	<2

Source: King County Surface Water Design Manual, September

5. Impermeable Liners for Sand Bed Bottom: Impermeable liners are generally required for soluble pollutants such as metals and toxic organics and where the underflow could cause problems with structures. Impermeable liners may consist of clay, concrete or geomembrane. Clay liners should have a minimum thickness of 12 inches and meet the specifications give in Table 8.5.2:

Table 8.5.2
Clay Liner Specifications

Property	**Test Method**	**Unit**	**Specification**
Permeability	ASTM D-2434	cm/sec	$1 \times 10^{-6 \text{ max.}}$
Plasticity Index of Clay	ASTM D-423 & D-424	percent	Not less than 15
Liquid Limit of Clay	ASTM D-2216	percent	Not less than 30
Clay Particles Passing	ASTM D-422	percent	Not less than 30
Clay Compaction	ASTM D-2216	percent	95% of Standard Proctor Density

Source: City of Austin, 1988

- If a geomembrane liner is used it should have a minimum thickness of 30 mils and be ultraviolet resistant. Protect the geomembrane liner from puncture, tearing, and abrasion by installing geotextile fabric on the top and bottom of the geomembrane.
- Concrete liners may also be used for sedimentation chambers and for sedimentation and sand filtration basins less than 1,000 square feet in area. Concrete should be 5 inches thick Class A or better and reinforced by steel wire mesh. The steel wire mesh should be 6 gauge wire or larger and 6-inch by 6-inch mesh or smaller. An "Ordinary Surface Finish" is required. When the underlying soil is clay or has an unconfined compressive strength of 0.25 ton per square foot or less, the concrete should have a minimum 6-inch

compacted aggregate base. This base must consist of coarse sand and river stone, crushed stone or equivalent with diameter of 0.75- to 1-inch.

- If an impermeable liner is not required then a geotextile fabric liner should be installed that retains the sand and meets the specifications listed in Appendix V-C unless the basin has been excavated to bedrock.
- If an impermeable liner is not provided, then an analysis should be made of possible adverse effects of seepage zones on ground water, and near building foundations, basements, roads, parking lots and sloping sites. Sand filters without impermeable liners should not be built on fill sites and should be located at least 20-foot downslope and 100-foot upslope from building foundations.

6. Include an access ramp with a slope not to exceed 7:1, or equivalent, for maintenance purposes at the inlet and the outlet of a surface filter. Consider an access port for inspection and maintenance.
7. Side slopes for earthen/grass embankments should not exceed 3:1 to facilitate mowing.
8. High ground water may damage underground structures or affect the performance of filter underdrain systems. There should be sufficient clearance (at least 2 feet is recommended) between the seasonal high ground water level (highest level of ground water observed) and the bottom of the sand filter to obtain adequate drainage.

Construction Criteria

No runoff should enter the sand filter prior to completion of construction and approval of site stabilization by the responsible inspector. Construction runoff may be routed to a pretreatment sedimentation facility, but discharge from sedimentation facilities should by-pass downstream sand filters. Careful level placement of the sand is necessary to avoid formation of voids within the sand that could lead to short-circuiting, (particularly around penetrations for underdrain cleanouts) and to prevent damage to the underlying geomembranes and underdrain system. Over-compaction should be avoided to ensure adequate filtration capacity. Sand is best placed with a low ground pressure bulldozer (4 psig or less). After the sand layer is placed water settling is recommended. Flood the sand with 10-15 gallons of water per cubic foot of sand.

Maintenance Criteria

Inspections of sand filters and pretreatment systems should be conducted every 6 months and after storm events as needed during the first year of operation, and annually thereafter if filter performs as designed. Repairs should be performed as necessary. Suggestions for maintenance include:

- Accumulated silt, and debris on top of the sand filter should be removed when their depth exceeds 1/2-inch. The silt should be scraped off during dry periods with steel rakes or other devices. Once sediment is removed, the design permeability of the filtration media can typically be restored by then striating the surface layer of the media. Finer sediments that have penetrated deeper into the filtration media can reduce the permeability to unacceptable levels, necessitating replacement of some or all of the sand.

- Sand replacement frequency is not well established and will depend on suspended solids levels entering the filter (the effectiveness of the pretreatment BMP can be a significant factor).
- Frequent overflow into the spillway or overflow structure or slow drawdown are indicators of plugging problems. A sand filter should empty in 24 hours following a storm event (24 hours for the pre-settling chamber), depending on pond depth. If the hydraulic conductivity drops to one (1) inch per hour corrective action is needed, e.g.:

– Scraping the top layer of fine-grain sediment accumulation (mid-winter scraping is suggested)

– Removal of thatch

– Aerating the filter surface

– Tilling the filter surface (late-summer rototilling is suggested)

– Replacing the top 4 inches of sand.

– Inspecting geotextiles for clogging

- Rapid drawdown in the sand bed (greater than 12 inches per hour) indicates short-circuiting of the filter. Inspect the cleanouts on the underdrain pipes and along the base of the embankment for leakage.
- Drawdown tests for the sand bed could be conducted, as needed, during the wet season. These tests can be conducted by allowing the filter to fill (or partially fill) during a storm event, then measuring the decline in water level over a 4-8 hour period. An inlet and an underdrain outlet valve would be necessary to conduct such a test.
- Formation of rills and gullies on the surface of the filter indicates improper function of the inlet flow spreader, or poor sand compaction. Check for accumulation of debris on or in the flow spreader and refill rills and gullies with sand.
- Avoid driving heavy equipment on the filter to prevent compaction and rut formation.

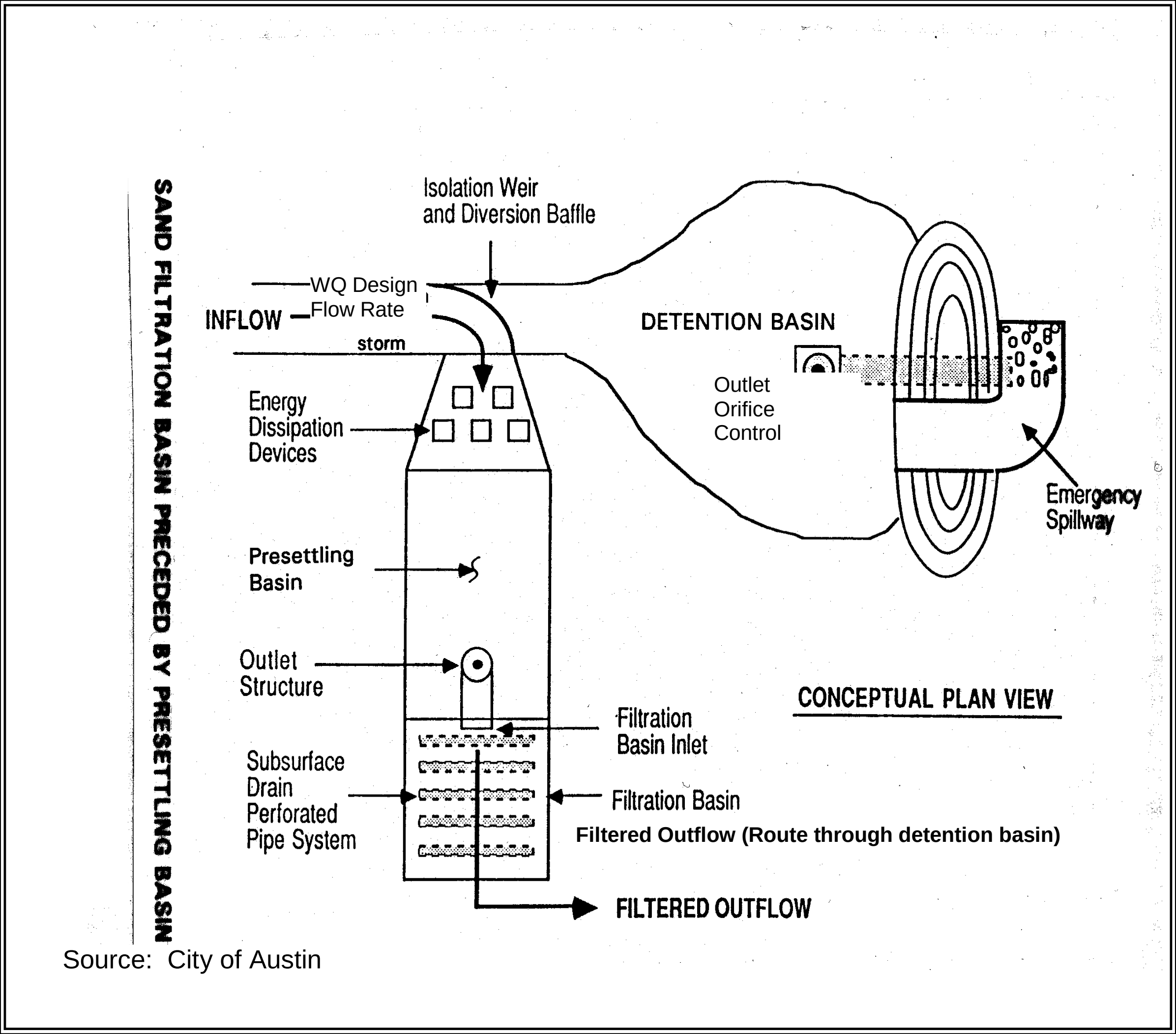


Figure 8.5.1 – Sand Filtration Basin Preceded by Presettling Basin (Variation of a Basic Sand Filter)

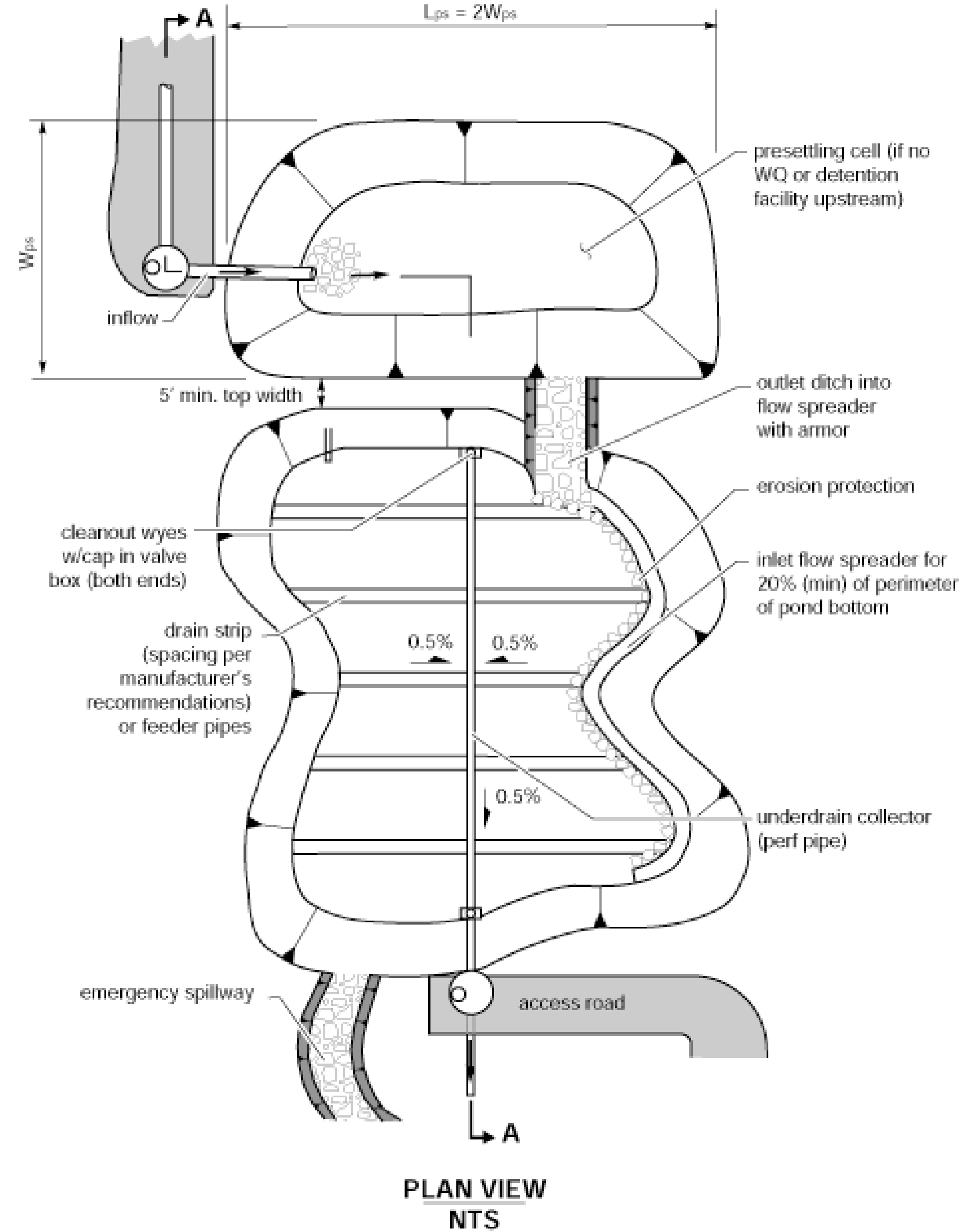


Figure 8.5.2 – Sand Filter with Pretreatment Cell

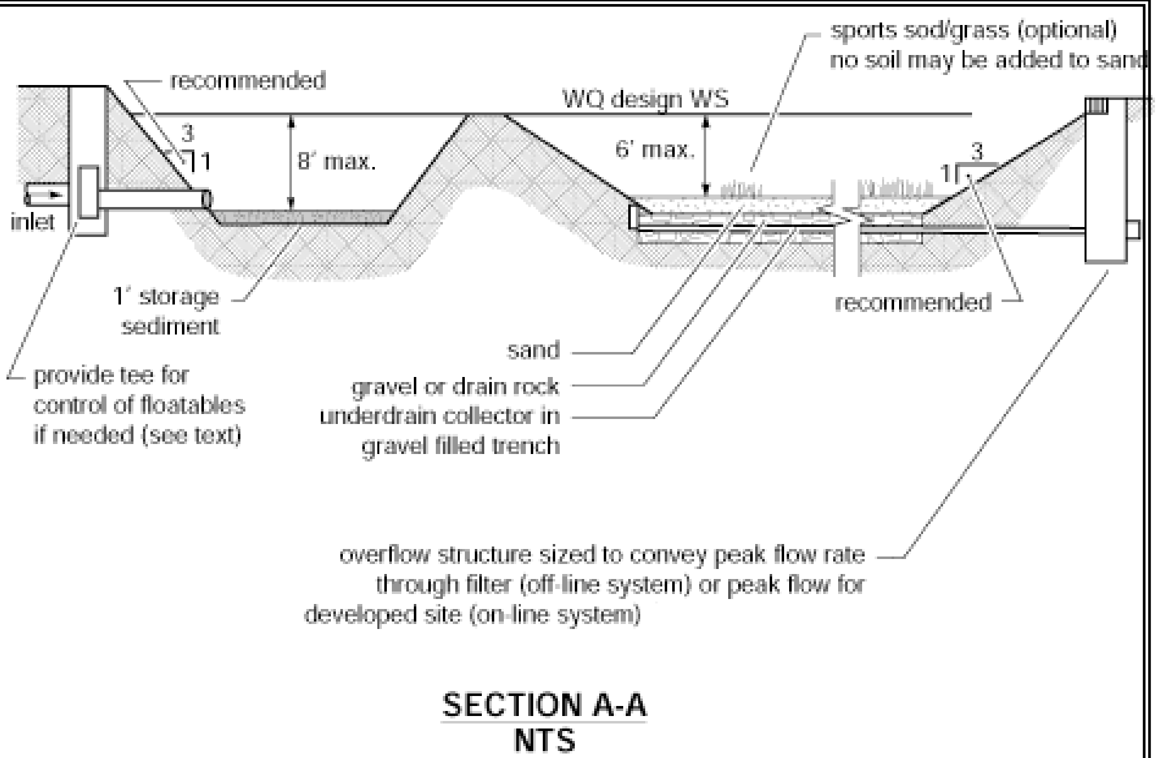


Figure 8.5.2 (cont) Sand Filter with Pretreatment Cell

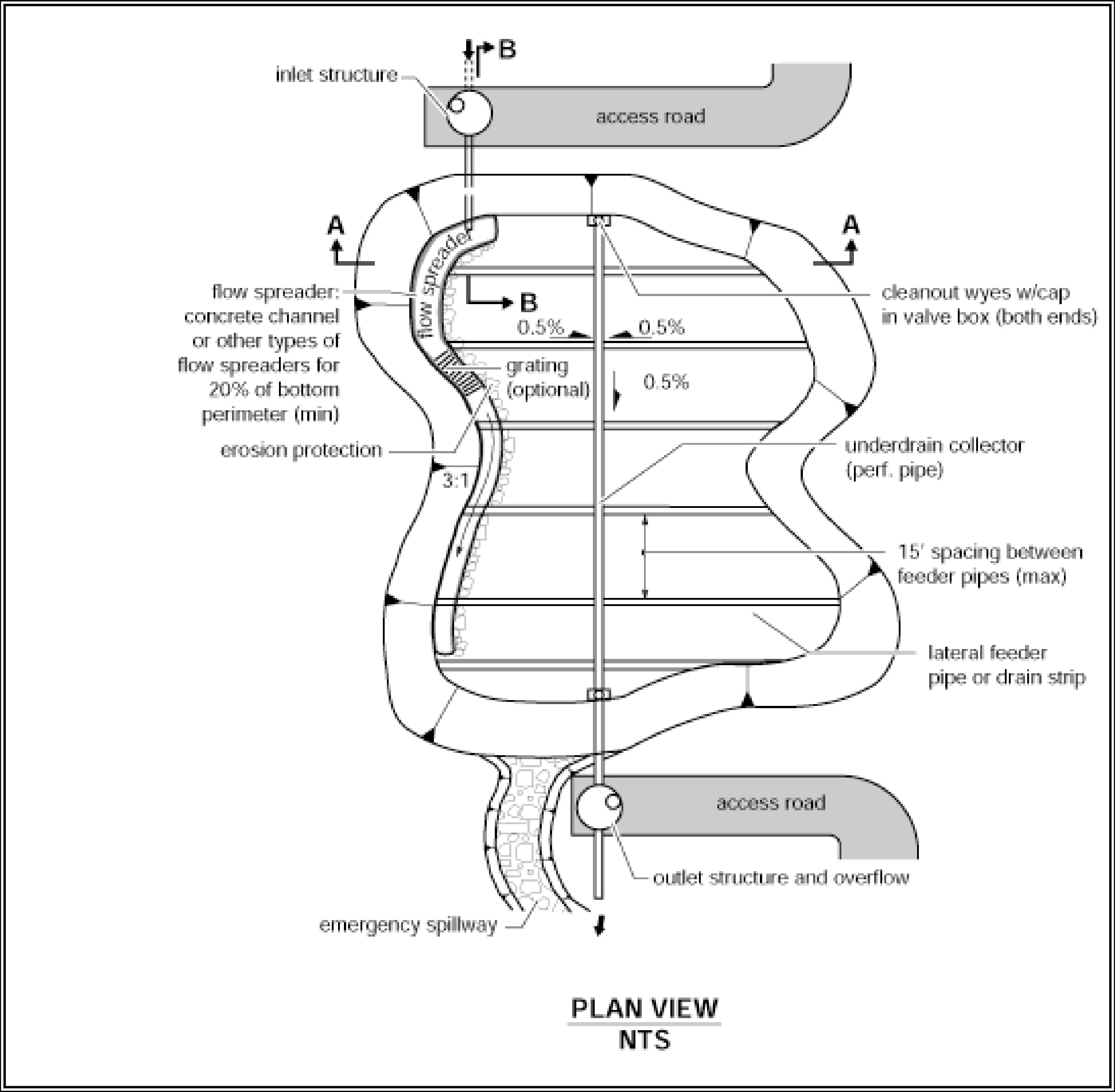


Figure 8.5.3 – Sand Filter with Level Spreader

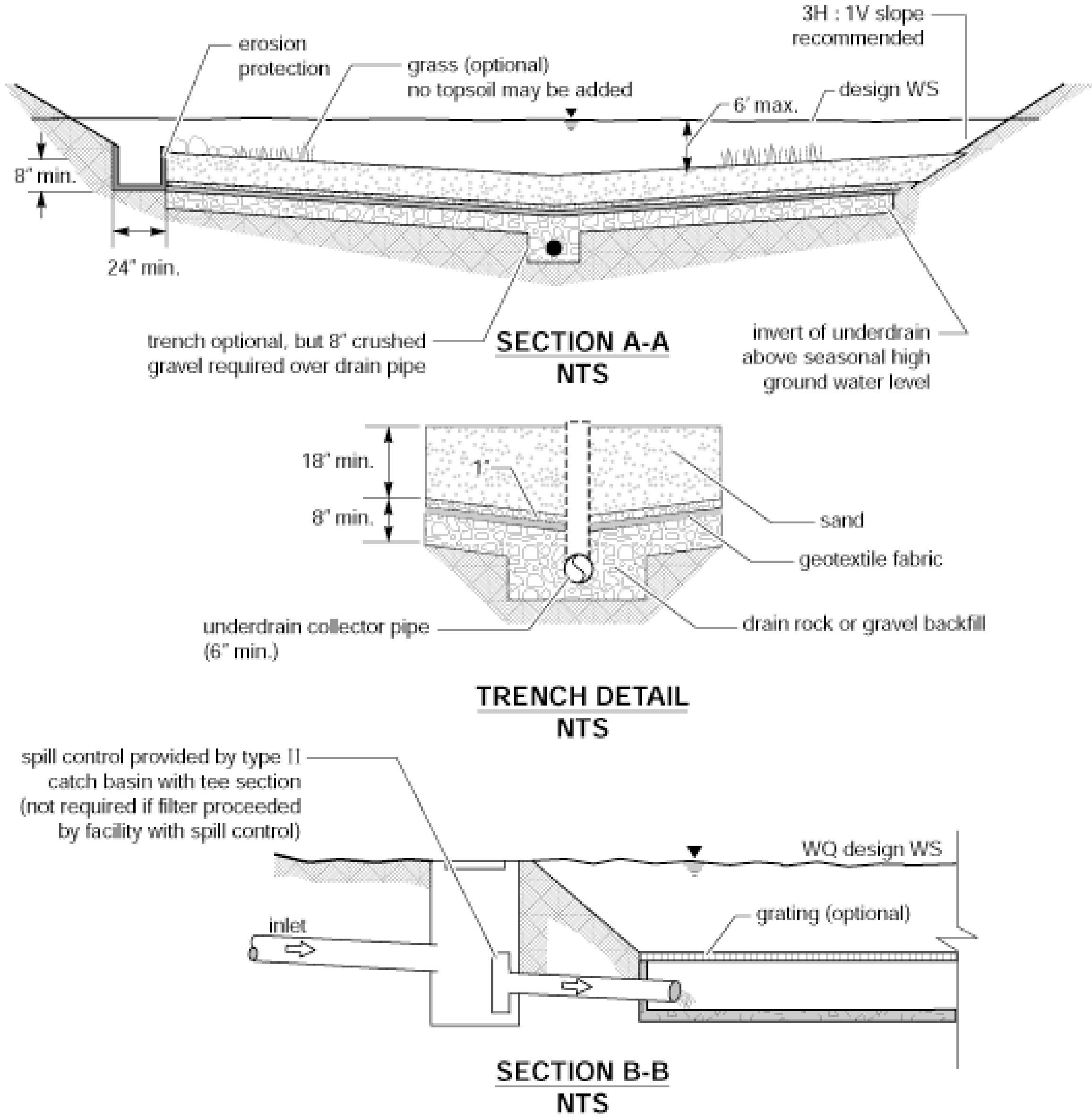
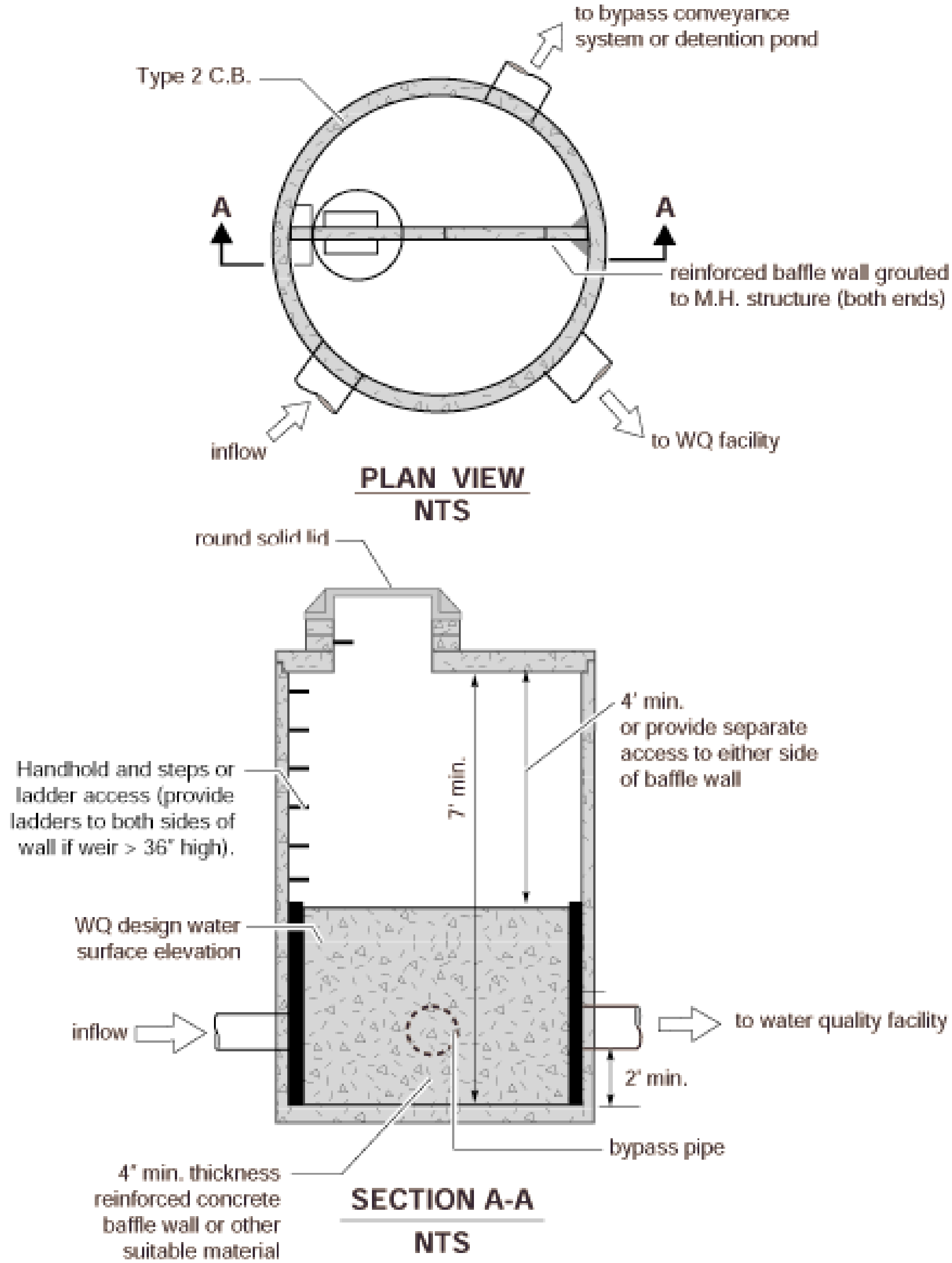
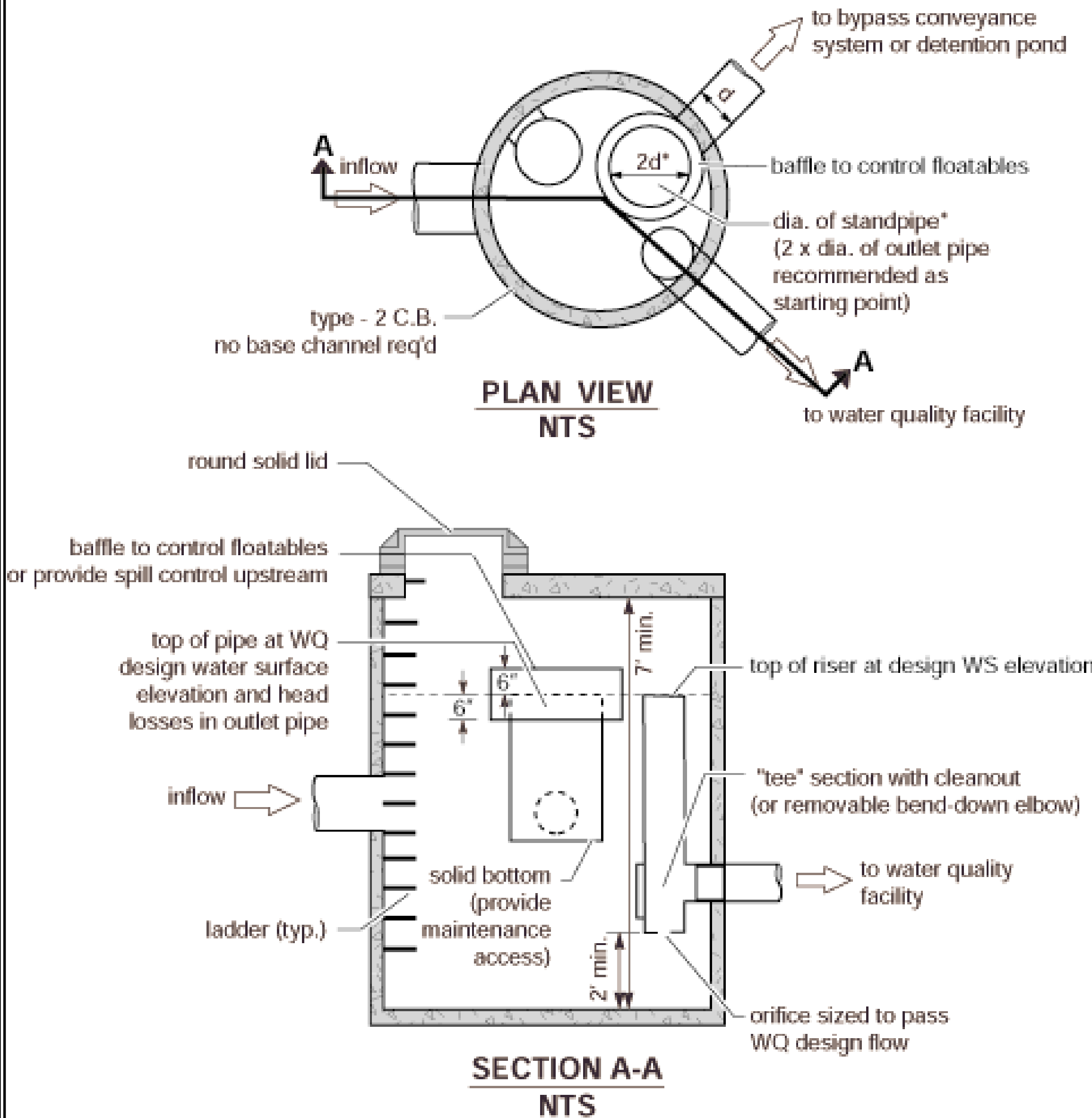


Figure 8.5.3 - (cont) Sand Filter with Level Spreader



Note: The water quality discharge pipe may require an orifice plate be installed on the outlet to control the height of the design water surface (weir height). The design water surface should be set to provide a minimun headwater/diameter ratio of 2.0 on the outlet pipe.

Figure 8.5.4a – Flow Splitter Option A



* **NOTE:** Diameter (d) of standpipe should be large enough to minimize head above WQ design WS and to keep WQ design flows from increasing more than 10% during 100-year flows.

Figure 8.5.4b – Flow Splitter Option B

BMP T8.11: Large Sand Filter Basin

Description

A Large Sand Filter Basin is virtually identical to a Basic Sand Filter Basin except that it is sized to provide a higher level of treatment. A Basic Sand Filter Basin is listed as a Basic Treatment per Section 3.5. A Large Sand Filter Basin is approved for under the Enhanced Treatment Menu in Section 3.4.

Applications and Limitations

The Large Sand Filter is generally subject to the same Applications and Limitations as BMP T8.10 Basic Sand Filter Basin. The difference is that the Large Sand Filter Basin uses a higher Water Quality Design Storm volume: 95% of the runoff volume of the period modeled in the WWHM model. Only 5% of the total runoff volume as modeled by WWHM would bypass or overflow from the sand filter facility.

Locate off-line sand filters either upstream or downstream of detention facilities. Only locate on-line sand filters downstream of detention to prevent exposure of the sand filter surface to high flow rates that could cause loss of media and previously removed pollutants.

Site Suitability

The Site Suitability for the Large Sand Filter Basin is the same as BMP T8.10 Basic Sand Filter Basin. Please refer to BMP T8.10 Basic Sand Filter Basin for more details.

Design Criteria

Design Volume

As stated the Applications and Limitations of this BMP, the Facility should be sized to capture the Water Quality Design Volume, which is 95% of the runoff volume for the Large Sand Filter Basin (as opposed the 91% for the Basic Sand Filter Basin).

Overflow and Underdrains

The design flows for the overflow and underdrains must be increased from BMP T8.10 Basic Sand Filter Basin to this BMP for the Large Sand Filter Basin.

The Basic Sand Filter Basin that uses the 91% runoff volume as the Water Quality Design Volume, a 2-year return interval peak flow from WWHM or equivalent approved continuous model. The corresponding Overflow and Underdrain Design flow is the 2 Year Storm.

Thus, the Overflow and Underdrain design flow can be calculated by increased the 2 year return interval peak flow by the ration of the 95% runoff volume (water quality design volume for this BMP, Large Sand Filter) and the 91% runoff volume (water quality design volume for BMP T8.10 Basic Sand Filter Basin). In equation form:

Design Flow rate for Large Sand Filter Overflow or Underdrain = (95% runoff Volume)/(91% Runoff Volume) * 2 year return interval peak flow.

For all other design criteria refer to BMP T8.10 Basic Sand Filter Basin.

BMP T8.20: Sand Filter Vault

Description

A sand filter vault is similar to an open sand filter except that the sand layer and underdrains are installed below grade in a vault. It consists of presettling and sand filtration cells. See Figures 8.5.5, 8.5.6a and 8.5.6b for more details.

Application and Limitations

- Use where space limitations preclude above ground facilities
- Not suitable where high water table and heavy sediment loads are expected
- An elevation difference of 4 feet between inlet and outlet is needed

Design Criteria

See design criteria for sand filter basins, including: hydraulics and additional criteria.

Additional Design Criteria for Vaults

- Vaults may be designed as off-line systems or on-line for small drainages
- In an off-line system a diversion structure should be installed to divert the design flow rate into the sediment chamber and bypass the remaining flow to detention/retention (if necessary to meet Minimum Requirement #7), or to surface water.
- Optimize sand inlet flow distribution with minimal sand bed disturbance. A maximum of 8-inch distance between the top of the spreader and the top of the sand bed is suggested. Flows may enter the sand bed by spilling over the top of the wall into a flow spreader pad or alternatively a pipe and manifold system may be used. Any pipe and manifold system must retain the required dead storage volume in the first cell, minimize turbulence, and be readily maintainable.
- If an inlet pipe and manifold system is used, the minimum pipe size should be 8 inches. Multiple inlets are recommended to minimize turbulence and reduce local flow velocities.
- Erosion protection must be provided along the first foot of the sand bed adjacent to the spreader. Geotextile fabric secured on the surface of the sand bed, or equivalent method, may be used.
- The filter bed should consist of a sand top layer, and a geotextile fabric second layer with an underdrain system.
- Design the presettling cell for sediment collection and removal. A V-shaped bottom, removable bottom panels, or equivalent sludge handling system should be used. One-foot of sediment storage in the presettling cell must be provided.
- The pre-settling chamber must be sealed to trap oil and trash. This chamber is usually connected to the sand filtration chamber through an invert elbow to protect the filter surface from oil and trash.

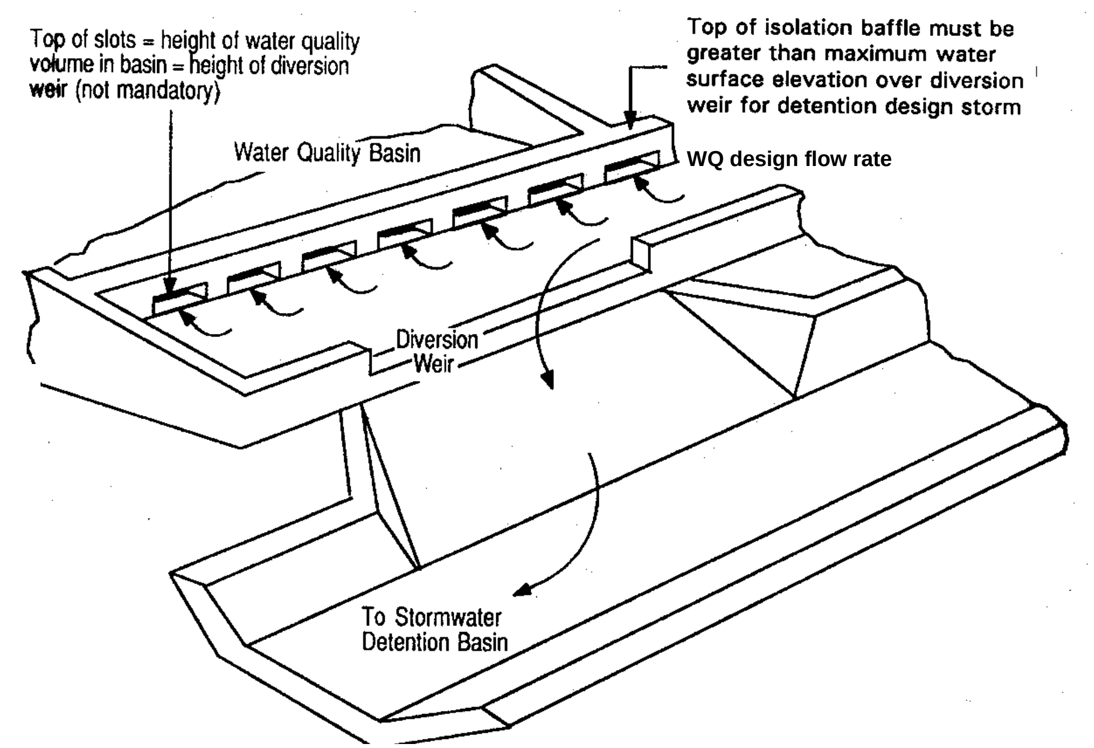
- If a retaining baffle is necessary for oil/floatables in the presettling cell, it must extend at least one foot above to one foot below the design flow water level. Provision for the passage of flows in the event of plugging must be provided. Access opening and ladder must be provided on both sides of the baffle.
- To prevent anoxic conditions, a minimum of 24 square feet of ventilation grate should be provided for each 250 square feet of sand bed surface area. For sufficient distribution of airflow across the sand bed, grates may be located in one area if the sand filter is small, but placement at each end is preferred. Small grates may also be dispersed over the entire sand bed area.
- Provision for access is the same as for wet vaults. Removable panels must be provided over the entire sand bed.
- Sand filter vaults must conform to the materials and structural suitability criteria specified for wet vaults.
- Provide a sand filter inlet shutoff/bypass valve for maintenance
- A geotextile fabric over the entire sand bed may be installed that is flexible, highly permeable, three-dimensional matrix, and adequately secured. This is useful in trapping trash and litter.

Construction Criteria

See sand filter basins, BMP T8.10, and Table 4.5.2 in Section 4.6.

Maintenance Criteria

See sand filter basins, BMP T8.10, and Table 4.5.2 in Section 4.6.



Source: City of Austin

Figure 8.5.5 – Example Isolation/Diversion Structure

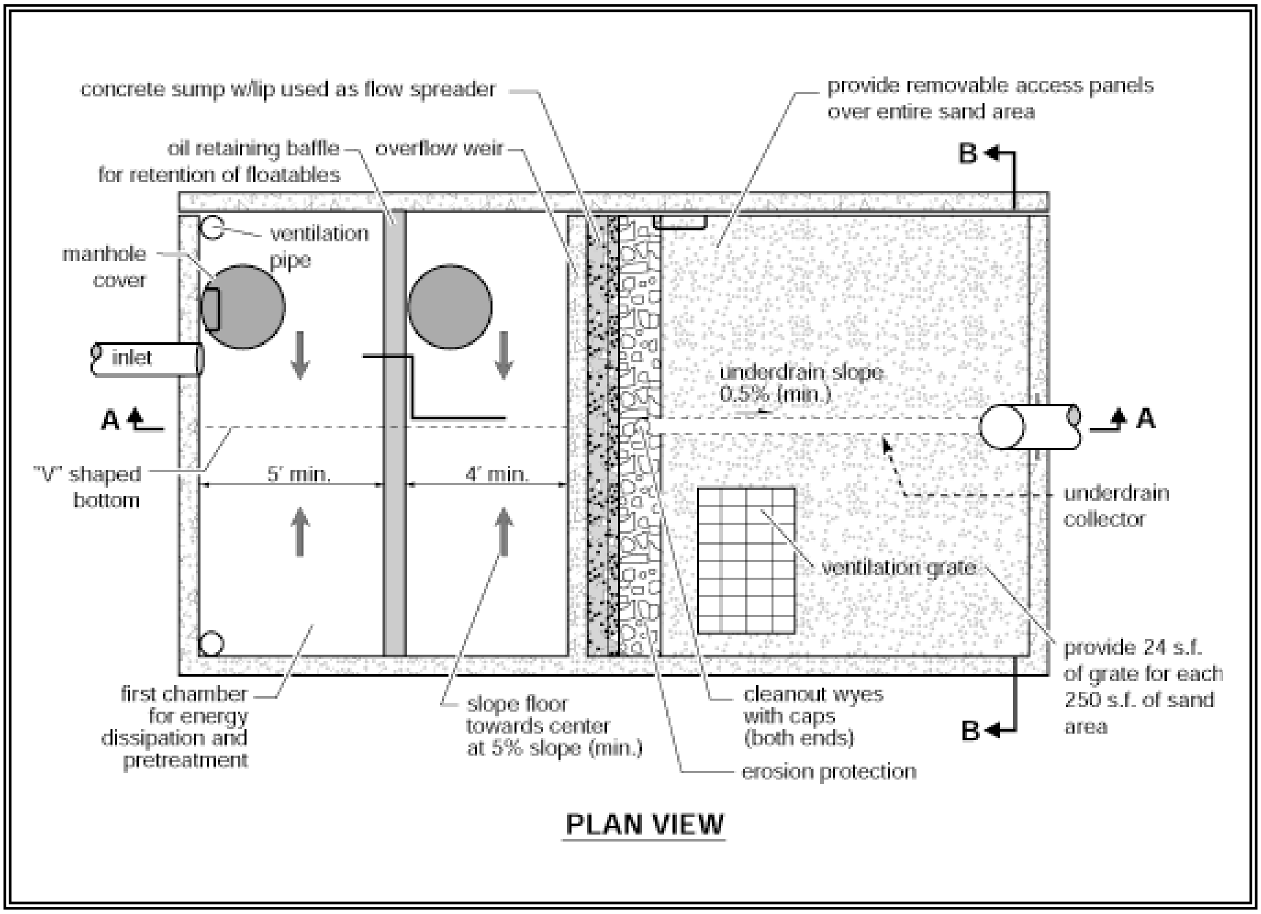


Figure 8.5.6a – Sand Filter Vault

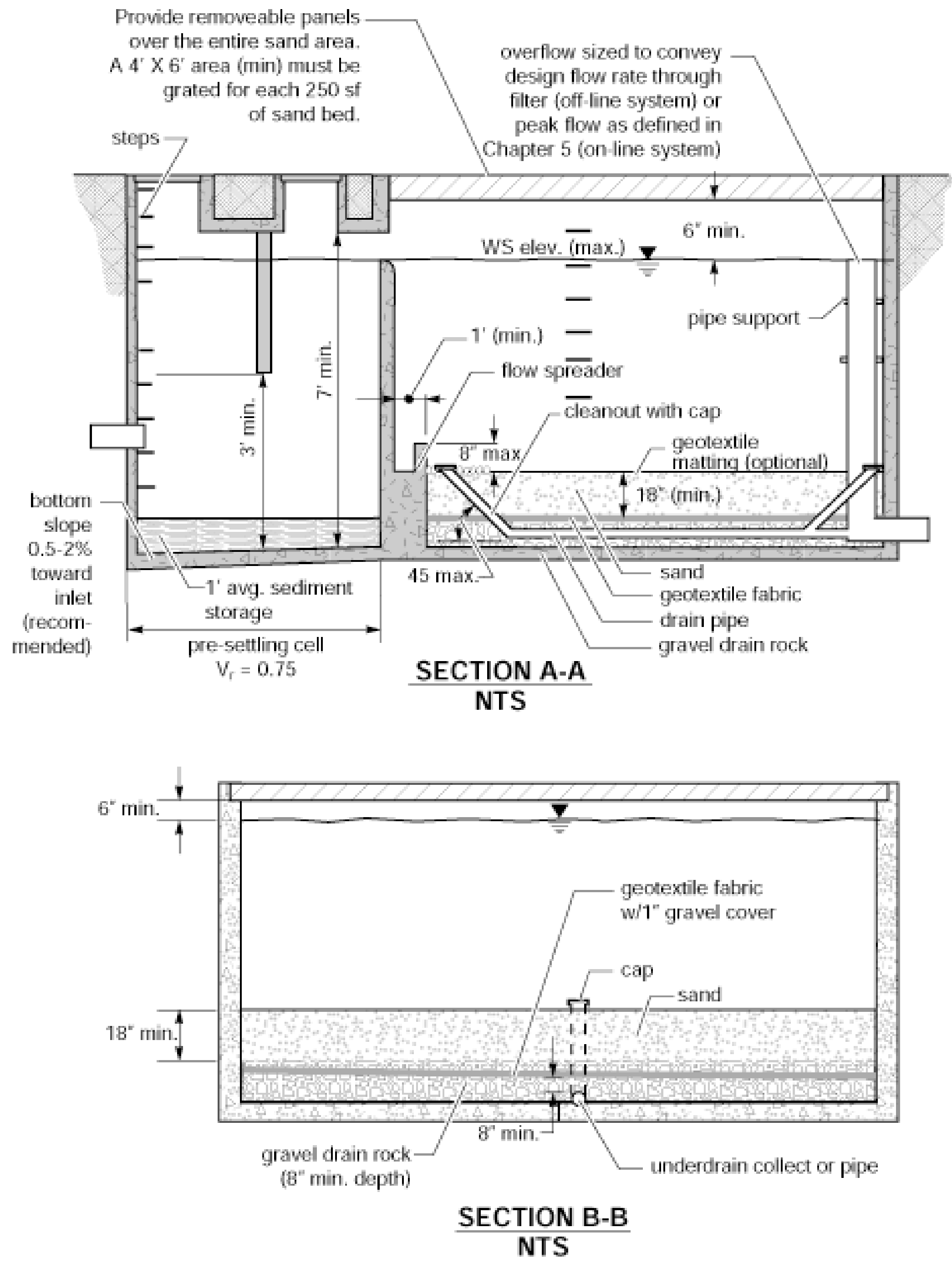


Figure 8.5.6b – Sand Filter Vault (cont)

BMP T8.30: Linear Sand Filter

Description (Figure 8.5.7)

Linear sand filters are typically long, shallow, two-celled, rectangular vaults. The first cell is designed for settling coarse particles, and the second cell contains the sand bed. Stormwater flows into the second cell via a weir section that also functions as a flow spreader.

Application and Limitations

- Applicable in long narrow spaces such as the perimeter of a paved surface.
- As a part of a treatment train as downstream of a filter strip, upstream of an infiltration system, or upstream of a wet pond or a biofilter for oil control.
- To treat small drainages (less than 2 acres of impervious area).
- To treat runoff from high-use sites for TSS and oil/grease removal, if applicable.

Additional Design Criteria for Linear Sand Filters

- The two cells should be divided by a divider wall that is level and extends a maximum of 12 inches (minimum of 6 inches) above the sand bed.
- Stormwater may enter the sediment cell by sheet flow or a piped inlet.
- The width of the sand cell must be 1-foot minimum to 15 feet maximum.
- The sand filter bed must be a minimum of 12 inches deep and have an 8-inch layer of drain rock with perforated drainpipe beneath the sand layer.
- The drainpipe must be 6-inch diameter minimum and be wrapped in geotextile and sloped a minimum of 0.5 percent.
- Maximum sand bed ponding depth: 1-foot.
- Must be vented as for sand filter vaults
- Linear sand filters must conform to the materials and structural suitability criteria specified for wet vaults.
- Set sediment cell width as follows:

Sand filter width, (w) inches	12-24	24-48	48-72	72+
Sediment cell width, inches	12	18	24	w/3

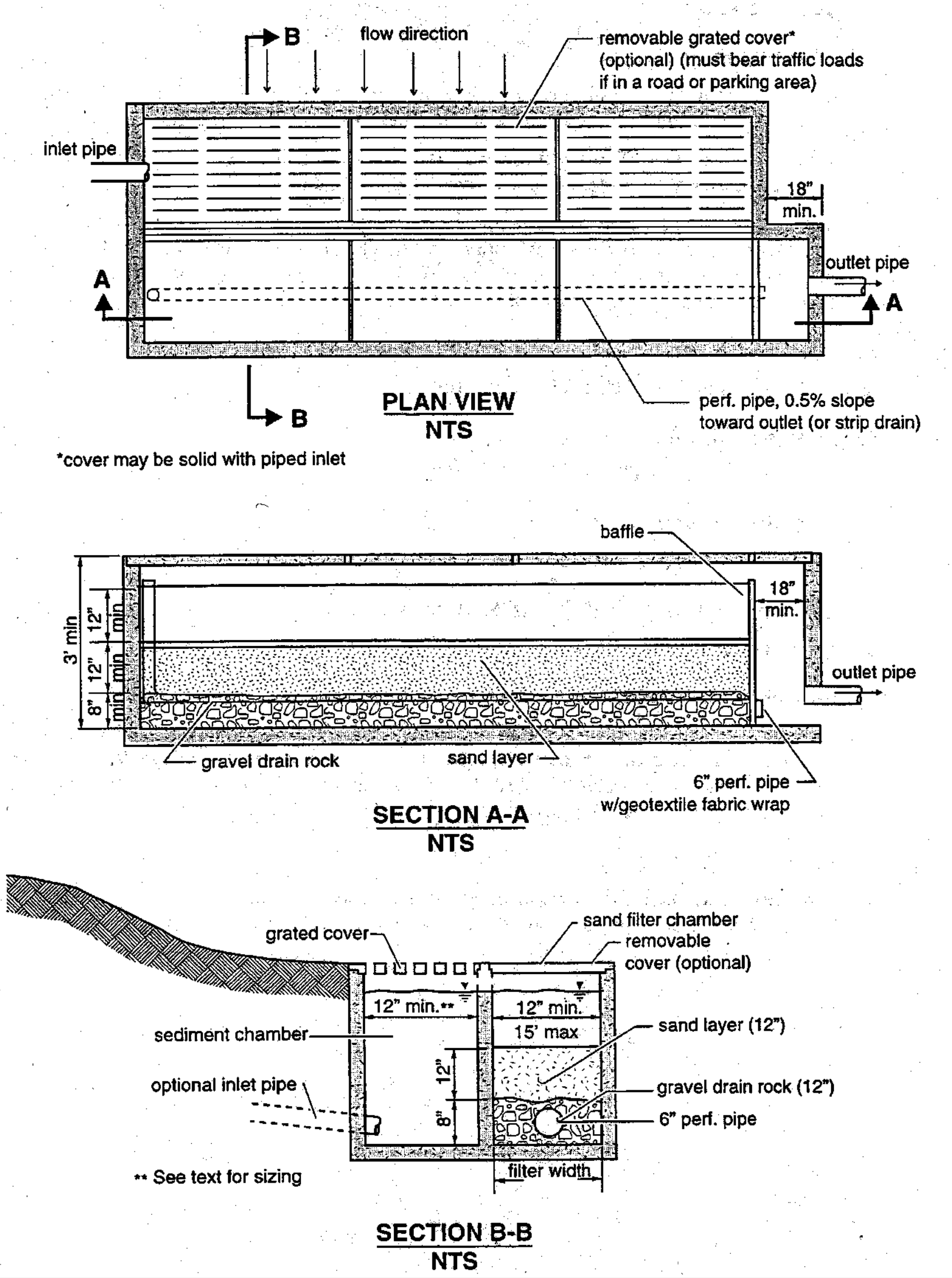


Figure 8.5.7 – Linear Sand Filter

BMP T8.40: Media Filter Drain (previously referred to as the Ecology Embankment)

General Description

The media filter drain (MFD), previously referred to as the *ecology embankment,* is a linear flow-through stormwater runoff treatment device that can be sited along highway side slopes (conventional design) and medians (dual media filter drains), borrow ditches, or other linear depressions. Cut-slope applications may also be considered. The media filter drain can be used where available right of way is limited, sheet flow from the highway surface is feasible, and lateral gradients are generally less than 25% (4H:1V). The media filter drain has a General Use Level Designation (GULD) for basic, enhanced, and phosphorus treatment. Updates/changes to the use-level designation and any design changes will be posted in the *Postpublication Updates* section of the HRM Resource Web Page.

Media filter drains (MFDs) have four basic components: a gravel no-vegetation zone, a grass strip, the MFD mix bed, and a conveyance system for flows leaving the MFD mix. This conveyance system usually consists of a gravel-filled underdrain trench or a layer of crushed surfacing base course (CSBC). This layer of CSBC must be porous enough to allow treated flows to freely drain away from the MFD mix.

Typical MFD configurations are shown in Figures 8.5.8, 8.5.9, and 8.5.10.

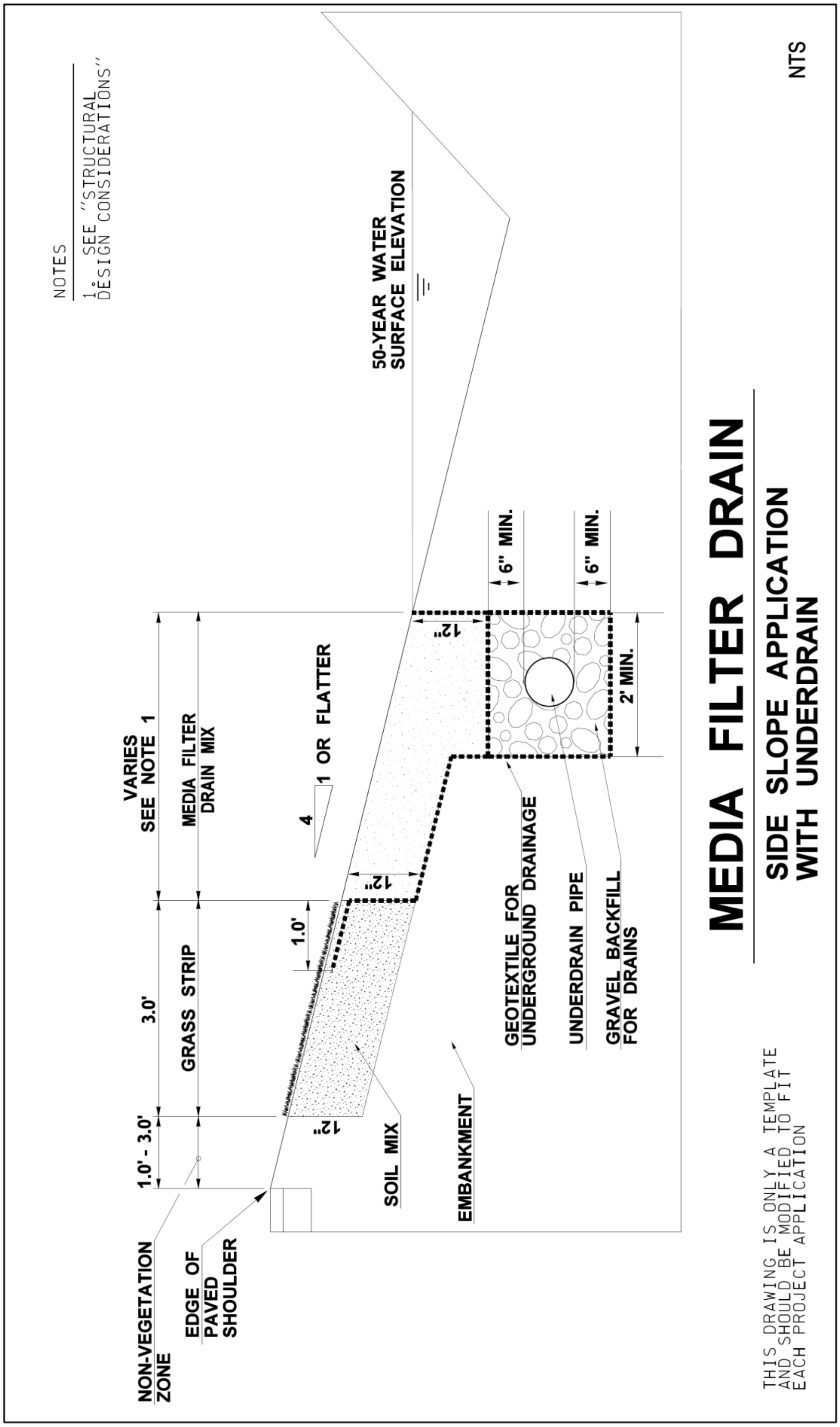


Figure 8.5.8 – Media filter drain: Cross section

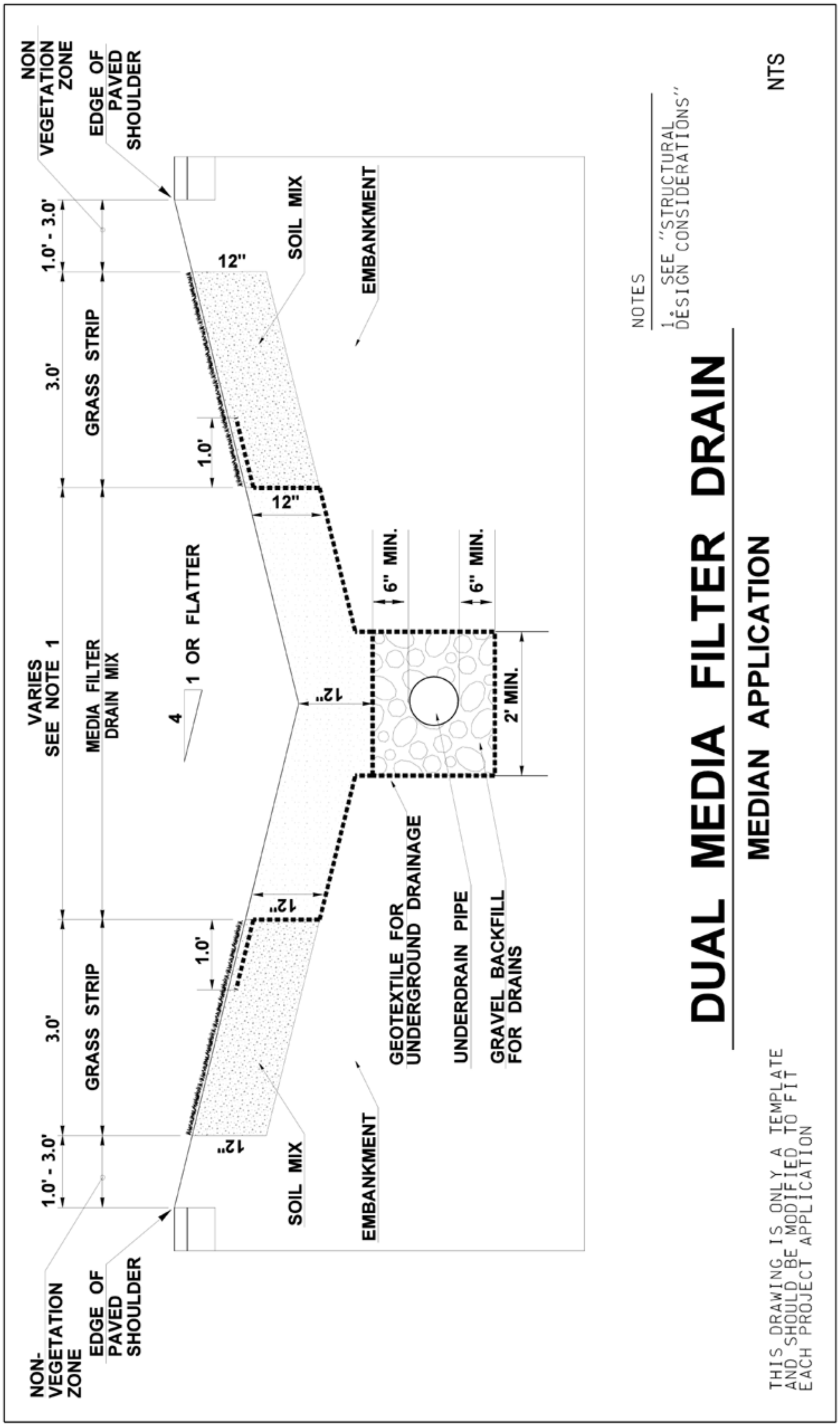


Figure 8.5.9 – Dual media filter drain: Cross section

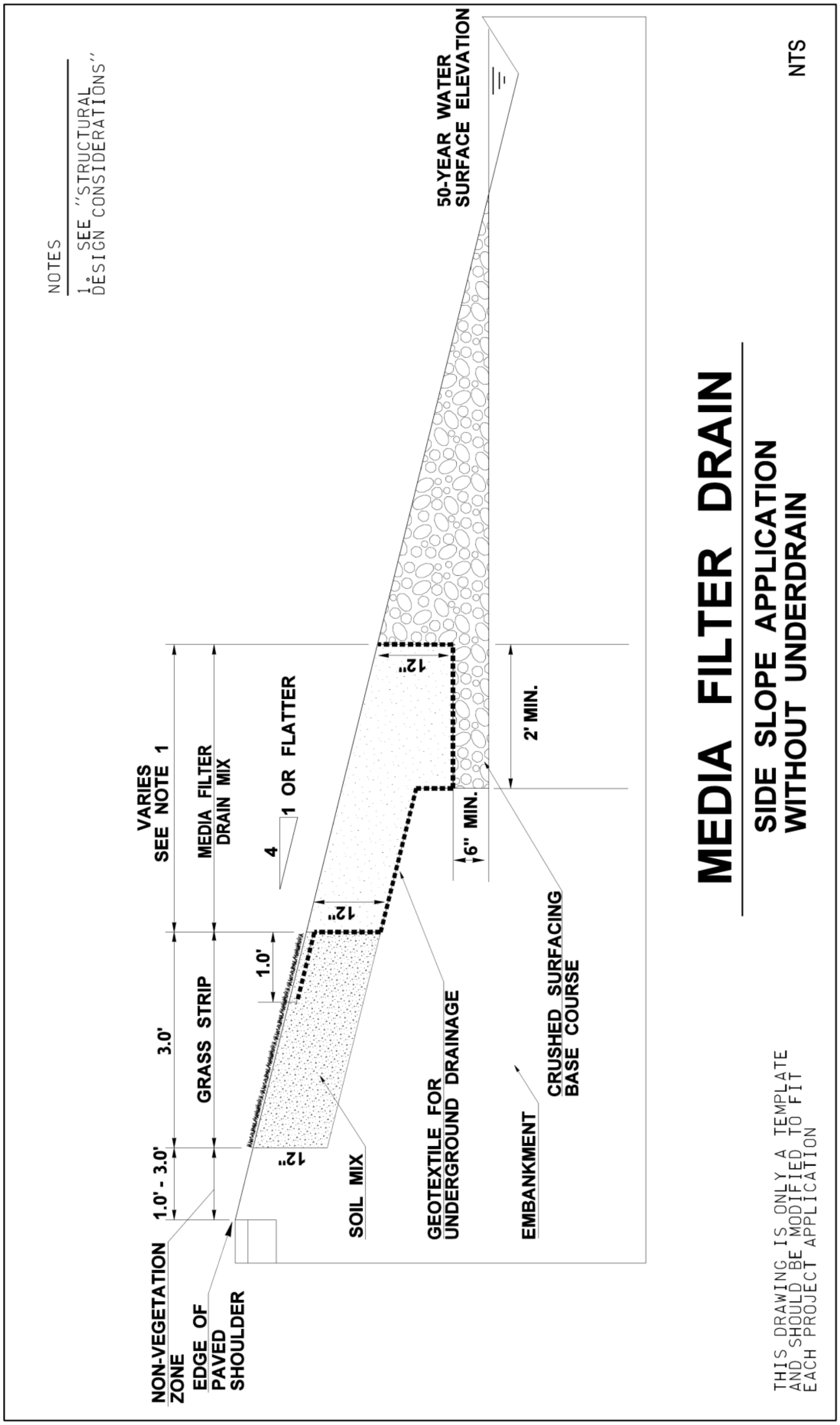


Figure 8.5.10 – Media filter drain without underdrain trench

Functional Description

The media filter drain removes suspended solids, phosphorus, and metals from highway runoff through physical straining, ion exchange, carbonate precipitation, and biofiltration.

Stormwater runoff is conveyed to the media filter drain via sheet flow over a vegetation-free gravel zone to ensure sheet dispersion and provide some pollutant trapping. Next, a grass strip, which may be amended with composted material, is incorporated into the top of the fill slope to provide pretreatment, further enhancing filtration and extending the life of the system. The runoff is then filtered through a bed of porous, alkalinity-generating granular medium—the media filter drain mix. Media filter drain mix is a fill material composed of crushed rock (sized by screening), dolomite, gypsum, and perlite. The dolomite and gypsum additives serve to buffer acidic pH conditions and exchange light metals for heavy metals. Perlite is incorporated to improve moisture retention, which is critical for the formation of biomass epilithic biofilm to assist in the removal of solids, metals, and nutrients. Treated water drains from the media filter drain mix bed into the conveyance system below the media filter drain mix. Geotextile lines the underside of the media filter drain mix bed and the conveyance system.

The underdrain trench is an option for hydraulic conveyance of treated stormwater to a desired location, such as a downstream flow control facility or stormwater outfall. The trench's perforated underdrain pipe is a protective measure to ensure free flow through the media filter drain mix and to prevent prolonged ponding. It may be possible to omit the underdrain pipe if it can be demonstrated that the pipe is not necessary to maintain free flow through the media filter drain mix and underdrain trench.

It is critical to note that water should sheet flow across the media filter drain. Channelized flows or ditch flows running down the middle of the dual media filter drain (continuous off-site inflow) should be minimized.

Applications and Limitations

In many instances, conventional runoff treatment is not feasible due to right of way constraints (such as adjoining wetlands and geotechnical considerations). The media filter drain and the dual media filter drain designs are runoff treatment options that can be sited in most right of way confined situations. In many cases, a media filter drain or a dual media filter drain can be sited without the acquisition of additional right of way needed for conventional stormwater facilities or capital-intensive expenditures for underground wet vaults.

Applications

Media Filter Drains

The media filter drain can achieve basic, phosphorus, and enhanced water quality treatment.

Since maintaining sheet flow across the media filter drain is required for its proper function, the ideal locations for media filter drains in highway settings are highway side slopes or other long, linear grades with lateral side slopes less than 4H:1V and longitudinal slopes no steeper than 5%. As side slopes approach 3H:1V, without design modifications, sloughing may become a problem due to friction limitations between the separation geotextile and underlying soils. The longest flow path from the contributing area delivering sheet flow to the media filter drain should not exceed 150 feet.

If there is sufficient roadway embankment width, the designer should consider placing the grass strip and media mix downslope when feasible. The project office should ensure the MFD does not intercept seeps, springs, or ground water.

Dual Media Filter Drain for Highway Medians

The dual media filter drain is fundamentally the same as the side-slope version. It differs in siting and is more constrained with regard to drainage options. Prime locations for dual media filter drains in a highway setting are medians, roadside drainage or borrow ditches, or other linear depressions. It is especially critical for water to sheet flow across the dual media filter drain. Channelized flows or ditch flows running down the middle of the dual media filter drain (continuous off-site inflow) should be minimized.

Limitations

Media Filter Drains

- **Steep slopes.** Avoid construction on longitudinal slopes steeper than 5%. Avoid construction on 3H:1V lateral slopes, and preferably use less than 4H:1V slopes. In areas where lateral slopes exceed 4H:1V, it may be possible to construct terraces to create 4H:1V slopes or to otherwise stabilize up to 3H:1V slopes. (For details, see *Geometry, Components* and *Sizing Criteria, Cross Section* in the Structural Design Considerations section below).
- **Wetlands.** Do not construct in wetlands and wetland buffers. In many cases, a media filter drain (due to its small lateral footprint) can fit within the highway fill slopes adjacent to a wetland buffer. In those situations where the highway fill prism is located adjacent to wetlands, an interception trench/underdrain will need to be incorporated as a design element in the media filter drain.
- **Shallow ground water.** Mean high water table levels at the project site need to be determined to ensure the media filter drain mix bed and the underdrain (if needed) will not become saturated by shallow ground water.
- **Unstable slopes**. In areas where slope stability may be problematic, consult a geotechnical engineer.

- **Areas of seasonal ground water inundations or basement flooding**. Site-specific piezometer data may be needed in areas of suspected seasonal high ground water inundations. The hydraulic and runoff treatment performance of the dual media filter drain may be compromised due to backwater effects and lack of sufficient hydraulic gradient.
- Narrow roadway shoulders. In areas where there is a narrow roadway shoulder that does not allow enough room for a vehicle to fully stop or park, consider placing the MFD farther down the embankment slope. This will reduce the amount of rutting in the MFD and decrease overall maintenance repairs.

Design Flow Elements

Flows to Be Treated

The basic design concept behind the media filter drain and dual media filter drain is to fully filter all runoff through the media filter drain mix. Therefore, the infiltration capacity of the medium and drainage below needs to match or exceed the hydraulic loading rate.

Structural Design Considerations

Geometry

Components

No-Vegetation Zone

The no-vegetation zone (vegetation-free zone) is a shallow gravel zone located directly adjacent to the highway pavement. The no-vegetation zone is a crucial element in a properly functioning media filter drain or other BMPs that use sheet flow to convey runoff from the highway surface to the BMP. The no-vegetation zone functions as a level spreader to promote sheet flow and a deposition area for coarse sediments. The no-vegetation zone should be between 1 foot and 3 feet wide. Depth will be a function of how the roadway section is built from subgrade to finish grade; the resultant cross section will typically be triangular to trapezoidal. Within these bounds, width varies depending on maintenance spraying practices.

Grass Strip

The width of the grass strip is dependent on the availability of space within the highway side slope. The baseline design criterion for the grass strip within the media filter drain is a 3-foot-minimum-width, but wider grass strips are recommended if the additional space is available. The designer may consider adding aggregate to the soil mix to help minimize rutting problems from errant vehicles. The soil mix should ensure grass growth for the design life of the media filter drain. Composted material used in the grass strip shall meet the specifications for compost used in Bioretention Soil Media (BSM). See BMP T7.30.

Media Filter Drain Mix Bed

The media filter drain mix is a mixture of crushed rock, dolomite, gypsum, and perlite. The crushed rock provides the support matrix of the medium; the dolomite and gypsum add alkalinity and ion exchange capacity to promote the precipitation and exchange of heavy metals; and the perlite improves moisture retention to promote the formation of biomass within the media filter drain mix. The combination of physical filtering, precipitation, ion exchange, and biofiltration enhances the water treatment capacity of the mix. The media filter drain mix has an estimated initial filtration rate of 50 inches per hour and a long-term filtration rate of 28 inches per hour due to siltation. With an additional safety factor, the rate used to size the length of the media filter drain should be 10 inches per hour.

Conveyance System Below Media Filter Drain Mix

The gravel underdrain trench provides hydraulic conveyance when treated runoff needs to be conveyed to a desired location such as a downstream flow control facility or stormwater outfall.

In Group C and D soils, an underdrain pipe would help to ensure free flow of the treated runoff through the media filter drain mix bed. In some Group A and B soils, an underdrain pipe may be unnecessary if most water percolates into subsoil from the underdrain trench. The need for underdrain pipe should be evaluated in all cases. The underdrain trench should be a minimum of 2 feet wide for either the conventional or dual media filter drain.

The gravel underdrain trench may be eliminated if there is evidence to support that flows can be conveyed laterally to an adjacent ditch or onto a fill slope that is properly vegetated to protect against erosion. The media filter drain mix should be kept free draining up to the 50-year storm event water surface elevation represented in the downstream ditch.

Sizing Criteria

Width

The width of the media filter drain mix bed is determined by the amount of contributing pavement routed to the embankment. The surface area of the media filter drain mix bed needs to be sufficiently large to fully infiltrate the runoff treatment design flow rate using the long-term filtration rate of the media filter drain mix. For design purposes, a 50% safety factor is incorporated into the long-term media filter drain mix filtration rate to accommodate variations in slope, resulting in a design filtration rate of 10 inches per hour. The media filter drain mix bed should have a bottom width of at least 2 feet in contact with the conveyance system below the media filter drain mix.

Length

In general, the length of a media filter drain or dual media filter drain is the same as the contributing pavement. Any length is acceptable as long as the surface area media filter drain mix bed is sufficient to fully infiltrate the runoff treatment design flow rate.

Cross Section

In profile, the surface of the media filter drain should preferably have a lateral slope less than 4H:1V (<25%). On steeper terrain, it may be possible to construct terraces to create a 4H:1V slope, or other engineering may be employed if approved by Ecology, to ensure slope stability up to 3H:1V. If sloughing is a concern on steeper slopes, consideration should be given to incorporating permeable soil reinforcements, such as geotextiles, open-graded/ permeable pavements, or commercially available ring and grid reinforcement structures, as top layer components to the media filter drain mix bed. Consultation with a geotechnical engineer is required.

Inflow

Runoff is conveyed to a media filter drain using sheet flow from the pavement area. The longitudinal pavement slope contributing flow to a media filter drain should be less than 5%.

Although there is no lateral pavement slope restriction for flows going to a media filter drain, the designer should ensure flows remain as sheet flow.

Media Filter Drain Mix Bed Sizing Procedure

The media filter drain mix should be a minimum of 12 inches deep, including the section on top of the underdrain trench.

For runoff treatment, sizing the media filter drain mix bed is based on the requirement that the runoff treatment flow rate from the pavement area, $Q_{Highway}$, cannot exceed the long-term infiltration capacity of the media filter drain, $Q_{Infiltration}$:

$$Q_{Highway} \leq Q_{Infiltration}$$

For western Washington, $Q_{Highway}$ is the flow rate at or below which 91% of the runoff volume for the developed TDA will be treated, based on a 15-minute time step and can be determined using and approved continuous runoff model.

The long-term infiltration capacity of the media filter drain is based on the following equation:

$$\frac{LTIR * L * W}{C * SF} = Q_{Infiltration}$$

where: *LTIR* = Long-term infiltration rate of the media filter drain mix (use 10 inches per hour for design) (in/hr)

L = Length of media filter drain (parallel to roadway) (ft)
W = Width of the media filter drain mix bed (ft)
C = Conversion factor of 43200 ((in/hr)/(ft/sec))
SF = Safety Factor (equal to 1.0, unless unusually heavy sediment loading is expected)

Assuming that the length of the media filter drain is the same as the length of the contributing pavement, solve for the width of the media filter drain:

$$W \geq \frac{Q_{Highway} * C * SF}{LTIR * L}$$

Western Washington project applications of this design procedure have shown that, in almost every case, the calculated width of the media filter drain does not exceed 1.0 foot. Therefore, Table 8.5.3 was developed to simplify the design steps and should be used to establish an appropriate width.

Table 8.5.3
Western Washington Design Widths for Media Filter Drains

Pavement width that contributes runoff to the media filter drain	Minimum media filter drain width*
≤ 20 feet	2 feet
≥ 20 and ≤ 35 feet	3 feet
> 35 feet	4 feet

* Width does not include the required 1–3 foot gravel vegetation-free zone or the 3-foot filter strip width (see Figure 8.5.8).

Underdrain Design

Underdrain pipe can provide a protective measure to ensure free flow through the media filter drain (MFD) mix and is sized similar to storm drains. For MFD underdrain sizing, an additional step is required to determine the flow rate that can reach the underdrain pipe. This is done by comparing the contributing basin flow rate to the infiltration flow rate through the media filter mix and then using the smaller of the two to size the underdrain. The analysis described below considers the flow rate per foot of MFD, which allows you the flexibility of incrementally increasing the underdrain diameter where long lengths of underdrain are required. When underdrain pipe connects to a storm drain system, place the invert of the underdrain pipe above the 25-year water surface elevation in the storm drain to prevent backflow into the underdrain system.

The following describes the procedure for sizing underdrains installed in combination with media filter drains.

1. Calculate the flow rate per foot from the contributing basin to the media filter drain. The design storm event used to determine the flow rate should be relevant to the purpose of the underdrain. For example, if the MFD installation is in western Washington and the underdrain will be used to convey treated runoff to a detention BMP, size the underdrain for the 50-year storm event. (See the *Hydraulics Manual*, Figure 2-2.1, for conveyance flow rate determination.)

$$\frac{Q_{highway}}{ft} = \frac{Q_{highway}}{L_{MFD}}$$

where:

$\frac{Q_{highway}}{ft}$ = contributing flow rate per foot (cfs/ft)

L_{MFD} = length of MFD contributing runoff to the underdrain (ft)

2. Calculate the MFD flow rate of runoff per foot given an infiltration rate of 10 in/hr through the media filter drain mix.

$$Q_{\frac{MFD}{ft}} = \frac{f \times W \times 1\,ft}{ft} \times \frac{1\,ft}{12in} \times \frac{1hr}{3600\sec}$$

where:

$Q_{\frac{MFD}{ft}}$ = flow rate of runoff through MFD mix layer (cfs/ft)

W = width of underdrain trench (ft) – see Standard Plan B-55.20-00; the minimum width is 2 ft

f = infiltration rate though the MFD mix (in/hr) = 10 in/hr

3. Size the underdrain pipe to convey the runoff that can reach the underdrain trench. This is taken to be the smaller of the contributing basin flow rate or the flow rate through the MFD mix layer.

$$Q_{\frac{UD}{ft}} = smaller\left\{Q_{\frac{highway}{ft}} \; or \; Q_{\frac{MFD}{ft}}\right\}$$

where:

$Q_{\frac{UD}{ft}}$ = underdrain design flow rate per foot (cfs/ft)

4. Determine the underdrain design flow rate using the length of the MFD and a factor of safety of 1.2.

$$Q_{UD} = 1.2 \times Q_{\frac{UD}{ft}} \times W \times L_{MFD}$$

where:

Q_{UD} = estimated flow rate to the underdrain (cfs)
W = width of the underdrain trench (ft) – see Standard Plan B-55.20-00; the minimum width is 2 ft
L_{MFD} = length of MFD contributing runoff to the underdrain (ft)

5. Given the underdrain design flow rate, determine the underdrain diameter. Round pipe diameters to the nearest standard pipe size and have a minimum diameter of 6 inches. For diameters that exceed 12 inches, contact either the Region or HQ Hydraulics Office.

$$D = 16\left(\frac{(Q_{UD} \times n)}{s^{0.5}}\right)^{3/8}$$

where:

D = underdrain pipe diameter (inches)
n = Manning's coefficient
s = slope of pipe (ft/ft)

Materials

Media Filter Drain Mix

The media filter drain mix used in the construction of media filter drains consists of the amendments listed in Table 8.5.4. Mixing and transportation must occur in a manner that ensures the materials are thoroughly mixed prior to placement and that separation does not occur during transportation or construction operations.

These materials should be used in accordance with the following *Standard Specifications*:

- Gravel Backfill for Drains, 9-03.12(4)
- Underdrain Pipe, 7-01.3(2)
- Construction Geotextile for Underground Drainage, 9-33.1

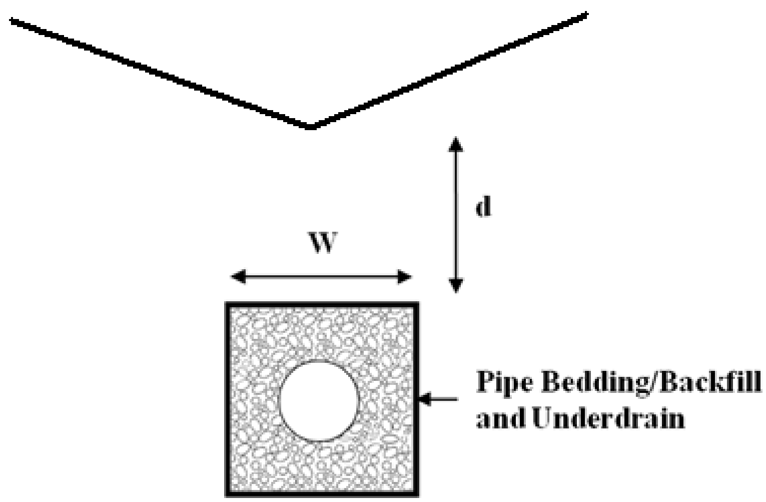


Figure 8.5.4 - Media filter drain underdrain installation

Crushed Surfacing Base Course (CSBC)

If the design is configured to allow the media filter drain to drain laterally into a ditch, the crushed surfacing base course below the media filter drain should conform to Section 9-03.9(3) of the *Standard Specifications.*

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

See *Geometry, Components* and *Sizing Criteria, Cross Section* under Structural Design Considerations above.

Table 8.5.4 Media filter drain mix

Amendment	Quantity
Mineral aggregate: Aggregate for Media Filter Drain Mix Aggregate for Media filter Drain Mix shall be manufactured from ledge rock, talus, or gravel in accordance with Section 3-01 of the *Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction* (2002), which meets the following test requirements for quality. The use of recycled material is not permitted.: Los Angeles Wear, 500 Revolutions 35% max. Degradation Factor 30 min. Aggregate for the Media Filter Drain Mix shall conform to the following requirements for grading and quality: **Sieve Size** **Percent Passing (by weight)** 1/2" square 100 3/8" square 90-100 U.S. No. 4 30-56 U.S. No. 10 0-10 U.S. No. 200 0-1.5 % fracture, by weight, min. 75 Static stripping test Pass The fracture requirement shall be at least two fractured faces and will apply to material retained on the U.S. No. 10. Aggregate for the Media Filter Drain shall be substantially free from adherent coatings. The presence of a thin, firmly adhering film of weathered rock shall not be considered as coating unless it exists on more than 50% of the surface area of any size between successive laboratory sieves.	3 cubic yards
Perlite: ☐ Horticultural grade, free of any toxic materials) ☐ 0-30% passing US No. 18 Sieve ☐ 0-10% passing US No. 30 Sieve	1 cubic yard per 3 cubic yards of mineral aggregate
Dolomite: CaMg(CO3)2 (calcium magnesium carbonate) ☐ Agricultural grade, free of any toxic materials) ☐ 100% passing US No. 8 Sieve ☐ 0% passing US No. 16 Sieve	10 pounds per cubic yard of perlite
Gypsum: Noncalcined, agricultural gypsum CaSO4•2H2O (hydrated calcium sulfate) ☐ Agricultural grade, free of any toxic materials) ☐ 100% passing US No. 8 Sieve ☐ 0% passing US No. 16 Sieve	**1.5 pounds per cubic yard of perlite**

Site Design Elements

Landscaping (Planting Considerations)

Landscaping for the grass strip is the same as for biofiltration swales unless otherwise specified in the special provisions for the project's construction documents.

Operations and Maintenance

Maintenance will consist of routine roadside management. While herbicides must not be applied directly over the media filter drain, it may be necessary to periodically control noxious weeds with herbicides in areas around the media filter drain as part of a roadside management program. The use of pesticides may be prohibited if the media filter drain is in a critical aquifer recharge area for drinking water supplies. The designer should check with the local area water purveyor or local health department. Areas of the media filter drain that show signs of physical damage will be replaced by local maintenance staff in consultation with region hydraulics/water quality staff.

Construction Criteria

Keep effective erosion and sediment control measures in place until grass strip is established.

Do not allow vehicles or traffic on the MFD to minimize rutting and maintenance repairs

Signing

Nonreflective guideposts will delineate the media filter drain. This practice allows personnel to identify where the system is installed and to make appropriate repairs should damage occur to the system. If the media filter drain is in a critical aquifer recharge area for drinking water supplies, signage prohibiting the use of pesticides must be provided.

Chapter 9. - Biofiltration Treatment Facilities

Note: Figures in Chapter 9 are courtesy of King County, except as noted.

This Chapter addresses Best Management Practices (BMPs) that are classified as biofiltration treatment facilities:

Biofilters are vegetated treatment systems (typically grass) that remove pollutants by means of sedimentation, filtration, soil sorption, and/or plant uptake. They are typically configured as swales or flat filter strips.

9.1 Purpose

The BMPs discussed in this Chapter are designed to remove low concentrations and quantities of total suspended solids (TSS), heavy metals, petroleum hydrocarbons, and/or nutrients from stormwater.

9.2 Applications

A biofilter can be used as a basic treatment BMP for contaminated stormwater runoff from roadways, driveways, parking lots, and highly impervious ultra-urban areas or as the first stage of a treatment train. In cases where hydrocarbons, high TSS, or debris would be present in the runoff, such as high-use sites, a pretreatment system for those components would be necessary. Off-line location is preferred to avoid flattening vegetation and the erosive effects of high flows. Consider biofilters in retrofit situations where appropriate. (Center for Watershed Protection, 1998)

9.3 Site Suitability

Consider the following factors for determining site suitability:

- Target pollutants are amenable to biofilter treatment
- Accessibility for Operation and Maintenance
- Suitable growth environment; (soil, etc.) for the vegetation
- Adequate siting for a pre-treatment facility if high petroleum hydrocarbon levels (oil/grease) or high TSS loads could impair treatment capacity or efficiency
- If the biofilter can be impacted by snowmelts and ice, refer to Caraco and Claytor for additional design criteria (USEPA, 1997).

9.4 Best Management Practices

This Chapter presents the numerous Biofiltration Treatment BMPs.

BMP T9.10: Basic Biofiltration Swale

Description

Biofiltration swales are typically shaped as a trapezoid or a parabola as shown in Figure 9.4.1.

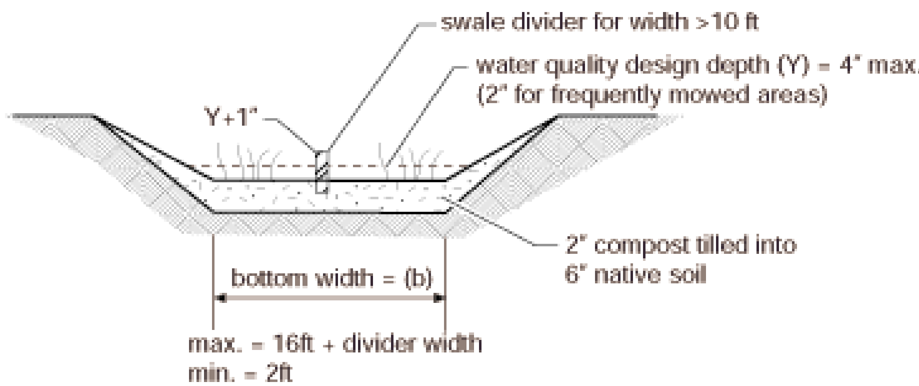


Figure 9.4.1 – Typical Swale Section

Limitations

Data suggest that the performance of biofiltration swales is highly variable from storm to storm. Ecology recommends considering other treatment methods that perform more consistently, such as sand filters and wet ponds, before using a biofiltration swale. Biofitlration swales downstream of devices of equal or greater effectiveness can convey runoff; but do not consider them to offer a treatment benefit. (Horner, 2000)

Design Criteria

- Table 9.4.1 specifies design criteria. Use a 9 minute hydraulic residence time at a multiple of the peak 15 minute Water Quality Design Flow Rate (Q) representing 91% runoff volume as determined by the Western Washington Hydrology Model (WWHM).
- Check the hydraulic capacity/stability for inflows greater than design flows. Bypass high flows, or control release rates into the biofilter, if necessary.
- Install level spreaders (min. 1-inch gravel) at the head and every 50 feet in swales of ≥4 feet width. Include sediment cleanouts (weir, settling basin, or equivalent) at the head of the biofilter as needed.
- Use energy dissipators (riprap) for increased downslopes.

***Guidance for Bypassing Off-line Facilities*:**

Most biofiltration swales are currently designed to be on-line facilities. However, an off-line design is possible. Swales designed in an off-line mode should not engage a bypass until the flow rate exceeds a value determined by multiplying Q, the off-line water quality design flow rate predicted by the WWHM, by the ratio determined in Figure 9.4.6b. This modified design flow rate is an estimate of the design flow rate determined by using SBUH procedures. The only advantage of designing a swale to be off-line is that the stability check, which may make the swale larger, is not necessary.

Sizing Procedure for Biofiltration Swales

This guide provides biofilter swale design procedures in full detail, along with examples.

Preliminary Steps (P)

P-1 Determine the Water Quality design flow rate (Q) in 15-minute time-steps using the WWHM. Use the correct flow rate, off-line or on-line, for the design situation.

P-2 Establish the longitudinal slope of the proposed biofilter.

P-3 Select a vegetation cover suitable for the site. Refer to Tables 9.4.2, 9.4.3, and 9.4.4 (in text) to select vegetation for western Washington.

Design Calculations for Biofiltration Swale:

The procedure recommended here is an adaptation from the design procedure originate by Chow (Chow, 1959) for biofiltration applications in the Puget Sound region.

This procedure reverses Chow's order, designing first for capacity and then for stability. The capacity analysis emphasizes the promotion of biofiltration, rather than transporting flow with the greatest possible hydraulic efficiency. Therefore, it is based on criteria that promote sedimentation, filtration, and other pollutant removal mechanisms. Because these criteria include a lower maximum velocity than permitted for stability, the biofilter dimensions usually do not have to be modified after a stability check.

Design Steps (D):

D-1. Select the type of vegetation, and design depth of flow (based on frequency of mowing and type of vegetation). (Table 9.4.1)

D-2. Select a value of Manning's n (Table 9.4.1 with footnote #3).

Table 9.4.1
Sizing Criteria

Design parameter	BMP T 9.10-Biofiltration swale	BMP T 9.40-Filter strip
Longitudinal Slope	0.015 - 0.025[1]	0.01 - 0.33
Maximum velocity	1 ft / sec (@ K multiplied by the WQ design flow rate ; for stability, 3 ft/sec max.	0.5 ft / sec @ K multiplied by the WQ design flow rate
Maximum water depth[2]	2”- if mowed frequently; 4” if mowed infrequently	1-inch max.
Manning coefficient (22)	(0.2 – 0.3)[3](0.24 if mowed infrequently)	0.35
Bed width (bottom)	(2 - 10 ft)[4]	---
Freeboard height	0.5 ft	---
Minimum hydraulic residence time at Water Quality Design Flow Rate	9 minutes (18 minutes for continuous inflow) (See Volume I, Appendix B)	9 minutes
Minimum length	100 ft	Sufficient to achieve hydraulic residence time in the filter strip
Maximum sideslope	3 H : 1 V 4H:1V preferred	Inlet edge ≥ 1” lower than contributing paved area
Max. tributary drainage flowpath	---	150 feet
Max. longitudinal slope of contributing area	---	0.05 (steeper than 0.05 need upslope flow spreading and energy dissipation)
Max. lateral slope of contributing area	---	0.02 (at the edge of the strip inlet)

1. For swales, if the slope is less than 1.5% install an underdrain using a perforated pipe, or equivalent. Amend the soil if necessary to allow effective percolation of water to the underdrain. Install the low-flow drain 6” deep in the soil. Slopes greater than 2.5% need check dams (riprap) at vertical drops of 12-15 inches. Underdrains can be made of 6 inch Schedule 40 PVC perforated pipe with 6” of drain gravel on the pipe. The gravel and pipe must be enclosed by geotextile fabric. (See Figures 9.4.2 and 9.4.3)

2. Below the design water depth install an erosion control blanket, at least 4” of topsoil, and the selected biofiltration mix. Above the water line use a straw mulch or sod.

3. This range of Manning’s n can be used in the equation; b = Qn/1.49y(1.67) s(0.5) – Zy with wider bottom width b, and lower depth, y, at the same flow. This provides the designer with the option of varying the bottom width of the swale depending on space limitations. Designing at the higher n within this range at the same flow decreases the hydraulic design depth, thus placing the pollutants in closer contact with the vegetation and the soil.

4. For swale widths up to 16 feet the cross-section can be divided with a berm (concrete, plastic, compacted earthfill) using a flow spreader at the inlet (Figure 9.4.4)

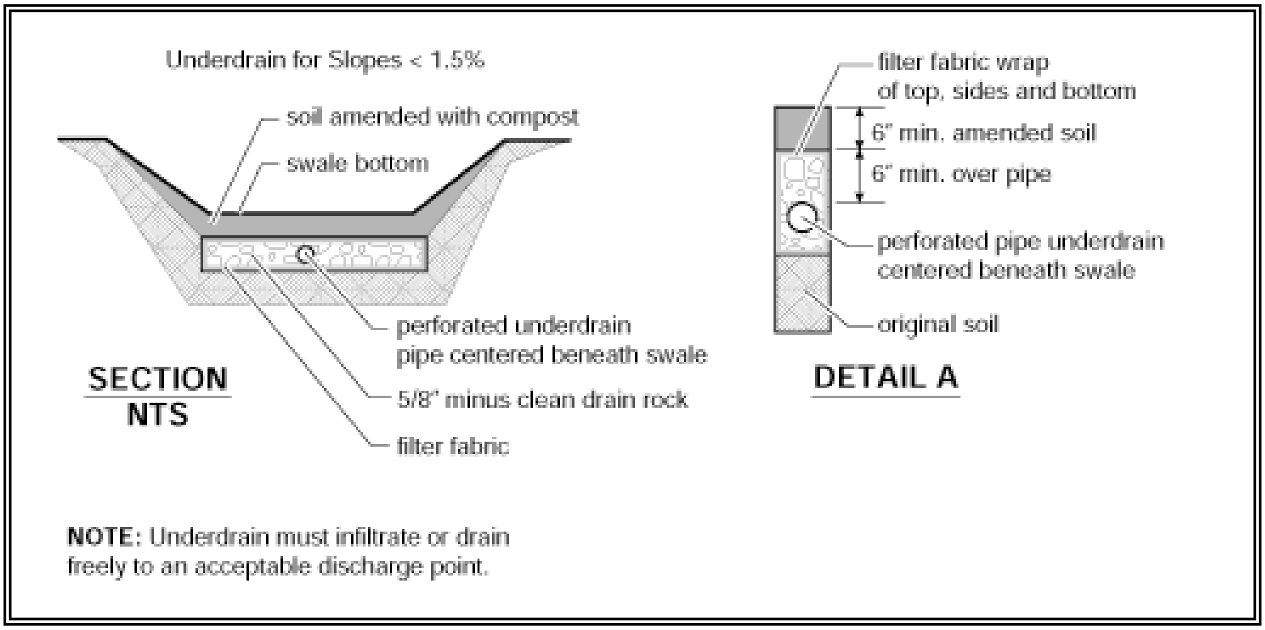


Figure 9.4.2 – Biofiltration Swale Underdrain Detail

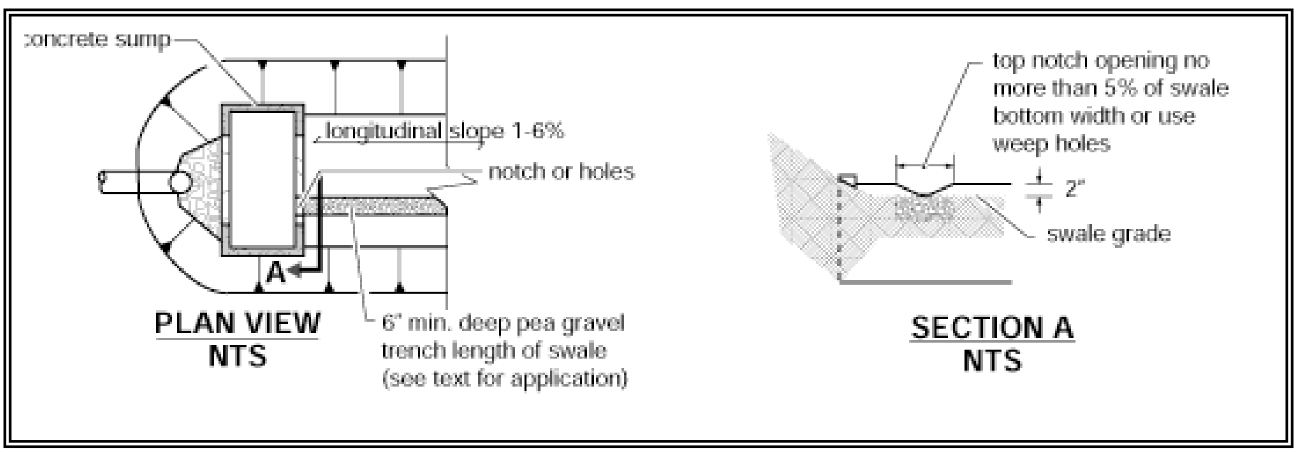


Figure 9.4.3 – Biofiltration Swale Low-Flow Drain Detail

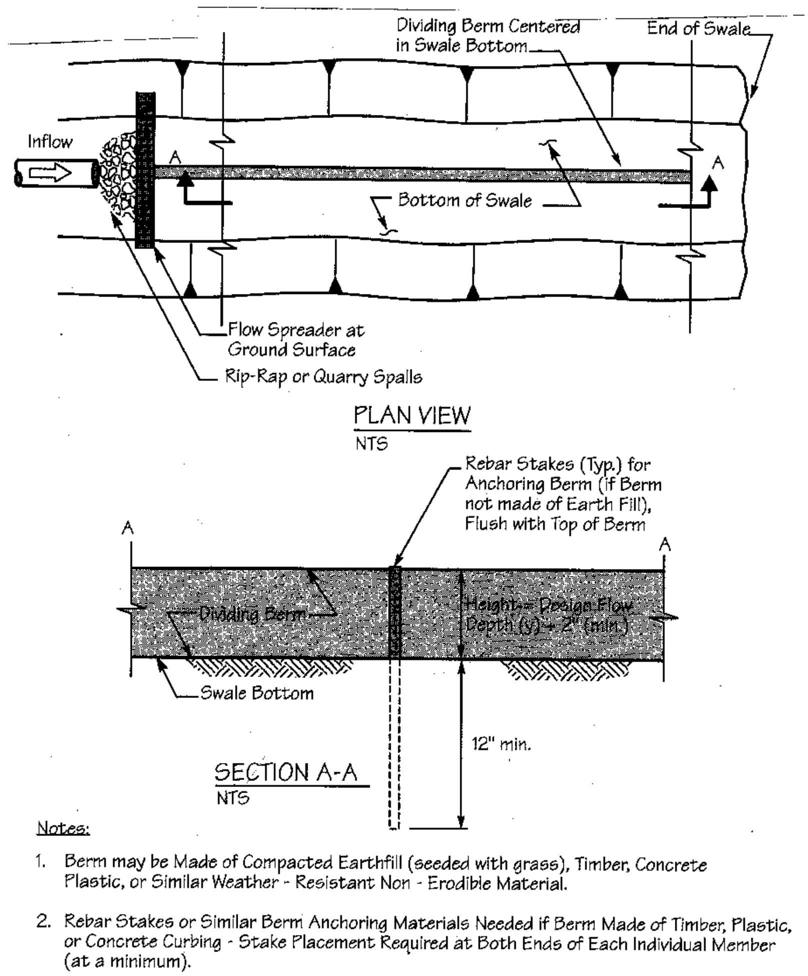


Figure 9.4.4 – Swale Dividing Berm

D-3. Select swale shape-typically trapezoidal or parabolic.

D-4. Use Manning's equation and first approximations relating hydraulic radius and dimensions for the selected swale shape to obtain a working value of a biofilter width dimension:

$$Q = \frac{1.49AR^{0.67}s^{0.5}}{n} \qquad (1)$$

$$A_{rectangle} = Ty \qquad (2)$$

$$R_{rectangle} = \frac{Ty}{T + 2y} \qquad (3)$$

Where:

Q = Water Quality Design flow rate in 15-minute time steps based on WWHM, (ft^3/s, cfs)

n = Manning's n (dimensionless)

s = Longitudinal slope as a ratio of vertical rise/horizontal run (dimensionless)

A = Cross-sectional area (ft^2)

R = Hydraulic radius (ft)

T = top width of trapezoid or width of a rectangle (ft)

y = depth of flow (ft)

b = bottom width of trapezoid (ft)

If equations 2 and 3 are substituted into equation 1 and solved for T, complex equations result that are difficult to solve manually. However, approximate solutions can be found by recognizing that T>>y and Z^2>>1, and that certain terms are nearly negligible. The approximation solutions for rectangular and trapezoidal shapes are:

$R_{rectangle} \approx y$, $R_{trapezoid} \approx y$, $R_{parabolic} \approx 0.67y$, $R_v \approx 0.5y$

Substitute $R_{trapezoid}$ and $A_{trapezoid} = by+Zy^2$ into Equation 1, and solve for the bottom width b (trapezoidal swale):

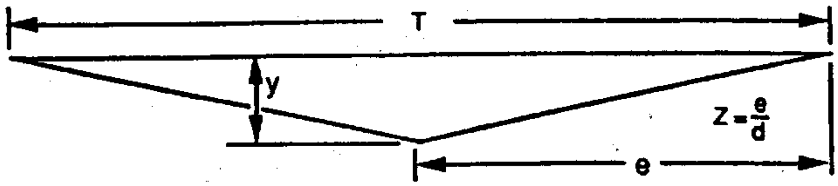
$$b \approx \frac{2.5Qn}{1.49y^{1.67}s^{0.5}} - Zy$$

For a trapezoid, select a side slope Z of at least 3. Compute b and then top width T, where T = b + 2yZ. *(Note: Adjustment factor of 2.5 accounts for the differential between Water Quality design flow rate and the SBUH design flow. This equation is used to estimate an initial cross-sectional area. It does not affect the overall biofiltration swale size.)*

If b for a swale is greater than 10 ft, either investigate how Q can be reduced, divide the flow by installing a low berm, or arbitrarily set b = 10 ft and continue with the analysis. For other swale shapes refer to Figure. 9.4.5.

CHANNEL GEOMETRY

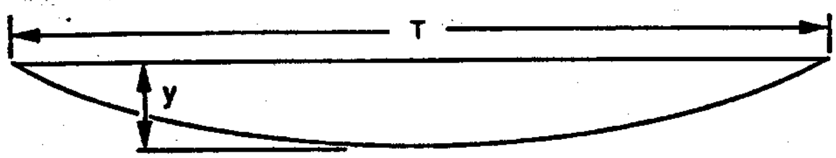
V - Shape



Cross-Sectional Area (A) = Zy^2
Top Width (T) = $2yZ$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{Zy}{2\sqrt{Z^2 + 1}}$

Parabolic Shape

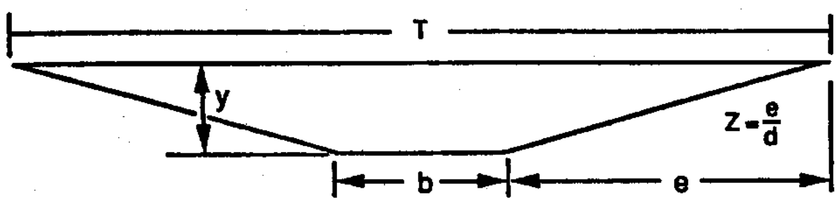


Cross-Sectional Area (A) = $\frac{2}{3}Ty$

Top Width (T) = $\frac{1.5A}{y}$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{T^2y}{1.5T^2 + 4y^2}$

Trapezoidal Shape



Cross-Sectional Area (A) = $by + Zy^2$
Top Width (T) = $b + 2yz$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{by + Zy^2}{b + 2y\sqrt{Z^2 + 1}}$

Figure 9.4.5 – Geometric Formulas for Common Swale Shapes

Source: Livingston, et al, 1984

D-5. Compute A:

$$A_{rectangle} = Ty \quad \text{or} \quad A_{trapazoid} = by + Zy^2$$

$$A_{filter\ strip} = Ty$$

D-6. Compute the flow velocity at design flow rate:

$$V = K\frac{Q}{A}$$

K = A ratio of the peak volumetric flow rate calculated using a 10-minute time step by SBUH to the water quality design flow rate estimated using the WWHM. The value of K is determined from Figure 9.4.6a for on-line facilities, or Figure 9.4.6b for off-line facilities.

If V >1.0 ft/sec (or V>0.5 ft/sec for a filter strip), repeat steps D-1 to D-6 until the condition is met. A velocity greater than 1.0 ft/sec was found to flatten grasses, thus reducing filtration. A velocity lower than this maximum value will allow a 9-minute hydraulic residence time criterion in a shorter biofilter. If the value of V suggests that a longer biofilter will be needed than space permits, investigate how Q can be reduced (e.g., use of low impact development BMP's), or increase y and/or T (up to the allowable maximum values) and repeat the analysis.

D-7. Compute the swale length (L, ft)

L = Vt (60 sec/min)

Where: t = hydraulic residence time (min)

Use t = 9 minutes for this calculation (use t = 18 minutes for a continuous inflow biofiltration swale). If a biofilter length is greater than the space permits, follow the advice in step D-6.

If a length less than 100 feet results from this analysis, increase it to 100 feet, the minimum allowed. In this case, it may be possible to save some space in width and still meet all criteria. This possibility can be checked by computing V in the 100 ft biofilter for t = 9 minutes, recalculating A (if V < 1.0 ft/sec) and recalculating T.

D-8. If there is still not sufficient space for the biofilter, the local government and the project proponent should consider the following solutions (listed in order of preference):

1) Divide the site drainage to flow to multiple biofilters.
2) Use infiltration to provide lower discharge rates to the biofilter (only if the Site Suitability Criteria in Chapter 3, Volume III are met).
3) Increase vegetation height and design depth of flow (note: the design must ensure that vegetation remains standing during design flow).

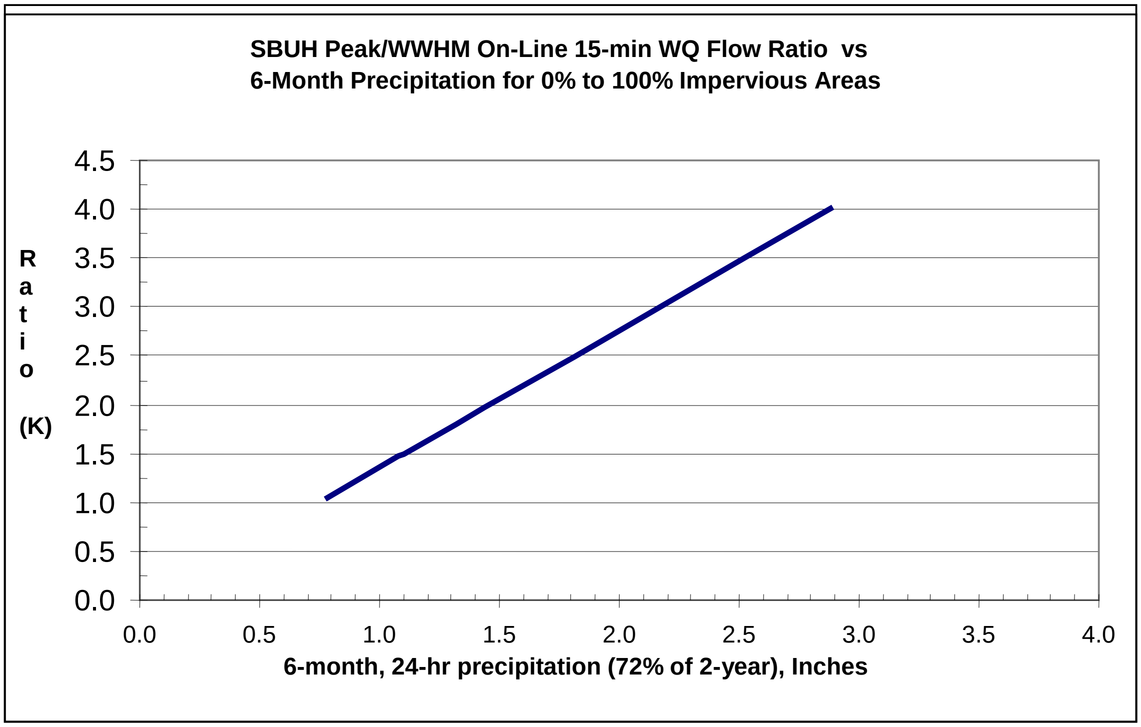


Figure 9.4.6a – Ratio of SBUH Peak/WQ Flow

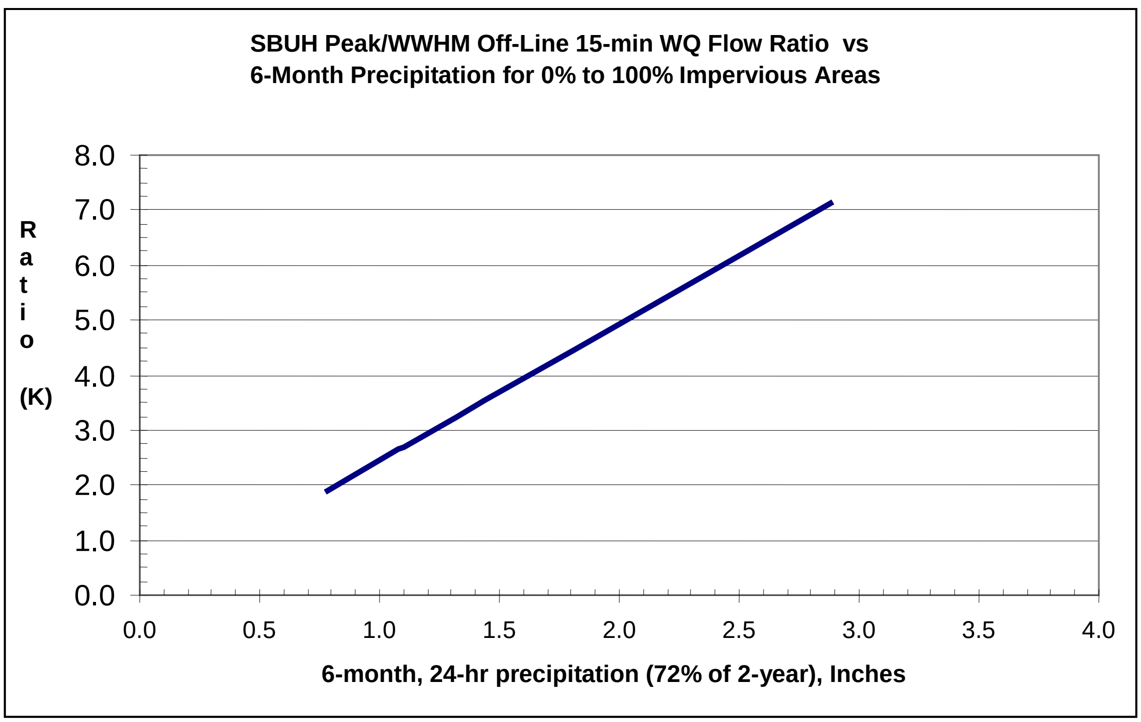


Figure 9.4.6b – Ratio of SBUH Peak/WQ Flow

4) Reduce the developed surface area to gain space for biofiltration.
5) Increase the longitudinal slope.

6) Increase the side slopes.

7) Nest the biofilter within or around another BMP.

Check for Stability (Minimizing Erosion)

The stability check must be performed for the combination of highest expected flow and least vegetation coverage and height. A check is not required for biofiltration swales that are located "off-line" from the primary conveyance/detention system, Maintain the same units as in the biofiltration capacity analysis.

SC-1. Perform the stability check for the 100-year, return frequency flow using 15-minute time steps using an approved continuous runoff model. Until WWHM peak flow rates in 15-minute time steps are available the designer can use the WWHM 100-yr. hourly peak flows times an adjustment factor of 1.6 to approximate peak flows in 15-minute time steps.

SC-2. Estimate the vegetation coverage ("good" or "fair") and height on the first occasion that the biofilter will receive flow, or whenever the coverage and height will be least. Avoid flow introduction during the vegetation establishment period by timing planting or bypassing.

SC-3. Estimate the degree of retardance from Table 9.4.2. When uncertain, be conservative by selecting a relatively low degree.

The maximum permissible velocity for erosion prevention (Vmax) is 3 feet per second.

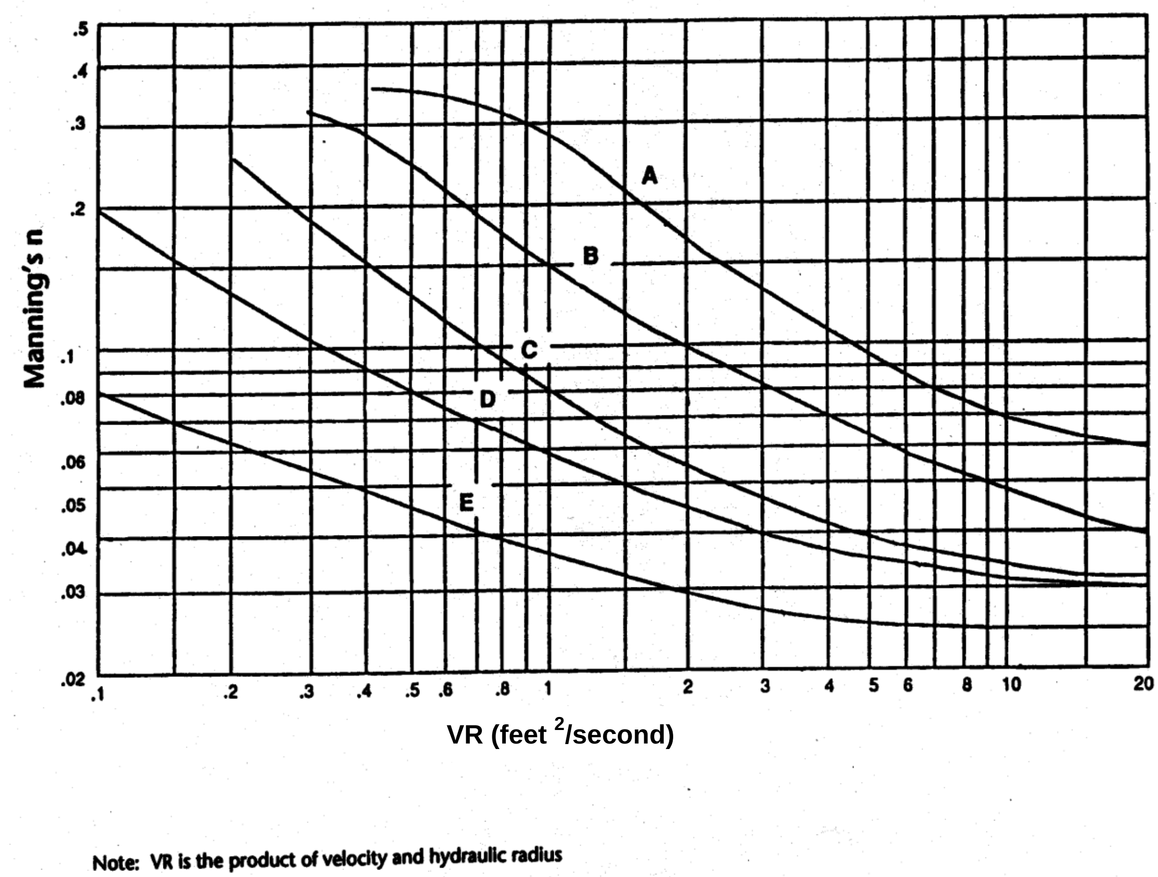
Stability Check Steps (SC)

Table 9.4.2
Guide for Selecting Degree of Retardance [a]

Coverage	Average Grass Height (inches)	Degree of Retardance
Good	<2	E. Very Low
	2-6	D. Low
	6-10	C. Moderate
	11-24	B. High
	>30	A. Very High
Fair	<2	E. Very Low
	2-6	D. Low
	6-10	D. Low
	11-24	C. Moderate
	>30	B. High

See Chow (1959).. In addition, Chow recommended selection of retardance C for a grass-legume mixture 6-8 inches high and D for a mixture 4-5 inches high. No retardance recommendations have appeared for emergent wetland species. Therefore, judgment must be used. Since these species generally grow less densely than grasses, using a "fair" coverage would be a reasonable approach.

SC-4. Select a trial Manning's n for the high flow condition. The minimum value for poor vegetation cover and low height (possibly, knocked from the vertical by high flow) is 0.033. A good initial choice under these conditions is 0.04.



Source: Livingston, et al, 1984

Figure 9.4.7 – The Relationship of Manning's n with VR for Various Degrees of Flow Retardance (A-E)

SC-5. Refer to Figure 9.4.7 to obtain a first approximation for VR of 3 feet/second.

SC-6. Compute hydraulic radius, R, from VR in Figure 9.4.7 and a Vmax

SC-7. Use Manning's equation to solve for the actual VR.

SC-8. Compare the actual VR from step SC-7 and first approximation from step SC-5. If they do not agree within 5 percent, repeat steps SC-4 to SC-8 until acceptable agreement is reached. If n<0.033 is needed to get agreement, set n = 0.033, repeat step SC-7, and then proceed to step SC-9.

SC-9. Compute the actual V for the final design conditions:

Check to be sure $V < V_{max}$ of 3 feet/second.

SC-10. Compute the required swale cross-sectional area, A, for stability:

SC-11. Compare the A, computed in step SC-10 of the stability analysis, with the A from the biofiltration capacity analysis (step D-5).

If less area is required for stability than is provided for capacity, the capacity design is acceptable. If not, use A from step SC-10 of the stability analysis and recalculate channel dimensions.

SC-12. Calculate the depth of flow at the stability check design flow rate condition for the final dimensions and use A from step SC-10.

SC-13. Compare the depth from step SC-12 to the depth used in the biofiltration capacity design (Step D-1). Use the larger of the two and add 0.5 ft. of freeboard to obtain the total depth (y_t) of the swale. Calculate the top width for the full depth using the appropriate equation.

SC-14. Recalculate the hydraulic radius: (use b from Step D-4 calculated previously for biofiltration capacity, or Step SC-11, as appropriate, and y_t = total depth from Step SC-13)

SC-15. Make a final check for capacity based on the stability check design storm (this check will ensure that capacity is adequate if the largest expected event coincides with the greatest retardance). Use Equation 1, a Manning's n selected in step D-2, and the calculated channel dimensions, including freeboard, to compute the flow capacity of the channel under these conditions. Use R from step SC-14, above, and $A = b(y_t) + Z(y_t)^2$ using b from Step D-4, D-15, or SC-11 as appropriate.

If the flow capacity is less than the stability check design storm flow rate, increase the channel cross-sectional area as needed for this conveyance. Specify the new channel dimensions.

Completion Step (CO)

CO. Review all of the criteria and guidelines for biofilter planning, design, installation, and operation above and specify all of the appropriate features for the application.

Example of Design Calculations for Biofiltration Swales

Preliminary Steps

P-1. Assume that the WWHM based Water Quality Design Flow Rate in 15 minute time-steps, Q, is 0.2 cfs. Assume an on-line facility.

P-2. Assume the slope (s) is 2 percent.

P-3. Assume the vegetation will be a grass-legume mixture and it will be infrequently mowed.

Design for Biofiltration Swale Capacity

D-1. Set winter grass height at 5" and the design flow depth (y) at 3 inches.

D-2. Use n = 0.20 to $n_2 = 0.30$

D-3. Base the design on a trapezoidal shape, with a side slope Z = 3.

D-4a. Calculate the bottom width, b;

Where:

n = 0.20 y = 0.25 ft
Q = 0.2 cfs s = 0.02
Z = 3

$$b \approx \frac{2.5Qn}{1.49y^{1.67}s^{0.5}} - Zy$$

$b \approx 4.0$ ft

At n_2; $b_2 = 6.5$ feet

D-4b. Calculate the top width (T)

T = b + 2yZ = 4.0+ [2(0.25)(3)] = 5.5 feet

D-5. Calculate the cross-sectional area (A)

$A = by + Zy^2 = (4.0)(0.25) + (3)(0.25^2) = 1.19 \text{ ft}^2$

D-6. Calculate the flow velocity (V)

$$V = K\frac{Q}{A} = 0.17 \text{ ft / sec}$$

for K = 1. Actual K is determined per Figure 9.4.6a

0.17<1.0 ft/sec ∴ OK

D-7 Calculate the Length (L)

L = Vt(60 sec/min)

= 0.17 (9)(60)

For t = 9 min, L = 92 ft. at n; expand to a minimum of 100 foot length per design criterion

At n_2; L = 100 ft.

Note: Where b is less than the maximum value, it may be possible to reduce L by increasing b. In this case, because L is determined by the requirement for a minimum length of 100 feet, it is not possible.

Check for Channel Stability

SC-1. Base the check on passing the 100-year, return frequency flow (15 minute time steps) through a swale with a mixture of Kentucky bluegrass and tall fescue on loose erodible soil. Until WWHM peak flow rates in 15-minute time steps are available the designer can use the WWHM 100-yr. hourly peak flows times an adjustment factor of 1.6 to approximate peak flows in 15-minute time steps. Assume that the adjusted peak Q is 1.92 cfs.

SC-2. Base the check on a grass height of 3 inches with "fair" coverage (lowest mowed height and least cover, assuming flow bypasses or does not occur during grass establishment).

SC-3. From Table 9.4.2, Degree of Retardance = D (low)

Set V_{max} = 3 ft/sec

SC-4. Select trial Manning's n = 0.04

SC-5. From Figure 9.4.7, VR_{appx} = 3 ft²/s

SC-6. Calculate R

$$R = \frac{VR_{appx}}{V_{max}} = 1.0 \text{ ft}$$

SC-7. Calculate VR_{actual}

$$VR_{actual} = \frac{1.49}{n} R^{1.67} s^{0.5} = 5.25 \text{ ft}^2 / \text{sec}$$

SC-8. VR_{actual} from step SC-7 > VR_{appx} from step SC-5 by > 5%.

Select new trial n = 0.0475

Figure 9.4.7: VR_{appx} = 1.7 ft²/s

R = 0.57 ft.

VR_{actual} = 1.73 ft²/s (within 5% of VR_{appx} = 1.7)

SC-9. Calculate V

$$V = \frac{VR_{actual}}{R} = \frac{1.73}{0.57} = 3 \text{ ft / sec}$$

$V = 3$ ft/sec ≤ 3 ft/sec, Vmax $\therefore$ OK

SC-10. Calculate Stability Area

$$A_{Stability} = \frac{Q}{} = \frac{1.92}{3} = 0.64 \text{ ft}^2$$

SC-11. Stability Check

$A_{Stability} = 0.64$ ft² is less than $A_{Capacity}$ from step D-5 ($A_{Capacity} = 1.19$ ft^2). $\therefore$ OK

If $A_{Stability} > A_{Capacity}$, it will be necessary to select new trial sizes for width and flow depth (based on space and other considerations), recalculate $A_{Capacity}$, and repeat steps SC-10 and SC-11.

SC-12. Calculate depth of flow at the stability design flow rate condition using the quadratic equation solution:

$$y = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4Z(-A)}}{2Z}$$

For b = 4, y = 0.14 ft (positive root)

SC-13. Use the greater value of y from SC-12 or that assumed in D-1. In this case, the greater depth is 0.25-foot, which was the basis for the biofiltration capacity design. Add 0.5 feet freeboard to that depth.

Total channel depth = 0.75 ft

Top Width = b + 2yZ

= 4 + (2)(0.75)(3)

= 8.5 ft

SC-14. Recalculate hydraulic radius and flow rate

For b = 4 ft, y = 0.75 ft

Z = 3, s = 0.02, n = 0.2

$A = by + Zy^2 = 4.68$ ft²

$R = \{by + Zy^2\}/\{b + 2y(Z^2 + 1)^{0.5}\} = 0.53$ ft.

SC-15. Calculate Flow Capacity at Greatest Resistance

$$Q = \frac{1.49AR^{0.67}s^{0.5}}{n} = 3.2 \text{ cfs}$$

$Q = 3.2$ cfs > 1.92 cfs $\therefore$ OK

Completion Step

CO-1. Assume 100 feet of swale length is available.

The final channel dimensions are:

Bottom width, b = 4 feet
Channel depth= 0.75 feet
Top width = b + 2yZ = 8.5 feet

No check dams are needed for a 2% slope.

Soil Criteria

- The following top soil mix at least 8-inch deep:
  - Sandy loam 60-90 %
  - Clay 0-10 %
- Composted material, 10-30 %
  Use compost amended soil where practicable. Composted material shall meet the specifications for compost used in the Bioretention Soil Media (BMP T7.30). This excludes use of biosolids and manures.
- Till to at least 8-inch depth
- For longitudinal slopes of < 2 percent use more sand to obtain more infiltration
- If ground water contamination is a concern, seal the bed with clay or a geomembrane liner

Vegetation Criteria

- See Tables 9.4.3, 9.4.4 and 9.4.5 for recommended grasses, wetland plants, and groundcovers.
- Select fine, turf-forming, water-resistant grasses where vegetative growth and moisture will be adequate for growth.
- Irrigate if moisture is insufficient during dry weather season.
- Use sod with low clay content and where needed to initiate adequate vegetative growth. Preferably sod should be laid to a minimum of one-foot vertical depth above the swale bottom.

- Consider sun/shade conditions for adequate vegetative growth and avoid prolonged shading of any portion not planted with shade tolerant vegetation.
- Stabilize soil areas upslope of the biofilter to prevent erosion
- Fertilizing a biofilter should be avoided if at all possible in any application where nutrient control is an objective. Test the soil for nitrogen, phosphorous, and potassium and consult with a landscape professional about the need for fertilizer in relation to soil nutrition and vegetation requirements. If use of a fertilizer cannot be avoided, use a slow-release fertilizer formulation in the least amount needed.

Recommended grasses (see Tables 9.4.3 and 9.4.4 below)

Table 9.4.3
Grass Seed Mixes Suitable for Biofiltration Swale Treatment Areas

Mix 1		Mix 2	
75-80 percent	tall or meadow fescue	60-70 percent	tall fescue
10-15 percent	seaside/colonial bentgrass	10-15 percent	seaside/colonial bentgrass
5-10 percent	Redtop	10-15 percent	meadow foxtail
		6-10 percent	alsike clover
		1-5 percent	marshfield big trefoil
		1-6 percent	Redtop

Note: *all percentages are by weight. * based on Briargreen, Inc.*

Table 9.4.4
Groundcovers And Grasses Suitable for the Upper Side Slopes of a Biofiltration Swale in Western Washington

Groundcovers	
kinnikinnick*	*Arctostaphylos uva-ursi*
Epimedium	*Epimedium grandiflorum*
creeping forget-me-not	*Omphalodes verna*
--	*Euonymus lanceolata*
yellow-root	*Xanthorhiza simplissima*
--	*Genista*
white lawn clover	*Trifolium repens*
*	
-------	*Rubus calycinoides*
strawberry*	*Fragaria chiloensis*
broadleaf lupine*	*Lupinus latifolius*
Grasses (drought-tolerant, minimum mowing)	
dwarf tall fescues	*Festuca* spp. (e.g., Many Mustang, Silverado)
hard fescue	*Festuca ovina duriuscula* (e.g., Reliant, Aurora)
tufted fescue	*Festuca amethystine*
buffalo grass	*Buchloe dactyloides*

red fescue*	*Festuca rubra*
tall fescue grass*	*Festuca arundinacea*
blue oatgrass	*Helictotrichon sempervirens*

Construction Criteria

The biofiltration swale should not be put into operation until areas of exposed soil in the contributing drainage catchment have been sufficiently stabilized. Deposition of eroded soils can impede the growth of grass in the swale and reduce swale treatment effectiveness. Thus, effective erosion and sediment control measures should remain in place until the swale vegetation is established (see Volume II for erosion and sediment control BMPs). Avoid compaction during construction. Grade biofilters to attain uniform longitudinal and lateral slopes.

Maintenance Criteria

- Inspect biofilters at least once every 6 months, preferably during storm events, and also after storm events of > 0.5 inch rainfall/ 24 hours. Maintain adequate grass growth and eliminate bare spots.
- Mow grasses, if needed for good growth {typically maintain at 4 – 9 inches and not below design flow level (King County, 1998)}.
- Remove sediment as needed at head of the swale if grass growth is inhibited in greater than 10 percent of the swale, or if the sediment is blocking the distribution and entry of the water (King County, 1998).
- Remove leaves, litter, and oily materials, and re-seed or resod, and regrade, as needed. Clean curb cuts and level spreaders as needed.

Prevent scouring and soil erosion in the biofilter. If flow channeling occurs, regrade and reseed the biofilter, as necessary.

Maintain access to biofilter inlet, outlet, and to mowing (Figure 9.4.8)

- If a swale is equipped with underdrains, vehicular traffic on the swale bottom (other than grass mowing equipment) should be avoided to prevent damage to the drainpipes.

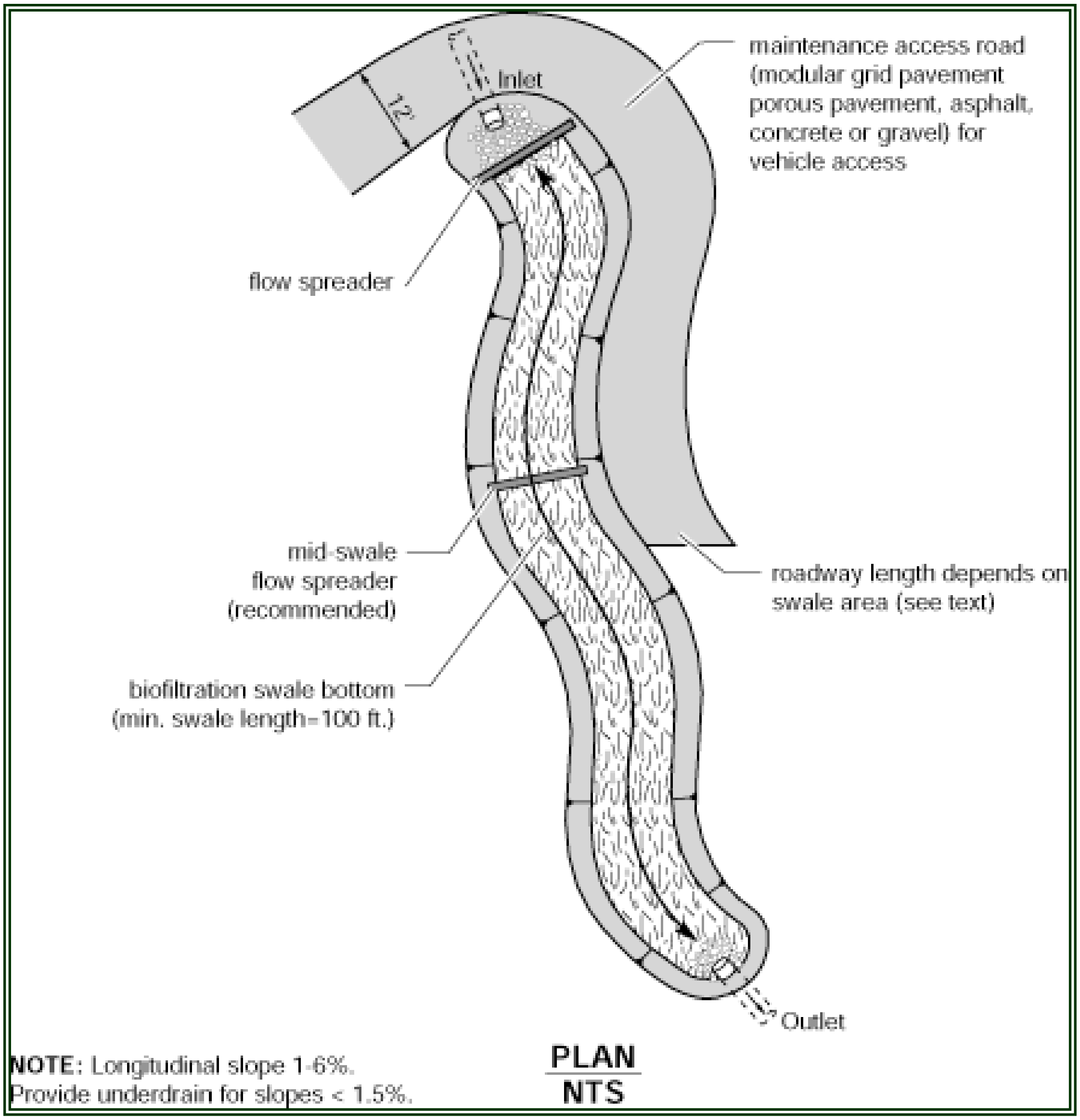


Figure 9.4.8 – Biofiltration Swale Access Features

BMP T9.20: Wet Biofiltration Swale

Description

A wet biofiltration swale is a variation of a basic biofiltration swale. Designers can use wet biofiltration swales when the longitudinal slope is slight, water tables are high, or a continuous low base flow is likely to result in saturated soil. Where saturation exceeds about 2 weeks, typical grasses will die. Thus, use vegetation specifically adapted to saturated soil conditions. Different vegetation in turn requires modification of several of the design parameters for the basic biofiltration swale.

Performance Objectives

To remove low concentrations of pollutants such as TSS, heavy metals, nutrients, and petroleum hydrocarbons.

Applications/ Limitations

Wet biofiltration swales are applied where a basic biofiltration swale is desired but not allowed or advisable because one or more of the following conditions exist:

- The swale is on till soils and is downstream of a detention pond providing flow control.
- Saturated soil conditions are likely because of seeps or base flows on the site.
- Longitudinal slopes are slight (generally less than 2 percent).

Design Criteria

Use the same design approach as for basic biofiltration swales except to add the following:

Adjust for extended wet season flow. If the swale will be downstream of a detention pond providing flow control, multiply the treatment area (bottom width times length) of the swale by 2, and readjust the swale length, if desired. Maintain a 5:1 length to width ratio.

Intent: An increase in the treatment area of swales following detention ponds is required because of the differences in vegetation established in a constant flow environment. Flows following detention are much more prolonged. These prolonged flows result in more stream-like conditions than are typical for other wet biofilter situations. Since vegetation growing in streams is often less dense, this increase in treatment area is needed to ensure that equivalent pollutant removal is achieved in extended flow situations.

Swale Geometry: Same as specified for basic biofiltration swales except for the following modifications:

> ***Criterion 1:*** The bottom width may be increased to 25 feet maximum, but a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1 must be provided. No longitudinal dividing berm is needed. *Note: The minimum swale length is still 100 feet.*

Criterion 2: If longitudinal slopes are greater than 2 percent, the wet swale must be stepped so that the slope within the stepped sections averages 2 percent. Steps may be made of retaining walls, log check dams, or short riprap sections. **No underdrain or low-flow drain is required**.

High-Flow Bypass: A high-flow bypass (i.e., an off-line design) is required for flows greater than the off-line water quality design flow that has been increased by the ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6b. The bypass is necessary to protect wetland vegetation from damage. Unlike grass, wetland vegetation will not quickly regain an upright attitude after being laid down by high flows. New growth, usually from the base of the plant, often taking several weeks, is required to regain its upright form. The bypass may be an open channel parallel to the wet biofiltration swale.

Water Depth and Base Flow: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except the design water depth shall be 4 inches for all wetland vegetation selections, and **no underdrains or low-flow drains are required**.

Flow Velocity, Energy Dissipation, and Flow Spreading: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except no flow spreader is needed.

Access: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except access is only required to the inflow and the outflow of the swale; access along the length of the swale is not required. Also, wheel strips may not be used for access in the swale.

Intent: An access road is not required along the length of a wet swale because of infrequent access needs. Frequent mowing or harvesting is not desirable. In addition, wetland plants are fairly resilient to sediment-induced changes in water depth, so the need for access should be infrequent.

Soil Amendment: Same as for basic biofiltration swales.

Planting Requirements: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except for the following modifications:

1. A list of acceptable plants and recommended spacing is shown in Table 9.4.5. In general, it is best to plant several species to increase the likelihood that at least some of the selected species will find growing conditions favorable.
2. A wetland seed mix may be applied by hydroseeding, but if coverage is poor, planting of rootstock or nursery stock is required. Poor coverage is considered to be more than 30 percent bare area through the upper 2/3 of the swale after four weeks.

Recommended Design Features: Same as for basic biofiltration swales

Construction Considerations: Same as for basic biofiltration swales

Maintenance Considerations: Same as for basic biofiltration swales except mowing of wetland vegetation is not required. However, harvesting of very dense vegetation may be desirable in the fall after plant die-back to prevent the sloughing of excess organic material into receiving waters. Many native *Juncus* species remain green throughout the winter; therefore, fall harvesting of *Juncus* species is not recommended.

Table 9.4.5
Recommended Plants for Wet Biofiltration Swale

Common Name	Scientific Name	Spacing (on center)
Shortawn foxtail	*Alopecurus aequalis*	seed
Water foxtail	*Alopecurus geniculatus*	seed
Spike rush	*Eleocharis spp.*	4 inches
Slough sedge*	*Carex obnupta*	6 inches or seed
Sawbeak sedge	*Carex stipata*	6 inches
Sedge	*Carex* spp.	6 inches
Western mannagrass	*Glyceria occidentalis*	seed
Velvetgrass	*Holcus mollis*	seed
Slender rush	*Juncus tenuis*	6 inches
Watercress*	*Rorippa nasturtium-aquaticum*	12 inches
Water parsley*	*Oenanthe sarmentosa*	6 inches
Hardstem bulrush	*Scirpus acutus*	6 inches
Small-fruited bulrush	*Scirpus microcarpus*	12 inches

** Good choices for swales with significant periods of flow, such as those downstream of a detention facility.*

Note: Cattail (Typha latifolia) is not appropriate for most wet swales because of its very dense and clumping growth habit which prevents water from filtering through the clump.

BMP T9.30: Continuous Inflow Biofiltration Swale

Description

In situations where water enters a biofiltration swale continuously along the side slope rather than discretely at the head, a different design approach–the continuous inflow biofiltration swale–is needed. The basic swale design is modified by increasing swale length to achieve an equivalent average residence time.

Applications

A continuous inflow biofiltration swale is to be **used when inflows are not concentrated**, such as locations along the shoulder of a road without curbs. This design may also be **used where frequent, small point flows enter a swale**, such as through curb inlet ports spaced at intervals along a road, or from a parking lot with frequent curb cuts. In general, no inlet port should carry more than about 10 percent of the flow.

A continuous inflow swale is not appropriate for a situation in which significant lateral flows enter a swale at some point downstream from the head of the swale. In this situation, the swale width and length must be recalculated from the point of confluence to the discharge point in order to provide adequate treatment for the increased flows.

Design Criteria

Same as specified for **basic biofiltration swale** except for the following:

- The design flow for continuous inflow swales must include runoff from the pervious side slopes draining to the swale along the entire swale length. Therefore, they must be on-line facilities.
- If only a single design flow is used, the flow rate at the outlet should be used. The goal is to achieve an average residence time through the swale of 9 minutes as calculated using the on-line water quality design flow rate multiplied by the ratio, K, in Figure 9.4.6a. Assuming an even distribution of inflow into the side of the swale double the hydraulic residence time to a minimum of 18 minutes.
- For continuous inflow biofiltration swales, interior side slopes above the WQ design treatment elevation shall be planted in grass. A typical lawn seed mix or the biofiltration seed mixes are acceptable. Landscape plants or groundcovers other than grass may not be used anywhere between the runoff inflow elevation and the bottom of the swale. **Intent:** The use of grass on interior side slopes reduces the chance of soil erosion and transfer of pollutants from landscape areas to the biofiltration treatment area.

BMP T9.40: Basic Filter Strip

Description A basic filter strip is flat with no side slopes (Figure 9.4.9). Contaminated stormwater is distributed as sheet flow across the inlet width of a biofilter strip. Treatment is by passage of water over the surface, and through grass.

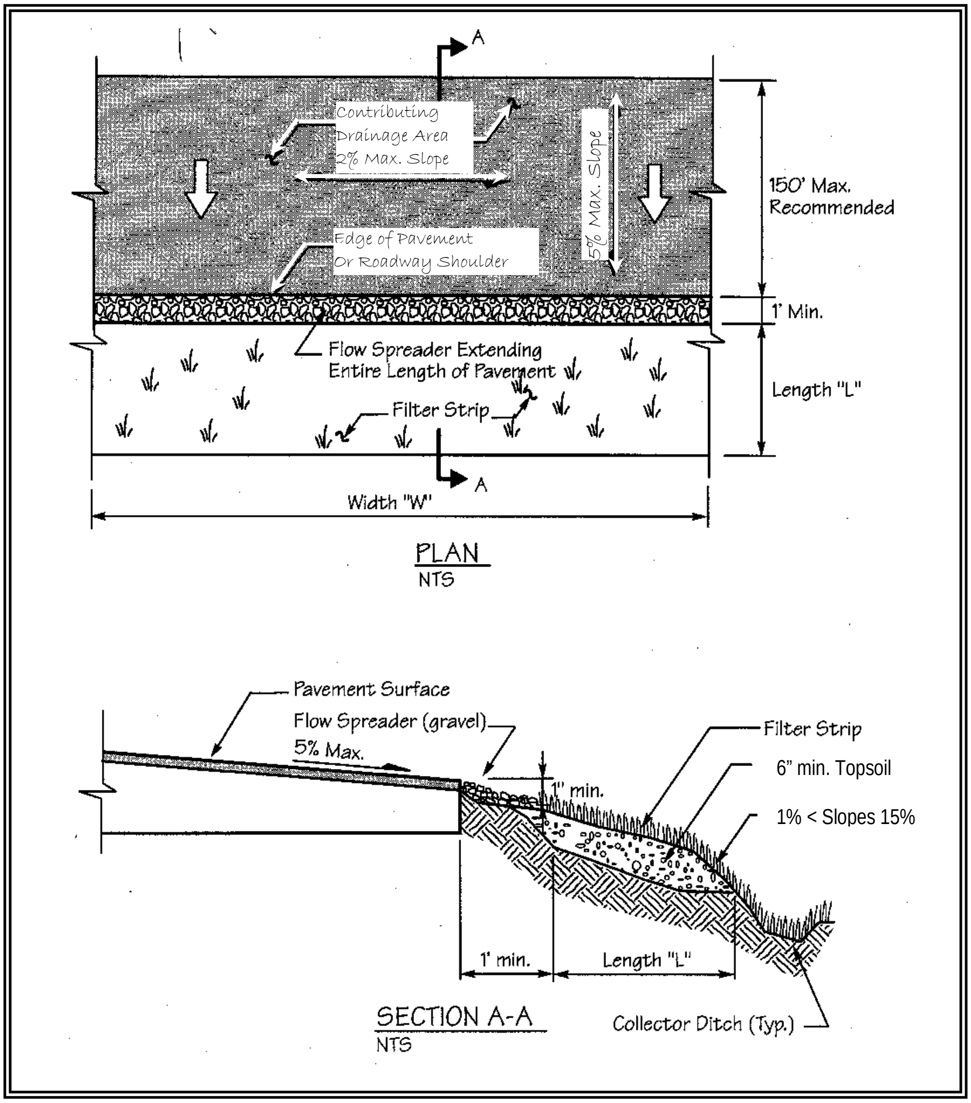


Figure 9.4.9 – Typical Filter Strip

Applications and Limitations

The basic filter strip is typically used on-line and adjacent and parallel to a paved area such as parking lots, driveways, and roadways.

Design Criteria for Filter strips:

- Use the Design Criteria specified in Table 9.4.1.
- Filter strips should only receive sheet flow.
- Use curb cuts ≥ 12-inch wide and 1-inch above the filter strip inlet.

Calculate the design flow depth using Manning's equation as follows:

$$KQ = (1.49A\ R^{0.67}\ s^{0.5})/n$$

Substituting for AR:

$$KQ = (1.49Ty^{1.67}\ s^{0.5})/n$$

Where:

$Ty = A_{rectangle,\ ft}{}^{2}$

$y \approx R_{rectangle}$, design depth of flow, ft. (1 inch maximum)

Q = peak Water Quality design flow rate based on WWHM, ft^3/sec (See Appendix I-B, Volume I)

K = The ratio determined by using Figure 9.4.6a

n = Manning's roughness coefficient

s = Longitudinal slope of filter strip parallel to direction of flow

T = Width of filter strip perpendicular to the direction of flow, ft.

A = Filter strip inlet cross-sectional flow area (rectangular), ft^2

R = hydraulic radius, ft.

Rearranging for y:

$$y = [KQn/1.49Ts^{0.5}]^{0.6}$$

y must not exceed 1 inch

Note: As in swale design an adjustment factor of K accounts for the differential between the WWHM Water Quality design flow rate and the SBUH design flow

Calculate the design flow velocity V, ft./sec., through the filter strip:

$$V = KQ/Ty$$

V must not exceed 0.5 ft./sec

Calculate required length, ft., of the filter strip at the minimum hydraulic residence time, t, of 9 minutes:

$$\mathbf{L = tV = 540V}$$

Chapter 10. - Wetpool Facilities

Note: Figures in Chapter 10 are from the King County Surface Water Design Manual

10.1 Purpose

This Chapter presents the methods, criteria, and details for analysis and design of wetponds, wetvaults, and stormwater wetlands. These facilities have as a common element a permanent pool of water - the wetpool. Each of the wetpool facilities can be combined with a detention or flow control pond in a combined facility.

10.2 Application

The wetpool facility designs described for the four BMPs in this Chapter will achieve the performance objectives cited in Chapter 3 for specific treatment menus.

10.3 Best Management Practices (BMPs) for Wetpool Facilities

The four BMPs discussed below are currently recognized as effective treatment techniques using wetpool facilities. The specific BMPs that are selected should be coordinated with the Treatment Facility Menus discussed in Chapter 3.

BMP T10.10: Wetponds - Basic and Large

Purpose and Definition

A wetpond is a constructed stormwater pond that retains a permanent pool of water ("wetpool") at least during the wet season. The volume of the wetpool is related to the effectiveness of the pond in settling particulate pollutants. As an option, a shallow marsh area can be created within the permanent pool volume to provide additional treatment for nutrient removal. Peak flow control can be provided in the "live storage" area above the permanent pool. Figures 10.31a and 10.3.1b illustrates a typical wet pond BMP.

The following design, construction, and operation and maintenance criteria cover two wetpond applications - the basic wetpond and the large wetpond. Large wetponds are designed for higher levels of pollutant removal.

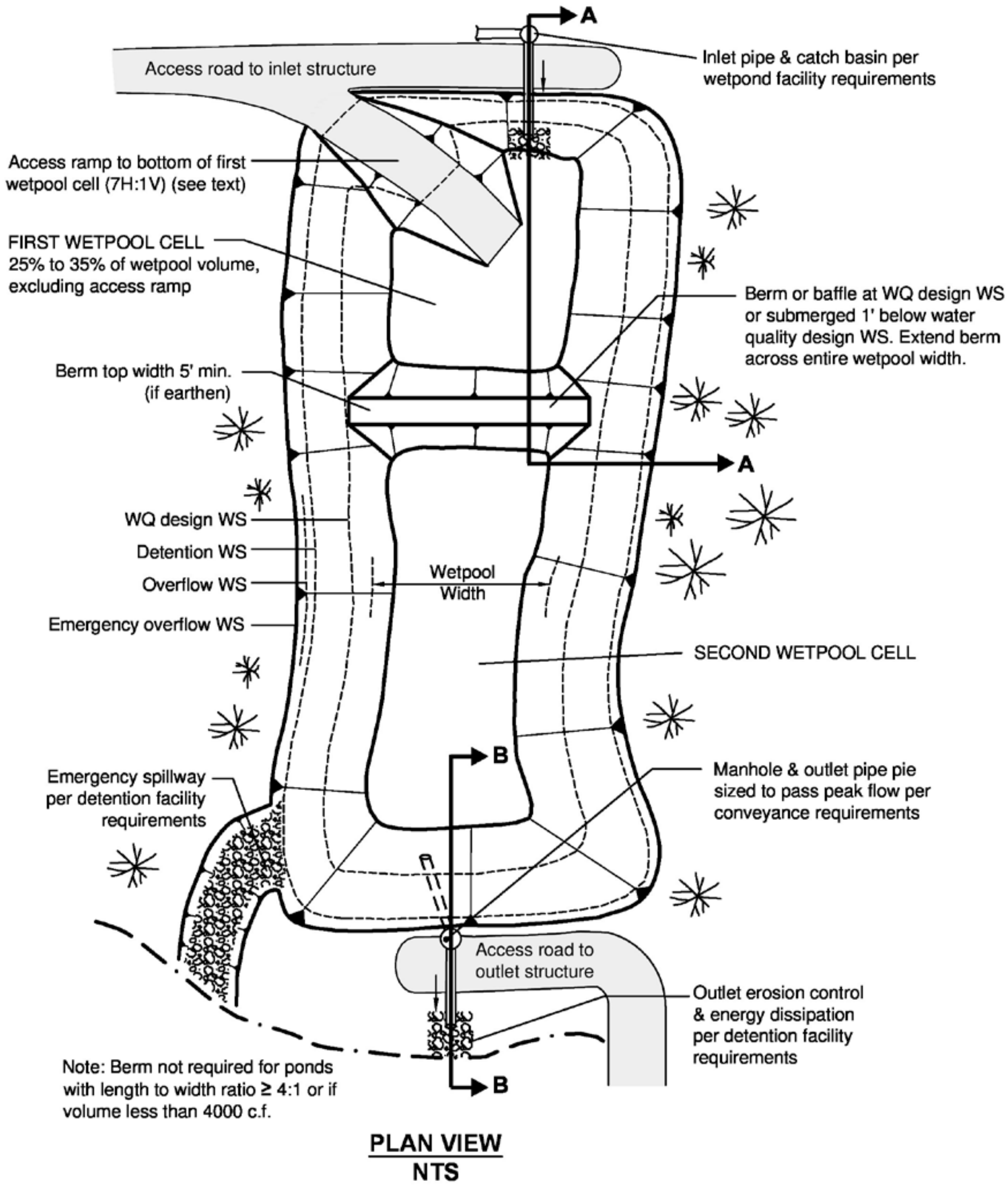


Figure 10.3.1a – Wetpond

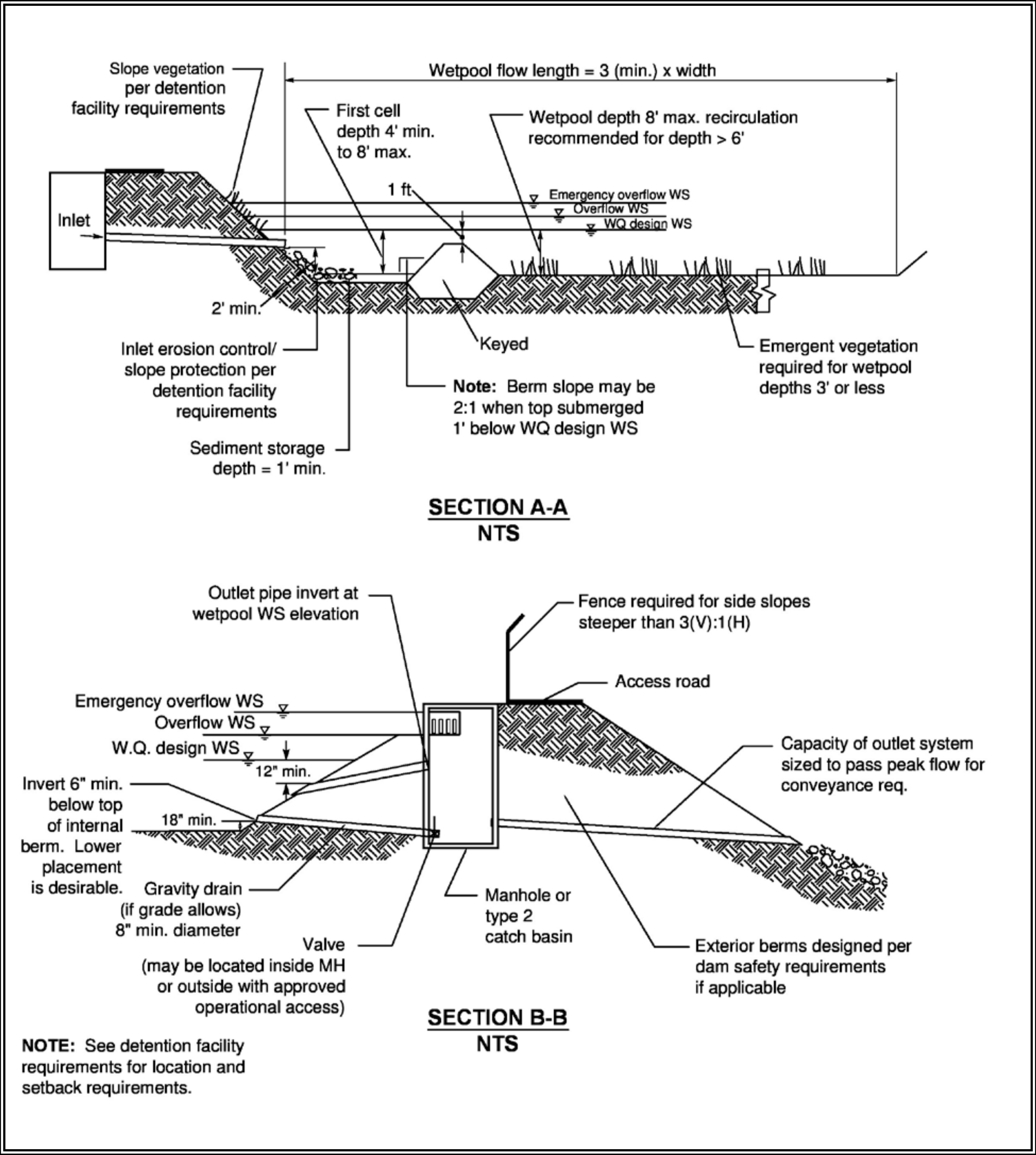


Figure 10.3.1b – Wetpond

Applications and Limitations

A wetpond requires a larger area than a biofiltration swale or a sand filter, but it can be integrated to the contours of a site fairly easily. In till soils, the wetpond holds a permanent pool of water that provides an attractive aesthetic feature. In more porous soils, wetponds may still be used, but water seepage from unlined cells could result in a dry pond, particularly in the summer months. Lining the first cell with a low permeability liner is one way to deal with this situation. As long as the first cell retains a permanent pool of water, this situation will not reduce the pond’s effectiveness but may be an aesthetic drawback.

Wetponds work best when the water already in the pond is moved out en masse by incoming flows, a phenomenon called "plug flow.” Because treatment works on this displacement principle, the wetpool storage of wetponds may be provided below the ground water level without interfering unduly with treatment effectiveness. However, if combined with a detention function, the live storage must be above the seasonal high ground water level.

Wetponds may be single-purpose facilities, providing only runoff treatment, or they may be combined with a detention pond to also provide flow control. If combined, the wetpond can often be stacked under the detention pond with little further loss of development area. See BMP T10.40 for a description of combined detention and wetpool facilities.

Design Criteria

The primary design factor that determines a wetpond's treatment efficiency is the volume of the wetpool. The larger the wetpool volume, the greater the potential for pollutant removal. For a basic wetpond, the wetpool volume provided shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the water quality design storm - the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. **Alternatively, use an approved continuous runoff model to give you the Water Quality Design Storm Volume. This volume is equal to the simulated daily volume that represents the upper limit of the range of daily volumes that accounts for 91% of the entire runoff volume over a multi-decade period of record. The WWHM and MGS Flood identify this volume for you.**

A large wetpond requires a wetpool volume at least 1.5 times larger than the Water Quality Design Storm Volume. Also important are the avoidance of short-circuiting and the promotion of plug flow. ***Plug flow*** describes the hypothetical condition of stormwater moving through the pond as a unit, displacing the "old" water in the pond with incoming flows. To prevent short-circuiting, water is forced to flow, to the extent practical, to all potentially available flow routes, avoiding "dead zones" and maximizing the time water stays in the pond during the active part of a storm.

Design features that encourage plug flow and avoid dead zones are:

- Dissipating energy at the inlet.
- Providing a large length-to-width ratio.
- Providing a broad surface for water exchange using a berm designed as a broad-crested weir to divide the wetpond into two cells rather than a constricted area such as a pipe.
- Maximizing the flowpath between inlet and outlet, including the vertical path, also enhances treatment by increasing residence time.

Sizing Procedure

Procedures for determining a wetpond's dimensions and volume are outlined below.

Step 1: Identify required wetpool volume using: a) the SCS (now known as NRCS) curve number equations presented in Volume III, Chapter 2, Section 2.3.2, or b) an approved continuous runoff. A basic wetpond requires a volume equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, use the Water Quality Design Storm Volume indicated by an approved continuous runoff model. A large wetpond requires a volume at least 1.5 times the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event, or 1.5 times the Water Quality Design Storm Volume identified by an approved continuous runoff model.

Step 2: Determine wetpool dimensions. Determine the wetpool dimensions satisfying the design criteria outlined below and illustrated in Figures 10.3.1a and 10.3.1b. A simple way to check the volume of each wetpool cell is to use the following equation:

$$V = \frac{h(A_1 + A_2)}{2}$$

where V = wetpool volume (cf)

h = wetpool average depth (ft)

A_1 = water quality design surface area of wetpool (sf)

A_2 = bottom area of wetpool (sf)

Step 3: Design pond outlet pipe and determine primary overflow water surface. The pond outlet pipe shall be placed on a reverse grade from the pond's wetpool to the outlet structure. Use the following procedure to design the pond outlet pipe and determine the primary overflow water surface elevation:

a) Use the nomographs in Figures 10.3.2 and 10.3.3 to select a trial size for the pond outlet pipe sufficient to pass the on-line WQ design flow, Q_{wq} indicated by WWHM or other approved continuous runoff model.

b) Use Figure 10.3.4 to determine the critical depth d_c at the outflow end of the pipe for Q_{wq}.

c) Use Figure 10.3.5 to determine the flow area A_c at critical depth.

d) Calculate the flow velocity at critical depth using continuity equation ($V_c = Q_{wq} / A_c$).

e) Calculate the velocity head V_H ($V_H = V_c^2 / 2g$, where g is the gravitational constant, 32.2 feet per second).

f) Determine the primary overflow water surface elevation by adding the velocity head and critical depth to the invert elevation at the outflow end of the pond outlet pipe (i.e., overflow water surface elevation = outflow invert + d_c + V_H).

g) Adjust outlet pipe diameter as needed and repeat Steps (a) through (e).

Step 4: Determine wetpond dimensions. General wetpond design criteria and concepts are shown in Figure 10.3.1a and 10.3.1b.

Wetpool Geometry

- The wetpool shall be divided into two cells separated by a baffle or berm. The first cell shall contain between 25 to 35 percent of the total wetpool volume. The baffle or berm volume shall not count as part of the total wetpool volume. The term baffle means a vertical divider placed across the entire width of the pond, stopping short of the bottom. A berm is a vertical divider typically built up from the bottom, or if in a vault, connects all the way to the bottom.

Intent: The full-length berm or baffle promotes plug flow and enhances quiescence and laminar flow through as much of the entire water volume as possible. Alternative methods to the full-length berm or baffle that provide equivalent flow characteristics may be approved on a case-by-case basis by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

- Sediment storage shall be provided in the first cell. The sediment storage shall have a minimum depth of 1-foot. A fixed sediment depth monitor should be installed in the first cell to gauge sediment accumulation unless an alternative gauging method is proposed.
- The minimum depth of the first cell shall be 4 feet, exclusive of sediment storage requirements. The depth of the first cell may be greater than the depth of the second cell.
- The maximum depth of each cell shall not exceed 8 feet (exclusive of sediment storage in the first cell). Pool depths of 3 feet or shallower (second cell) shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation (see Planting requirements).
- Inlets and outlets shall be placed to maximize the flowpath through the facility. The ratio of flowpath length to width from the inlet to the outlet shall be at least 3:1. The ***flowpath length*** is defined as the distance from the inlet to the outlet, as measured at mid-depth. The ***width*** at mid-depth can be found as follows: width = (average top width + average bottom width)/2.
- Wetponds with wetpool volumes less than or equal to 4,000 cubic feet may be single celled (i.e., no baffle or berm is required). However, it is especially important in this case that the flow path length be maximized. The ratio of flow path length to width shall be at least 4:1 in single celled wetponds, but should preferably be 5:1.
- All inlets shall enter the first cell. If there are multiple inlets, the length-to-width ratio shall be based on the average flowpath length for all inlets.

- The first cell must be lined in accordance with the liner requirements contained in Section 4.4.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

- A berm or baffle shall extend across the full width of the wetpool, and tie into the wetpond side slopes. If the berm embankments are greater than 4 feet in height, the berm must be constructed by excavating a key equal to 50 percent of the embankment cross-sectional height and width. This requirement may be waived if recommended by a geotechnical engineer for specific site conditions. The geotechnical analysis shall address situations in which one of the two cells is empty while the other remains full of water.
- The top of the berm may extend to the WQ design water surface or be 1-foot below the WQ design water surface. If at the WQ design water surface, berm side slopes should be 3H:1V. Berm side slopes may be steeper (up to 2:1) if the berm is submerged 1-foot.

  Intent: Submerging the berm is intended to enhance safety by discouraging pedestrian access when side slopes are steeper than 3H:1V. An alternative to the submerged berm design is the use of barrier planting to prevent easy access to the divider berm in an unfenced wetpond.
- If good vegetation cover is not established on the berm, erosion control measures should be used to prevent erosion of the berm back-slope when the pond is initially filled.
- The interior berm or baffle may be a retaining wall provided that the design is prepared and stamped by a licensed civil engineer. If a baffle or retaining wall is used, it should be submerged one foot below the design water surface to discourage access by pedestrians.
- Criteria for wetpond side slopes are included in Section 4.3.

Embankments

Embankments that impound water must comply with the Washington State Dam Safety Regulations (Chapter 173-175 WAC). If the impoundment has a storage capacity (including both water and sediment storage volumes) greater than 10 acre-feet (435,600 cubic feet or 3.26 million gallons) above natural ground level, then dam safety design and review are required by Ecology. See Section 3.2.1 of Volume III.

Inlet and Outlet

See Figure 10.3.1a and 10.3.1b for details on the following requirements:

- The inlet to the wetpond shall be submerged with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of two feet from the pond bottom (not including sediment storage). The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1-foot, if possible.

Intent: The inlet is submerged to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is set to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

- An outlet structure shall be provided. Either a Type 2 catch basin with a grated opening (jail house window) or a manhole with a cone grate (birdcage) may be used (see Volume III, Figure 3.2.3 for an illustration). No sump is required in the outlet structure for wetponds not providing detention storage. The outlet structure receives flow from the pond outlet pipe. The grate or birdcage openings provide an overflow route should the pond outlet pipe become clogged. The overflow criteria provided below specifies the sizing and position of the grate opening.
- The pond outlet pipe (as opposed to the manhole or type 2 catch basin outlet pipe) shall be back-sloped or have a turn-down elbow, and extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface. Note: A floating outlet, set to draw water from 1-foot below the water surface, is also acceptable if vandalism concerns are adequately addressed.

  Intent: The inverted outlet pipe provides for trapping of oils and floatables in the wetpond.
- The pond outlet pipe shall be sized, at a minimum, to pass the on-line WQ design flow. Note: The highest invert of the outlet pipe sets the WQ design water surface elevation.
- The overflow criteria for single-purpose (treatment only, not combined with flow control) wetponds are as follows:
  a) The requirement for primary overflow is satisfied by either the grated inlet to the outlet structure or by a birdcage above the pond outlet structure.
  b) The bottom of the grate opening in the outlet structure shall be set at or above the height needed to pass the WQ design flow through the pond outlet pipe. *Note: The grate invert elevation sets the overflow water surface elevation.*
  c) The grated opening should be sized to pass the 100-year design flow. The capacity of the outlet system should be sized to pass the peak flow for the conveyance requirements.
- An emergency spillway shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Section 3.2.1 of Volume III).
- The Local Plan Approval Authority may require a bypass/ shutoff valve to enable the pond to be taken offline for maintenance purposes.
- A gravity drain for maintenance is recommended if grade allows.

Intent: It is anticipated that sediment removal will only be needed for the first cell in the majority of cases. The gravity drain is intended to allow water from the first cell to be drained to the second cell when the first cell is pumped dry for cleaning.

- The drain invert shall be at least 6 inches below the top elevation of the dividing berm or baffle. Deeper drains are encouraged where feasible, but must be no deeper than 18 inches above the pond bottom.

  Intent: To prevent highly sediment-laden water from escaping the pond when drained for maintenance.

- The drain shall be at least 8 inches (minimum) diameter and shall be controlled by a valve. Use of a shear gate is allowed only at the inlet end of a pipe located within an approved structure.

  Intent: Shear gates often leak if water pressure pushes on the side of the gate opposite the seal. The gate should be situated so that water pressure pushes toward the seal.

- Operational access to the valve shall be provided to the finished ground surface.
- The valve location shall be accessible and well-marked with 1-foot of paving placed around the box. It must also be protected from damage and unauthorized operation.
- A valve box is allowed to a maximum depth of 5 feet without an access manhole. If over 5 feet deep, an access manhole or vault is required.
- All metal parts shall be corrosion-resistant. Galvanized materials should not be used unless unavoidable.

  Intent: Galvanized metal contributes zinc to stormwater, sometimes in very high concentrations.

Access and Setbacks

- All facilities shall be a minimum of 20 feet from any structure, property line, and any vegetative buffer required by the local government, and 100 feet from any septic tank/drainfield.
- All facilities shall be a minimum of 50 feet from any steep (greater than 15 percent) slope. A geotechnical report must address the potential impact of a wet pond on a steep slope.
- Access and maintenance roads shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds. Access and maintenance roads shall extend to both the wetpond inlet and outlet structures. An access ramp (7H minimum:1V) shall be provided to the bottom of the first cell unless all portions of the cell can be reached and sediment loaded from the top of the pond.

- If the dividing berm is also used for access, it should be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

Planting Requirements

Planting requirements for detention ponds also apply to wetponds.

- Large wetponds intended for phosphorus control should not be planted within the cells, as the plants will release phosphorus in the winter when they die off.
- If the second cell of a basic wetpond is 3 feet or shallower, the bottom area shall be planted with emergent wetland vegetation. See Table 10.3.1 for recommended emergent wetland plant species for wetponds. Intent: Planting of shallow pond areas helps to stabilize settled sediment and prevent resuspension.

Note: The recommendations in Table 10.3.1 are for western Washington only. Local knowledge should be used to adapt this information if used in other areas.

- Cattails (Typha latifolia) are not recommended because they tend to crowd out other species and will typically establish themselves anyway.
- If the wetpond discharges to a phosphorus-sensitive lake or wetland, shrubs that form a dense cover should be planted on slopes above the WQ design water surface on at least three sides. For banks that are berms, no planting is allowed if the berm is regulated by dam safety requirements. The purpose of planting is to discourage waterfowl use of the pond and to provide shading. Some suitable trees and shrubs include vine maple (Acer circinatum), wild cherry (Prunus emarginata), red osier dogwood (Cornus stolonifera), California myrtle (Myrica californica), Indian plum (Oemleria cerasiformis), and Pacific yew (Taxus brevifolia) as well as numerous ornamental species.

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into the wetpond design where site conditions allow:

- The method of construction of soil/landscape systems can cause natural selection of specific plant species. Consult a soil restoration or wetland soil scientist for site-specific recommendations. The soil formulation will impact the plant species that will flourish or suffer on the site, and the formulation should be such that it encourages desired species and discourages undesired species.
- For wetpool depths in excess of 6 feet, it is recommended that some form of recirculation be provided in the summer, such as a fountain or aerator, to prevent stagnation and low dissolved oxygen conditions.

- A flow length-to-width ratio greater than the 3:1 minimum is desirable. If the ratio is 4:1 or greater, then the dividing berm is not required, and the pond may consist of one cell rather than two. A one-cell pond must provide at least 6-inches of sediment storage depth. A one cell pond must also provide a minimum depth of 4 feet for the volume equivalent to the first cell of a two-cell design.
- A tear-drop shape, with the inlet at the narrow end, rather than a rectangular pond is preferred since it minimizes dead zones caused by corners.
- A small amount of base flow is desirable to maintain circulation and reduce the potential for low oxygen conditions during late summer.
- Evergreen or columnar deciduous trees along the west and south sides of ponds are recommended to reduce thermal heating, except that no trees or shrubs may be planted on berms meeting the criteria of dams regulated for safety. In addition to shade, trees and shrubs also discourage waterfowl use and the attendant phosphorus enrichment problems they cause. Trees should be set back so that the branches will not extend over the pond.

  <u>Intent:</u> Evergreen trees or shrubs are preferred to avoid problems associated with leaf drop. Columnar deciduous trees (e.g., hornbeam, Lombardy poplar) typically have fewer leaves than other deciduous trees.
- The number of inlets to the facility should be limited; ideally there should be only one inlet. The flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the facility.
- The access and maintenance road could be extended along the full length of the wetpond and could double as playcourts or picnic areas. Placing finely ground bark or other natural material over the road surface would render it more pedestrian friendly.
- The following design features should be incorporated to enhance aesthetics where possible:
  - Provide pedestrian access to shallow pool areas enhanced with emergent wetland vegetation. This allows the pond to be more accessible without incurring safety risks.
  - Provide side slopes that are sufficiently gentle to avoid the need for fencing (3:1 or flatter).
  - Create flat areas overlooking or adjoining the pond for picnic tables or seating that can be used by residents. Walking or jogging trails around the pond are easily integrated into site design.
  - Include fountains or integrated waterfall features for privately maintained facilities.

- Provide visual enhancement with clusters of trees and shrubs. On most pond sites, it is important to amend the soil before planting since ponds are typically placed well below the native soil horizon in very poor soils. Make sure dam safety restrictions against planting do not apply.
- Orient the pond length along the direction of prevailing summer winds (typically west or southwest) to enhance wind mixing.

Construction Criteria

- Sediment that has accumulated in the pond must be removed after construction in the drainage area of the pond is complete (unless used for a liner - see below).
- Sediment that has accumulated in the pond at the end of construction may be used in excessively drained soils to meet the liner requirements if the sediment meets the criteria for low permeability or treatment liners in keeping with guidance in Chapter 4. Sediment used for a soil liner must be graded to provide uniform coverage and must meet the thickness specifications in Chapter 4. The sediment must not reduce the design volume of the pond. The pond must be over-excavated initially to provide sufficient room for the sediments to serve as a liner.

Operation and Maintenance

- Maintenance is of primary importance if wetponds are to continue to function as originally designed. A local government, a designated group such as a homeowners' association, or a property owner shall accept the responsibility for maintaining the structures and the impoundment area. A specific maintenance plan shall be formulated outlining the schedule and scope of maintenance operations.
- The pond should be inspected by the local government annually. The maintenance standards contained in Section 4.6 are measures for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through the annual inspection.
- Site vegetation should be trimmed as necessary to keep the pond free of leaves and to maintain the aesthetic appearance of the site. Slope areas that have become bare should be revegetated and eroded areas should be regraded prior to being revegetated.
- Sediment should be removed when the 1-foot sediment zone is full plus 6 inches. Sediments should be tested for toxicants in compliance with current disposal requirements. Sediments must be disposed in accordance with current local health department requirements and the Minimum Functional Standards for Solid Waste Handling. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G Recommendations for Management of Street Waste for additional guidance.
- Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be properly disposed of. The preferred disposal option is discharge to a sanitary sewer at an approved location. Other disposal options include discharge back into the wetpool facility or the storm sewer system if

certain conditions are met. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G for additional guidance.

Table 10.3.1
Emergent Wetland Plant Species Recommended for Wetponds

Species	Common Name	Notes	Maximum Depth
INUNDATION TO 1-FOOT			
Agrostis exarata[1]	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	to 2 feet
Carex stipata	Sawbeak sedge	Wet ground	
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	to 2 feet
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	to 2 feet
Juncus tenuis	Slender rush	Wet soils, wetland margins	
Oenanthe sarmentosa	Water parsley	Shallow water along stream and pond margins; needs saturated soils all summer	
Scirpus atrocinctus (formerly S. cyperinus)	Woolgrass	Tolerates shallow water; tall clumps	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sagittaria latifolia	Arrowhead		
INUNDATION 1 TO 2 FEET			
Agrostis exarata[1]	Spike bent grass	Prairie to coast	
Alisma plantago-aquatica	Water plantain		
Eleocharis palustris	Spike rush	Margins of ponds, wet meadows	
Glyceria occidentalis	Western mannagrass	Marshes, pond margins	
Juncus effusus	Soft rush	Wet meadows, pastures, wetland margins	
Scirpus microcarpus	Small-fruited bulrush	Wet ground to 18 inches depth	18 inches
Sparganium emmersum	Bur reed	Shallow standing water, saturated soils	
INUNDATION 1 TO 3 FEET			
Carex obnupta	Slough sedge	Wet ground or standing water	1.5 to 3 feet
Beckmania syzigachne[1]	Western sloughgrass	Wet prairie to pond margins	
Scirpus acutus[2]	Hardstem bulrush	Single tall stems, not clumping	to 3 feet
Scirpus validus[2]	Softstem bulrush		
INUNDATION GREATER THAN 3 FEET			
Nuphar polysepalum	Spatterdock	Deep water	3 to 7.5 feet
Nymphaea odorata[1]	White waterlily	Shallow to deep ponds	to 6 feet

Notes:

(1) Non-native species. *Beckmania syzigachne* is native to Oregon. Native species are preferred.

(2) *Scirpus* tubers must be planted shallower for establishment, and protected from foraging waterfowl until established. Emerging aerial stems should project above water surface to allow oxygen transport to the roots.

Primary sources: Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle, *Water Pollution Control Aspects of Aquatic Plants*, 1990. Hortus Northwest, *Wetland Plants for Western Oregon*, Issue 2, 1991. Hitchcock and Cronquist, *Flora of the Pacific Northwest*, 1973.

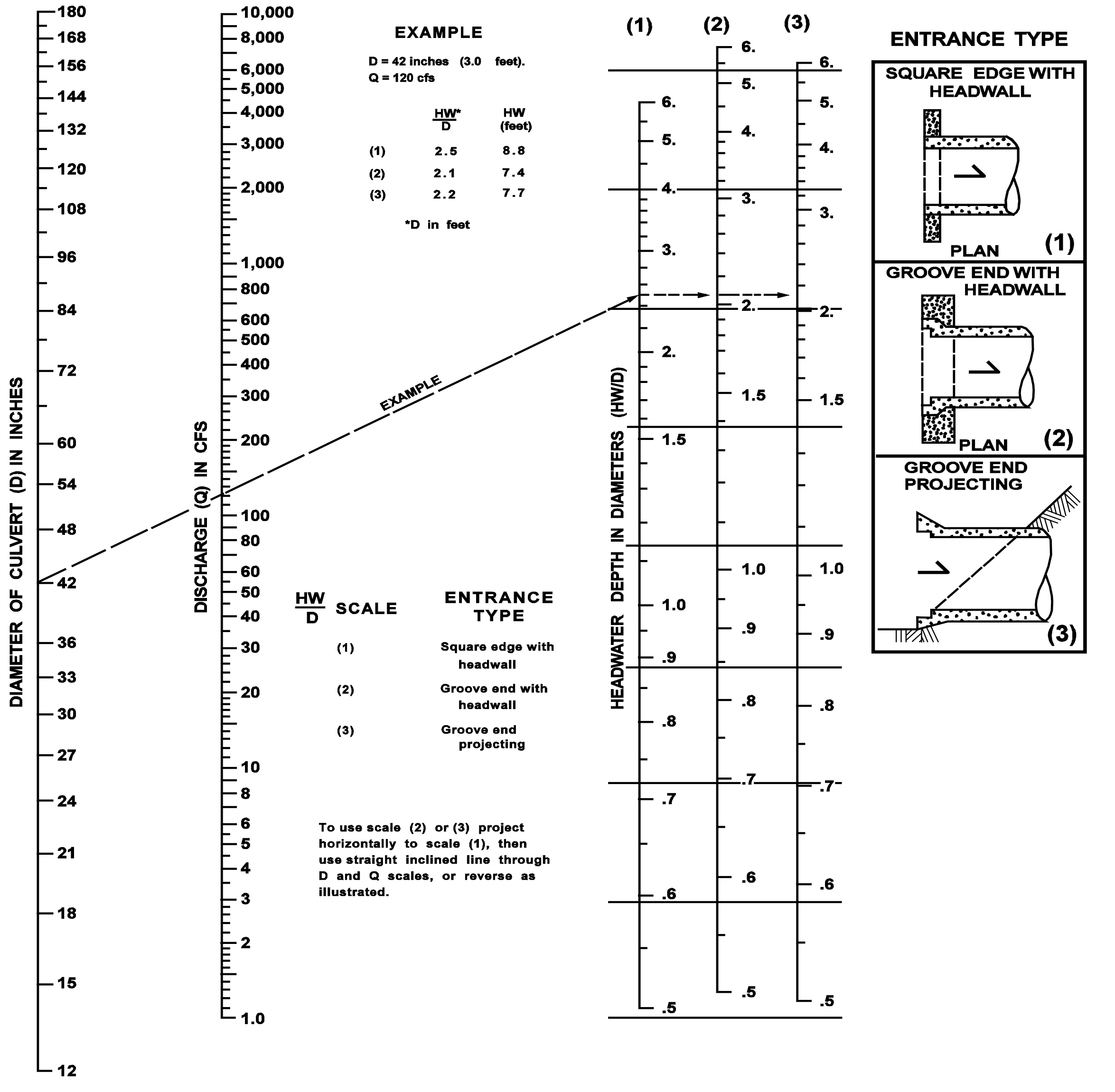


Figure 10.3.2 – Headwater Depth for Smooth Interior Pipe Culverts with Inlet Control

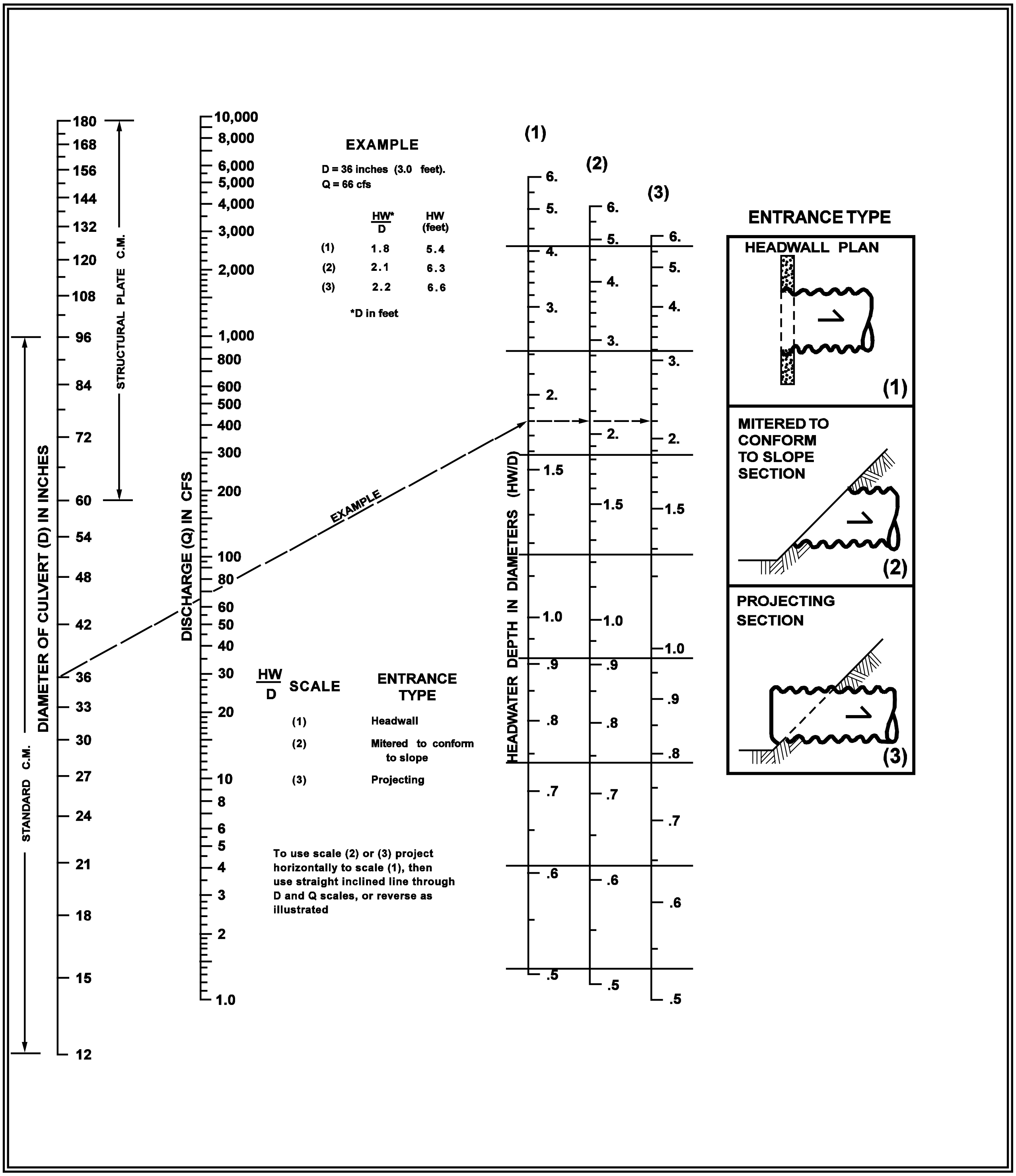


Figure 10.3.3 – Headwater Depth for Corrugated Pipe Culverts with Inlet Control

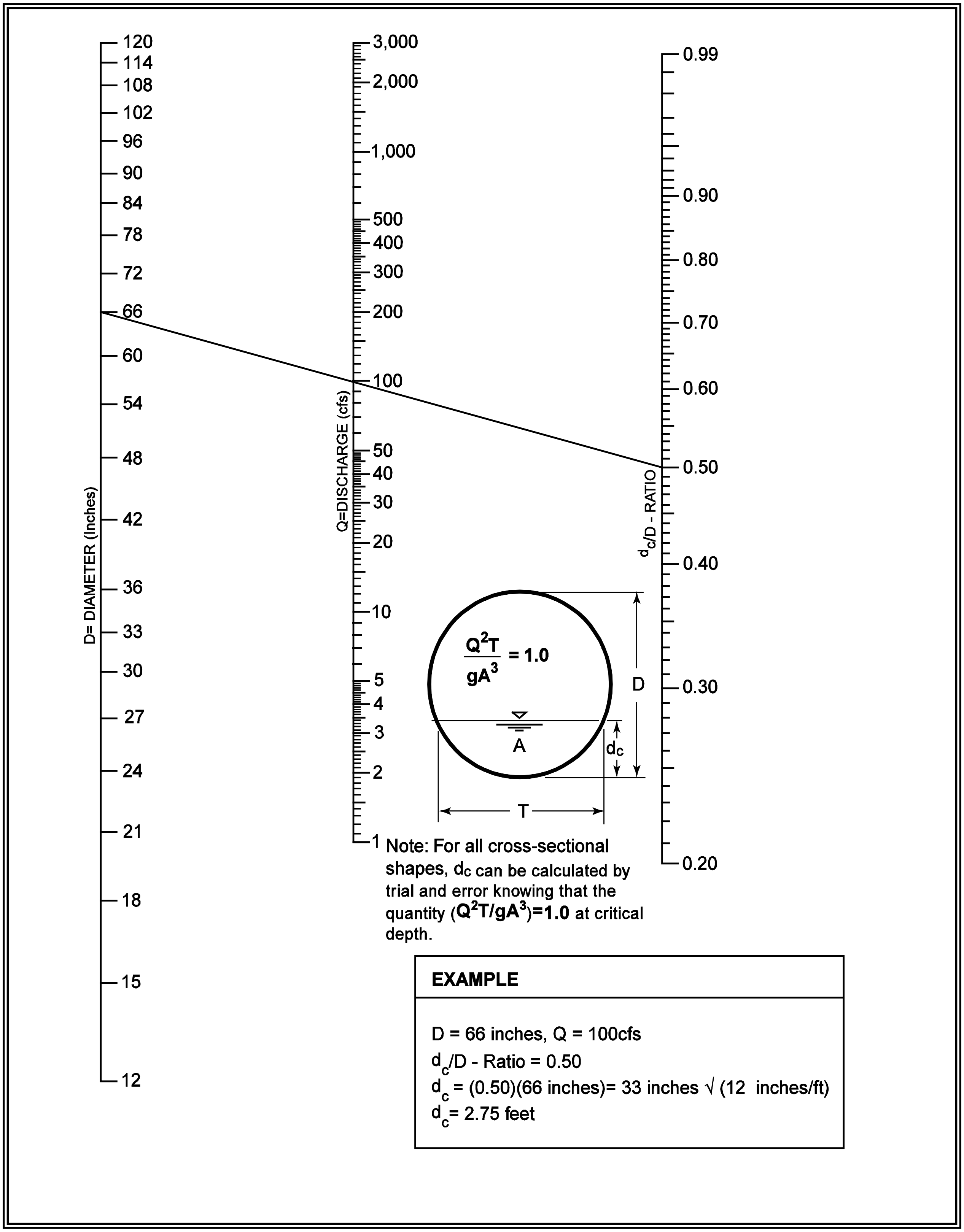


Figure 10.3.4 – Critical Depth of Flow for Circular Culverts

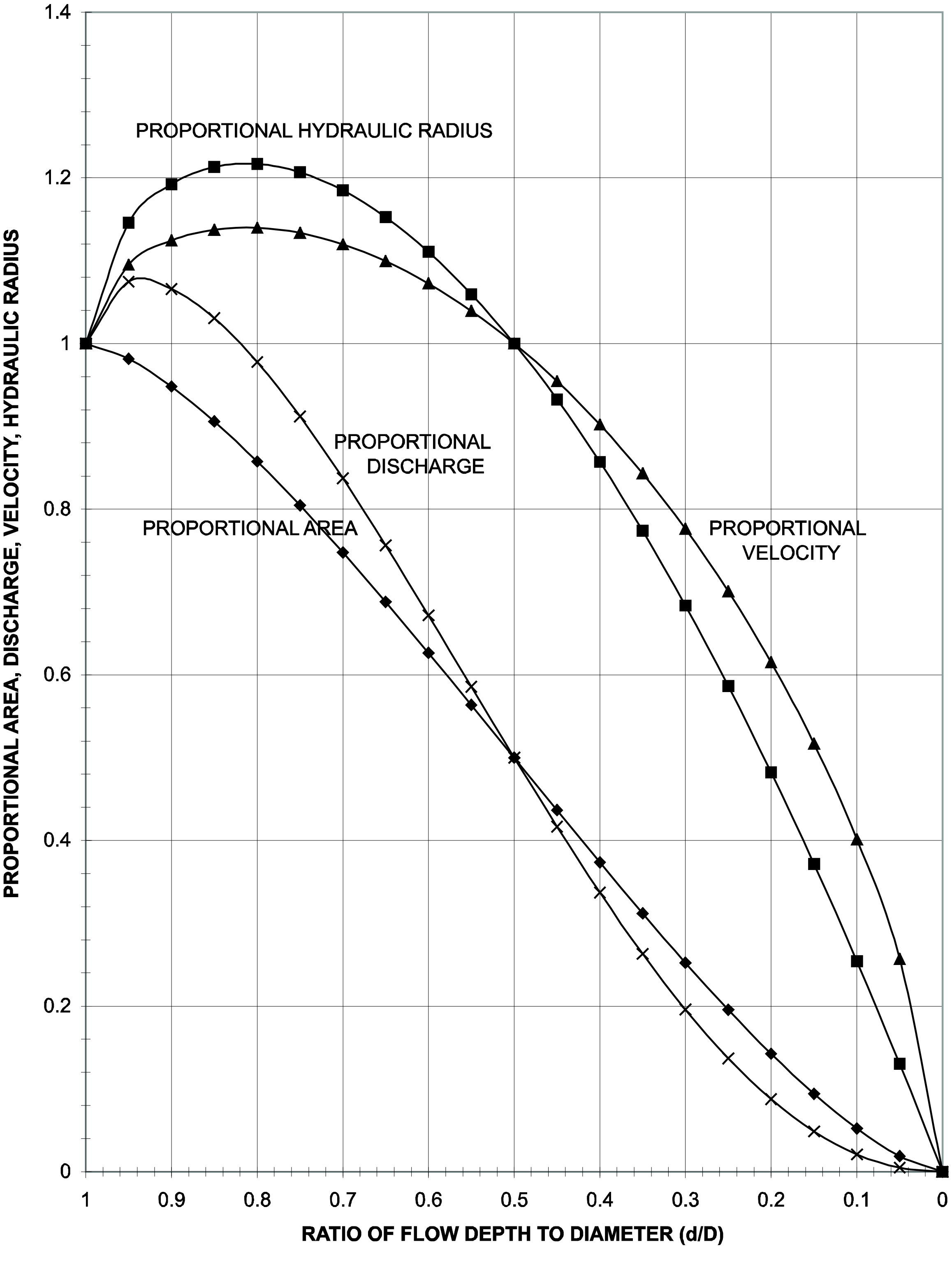


Figure 10.3.5 – Circular Channel Ratios

BMP T10.20: Wetvaults

Purpose and Definition

A wetvault is an underground structure similar in appearance to a detention vault, except that a wetvault has a permanent pool of water (wetpool) which dissipates energy and improves the settling of particulate pollutants (see the wetvault details in Figure 10.3.6). Being underground, the wetvault lacks the biological pollutant removal mechanisms, such as algae uptake, present in surface wetponds.

Applications and Limitations

A wetvault may be used for commercial, industrial, or roadway projects if there are space limitations precluding the use of other treatment BMPs. The use of wetvaults for residential development is highly discouraged. Combined detention and wetvaults are allowed; see BMP T10.40.

A wetvault is believed to be ineffective in removing dissolved pollutants such as soluble phosphorus or metals such as copper. There is also concern that oxygen levels will decline, especially in warm summer months, because of limited contact with air and wind. However, the extent to which this potential problem occurs has not been documented.

Below-ground structures like wetvaults are relatively difficult and expensive to maintain. The need for maintenance is often not seen and as a result routine maintenance does not occur.

If oil control is required for a project, a wetvault may be combined with an API oil/water separator.

Design Criteria

Sizing Procedure

As with wetponds, the primary design factor that determines the removal efficiency of a wetvault is the volume of the wetpool. The larger the volume, the higher the potential for pollutant removal. Performance is also improved by avoiding dead zones (like corners) where little exchange occurs, using large length-to-width ratios, dissipating energy at the inlet, and ensuring that flow rates are uniform to the extent possible and not increased between cells.

The sizing procedure for a wetvault is identical to the sizing procedure for a wetpond. The wetpool volume for the wetvault shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, use the Water Quality Design Storm Volume estimated by an approved continuous runoff model.

Typical design details and concepts for the wetvault are shown in Figure 10.3.6.

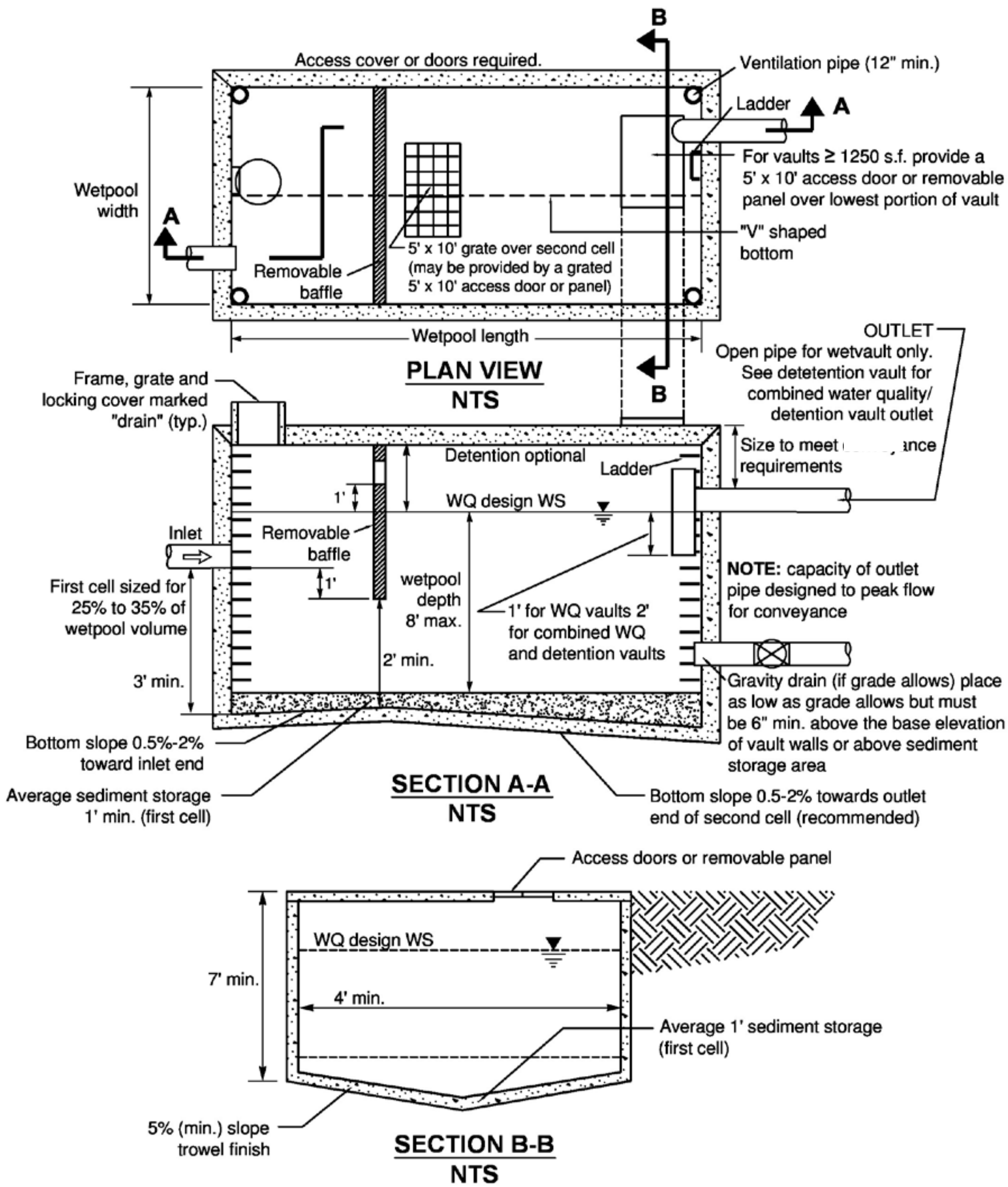


Figure 10.3.6 – Wetvault

Wetpool Geometry

Same as specified for wetponds (see BMP T10.10) except for the following two modifications:

- The sediment storage in the first cell shall be an average of 1-foot. Because of the v-shaped bottom, the depth of sediment storage needed above the bottom of the side wall is roughly proportional to vault width according to the schedule below:

Vault Width	Sediment Depth (from bottom of side wall)
15'	10"
20'	9"
40'	6"
60'	4"

- The second cell shall be a minimum of 3 feet deep since planting cannot be used to prevent resuspension of sediment in shallow water as it can in open ponds.

Vault Structure

- The vault shall be separated into two cells by a wall or a removable baffle. If a wall is used, a 5-foot by 10-foot removable maintenance access must be provided for both cells. If a removable baffle is used, the following criteria apply:

  1) The baffle shall extend from a minimum of 1-foot above the WQ design water surface to a minimum of 1-foot below the invert elevation of the inlet pipe.

  2) The lowest point of the baffle shall be a minimum of 2 feet from the bottom of the vault, and greater if feasible.

- If the vault is less than 2,000 cubic feet (inside dimensions), or if the length-to-width ratio of the vault pool is 5:1 or greater, the baffle or wall may be omitted and the vault may be one-celled.

- The two cells of a wetvault should not be divided into additional subcells by internal walls. If internal structural support is needed, it is preferred that post and pier construction be used to support the vault lid rather than walls. Any walls used within cells must be positioned so as to lengthen, rather than divide, the flowpath.

  Intent: Treatment effectiveness in wetpool facilities is related to the extent to which plug flow is achieved and short-circuiting and dead zones are avoided. Structural walls placed within the cells can interfere with plug flow and create significant dead zones, reducing treatment effectiveness.

- The bottom of the first cell shall be sloped toward the access opening. Slope should be between 0.5 percent (minimum) and 2 percent (maximum). The second cell may be level (longitudinally) sloped toward the outlet, with a high point between the first and second cells. The intent of sloping the bottom is direct the sediment accumulation to the closest access point for maintenance purposes. Sloping the second cell towards the access opening for the first cell is also acceptable.

- The vault bottom shall slope laterally a minimum of 5 percent from each side towards the center, forming a broad "v" to facilitate sediment removal. Note: More than one "v" may be used to minimize vault depth.

  Exception: The Local Plan Approval Authority may allow the vault bottom to be flat if removable panels are provided over the entire vault. Removable panels should be at grade, have stainless steel lifting eyes, and weigh no more than 5 tons per panel.

- The highest point of a vault bottom must be at least 6 inches below the outlet elevation to provide for sediment storage over the entire bottom.
- Provision for passage of flows should the outlet plug shall be provided.
- Wetvaults may be constructed using arch culvert sections provided the top area at the WQ design water surface is, at a minimum, equal to that of a vault with vertical walls designed with an average depth of 6 feet.

  Intent: To prevent decreasing the surface area available for oxygen exchange.

- Wetvaults shall conform with the "Materials" and "Structural Stability" criteria specified for detention vaults in Volume III, Chapter 3.
- Where pipes enter and leave the vault below the WQ design water surface, they shall be sealed using a non-porous, non-shrinking grout.

Inlet and Outlet

- The inlet to the wetvault shall be submerged with the inlet pipe invert a minimum of 3 feet from the vault bottom. The top of the inlet pipe should be submerged at least 1-foot, if possible.

  Intent: The submerged inlet is to dissipate energy of the incoming flow. The distance from the bottom is to minimize resuspension of settled sediments. Alternative inlet designs that accomplish these objectives are acceptable.

- Unless designed as an off-line facility, the capacity of the outlet pipe and available head above the outlet pipe should be designed to convey the 100-year design flow for developed site conditions without overtopping the vault. The available head above the outlet pipe must be a minimum of 6 inches.

- The outlet pipe shall be back-sloped or have tee section, the lower arm of which should extend 1 foot below the WQ design water surface to provide for trapping of oils and floatables in the vault.
- The Local Plan Approval Authority may require a bypass/shutoff valve to enable the vault to be taken offline for maintenance.

Access Requirements

Same as for detention vaults (see Volume III, Section 3.2) except for the following additional requirement for wetvaults:

- A minimum of 50 square feet of grate should be provided over the second cell. For vaults in which the surface area of the second cell is greater than 1,250 square feet, 4 percent of the top should be grated. This requirement may be met by one grate or by many smaller grates distributed over the second cell area. Note: a grated access door can be used to meet this requirement.

  Intent: The grate allows air contact with the wetpool in order to minimize stagnant conditions which can result in oxygen depletion, especially in warm weather.

Access Roads, Right of Way, and Setbacks

Same as for detention vaults (see Volume III, Section 3.2).

Recommended Design Features

The following design features should be incorporated into wetvaults where feasible, but they are not specifically required:

- The floor of the second cell should slope toward the outlet for ease of cleaning.
- The inlet and outlet should be at opposing corners of the vault to increase the flowpath.
- A flow length-to-width ratio greater than 3:1 minimum is desirable.
- Lockable grates instead of solid manhole covers are recommended to increase air contact with the wetpool.
- Galvanized materials shall not be used unless unavoidable.
- The number of inlets to the wetvault should be limited, and the flowpath length should be maximized from inlet to outlet for all inlets to the vault.

Construction Criteria

Sediment that has accumulated in the vault must be removed after construction in the drainage area is complete. If no more than 12 inches of sediment have accumulated after the infrastructure is built, cleaning may be left until after building construction is complete. In general, sediment accumulation from stabilized drainage areas is not expected to exceed an average of 4 inches per year in the first cell. If sediment accumulation is greater than this amount, it will be assumed to be from construction unless it can be shown otherwise.

Operation and Maintenance

- Accumulated sediment and stagnant conditions may cause noxious gases to form and accumulate in the vault. Vault maintenance procedures must meet OSHA confined space entry requirements, which include clearly marking entrances to confined space areas. This may be accomplished by hanging a removable sign in the access riser(s), just under the access lid.
- Facilities should be inspected by the local government annually. The maintenance standards contained in Section 4.6 of this volume are measures for determining if maintenance actions are required as identified through the annual inspection.
- Sediment should be removed when the 1-foot sediment zone is full plus 6 inches. Sediments should be tested for toxicants in compliance with current disposal requirements. Sediments must be disposed in accordance with current local health department requirements and the Minimum Functional Standards for Solid Waste Handling. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G Recommendations for Management of Street Waste for additional guidance.
- Any standing water removed during the maintenance operation must be properly disposed of. The preferred disposal option is discharge to a sanitary sewer at an approved location. Other disposal options include discharge back into the wetpool facility or the storm sewer system if certain conditions are met. See Volume IV, Appendix IV-G for additional guidance.

Modifications for Combining with a Baffle Oil/Water Separator

If the project site is a high-use site and a wetvault is proposed, the vault may be combined with a baffle oil/water separator to meet the runoff treatment requirements with one facility rather than two. Structural modifications and added design criteria are given below. However, the maintenance requirements for baffle oil/water separators must be adhered to, in addition to those for a wetvault. This will result in more frequent inspection and cleaning than for a wetvault used only for TSS removal. See Chapter 11 for information on maintenance of baffle oil/water separators.

1. The sizing procedures for the baffle oil/water separator (Chapter 11) should be run as a check to ensure the vault is large enough. If the oil/water separator sizing procedures result in a larger vault size, increase the wetvault size to match.
2. An oil retaining baffle shall be provided in the second cell near the vault outlet. The baffle should not contain a high-flow overflow, or else the retained oil will be washed out of the vault during large storms.
3. The vault shall have a minimum length-to-width ratio of 5:1.

4. The vault shall have a design water depth-to-width ratio of between 1:3 to 1:2.
5. The vault shall be watertight and shall be coated to protect from corrosion.
6. Separator vaults shall have a shutoff mechanism on the outlet pipe to prevent oil discharges during maintenance and to provide emergency shut-off capability in case of a spill. A valve box and riser shall also be provided.
7. Wetvaults used as oil/water separators must be off-line and must bypass flows greater than the off-line WQ design flow multiplied by the off-line ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6b.

   Intent: This design minimizes the entrainment and/or emulsification of previously captured oil during very high flow events.

BMP T10.30: Stormwater Treatment Wetlands

Purpose and Definition

In land development situations, wetlands are usually constructed for two main reasons: to replace or mitigate impacts when natural wetlands are filled or impacted by development (mitigation wetlands), and to treat stormwater runoff (stormwater treatment wetlands). Stormwater treatment wetlands are shallow man-made ponds that are designed to treat stormwater through the biological processes associated with emergent aquatic plants (see the stormwater wetland details in Figure 10.3.7 and Figure 10.3.8.

Wetlands created to mitigate disturbance impacts, such as filling, may not also be used as stormwater treatment facilities. This is because of the different, incompatible functions of the two kinds of wetlands. Mitigation wetlands are intended to function as full replacement habitat for fish and wildlife, providing the same functions and harboring the same species diversity and biotic richness as the wetlands they replace. Stormwater treatment wetlands are used to capture and transform pollutants, just as wetponds are, and over time pollutants will concentrate in the sediment. This is not a healthy environment for aquatic life. Stormwater treatment wetlands are used to capture pollutants in a managed environment so that they will not reach natural wetlands and other ecologically important habitats. In addition, vegetation must occasionally be harvested and sediment dredged in stormwater treatment wetlands, further interfering with use for wildlife habitat.

In general, stormwater wetlands perform well to remove sediment, metals, and pollutants that bind to humic or organic acids. Phosphorus removal in stormwater wetlands is highly variable.

Applications and Limitations

This stormwater wetland design occupies about the same surface area as wetponds, but has the potential to be better integrated aesthetically into a site because of the abundance of emergent aquatic vegetation. The most critical factor for a successful design is the provision of an adequate supply of water for most of the year. Careful planning is needed to be sure sufficient water will be retained to sustain good wetland plant growth. Since water depths are shallower than in wetponds, water loss by evaporation is an important concern. Stormwater wetlands are a good WQ facility choice in areas with high winter ground water levels.

Design Criteria

When used for stormwater treatment, stormwater wetlands employ some of the same design features as wetponds. However, instead of gravity settling being the dominant treatment process, pollutant removal mediated by aquatic vegetation and the microbiological community associated with that vegetation becomes the dominant treatment process. Thus when designing wetlands, water volume is not the dominant design criteria. Rather, factors which affect plant vigor and biomass are the primary concerns.

Sizing Procedure

Step 1: The volume of a basic wetpond is used as a template for sizing the stormwater wetland. The design volume is the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, use the Water Quality Design Storm Volume estimated by an approved continuous runoff model.

Step 2: Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland. The surface area of the wetland shall be the same as the top area of a wetpond sized for the same site conditions. Calculate the surface area of the stormwater wetland by using the volume from Step 1 and dividing by the average water depth (use 3 feet).

Step 3: Determine the surface area of the first cell of the stormwater wetland. Use the volume determined from Criterion 2 under "Wetland Geometry", and the actual depth of the first cell.

Step 4: Determine the surface area of the wetland cell. Subtract the surface area of the first cell (Step 3) from the total surface area (Step 2).

Step 5: Determine water depth distribution in the second cell. Decide if the top of the dividing berm will be at the surface or submerged (designer's choice). Adjust the distribution of water depths in the second cell according to Criterion 8 under "Wetland Geometry" below. Note: This will result in a facility that holds less volume than that determined in Step 1 above. This is acceptable.

Intent: The surface area of the stormwater wetland is set to be roughly equivalent to that of a wetpond designed for the same site so as not to discourage use of this option.

Step 6: Choose plants. See Table 10.3.1 for a list of plants recommended for wetpond water depth zones, or consult a wetland scientist.

Wetland Geometry

1. Stormwater wetlands shall consist of two cells, a presettling cell and a wetland cell.
2. The presettling cell shall contain approximately 33 percent of the wetpool volume calculated in Step 1 above.
3. The depth of the presettling cell shall be between 4 feet (minimum) and 8 feet (maximum), excluding sediment storage.
4. One-foot of sediment storage shall be provided in the presettling cell.
5. The wetland cell shall have an average water depth of about 1.5 feet (plus or minus 3 inches).
6. The "berm" separating the two cells shall be shaped such that its downstream side gradually slopes to form the second shallow wetland cell (see the section view in Figure 10.3.7). Alternatively, the second cell may be graded naturalistically from the top of the dividing berm (see Criterion 8 below).
7. The top of berm shall be either at the WQ design water surface or submerged 1-foot below the WQ design water surface, as with wetponds. Correspondingly, the side slopes of the berm must meet the following criteria:
    a. If the top of berm is at the WQ design water surface, the berm side slopes shall be no steeper than 3H:1V.
    b. If the top of berm is submerged 1-foot, the upstream side slope may be up to 2H:1V. If the berm is at the water surface, then for safety reasons, its slope should be not greater than 3:1, just as the pond banks should not be greater than 3:1 if the pond is not fenced. A steeper slope (2:1 rather than 3:1) is allowable if the berm is submerged in 1 foot of water. If submerged, the berm is not considered accessible, and the steeper slope is allowable.
8. Two examples are provided for grading the bottom of the wetland cell. One example is a shallow, evenly graded slope from the upstream to the downstream edge of the wetland cell (see Figure 10.3.7). The second example is a "naturalistic" alternative, with the specified range of depths intermixed throughout the second cell (see Figure 10.3.8). A distribution of depths shall be provided in the wetland cell depending on whether the dividing berm is at the water surface or submerged (see Table 10.3.2 below). The maximum depth is 2.5 feet in either configuration. Other configurations within the wetland geometry constraints listed above may be approved by the Local Plan Approval Authority.

Table 10.3.2 Distribution of Depths in Wetland Cell			
Dividing Berm at WQ Design Water Surface		Dividing Berm Submerged 1-Foot	
Depth Range (feet)	Percent	Depth Range (feet)	Percent
0.1 to 1	25	1 to 1.5	40
1 to 2	55	1.5 to 2	40
2 to 2.5	20	2 to 2.5	20

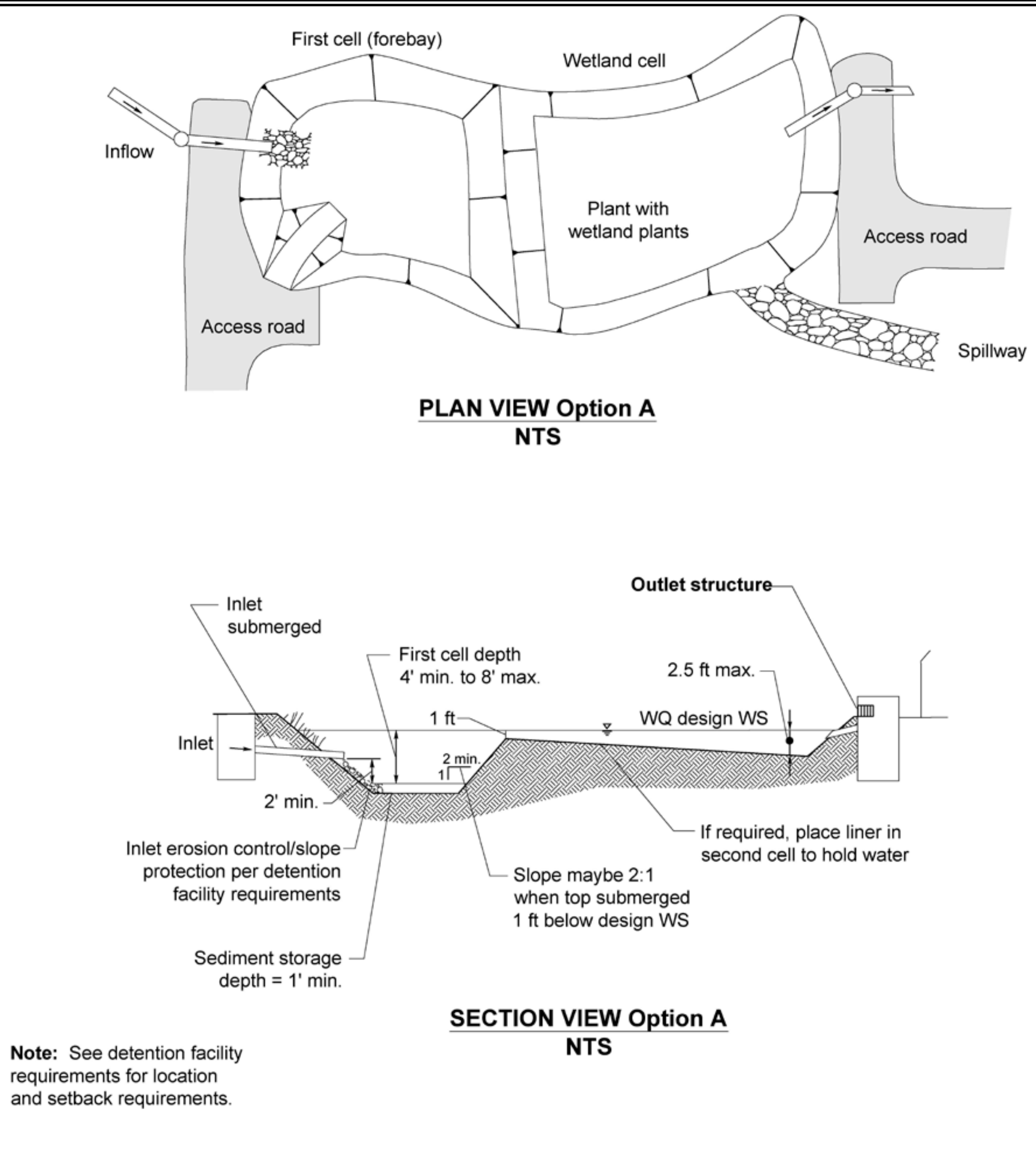


Figure 10.3.7 – Stormwater Wetland — Option One

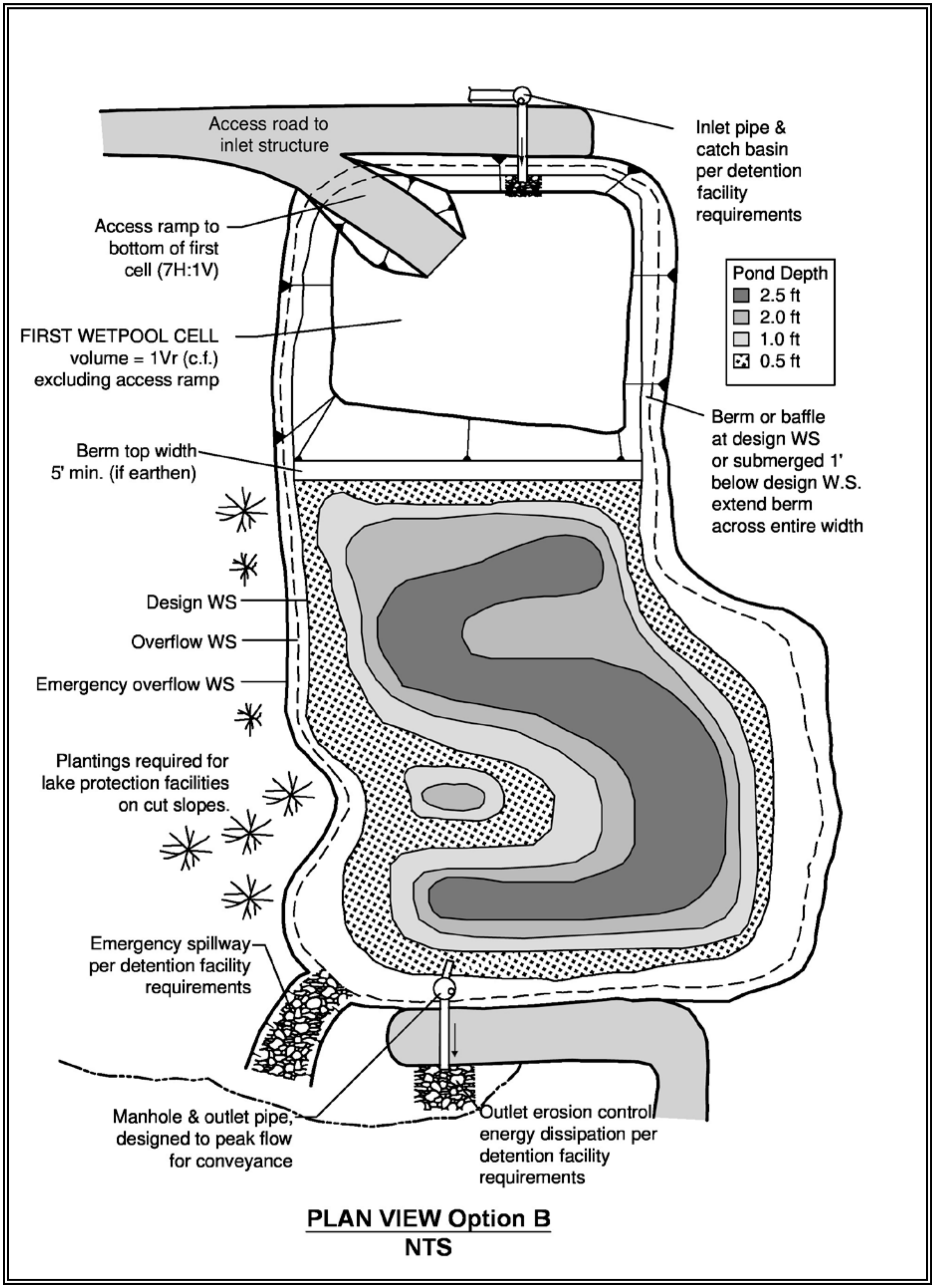


Figure 10.3.8 – Stormwater Wetland — Option Two

Lining Requirements

Constructed wetlands are not intended to infiltrate. In infiltrative soils, both cells of the stormwater wetland shall be lined. To determine whether a low-permeability liner or a treatment liner is required, determine whether the following conditions will be met. If soil permeability will allow sufficient water retention, lining may be waived.

1. The second cell must retain water for at least 10 months of the year.
2. The first cell must retain at least three feet of water year-round.
3. A complete precipitation record shall be used when establishing these conditions. Evapotranspiration losses shall be taken into account as well as infiltration losses.

Intent: Many wetland plants can adapt to periods of summer drought, so a limited drought period is allowed in the second cell. This may allow a treatment liner rather than a low permeability liner to be used for the second cell. The first cell must retain water year-round in order for the presettling function to be effective.

- If a low permeability liner is used, a minimum of 18 inches of native soil amended with good topsoil or compost (one part compost mixed with 3 parts native soil) must be placed over the liner. For geomembrane liners, a soil depth of 3 feet is recommended to prevent damage to the liner during planting. Hydric soils are not required.

The criteria for liners given in Chapter 4 must be observed.

Inlet and Outlet

Same as for wetponds (see BMP T10.10).

Access and Setbacks

- Location of the stormwater wetland relative to site constraints (e.g., buildings, property lines) shall be the same as for detention ponds (see Volume III). See Section 4.3 for typical setback requirements for water quality facilities.
- Access and maintenance roads shall be provided and designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume III). Access and maintenance roads shall extend to both the wetland inlet and outlet structures. An access ramp (7H minimum:1V) shall be provided to the bottom of the first cell unless all portions of the cell can be reached and sediment loaded from the top of the wetland side slopes.
- If the dividing berm is also used for access, it should be built to sustain loads of up to 80,000 pounds.

Planting Requirements

The wetland cell shall be planted with emergent wetland plants following the recommendations given in Table 10.3.1 or the recommendations of a wetland specialist. Note: Cattails (Typha latifolia) are not recommended. They tend to escape to natural wetlands and crowd out other species. In addition, the shoots die back each fall and will result in oxygen depletion in the wetpool unless they are removed.

Construction Criteria

- Construction and maintenance considerations are the same as for wetponds.
- Construction of the naturalistic alternative (Option 2) can be easily done by first excavating the entire area to the 1.5-foot average depth. Then soil subsequently excavated to form deeper areas can be deposited to raise other areas until the distribution of depths indicated in the design is achieved.

Operation and Maintenance

- Wetlands should be inspected at least twice per year during the first three years during both growing and non-growing seasons to observe plant species presence, abundance, and condition; bottom contours and water depths relative to plans; and sediment, outlet, and buffer conditions.
- Maintenance should be scheduled around sensitive wildlife and vegetation seasons.
- Plants may require watering, physical support, mulching, weed removal, or replanting during the first three years.
- Nuisance plant species should be removed and desirable species should be replanted.
- The effectiveness of harvesting for nutrient control is not well documented. There are many drawbacks to harvesting, including possible damage to the wetlands and the inability to remove nutrients in the below-ground biomass. If harvesting is practiced, it should be done in the late summer.

Resource Material

King County Surface Water Design Manual, September 1998.

Schueler, Thomas. Design of Stormwater Wetland Systems, Guidelines for Creating Diverse and Effective Stormwater Wetland Systems in the Mid-Atlantic Region, October, 1992.

Kadlec, Robert and Robert L. Knight. Treatment Wetlands. 1996.

BMP T10.40: Combined Detention and Wetpool Facilities

Purpose and Definition

Combined detention and WQ wetpool facilities have the appearance of a detention facility but contain a permanent pool of water as well. The following design procedures, requirements, and recommendations cover differences in the design of the stand-alone WQ facility when combined with detention storage. The following combined facilities are addressed:

- Detention/wetpond (basic and large)
- Detention/wetvault
- Detention/stormwater wetland.

There are two sizes of the combined wetpond, a basic and a large, but only a basic size for the combined wetvault and combined stormwater wetland. The facility sizes (basic and large) are related to the pollutant removal goals. See Chapter 3 for more information about treatment performance goals.

Applications and Limitations

Combined detention and water quality facilities are very efficient for sites that also have detention requirements. The water quality facility may often be placed beneath the detention facility without increasing the facility surface area. However, the fluctuating water surface of the live storage will create unique challenges for plant growth and for aesthetics alike.

The basis for pollutant removal in combined facilities is the same as in the stand-alone WQ facilities. However, in the combined facility, the detention function creates fluctuating water levels and added turbulence. For simplicity, the positive effect of the extra live storage volume and the negative effect of increased turbulence are assumed to balance, and are thus ignored when sizing the wetpool volume. For the combined detention/stormwater wetland, criteria that limit the extent of water level fluctuation are specified to better ensure survival of the wetland plants.

Unlike the wetpool volume, the live storage component of the facility should be provided above the seasonal high water table.

Combined Detention and Wetpond (Basic and Large)

Typical design details and concepts for a combined detention and wetpond are shown in Figures 10.3.9 and 10.3.10. The detention portion of the facility shall meet the design criteria and sizing procedures set forth in Volume 3.

Sizing Procedure

The sizing procedure for combined detention and wetponds are identical to those outlined for wetponds and for detention facilities. The wetpool volume for a combined facility shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, use the Water Quality Design Storm Volume estimated by an approved continuous runoff model. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume III and guidance documents for use of an approved continuous runoff model to size the detention portion of the pond.

Detention and Wetpool Geometry

- The wetpool and sediment storage volumes shall not be included in the required detention volume.
- The "Wetpool Geometry" criteria for wetponds (see BMP T10.10) shall apply with the following modifications/clarifications:

Criterion 1: The permanent pool may be made shallower to take up most of the pond bottom, or deeper and positioned to take up only a limited portion of the bottom. Note, however, that having the first wetpool cell at the inlet allows for more efficient sediment management than if the cell is moved away from the inlet. Wetpond criteria governing water depth must, however, still be met. See Figure 10.3.11 for two possibilities for wetpool cell placement.

Intent: This flexibility in positioning cells is provided to allow for multiple use options, such as volleyball courts in live storage areas in the drier months.

Criterion 2: The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with the detention sediment storage requirement.

Berms, Baffles, and Slopes

Same as for wetponds (see BMP T10.10).

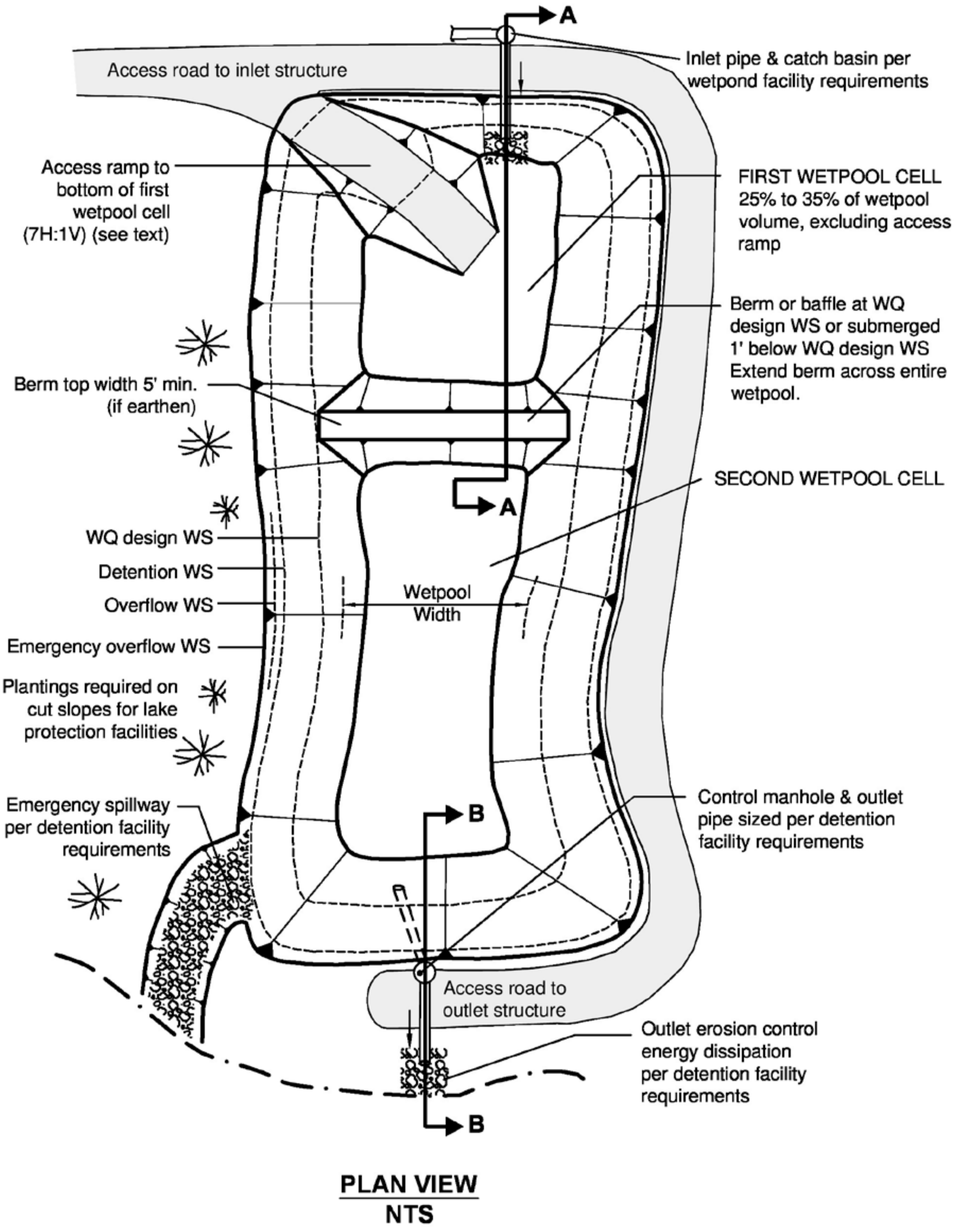


Figure 10.3.9 – Combined Detention and Wetpond

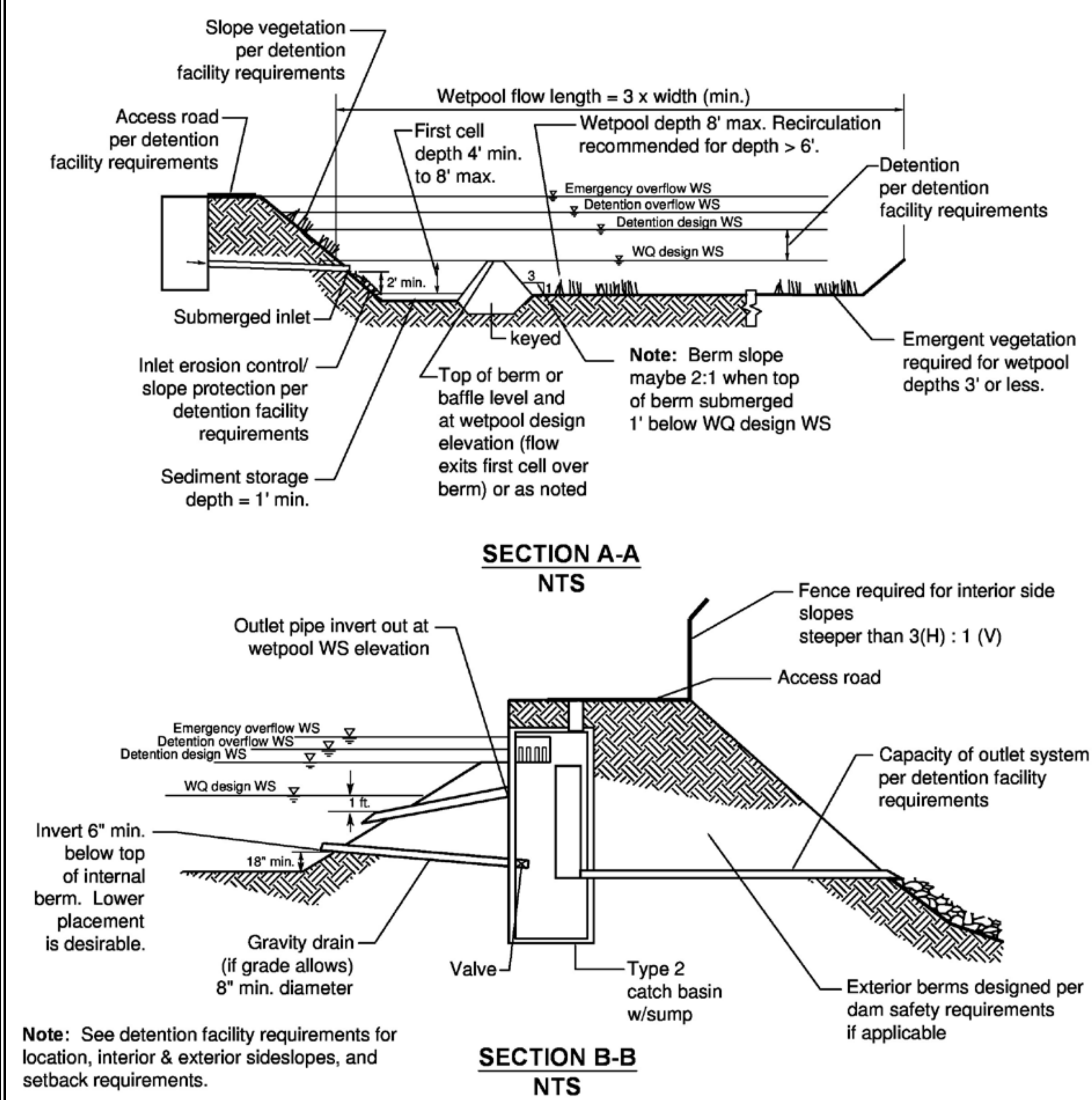
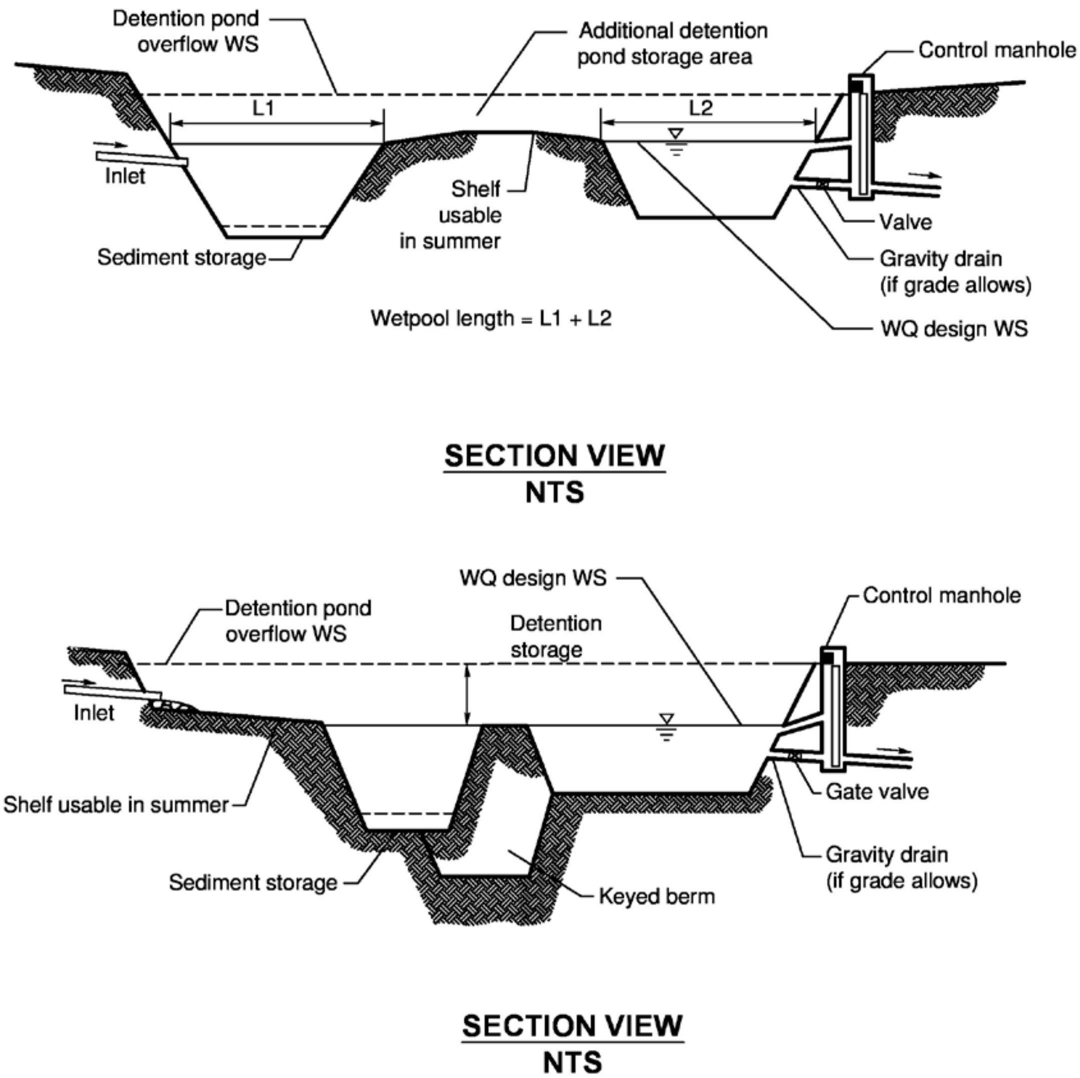


Figure 10.3.10 – Combined Detention and Wetpond (Continued)



Note: These examples show how the combined detention/wetpool can be configured to allow for "shelves" for joint use opportunities in dry weather. Other options may also be acceptable.

Figure 10.3.11 – Alternative Configurations of Detention and Wetpool Areas

Inlet and Outlet

The "Inlet and Outlet" criteria for wetponds shall apply with the following modifications:

- A sump must be provided in the outlet structure of combined ponds.
- The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe shall be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume III).

Access and Setbacks

Same as for wetponds.

Planting Requirements

Same as for wetponds.

Combined Detention and Wetvault

The sizing procedure for combined detention and wetvaults is identical to those outlined for wetvaults and for detention facilities. The wetvault volume for a combined facility shall be equal to or greater than the total volume of runoff from the 6-month, 24-hour storm event. Alternatively, use the Water Quality Design Storm Volume estimated by an approved continuous runoff model to size the wetpool portion of vault. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume 3 and guidance documents for use of an approved continuous runoff model to size the detention portion of the vault.

The design criteria for detention vaults and wetvaults must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications:

- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell shall average 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention vaults does not need to be added to this, but 6 inches of sediment storage must be added to the second cell to comply with detention vault sediment storage requirements.
- The oil retaining baffle shall extend a minimum of 2 feet below the WQ design water surface.

Intent: The greater depth of the baffle in relation to the WQ design water surface compensates for the greater water level fluctuations experienced in the combined vault. The greater depth is deemed prudent to better ensure that separated oils remain within the vault, even during storm events.

Note: If a vault is used for detention as well as water quality control, the facility may not be modified to function as a baffle oil/water separator as allowed for wetvaults in BMP T10.20. This is because the added pool fluctuation in the combined vault does not allow for the quiescent conditions needed for oil separation.

Combined Detention and Stormwater Wetland

The sizing procedure for combined detention and stormwater wetlands is identical to those outlined for stormwater wetlands and for detention facilities. Follow the procedure specified in BMP T10.30 to determine the stormwater wetland size. Follow the standard procedure specified in Volume III to size the detention portion of the wetland.

The design criteria for detention ponds and stormwater wetlands must both be met, except for the following modifications or clarifications:

- The "Wetland Geometry" criteria for stormwater wetlands (see BMP T10.30) are modified as follows:
- The minimum sediment storage depth in the first cell is 1-foot. The 6 inches of sediment storage required for detention ponds does not need to be added to this, nor does the 6 inches of sediment storage in the second cell of detention ponds need to be added.

Intent: Since emergent plants are limited to shallower water depths, the deeper water created before sediments accumulate is considered detrimental to robust emergent growth. Therefore, sediment storage is confined to the first cell which functions as a presettling cell.

The "Inlet and Outlet" criteria for wetponds shall apply with the following modifications:

- A sump must be provided in the outlet structure of combined facilities.
- The detention flow restrictor and its outlet pipe shall be designed according to the requirements for detention ponds (see Volume III).

  The "Planting Requirements" for stormwater wetlands are modified to use the following plants which are better adapted to water level fluctuations:

Scirpus acutus (hardstem bulrush)	2 - 6' depth
Scirpus microcarpus (small-fruited bulrush)	1 - 2.5' depth
Sparganium emersum (burreed)	1 - 2' depth
Sparganium eurycarpum (burreed)	1 - 2' depth
Veronica sp. (marsh speedwell)	0 - 1' depth

  In addition, the shrub Spirea douglasii (Douglas spirea) may be used in combined facilities.

  Water Level Fluctuation Restrictions: The difference between the WQ design water surface and the maximum water surface associated with the 2-year runoff shall not be greater than 3 feet. If this restriction cannot be met, the size of the stormwater wetland must be increased. The additional area may be placed in the first cell, second cell, or both. If placed in the second cell, the additional area need not be planted with wetland vegetation or counted in calculating the average depth.

Intent: This criterion is designed to dampen the most extreme water level fluctuations expected in combined facilities to better ensure that fluctuation-tolerant wetland plants will be able to survive in the facility. It is not intended to protect native wetland plant communities and is not to be applied to natural wetlands.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 11. - Oil and Water Separators

This chapter provides a discussion of oil and water separators, including their application and design criteria. BMPs are described for baffle type and coalescing plate separators.

11.1 Purpose of Oil and Water Separators

To remove oil and other water-insoluble hydrocarbons, and settleable solids from stormwater runoff.

11.2 Description

Oil and water separators are typically the American Petroleum Institute (API) (also called baffle type) (American Petroleum Institute, 1990) or the coalescing plate (CP) type using a gravity mechanism for separation. See Figures 11.2.1 and 11.2.2. Oil removal separators typically consist of three bays; forebay, separator section, and the afterbay. The CP separators need considerably less space for separation of the floating oil due to the shorter travel distances between parallel plates. A spill control (SC) separator (Figure 11.2.3) is a simple catchbasin with a T-inlet for temporarily trapping small volumes of oil. The spill control separator is included here for comparison only and is not designed for, or to be used for treatment purposes.

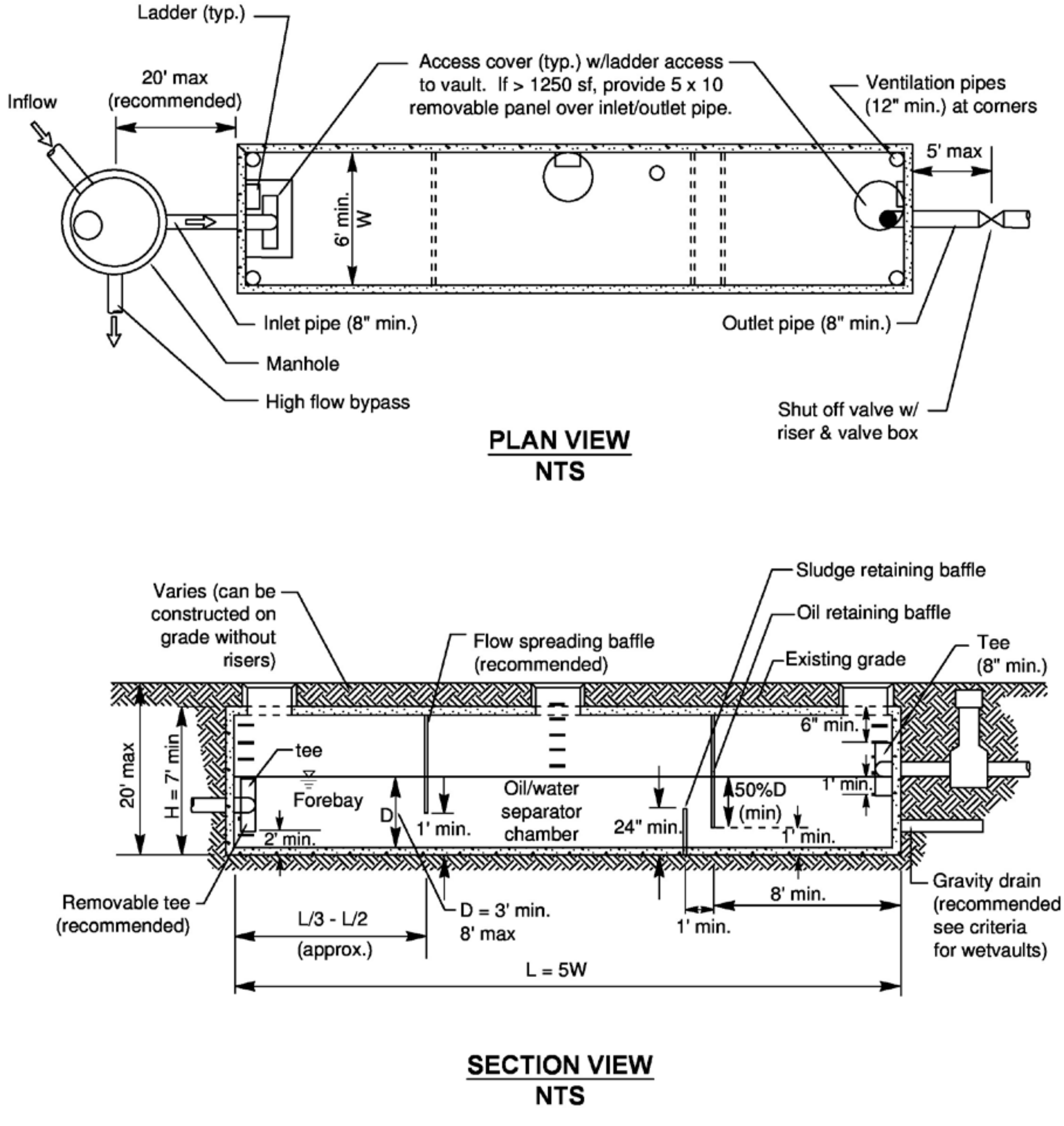


Figure 11.2.1 – API (Baffle Type) Separator

Source: King County (reproduced with permission)

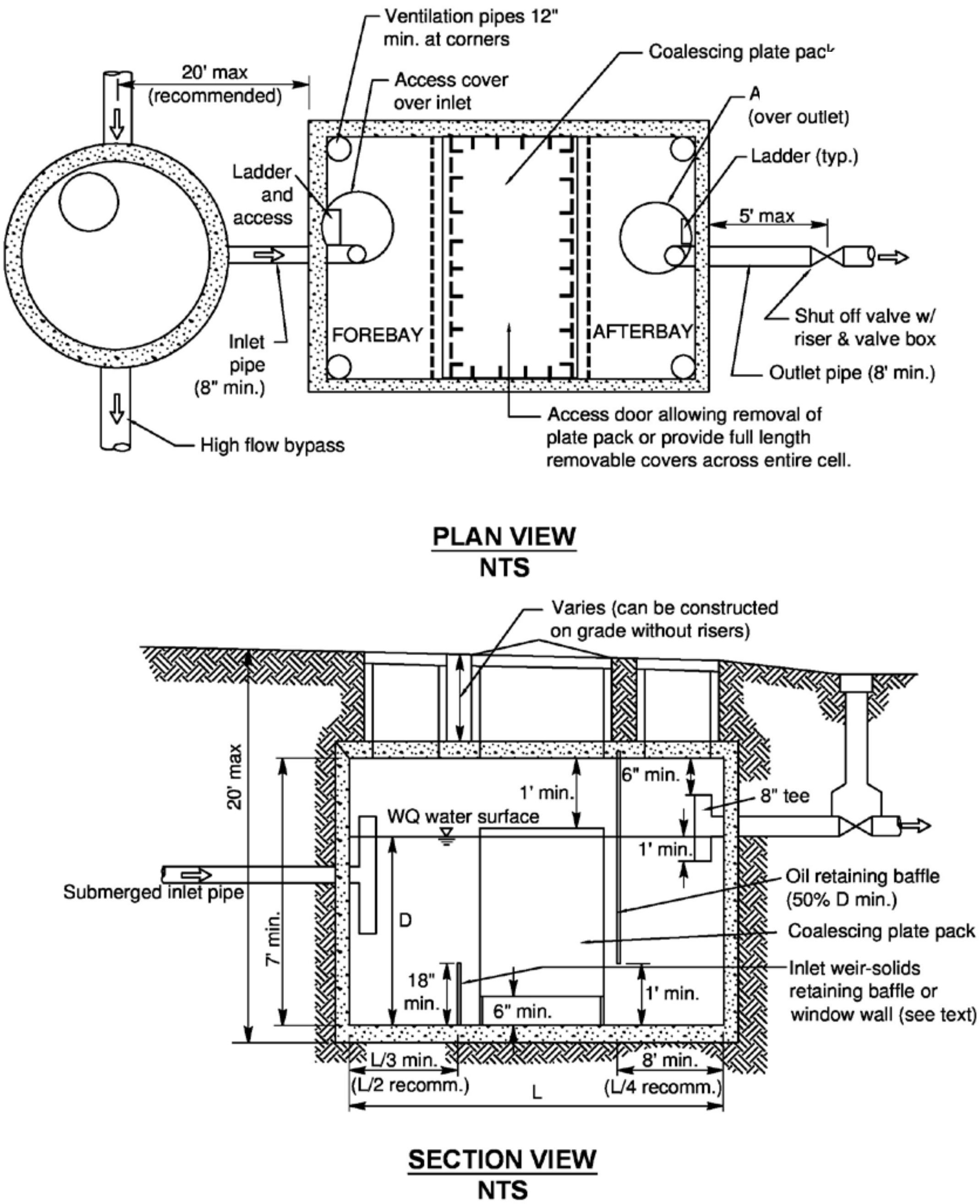


Figure 11.2.2 – Coalescing Plate Separator

Source: King County (reproduced with permission)

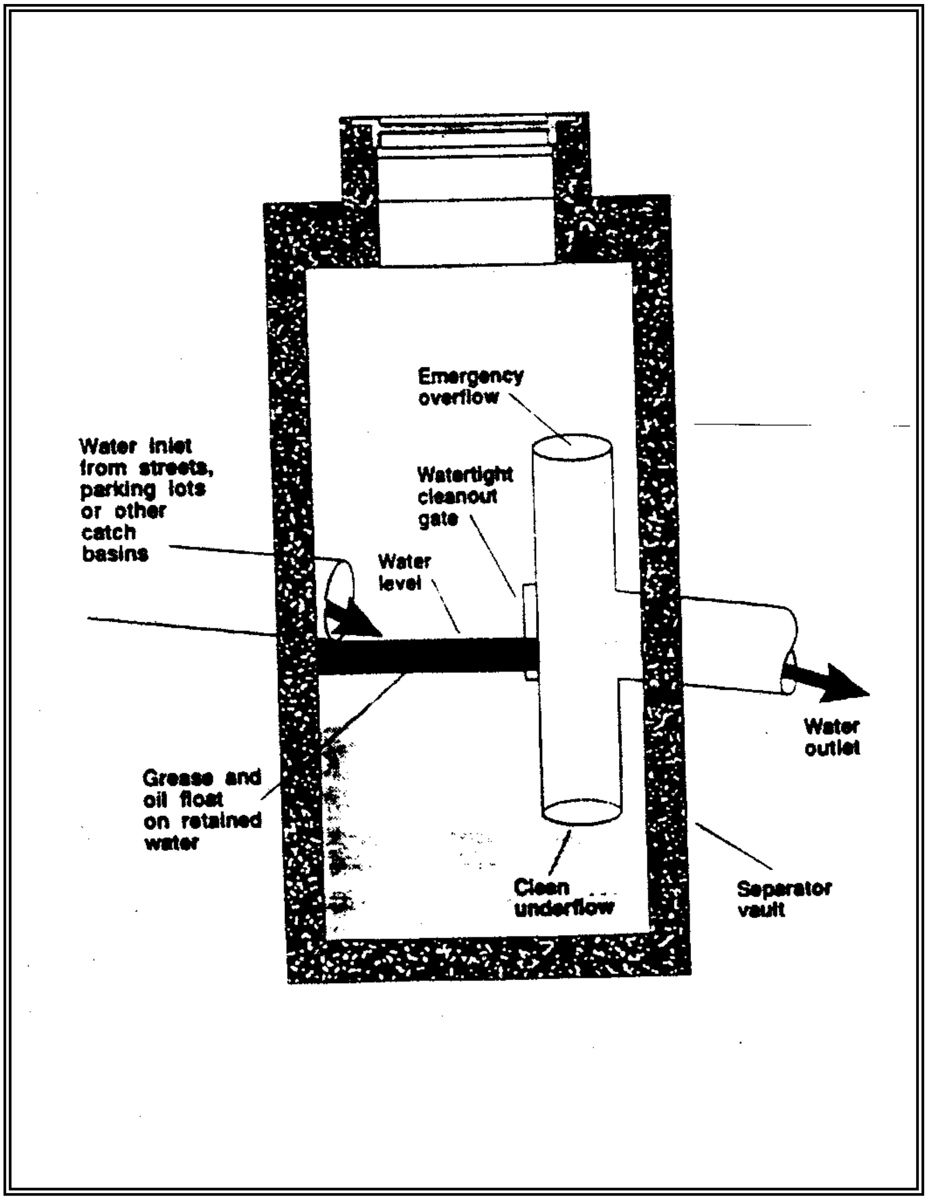


Figure 11.2.3 – Spill Control Separator (not for oil treatment)

Source: 1992 Ecology Manual

11.3 Performance Objectives

Oil and water separators should be designed to remove oil and TPH down to 15 mg/L at any time and 10 mg/L on a 24-hr average, and produce a discharge that does not cause an ongoing or recurring visible sheen in the stormwater discharge, or in the receiving water. (See also Chapter 3)

11.4 Applications/Limitations

The following are potential applications of oil and water separators where free oil is expected to be present at treatable high concentrations and sediment will not overwhelm the separator. (Seattle METRO, 1990; Watershed Protection Techniques, 1994; King County Surface Water Management, 1998) For low concentrations of oil, other treatments may be more applicable. These include sand filters and emerging technologies.

- Commercial and industrial areas including petroleum storage yards, vehicle maintenance facilities, manufacturing areas, airports, utility areas (water, electric, gas), and fueling stations.(King County Surface Water Management, 1998)
- Facilities that would require oil control BMPs under the high-use site threshold described in Chapter 2 including parking lots at convenience stores, fast food restaurants, grocery stores, shopping malls, discount warehouse stores, banks, truck fleets, auto and truck dealerships, and delivery services. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998)
- Without intense maintenance oil/water separators may not be sufficiently effective in achieving oil and TPH removal down to required levels.
- Pretreatment should be considered if the level of TSS in the inlet flow would cause clogging or otherwise impair the long-term efficiency of the separator.
- For inflows from small drainage areas (fueling stations, maintenance shops, etc.) a coalescing plate (CP) type separator is typically considered, due to space limitations. However, if plugging of the plates is likely, then a new design basis for the baffle type API separator may be considered on an experimental basis. (See 11.6 Design Criteria)

11.5 Site Suitability

Consider the following site characteristics:

- Sufficient land area
- Adequate TSS control or pretreatment capability
- Compliance with environmental objectives
- Adequate influent flow attenuation and/or bypass capability

Sufficient access for operation and maintenance (O & M)

11.6 Design Criteria-General Considerations

There is concern that oil/water separators used for stormwater treatment have not performed to expectations (Watershed Protection Techniques, 1994; Schueler, Thomas R., 1992). Therefore, emphasis should be given to proper application (see Section 11.4), design, O & M, (particularly sludge and oil removal) and prevention of CP fouling and plugging (US Army of Engineers, 1994). Other treatment systems, such as sand filters and emerging technologies, should be considered for the removal of insoluble oil and TPH.

The following are design criteria applicable to API and CP oil/water separators:

- If practicable, determine oil/grease (or TPH) and TSS concentrations, lowest temperature, pH; and empirical oil rise rates in the runoff, and the viscosity, and specific gravity of the oil. Also determine whether the oil is emulsified or dissolved. (Washington State Department of Ecology, 1995). Do not use oil/water separators for the removal of dissolved or emulsified oils such as coolants, soluble lubricants, glycols, and alcohols.
- Locate the separator off-line and bypass the incremental portion of flows that exceed the off-line 15-minute, Water Quality design flow rate multiplied by the ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6b of this Volume. If it is necessary to locate the separator on-line, try to minimize the size of the area needing oil control, and use the on-line water quality design flow rate multiplied by the ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6a.
- Use only impervious conveyances for oil contaminated stormwater.
- Specify appropriate performance tests after installation and shakedown, and/or certification by a professional engineer that the separator is functioning in accordance with design objectives. Expeditious corrective actions must be taken if it is determined the separator is not achieving acceptable performance levels.

- Add pretreatment for TSS that could cause clogging of the CP separator, or otherwise impair the long-term effectiveness of the separator.

Criteria for Separator Bays:

- Size the separator bay for the Water Quality design flow rate (15 minute time step) x a correction factor ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6b of this Volume (assuming an off-line facility). (See Chapter 4 of this Volume for a definition of the Water Quality Design Flow Rate.)
- To collect floatables and settleable solids, design the surface area of the forebay at ≥ 20 ft² per 10,000 ft² of area draining to the separator [6]. The length of the forebay should be 1/3-1/2 of the length of the entire separator. Include roughing screens for the forebay or upstream of the separator to remove debris, if needed. Screen openings should be about 3/4 inch.
- Include a submerged inlet pipe with a turn-down elbow in the first bay at least two feet from the bottom. The outlet pipe should be a Tee, sized to pass the design peak flow and placed at least 12 inches below the water surface.
- Include a shutoff mechanism at the separator outlet pipe. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998)
- Use absorbents and/or skimmers in the afterbay as needed.

Criteria for Baffles:

- Oil retaining baffles (top baffles) should be located at least at 1/4 of the total separator length from the outlet and should extend down at least 50% of the water depth and at least 1 ft. from the separator bottom.
- Baffle height to water depth ratios should be 0.85 for top baffles and 0.15 for bottom baffles.

11.7 Oil and Water Separator BMPs

Two BMPs are described in this section. BMP T11.10 for baffle type separators, and BMP T11.11 for coalescing plate separators.

BMP T11.10: API (Baffle type) Separator Bay

Design Criteria

The criteria for small drainages is based on V_h, V_t, residence time, width, depth, and length considerations. As a correction factor API's turbulence criteria is applied to increase the length.

Ecology is modifying the API criteria for treating stormwater runoff from small drainage area (fueling stations, commercial parking lots, etc.) by using the design hydraulic horizontal velocity, V_h, for the design V_h/V_t ratio rather than the API minimum of $V_h/V_t = 15$. The API criteria appear applicable for greater than two acres of impervious drainage area. Performance verification of this design basis must be obtained during at least one wet season using the test protocol referenced in Chapter 12 for new technologies.

The following is the sizing procedure using modified API criteria:

- Determine the oil rise rate, V_t, in cm/sec, using Stokes Law (Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985), or empirical determination, or 0.033 ft./min for 60µ oil. The application of Stokes' Law to site-based oil droplet sizes and densities, or empirical rise rate determinations recognizes the need to consider actual site conditions. In those cases the design basis would not be the 60 micron droplet size and the 0.033 ft/min. rise rate.
- Stokes Law equation for rise rate, V_t (cm/sec):

  $$Vt = [(g)(\rho_w - \rho_o)(d^2)] / [(18*\mu_w)]$$

  Where:
  Vt = the rise rate of the oil droplet (cm/s or ft/sec)
  g = acceleration due to gravity (cm/s^2 or ft/s^2)
  ρ_w = density of water at the design temperature (g/cm^3 or lbm/ft^3)
  ρ_o = density of oil at the design temperature (g/cm^3 or lbm/ft^3)
  d = oil droplet diameter (cm or ft)
  μ_w = absolute viscosity of the water [g/(cm*s) or lbm/(ft*s)]

Use the following separator dimension criteria:

Separator water depth, $d \geq 3 \leq 8$ feet (to minimize turbulence) (American Petroleum Institute, 1990; US Army Corps of Engineers, 1994).

Separator width, 6-20 feet (WEF & ASCE, 1998; King County Surface Water Management, 1998)

Depth/width (d/w) of 0.3-0.5 (American Petroleum Institute, 1990)

For Stormwater Inflow from Drainages under 2 Acres:

1. Determine V_t and select depth and width of the separator section based on above criteria.

2. Calculate the minimum residence time (t_m) of the separator at depth d:

$$t_m = d/V_t$$

3. Calculate the horizontal velocity of the bulk fluid, V_h, vertical cross-sectional area, A_v, and actual design V_h/V_t (American Petroleum Institute, 1990; US Army Corps of Engineers, 1994).

   $V_h = Q/dw = Q/A_v$ (V_h maximum at < 2.0 ft/min.)(American Petroleum Institute, 1990)

   Q = (k) the ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6.a (for on-line facilities) or Figure 9.4.6.b (for offline facilities) for the site location multiplied by the 15-minute Water Quality design flow rate in ft^3/min, at minimum residence time, t_m

   At V_h/V_t determine F, turbulence and short-circuiting factor (Appendix V-D) API F factors range from 1.28-1.74. (American Petroleum Institute, 1990)

4. Calculate the minimum length of the separator section, l(s), using:

   $l(s) = FQt_m/wd = F(V_h/V_t)d$
   $l(t) = l(f) + l(s) + l(a)$
   $l(t) = l(t)/3 + l(s) + l(t)/4$

   Where:

   l(t) = total length of 3 bays = "L" in Figure 11.2.1
   l(f) = length of forebay
   l(a) = length of afterbay

5. Calculate $V = l(s)wd = FQt_m$, and $A_h = wl(s)$

   V = minimum hydraulic design volume
   A_h = minimum horizontal area of the separator

For Stormwater Inflow from Drainages > 2 Acres: Use $V_h = 15\ V_t$ and $d = (Q/2V_h)^{1/2}$ (with d/w = 0.5) and repeat above calculations 3- 5.

BMP T11.11: Coalescing Plate (CP) Separator Bay

Design Criteria

Calculate the projected (horizontal) surface area of plates needed using the following equation:

$A_h = Q/Vt = [Q] / [(.00386) * ((S_w - S_o)/(\mu_w))]$

Where

A_h = horizontal surface area of the plates (ft^2)
Vt = rise rate of the oil droplet (ft/min)
Q = = (k) the ratio indicated in Figure 9.4.6.a (for on-line facilities) or Figure 9.4.6.b (for offline facilities) for the site location multiplied by the 15-minute Water Quality design flow rate in ft^3/min, at minimum residence time, t_m

S_w = specific gravity of water at the design temperature
S_o = specific gravity of oil at the design temperature
μ_w = absolute viscosity of the water (poise)

The above equation is based on an oil droplet diameter of 60 microns.

- Plate spacing should be a minimum of 3/4 in (perpendicular distance between plates) or as determined by the manufacturer. (WEF & ASCE, 1998; US Army Corps of Engineers, 1994; US Air Force, 1991; Jaisinghani, R., 1979)
- Select a plate angle between 45° to 60° from the horizontal.
- Locate plate pack at least 6 inches from the bottom of the separator for sediment storage
- Add 12 inches minimum head space from the top of the plate pack and the bottom of the vault cover.
- Design inlet flow distribution and baffles in the separator bay to minimize turbulence, short-circuiting, and channeling of the inflow especially through and around the plate packs of the CP separator. The Reynolds Number through the separator bay should be <500 (laminar flow).
- Include forebay for floatables and afterbay for collection of effluent. (WEF & ASCE, 1998)
- The sediment-retaining baffle must be upstream of the plate pack at a minimum height of 18 in. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998).
- Design plates for ease of removal, and cleaning with high-pressure rinse or equivalent.

Operation and Maintenance

- Prepare, regularly update, and implement an O & M Manual for the oil/water separators.
- Inspect oil/water separators monthly during the wet season of October 1-April 30 (WEF & ASCE, 1998; Woodward-Clyde Consultants) to ensure proper operation, and, during and immediately after a large storm event of ≥1 inch per 24 hours.
- Clean oil/water separators regularly to keep accumulated oil from escaping during storms. They must be cleaned by October 15 to remove material that has accumulated during the dry season (Woodward-Clyde Consultants), after all spills, and after a significant storm. Coalescing plates may be cleaned in-situ or after removal from the separator. An eductor truck may be used for oil, sludge, and washwater removal. (King County Surface Water Management, 1998) Replace wash water in the separator with clean water before returning it to service.
- Remove the accumulated oil when the thickness reaches 1-inch. Also remove sludge deposits when the thickness reaches 6 inches (King County Surface Water Management, 1998).
- Replace oil absorbent pads before their sorbed oil content reaches capacity.
- Train designated employees on appropriate separator operation, inspection, record keeping, and maintenance procedures.

This page intentionally left blank.

Chapter 12. - Emerging Technologies

12.1 Background

Traditional best management practices (BMPs) such as wetponds and filtration swales may not be appropriate in many situations due to size and space restraints or their inability to remove target pollutants. Because of this, the stormwater treatment industry emerged to develop new stormwater treatment devices.

Emerging technologies are stormwater treatment devices that are new to the stormwater treatment marketplace. These devices include both permanent and construction site treatment technologies. Many of these devices have not undergone complete performance testing so their performance claims cannot be verified.

12.2 Ecology Role in Evaluating Emerging Technologies

To aid local governments in selecting new stormwater treatment technologies Ecology developed the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) and Chemical Technology Assessment Protocol Ecology (CTAPE) protocols. These protocols provide manufacturers with guidance on stormwater monitoring so they may verify their performance claims.

As a part of this process Ecology:

- Posts information on emerging technologies at the emerging technologies website: http://www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html
- Participates in all Technical Review Committee (TRC) and Chemical Technical Review Committee (CTRC) activities which include reviewing manufacturer performance data and providing recommendations on use level designations.
- Grants use level designations based on performance and other pertinent data submitted by the manufacturers and vendors.
- Provides oversight and analysis of all submittals to ensure consistency with this manual.

12.3 Evaluation of Emerging Technologies

Local governments should consider the following as they make decisions concerning the use of new stormwater treatment technologies in their jurisdiction:

Remember the Goal:

The goal of any stormwater management program or BMP is to treat and release stormwater in a manner that does not harm beneficial uses.

Exercise Reasonable Caution:

- Before allowing the use of a new technology, the local government should review evaluation information based on the TAPE or CTAPE.
- An emerging technology cannot be used for new or redevelopment unless this technology has a use level designation. Having a use level designation means that Ecology and the TRC or CTRC reviewed system performance data and believe the technology has the ability to provide the level of treatment claimed by the manufacturer.
- To achieve the goals of the Clean Water Act and the Endangered Species Act, local governments may find it necessary to retrofit stormwater pollutant control systems for many existing stormwater discharges. In retrofit situations, the use of any BMP that makes substantial progress toward these goals is a step forward and encouraged by Ecology. To the extent practical, the performance of BMPs used in retrofit situations should be evaluated using the TAPE or CTAPE protocols.

12.4 Assessing Levels of Development of Emerging Technologies

Ecology developed use level designations to assess levels of development for emerging technologies. The use level designations are based upon the quantity, quality, and type of performance data. There are three use level designations: pilot use level designation, conditional use level designation, and general use level designation.

Pilot Use Level Designation (PULD)

For technologies that have limited performance data, the pilot use level designation allows limited use to conduct field-testing. Ecology may give Pilot use level designations based solely on laboratory performance data. Pilot use level designations apply for a specified time period only. During this time period, the proponent must complete all field testing and submit a technology evaluation report (TER) to Ecology.

PULD technologies may be installed at sites that are pre-approved by Ecology and the local government with jurisdiction provided that the vendor and/or developer agree to conduct field testing based on TAPE requiremements. Ecology will limit the number of installations to five during the pilot use level period and the manufacture must monitor all five sites. Local governments should not approve technologies that have a PULD for a new or redevelopment project unless Ecology has concurred in the use of the technology at that project site.

Please note: Government entities covered by a municipal stormwater NPDES permit must notify Ecology when a PULD technology is proposed (form is available in TAPE guidance document, at: www.ecy.wa.gov/biblio/1110061.html)

Conditional Use Level Designation (CULD)

Ecology established the CULD for emerging technologies that have considerable performance data not collected per the TAPE protocol. Ecology may give a conditional use level designation if a manufacture collected field data through a protocol reasonably consistent with but not fully meeting the TAPE protocol. The field data must meet the statistical goals set out in the TAPE guidelines (See www.ecy.wa.gov/pubs/1110061.pdf). Manufactures may use laboratory data to supplement field data. Ecology will allow the use of Technologies that receive a CULD for a specified time, during which the manufacture must complete the field testing necessary to obtain a general use level designation (GULD) and must submit a TER to Ecology and the TRC. Ecology limits the number of installations to ten during the CULD period.

General Use Level Designation (GULD)

The general use level designation (GULD) confers a general acceptance for the specified applications (land uses). Technologies with a GULD may be used for new development, re-development, or retrofit situations anywhere in Washington, subject to conditions that Ecology places within the Use Designation document.

12.5 Emerging Technologies for Stormwater Treatment and Control Options

Ecology's Emerging Technologies website: www.ecy.wa.gov/programs/wq/stormwater/newtech/index.html

lists technologies that have obtained a use level designation through the Technology Assessment Protocol – Ecology (TAPE) process. Ecology's website also provides additional guidance regarding the TAPE process and application forms.

In addition to Ecology certification, local jurisdiction approval is required for installation of treatment technologies with Pilot (PULD), Conditional (CULD), or General (GULD) Use Level Designations. Local jurisdictions may choose not to accept products approved through TAPE, or may require additional testing prior to consideration for local approval.

In addition to other requirements, Ecology uses the goals below to evaluate emerging stormwater treatment technologies. Proponents attempting to obtain a GULD for a stormwater treatment technology must demonstrate the achievement of applicable performance goals by monitoring the water quality parameters listed in Table 12.5.1.

The following subheadings link to menus of emerging treatment technologies that have completed or are engaged in the TAPE program.

Pretreatment

Pretreatment is generally applied to:

- Project sites using infiltration treatment.
- Treatment systems needed to assure and extend performance of the downstream basic or enhanced treatment facility.

Pretreatment Performance Goal: For influent concentrations ranging:

- Less than 100 mg/L: achieve effluent goals of 50 mg/L of fine and 20 mg/L of coarse total suspended solids.
- Greater than 100 mg/L, but less than 200 mg/L: achieve 50% removal of fine (50 micron-mean size) and 80% removal of coarse (125-micron-mean size) total suspended solids.

Oil Treatment

Oil treatment Performance Goal: Achieve no ongoing or recurring visible sheen and a daily average total petroleum hydrocarbon concentration no greater than 10 mg/L with a maximum of 15 mg/L for discrete (grab) samples.

Basic Treatment

Basic treatment Effluent Goals: For influent concentrations ranging:

- Less than 100mg/L: achieve an effluent of 20mg/L total suspended solids.
- From 100mg/L to 200 mg/L: achieve 80% removal of total suspended solids.
- Greater than 200mg/L: achieve more than 80% removal of total suspended solids.

Ecology has also approved technologies listed in this section with a GULD for Pre-treatment in accordance with Section 6.2.

Enhanced Treatment

Enhanced Performance Treatment Goal: Achieve a higher level of treatment than basic treatment. For influent concentrations ranging:

- Dissolved copper 0.005 - 0.02 mg/L: meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as > 30% dissolved copper removal.
- Dissolved zinc 0.02 - 0.3 mg/L: meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as > 60% dissolved zinc removal.

Phosphorous Treatment

Phosphorus Performance Treatment Goal: Achieve 50% total phosphorus removal for an influent concentration range of 0.1 to 0.5 mg/L and achieve basic treatment goals.

Construction Site Treatments

Construction Performance Treatment Goal: Achieve a maximum of 5 NTUs above background (background of 50 NTUs or less), not more than 10% increase in turbidity where background is greater than 50 NTUs, pH of 6.5-8.5 in freshwater and 7.0-8.5 in marine water, and no visible oil sheen.

Table 12.5.1 TAPE Treatment Goals and Water Quality Parameters

Performance Goal	Influent Range	Criteria	Required Water Quality Parameters
Basic Treatment	20-100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal ≤ 20 mg/L TSS [a]	TSS
	100-200 mg/L TSS	≥ 80% TSS removal [b]	
	> 200 mg/L TSS	> 80% TSS removal [b]	
Dissolved Metals Treatment [c]	Dissolved copper 0.005 – 0.02 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as > 30% dissolved copper removal [b,d]	TSS, hardness, total and dissolved Cu and Zn
	Dissolved zinc 0.02 – 0.3 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and better than basic treatment currently defined as > 60% dissolved zinc removal [b,d]	
Phosphorus Treatment	Total phosphorus (TP) 0.1 to 0.5 mg/L	Must meet basic treatment goal and exhibit ≥ 50% TP removal [b]	TSS, TP, orthophosphate
Oil Treatment	Total petroleum hydrocarbons (TPH) > 10 mg/L [e]	1) No ongoing or recurring visible sheen in effluent 2) Daily average effluent TPH concentration < 10 mg/L [a,e] 3) Maximum effluent TPH concentration of 15 mg/L [a,e] for a discrete (grab) sample	NWTPH-Dx, visible sheen
Pretreatment [f]	50-100 mg/L TSS	Effluent goal ≤ 50 mg/L TSS [a]	TSS
	≥ 100 mg/L TSS	> 50% TSS removal [b]	

mg/L – milligrams per liter
Cu – copper
NWTPH-Dx – Northwest Total Petroleum Hydrocarbons-Motor Oil and Diesel fractions
TP – total phosphorus
TPH – total petroleum hydrocarbons
TSS – total suspended solids
Zn – zinc

[a] The upper one-sided 95 percent confidence interval around the mean effluent concentration for the treatment system being evaluated must be lower than this performance goal to meet the performance goal with the required 95 percent confidence.

[b] The lower one-sided 95 percent confidence interval around the mean removal efficiency for the treatment system being evaluated must be higher than this performance goal to meet the performance goal with the required 95 percent confidence.

[c] Referred to as Enhanced Treatment in the *Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington* (Ecology 2005) and Metals Treatment in the *Stormwater Management Manual for Eastern Washington* (Ecology 2004b). Must meet the removal goal for both dissolved copper and dissolved zinc in order to achieve a Dissolved Metals Treatment GULD. Meeting the removal goal for only one of these dissolved metals is not sufficient.

[d] This percent removal was determined based on an analysis of basic treatment BMP dissolved metals removal data from the International Stormwater BMP database to define performance goals for dissolved metals treatment (Washington Stormwater Center and Herrera 2011). Data from the International Stormwater BMP database was reviewed and screened based on influent concentrations, geographic location, data quality, BMP design, and monitoring problems to develop a subset of data that was representative and suitable for determining BMP performance.

[e] This performance goal should be evaluated based on the motor oil fraction of TPH-Dx only.

[f] Pretreatment technologies generally apply to (1) project sites using infiltration treatment and (2) treatment systems where pretreatment is needed to ensure and extend performance of the downstream basic or dissolved metals treatment facilities.

Volume V References

Allen, Tony (Recommendations by) -Geotechnical Engineer, WSDOT, 1999

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), "Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT $\leq$ 400)," 2001

American Petroleum Institute, "Design and Operation of Oil-Water Separators," Publication 421, Feb. 1990.

APWA Task Committee, "Protocol for the Acceptance of Unapproved Stormwater Treatment Technologies for Use in the Puget Sound Watershed, November 1999.

Aquashield Inc., "Aquafilter Stormwater Filtration System", 2000.

ASCE and WEF, Urban Runoff Quality Management, WEF Manual of Practice No. 23, 1998.

Caraco, Deborah and Richard Claytor, Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates, Center for Watershed Protection, December 1997.

Center for Watershed Protection, "Better Site Design", August 1998.

Chang, George, C., "Review of Stormwater Manual-Sand Filtration Basins for Department of Ecology, State of Washington", November 5, 2000.

Chin, D. A. Water Resources Engineering, Prentice Hall, New Jersey, 2000.

Chow, V.T., "Open Channel Hydraulics", McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1959.

City of Austin, Texas. Design Guidelines for Water Quality Control Basins, Environmental Criteria Manual, June 1988.

Claytor, Richard and Thomas Schueler, Design of Stormwater Filter Systems, December 1996

Colwell, S.R., "Characterization of Performance Predictors and Evaluation of Mowing Practices in Biofiltration Swales." MSCE Thesis, U. of Washington, 2000.

Corbitt, Robert A., "Oil and Grease Removal," Handbook of Environmental Engineering, McGraw-Hill, Inc., 1990.

CSR-HydroConduit, "The Stormceptor System Technical Manual", 1997.

Ferguson, Bruce K., Stormwater Infiltration, Lewis Publishers, 1994.

Ferguson, Bruce K., Review of Draft Stormwater Manual for Western Washington (Infiltration Sections of Volume III and Volume V), October 2000.

Goldman, S.J., K. Jackson and T.A. Bursztynsky, "Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook" McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 1986.

H.I.L. Technology, Inc.," Downstream Defender", 1998.

Horner, R., "Fundamentals of Urban Runoff Management-Technical and Institutional Issues", 1994.

Horner, Richard "Review of Stormwater Manual." October 23, 2000.

Jaisinghani, R., A., et al., "A Study of Oil/Water Separation in Corrugated Plate Separators," Journal of Engineering for Industry, 11/79.

King County Surface Water Management, "High Use/Oil Control Decision Paper," Draft, 1994.

King County Surface Water Management, Design Manual, September, 1998.

King County Surface Water Management, WA, "Draft Guidelines for Full-Scale Infiltration Facility Testing", February, 2001.

Koon, John, "Evaluation of Water Quality Ponds and Swales in the Issaquah/East Sammamish Basins", King County Surface Water Management, 1995.

Koon, John, et al, "Evaluation of Commercial-Available Catch basin Inserts for the Treatment of Stormwater Runoff from Developed Sites", Interagency Catch basin Insert Committee, 1995.

Kulzer, Louise and Horner, Richard, et al., "Biofiltration Swale Performance, Recommendations, and Design Considerations", Municipality of Metropolitan Seattle. Publication 657, October 1992

Lambert, C., "Stormceptor", CSR, Inc., July 2000.

Lee, D., T.A. Dillaha and J.H. Sherrard, "Modeling Phosphorus Transport in Grass Buffer Strips." Journal of Environmental Engineering, Volume 115, No. 2, New York, N.Y., April, 1989.

Leif, Bill, "Compost Stormwater Filter Evaluation", January 1999.

Leif, William, "Sediment Removal in Catch Basin Inserts", Snohomish County, March 1998.

Massmann, Joel and Carolyn Butchart. Infiltration Characteristics, Performance, and Design of Storm Water Facilities, U. of Washington, March 2000.

Mazer, Greg, "Environmental Limitations to Vegetation Establishment and Growth in Vegeteted Stormwater Biofilters." University of Washington, July 1998.

Minton, Gary, "Planning Report No. 3: Sizing Oil/Water Separators for the Redmond Way Storm Drain System", Resource Planning Associates, 1990.

Minton, G., The Selection and Sizing of Treatment BMPs in New Developments to Achieve Water Quality Objectives, March 1993.

No. Carolina DEHNR," Stormwater Best Management Practices", November 1995.

Rawls, W. J., D. L. Brakensiek, and K. E. Saxton. Estimation of Soil Properties. Transactions of the American Society of Agricultural Engineers, Vol. 25, No. 5, pp. 1316-1320, 1982.

Schueler, Thomas R., "Water Quality inlets/Oil Grit Separators," BMP Fact Sheet #11, Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices, March 1992.

Schueler, Tom, et al., “A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices”, March 1992.

Seattle METRO, “Oil and Water Don’t Mix,” October 1990.

Shaver, Earl, Sand Filter Design for Water Quality Treatment, Delaware Department of Natural Resources and Environmental Control, 1992.

Smith, David R., Permeable Interlocking Concrete Pavements: Selection, Design, Construction, Maintenance. Interlocking Concrete Pavement Institute. 2011

SPE Production Engineering, “Droplet-Settling vs. Retention-Time Theories for Sizing Oil/Water Separator,” Kenneth Arnold, et al., February 1990.

Stenstrom, Michael, et al., “Oil and Grease in Urban Stormwater,” 1983 paper for publication in Journal of Environ. Engineering.

Stormwater Management Co., "Stormfilter Product Manual", 1999.

Strynchuk, Justin, et al, "The Use of a CDS Unit for Sediment Control in Brevard County, April, 2000.

Sutherland, Roger, et al, "High Efficiency Sweeping as an Alternative to the Use of Wet Vaults for Stormwater Treatment," 1998.

Thurston County Environmental Health, “Oil/Water Separator Fact Sheet,” circa 1995.

U.S. Air Force, “Gravity Oil and Water Separator Design Criteria,” circa 1991.

U.S. Army Corps. of Engineers, “Selection and Design of Oil and Water Separators,” August 26, 1994.

U.S. Army Corps. of Engineers., “Prefabricated Oil-Water Separators,” Draft Specifications, 1995.

U.S. Dept. of Commerce, Bureau of Public Roads, "Design Charts for Open-Channel Flow, Hydraulic Design Series 3", Washington, D.C., 1961.

U.S. Dept. of Transportation, “Highway Functional Classification Concepts, Criteria, and Procedures,” 2013 edition

Urbonas, Ben, Hydraulic Design of Sand Filters for Stormwater Quality, 1997.

USEPA, “Stormwater BMP Design Supplement for Cold Climates”, December 1997.

Varner, Phyllis, et al, "Lakemont Stormwater Treatment Facility Monitoring Report," City of Bellevue, November 1999.

Wa. Dept. of Ecology, “NPDES and State Waste Discharge General Permit for Stormwater Discharges Associated with Industrial Activities,” October 21, 2009.

Wang T.S., D.E. Spyridakis, B.W. Mar, and R.R. Horner, "Transport, Deposition and Control of Heavy Metals in Highway Runoff." FHWA-WA-RD-39.10. Report to Washington State Department of Transportation by Department of Civil Engineering, University of Washington, Seattle, 1982

Water Environment Federation, “Urban Runoff Quality Management”, American Society of Civil Engineers, 1998.

Water Pollution Control Federation, "Clarifier Design," Manual of Practice FD-8, 1985.

Watershed Protection Techniques, "Hydrocarbon Hotspots in the Urban Landscape: Can They be Controlled?", Feb. 1994.

WEF & ASCE, "Urban Runoff Quality Management, 1998.

Wiltsie, Edward, Stormwater Facilities Performance Study, Infiltration Pond Testing and Data Evaluation, August 10, 1998.

Woinsky, S. G., "New Advanced Solids/Oil/Water Separator," Environmental Progress, Feb. 1995.

Wong, S.L., and R.H. McKuen, "The Design of Vegetative Buffer Strips for Runoff and Sediment Control", Report to the Maryland Coastal Zone Management Program, University of Maryland, College Park, Maryland, 1981.

Woodward-Clyde Consultants (Recommendations by), "Biofiltration Swales and Filter Strips", November 1995.

Woodward-Clyde Consultants "Oil/Water Separators."

Woodward-Clyde Consultants, Recommendations for Revising Ecology's Manual, November 1995.

Appendix V-A Basic Treatment Receiving Waters

1. All salt waterbodies

2.

Rivers	**Upstream Point for Exemption**
Baker	Anderson Creek
Bogachiel	Bear Creek
Cascade	Marblemount
Chehalis	Bunker Creek
Clearwater	Town of Clearwater
Columbia	Canadian Border
Cowlitz	Skate Creek
Elwha	Lake Mills
Green	Howard Hanson Dam
Hoh	South Fork Hoh River
Humptulips	West and East Fork Confluence
Kalama	Italian Creek
Lewis	Swift Reservoir
Muddy	Clear Creek
Nisqually	Alder Lake
Nooksack	Glacier Creek
South Fork Nooksack	Hutchinson Creek
North River	Raymond
Puyallup	Carbon River
Queets	Clearwater River
Quillayute	Bogachiel River
Quinault	Lake Quinault
Sauk	Clear Creek
Satsop	Middle and East Fork Confluence
Skagit	Cascade River
Skokomish	Vance Creek
Skykomish	Beckler River
Snohomish	Snoqualmie River
Snoqualmie	Middle and North Fork Confluence
Sol Duc	Beaver Creek
Stillaguamish	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Stillaguamish	Boulder River
South Fork Stillaguamish	Canyon Creek
Suiattle	Darrington
Tilton	Bear Canyon Creek
Toutle	North and South Fork Confluence
North Fork Toutle	Green River
Washougal	Washougal
White	Geenwater River
Wind	Carson
Wynoochee	Wishkah River Road Bridge

3. | **Lakes** | **County**

Lakes	County
Washington	King
Sammamish	King
Union	King
Whatcom	Whatcom
Silver	Cowlitz

Note: Local governments may petition for the addition of more waters to this list. The initial criteria for this list are rivers whose mean annual flow exceeds 1000 cfs, and lakes whose surface area exceeds 300 acres. Additional waters do not have to meet these criteria, but should have sufficient background dilution capacity to accommodate dissolved metals additions from build-out conditions in the watershed under the latest Comprehensive Land Use Plan and zoning regulations.

Appendix V-B Recommended Modifications to ASTM D 2434 When Measuring Hydraulic Conductivity for Bioretention Soil Mixes

Developed by the City of Seattle in cooperation with local soils laboratories.

Proctor method ASTM D1557 Method C (6-inch mold) shall be used to determine maximum dry density values for compaction of bioretention soil sample. Sample preparation for the Proctor test shall be amended in the following ways:

1) Maximum grain size within the sample shall be no more than ½ inches in size.
2) Snip larger organic particles (if present) into ½ inch long pieces.
3) When adding water to the sample during the Proctor test, allow the sample to pre-soak for at least 48 hours to allow the organics to fully saturate before compacting the sample. This pre-soak ensures the organics have been fully saturated at the time of the test.

ASTM D2434 shall be used and amended in the following ways:

1) Apparatus:
    a. 6-inch mold size shall be used for the test.
    b. If using porous stone disks for the testing, the permeability of the stone disk shall be measured before and after the soil tests to ensure clogging or decreased permeability has not occurred during testing.
    c. Use the confined testing method, with 5- to 10-pound force spring
    d. Use de-aired water.
2) Sample:
    a. Maximum grain size within the sample shall not be more than ½ inch in size.
    b. Snip larger organic particles (if present) into ½-inch long pieces.
    c. Pre-soak the sample for at least 48 hours prior to loading it into the mold. During the pre-soak, the moisture content shall be higher than optimum moisture but less than full saturation (i.e., there shall be no free water). This pre-soak ensures the organics have been fully saturated at the time of the test.
3) Preparation of Sample:
    a. Place soil in cylinder via a scoop.
    b. Place soil in 1-inch lifts and compact using a 2-inch-diameter round tamper. Pre-weigh how much soil is necessary to fill 1-inch lift at 85% of maximum dry density, then tamp to 1-inch thickness. Once mold is full, verify that density is at 85% of maximum dry density (+ or – 0.5%). Apply vacuum (20 inches Hg) for 15 minutes before inundation.
    c. Inundate sample slowly under a vacuum of 20 inches Hg over a period of 60 to 75 minutes.

d. Slowly remove vacuum (> 15 seconds).

e. Sample shall be soaked in the mold for 24 to 72 hours before starting test.

4) Procedure:

a. The permeability test shall be conducted over a range of hydraulic gradients between 0.1 and 2.

b. Steady state flow rates shall be documented for four consecutive measurements before increasing the head.

c. The permeability test shall be completed within one day (one-day test duration).

Appendix V-C Geotextile Specifications

Table C.1
Geotextile Properties for Underground Drainage

Geotextile Property Requirements[1]

Geotextile Property	Test Method	Low Survivability Woven/Nonwoven	Moderate Survivability Woven/Nonwoven
Grab Tensile Strength, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	180 lbs/115 lbs min.	250 lbs/160 lbs min.
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	<50%/>=50%	<50%/>=50%
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present) with seam located in the center of 8-inch-long specimen oriented parallel to grip faces	ASTM D4632	160 lbs/100 lbs min.	220 lbs/140 lbs min.
Puncture Resistance	ASTM D6241	370 lbs/220 lbs min.	495 lbs/310 lbs min.
Tear Strength, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4533	67 lbs/40 lbs min.	80 lbs/50 lbs min.
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation stability	ASTM D4355	50% strength retained min., after 500 hrs. in a xenon arc device	50% strength retained min., after 500 hrs. in a xenon arc device

[1] All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

Table C.2 Geotextile for Underground Drainage Filtration Properties				
Geotextile Property Requirements[1]				
Geotextile Property	Test Method	Class A	Class B	Class C
AOS[2]	ASTM D4751	No. 40 max.	No. 60 max.	No. 80 max.
Water Permittivity	ASTM D4491	0.5 sec^{-1} min.	0.4 sec^{-1} min.	0.3 sec^{-1} min.

[1] All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).
[2] Apparent Opening Size (measure of diameter of the pores in the geotextile)

Table C.3
Geotextile Strength Properties for Impermeable Liner Protection

Geotextile Property	Test Method	Geotextile Property Requirements[1]
Grab Tensile Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	250 lbs min.
Grab Failure Strain, in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4632	>50%
Seam Breaking Strength (if seams are present)	ASTM D4632 and ASTM D4884 (adapted for grab test)	220 lbs min.
Puncture Resistance	ASTM D4833	125 lbs min.
Tear Strength, min. in machine and x-machine direction	ASTM D4533	90 lbs min.
Ultraviolet (UV) Radiation	ASTM D4355	50% strength stability retained min., after 500 hrs. in xenon arc device

[1] All geotextile properties are minimum average roll values (i.e., the test result for any sampled roll in a lot shall meet or exceed the values shown in the table).

Applications

1. For sand filter drain strip between the sand and the drain rock or gravel layers specify Geotextile Properties for Underground Drainage, moderate survivability, Class A, from C-1 and C-2 in the Geotextile Specifications.

2. For sand filter matting located immediately above the impermeable liner and below the drains, the function of the geotextile is to protect the impermeable liner by acting as a cushion. The specification provided in Table C-3 should be used to specify survivability properties for the liner protection application. Table 2, Class C should be used for filtration properties. Only nonwoven geotextiles are appropriate for the liner protection application.

3. For an infiltration drain specify Geotextile for Underground Drainage, low survivability, Class C, from Tables C-1 and C-2 in the Geotextile Specifications.

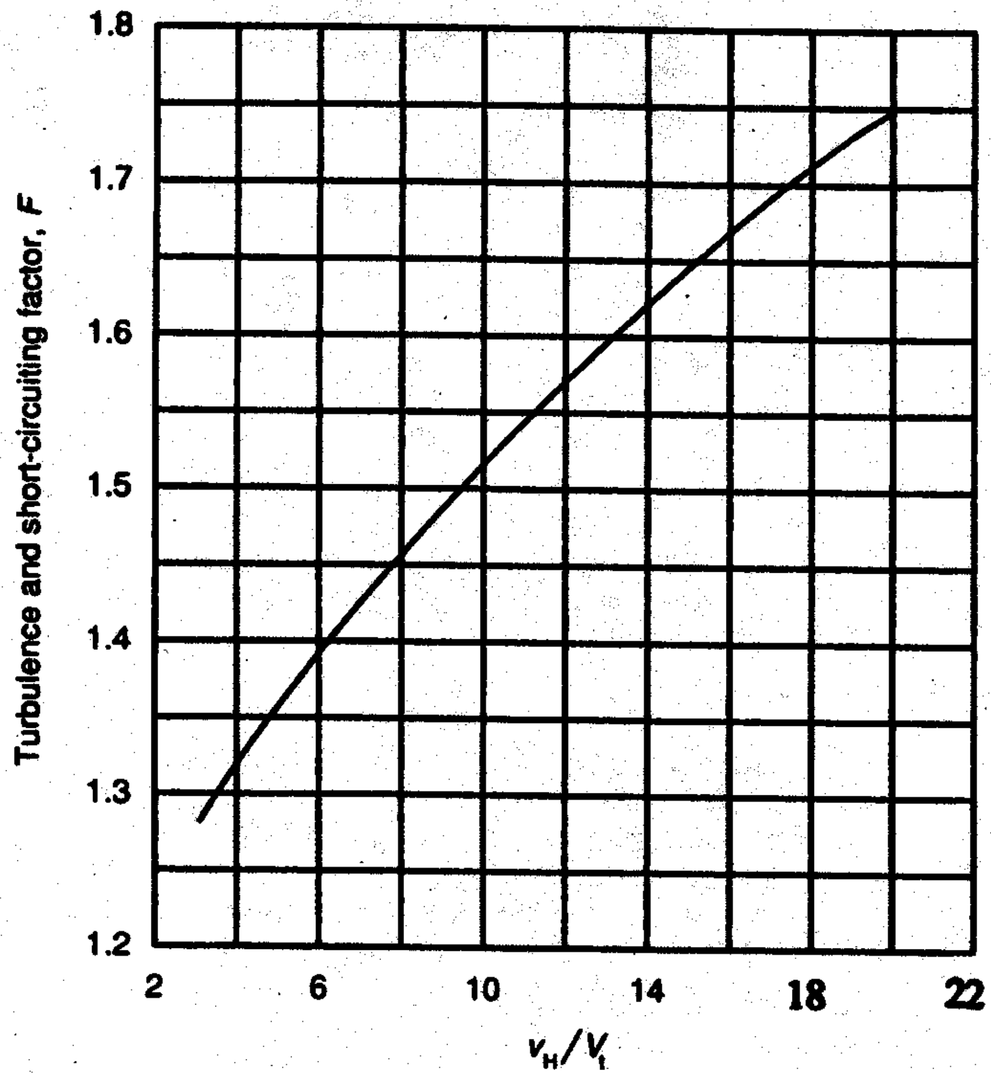
4. For a sand bed cover a geotextile fabric is placed exposed on top of the sand layer to trap debris brought in by the storm water and to protect the sand, facilitating easy cleaning of the surface of the sand layer. However, a geotextile is not the best product for this application. A polyethylene or polypropylene geonet would be better. The geonet material should have high UV resistance (90% or more strength retained after 500 hours in the weatherometer, ASTM D4355), and high permittivity (ASTM D4491, 0.8 sec. -1 or more) and percent open area (CWO-22125, 10% or more). Tensile strength should be on the order of 200 lbs grab (ASTM D4632) or more.

Courtesy of Tony Allen, Geotechnical Engineer-WSDOT

Reference for Tables C-1 and C-2: Section 9-33.2 “Geotextile Properties,” 2012 Standard Specifications for Road, Bridge, and Municipal Construction.

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix V-D Turbulence and Short-Circuiting Factor



v_H/V_t	Turbulence Factor (F_t)	$F = 1.2(F_t)$
20	1.45	1.74
15	1.37	1.64
10	1.27	1.52
6	1.14	1.37
3	1.07	1.28

Figure D.1 – Recommended Values of *F* for Various Values of v_H/Vt

This page intentionally left blank.

Appendix V-E Recommended Newly Planted Tree Species for Flow Control Credit

Reprinted with permission of the City of Seattle

Green Factor Trees (Sorted according to criteria)

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
Large												
	Abies grandis	Grand Fir	100	35		0		☐		Grows at 0-1500 m in moist conifer forests	☐	☑
	Abies procera	Noble Fir	90	30		0		☐			☐	☐
	Acer freemanii 'Autumn Blaze'	Autumn Blaze M	50	40		37700	6	☐	Orange		☑	☐
	Acer macrophyllum	Big Leaf Maple	100	80	Rounded	0		☐	yellow / brown	Very large native	☐	☑
	Acer platanoides 'Emerald Que	Emerald Queen	50	40		50300	6	☐	Yellow		☑	☐
	Acer saccharum 'Bonfire'	Bonfire Sugar Ma	50	40	Oval	50300	6	☐	Bright orange red	Fastest growing sugar maple.	☑	☐
	Acer saccharum 'Commemorat	Commemoration	50	35		38500	6	☐	Orange to orange-red	Resistant to leaf tatter.	☑	☐
	Acer saccharum 'Legacy'	Legacy Sugar Ma	50	35		38500	5	☐	Yellow or orange/red	Limited use - where sugar maple is desired in standard planting strips	☑	☐
	Aesculus flava	Yellow Buckeye	70	40		0		☐	yellow / orange	yellow flowers - least suscepible to leaf blotch - large fruit	☐	☐
	Alnus rubra	Red Alder	70	35	Broadly coni	0		☐	yellow / brown	nitrogen fixing	☐	☑
	Cercidiphyllum japonicum	Katsura Tree	40	40	Oval	37700	6	☐	Yellow to orange	Needs lots of water when young	☑	☐
	Fagus sylvatica	Green Beech	50	40	Oval	50300	6	☐	Bronze	Silvery-grey bark.	☑	☐
	Fagus sylvatica 'Asplenifolia'	Fernleaf Beech	60	60		0	6	☐	golden / brown	Beautiful cut leaf	☑	☐
	Fraxinus latifolia	Oregon Ash	60	35		0		☐	yellow / brown	Only native ash in PNW	☐	☑

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Fraxinus pennsylvanica 'Urbani	Urbanite Ash	50	40	Pyramidal	50300	6	☐	Deep bronze	Tolerant of city conditions	☑	☐
	Gymnocladus dioicus 'Espress	Espresso Kentuc	50	35		0	6	☐	yellow	very coarse branches - extremely large bi-pinnately compound leaf -	☑	☐
	Liriodendron tulipifera	Tulip Tree	60	30	Oval	35400	8	☐	Yellow	Fast-growing tree.	☑	☐
	Nothofagus antarctica	Antarctic Beech	50	35		38500	6	☐	None	Rugged twisted branching and petite foliage.	☑	☐
	Picea sitchensis	Sitka Spruce	100	30		0		☐	Evergreen	Native environment is characterized by a cool, moist maritime climate	☐	☑
	Pinus monticola	Western White Pi	100	35		0		☐	Evergreen	Occurs in lowland fog forests or on moist mountain soils - primary host	☐	☑
	Platanus x acerifolia 'Bloodgoo	Bloodgood Londo	50	40	Pyramidal	63700	8	☐	Red	More anthracnose resistant - needs space	☑	☐
	Platanus x acerifolia 'Yarwood'	Yarwood London	50	40		50300	8	☐	Yellow-brown	High resistance to powdery mildew.	☑	☐
	Psudotsuga menziesii	Douglas Fir	150	35		0		☐	Evergreen		☐	☑
	Quercus bicolor	Swamp White Oa	45	45		55700	8	☐	Varies.	Shaggy peeling bark	☑	☐
	Quercus coccinea	Scarlet Oak	50	40	Upright	50300	6	☐	Red	Best oak for fall color	☑	☐
	Quercus garryana	Oregon Oak	45	40	Oval	43960	6	☐		Native to Pacific Northwest	☑	☐
	Quercus imbricaria	Shingle Oak	60	50		0	6	☐	golden / brown	nice summer foliage - leaves can persist	☑	☐
	Quercus muhlenbergii	Chestnut Oak	60	50		0	6	☐	brown / yellow	coarsely toothed leaf	☑	☐
	Quercus robur	English Oak	50	40	Rounded	50300	8	☐	Yellow-brown	Large, sturdy tree	☑	☐
	Quercus rubra	Red Oak	50	45	Rounded	63600	8	☐	Red	Fast growing oak - needs space	☑	☐

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Quercus velutina	Black Oak	60	50		0	6	☐	rusty red		☑	☐
	Thuja plicata	Western Red Ce	125	40	Pyramidal	0		☐	Evergreen	growth is stunted on dry soils	☐	☑
	Tsuga heterophylla	Western Hemloc	130	30		0		☐	Evergreen		☐	☑
	Ulmus 'Homestead'	Homestead Elm	60	35		48100	6	☐	Yellow		☑	☐
	Ulmus 'Pioneer'	Pioneer Elm	60	50		98200	6	☐	Yellow	Resistant to Dutch elm disease.	☑	☐
	Ulmus parvifolia 'Emer II'	Allee Elm	50	35	Vase	38500	5	☐	Yellow-orange	Exfoliating bark and nice fall color	☑	☐
	Zelkova serrata 'Greenvase'	Green Vase Zelk	50	40		50300	5	☐	Orange	Vigorous	☑	☐
Medium / Large												
	Acer campestre	Hedge Maple	30	30		14100	5	☐	Yellow		☑	☐
	Acer campestre 'Evelyn'	Queen Elizabeth	35	30		17700	5	☐	Yellow	More upright branching than the species.	☑	☐
	Acer miyabei 'Morton'	State Street Mapl	45	30		0	5	☐	yellow		☑	☐
	Acer platanoides 'Parkway'	Parkway Norway	40	25		14700	6	☐	Yellow	tolerant of verticillium wilt	☑	☐
	Acer pseudoplatanus 'Atropurp	Spaethii Maple	40	30		21200	5	☐	Not significant	Leaves green on top purple underneath.	☑	☐
	Acer saccharum 'Green Mount	Green Mountain	45	35	Oval	33700	6	☐	Red to orange.	Reliable fall color	☑	☐
	Aesculus x carnea	'Briottii' Red Hors	30	35		19200	5	☐	No	Resists heat and drought better than other horsechestmuts.	☑	☐
	Betula albosinenesis var septe	Chinese Red Birc	45	35		0	5	☐	yellow	pink/ white peeling bark	☑	☐
	Betula jacquemontii	Jacquemontii Bir	40	30	Oval	21200	5	☐	Yellow	White bark makes for good winter interest - best for aphid resistance	☑	☐

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Betula papyrifera	Paper Birch	60	35		0		[ ]	Yellow / brown	High susceptibility to aphid infestation	[ ]	[x]
	Chamaecyparis pisifera	Sawara Cypress	45	25	Pyramidal	17200	6	[ ]	Evergreen	Special site approval needed - many cultivars available	[ ]	[ ]
	Corylus colurna	Turkish Filbert	40	25	Pyramidal	14800	5	[ ]	Yellow	Tight, formal, dense crown - not for high pedestrian areas	[x]	[ ]
	Eucommia ulmoides	Hardy Rubber Tr	50	40		0	5	[ ]		Dark green shiny leaves	[x]	[ ]
	Fagus sylvatica 'Rohanii'	Purple Oak Leaf	50	30		0	6	[ ]		Attractive purple leaves with wavy margins.	[x]	[ ]
	Fraxinus americana 'Autumn A	Autumn Applaus	40	25	Oval	14700	5	[ ]	Purple	Compact tree - reportedly seedless	[x]	[ ]
	Fraxinus americana 'Empire'	Empire Ash	50	25	Columnar	17900	5	[ ]	Rusty Orange	Use for areas adjacent to taller buildings when ash is desired	[x]	[ ]
	Fraxinus pennsylvanica 'Patmo	Patmore Ash	45	35	Oval	33700	5	[ ]	Yellow	Extremely hardy, may be seedless.	[x]	[ ]
	Ginko biloba 'Autumn Gold'	Autumn Gold Gin	45	35	Pyramidal	33700	6	[ ]	Yellow	Narrow when young	[x]	[ ]
	Halesia monticola	Mountain Silverb	45	25		0	5	[ ]	yellow	attractive, small white flower	[x]	[ ]
	Koelreuteria paniculata	Goldenrain Tree	30	30		14100		[x]	Yellow	Midsummer blooming.	[x]	[ ]
	Liquidambar styraciflua 'Rotun	Rotundiloba Swe	45	25		17200	6	[ ]	Purple orange	Only sweetgum that is entirely fruitless. Smooth rounded leaf	[x]	[ ]
	Magnolia denudata	Yulan Magnolia	40	40		0	5	[ ]		6" inch, fragrant, white blossoms in spring	[x]	[ ]
	Metasequoia glyptostroboides	Dawn Redwood	50	25	Narrow	19625	6	[ ]	Rusty	Fast growing deciduous conifer	[x]	[ ]
	Nyssa sylvatica	Tupelo	60	20		18800	5	[ ]	Apricot > bright red	Handsomely chunky bark.	[x]	[ ]
	Phellodendron amurense 'Mac	Macho Cork Tree	40	40		0	5	[ ]	yellow	Male selection - fruitless - another good variety is 'His Majesty'	[x]	[ ]

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Pinus nigra	Austrian Pine	45	25	Pyramidal	17200	6	[ ]	Evergreen	Special site approval needed - fairly tolerant of heat, pollution, urban	[ ]	[ ]
	Pinus pinea	Italian Stone Pin	40	30	Pyramidal	21200	6	[ ]	Evergreen	Special site approval needed	[ ]	[ ]
	Populus tremuloides	Quaking Aspen	50	30		0		[ ]	yellow / orange		[ ]	[x]
	Pyrus calleryana 'Aristocrat'	Aristocrat Pear	40	30		21200	5	[ ]	Red	Good branch angles - one of the tallest pears	[x]	[ ]
	Quercus frainetto	Italian Oak	50	30	Oval	28300	6	[ ]	Yellow-Brown	Drought resistant	[x]	[ ]
	Quercus robur 'fastigiata'	Skyrocket Oak	40	15		17200	6	[ ]	Yellow-brown	Columnar variety of oak.	[x]	[ ]
	Salix lasiandra	Pacific Willow	40	30		0		[ ]	yellow		[ ]	[x]
	Sophora japonica 'Regent'	Japanese Pagod	50	40		0	6	[ ]	yellow	can have trunk canker or twig blight	[x]	[ ]
	Taxodium distichum	Bald Cypress	55	30	Pyramidal	31800	6	[ ]	Rusty red	A deciduous conifer	[x]	[ ]
	Taxodium distichum 'Mickelson	Shawnee Brave	55	20	Narrow/pyr.	14100	6	[ ]	Orange/bronze	Deciduous conifer - tolerates city conditions	[x]	[ ]
	Tilia americana 'Redmond'	Redmond Linden	45	30	Pyramidal	21200	8	[ ]	Yellow	Pyramidal, needs water.	[x]	[ ]
	Tilia cordata 'Greenspire'	Greenspire Linde	40	30		21200	5	[ ]	Yellowish	Symmetrical, pyramidal form.	[x]	[ ]
	Zelkova serrata 'Village Green'	Village Green Zel	40	38		34000	5	[ ]	Rusty Red		[x]	[ ]
Medium / Small												
	Acer nigrum 'Green Column'	Green Column Bl	50	10		12600	5	[ ]	Yellow to orange	Good close to buildings.	[x]	[ ]
	Acer platanoides'Columnar'	Columnar Norwa	40	15		5300	5	[ ]	Yellow	Good close to buildings.	[x]	[ ]
	Acer rubrum 'Bowhall'	Bowhall Maple	40	15		5300	5	[ ]	Yellow orange		[x]	[ ]

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Acer rubrum 'Karpick'	Karpick Maple	35-40	20		8800	5	☐	Yellow to orange	May work under very high powerlines with arborist's approval.	☑	☐
	Acer rubrum 'Scarsen'	Scarlet Sentinel	40	20		9400	5	☐	Yellow orange		☑	☐
	Acer truncatum x A. platanoide	Norwegian Suns	35	25		12300		☑	Yellow-orange/red	Limited use under wires	☑	☐
	Acer truncatum x A. platanoide	Pacific Sunset M	30	25		9800	5	☑	Yellow-orange/red	Limited use under wires	☑	☐
	Alnus sinuata	Sitka Alder	40	25		0		☐		Prefers a heavy moist soil - usually found above 3000' feet - can be	☐	☑
	Carpinus betulus	'Fastigiata' Pyra	35	15	Pyramidal	12300	5	☐	Yellow	Broadens when older	☑	☐
	Cladrastis kentukea	Yellowwood	40	40		0	5	☐	yellow / orange	white flowers in spring, resembling wisteria flowers	☑	☐
	Cornus controversa 'June Sno	Giant Dogwood	40	30		0	5	☐	red / orange	Large white flower clusters that appear in June	☑	☐
	Crataegus crus-galli 'Inermis'	Thornless Cocks	25	30		10600		☑	Orange to scarlet	Red persistent fruit.	☑	☐
	Crataegus phaenopyrum	Washington Haw	25	20		4700		☑	Scarlet	Thorny.	☑	☐
	Crataegus suksdorfii	Suksdorf's Hawth	30	25		0		☐		Shorter spines than C. Douglasii	☐	☑
	Crataegus x lavalii	Lavalle Hawthorn	28	20		5600		☑	Bronze	Thorns on younger trees.	☑	☐
	Davidia involucrata	Dove Tree	40	30		0	5	☐		large, unique white flowers in May	☑	☐
	Ginko biloba 'Princeton Sentry	Princeton Sentry	40	15	Columnar	5300	6	☐	Yellow	Very narrow growth.	☑	☐
	Halesia tetraptera	Carolina Silverbel	35	30	Irregular	0	5	☐	Yellow	Attractive bark for seasonal interest	☑	☐
	Libocedrus decurrens	Incense Cedar	35	20	Pyramidal	7850	6	☐	Evergreen	Special site approval needed	☐	☐

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Liquidambar styraciflua	Moraine Sweetgu	40	20		9400	6	☐	Yellow, orange/red	Light green foliage. More compact than other varieties	☑	☐
	Maackia amurensis	Amur Maackia	30	20		0	5	☑	none	attractive bark and summer flowers - grows in tough conditions	☑	☐
	Magnolia 'Elizabeth'	Elizabeth Magnol	30	20		0	5	☑		yellow flowers	☑	☐
	Magnolia 'Galaxy'	Galaxy Magnolia	35	25	pyramidal	0	5	☑	yellow/brow n	reddish-purple flowers in spring.	☑	☐
	Magnolia grandiflora 'Victoria'	Victoria Evergree	25	20		4700	5	☑	Evergreen		☑	☐
	Magnolia Kobus	Wada's Memory	35	20	Round	7900	5	☑	Brown	Does not flower well when young	☑	☐
	Ostrya virginiana	Ironwood	40	25		0	5	☐	yellow	hop like fruit	☑	☐
	Parrotia persica	Persian Parrotia	30	20		6300	5	☑	Yellow - orange red	Select or prune for single stem; can be multi-trunked.	☑	☐
	Pinus densiflora 'Umbraculifera	Umbrella Pine	25	20	Oval	4810	8	☑	Evergreen	Special site approval needed	☐	☐
	Prunus x yedoensis 'Akebono'	Akebono Floweri	25	25		7400	6	☑	Yellow		☑	☐
	Pterostyrax hispida	Fragrant Epaulett	40	30		0	5	☐	yellow / brown	Pendulous creamy white flowers - fragrant	☑	☐
	Pyrus calleryana 'Cambridge"	Cambridge Pear	40	15	Pyramidal	5300	5	☐	Reddish purple	Narrow tree with good branch angles and form	☑	☐
	Pyrus calleryana 'Glen's Form'	Chanticleer or Cl	40	15		5300	5	☐	Scarlet	Vigorous.	☑	☐
	Pyrus calleryana 'Redspire'	Redspire Pear	35	25		12300		☐	Yellow to red	Pyramidal.	☑	☐
	Quercus 'Crimschmidt'	Crimson Spire O	45	15		6200		☐		Hard to find.	☑	☐
	Robinia x ambigua	Pink Idaho Locus	35	25		12300	5	☐	Yellow	Fragrant flowers.	☑	☐

Group	Botanical Name	Common Name	Height	Spread	Shape	Volume	Strip Width	Wires	Fall Color	Comments	Street Tree	Native Tree
	Sciadopitys verticillata	Japanese Umbrel	30	20	Pyramidal	6300	8	☑	Evergreen	Grows slowly - pristine evergreen foliage - special site approval	☐	☐
	Sorbus alnifolia	Korean Mountain	40	30		0	5	☐	orange	Simple leaves. Beautiful pink-red fruit - may be short lived	☑	☐
	Sorbus aucuparia 'Mitchred'	Cardinal Royal M	35	20		7900	5	☑	Rust	Bright red berries.	☑	☐
	Sorbus x hybridia	Oakleaf Royal Mt	30	20		6300	5	☑	Rust		☑	☐
	Stewartia monodelpha	Orange Bark Ste	30	20		0	5	☑	orange	orange peeling bark - white flowers in spring	☑	☐
	Taxus brevifolia	Pacific Yew	40	25		0		☐	Evergreen	typically occurs as an understory tree 3-5 m tall west of the Cascades	☐	☑
	Tilia cordata 'De Groot'	De Groot Littlelea	30	20		6300	5	☑	Yellow	Compact, suckers less than other Lindens.	☑	☐
	Tilia cordata 'Chancole'	Chancelor Linden	35	20		7900	5	☐	Yellow	Pyramidal.	☑	☐